

# 100%

ONE HUNDRED PERCENT

COMPREHENSIVE  
AUTHORITATIVE  
WHAT YOU NEED

ONE HUNDRED PERCENT

**Master the  
leading open source  
relational database  
management system**

**Tune performance  
and security on  
database servers**

**Build MySQL  
database applications  
using Perl, PHP, Java,  
and ODBC**

**“The MySQL *Bible* introduces the essential concepts and skills you’ll need to get started with MySQL.”**

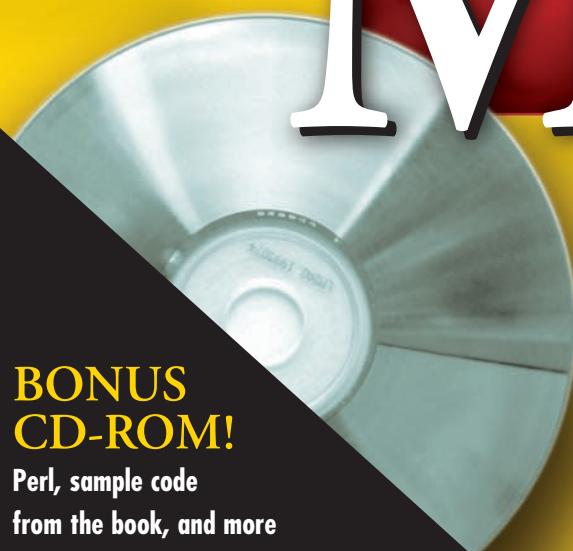
*— Jeremy Zawodny, Senior Editor of Linux Magazine  
and the MySQL database expert at Yahoo! Finance*

# MySQL<sup>TM</sup> *Bible*

**BONUS  
CD-ROM!**

Perl, sample code  
from the book, and more

**Steve Suehring**





# **MySQL<sup>™</sup> Bible**



# **MySQL™ Bible**

**Steve Suehring**



Wiley Publishing, Inc.

**MySQL™ Bible**

Published by:  
**Wiley Publishing, Inc.**  
909 Third Avenue  
New York, NY 10022  
[www.wiley.com](http://www.wiley.com)

Copyright © 2002 Wiley Publishing, Inc. All rights reserved. No part of this book, including interior design, cover design, and icons, may be reproduced or transmitted in any form, by any means (electronic, photocopying, recording, or otherwise) without the prior written permission of the publisher.

Library of Congress Control Number: 2002103290

ISBN: 0-7645-4932-4

Printed in the United States of America

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

1B/RV/QW/QS/IN

Distributed in the United States by Wiley Publishing, Inc.

Distributed by CDG Books Canada Inc. for Canada; by Transworld Publishers Limited in the United Kingdom; by IDG Norge Books for Norway; by IDG Sweden Books for Sweden; by IDG Books Australia Publishing Corporation Pty. Ltd. for Australia and New Zealand; by TransQuest Publishers Pte Ltd. for Singapore, Malaysia, Thailand, Indonesia, and Hong Kong; by Gotop Information Inc. for Taiwan; by ICG Muse, Inc. for Japan; by Intersoft for South Africa; by Eyrolles for France; by International Thomson Publishing for Germany, Austria, and Switzerland; by Distribuidora Cuspide for Argentina; by LR International for Brazil; by Galileo Libros for Chile; by Ediciones ZETA S.C.R. Ltda. for Peru; by WS Computer Publishing Corporation, Inc., for the Philippines; by Contemporanea de Ediciones for Venezuela; by Express Computer Distributors for the Caribbean and West Indies; by Micronesia Media Distributor, Inc. for Micronesia; by Chips Computadoras S.A. de C.V. for Mexico; by Editorial Norma de Panama S.A. for Panama; by American Bookshops for Finland.

For general information on Wiley's products and services please contact our Customer Care department; within the U.S. at 800-762-2974, outside the U.S. at 317-572-3993 or fax 317-572-4002.

For sales inquiries and resellers information, including discounts, premium and bulk quantity sales and foreign language translations please contact our Customer Care department at 800-434-3422, fax 317-572-4002 or write to Wiley Publishing, Inc., Attn: Customer Care department, 10475 Crosspoint Boulevard, Indianapolis, IN 46256.

For information on licensing foreign or domestic rights, please contact our Sub-Rights Customer Care department at 650-653-7098.

For information on using Wiley's products and services in the classroom or for ordering examination copies, please contact our Educational Sales department at 800-434-2086 or fax 317-572-4005.

For press review copies, author interviews, or other publicity information, please contact our Public Relations department at 650-653-7000 or fax 650-653-7500.

For authorization to photocopy items for corporate, personal, or educational use, please contact Copyright Clearance Center, 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, or fax 978-750-4470.

**LIMIT OF LIABILITY/DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY:** THE PUBLISHER AND AUTHOR HAVE USED THEIR BEST EFFORTS IN PREPARING THIS BOOK. THE PUBLISHER AND AUTHOR MAKE NO REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES WITH RESPECT TO THE ACCURACY OR COMPLETENESS OF THE CONTENTS OF THIS BOOK AND SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIM ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES WHICH EXTEND BEYOND THE DESCRIPTIONS CONTAINED IN THIS PARAGRAPH. NO WARRANTY MAY BE CREATED OR EXTENDED BY SALES REPRESENTATIVES OR WRITTEN SALES MATERIALS. THE ACCURACY AND COMPLETENESS OF THE INFORMATION PROVIDED HEREIN AND THE OPINIONS STATED HEREIN ARE NOT GUARANTEED OR WARRANTED TO PRODUCE ANY PARTICULAR RESULTS, AND THE ADVICE AND STRATEGIES CONTAINED HEREIN MAY NOT BE SUITABLE FOR EVERY INDIVIDUAL. NEITHER THE PUBLISHER NOR AUTHOR SHALL BE LIABLE FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, OR OTHER DAMAGES.

Trademarks: MySQL is a trademark of MySQL AB. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners. Wiley Publishing, Inc., is not associated with any product or vendor mentioned in this book.

## About the Author

**Steve Suehring** is a Senior Systems Engineer for a large Internet provider as well as a consultant for database, security, and Internet projects. Steve has worked with numerous clients to develop and implement database and Internet projects. Through these projects, Steve has worked with MySQL, Oracle, and SQL server for both administration and development. Steve currently holds certifications from Microsoft and Cisco. Steve has also written articles for *Linux Magazine*.

When not in front of a computer screen, Steve enjoys spending time with his wife. Steve also plays guitar, drums, and piano (though seldom simultaneously) and gets into pickup games of basketball and football whenever possible.

# Credits

**Acquisitions Editor**  
Terri Varveris

**Project Editor**  
Pat O'Brien

**Technical Editor**  
Scott Hofmann

**Copy Editor**  
Barry Childs-Helton

**Proof Editor**  
TECHBOOKS Production Services

**Editorial Manager**  
Mary Beth Wakefield

**Permissions Editor**  
Laura Moss

**Media Development Specialist**  
Gregory Stephens

**Media Development Coordinator**  
Marisa Pearman

**Project Coordinator**  
Nancee Reeves

**Graphics and Production Specialists**  
Beth Brooks, Sean Decker,  
Joyce Haughey, Jackie Nicholas,  
Heather Pope, Betty Schulte

**Quality Control Technicians**  
Laura Albert, John Greenough,  
Andy Hollandbeck, Carl Pierce

**Proofreading and Indexing**  
TECHBOOKS Production Services

*To Rebecca*



# Preface

---

Welcome to MySQL Bible. A complete reference for the MySQL database server and environment. Whether you're a database administrator looking to install MySQL, an existing MySQL administrator, a developer looking to use MySQL as a backend, or a combination of all three, this book can help.

## Why I Wrote This Book

I wrote this book to give you one place to go for hands-on examples, reference, and best-practices. I've been working with MySQL in real-world situations for years. I believe MySQL to be a robust database solution for just about every type of application. Combine the stability of MySQL with its low of ownership and you quickly come to find it indispensable.

This book looks to provide everything you'll need to know to get MySQL running and expand upon that by examining development and best-practices for MySQL implementations.

## What You Need to Know

You don't need to know anything about MySQL. However, you should have at least a little familiarity with the concepts of databases. I've covered those concepts within the pages of the book, but knowing a little about databases can't hurt.

Of course, you need to know how to use a computer.

## What You Need to Have

Since MySQL runs on many platforms, you need access to a computer capable of running Windows 95, 98, NT, 2000, XP, or somewhere in between, Linux, or a Mac with OS X. Depending on what you want to do with MySQL, you may need more RAM or a better processor. I have successfully run MySQL in Linux with less than 20 megabytes of RAM and no swap file.

The book is written with version 4 of MySQL in mind. Many of the screenshots were taken using MySQL 3.23.X as version 4 was being stabilized. However, as I wrote it version 4 was being developed. Like many people, I assisted in testing MySQL 4 and so I was able to write this book to include those features.

## What the Icons Mean

There are a certain number of icons used throughout the book to highlight various points. This section illustrates what some of those mean.



**Note**

The Note icon is used to illustrate a point that I thought should be highlighted separately from the main text.



**On the CD-ROM**

You'll see this icon throughout the book to denote software, scripts, or the like from a particular section.



**Caution**

When you see a Warning icon, pay particular attention. These are typically things that I've done wrong in the past. I highlight them so you don't do the same!



**Cross-Reference**

The Cross-Reference icon points you to another section of the book for more information.

## How This Book Is Organized

The book is divided into five main parts and a part of appendixes.

### Part I: Getting Started

The first section of the book looks at the prerequisites for installing MySQL, the actual installation of MySQL, and the concepts of database design. Installation is examined on Linux, Windows, and Mac. Within the Linux chapter, both binary and source installation of MySQL is examined.

### Part II: SQL Essentials

Examination of SQL and some of the tools used with MySQL is the highlight of the second section. The first chapter within the section gives a full look at the MySQL command-line interface program. Alternatives to the CLI are examined including

WInMySQLAdmin, and MySQLGUI. The second chapter examines various SQL statements in MySQL. The final chapter of the section is covers some topics that fit into this section and prepare for other sections.

## Part III: Administration

In this part, some server configurations are examined along with variables and options for the MySQL server. MySQL server security is within this section, as well as debugging and repairing MySQL databases and servers.

## Part IV: Development

Four popular methods for developing applications with MySQL are examined in section four. This includes Perl, PHP, connecting MySQL to ODBC, and JDBC with Java. Notably, I did not include C or C++ into this section as I strongly feel that many applications for MySQL aren't developed in C or C++. I will grant that there are some, but the widespread languages used that I've seen are Perl, Java, and PHP.

## Part V: Advanced Performance

The final group of chapters looks at some topics that don't really fit into another section. These include replication, integration of MySQL with PAM in Linux, and NuSphere MySQL.

## Part VI: Appendixes

The Appendixes include standard MySQL reference material, a nifty Glossary, and instructions for the CD-ROM.

## About the Companion CD-ROM

Much of the software discussed in the book is included on the CD-ROM with this book. Since software frequently changes versions, you may find a newer version of the software on the respective websites. The MySQL software can be downloaded from the MySQL AB web site.

I've also included software and scripts that I used within the book as examples.

Also on the CD-ROM are links that I use frequently and most likely highlight within the pages of the book as well.

## How to Use This Book

If you don't already know about databases in general, or you're getting started with a MySQL system, I recommend reading this book from cover to cover. If you have a challenging task with an existing MySQL system, try the Index and the Table of Contents for your specific problem.

## Talk To Me

I'd like to hear feedback on this book. Since the book is my first of this length, I'll be quite happy to know that someone out there actually read it. While I've done my best to make this book accurate, I won't be surprised if you find an error, typographical or otherwise. I'll do what I can to get it fixed, short of going and crossing out each typo with a marker.

I'll be happy to try to answer specific questions about MySQL. However, I can't guarantee that I'll be able to answer questions fully.

You can send email to me at:

[suehring@braingia.com](mailto:suehring@braingia.com)

I also have a website that contains some fun stuff, as well as other projects that I'm working on:

<http://www.braingia.com>

# Acknowledgments

---

**T**his book wouldn't have been possible without help from many people. First, I need to thank Terri Varveris for her unending patience with a writer on his first book as well as Pat O'Brien. Everyone at Wiley has been a pleasure to work with. Adam Goodman and Jeremy Zawodny from *Linux Magazine* offered some great help to a fledgling writer.

There are many others who should get some credit and are too numerous to mention by name. Inevitably I'm going to leave someone out and I apologize in advance. My wife Rebecca exhibited great understanding, not only with this book, but with me in general. My family, which has always been there to help and offer guidance deserves thanks, as does my friend Chris Tuescher. He wouldn't hesitate to do anything to help a friend in need.

The Nightmare Productions and Capitol Entertainment group of people helped shape who I am. Bob, Mike Feltz, Ernie Taylor, and Chris Tuescher stand out first and foremost. However, Chris Steffen, Ron Mackay, Chad Chasteen, Pat Quimby, and the rest of the gang had their parts too. Just one more time at for Mike at Manawa Middle or Ellen at Mosinee would be nice, wouldn't it?

Of course, Jim Leu, John Hein, Jeremy Guthrie, Andy Berkvam, Brandon, Dan, Erich, Mark, Sarah, Justin, Tara, the CORE Digital gang from Stevens Point. Brian and Jill and Deb Page and Jay Schrank gave me the opportunity and deserve thanks with everyone else. Will you really ever forget the time we had at CORE?

The crew from ExecPC/Voyager/CoreComm needs thanks, too. Michael Mittelstadt for having faith in me. AJ, Aaron, Al, Denise, James, Jerry, Joey Z, Matt, Nic, both Ryans, and the whole gang from #mcp and #jbs. The ExecPC staff and former CORE Digital staff are some of the smartest people to ever walk the face of the earth .

Professors Riley, Miller, and Cates have been a great influence on my life, as have Duff Damos and Gary Wescott. Special thanks to 90fm, Nightmare Squad, Jim Oliva, and John Eckendorf are in order as well for taking the time and effort every year to bring the World's Largest Trivia Contest to life. Yes, it really is the World's Largest.

The book wouldn't have been written without the never ending lunches from Mike Mitchell and JJ at Hilltop. Thanks to Tim at Partner's.

While I was writing the book, Kent Laabs let me borrow one of his drum kits. Quite a few evenings were spent hammering away. Though Kent may find out by the time he reads this, I believe I owe him a new cymbal. Who knows, someday maybe Pat Dunn will let me play with Spicy Tie Band again.

Finally, Eddie Van Halen deserves thanks as well. His music has offered inspiration throughout the writing of the book and beyond. It's almost as if I feel the need to cut him in on the book deal. Almost. If I get that invite to 5150 sometime...

# Contents at a Glance

.....

|                       |      |
|-----------------------|------|
| Preface .....         | ix   |
| Acknowledgments ..... | xiii |

## **PART 1: Getting Started . . . . . 1**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Chapter 1: Relational Database Management ..... | 3   |
| Chapter 2: Preparing for Installation .....     | 21  |
| Chapter 3: Linux Installation .....             | 35  |
| Chapter 4: Windows Installation .....           | 53  |
| Chapter 5: Macintosh Installation .....         | 69  |
| Chapter 6: Starting MySQL .....                 | 81  |
| Chapter 7: Database Concepts and Design .....   | 105 |

## **PART II: SQL Essentials . . . . . 131**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Chapter 8: Command Line Interface (CLI) ..... | 133 |
| Chapter 9: SQL According to MySQL .....       | 171 |
| Chapter 10: Database and Data .....           | 231 |

## **PART III: Administration . . . . . 279**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Chapter 11: Server Configurations .....             | 281 |
| Chapter 12: Security .....                          | 305 |
| Chapter 13: Debugging and Repairing Databases ..... | 337 |
| Chapter 14: Performance Tuning .....                | 373 |

## **PART IV: Development . . . . . 391**

|                                    |     |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| Chapter 15: Perl Development ..... | 393 |
| Chapter 16: PHP Development .....  | 449 |
| Chapter 17: ODBC/JDBC .....        | 493 |

## **PART V: Advanced Performance . . . . . 523**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Chapter 18: Replication .....                      | 525 |
| Chapter 19: Integration of Internet Services ..... | 549 |
| Chapter 20: NuSphere Enhanced MySQL .....          | 571 |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| <b>PART VI: Appendixes .....</b>                  | <b>593</b> |
| Appendix A: Application Reference .....           | 595        |
| Appendix B: Language Reference .....              | 611        |
| Appendix C: Function and Operator Reference ..... | 625        |
| Appendix D: Datatype Reference .....              | 645        |
| Appendix E: Glossary .....                        | 653        |
| Appendix F: About the CD-ROM .....                | 659        |
| <br>Index .....                                   | 661        |





# Contents

.....

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| <b>Preface . . . . .</b>               | <b>ix</b>   |
| Why I Wrote This Book . . . . .        | ix          |
| What You Need to Know . . . . .        | ix          |
| What You Need to Have . . . . .        | ix          |
| What the Icons Mean . . . . .          | x           |
| How This Book Is Organized . . . . .   | x           |
| Part I: Getting Started . . . . .      | x           |
| Part II: SQL Essentials . . . . .      | x           |
| Part III: Administration . . . . .     | xi          |
| Part IV: Development . . . . .         | xi          |
| Part V: Advanced Performance . . . . . | xi          |
| Part VI: Appendixes . . . . .          | xi          |
| About the Companion CD-ROM . . . . .   | xi          |
| How to Use This Book . . . . .         | xii         |
| Talk To Me . . . . .                   | xii         |
| <b>Acknowledgments . . . . .</b>       | <b>xiii</b> |

## PART I: Getting Started

1

|  |          |
|--|----------|
| <b>Chapter 1: Relational Database Management . . . . .</b> | <b>3</b> |
| Applications for Databases . . . . .                       | 3        |
| Customer databases . . . . .                               | 3        |
| Internet service providers' databases . . . . .            | 5        |
| Criminology and databases . . . . .                        | 6        |
| Advantages of using databases . . . . .                    | 7        |
| Comparing SQL Implementations . . . . .                    | 7        |
| Oracle . . . . .   | 8        |
| Microsoft SQL Server . . . . .                             | 9        |
| PostgreSQL . . . . .                                       | 10       |
| Informix . . . . .   | 11       |
| Introducing MySQL . . . . .                                | 11       |
| MySQL versions and features . . . . .                      | 11       |
| Standards and compatibility . . . . .                      | 13       |
| MySQL-specific properties . . . . .                        | 16       |
| What MySQL Does Best . . . . .                             | 18       |
| What MySQL Can't Do—Quite Yet . . . . .                    | 19       |
| Summary . . . . .  | 20       |

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| <b>Chapter 2: Preparing for Installation . . . . .</b>            | <b>21</b> |
| Prerequisites for MySQL . . . . .                                 | 21        |
| Licensing . . . . .   | 21        |
| Support . . . . .   | 22        |
| Operating system and architecture . . . . .                       | 23        |
| Development . . . . .   | 24        |
| Existing data . . . . .   | 26        |
| Default language and character set . . . . .                      | 28        |
| Management . . . . .  | 28        |
| Where to Obtain MySQL . . . . .                                   | 30        |
| Overview of MySQL Versions . . . . .                              | 30        |
| MySQL numbering scheme . . . . .                                  | 30        |
| Binary versions of MySQL . . . . .                                | 30        |
| Source-code versions of MySQL . . . . .                           | 32        |
| MySQL for Windows . . . . .                                       | 32        |
| MySQL for Mac OS X . . . . .                                      | 34        |
| Summary . . . . .   | 34        |
| <b>Chapter 3: Linux Installation . . . . .</b>                    | <b>35</b> |
| Common Binary, RPM, and Source MySQL Installation Tasks . . . . . | 35        |
| MySQL server startup and shutdown . . . . .                       | 35        |
| Common command-line options for mysqld . . . . .                  | 38        |
| Creating default databases and completing installation . . . . .  | 42        |
| Setting an administrator password for MySQL . . . . .             | 44        |
| MySQL Linux Binary Installation . . . . .                         | 45        |
| MySQL Linux RPM Installation . . . . .                            | 47        |
| MySQL Linux Source Installation . . . . .                         | 48        |
| Choosing Options for MySQL . . . . .                              | 48        |
| Compiling MySQL . . . . .   | 51        |
| Summary . . . . .   | 52        |
| <b>Chapter 4: Windows Installation . . . . .</b>                  | <b>53</b> |
| Tasks Common to Binary and Source MySQL Installation . . . . .    | 53        |
| MySQL server administration                                       |           |
| the Windows way . . . . .   | 53        |
| MySQL server startup and shutdown . . . . .                       | 56        |
| Common command-line options for mysqld . . . . .                  | 58        |
| Setting an Administrator password for MySQL . . . . .             | 62        |
| Installing MySQL on Windows 2000 . . . . .                        | 63        |
| Summary . . . . .   | 68        |
| <b>Chapter 5: Macintosh Installation . . . . .</b>                | <b>69</b> |
| Binary and Source-Code MySQL Installation in Mac OS X:            |           |
| Tasks in Common . . . . .   | 69        |
| Setting up MySQL to start automatically . . . . .                 | 69        |
| Shutting down MySQL Server . . . . .                              | 73        |
| Setting an administrator password for MySQL . . . . .             | 73        |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| Installing MySQL With Mac OS X Server . . . . .             | 74         |
| Installing MySQL Binary on Mac OS X . . . . .               | 74         |
| Installing MySQL Source Code on Mac OS X . . . . .          | 75         |
| Creating the MySQL User . . . . .                           | 75         |
| Compiling MySQL . . . . .                                   | 77         |
| Configuring MySQL . . . . .                                 | 78         |
| Testing MySQL . . . . .                                     | 79         |
| Summary . . . . .   | 80         |
| <b>Chapter 6: Starting MySQL . . . . .</b>                  | <b>81</b>  |
| MySQL Server Administration and Security . . . . .          | 81         |
| Using mysqladmin . . . . .                                  | 82         |
| Setting the root password . . . . .                         | 82         |
| Checking MySQL server status . . . . .                      | 83         |
| Dealing with inactive connections . . . . .                 | 84         |
| Shut down the server . . . . .                              | 86         |
| Basic MySQL security . . . . .                              | 86         |
| Frequently Used MySQL Database Functions . . . . .          | 88         |
| Creating a database . . . . .                               | 88         |
| Creating tables . . . . .                                   | 89         |
| Inserting and updating data . . . . .                       | 92         |
| Preparing a new user for access to the database . . . . .   | 97         |
| Summary . . . . .   | 102        |
| <b>Chapter 7: Database Concepts and Design . . . . .</b>    | <b>105</b> |
| Concepts of Databases . . . . .                             | 105        |
| What is data? . . . . .                                     | 105        |
| What is a database? . . . . .                               | 105        |
| Why use a Database? . . . . .                               | 106        |
| How are databases used? . . . . .                           | 107        |
| Database Design . . . . .                                   | 107        |
| The Database Life Cycle . . . . .                           | 108        |
| Logical Design . . . . .                                    | 109        |
| Entities and attributes . . . . .                           | 109        |
| Relationships . . . . .                                     | 112        |
| Entity-relationship diagrams . . . . .                      | 113        |
| Analysis of diagrams . . . . .                              | 113        |
| Constraints . . . . .                                       | 119        |
| Normalization . . . . .                                     | 120        |
| Data Definition Language and Data Markup Language . . . . . | 122        |
| Producing the SQL . . . . .                                 | 122        |
| Physical Design and Implementation . . . . .                | 124        |
| Indexing . . . . .  | 125        |
| Implementation . . . . .                                    | 129        |
| Summary . . . . .   | 130        |

**Part II: SQL Essentials****131****Chapter 8: Command Line Interface (CLI) . . . . . 133**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Introducing the CLI . . . . .                               | 133 |
| Starting the CLI—The Basics . . . . .                       | 136 |
| Specifying the username . . . . .                           | 137 |
| Specifying the password . . . . .                           | 138 |
| Specifying the host . . . . .                               | 139 |
| Specifying the database . . . . .                           | 140 |
| MySQL CLI Environment Variables . . . . .                   | 141 |
| Determining and changing default variables . . . . .        | 141 |
| Using the CLI in Interactive Mode . . . . .                 | 146 |
| Speeding startup of the CLI . . . . .                       | 147 |
| Making the CLI quieter . . . . .                            | 147 |
| Using a pager to work with larger amounts of data . . . . . | 147 |
| Displaying query results vertically . . . . .               | 148 |
| Using tee to save output . . . . .                          | 149 |
| Printing output in HTML format . . . . .                    | 150 |
| Suppressing column names . . . . .                          | 150 |
| Using batch mode to produce tab delimited output . . . . .  | 150 |
| Using the CLI in Non-Interactive Mode . . . . .             | 152 |
| Executing a statement . . . . .                             | 152 |
| Printing HTML output . . . . .                              | 152 |
| Suppressing column names . . . . .                          | 154 |
| Printing results vertically . . . . .                       | 155 |
| Using batch mode to produce tab-delimited output . . . . .  | 155 |
| Creating a Useful MySQL CLI Environment . . . . .           | 156 |
| A basic MySQL CLI configuration . . . . .                   | 156 |
| A MySQL administration configuration . . . . .              | 157 |
| A client-only MySQL CLI configuration . . . . .             | 157 |
| Your MySQL CLI configuration . . . . .                      | 157 |
| Common CLI Errors . . . . .                                 | 158 |
| Access Denied errors . . . . .                              | 158 |
| Alternatives to the CLI . . . . .                           | 160 |
| The basics of MySQLGUI . . . . .                            | 160 |
| Running SQL statements with MySQLGUI . . . . .              | 163 |
| Administration with MySQLGUI . . . . .                      | 166 |
| The basics of phpMyAdmin . . . . .                          | 168 |
| Running SQL statements with phpMyAdmin . . . . .            | 168 |
| Administration with phpMyAdmin . . . . .                    | 169 |
| Summary . . . . .   | 169 |

**Chapter 9: SQL According to MySQL . . . . . 171**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Utility and Administrative Statements and Commands . . . . . | 171 |
| SHOW statements . . . . .                                    | 171 |
| USE/CONNECT . . . . .  | 179 |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| DESCRIBE . . . . .                                     | 180        |
| KILL . . . . .   | 180        |
| OPTIMIZE TABLE <tablename> . . . . .                   | 180        |
| Data Definition Language . . . . .                     | 181        |
| Deleting tables . . . . .                              | 181        |
| Deleting and creating databases . . . . .              | 182        |
| Creating tables . . . . .                              | 183        |
| Altering tables . . . . .                              | 185        |
| Data Markup Language . . . . .                         | 191        |
| Inserting data into the database with INSERT . . . . . | 191        |
| Gathering data with SELECT . . . . .                   | 197        |
| Updating data with the UPDATE statement . . . . .      | 228        |
| Delete . . . . .                                       | 229        |
| Summary . . . . .                                      | 230        |
| <b>Chapter 10: Databases and Data . . . . .</b>        | <b>231</b> |
| Choosing the Right MySQL Table Type . . . . .          | 231        |
| MySQL table types . . . . .                            | 232        |
| MyISAM . . . . .                                       | 234        |
| MERGE . . . . .  | 240        |
| ISAM . . . . .   | 240        |
| HEAP . . . . .   | 241        |
| InnoDB . . . . .                                       | 242        |
| BerkeleyDB . . . . .                                   | 245        |
| Administering Your Database with mysqladmin . . . . .  | 246        |
| Common switches . . . . .                              | 246        |
| Special switches . . . . .                             | 247        |
| Functions with mysqladmin . . . . .                    | 249        |
| Exporting Data . . . . .                               | 260        |
| mysqldump . . . . .                                    | 260        |
| SELECT INTO OUTFILE . . . . .                          | 271        |
| Importing Data . . . . .                               | 273        |
| CLI . . . . .  | 273        |
| LOAD DATA INFILE . . . . .                             | 274        |
| mysqlimport . . . . .                                  | 276        |
| Summary . . . . .                                      | 277        |

## Part III: Administration 279

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| <b>Chapter 11: Server Configurations . . . . .</b> | <b>281</b> |
| MySQL Server Variables . . . . .                   | 281        |
| Viewing current server variables . . . . .         | 281        |
| MySQL Benchmarking and Testing . . . . .           | 292        |
| Requirements for the applications . . . . .        | 292        |
| Running the tests . . . . .                        | 293        |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| Sample Configuration Files . . . . .                             | 296        |
| Examination of the sample configuration files . . . . .          | 296        |
| Developing your own configuration file . . . . .                 | 298        |
| Bringing it all together . . . . .                               | 302        |
| Running More Than One MySQL Server on the Same Machine . . . . . | 303        |
| Configuration of multiple MySQL servers . . . . .                | 303        |
| Connecting to multiple MySQL servers . . . . .                   | 303        |
| Summary . . . . .  | 304        |
| <b>Chapter 12: Security . . . . .</b>                            | <b>305</b> |
| Security of the MySQL Host Server . . . . .                      | 305        |
| Locating security information . . . . .                          | 306        |
| Apply patches and fixes . . . . .                                | 308        |
| Disable unused programs and services . . . . .                   | 308        |
| MySQL Software Security . . . . .                                | 310        |
| MySQL updates . . . . .  | 310        |
| Run the server as a non-privileged user . . . . .                | 311        |
| Firewalling the MySQL server . . . . .                           | 312        |
| Communicating securely with the MySQL server . . . . .           | 312        |
| Using socket-based connections . . . . .                         | 313        |
| Changing the MySQL default port . . . . .                        | 313        |
| Monitoring data sent to MySQL . . . . .                          | 315        |
| Disabling DNS . . . . .  | 316        |
| Dynamic MySQL monitoring of Web pages . . . . .                  | 316        |
| MySQL Authentication and Privileges . . . . .                    | 323        |
| Overview of MySQL authentication . . . . .                       | 323        |
| MySQL privileges . . . . .                                       | 324        |
| Security of passwords . . . . .                                  | 325        |
| MySQL passwords . . . . .  | 326        |
| MySQL User Management . . . . .                                  | 326        |
| Adding users and granting privileges . . . . .                   | 327        |
| Deleting users and revoking privileges . . . . .                 | 330        |
| Changing passwords and other parameters . . . . .                | 331        |
| Common Problems . . . . .  | 333        |
| Access denied . . . . .  | 333        |
| Oops, I forgot the root password . . . . .                       | 334        |
| Summary . . . . .  | 335        |
| <b>Chapter 13: Debugging and Repairing Databases . . . . .</b>   | <b>337</b> |
| Performing Database Backups . . . . .                            | 338        |
| mysqlhotcopy . . . . .   | 338        |
| mysqldump . . . . .  | 348        |
| BACKUP TABLE . . . . .   | 350        |
| Troubleshooting and Repairing Table Problems . . . . .           | 351        |
| mysqlcheck . . . . .   | 352        |
| myisamchk . . . . .  | 356        |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| ANALYZE TABLE . . . . .                        | 364 |
| OPTIMIZE TABLE . . . . .                       | 364 |
| CHECK TABLE . . . . .                          | 365 |
| REPAIR TABLE . . . . .                         | 365 |
| Restoring a MySQL Database . . . . .           | 365 |
| mysqlhotcopy . . . . .                         | 366 |
| RESTORE TABLE . . . . .                        | 366 |
| The MySQL CLI . . . . .                        | 368 |
| Devising a Plan for Database Backups . . . . . | 369 |
| Summary . . . . .                              | 371 |

## Chapter 14: Performance Tuning . . . . . **373**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Troubleshooting Servers . . . . .                                      | 373 |
| MySQL logfiles . . . . .   | 374 |
| Troubleshooting and performance functions<br>with mysqladmin . . . . . | 377 |
| MySQL CLI troubleshooting and<br>performance functions . . . . .       | 382 |
| mysqlshow . . . . .  | 384 |
| Optimizing Databases and Tables . . . . .                              | 386 |
| Optimizing Queries . . . . .   | 388 |
| Summary . . . . .  | 389 |

## PART IV: Development **391**

### Chapter 15: Perl Development . . . . . **393**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Installing the Perl DBI And MySQL DBD . . . . .                             | 394 |
| Where to get the DBI and DBD . . . . .                                      | 394 |
| Installing the DBI . . . . .  | 394 |
| Installing the MySQL DBD . . . . .  | 398 |
| Introducing the DBI . . . . .   | 402 |
| Basic DBI Usage . . . . .   | 402 |
| Connecting to and disconnecting<br>from the database with the DBI . . . . . | 404 |
| Handling errors with the DBI . . . . .                                      | 410 |
| Functions with the DBI . . . . .  | 415 |
| Building Basic Applications . . . . .                                       | 424 |
| MySQL User Manager . . . . .  | 424 |
| Building Web Pages with the DBI . . . . .                                   | 428 |
| A simple Web application to query MySQL . . . . .                           | 429 |
| Accepting input from a form . . . . .                                       | 431 |
| Producing an E-Commerce Web site . . . . .                                  | 434 |
| Database layout . . . . .   | 435 |
| Building an inventory-input program . . . . .                               | 436 |
| Building a simple product search engine . . . . .                           | 441 |
| Present and future expansion . . . . .                                      | 448 |
| Summary . . . . .   | 448 |

**Chapter 16: PHP Development . . . . . 449**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| PHP Installation . . . . .                             | 449 |
| What you need for installation . . . . .               | 450 |
| Where to get the software . . . . .                    | 451 |
| Installing PHP on a Linux system . . . . .             | 452 |
| Brass Tacks: PHP Essentials . . . . .                  | 459 |
| A PHP Web page . . . . .                               | 459 |
| PHP and forms . . . . .                                | 462 |
| PHP MySQL Configuration . . . . .                      | 463 |
| Configuration settings . . . . .                       | 463 |
| PHP MySQL Functions . . . . .                          | 465 |
| The functions . . . . .                                | 465 |
| Connecting to MySQL with PHP . . . . .                 | 467 |
| Selecting data from a MySQL database . . . . .         | 468 |
| Inserting and updating data in MySQL . . . . .         | 472 |
| Building MySQL-Enabled Applications With PHP . . . . . | 474 |
| A PHP version of the user manager . . . . .            | 474 |
| Cookies with no milk . . . . .                         | 482 |
| Summary . . . . .                                      | 491 |

**Chapter 17: ODBC/JDBC . . . . . 493**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| An Introduction to MyODBC . . . . .                              | 494 |
| Where to get MyODBC . . . . .                                    | 494 |
| Installing MyODBC . . . . .                                      | 494 |
| Changing MyODBC Options . . . . .                                | 497 |
| Using MyODBC . . . . .   | 499 |
| Importing MySQL data into Microsoft Access . . . . .             | 499 |
| Importing data into Microsoft Word . . . . .                     | 504 |
| An Introduction to JDBC . . . . .                                | 510 |
| The JDBC interface . . . . .                                     | 511 |
| Where to get the JDBC and MySQL JDBC Driver . . . . .            | 511 |
| Installing the MySQL JDBC Driver . . . . .                       | 511 |
| Using the JDBC and the MySQL Driver . . . . .                    | 514 |
| The concepts and terms of JDBC . . . . .                         | 514 |
| The basics of handling statements and results . . . . .          | 515 |
| Database metadata . . . . .                                      | 516 |
| Working with JDBC errors . . . . .                               | 517 |
| Testing for NULL values . . . . .                                | 517 |
| Cached connections . . . . .                                     | 518 |
| Connecting to MySQL with the JDBC API and MySQL Driver . . . . . | 518 |
| Creating a basic MySQL JDBC Program . . . . .                    | 520 |
| Summary . . . . .  | 521 |

**Part V: Advanced Performance** **523****Chapter 18: Replication** . . . . . **525**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Planning and Preparing for Replication | 525 |
| Considerations for replication         | 526 |
| MySQL server versions                  | 527 |
| Security                               | 527 |
| Configuring Replication                | 527 |
| Replication variables and settings     | 527 |
| A basic replication configuration      | 530 |
| Multiple slave replication             | 533 |
| Multiple master replication            | 534 |
| Pass-through slave replication         | 537 |
| Monitoring Replication                 | 537 |
| Monitoring replication with Perl       | 537 |
| Monitoring replication through the Web | 540 |
| Kick-starting Replication              | 543 |
| When good replication goes bad         | 544 |
| Kick-starting replication revealed     | 544 |
| Summary                                | 546 |

**Chapter 19: Integration of Internet Services** . . . . . **549**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| PAM and NSS User Authentication in MySQL         | 550 |
| Installing PAM-MySQL                             | 551 |
| PAM-MySQL syntax                                 | 552 |
| Testing PAM-MySQL                                | 553 |
| Installing NSS-MySQL                             | 555 |
| Configuration of NSS-MySQL                       | 555 |
| DNS Management with MySQL                        | 556 |
| Creating a DNS management interface              | 556 |
| MySQL and RADIUS Integration                     | 561 |
| A closer look at Radiator                        | 561 |
| E-Mail Integration and Management with MySQL     | 562 |
| Building a virtual users table for Sendmail      | 562 |
| A virtual e-mail database                        | 563 |
| Importing existing virtual e-mail entries        | 564 |
| A Web interface for virtual e-mail management    | 566 |
| Building a Full-Scale Virtual-Services Interface | 569 |
| Summary  | 569 |

**Chapter 20: NuSphere Enhanced MySQL** . . . . . **571**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| NuSphere MySQL Advantage: A Closer Look    | 572 |
| Gemini: A new table type                   | 572 |
| NuSphere integration with popular software | 572 |
| NuSphere management tools                  | 572 |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Installing NuSphere Pro Advantage on Linux . . . . .        | 573 |
| The NuSphere installation process . . . . .                 | 573 |
| NuSphere administration . . . . .                           | 578 |
| Creating Gemini tables . . . . .                            | 579 |
| Gemini configuration options . . . . .                      | 581 |
| Installing NuSphere Pro Advantage on Windows 2000 . . . . . | 582 |
| The NuSphere installation process . . . . .                 | 583 |
| NuSphere administration . . . . .                           | 587 |
| Creating Gemini tables . . . . .                            | 588 |
| Gemini configuration options . . . . .                      | 590 |
| Summary . . . . .   | 591 |

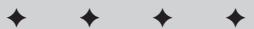
## Part VI: Appendixes 593

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| <b>Appendix A: Application Reference . . . . .</b>              | <b>595</b> |
| A.1 Data-Access Applications . . . . .                          | 595        |
| mysql . . . . .   | 595        |
| mysqldump . . . . .   | 598        |
| mysqlshow . . . . .   | 600        |
| A.2 Server-Administration Applications . . . . .                | 601        |
| mysqladmin . . . . .  | 601        |
| mysqlcheck . . . . .  | 603        |
| mysqlimport . . . . .   | 604        |
| mysqltest . . . . .   | 606        |
| A.3 The mysqld Server Daemon . . . . .                          | 606        |
| <b>Appendix B: Language Reference . . . . .</b>                 | <b>611</b> |
| B.1 Data Definition Language and Data Markup Language . . . . . | 611        |
| ALTER TABLE . . . . .   | 611        |
| CREATE DATABASE . . . . .                                       | 613        |
| CREATE TABLE . . . . .  | 613        |
| DESCRIBE . . . . .  | 613        |
| DELETE FROM . . . . .   | 614        |
| EXPLAIN SELECT . . . . .  | 614        |
| HANDLER . . . . .   | 614        |
| INSERT INTO . . . . .   | 615        |
| SELECT . . . . .  | 615        |
| SHOW TABLES . . . . .   | 617        |
| UNION . . . . .   | 617        |
| UPDATE . . . . .  | 617        |
| B.2. Administrative Commands . . . . .                          | 618        |
| ANALYZE TABLE . . . . .   | 618        |
| FLUSH . . . . .   | 618        |
| KILL . . . . .  | 619        |
| OPTIMIZE TABLE . . . . .  | 620        |
| RESET . . . . .   | 620        |
| SHOW . . . . .  | 620        |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| B.3 Backup / Recovery Commands . . . . .                     | 621        |
| BACKUP TABLE . . . . .                                       | 621        |
| CHECK TABLE . . . . .  | 622        |
| REPAIR TABLE . . . . .                                       | 622        |
| RESTORE TABLE . . . . .                                      | 623        |
| B.4. User-Account Commands . . . . .                         | 623        |
| GRANT . . . . .  | 623        |
| REVOKE . . . . .   | 624        |
| <b>Appendix C: Function and Operator Reference . . . . .</b> | <b>625</b> |
| C.1. MySQL Operators . . . . .                               | 625        |
| Comparison operators . . . . .                               | 625        |
| Flow-control operators . . . . .                             | 626        |
| Logical operators . . . . .                                  | 627        |
| Statement operators . . . . .                                | 627        |
| String operators . . . . .                                   | 628        |
| C.2. MySQL Functions . . . . .                               | 628        |
| Binary math functions . . . . .                              | 628        |
| Date functions . . . . .                                     | 629        |
| Decimal math functions . . . . .                             | 634        |
| Select operators . . . . .                                   | 636        |
| String functions . . . . .                                   | 637        |
| System functions . . . . .                                   | 641        |
| Trigonometric math functions . . . . .                       | 643        |
| <b>Appendix D: Datatype Reference . . . . .</b>              | <b>645</b> |
| D.1. Integer Datatypes . . . . .                             | 645        |
| BIGINT . . . . .   | 645        |
| INT . . . . .  | 645        |
| MEDIUMINT . . . . .  | 646        |
| SMALLINT . . . . .   | 646        |
| TINYINT . . . . .  | 646        |
| D.2. Decimal Datatypes . . . . .                             | 646        |
| FLOAT . . . . .  | 647        |
| DECIMAL . . . . .  | 647        |
| DOUBLE . . . . .   | 647        |
| D.3 Date Datatypes . . . . .                                 | 647        |
| DATE . . . . .   | 648        |
| DATETIME . . . . .   | 648        |
| TIMESTAMP . . . . .  | 648        |
| TIME . . . . .   | 648        |
| YEAR . . . . .   | 649        |
| D.4. STRING Datatypes . . . . .                              | 649        |
| BLOB . . . . .   | 649        |
| CHAR . . . . .   | 650        |
| TEXT . . . . .   | 650        |
| VARCHAR . . . . .  | 650        |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| D.5. Grouping Datatypes . . . . .             | 651        |
| ENUM . . . . .                                | 651        |
| SET . . . . .                                 | 651        |
| <b>Appendix E: Glossary . . . . .</b>         | <b>653</b> |
| <b>Appendix F: About the CD-ROM . . . . .</b> | <b>659</b> |
| System Requirements . . . . .                 | 659        |
| What's on the CD . . . . .                    | 659        |
| If You Have Problems . . . . .                | 660        |
| <b>Index . . . . .</b>                        | <b>661</b> |

# Getting Started



## In This Part

### **Chapter 1**

Relational Database Management

### **Chapter 2**

Preparing for Installation

### **Chapter 3**

Linux Installation

### **Chapter 4**

Windows Installation

### **Chapter 5**

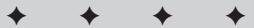
Macintosh Installation

### **Chapter 6**

Starting MySQL

### **Chapter 7**

Database Concepts and Design





# Relational Database Management

**B**efore you sound the depths of MySQL, it would be helpful to look at some applications for databases and at other implementations of SQL servers.

This chapter lays out some groundwork for the rest of the book—in particular, with tables that illustrate MySQL’s extensions to the SQL-92 standard and compare some popular functions of database servers.

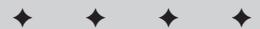
## Applications for Databases

Databases are a part of everyday life, usually without your knowledge. From obvious applications (like customer databases for insurance companies) to not-so-obvious uses (such as storing actual images within a database for recognition), database use is pervasive and increasing.

### Customer databases

Not a day goes without telephone calls from people trying to sell products or new long-distance plans. You and I are in more than a few customer databases—and some of the places I’ve done business with have shared my telephone number with some of their friends, who’ve then shared it with some of their friends—another fact of life that’s traceable to the proliferation of databases.

Taking a look at some information stored in a few “everyday” databases can serve as an example of the different types of information each one collects, tracks, and sometimes stores—about you, me, and probably everyone you know. Whatever your views on issues of politics and privacy, these common examples form a picture of databases in action.

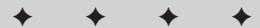


### In This Chapter

Considering applications for databases

Comparing SQL implementations

Introducing MySQL



## Telephone companies

The telephone company that owns my area stores basic information about me—first and last name, address, city, state, ZIP code, and telephone number—information that's not only basic but also common across almost all customer databases. Beyond the basic information, the local telephone company also requires my social security number (which helps them find me should I attempt to forego payment and leave the area).

Within the telephone company database is a system to keep notes and correspondence. For example, each time I call to talk with a customer service representative, a note goes into my file—indicating what I was calling about, the outcome (if any), as well as the date, time, and representative's name—all of which is recorded automatically when the note is entered.

Beyond the personal information and correspondence notes, the telephone company database also serves as a billing system that generates my phone bill automatically on the fourth day of every month. The database tracks what services I have (such as Call Waiting, Caller ID, and so forth), associates each service with a price, and tallies my bill for the month.

Having customer, billing, and rate information in a database allows the telephone company to produce reports that can pinpoint how many customers have a certain rate group, how many live in a certain area, how many have delinquent payments, and so on.

Beyond customer reports, the telephone company has become much more sophisticated in its use of the data. Previously when I would call for customer service, I would get to talk to a live person after a bit of a wait. They then improved their customer service by allowing me to punch in my 10-digit telephone number and look up my records. From there, I might eventually get to talk to a live person (if I didn't select any of the common tasks on the voice-mail menu). The latest improvement is the use of caller identification to ask me whether I'm calling in regard to the number that I'm calling from. After more menus and prompts, I may be able to reach a live operator.

Behind the scenes during this process is a database that can look up my information when it is fed my 10-digit number. The telephone company database can then give me choices based on the current status of my account. I once had the misfortune of fraudulent charges on my telephone bill—about \$650 worth. I immediately put that amount into dispute and was told to pay my normal \$45 bill—but I still ended up receiving a disconnection notice. When I called back to inquire into the notice, I was forwarded automatically to the collections department (who, after some discussion, handed me off to the regular customer service department). Moral: Databases can speed up only those aspects of a transaction that don't require the use of common sense.

## Online or mail-order stores

Another type of customer database is kept by an online store such as Amazon.com or a mail-order catalog store. The basic information is kept (name, address, and so on); most online and many catalog stores also keep your e-mail address as well. In addition, many stores track payment information so you don't have to give your credit card number every time you want to make a purchase.

As monopolies, most telephone companies can afford to do minimal marketing of their products and services. To survive in a competitive market, however, catalog and online stores keep track of how their customers heard about them. From that information, they can produce a report that helps identify the most effective means of advertising (or look for wiser ways to spend marketing money).

Major catalog and online stores also track your purchases through a database and offer recommendations based upon previous purchase patterns. For example, if you frequently buy books on Linux, Amazon.com might custom-build a page for you of newly released Linux books. All such information is stored in one or more databases.

Catalog and online stores can use the reporting capabilities of an electronic database to watch which items are selling best, discern and track patterns of visitors, and gather data on sales totals for items and departments.

## Custom-service Web sites

Another interesting use of customer type databases is to track user preferences. An example of this would be the Web site Slashdot, <http://www.slashdot.org/>. At Slashdot, they don't keep information like credit card number or address, but they do keep track of your e-mail address and what news modules you want to see, among other things. In this manner, you can customize the news you see, as well as other Slashdot features. Some user-preference sites do keep personal information such as name and address.

Though all three examples of customer databases — telephone company, online store, and user-preferences site — track some of the same information, they also track their own, task-specific information. This makes it difficult for an identity thief to gain access to all your personal information in one place. However, personal information security seems to be taking a backseat to the rise of all-in-one tracking services that keep information centrally. Imagine what the telemarketers could do if they had access to all my purchase histories and even my e-mail address!

## Internet service providers' databases

Internet service providers (ISPs) use electronic databases more heavily than many other industries. Almost everything an ISP does is in electronic format; being relatively young as an industry, they've grown up with good database tools readily available. In many ways, ISP databases combine the functions of all three types of customer databases I referred to earlier.

The most obvious database use for an ISP is as a customer database—containing the usual (basic) name-and-address information. Like the online or catalog stores, the ISP database also stores information such as credit card or other billing data. Correspondence notes are kept inside a database as well as marketing and referral records to track marketing effectiveness. An ISP database usually has your e-mail address as well.

ISPs also use user-preference databases to remember your settings and make your online experience more productive—they use the same types of database information as a news site.

One area that many people overlook with ISPs what the industry calls *accounting data*—not the dollars-and-cents kind, but rather an accounting of who was using what modem or IP address at a given point in time. This accounting data can then be tracked to find usage patterns of a particular user or group of users. In addition, when an abuse report or subpoena is received, the ISP can quickly locate the user in question and take action or fulfill the subpoena request.



### Tip

Many people wrongly believe they are anonymous when online. The reality is quite the contrary. With the use of databases to track accounting information, finding any given user who was online at any given time is almost trivially easy.

Some ISPs use databases as a means to track possible attacks against their equipment. Databases are an efficient way to watch for patterns of attack and keep data from an attack for possible future litigation or action against the attacker.

As you would expect, ISPs also use the reporting features of their databases. Reports can quickly be generated on revenue, high usage customers, or anything else tracked in the database.

## Criminology and databases

Law enforcement has been quick to adopt electronic databases as an effective tool for helping to catch criminals. Through identification databases, offender tracking, and face recognition, law enforcement can efficiently assemble varied pieces of information to assist in investigations.

Although fingerprinting technology is not new, the use of electronic databases to store and retrieve fingerprints is a new (and powerful) extension of the technique. Other identification data can also be gathered and tracked for law enforcement—tax records, permits, and driver's-license information can help law enforcement find people. That information can easily be shared with other law enforcement agencies at speeds that weren't imaginable just a generation ago.

The electronic database is an ideal tool for certain other forms of information. For example, when tracking offenders by *modus operandi* (a pattern that emerges in

crimes), the investigator can query a database to find suspects who might fit the pattern. Storing actual images of faces (for example, mug shots) in a database can help investigators find matches to faces. However, use of this technology in places other than investigations has led privacy groups to express some concerns.

## Advantages of using databases

The speed, accuracy, and thoroughness of electronic databases make them critical to today's 24/7 high-speed exchange of information. Even the handful of examples in this chapter should strongly suggest the advantages—some of which appear in Table 1-1—of using and developing applications for databases.

**Table 1-1**  
**Advantages of Using Databases**

| <b>Advantage</b> | <b>Description</b>  |
|------------------|---|
| Speed            | Format means quick storage and retrieval of information. Users and applications have a quick means for asynchronous reads and writes of data. |
| Reporting        | Information can be gathered, quantified, and custom-analyzed with greater flexibility.  |
| Accuracy         | Given careful data input, databases provide accurate and consistent results based on their data.  |
| Thoroughness     | Databases can store and report results as complete and detailed as their holdings—at electronic speed.  |

## Comparing SQL Implementations

SQL, or Structured Query Language, is a specialized type of programming language developed to work with relational databases such as MySQL, Oracle, Microsoft SQL Server, PostgreSQL, Informix, and others.

The SQL standard is defined by ANSI, the American National Standards Institute in their ISO/IEC 9075:1992 document. (The standard is commonly referred to as ANSI SQL-92.) Every relational database applies its own version of the SQL standard; many enhance that standard. Standardizing the programming language allows the developer to address the database in much the same way from platform to platform—and every major platform has such products written for it. Table 1-2 compares some popular relational-database products as illustrative examples.

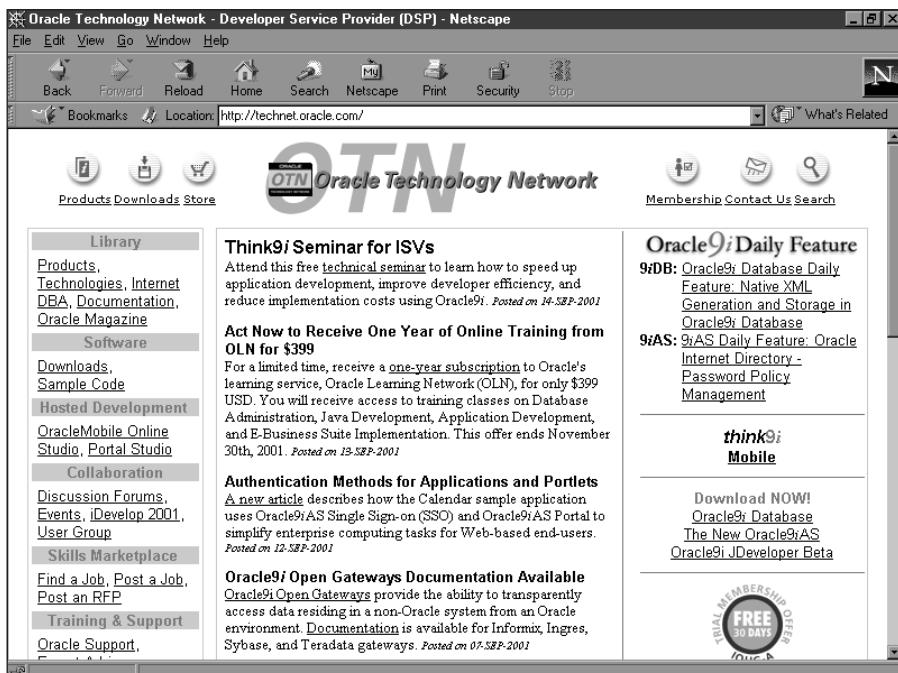
**Table 1-2**  
**Comparison of SQL Implementations**

| RDBMS         | Advantages  | Drawbacks  |
|---------------|---|--|
| Oracle        | Versatile, stable, and secure.  | Potentially high TCO.  |
| MS SQL Server | Stable and secure; Microsoft offers excellent support.  | Relatively high TCO; proprietary.  |
| PostgreSQL    | Up-and-coming database with low TCO.  | Has yet to be widely implemented in large-scale business use.              |
| Informix      | Stable; has good support available.   | Generally higher TCO.  |
| MySQL         | Offers a best-case-scenario database in many ways; low TCO, high stability, high security, and excellent support. | Not all available versions can offer the full range of MySQL capabilities. |

## Oracle

Oracle Corporation, <http://www.oracle.com/>, is arguably the leader in enterprise-level database server software for e-commerce. The Oracle database product is widely used in various types of large applications—including those mentioned in the previous section—and is popular largely because its characteristics apparently have a minimal downside:

- ◆ **Versatility:** Oracle Corporation offers many e-commerce products that integrate with their databases, which can help streamline the process of designing, building, and using database applications.
- ◆ **Stability:** Administrators report that Oracle database servers rarely fail—reassuring if your applications require 24/7 uptime.
- ◆ **Available graphical user interface:** Oracle offers many GUI tools for managing the database server (though whether this feature is a plus or minus depends on which administrator you ask).
- ◆ **Security:** Versions of Oracle now include a security toolkit that allows encryption of sensitive data *within the database*. Like other RDBMS products, Oracle also provides user-level security within a database to protect the data from malicious users or operator errors.
- ◆ **Support:** Oracle Corporation has historically been responsive to customer requests for new features in the database product. Oracle moves quickly to seize new opportunities as well—listening to customers, watching market trends, and maintaining thorough online documentation through the Oracle Technology Network (see Figure 1-1).



**Figure 1-1:** The Oracle Technology Network is just one of many support offerings for Oracle.

- ◆ **Cross-platform capability:** Popular versions include Oracle on Microsoft Windows as well as Linux. Oracle also supports ANSI-92 SQL standards with modifications and enhancements.
- ◆ **Potentially high Total Cost of Ownership (TCO):** Oracle's database server requires considerable high-end hardware resources (such as processor speed and RAM capacity) to run at an acceptable level.

## Microsoft SQL Server

Like Oracle, Microsoft has been a key player in the database market—though Microsoft has had to play constant catch-up in the realm of the Internet and e-commerce. Although Microsoft is the acknowledged leader in desktop operating systems (thanks to its good sense of the marketplace and emphasis on fulfilling the needs of consumers), that advantage has not translated smoothly to the e-commerce market.

The characteristics of Microsoft SQL Server itself are consistent with its maker's traditional strengths, strategies, and limitations:

- ◆ **Fairly high stability:** MS SQL Server offers a degree of stability that is designed to be compatible with Windows OS. However, due to numerous security problems in that underlying operating system, some corporate customers are reluctant to invest in MS SQL Server as a solution for their database needs. In addition, having to reboot the host computer (Windows-style) to update the server or database software is completely unacceptable to potential customers who require maximum server uptime.
- ◆ **Ease of use:** MS SQL Server operates via Windows-style GUI, which can help ease the learning curve and add the appeal of familiarity for customers seeking hassle-free transactions.
- ◆ **Compliance with ANSI SQL-92:** MS SQL Server not only adheres to the entry-level standard, but also extends it (arguably no less than other relational databases).
- ◆ **Accessible support:** SQL Server is available directly from Microsoft, as well as from outside vendors. Microsoft provides a great deal of support information on their SQL Server Web site (and in the Microsoft Knowledge Base)—sometimes too much to find exactly what you are looking for.
- ◆ **High Total Cost of Ownership:** Like the operating systems it runs on, SQL Server is extremely resource-intensive of both CPU speed and RAM capacity. This aspect of the product reduces its appeal to many small businesses. Adding to the cost is the licensing—running into thousands of dollars in fees for SQL Server itself—not counting the operating system or other software and hardware to make the database work. However, thorough support and backing for Microsoft products make them worth the cost for some IT professionals (provided their companies can afford the outlay).
- ◆ **Proprietary vendor:** Since MS SQL Server is not cross-platform, some potential buyers are afraid to implement it lest they rely too much on one vendor. If the vendor suddenly decides to charge too much for a new feature or patch to the server, the company might have to pay more than it planned.

## PostgreSQL

A relative newcomer to the RDBMS field, PostgreSQL, (<http://www.postgresql.org>) has quickly gathered quite a following. PostgreSQL is a work in progress—what software isn't?—but is remarkably stable for such a young a product, as a list of its characteristics shows:

- ◆ **Compliance with SQL-92:** PostgreSQL follows most of the SQL-92 standard, and is available for many operating systems—including Windows 2000/NT (through the use of special tools) and MacOS X. An open-source product, PostgreSQL is bundled with many versions of the Linux operating system.
- ◆ **Low Total Cost of Ownership:** The PostgreSQL database-server software is available for minimal outlay—the software is free of charge—a potential advantage when compared to Oracle or Microsoft SQL Server.

- ♦ **Support:** Like MySQL, PostgreSQL offers commercial support through different independent consulting firms (though its actual documentation is relatively light).
- ♦ **Relatively limited adoption:** Although PostgreSQL supports some important functions of larger RDBMS products—in particular, transactions—it can be slower than some of its competitors (including Oracle) when keeping transactional data. Speed may be one reason that not many large-scale businesses have chosen PostgreSQL, despite some advantages over its more expensive database brethren.

## Informix

IBM's Informix series of database servers are poised to compete for large-scale database applications. Informix is a popular RDBMS that has the backing of IBM, as is reflected in its characteristics:

- ♦ **Diverse product line:** Informix offers a wide array of database servers depending on the needs of the application. From online transactions to parallel processing to high availability and more, Informix produces an optimized server for nearly all uses.
- ♦ **Cross-platform capabilities:** Informix runs on a variety of platforms and also offers a range of tools to assist with the development of both back-end and front-end database applications.
- ♦ **Potentially high Total Cost of Ownership:** Like its other commercial counterparts, the TCO for Informix can become prohibitive for small business.
- ♦ **Documentation and support:** Documentation for Informix is excellent—and much of it is available free from the IBM Web site. As you would expect, IBM provides solid backing of the product and support for Informix customers.

## Introducing MySQL

Where does MySQL fit in with all the other RDBMS products available? In many ways, MySQL offers a best-of-all worlds scenario: It runs on many platforms, enjoys a low TCO, and is stable. The documentation for MySQL is excellent. MySQL AB has a thorough Web site containing reference material, as well as a link to mailing-list archives. MySQL AB also offers high-quality support for their products, including a service that allows MySQL developers to log in to your server to correct problems and proactively help with optimization. MySQL is gaining RDBMS market share because it offers stability, support, and low cost.

## MySQL versions and features

MySQL is available for many different operating systems on a variety of computer architectures. MySQL currently has versions for Linux, Windows 95/98/NT/2000,

Solaris, FreeBSD, MacOS X, HP-UX, AIX, SCO, SCI Irix, Dec OSF, and BSDi. The Linux version runs on a range of architectures that includes Intel libc6, Alpha, IA64, SPARC, and S/390. The availability of cross-platform versions has enhanced the popularity of MySQL.

In addition to the standard MySQL database server, an enhanced version of MySQL is available—MySQL-Max. MySQL-Max includes the standard MySQL server, plus support for transaction-safe tables such as InnoDB or Berkeley DB (BDB). Table 1-3 shows the platforms and the transactional tables included with MySQL-Max.

**Table 1-3  
Transaction-Safe Tables in MySQL-Max Versions**

| <b>Platform of Version</b> | <b>Berkeley DB Available?</b> | <b>InnoDB Available?</b> |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| AIX 4.3                    | No                            | Yes                      |
| HP-UX 11.0                 | No                            | Yes                      |
| Linux (Alpha)              | No                            | Yes                      |
| Linux (Intel)              | Yes                           | Yes                      |
| Linux (IA64)               | No                            | Yes                      |
| Solaris (Intel)            | Yes                           | Yes                      |
| Solaris (SPARC)            | Yes                           | Yes                      |
| Windows 2000/NT            | Yes                           | Yes                      |

MySQL is available as either a binary or a source-code download; if you want to add a feature to MySQL for your application, you can download the source code and modify it to your liking.

**Tip**

Downloading the source code also allows you to include support for transaction-safe tables when you compile the code.

MySQL is covered under the GNU General Public License (GPL) and the GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL). To that end, most versions of MySQL require no license or purchase.

**Cross-Reference**

The GNU GPL and LGPL are included for reference in Appendixes B and C, respectively. Additional information on licensing is in Chapter 2.

MySQL also has many Application Programming Interfaces (APIs) to give the developer to access and shape the database via programs in various languages. APIs are available for C, C++, Tcl, Python, PHP, and Perl. Some of the most popular for programming Web interfaces are PHP and Perl. MyODBC makes MySQL ODBC-compliant as well.

## Standards and compatibility

MySQL follows nearly the entire SQL-92 standard. As is the case with other RDBMS products, MySQL extends the SQL standard in distinctive ways (though it can be run in an ANSI-only mode). Also, as you would expect, if you use some of the MySQL specific extensions to the standard, your database may no longer be portable to another RDBMS should you choose to change it at a later date.

You can help your MySQL system maintain compatibility with other databases by enclosing any non-standard (MySQL-specific) extensions like this:

```
/*! (statement) */
```

Other RDBMS systems should ignore the enclosed statement, which saves you from having to recode. MySQL simply ignores the brackets and processes the MySQL-specific statement as normal.

Also, if you add a version number after the exclamation mark, MySQL ignores the statement within the brackets *unless* it follows that version number. For example, consider the following line of code:

```
/*!32343 (statement) */
```

On versions older than 3.23.43, the statement within the brackets would be ignored.

Table 1-4 lists a substantial sample of the numerous MySQL extensions to the SQL-92 standard.



### Note

Not all extensions listed in Table 1-4 are unique to MySQL, but their use in the specific context mentioned in the table may be unique to MySQL (or an extension to the standard).

**Table 1-4**  
**MySQL Extensions to SQL-92**

| <b>Extension</b> | <b>Type/application</b> | <b>Description or context</b>  |
|------------------|-------------------------|--|
| %                | Operator                | Used as a substitute for the mod command.  |
| \                | Operator                | Escape character. Used where an operation would include a normally reserved character. |
| "                | Operator                | Used to enclose strings.   |
| andand           | Operator                | Logical AND.   |

*Continued*

Table 1-4 (*continued*)

| <b>Extension</b>     | <b>Type/application</b> | <b>Description or context</b>  |
|----------------------|-------------------------|--|
|                      | Operator                | Used as OR (not to concatenate).   |
| :=                   | Operator                | Used to set variables.   |
| asc                  | Statement extension     | Used with group by to indicate the order for results.                    |
| analyze table        | Statement               | Used to examine a table.   |
| auto_increment       | Field attribute         | Increments a value.  |
| binary               | Field attribute         | Controls case sensitivity.   |
| bit_and()            | Statement extension     | Used with group by for ANDing of bits.                                   |
| bit_count()          | Function                | Returns the number of bits.  |
| bit_or()             | Statement extension     | Used with group by for ORing of bits.                                    |
| blob                 | Type                    | Extensions to blob type.   |
| case                 | Function                | Flow-control option.   |
| change <column name> | Statement extension     | Used with alter table to modify a column.                                |
| check table          | Statement               | Used to examine a table.   |
| count(distinct)      | Statement extension     | Counts multiple items.   |
| create database      | Statement               | Creates a database.  |
| decode()             | Function                | String function.   |
| delayed              | Statement extension     | Used with INSERT or REPLACE. Causes statements to wait for a free table. |
| desc                 | Statement extension     | Used with group by to indicate the order for results.                    |
| drop <column name>   | Statement extension     | Used with alter table to delete a column from a table.                   |
| drop database        | Statement               | Removes a database.  |
| drop index           | Statement extension     | Used with alter table to remove an index from a table.                   |
| drop table           | Statement extension     | Drops multiple tables.   |
| elt()                | Function                | String function.   |
| encode()             | Function                | String function.   |
| encrypt()            | Function                | Creates acceptable values.   |
| explain select       | Statement               | Describes joined tables.   |
| flush (option)       | Statement               | Clears MySQL caches.   |

| <b>Extension</b> | <b>Type/application</b> | <b>Description or context</b>   |
|------------------|-------------------------|---|
| format()         | Function                | Changes the way a value is displayed.   |
| from_days()      | Function                | Returns the number of days.   |
| if()             | Function                | Control function.   |
| if exists        | Statement extension     | Used with drop table command to perform the action only if the table exists.  |
| if not exists    | Statement extension     | Used with create table that only performs action if table does not exist.   |
| ignore           | Statement extension     | Used with alter table to ignore repeat values.  |
| index            | Statement extension     | Used with create table to create an index.  |
| into outfile     | Statement extension     | Used with select to redirect output to a file.  |
| key              | Statement extension     | Used with create table to create a key column.  |
| last_insert_id() | Function                | Obtains number of last insert.  |
| like             | Operator                | Allowed on numeric values.  |
| limit            | Statement extension     | Used with delete to limit the number of rows deleted.   |
| load data infile | Statement               | Imports data.   |
| low_priority     | Statement extension     | Used with delete, insert, replace, and update to indicate that the operation should wait until there are no other threads working with the table. |
| md5()            | Function                | Used to create an md5 of a value.   |
| mediumint        | Field type              | Indicates a type of column.   |
| not regexp       | Operator                | Extends regular expressions.  |
| null             | Field attribute         | Indicates nothing.  |
| optimize table   | Statement               | Performs optimizations on a table to improve performance.   |
| password()       | Function                | Encrypts a string.  |
| period_add()     | Function                | Performs a date-related function.   |
| period_diff()    | Function                | Performs a date-related function.   |
| regexp           | Operator                | Extends regular expressions.  |

*Continued*

Table 1-4 (*continued*)

| <b>Extension</b> | <b>Type/application</b> | <b>Description or context</b>                                    |
|------------------|-------------------------|--|
| rename           | Statement extension     | Used with <code>alter table</code> to change the name.           |
| rename table     | Statement               | Changes table name.  |
| repair table     | Statement               | Performs repairs on a table.                                     |
| replace          | Statement               | Instead of deleting, inserts.                                    |
| set              | Field type              | Sets a value.  |
| set option       | Statement               | Sets an option.  |
| show             | Statement               | Lists objects.   |
| sql_small_result | Statement extension     | Used with <code>select</code> .                                  |
| std()            | Statement extension     | Used with <code>group by</code> to indicate the deviation.       |
| straight_join    | Statement extension     | Used with <code>select</code> to perform a join of tables.       |
| temporary        | Statement extension     | Used with <code>create table</code> to create a temporary table. |
| text             | Field type              | Extensions to text type.   |
| to_days()        | Function                | Performs a date-related function.                                |
| trim()           | Statement extension     | Allows substring trimming.                                       |
| unsigned         | Field attribute         | Indicates an attribute for a column.                             |
| weekday()        | Function                | Performs a date-related function.                                |
| zerofill         | Field attribute         | Pads a string.   |

## MySQL-specific properties

In addition to the extensions, field types, and functions listed in Table 1-4, MySQL has the following properties that are not part of the SQL-92 standard:

- ◆ When a database is created, MySQL creates a directory within the MySQL directory structure to hold database files.
- ◆ When the operating system has a case-sensitive file system (as does Linux), MySQL database and table names are case-sensitive.
- ◆ Objects such as the names of databases, tables, indexes, columns, or aliases may begin with — but not completely consist of — digits.

- ◆ To move, copy, or delete databases, you can use operating-system functions such as `copy (cp)` or `move (mv)`.
- ◆ To access objects in other databases, MySQL uses the following syntax:  
`databasename.tablename.`
- ◆ String comparisons are not case-sensitive. This behavior can be changed with the `binary` statement extension.
- ◆ MySQL enables you to use more than one `add`, `alter`, `drop`, or `change` statement with an `alter table` statement.
- ◆ Comparison operators may be used to the left of the `from` clause within a `SELECT` statement.
- ◆ MySQL supports the aliasing of many commands to assist users who are familiar with other SQL implementations.
- ◆ The functions `concat` and `char` can be used with more than one argument.
- ◆ When using a `group by` function, you don't need to name all selected columns.

MySQL does offer transactional tables; most other enterprise-level database functionality (such as views, cursors, foreign keys, and the like) is either in testing or planned for a near-future release of MySQL. Table 1-5 illustrates some of these features and their current developmental status with MySQL.

**Table 1-5**  
**MySQL Enterprise-Level Database Features**

| <b><i>Database feature</i></b> | <b><i>Supported in (extant or expected version)</i></b> |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Subselects                     | 4.1   |
| Foreign keys                   | Support (4.0)   |
| Views                          | 4.2   |
| Stored procedures              | 4.1   |
| Unions                         | Supported (4.0)   |
| Full join                      | Supported   |
| Triggers                       | 4.1   |
| Constraints                    | 4.1   |
| Cursors                        | 4.1 or later  |

## What MySQL Does Best

To assist the reader, I've listed some tasks that MySQL does especially well:

- ◆ **Web applications:** Web applications typically feature many reads and few writes. MySQL is fast and can meet the demands of Internet speed. In my experience, MySQL has proven time and again that it outperforms other RDBMS products in Web applications.
- ◆ **Enterprise-level applications:** MySQL offers support directly through the parent company, MySQL AB. MySQL's feature set includes just about everything that an enterprise-level application would need. Refer back to Table 1-4 for more details.
- ◆ **Open-source support:** MySQL AB is responsive to requests for features as well. MySQL is open-source; everyone is welcome to download and extend the code to meet his or her needs.
- ◆ **Low overhead:** MySQL runs comfortably for many applications on an Intel Pentium-class computer with 32 MB of RAM or less. I wouldn't *recommend* running an enterprise-level MySQL implementation on such a system, but consider the utter futility of trying to run a Web application on Internet Information Server with Microsoft SQL Server that runs under Windows 2000 on a Pentium-class computer with 32 MB of RAM.
- ◆ **Available large table size:** MySQL tables can grow large, though they do sometimes encounter file-size limitations of the host operating system. Some architectures, however, can accommodate up to 8 terabytes (TB) per table using MySQL.
- ◆ **Stability:** All software is in development. Some features in MySQL are newer than others, making them possibly less stable than others. Table 1-6 shows some of the features within MySQL and their stability level.

Table 1-6  
MySQL Stability

| Feature                 | Stability level                       |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Standard table types    | Stable                                |
| Transactional Tables    | Becoming more stable                  |
| Basic SQL Functionality | Stable                                |
| Client Software         | Stable                                |
| C API                   | Stable                                |
| Perl and PHP APIs       | Stable                                |
| Replication             | Stable, though always adding features |

MySQL compares with—and beats—some of its commercial counterparts in many areas. Particularly in performance, scalability, and stability, MySQL can perform as good or better than its competitors. Table 1-7 compares some popular features in MySQL with other RDBMS. As you can see, MySQL meets or beats the others with two transactional table types to choose from, many development languages, a low Total Cost of Ownership, and other features.

**Table 1-7**  
**MySQL Comparison to other RDBMS Products**

| Feature               | MySQL | Oracle | MS SQL Server | PostgreSQL |
|-----------------------|-------|--------|---------------|------------|
| Transactional         | Yes   | Yes    | Yes           | Yes        |
| Open-source           | Yes   | No     | No            | Yes        |
| TCO                   | Low   | High   | High          | Low        |
| Development languages | Many  | Many   | Fewer         | Many       |
| Enterprise user base  | Yes   | Yes    | Yes           | No         |
| Company support       | Yes   | Yes    | Yes           | No?        |
| Cross-platform        | Yes   | Yes    | No            | Yes        |

MySQL has recently added Graphical User Interface (GUI) tools for database management.

## What MySQL Can't Do – Quite Yet

MySQL is a stable and extensive RDBMS, but there are simply some things that MySQL cannot do or are unsupported at this time.

- ♦ **Foreign keys:** A *foreign key* is a value that relates to (and relies on) the Primary key in another table. This is a popular feature, used frequently in Oracle and other RDBMS products. MySQL started support for foreign keys in version 4.0 and will enhance that support in later versions. In addition, Unions are now supported in MySQL.
- ♦ **Views:** This popular method for obtaining data from the database, a planned feature for MySQL, may have been implemented by the time you read this.
- ♦ **R-Tree and other extensible index types:** Support for these powerful features will be included in a later version of MySQL.

**Note**

Inherited tables are not planned for any version of MySQL.

- ◆ **Subselects:** This type of statement (such as those using the IN clause) is not supported in MySQL (though it may be in the near future). For example, the following subselect is not valid MySQL syntax:

```
select * from table where id in (select id from table2);
```



Though subselects are not yet supported, you can many times get around the missing function by using joins or other commands. If I rewrite the earlier invalid statement as a valid statement in MySQL, it looks like this:

```
select table.* from table,table2 where  
table.id=table2.id;
```

In the event that rewriting a subselect doesn't work, I recommend using a front-end application written in Perl (or in your favorite language) to issue multiple statements to the database.

- ◆ **Stored procedures or triggers:** MySQL doesn't support either one yet, although the MySQL development team is working hard to bring triggers to MySQL for version 4.1.



MySQL current and planned features change rapidly. I recommend checking with MySQL's Web site for the status of any feature necessary for your application.

Should you absolutely need a function not available in MySQL, look into support contracts with MySQL AB. Often the developers are willing to prioritize a major feature—or even customize a version of MySQL just for you!

## Summary

Databases are widely used in many applications to track customer information, preferences, and history. Databases offer speed, accuracy, reporting, and thoroughness as advantages.

- ◆ There are many implementations of Relational Database Management Systems including Oracle, Microsoft SQL Server, PostgreSQL, and Informix.
- ◆ Each RDBMS offers advantages and disadvantages and shares many common traits.
- ◆ MySQL is an open source RDBMS that offers many advantages over other RDBMS with few disadvantages.
- ◆ MySQL supports the SQL-92 standard nearly completely and extends the standard with other features.



# Preparing for Installation

**C**hapter 1 illustrated some basics of a Relational Database Management System (RDBMS), as well as the standards that MySQL follows and extensions to those standards. Before you get your hands dirty installing MySQL, it would be wise to know which version you’re going to install. Sounds easy, right? Just download MySQL (or use the CD included with this book) and go. Unfortunately—and fortunately—it’s not really that easy.

MySQL includes many variants of the server, each optimized for a different scenario. You can also download the source code and customize MySQL further for your application.

This chapter presents some issues to think about before you install any version of MySQL. In addition, it lists and describes those versions so you can decide which one is right for you.

## Prerequisites for MySQL

You should answer some essential questions before installing MySQL. This section reviews some of those questions, along with common requirements for a MySQL installation.

### Licensing

Question: Will you be required to purchase a license for MySQL?

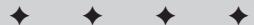
MySQL server is covered under the GNU General Public License (GPL). In general, you shouldn’t have to purchase a license from MySQL AB for most uses. This includes internal uses as well as commercial Web or other applications. MySQL AB asks that you purchase a support contract or some other level of support to assist them in continuing to develop MySQL.

### In This Chapter

◆ Checking system prerequisites for MySQL

◆ Obtaining MySQL

◆ Selecting a MySQL version



However, if you should download the source code and make a new application using all or part of the MySQL code base—and you want to market that application or make it proprietary—you would need a commercial license to prevent your code from becoming *GPL'd* (that is, automatically subject to the terms of the GNU General Public License). MySQL AB offers a commercial license that allows you to use all or part of the MySQL code base within your application.

Additionally, if you distribute your own version of MySQL, you must include the source code; if you have an application that works only with MySQL and you choose to distribute MySQL with that application, you would need to purchase a commercial license. Other situations also call for a license, and licensing requirements frequently change. I recommend checking with MySQL's Web site, <http://www.mysql.com/>, for more information.

License fees are very reasonable for MySQL. At the time of writing, a MySQL server license is roughly \$200.00, depending on the currency-conversion rate (from Euros to American dollars).

 **Note**

Some older versions of MySQL were covered under a stricter license. This is true for distribution of MySQL with programs or derivations based on the MySQL code for those older versions. In the event that you have an older version of MySQL, make sure you obtain the MySQL Free Public License.

## Support

Question: Will you require support directly from MySQL AB for your installation?

MySQL AB offers tiered support, with tiered pricing to match. Because prices change, I won't include costs here. However, I think it would be useful to look at the different levels of support available, though there may be more or fewer options available when you read this.

- ◆ **E-mail support:** For a flat fee per year, you can obtain support via e-mail for MySQL. Much of the support can be obtained on MySQL mailing lists, but this option does give you the ability to report problems and ask questions via a special support e-mail address.
- ◆ **Priority e-mail support:** A level above the basic e-mail support, this option gives your e-mail priority over others. Additionally, requests for features and additions to MySQL are given more consideration.
- ◆ **Login support:** This option gives you the benefits of the extended e-mail support along with the ability to have a MySQL developer attempt to actually connect to your database server to troubleshoot and fix problems. With Login support, your suggestions are given a high level of consideration and many can even be implemented quickly. You can also contact MySQL developers via telephone. MySQL developers will also give you, when possible, suggestions on improving your database implementation and optimization suggestions as well.

- ◆ **Priority login support:** This option gives you all the benefits of the lower-tiered levels as well as the ability to have your own extensions added to MySQL and custom binary editions of MySQL created for you. In addition, with some other costs, a MySQL developer will visit your site to consult and offer suggestions for improvements.
- ◆ **Telephone support:** Like the others, this option includes the lower-tiered levels and also gives you access to a Web site that lists current on-call phone numbers for MySQL developers (in the event of an emergency).

 **Note**

If you are using transactional table types such as BDB or InnoDB, an additional fee is charged, based on the level of support you purchase.

## Operating system and architecture

Question: Which one of the many platforms do you run MySQL on?

MySQL runs on different platforms. From AIX to Windows, and many points in between, MySQL is truly cross platform. Table 2-1 shows the operating systems and platforms that MySQL is available for. The architecture and platform you choose could determine how large database objects such as tables can be.

**Table 2-1**  
**MySQL Operating Systems and Architecture**

| <i>OS/Architecture Support</i> | <i>Available?</i> |
|--------------------------------|-------------------|
| AIX 4.x                        | Yes               |
| Amiga                          | Yes               |
| BeOS                           | Soon              |
| BSDi 2.x-4.x                   | Yes               |
| DEC UNIX 4.x                   | Yes               |
| FreeBSD 2.x-4.x                | Yes               |
| HP-UX 10.20-11.x               | Yes               |
| Linux (Kernel 2.0 or later)    | Yes               |
| MacOS X                        | Yes               |
| NetBSD 1.3-1.4 (Intel)         | Yes               |
| NetBSD 1.3 (Alpha)             | Yes               |
| OpenBSD                        | Yes               |
| OS/2 Warp                      | Yes               |

*Continued*

**Table 2-1 (continued)**

| <b>OS/Architecture Support</b> | <b>Available?</b> |
|--------------------------------|-------------------|
| SCO OpenServer                 | Yes               |
| SCO Unixware 7.0.1             | Yes               |
| SGI Irix 6.x                   | Yes               |
| Solaris 2.5 or higher          | Yes               |
| SunOS 4.x                      | Yes               |
| Tru64 UNIX                     | Yes               |
| Windows 95, 98, NT, 2000       | Yes               |

**Note**

Some versions of MySQL for some operating systems require additional tools or components. Please consult MySQL's Web site for more information.

MySQL is also more widely supported on certain platforms. MySQL in Linux is a popular application and you have many avenues to pursue for assistance should you need it. MySQL on other operating systems may not be so common and thus it might be more difficult to obtain support.

MySQL runs best on x86 Linux platforms simply because that has historically been where the most development and testing has been done. Other UNIX-variant operating systems like Solaris or FreeBSD also have gone through extensive testing. This is not to say that MySQL is unstable on any other platform.

Aside from the operating system itself, another essential choice to make (assuming that cost is no obstacle) is whether to use more than one processor. MySQL can take advantage of Symmetric Multi-Processing (SMP)—a capability that dramatically increases processing speed by using multiple processors—but the version you download may or may not have support for SMP. Check before you install.

## Development

Question: What application or applications do you use to develop a MySQL database?

MySQL includes or has available for download many Application Programming Interfaces (APIs). For our purposes, an API defines how a program connects to the

database. Once connected, the API defines the operations that can be performed. When you click a search tool at an online store, many times you are using an API on the backend and do not even know it. The API is used in a program, such as a PHP script, to connect to the database and run your search.

Knowing which APIs you'll need could help you determine which platform to use with MySQL. The following APIs are available for MySQL:

- ◆ C
- ◆ C++
- ◆ Eiffel
- ◆ JDBC/Java
- ◆ ODBC
- ◆ Perl
- ◆ PHP
- ◆ Python
- ◆ Tcl

The C API has been developed the most. This is because MySQL is written in C and the developers themselves frequently use the C API. For Web applications and most database-connectivity applications, you use another API (such as Perl, PHP, or ODBC).

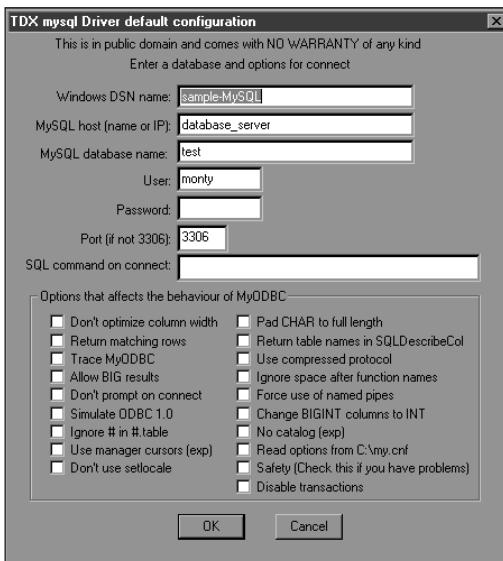


#### Cross-Reference

The Perl, PHP, and ODBC APIs are discussed in Part IV of this book.

Perl is usually included with Linux, so if you expect to be using MySQL and Perl, you should give serious consideration to Linux as your platform. Perl also runs on other platforms as well, including Windows, through the use of additional tools.

For ODBC support to connect MySQL to another application, you will probably want to use MySQL in Windows. MySQL offers the MyODBC API to connect a Windows client to MySQL. MyODBC will also work under UNIX variants with the use of an additional tool. Figure 2-1 shows how an ODBC connection looks when you set it up by using MyODBC in Windows.



**Figure 2-1:** The MyODBC connector includes many options (most covered in a later chapter).

## Existing data

Question: Will you be importing data from another database?

Though not really a prerequisite to installing MySQL, determining what, if any, data will be imported from other applications or databases is useful to take into account. You can then export that data into a format MySQL can import—or you can download a tool to assist with the export-and-import process.

MySQL supports loading data from delimited text files—for example, those containing comma-separated values (CSV)—and many programs can export data into delimited values, making it easy to load data into MySQL. If you are migrating between versions of MySQL, you have a utility called `mysqldump` that can quickly dump all the contents of an entire database (or even multiple databases) and then load that information back into MySQL—where it automatically creates the table structure as well! Figure 2-2 shows sample output from a `mysqldump` operation.

On the MySQL Web site you have tools for converting from other applications and databases, though MySQL AB does not directly support most of those tools. In fact, most were not written by the main MySQL development team, but by other developers around the world. Such is the beauty of Open Source! Of course, any software—even (and sometimes especially) that produced by the biggest companies—can have bugs, and the MySQL tools are no exception. You should always have extra copies of your data on hand in case something goes wrong (yet another reason to perform regular backups).

```

# Table structure for table 'product'
#
CREATE TABLE product (
    product_id int(11) NOT NULL auto_increment,
    name varchar(75) default NULL,
    quantity int(11) default NULL,
    price decimal(9,2) default NULL,
    prod_manu_id int(11) default NULL,
    PRIMARY KEY (product_id)
) TYPE=MyISAM;

# Dumping data for table 'product'
#
INSERT INTO product VALUES (1,'8 inch Mirror Ball',60,14.95,NULL);
INSERT INTO product VALUES (2,'AM100 4 port Mixer',12,48.95,NULL);
INSERT INTO product VALUES (3,'FA1201 1200 watt Amplifier',4,149.95,NULL);

inventory.sql line 35/57 (END)

```

**Figure 2-2:** The mysqldump utility makes migrating or upgrading MySQL easy.

Table 2-2 shows some popular conversion tools.



Some conversion and import tools are examined in Chapter 10.

**Table 2-2  
Conversion Tools for MySQL**

| <i>Original program</i> | <i>Tool name</i> | <i>Description of conversion</i>              |
|-------------------------|------------------|---|
| Microsoft Access        | Access to MySQL  | From Access to MySQL                          |
|                         | ExportSQL        | Improved tool that replaces "Access to MySQL" |
|                         | MyAccess         | Work with MySQL within Access                 |
| Microsoft Excel         | excel2mysql      | From Excel to MySQL                           |
| FoxPro                  | dbf2mysql        | From .dbf files to MySQL                      |
| mSQL                    | msql2mysql       | From mSQL to MySQL                            |
| Oracle                  | oracledump       | From Oracle to MySQL                          |
| Microsoft SQL Server    | mssql2mysql      | From SQL Server to MySQL                      |



Some tools have similar names, may change names, be unavailable, broken, or otherwise problematic. Check the MySQL Web site for the latest availability.

If you are porting from Oracle to MySQL and have applications currently in Oracle, chances are you'll have to rewrite some of those applications. Although MySQL strives to provide the same functionality as Oracle and at least provide the same syntax, not all queries will work the same between the two RDBMS. A line-by-line

examination of application code is the only way to ensure that the rollout of MySQL will go smoothly.

If you want to get data *out* of MySQL, the process is much easier. MySQL exports into common file types that many other RDBMS and applications can recognize. If Microsoft Access is the destination, you have a companion program to the ExportSQL program that allows data to be imported into Access through ODBC.



Exporting from MySQL is covered in Chapter 10.

## Default language and character set

Question: What default language and character set should I choose for my installation of MySQL?

The default language and character set you choose for the MySQL server will determine things like sorting and grouping order for select statements, error message language, and allowable characters. The MySQL binary versions come precompiled with the Latin1 character set by default. This character set is acceptable for sorting and grouping in the United States and Western Europe.

If you require additional character sets, compile MySQL from source code with the `--with-charset` or `--with-extra-Charsets` option. In addition, you'll have to start the server with a command-line option of `--default-character-set`.

MySQL can print error messages in many different languages. To make MySQL do so, use the `--language=<language>` syntax when you start the server.



By default, language names are displayed in lowercase and located in the `<mysql dir>/SHARE/` directory.

Twenty languages are available to MySQL. In alphabetical order, they are Czech, Danish, Dutch, English (default), Estonian, French, German, Greek, Hungarian, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Romanian, Russian, Slovak, Spanish, and Swedish.



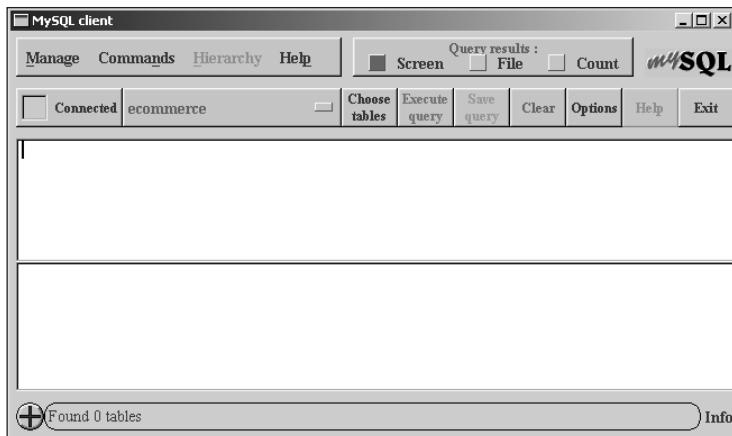
With some languages (especially those using non-Western alphabets), you have to load a different default character set.

## Management

Question: How do you manage the server and how do clients connect to the database?

Connection and management are two aspects of the same question. MySQL offers a few different methods for management of the server. The most common is via the MySQL Command-Line Interface (CLI). Another common method for management is

through a tool called PHPMyAdmin that runs via a Web interface with PHP. MySQL AB also has a Graphical User Interface (GUI) management and client interface called MySQLGUI, see Figure 2-3.



**Figure 2-3:** MySQLGUI is a new application for working with MySQL.

One of the simplest ways to manage and work with MySQL is via the MySQL CLI. Using the MySQL CLI or the `mysql` command from the command line, you can interact with the server to create and alter tables, run queries, diagnose the server, and much more. See Figure 2-4 for an example of the MySQL CLI in action.

A screenshot of a terminal window titled "MySQL". The window shows the MySQL monitor. The text in the window reads:

```
slackware:~$ mysql -u sureshring -p ecommerce
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor.  Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 9 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.
mysql> ■
```

The window has a standard window frame with minimize, maximize, and close buttons.

**Figure 2-4:** The MySQL CLI is the traditional method for working with MySQL.

If you are having users connect to the MySQL server via the CLI or other tools, you will have to install those tools on the client computers. In addition, you must grant access for those users so they can connect and work with the MySQL server.

## Where to Obtain MySQL

Question: Where can I get MySQL, and do particular sources offer advantages?

By far the most popular method for obtaining a copy of MySQL is via the MySQL AB Web site at <http://www.mysql.com/>. From that site, you can get the version of MySQL that you need for your particular installation, as well as obtain other tools related to MySQL. You have geographically dispersed Mirror sites listed so that you can download from the nearest site.

Another way to obtain MySQL is on CD-ROM with various Linux releases. Also, some Linux versions, notably Debian Linux, allow you to download MySQL via their great `apt-get` or `dselect` package tools.

In addition, a company called NuSphere has its own version of MySQL available. That release, obtainable directly from NuSphere, and is covered in more depth in Chapter 20.

## Overview of MySQL Versions

Question: Which version of MySQL is appropriate for my database?

Aside from the operating system and platform for MySQL, different versions available for download. Choosing the right version can make the difference between a successful and an unsuccessful installation.

### MySQL numbering scheme

MySQL uses a three-digit numbering scheme for versions, for example, 4.00.00. The first number indicates the *file format* used. Therefore, beware if you are attempting to upgrade from a 3.xx.xx version to a 4.xx.xx version; the file format is different. The second number is known as the *release level*. MySQL usually has two different release-level numbers available at any one time, a *stable* version and a *development* version. If you use a development branch, it may be unstable. The final number is the actual release number and contains bug fixes and usually some improvements over the previous release.

### Binary versions of MySQL

In general, it's good practice to download and install the binary version of MySQL. This creates a standard installation that's easier to support in the long run.

For Linux, a binary version of MySQL is available and it works on most versions of the operating system. I hesitate to say that MySQL works on *all* versions of Linux; too many idiosyncratic versions of Linux exist for that to be likely. I feel comfortable saying that the binary versions work on *most* versions of Linux, especially the popular ones.

Linux binary versions come compressed, and are meant to be uncompressed right into the folder where they are to be installed.

If you are working with a version of Linux that supports the Red Hat Package Manager (RPM) format, then you can use a copy of MySQL with the .rpm extension. The RPM versions should work on Linux OSs that support RPM and glibc. Table 2-3 covers the different RPM-based versions of MySQL.

**Table 2-3**  
**MySQL RPM Binary Versions**

| <b>Version name</b>           | <b>Description</b>  |
|-------------------------------|---|
| mysql-version.i386.rpm        | The main MySQL server installation.   |
| mysql-client-version.i386.rpm | The MySQL client only. Used to connect to a MySQL server located on another machine.                    |
| mysql-bench-version.i386.rpm  | A suite of testing and benchmarking tools for MySQL.  |
| mysql-devel-version.i386.rpm  | The libraries and include files. This is needed if you want to use APIs such as Perl or PHP with MySQL. |
| mysql-shared.i386.rpm         | Client libraries.   |
| mysql-src-version.i386.rpm    | Source code rpm that contains everything listed above.  |

You can install individual packages that have only the portions of MySQL needed for your work. If you need only the MySQL CLI client, for example, you don't have to install a full server on your computer.



Installation of MySQL in Linux is covered in Chapter 3.

Aside from the RPM binary versions of MySQL, different binary packages available for the different platforms and operating systems. (Refer to Table 2-1 for a list of supported platforms and operating systems.) For the most part, you have binary packages already available.

## Source-code versions of MySQL

If you want to compile MySQL for other platforms (such as Alpha or SPARC), or if no binary package is available for your operating system, you can download the source code for MySQL. The source code is available in an RPM or in tar/gzip format (for UNIX variants) or zipped source code for Windows. Table 2-4 shows the different source-code versions of MySQL.

**Table 2-4  
MySQL Source Versions**

| <b>Version name</b>        | <b>Description</b>   |
|----------------------------|--|
| mysql-version.tar.gz       | General UNIX-variant source code to compile MySQL.                           |
| mysql-src-version.i386.rpm | Source-code RPM that contains everything listed in this section of the book. |
| mysql-version-win-src.zip  | Source code to compile under Windows.  |

Downloading a source-code version will allow you to customize the MySQL server installation much more than you can with a binary version. You can tailor the server software to fit your needs and even edit and change the source code itself. Options like debugging, RAID (Redundant Array of Inexpensive Disks), or including just one of the two transactional table types can be accomplished by compiling the source code. In addition, if you ever have to rewrite a portion of the code or patch a portion of the code, having the source code is the only option.



Chapter 3 covers installation from source code and from binary packages.

## MySQL for Windows

MySQL with Windows in binary version runs on Windows 95, 98, Me, NT, and 2000. The binary version includes the regular MySQL server as well as the MySQL-MAX server that includes transactional tables. If your work requires the server to support transactional tables, the command line that starts MySQL is different. Therefore, if you don't need transactional-table support, I recommend staying with the normal MySQL server; it uses fewer resources. Table 2-5 shows the MySQL executables for Windows.

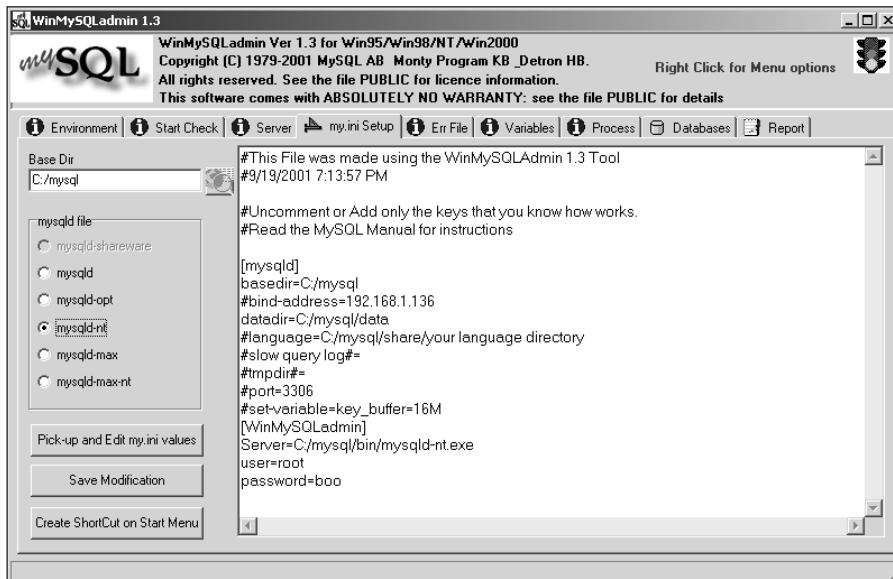


Not all executables will run on Windows 9x, Me, or XP.

**Table 2-5**  
**MySQL Windows Executables**

| Name          | Description  |
|---------------|--|
| mysqld-nt     | A binary installation specifically for NT/2000. Includes support for named pipes.  |
| mysqld-opt    | An optimized binary version with no transactional table support.   |
| mysqld        | Binary version that includes debugging, memory allocation, transactional table types, and symbolic links.                          |
| mysqld-max    | Binary version that includes transactional tables and symbolic links. Note that no named pipe support is included in this version. |
| mysqld-max-nt | This binary version also includes support for named pipes as well as everything included in the mysqld-max version.                |

By default, when you install MySQL on Windows 2000, the mysql-nt version will start. If you want to choose a different version, you can set the appropriate value in the `my.ini` file (which resides in the `WINNT` directory). Alternatively, you have a GUI admin tool called WinMySQLAdmin that you can use to change the server executable easily. Figure 2-5 shows WinMySQLAdmin in action.



**Figure 2-5:** WinMySQLAdmin allows changing of the MySQL server executable as well as many other options.



WinMySQLAdmin is covered in greater detail in Chapter 3.

You have many options, even within a particular operating system, for choosing the version of MySQL you'd like to run. Know what you need before you actually install MySQL—it saves a lot of time and headaches in the future.

## MySQL for Mac OS X

MySQL AB also produces a version of the server for Mac OS X. MySQL is included with Mac OS X Server or can be downloaded through the Web site.

MySQL for Mac is available as source code only. At this time no binary versions of MySQL are available for Mac OS X.



Chapter 5 describes installation of MySQL on a Mac OS X system.

## Summary

You have several questions to consider when installing MySQL including licensing, support, and operating system.

- ◆ MySQL enables you to use many character sets and default languages.
- ◆ MySQL can import many different varieties of existing data; third-party tools are also available to assist with data import.
- ◆ MySQL has tools such as the command-line interface and MySQLGUI to manage and work with your data and the database server.
- ◆ MySQL has versions available for many operating systems and architectures, the most popular of which are Linux and Windows.



# Linux Installation

**M**any people (including myself) skip the first couple of chapters in a book to get to the heart of the subject matter. If you're one of those people, welcome! I encourage you to review the exquisite prose contained in the first two chapters. Not only did I work hard to bring these chapters to you, they actually contain information you might find useful. At the very least, skim the contents of Chapter 2; it contains information that will help you decide which version of MySQL you should install for your particular needs.

For those of you who have been with me throughout, thank you. I'll now get into some hands-on installation tasks. This chapter concentrates solely on the Linux operating system. If you will be installing MySQL on another operating system, this chapter probably isn't for you.

## Common Binary, RPM, and Source MySQL Installation Tasks

Regardless of the method you choose for installation (or the version of Linux you have), some tasks or options are common to all of them. Rather than cover those same options each time, I'll cover them here.

### MySQL server startup and shutdown

If you are running a System V-based Linux version such as Red Hat and you want the MySQL server to start whenever the server is rebooted, you should copy the file `/usr/local/mysql/support-files/mysql.server` to the `/etc/rc.d/init.d` directory on your server. Then make the symbolic links to the `rc.d` directories. Alternatively, you can use the `chkconfig` command to add the `mysql.server` script automatically, as shown in Figure 3-1.

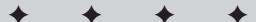
### In This Chapter

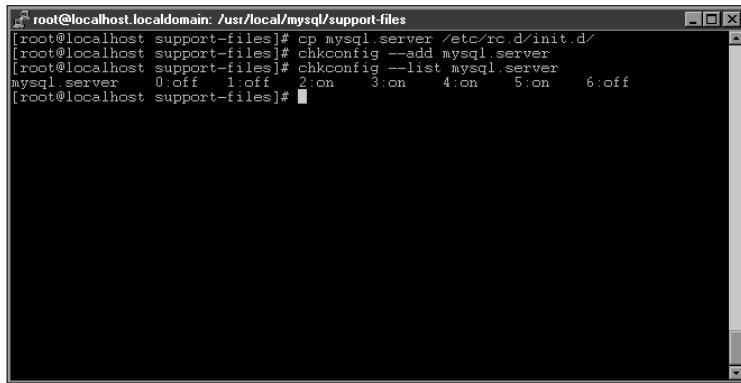
Listing tasks that binary, RPM, and source-code installation have in common

Installing MySQL (binary)

Installing MySQL (RPM)

Installing MySQL (source)

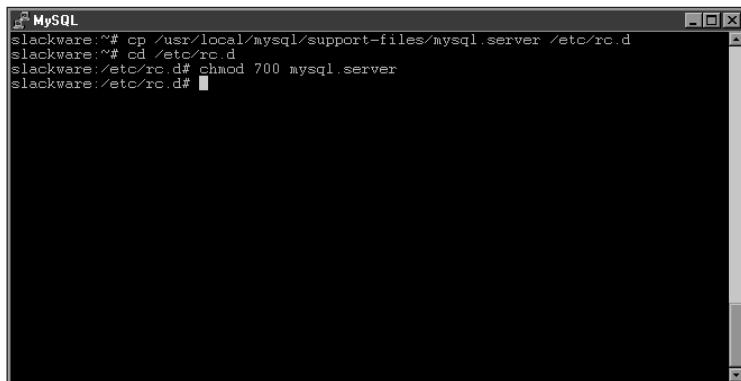




```
[root@localhost support-files]# cp mysql.server /etc/rc.d/init.d/
[root@localhost support-files]# chkconfig --add mysql.server
[root@localhost support-files]# chkconfig --list mysql.server
mysql.server 0:off 1:off 2:on 3:on 4:on 5:on 6:off
[root@localhost support-files]#
```

**Figure 3-1:** The `chkconfig` command can be used to configure the `mysql.server` script for automatic startup and shutdown of the MySQL server.

If you are running a BSD-style Linux version such as Slackware, you can still use the `mysql.server` script. However, you'll need to change the permissions on the file to make it executable—and then add it to the `rc.local` script to start the server. Figures 3-2 and 3-3 show the commands and editing of the `/etc/rc.d/rc.local` script on a Slackware Linux system.

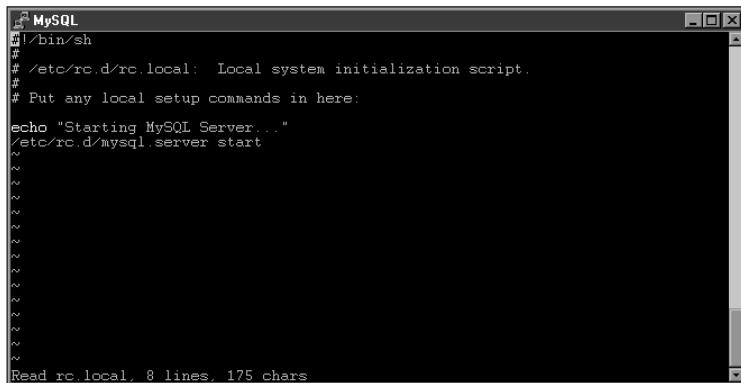


```
slackware:~# cp /usr/local/mysql/support-files/mysql.server /etc/rc.d
slackware:~# cd /etc/rc.d
slackware:/etc/rc.d# chmod 700 mysql.server
slackware:/etc/rc.d#
```

**Figure 3-2:** Copy the file to the `/etc/rc.d` directory and be sure to make the file executable.

Configuring the MySQL database to stop automatically when the server is rebooted or halted is probably more important than making the database start automatically. If the MySQL database is not shut down properly, you may find broken tables or even loss of data. On SysV systems such as Red Hat and Mandrake, you needn't worry about this step if you've used `chkconfig` to configure the `mysql.server`

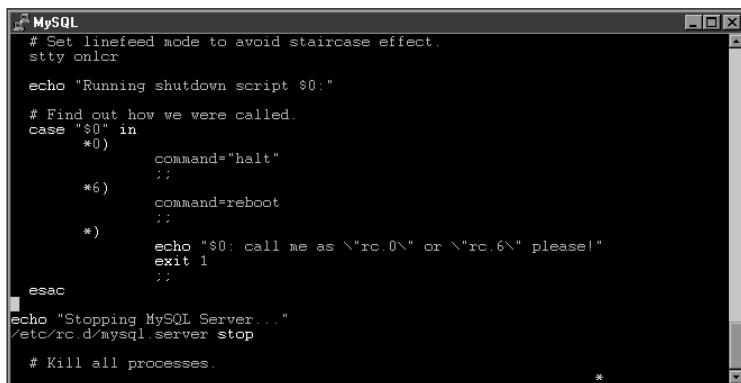
script. The following configuration steps are necessary for BSD-style systems. Sometimes these configuration steps are not necessary, as the MySQL server will shut down when given a kill command by the system. However, I believe data integrity is too important to leave to chance.



```
MySQL
/bin/sh
# /etc/rc.d/rc.local: Local system initialization script.
# Put any local setup commands in here:
echo "Starting MySQL Server..."
/etc/rc.d/mysql.server start
~
~
~
~
~
~
~
~
~
~
~
~
~
~
~
~
~
~
Read rc.local, 8 lines, 175 chars
```

**Figure 3-3:** Edit the /etc/rc.d/rc.local file to add the command /etc/rc.d/mysql.server start.

If you haven't already copied the mysql.server script to /etc/rc.d and made the file executable, now is the time to do so. On Slackware, simply edit the /etc/rc.d/rc.6 file and add /etc/rc.d/mysql.server stop to the file near—but not at—the top of the file, as shown in Figure 3-4.



```
MySQL
# Set linefeed mode to avoid staircase effect.
stty onlcr
echo "Running shutdown script $0."
# Find out how we were called.
case "$0" in
    *0)
        command="halt"
        ;;
    *6)
        command=reboot
        ;;
    *)
        echo "$0: call me as \"rc.0\" or \"rc.6\" please!"
        exit 1
        ;;
esac
echo "Stopping MySQL Server..."
/etc/rc.d/mysql.server stop
# Kill all processes.
```

**Figure 3-4:** Add the mysql.server stop command to your shutdown script.

 Tip

Should you need to stop the MySQL server manually, you can do so with the mysqladmin shutdown command. For example, the following command would stop the MySQL server on the local machine:

```
mysqladmin -p shutdown
```

Notice the use of the `-p` switch that causes the command to prompt for a password.

 Cross-Reference

Command-line switches are frequent topics throughout the book, most notably Chapters 6 and 10 and Appendix A.

## Common command-line options for mysqld

The main server executable file for MySQL is called `mysqld`. Here are some important points to keep in mind when you select its command-line options::

- ◆ Older versions often run `mysqld` from a *wrapper script* such as `mysqld_safe` or `safe_mysqld`.



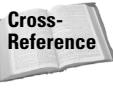
Options that you can set or call when running the wrapper script can change the behavior of the server.

- ◆ You can set many options from inside the `my.cnf` file (located in the `/etc` directory or sometimes in the `/etc/mysql/` directory).



As a rule of thumb, use the `my.cnf` file for changing the command-line behavior of MySQL. If you edit the `mysql.server` file, your changes will be lost if the `mysql.server` script is overwritten by future upgrades of the MySQL software.

The `my.cnf` file is a powerful way to control many aspects of the MySQL software. For Linux installations, the `my.cnf` file is usually located inside the `support-files` directory with the filename `my-<size>.cnf`, where `<size>` indicates the estimated resource amounts of your MySQL server host machine.



Chapter 11 examines various configurations that use the `my.cnf` configuration file.

## Setting options in the my.cnf file

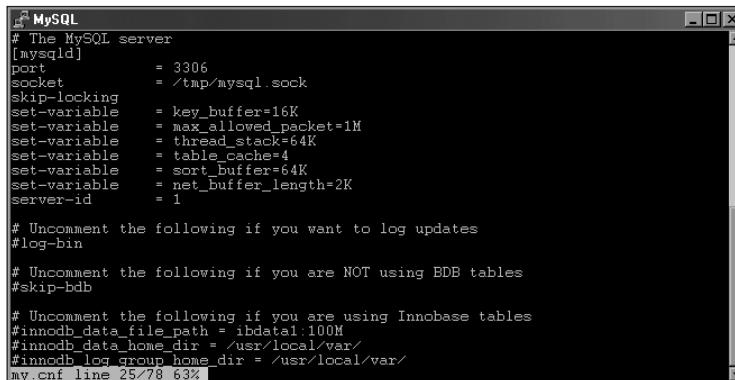
Within the `my.cnf` file are sections that affect the behavior of the components that make up a MySQL installation. These sections include both the client and server, and they use the following additional commands:

```
mysql  
mysqladmin
```

```
mysqld  
mysql_safe  
mysql.server  
mysqldump  
myisamchk  
mysqlimport  
mysqlshow  
mysqlcheck  
myisampack
```

## Using the [mysqld] section

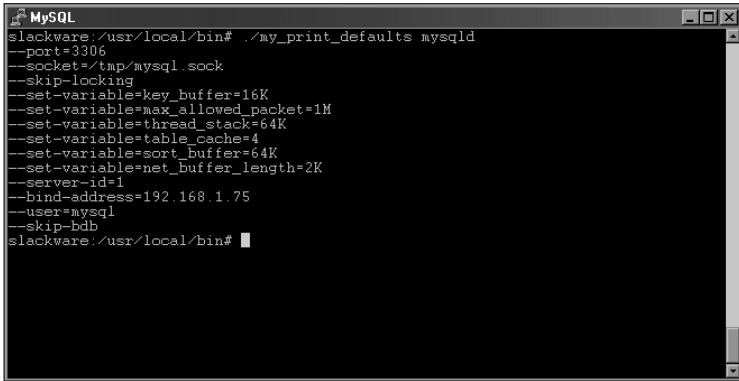
Each section in the `my.cnf` file starts with the bracketed name of the command or area that identifies the section. In Figure 3-5, for example, you can see some options listed under the word `[mysqld]`.



```
# The MySQL server  
[mysqld]  
port          = 3306  
socket        = /tmp/mysql.sock  
skip-locking  
set-variable = key_buffer=16K  
set-variable = max_allowed_packet=1M  
set-variable = thread_stack=64K  
set-variable = table_cache=4  
set-variable = sort_buffer=64K  
set-variable = net_buffer_length=2K  
server-id    = 1  
  
# Uncomment the following if you want to log updates  
#log-bin  
  
# Uncomment the following if you are NOT using BDB tables  
#skip-bdb  
  
# Uncomment the following if you are using InnoDB tables  
#innodb_data_file_path = ibdata1:100M  
#innodb_data_home_dir = /usr/local/var/  
#innodb_log_group_home_dir = /usr/local/var/  
my.cnf line 25/78 63%
```

**Figure 3-5:** The `my.cnf` file contains many options that can affect the behavior of the MySQL server and client.

If your server is set to run as root upon startup, you should add `user = mysql` to the `[mysqld]` section of `my.cnf` and restart the server. To find out what options MySQL will use for startup of the server, use the program `my_print_defaults` contained in the 'bin' directory of your MySQL installation. Figure 3-6 shows the output for `my_print_defaults` on a sample server; your options may differ slightly.

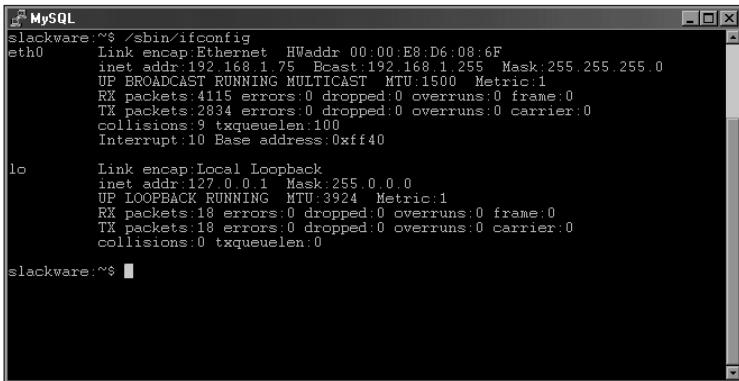


```
MySQL
slackware:/usr/local/bin# ./my_print_defaults mysqld
--port=3306
--socket=/tmp/mysql.sock
--skip-locking
--set-variable=key_buffer=16K
--set-variable=max_allowed_packet=1M
--set-variable=thread_stack=64K
--set-variable=table_cache=4
--set-variable=sort_buffer=64K
--set-variable=net_buffer_length=2K
--server-id=1
--bind-address=192.168.1.75
--user=mysql
--skip-bdb
slackware:/usr/local/bin#
```

**Figure 3-6:** The `my_print_defaults` script shows the default options that MySQL uses for many components.

Some non-default options for the `[mysqld]` section that you may want to consider are `user = mysql` and `bind-address`, which work as follows:

- ◆ The `user = mysql` option causes the server to run as a non-privileged user, which helps enhance security.
- ◆ The `bind-address` may be useful if you have a *multi-homed* host (more than one IP address) and only want to listen for connections on a certain IP address. In Figure 3-7, the address that is bound is the Ethernet IP address for that machine, 192.168.1.75.

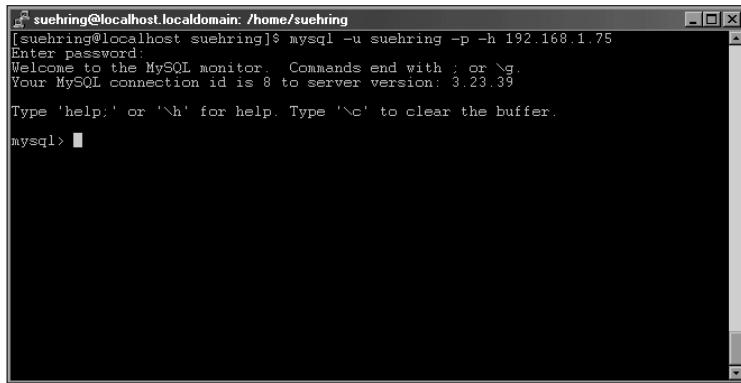


```
MySQL
slackware:~$ /sbin/ifconfig
eth0      Link encap:Ethernet HWaddr 00:00:E8:D6:08:6F
          inet addr:192.168.1.75 Bcast:192.168.1.255 Mask:255.255.255.0
          UP BROADCAST RUNNING MULTICAST MTU:1500 Metric:1
          RX packets:4115 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
          TX packets:2834 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
          collisions:9 txqueuelen:100
          Interrupt:10 Base address:0xffff40

lo       Link encap:Local Loopback
          inet addr:127.0.0.1 Mask:255.0.0.0
          UP LOOPBACK RUNNING MTU:3924 Metric:1
          RX packets:18 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
          TX packets:18 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
          collisions:0 txqueuelen:0
slackware:~$
```

**Figure 3-7:** Using `ifconfig` to determine the Ethernet address of the server

Thus, given the correct privileges, I can establish a connection between another machine on the network and the host called `-h <ip or hostname>`, as shown in Figure 3-8.



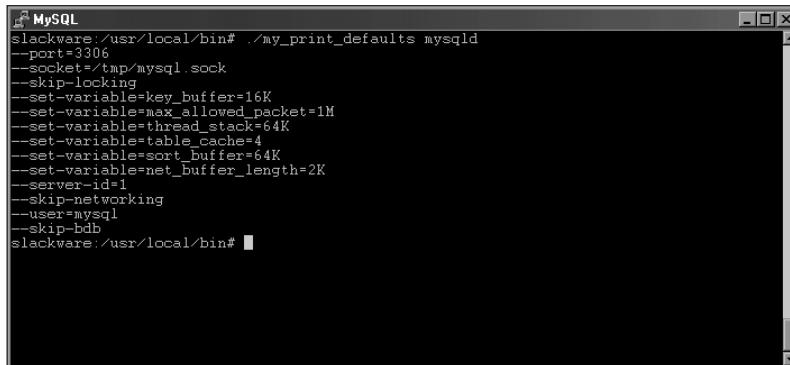
**Figure 3-8:** Connecting from another machine is possible with the MySQL client.

Using the `mysqladmin processlist` command, I can see the current connection to the database from the remote client, as shown in Figure 3-9.

| MySQL                                  |          |                      |           |         |      |       |                  |
|--|----------|----------------------|-----------|---------|------|-------|------------------|
| slackware:~# mysqladmin -p processlist |          |                      |           |         |      |       |                  |
| Enter password:                        |          |                      |           |         |      |       |                  |
| Id                                     | User     | Host                 | db        | Command | Time | State | Info             |
| 1                                      | suehring | testbox.braingia.com | ecommerce | Sleep   | 31   |       |                  |
| 5                                      | root     | localhost            |           | Query   | 0    |       | show processlist |

**Figure 3-9:** Using `mysqladmin processlist`, the connection from the other machine, "testbox.braingia.com," is shown.

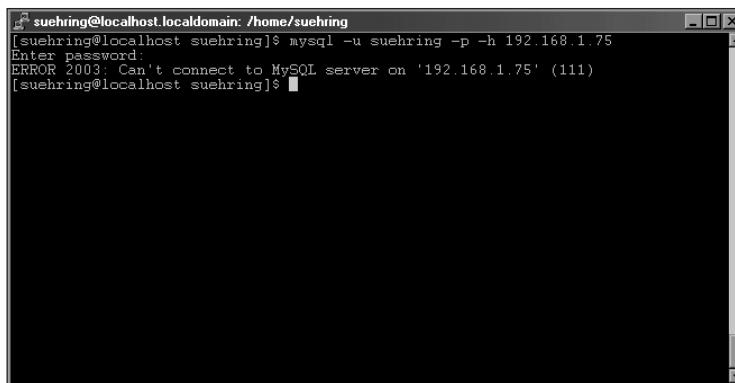
However, if I only needed to connect to the MySQL server from the server itself, I could remove the `bind-address` completely and use the `skip-networking` option. With the `skip-networking` option MySQL uses Unix sockets and no longer listens for connections via TCP/IP. I've edited `my.cnf` and restarted the server. The output of `my_print_defaults` is now shown in Figure 3-10. Notice that the `bind-address` option has been replaced with the `skip-networking` option.



```
MySQL
slackware:/usr/local/bin# ./my_print_defaults mysqld
--port=3306
--socket=/tmp/mysql.sock
--skip-locking
--set-variable=key_buffer=16K
--set-variable=max_allowed_packet=1M
--set-variable=thread_stack=64K
--set-variable=table_cache=4
--set-variable=sort_buffer=64K
--set-variable=net_buffer_length=2K
--server-id=1
--skip-networking
--user=mysql
--skip-bdb
slackware:/usr/local/bin#
```

**Figure 3-10:** Using bind-address in my.cnf to bind only the loopback address for security purposes

Now when I attempt to connect from the remote computer, I receive an error, as shown in Figure 3-11.



```
[suehring@localhost suehring]$ mysql -u suehring -p -h 192.168.1.75
Enter password:
ERROR 2003: Can't connect to MySQL server on '192.168.1.75' (111)
[suehring@localhost suehring]$
```

**Figure 3-11:** A failed attempt to connect to a MySQL server that is no longer listening on its Ethernet address results in an error.



Other options for `my.cnf` and the MySQL server are discussed in Chapter 11.

## Creating default databases and completing installation

The final steps involved in a MySQL installation are common to all Linux versions covered in this book. Please feel free to refer back to this section when you're through the initial install rather than reading this now.

From where you are now, change into the MySQL directory, `cd mysql`. One of the final steps is to run the script to install the default databases. Within the `mysql` directory, this is accomplished using the `./scripts/mysql_install_db` command. The output will probably scroll past your screen rather quickly, so I've included some of it in Figure 3-12.



Make sure you type these commands exactly as they appear. Failure to do so could cause problems for your server.

```
root@localhost.localdomain: /usr/local/mysql
[root@localhost mysql]# cd mysql
[root@localhost mysql]# ./scripts/mysql_install_db
Preparing db table
Preparing host table
Preparing user table
Preparing func table
Preparing tables_priv table
Preparing columns_priv table
Installing all prepared tables
011002 15:34:46 ./bin/mysqld: Shutdown Complete

To start mysqld at boot time you have to copy support-files/mysql.server
to the right place for your system

PLEASE REMEMBER TO SET A PASSWORD FOR THE MySQL root USER !
This is done with:
./bin/mysqladmin -u root -p password 'new-password'
./bin/mysqladmin -u root -h localhost.localdomain -p password 'new-password'
See the manual for more instructions.

You can start the MySQL daemon with:
cd .. ./bin/safe_mysqld &
```

**Figure 3-12:** The beginning of the output from the `mysql_install_db` script

The final step before starting the server is to change the permissions for the MySQL files and directories. You can do so with a series of commands, shown in Figure 3-13.

```
root@localhost.mysql: /usr/local/mysql
[root@localhost mysql]# chown -R root /usr/local/mysql
[root@localhost mysql]# chown -R mysql /usr/local/mysql/data
[root@localhost mysql]# chgrp -R mysql /usr/local/mysql/
[root@localhost mysql]# chown -R mysql /usr/local/mysql/bin
[root@localhost mysql]#
```

**Figure 3-13:** Changing ownership on the MySQL files and directories is an important step.

It is now time to start the server. Use the following command:

 The & character at the end of this command is important because it places the MySQL server in the background.

Alternatively, you can set the user in the `my.cnf` file. Under the `[mysqld]` section, place the following line and restart the server:

```
user = mysql
```

## Setting an administrator password for MySQL

The first step immediately after starting a MySQL server is to set a password for the server administrator account known as `root`. This user is different from the `root` user on your system; setting the password for this user does not affect the password for the `root` user on your system. (Even so, use care when creating any password, including this one.)

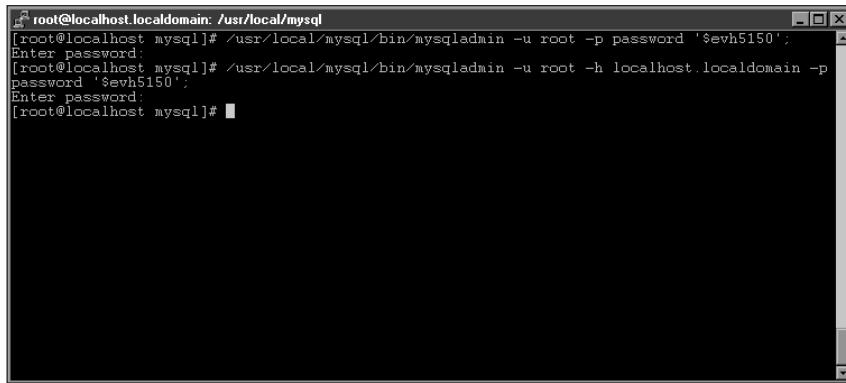
The `mysqladmin` utility is what you use to set the initial password for the `root` user. To set the password, the command is run twice—once for the `localhost` connection and once for connections via the hostname. When the `mysqladmin` command is run, it will prompt you for the password. If you have not set the password, just press Enter without typing anything and the command will run successfully.

Some versions of MySQL now come with the option `skip-networking` enabled by default. This causes MySQL to listen only for connections from the `localhost` and not via the network. The `skip-networking` option is contained in the `[mysqld]` section of the MySQL configuration file `my.cnf`. If this option is enabled, you can't set the password by using the `-h hostname`. If you remove this option from the configuration file, MySQL listens for connections via the network—in which case, the `-h hostname` option *will* work.

The syntax for setting the password with `mysqladmin` is as follows:

```
mysqladmin -u root -p password 'password'  
mysqladmin -u root -h hostname -p password 'password'
```

An example of setting the `root` password is shown in Figure 3-14.



```
root@localhost.localdomain: /usr/local/mysql
[root@localhost mysql]# /usr/local/mysql/bin/mysqladmin -u root -p password '$evh5150';
Enter password:
[root@localhost mysql]# /usr/local/mysql/bin/mysqladmin -u root -h localhost.localdomain -p
password '$evh5150';
Enter password:
[root@localhost mysql]#
```

**Figure 3-14:** Setting the root password with mysqladmin is your first task as a server administrator.

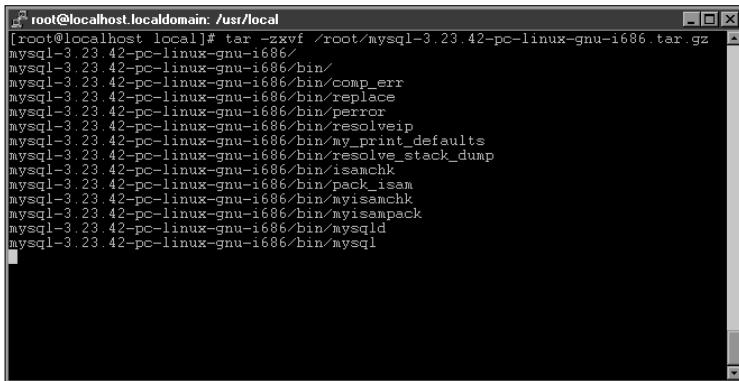
## MySQL Linux Binary Installation

MySQL has binary versions available in .rpm and gzipped formats. To use the RPM versions, your version of Linux must support RPMs and also have glibc. To find out whether your Linux installation procedure supports RPMs, log in as root and type rpm or whereis rpm. If you receive a Bad Command or File Not Found message (or a similar error message), you probably don't have support for RPMs and will have to install MySQL as a binary or from source code. (RPM installation is covered later in this chapter.)

When you've obtained the MySQL binary distribution appropriate for your hardware, installation is simply a matter of unpacking the distribution and running some scripts to configure the database. /usr/local is the standard place to install MySQL for a binary version. Therefore, prior to going further, you should cd to that directory. Once in /usr/local, as shown in Figure 3-15, you can unpack the distribution. Simply type the following command:

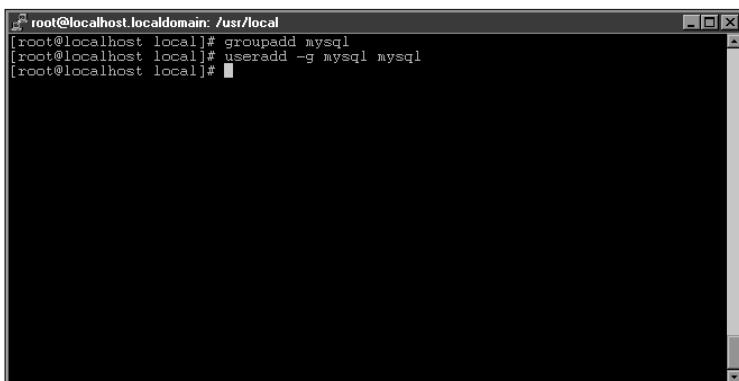
```
tar -zxf [mysql-version-filename]
```

The next step is to add a mysql user account and group to your server. I strongly recommend taking this step for security reasons. Should there be a compromise or breach of security through the MySQL server, the attacker would not gain root or superuser privileges on your system. Adding the group and user is easy (see Figure 3-16).



```
[root@localhost local]# tar -zxf /root/mysql-3.23.42-pc-linux-gnu-i686.tar.gz
mysql-3.23.42-pc-linux-gnu-i686/
mysql-3.23.42-pc-linux-gnu-i686/bin/
mysql-3.23.42-pc-linux-gnu-i686/bin/comp_err
mysql-3.23.42-pc-linux-gnu-i686/bin/replace
mysql-3.23.42-pc-linux-gnu-i686/bin/perror
mysql-3.23.42-pc-linux-gnu-i686/bin/resolveip
mysql-3.23.42-pc-linux-gnu-i686/bin/my_print_defaults
mysql-3.23.42-pc-linux-gnu-i686/bin/resolve_stack_dump
mysql-3.23.42-pc-linux-gnu-i686/bin/isamchk
mysql-3.23.42-pc-linux-gnu-i686/bin/pack_isam
mysql-3.23.42-pc-linux-gnu-i686/bin/myisamchk
mysql-3.23.42-pc-linux-gnu-i686/bin/myisampack
mysql-3.23.42-pc-linux-gnu-i686/bin/mysqld
mysql-3.23.42-pc-linux-gnu-i686/bin/mysql
```

**Figure 3-15:** Unpacking the binary distribution creates a directory containing the MySQL server files.



```
[root@localhost local]# groupadd mysql
[root@localhost local]# useradd -g mysql mysql
[root@localhost local]#
```

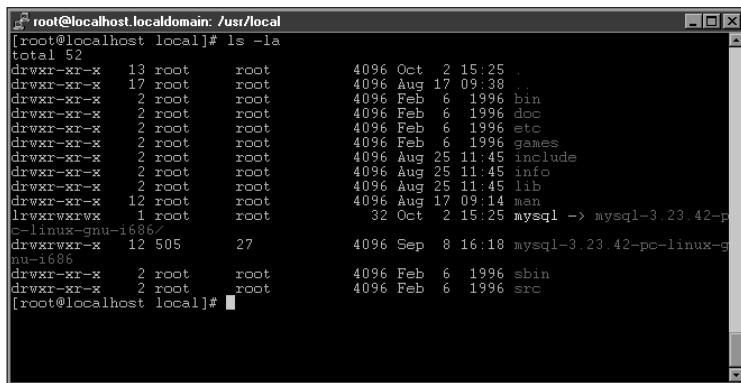
**Figure 3-16:** Addition of the mysql user and group is strongly recommended for security.

To further standardize the installation, make a symbolic link between `/usr/local/mysql` and `/usr/local/mysql-version`, which will enable you to move around the file system with ease. Within the `/usr/local` directory, type the following:

```
ln -s [mysql-version] mysql
```

You will now have a directory called `/usr/local/mysql` that is actually a symbolic link to the MySQL server directory, as shown in Figure 3-17.

At this point, refer to the section in this chapter called “Creating default databases and completing installation” for instructions to take you through the rest of this MySQL installation procedure.



```
[root@localhost local]# ls -la
total 52
drwxr-xr-x 13 root root 4096 Oct  2 15:25 .
drwxr-xr-x 17 root root 4096 Aug 17 09:38 ..
drwxr-xr-x  2 root root 4096 Feb  6 1996 bin
drwxr-xr-x  2 root root 4096 Feb  6 1996 doc
drwxr-xr-x  2 root root 4096 Feb  6 1996 etc
drwxr-xr-x  2 root root 4096 Feb  6 1996 games
drwxr-xr-x  2 root root 4096 Aug 25 11:45 include
drwxr-xr-x  2 root root 4096 Aug 25 11:45 info
drwxr-xr-x  2 root root 4096 Aug 25 11:45 lib
drwxr-xr-x 12 root root 4096 Aug 17 09:14 man
lrwxrwxrwx  1 root root 32 Oct  2 15:25 mysql -> mysql-3.23.42-pc-linux-gnudi-1686/
drwxrwxr-x 12 505 27 4096 Sep  8 16:18 mysql-3.23.42-pc-linux-gnudi-1686
drwxr-xr-x  2 root root 4096 Feb  6 1996 sbin
drwxr-xr-x  2 root root 4096 Feb  6 1996 src
[root@localhost local]#
```

**Figure 3-17:** Standardization of the MySQL install by making a symbolic link for the MySQL server directory

## MySQL Linux RPM Installation

The installation using `rpm` files has five portions, from which you select according to your needs: server, testing suite, client, development libraries, and client libraries. This section illustrates a complete installation that includes all of them. At the most basic level, `rpm` versions are simply binary versions of MySQL rolled into `rpm` files. The locations of files within a binary installation may differ from the `rpm` install.

Each of the files within an `rpm` install simply requires an `rpm -i` command followed by the package name, as in the following example:

```
rpm -i MySQL-client-x.xx.xx-i386.rpm
```

Installing the main `MySQL-x.xx.xx-i386.rpm` file actually installs—and automatically starts—the MySQL server. The RPM even runs the `mysql_install_db` script so you don't have to do it later.

**Note**

You don't need to run `mysql_install_db` (as you're told to do later when you install the main server from RPM).

To install the shared and development libraries and client for MySQL, simply install them via the `rpm -i` command. If you wish to install the benchmarking utilities you will need the Perl MySQL Module available for download from MySQL AB.

**Note**

The Development and Benchmarking RPMs also depend on the MySQL client. Therefore you will need to install the MySQL client RPM prior to installing the Development or Benchmarking RPMs.

RPM installation is quite easy though the file locations may be somewhat different than the other installation methods.

At this point, refer to the section in this chapter called “Creating default databases and completing Installation” for instructions to take you through the rest of this MySQL installation procedure.

## MySQL Linux Source Installation

The most configurable and complicated of the install types for MySQL is an installation from source code. This method requires you to compile the server directly and therefore is not for everyone. However, with a source-code install:

- ◆ You have the most control over the components installed.
- ◆ You can edit or modify the source code to fit your installation.



The source code for MySQL for Linux on Intel/x86 systems is contained on the CD included with this book.

The source code will be compressed and tarred, therefore you’ll need to untar and uncompress it, then cd into the appropriate directory as follows:

```
tar -zvxf mysql-version.tar.gz  
cd mysql-version
```

For security reasons, I recommend adding a group and user for MySQL:

```
groupadd mysql  
useradd -g mysql mysql
```

To enable your installation to closely replicate a binary install, you may want to consider creating a mysql directory in /usr/local.

```
mkdir /usr/local/mysql
```

Doing so eases administration and future upgrades.

## Choosing Options for MySQL

There are a large number of options you can set with a source code install. The options range from simple options about how the configure script will run, to table types to compile, and directories to install components into. The following tables list those options and the defaults are contained in brackets.

**Table 3-1**  
**Configure Options for a MySQL Source Installation**

| <b>Configuration Option</b> | <b>Description</b>   |
|-----------------------------|--|
| --cache-file=FILENAME       | The results from testing will be sent to <i>FILENAME</i> . |
| --no-create                 | Stops creation of output files.                            |
| --quiet                     | Suppresses printing of ‘creating’ messages.                |
| --silent                    | Same as the --quiet option.                                |
| --srcdir=DIR                | Source code is in <i>DIR</i> .                             |

**Table 3-2**  
**Directory and File Options for MySQL Source Installation**

| <b>Configuration option</b> | <b>Description</b>   |
|-----------------------------|--|
| --prefix=DIR                | Place architecture-independent files in <i>DIR</i> [/usr/local].                                 |
| --exec-prefix=DIR           | Place architecture-dependent files in <i>DIR</i> [ <i>Same as prefix</i> ].                      |
| --bindir=DIR                | User executables in <i>DIR</i> [exec-prefix/bin].  |
| --datadir=DIR               | Data files that are read-only and architecture-independent [ <i>prefix/share</i> ].              |
| --includedir=DIR            | C header files in <i>DIR</i> [ <i>prefix/include</i> ].  |
| --infodir=DIR               | Info style documentation in <i>DIR</i> [ <i>prefix/info</i> ].                                   |
| --libexecdir=DIR            | Program executables in <i>DIR</i> [exec-prefix/libexec].   |
| --libdir=DIR                | Object code libraries in <i>DIR</i> [exec-prefix/lib].   |
| --localstatedir=DIR         | Data that is modifiable and single-machine in <i>DIR</i> [ <i>prefix/var</i> ].                  |
| --mandir=DIR                | Man documentation in <i>DIR</i> [ <i>prefix/man</i> ].   |
| --oldincludedir=DIR         | C header files for non-gcc in <i>DIR</i> [/usr/include].   |
| --program-prefix=PREFIX     | Prepend <i>prefix</i> to installed program names.  |
| --program-suffix=SUFFIX     | Append <i>suffix</i> to installed program names.   |
| --sbindir=DIR               | System executables in <i>DIR</i> [exec-prefix/sbin].   |
| --sharedstatedir=DIR        | Data files that are modifiable and architecture-independent in <i>DIR</i> [ <i>prefix/com</i> ]. |
| --sysconfdir=DIR            | Data files that are read-only and single-machine data in <i>DIR</i> [ <i>prefix/etc</i> ].       |

**Table 3-3**  
**Features and Add-ons for MySQL Source Installation**

| <b>Configuration Option</b>        | <b>Description</b>  |
|------------------------------------|---|
| --disable-largefile                | Omits support for large files.  |
| --with-berkeley-db[=DIR]           | Includes BerkeleyDB table types and places them in DIR.   |
| --with-berkeley-db-include=DIR     | MySQL can locate header files for Berkeley DB tables in DIR.  |
| --with-berkeley-db-libs=DIR        | MySQL can locate library files for Berkeley DB tables in DIR.   |
| --with-charset=charset_name        | Includes support for charset_name.<br>[latin1] (Options are: big5, cp1251, cp1257, croat, czech, danish, dec8, dos, estonia, euc_kr, german1, greek, hebrew, hp8, hungarian, koi8_ru, koi8_ukr, latin1, latin2, latin5, swe7, usa7, win1250, win1251ukr, ujis, sjis, tis620). |
| --with-extra-Charsets=charset, ... | Uses additional charsets. Can be specified by group (for example, none, complex, or all), or individually comma-separated from the preceding list.  |
| --with-gemini[=DIR]                | Includes Gemini DB table types and place them in DIR.   |
| --with-innodb                      | Includes support for InnoDB table types.  |
| --with-low-memory                  | Minimizes use of available memory. Use this option if compiling has a problem because of a shortage of memory.  |
| --with-mysqld-user=username        | Specifies a user account as which to run the mysqld server (can be set in my.cnf).  |
| --with-raid                        | Enables RAID (Redundant Array of Inexpensive Disk) support.   |
| --with-tcp-port=port-number        | Specifies port to use for MySQL services (for example, 3306); can be set in my.cnf.   |
| --with-unix-socket-path=socket     | Absolute location for the UNIX-domain socket.   |
| --without-debug                    | Does not include debugging code.  |
| --without-server                   | Does not build the MySQL server, only the client programs.  |

| <b>Configuration Option</b> | <b>Description</b>                                    |
|-----------------------------|---|
| --without-docs              | Does not build the documentation.                     |
| --without-bench             | Does not build the testing and benchmarking programs. |
| --x-include=DIR             | X include files are in DIR.                           |
| --x-libraries=DIR           | X library files are in DIR.                           |

The options you choose while compiling are largely up to you—depending on the requirements of your application. For example, if you want to “compile in” the needed support for different character sets, use the `--with-charset` or the `with-extra-charsets` option. To include support for the BerkeleyDB transactional table type, use the `--with-berkeleydb` option. The example in the next section gives a common command line for compiling MySQL. Once your options are chosen, installation is straightforward.

## Compiling MySQL

To compile with additional options, simply separate them by a space on the configure command line. For the example server, I install into `/usr/local/mysql` and include support for BDB table types, like this:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr/local/mysql --with-berkeley-db
```

The `configure` script runs through each component and prepare it for compilation. Eventually you should see output similar to that in Figure 3-18.

```
192.168.1.136 - PuTTY
creating sql/share/Makefile
creating merge/Makefile
creating dbg/Makefile
creating scripts/Makefile
creating include/Makefile
creating sql-bench/Makefile
creating tests/Makefile
creating Docs/Makefile
creating support-files/Makefile
creating mysql-test/Makefile
creating include/mysql_version.h
creating config.h

MySQL has a Web site at http://www.mysql.com/ which carries details on the
latest release, upcoming features, and other information to make your
work or play with MySQL more productive. There you can also find
information about mailing lists for MySQL discussion.

Remember to check the platform specific part in the reference manual for
hints about installing on your platform. See the Docs directory.

Thank you for choosing MySQL!
debian:~/mysql-3.23.43#
```

**Figure 3-18:** The `configure` script prepares the various components of MySQL to be compiled.

After the configure script is complete, compile the software by using the command:

```
make
```

The make process will take at least a few minutes depending on the speed of your machine and what else is running on it at the time. Once the software is done compiling, install it with the command:

```
make install
```

In addition, copy the my.cnf file appropriate for your implementation to the /etc/ directory.



#### Tip

MySQL AB recommends the my.cnf file for medium installations be used in most implementations, as follows:

```
cp support-files/my-medium.cnf /etc/my.cnf
```

At this point, refer to the section in this chapter called “Creating default databases and completing installation” for instructions to take you through the rest of this MySQL installation procedure.

## Summary

Always choose secure passwords, for MySQL and all of your computer systems. A good password includes a mix of alphanumeric and non-alphanumeric characters as well as a minimum length and other factors.

- ◆ There are a number of common tasks that you need to perform regardless of installation method. These include creating the default databases, setting options in the my.cnf file, configuring MySQL for automatic startup and shutdown, and setting the root administrator password for MySQL.
- ◆ The MySQL binary installation for Linux is the easiest and most recommended method for installation.
- ◆ The MySQL RPM installation is really a binary installation in RPM format. However, file locations are usually different with an RPM installation.
- ◆ The MySQL source code installation is the most configurable; you can set options during compilation and edit the source code directly.



# Windows Installation

This chapter gets down to the nitty-gritty of installing MySQL on a Windows system. (The Linux installation chapter might be of help if you’re migrating to Windows from Linux, and want to double-check the differences in procedure.) As groundwork for this chapter, read Chapter 2 (if you haven’t already); it gives you some important points to consider before you begin MySQL installation.

MySQL offers two methods for installation under Windows: a binary and a source-code version. The binary version is what most Windows users are familiar with—a setup program that you move through by clicking the Next button. The source-code version is for applications that require additions or changes to MySQL before they can run correctly.

**Note**

Compiling from source code requires a Visual C++ compiler.

Since there are five versions of MySQL included with a binary version, installing from source code is beyond the scope of this book. This chapter begins, however, with some tasks that binary and source-code installation have in common.

## Tasks Common to Binary and Source MySQL Installation

Regardless of the method you choose for your MySQL installation, some tasks or options are common to both versions.

### MySQL server administration the Windows way

Included with the binary version of MySQL for Windows is an administration tool called WinMySQLAdmin. Using this

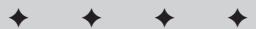


### In This Chapter

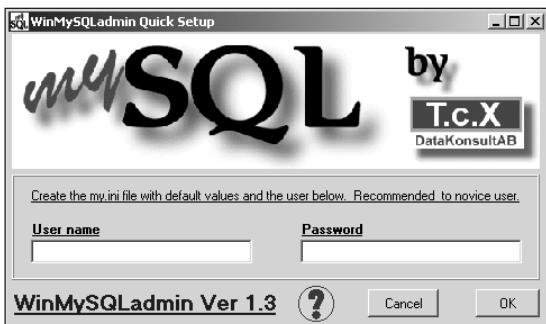
Choosing effective passwords

Listing the common tasks for binary and source installation of MySQL

Installing MySQL from the binary



program, you can configure and change many parameters of the MySQL installation. For Windows administrators who are averse to the command line, this program provides a tool that can perform most administrative tasks from within Windows. To start WinMySQLAdmin, use Windows Explorer and point to the `bin` directory of your MySQL installation (usually `c:\mysql\bin\`). Within the `bin` directory, double-click `winmysqladmin` to start the program. The first time you start WinMySQLAdmin, you're prompted to create a default username and password (see Figure 4-1).



**Figure 4-1:** Set a default username and password for use with WinMySQLAdmin.

**Note**

Just a reminder: As an administrator of a MySQL server, you must keep the `root` account secure from unauthorized access. That means (as with all computer systems) choosing secure passwords for MySQL—such passwords have a mix of alphanumeric and non-alphanumeric characters, as well as a minimum length and other attributes that make them hard to guess.

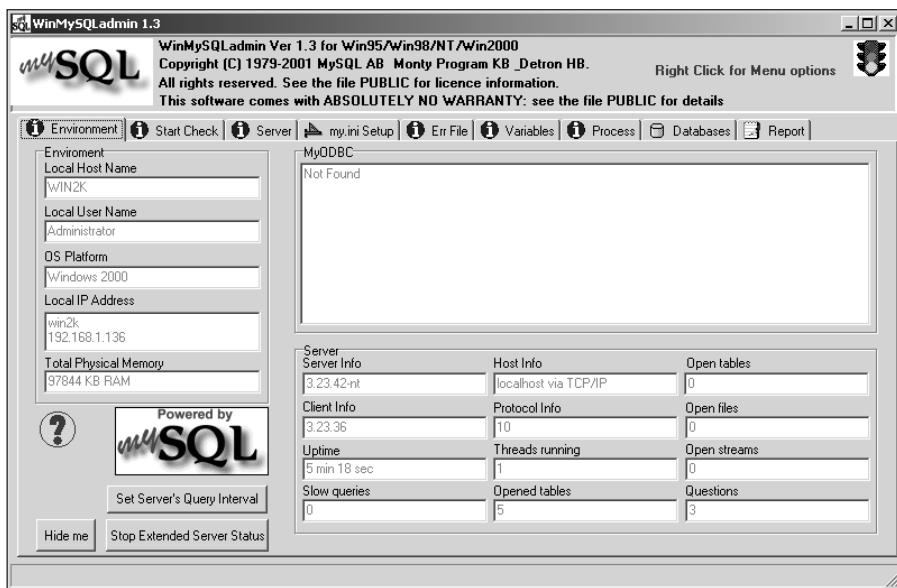
As of this writing, `winmysqladmin` immediately minimizes itself into the taskbar once you've created its default username and password. Therefore, to actually bring up the interface, right-click the stoplight icon in the taskbar and select "Show Me."

**Caution**

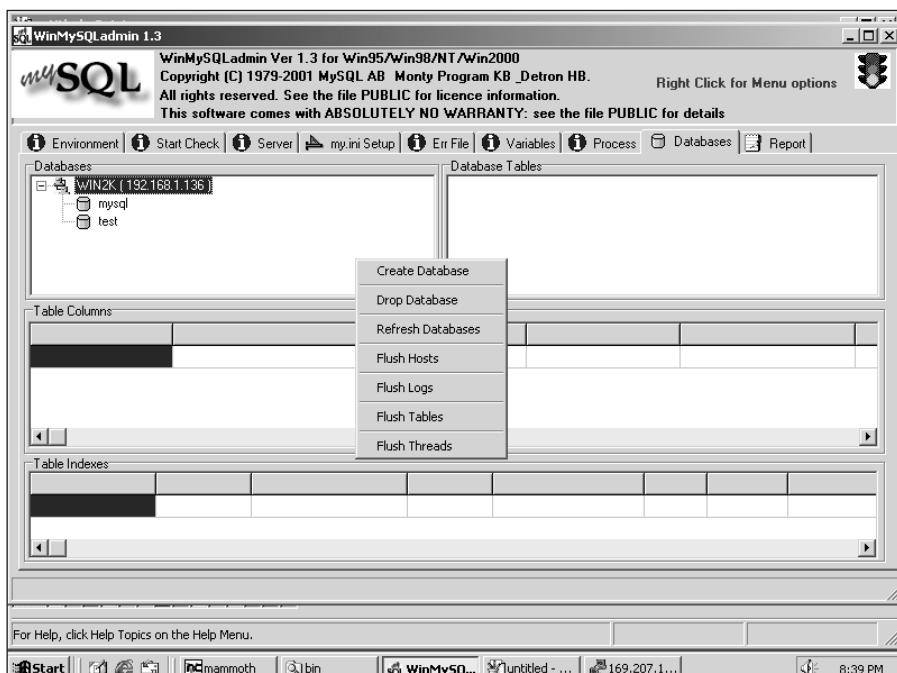
Since WinMySQLAdmin automatically minimizes, you may not think the program has started. Be careful not to start the program more than once.

Once WinMySQLAdmin has started, you see a number of tabs near the top of the program screen (see Figure 4-2).

The tabs near the top of the WinMySQLAdmin screen correspond to actions you can perform or information you can find out about the MySQL server. Some tabs provide their own context menus when you right-click them (as in Figure 4-3).



**Figure 4-2:** WinMySQLAdmin is a powerful, GUI-based program for administering a MySQL server in Windows 2000.



**Figure 4-3:** Some areas within WinMySQLAdmin have right-click menus that enable you to perform additional functions.

To minimize WinMySQLAdmin, right-click near the top and select “Hide Me.”

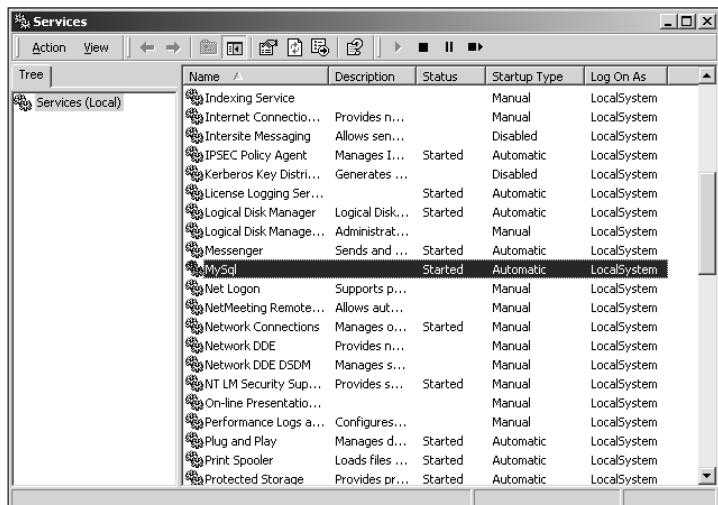
The other, and more traditional, method for managing a MySQL server is via the command-line utility `mysqladmin`. You can use it to control the behavior of the MySQL server, as well as to create (and drop) databases and gain information about the server.



Using the `mysqladmin` utility is covered in Chapter 6.

## MySQL server startup and shutdown

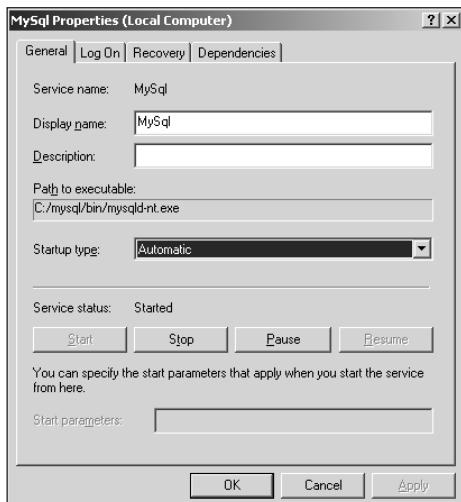
The MySQL server runs as a service in Windows 2000. You can find more information about the service through the Services applet in Windows 2000 by selecting Start ▷ Programs ▷ Administrative Tools ▷ Services (see Figure 4-4).



**Figure 4-4:** The Services applet in Windows 2000 is where you can find more information about the behavior of the MySQL server.

As part of the Services framework in Windows 2000, you can control the behavior of MySQL when starting Windows. MySQL can start automatically with Windows or you can have it start when manually started by an administrator (see Figure 4-5).

There are five different versions of the MySQL server included with the binary distribution, as shown in Table 4-1. Using WinMySQLAdmin (or by editing the `my.ini` file located in `C:\winnt\`), you can choose which server starts by default.

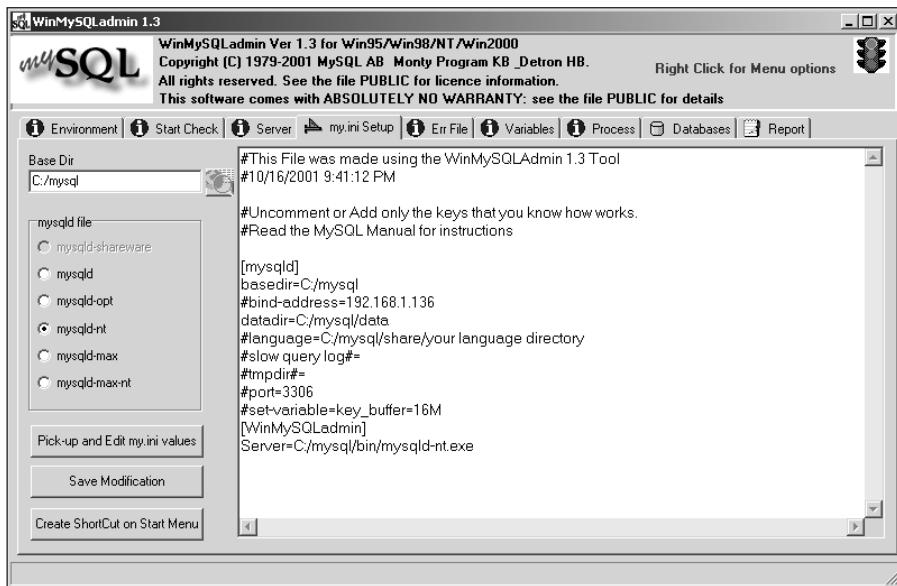


**Figure 4-5:** The Services applet in Windows 2000 enables you to control the MySQL server startup parameters.

**Table 4-1**  
**MySQL Server Versions for Windows 2000**

| <b>Executable Name</b> | <b>Description</b>  |
|------------------------|---|
| mysqld                 | Compiled with full debugging enabled, along with memory-allocation checks. Requires TCP/IP. |
| mysqld-max             | Includes support for BDB and InnoDB transactional tables.                                   |
| mysqld-max-nt          | Includes support for BDB and InnoDB tables, as well as for named pipes.                     |
| mysqld-nt              | Contains support for named pipes as a connection method.                                    |
| mysqld-opt             | Optimized for Pentium processor, no debugging. Requires TCP/IP.                             |

By normal default, `mysqld-nt` starts when Windows 2000 starts—and this is fine for most installations. Using WinMySQLAdmin (and clicking the `my.ini` tab as shown in Figure 4-6), you can change parameters as needed—including which executable runs for your MySQL server.



**Figure 4-6:** Use WinMySQLAdmin to change the server executable to start the MySQL server.

## Common command-line options for mysqld

The default server executable file for MySQL in Windows 2000 is called `mysqld-nt`. Some of the options you can set or call when you run `mysqld-nt` actually change the behavior of the server. In addition, many options can be set inside the `my.ini` file (located in the `\WINNT` directory or sometimes in just the root `\` directory).

**Note**

I strongly recommend that you don't make a batch file or script to start MySQL; instead, use the `my.ini` file for changing the command-line behavior of MySQL.

The `my.ini` file is a powerful method for controlling many aspects of the MySQL software. Within the `my.ini` file there are a number of sections that affect the behavior of the various components making up a MySQL installation. These sections include both the client and server, and offer some additional commands:

```
mysql
mysqladmin
mysqld
mysql_safe
mysql.server
mysqldump
```

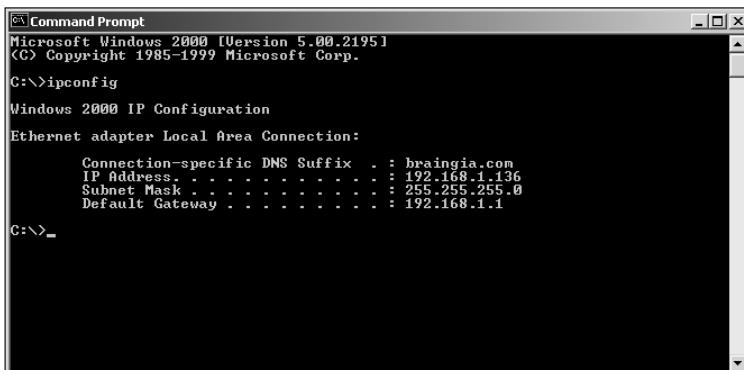
```
myisamchk  
mysqlimport  
mysqlshow  
mysqlcheck  
myisampack  
winmysqladmin
```

Each section in the `my.ini` file starts with a name in brackets, which identifies the command or area for that section. To find out which options MySQL uses for starting up the server, use the WinMySQLAdmin tool. Click the `my.ini` tab to see which executable will run, and to check the other parameters for MySQL installation. (Refer to Figure 4-6 for an example: options contained under the `server` section, or the section underneath the word `[mysqld]`.)

**Note**

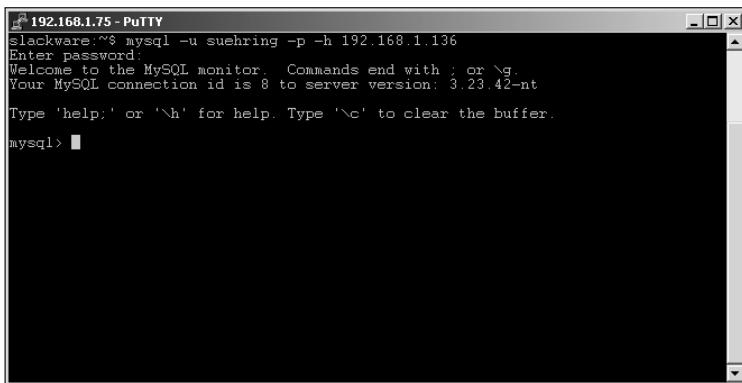
If you make changes to the `[mysqld]` section of the `my.ini` file, you must restart the server. One way to do so is through the Services applet in Windows 2000.

A non-default option for the `[mysqld]` section that you may want to consider is `bind-address`; it's especially useful if you have a *multi-homed* host (one that has more than one IP address) and want only to listen for connections on a particular IP address. In Figure 4-7, the address bound is the Ethernet IP address for that machine, 192.168.1.136.



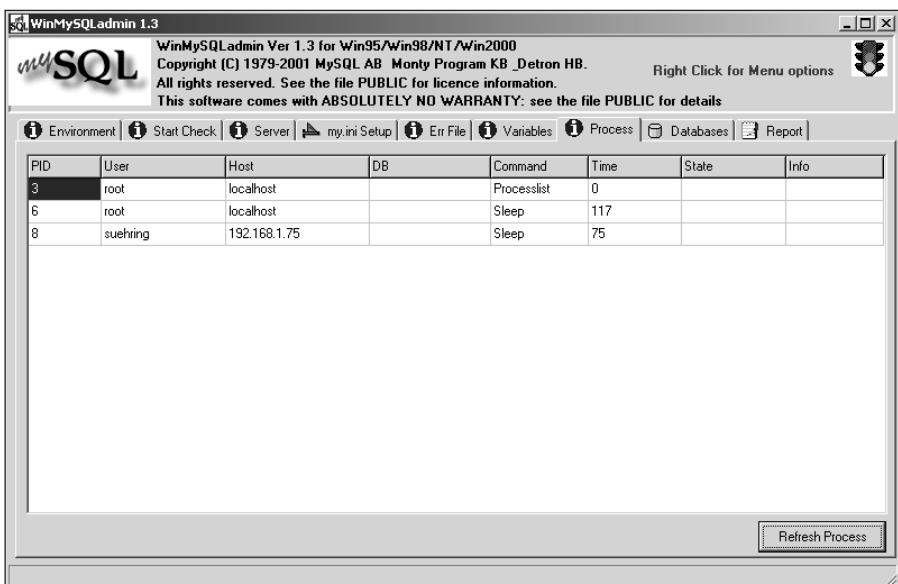
**Figure 4-7:** Using the `ipconfig` command to determine the ip address for this host

Having MySQL listen for connections on an Ethernet IP means that, given the correct privileges, I can connect from another machine within the network by using `-h <ip or hostname>`, as shown in Figure 4-8.



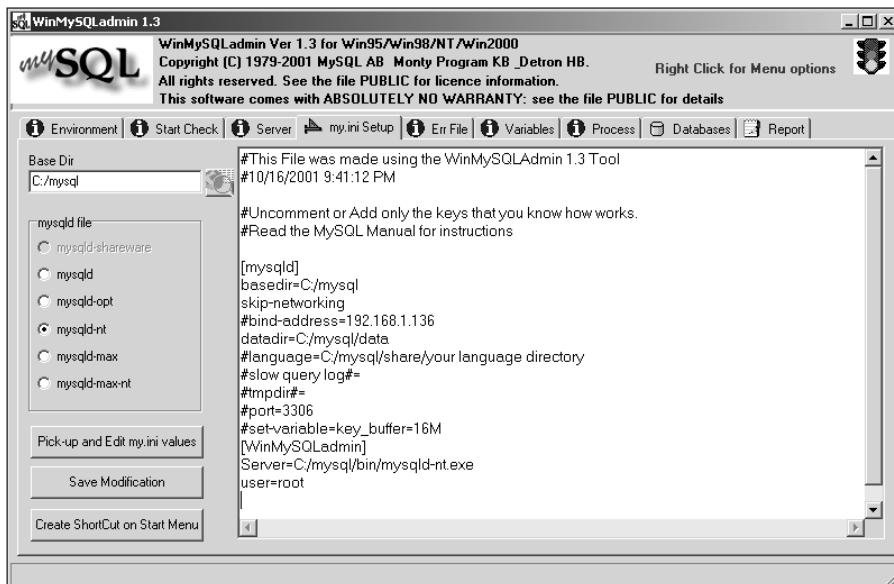
**Figure 4-8:** Connecting from another machine is possible with the MySQL client

Using WinMySQLAdmin (or the `mysqladmin processlist` command), I can see the current connection to the database from the remote client. An example with WinMySQLAdmin is shown in Figure 4-9.



**Figure 4-9:** Using WinMySQLAdmin displays the connection from the other machine, 192.168.1.75.

However, if I only wanted to connect to the MySQL server from the same server, I could remove the bind-address completely and use a different option: The skip-networking option uses sockets and no longer listens for connections via TCP/IP. If I choose to follow that route, I edit my.ini and restart the server. Then the my.ini section of WinMySQLAdmin looks like the one shown in Figure 4-10. Notice that the bind-address option has been replaced with the skip-networking option.

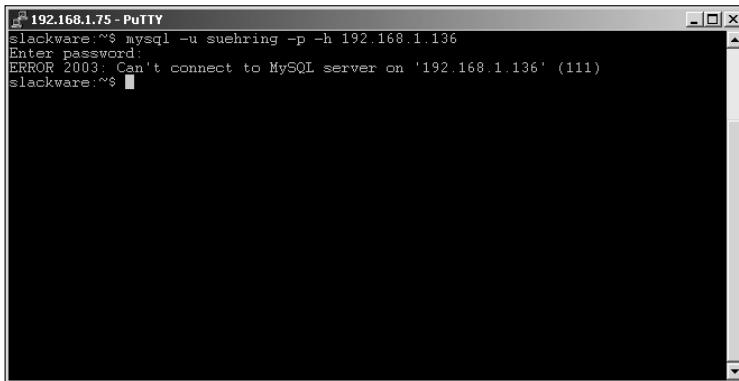


**Figure 4-10:** Using the skip-networking option in my.ini to stop MySQL from listening for TCP/IP connections

Now, if I attempt to connect from the remote computer, I receive an error message (as shown in Figure 4-11).



For more about options for my.ini and the MySQL server, see Chapter 11.



**Figure 4-11:** Error message following a failed attempt to connect to a MySQL server that's no longer listening on its Ethernet address

## Setting an Administrator password for MySQL

The first step immediately after starting a MySQL server is to set a password for the server administrator account known as `root`. This user account is different from the `root` or `administrator` user on your system; setting the password for this user does not affect the password for the `root` user on your system.

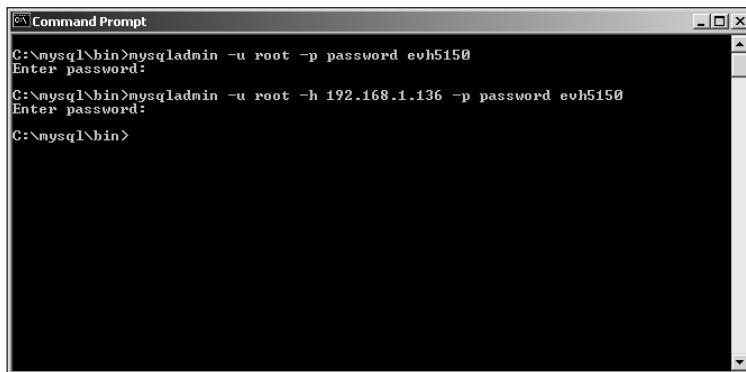
The `mysqladmin` utility sets the initial password for the `root` user. (The WinMySQLAdmin utility can be used as well.) To set the password, you run the command twice—once for the `localhost` connection and once for connection via the hostname. Then, when you run the `mysqladmin` command, it prompts you for the password. (If you have not set the password, just press Enter without typing anything and the command will run successfully.) The syntax for setting the `mysqladmin` password is as follows:

```
mysqladmin -u root -p password 'password'  
mysqladmin -u root -h hostname -p password 'password'
```

**Note**

If you receive an error message that says you can't connect to the server when you try to run the second command, it may be because the MySQL server is not listening for connections via TCP/IP. Make sure the `skip-networking` option is not in the MySQL configuration file. If it is, you will need to remove that line and then restart the MySQL server.

An example of setting the `root` password is shown in Figure 4-12.



```
C:\mysql\bin>mysqladmin -u root -p password evh5150
Enter password:
C:\mysql\bin>mysqladmin -u root -h 192.168.1.136 -p password evh5150
Enter password:
C:\mysql\bin>
```

**Figure 4-12:** Setting the root password with mysqladmin is your first task as a Server Administrator.

## Installing MySQL on Windows 2000

Installation of MySQL on Windows 2000 is incredibly simple. MySQL AB has gone to great lengths to ensure a hassle-free installation process.

The first step is to download the installation files or use the ones you can find on the CD-ROM with this book.

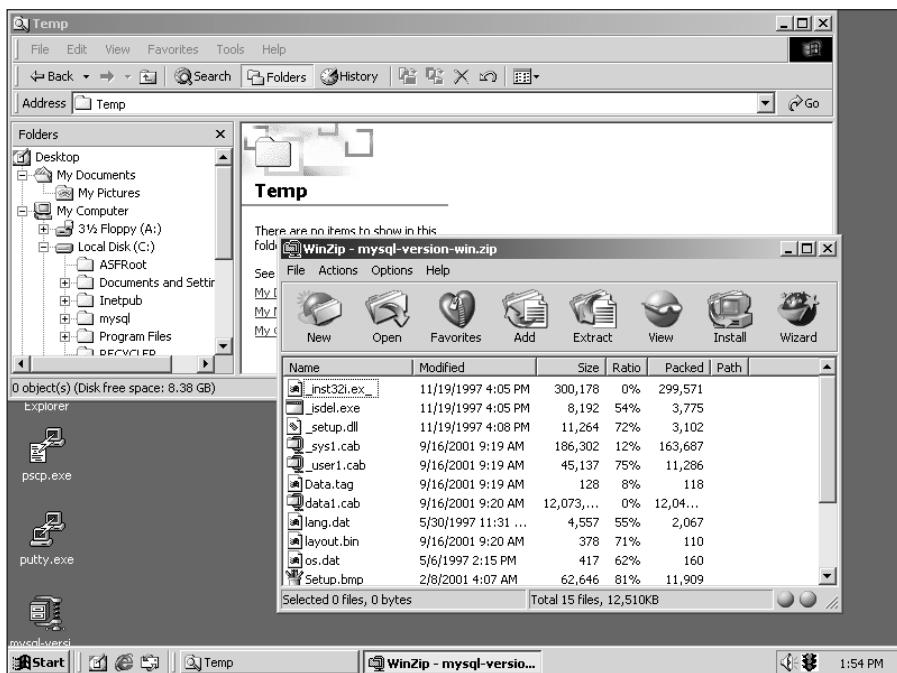


The MySQL binary version for Windows is on the CD-ROM that accompanies this book.

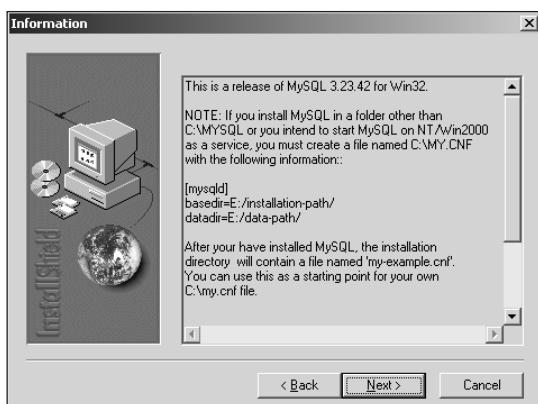
Once the files are downloaded or copied, you'll need a program such as WinZip to uncompress the installation files (see Figure 4-13).

Double-click `setup.exe` to start MySQL installation. The installer for MySQL guides you through the procedure, wizard-style. Anyone who has installed a program in Windows should find this installation pretty straightforward.

After an initial Welcome screen, the installer presents you with an Information screen (see Figure 4-14). The information screen is there to remind you that if you change the locations of the directories for your MySQL components, you must create a `my.cnf` file in the root `C:\` directory that contains the location of the MySQL installation and data files.



**Figure 4-13:** Use a program such as WinZip to uncompress the setup and installation files.



**Figure 4-14:** Create a my.cnf file if you change the location of the MySQL installation.

The next screen determines where you install the MySQL servers and clients, as shown in Figure 4-15. I recommend leaving it as `c:\mysql` unless you have a specific reason for not wanting to accept the default.

**Note**

This chapter assumes that you use `c:\mysql` as your base directory. Should you choose to install into a different directory, please take that change into account and make the necessary adjustments when you follow the instructions herein.



**Figure 4-15:** Determining where you want to install MySQL

Next is the prompt for installation type, Typical, Compact, or Custom. I recommend leaving the option at Typical (see Figure 4-16). The Typical option installs all components of MySQL. If you don't want to install all components, click the Custom radio button and you get a list of options to unselect (see Figure 4-17).



Figure 4-16: The Typical option installs all components and is the default.

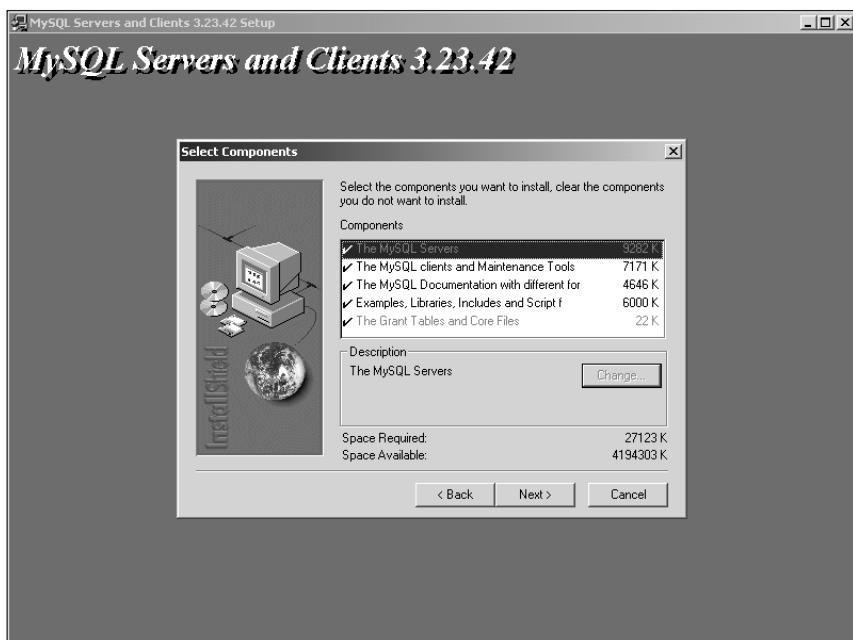
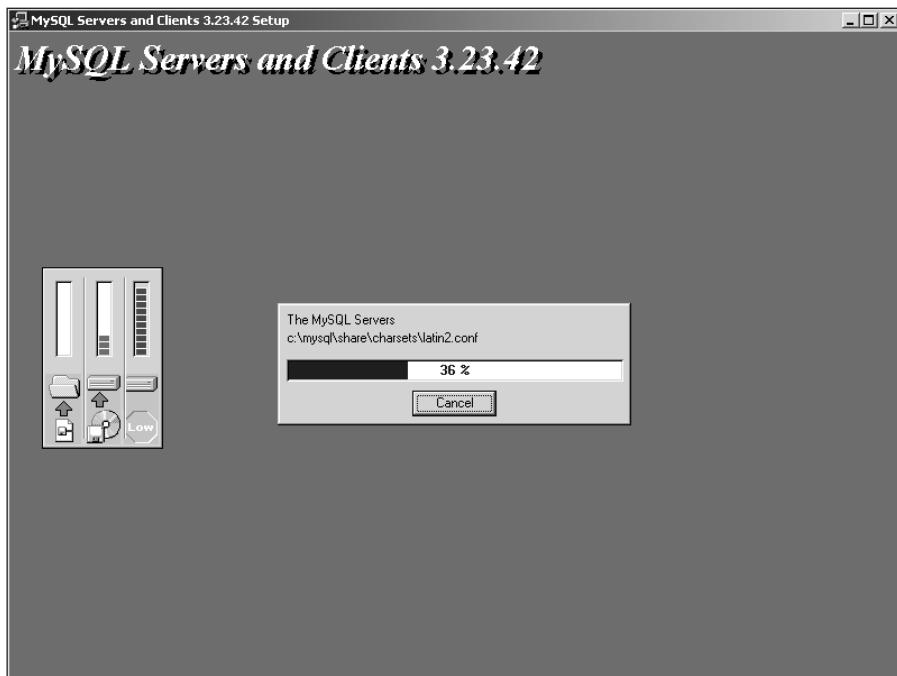


Figure 4-17: By selecting the Custom option, you can unselect components that you don't want to install.

Once you have chosen an installation option (Typical, Compact, or Custom), MySQL begins the installation by copying the appropriate files (see Figure 4-18).



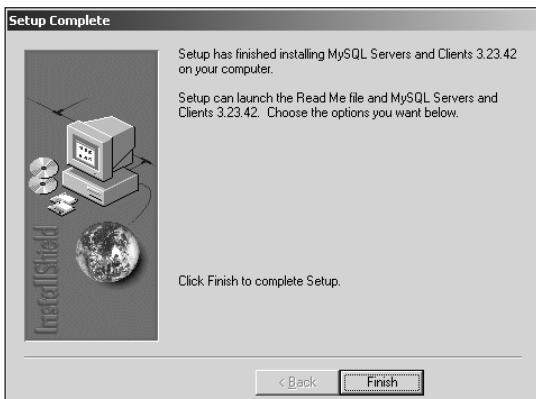
**Figure 4-18:** MySQL takes over and starts copying files as part of the installation process.

Congratulations! You should see a Finish screen—the step that concludes this stage of the installation (see Figure 4-19).

**Note**

As I usually recommend with Windows, restart the server before going farther.

From here, you should make sure you've done the post-installation tasks (mentioned earlier in the chapter), including setting the administrator/root password and determining which binary version of MySQL to run.



**Figure 4-19:** Finish up by clicking Finish and restarting the server.

## Summary

Before you install MySQL, refer to Chapter 2 for a review of some important groundwork procedures. Then you can use an administrative utility (WinMySQLAdmin for Windows or `mysqladmin`) to install MySQL.

- ◆ With MySQL for Windows, you can use the WinMySQLAdmin program to administer most functions of a MySQL server via a GUI.
- ◆ Five different versions of MySQL are included with a standard binary distribution for Windows. You can choose which server to run by using the WinMySQLAdmin program or by editing the `my.ini` file.
- ◆ A number of options exist for the various components of a MySQL installation; you can set them in the `my.ini` file.
- ◆ Immediately after you start the MySQL server for the first time, you must set a password for the `root` user with the `mysqladmin` command.
- ◆ Should you change the default location of the MySQL installation, you must create a file called `my.cnf` in the `root` directory of the C: drive to tell MySQL where to find the installation.
- ◆ Choosing a Typical installation type installs all components. If you don't actually need all the components, you can choose a Custom installation type and de-select any components you don't need.



# Macintosh Installation

**A**lthough traditionally the Macintosh has not been well suited for work as a server, this changed with the release of Mac OS X. Apple's next-generation operating system has a Unix-based foundation, which makes it a good choice for running servers and server applications.

Mac OS X comes in two versions:

- ◆ **Mac OS X Server:** This version comes with MySQL already installed.
- ◆ **Mac OS X:** No MySQL installed, but it can easily be installed.

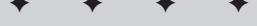
This chapter looks at some tasks common to all versions of MySQL, as well as installing MySQL from source code.

## Binary and Source-Code MySQL Installation in Mac OS X: Tasks in Common

There are several tasks that you may want to do no matter how you decide to install MySQL. MySQL can be configured to start automatically when Mac OS X is started, it can be manually shut down, and you can change the administrator password.

### Setting up MySQL to start automatically

Mac OS X can start applications automatically when the system is booted—but its startup process differs significantly from that of a standard Unix system.



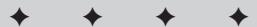
#### In This Chapter

Reviewing common tasks for binary and source-code MySQL Installations

Installing MySQL with Mac OS X Server

Installing MySQL binary on Mac OS X

Installing MySQL from source code on Mac OS X



Mac OS X uses a `StartupItems` folder to automatically start applications; although a `/System/Library/StartupItems/` folder exists by default, that is reserved for Apple's use. Personal startup items should be located in the `/Library/StartupItems/` folder.

## Creating the `/Library/StartupItems` folder

Because the `/Library/StartupItems/` folder doesn't exist by default, you must create it if someone else hasn't already.

1. Using the `cd` command, check to see whether this folder exists; if it does not, create it with the `mkdir` command. The code that accomplishes these preparations is as follows (bold indicates the commands to type):

```
[localhost:~] user% cd /Library/StartupItems  
/Library/StartupItems: No such file or directory.  
[localhost:~] user% mkdir /Library/StartupItems/
```

2. Prepare to add a startup item to the folder by creating three things:

- A folder with a descriptive name
- A command-line script with the same name as the folder (see the steps in the upcoming subsection, “Creating the file for the startup script”).
- A startup parameters file (see the steps in the upcoming subsection, “Creating the StartupParameters file”).

To create the folder, navigate to the `/Library/StartupItems` folder and create the new folder with the `mkdir` command.

```
[localhost:~] user% cd /Library/StartupItems/  
[localhost:/Library/StartupItems] user% mkdir MySQL
```

You will have to use a text editor to create the files you need: one to contain the startup script and one to contain startup parameters.



### Note

This example uses the `pico` text editor, which operates much like any other typical text editor: When you run `pico`, you can type and move around with the arrow keys. When you're done editing the file, simply press Control-X (the Mac equivalent of Ctrl+X) and a prompt asks whether you want to save the file and exit. Press Y to save the file and return to the command line.

## Creating the file for the startup script

The first file needed for automatic startup is the *startup script* file. This is the shell script that will actually start MySQL.

1. Create the file and open it for editing in `pico` with the following command.

```
[localhost:/Library/StartupItems] user% pico MySQL/MySQL
```

2. Enter the following script into pico.

```
#!/bin/sh  
  
. /etc/rc.common  
  
if [ "${MYSQL:=-NO-}" = "-YES-" ]; then  
  
    ConsoleMessage "Starting MySQL"  
    /usr/local/mysql/share/mysql/mysql.server start  
  
fi
```

3. Use Command-X to exit and save the file.

### Creating the StartupParameters file

The second file needed for automatic startup is the *startup parameters* file. This file gives Mac OS X additional information needed for automatically running MySQL.

1. Open the file by typing the following line.

```
[localhost:/Library/StartupItems] user% pico  
MySQL/StartupParameters.plist
```

2. Enter the following script into pico.

```
{  
    Description      = "MySQL";  
    Provides        = ("MySQL");  
    Requires         = ("Resolver");  
    OrderPreference = "None";  
    Messages =  
    {  
        start = "Starting MySQL";  
        stop  = "Stopping MySQL";  
    };  
}
```

3. Use Command-X to exit and save the file.

4. The ownership and permissions of some files must be changed to securely run the startup item. You must use the sudo command to change ownership. Enter your administrator password when you are prompted for it.

```
[localhost:/Library/StartupItems] user% chmod +x MySQL/MySQL  
[localhost:/Library/StartupItems] user% sudo chown -R root  
MySQL/  
Password:
```

## Modifying the hostconfig file

The last thing you have to do is to modify the `hostconfig` file so it tells Mac OS X that you want to run this service. Follow these steps:

1. Enter the following command it will open up an existing file in pico.

```
[localhost:/Library/StartupItems] user% sudo pico  
/etc/hostconfig
```

2. Scroll to the bottom of this file and enter `MySQL=-YES-` on its own line. This is how it should look.

```
UW PICO(tm) 2.3                               File: /etc/hostconfig  
Modified  
  
# Services  
AFPSERVER=-NO-  
APPLETALK=-NO-  
AUTHSERVER=-NO-  
AUTOCONFIG=-YES-  
AUTODISKMOUNT=-REMOVABLE-  
AUTOMOUNT=-YES-  
CONFIGSERVER=-NO-  
IPFORWARDING=-NO-  
MAILSERVER=-NO-  
MANAGEMENTSERVER=-NO-  
NETBOOTSERVER=-NO-  
NISDOMAIN=-NO-  
TIMESYNC=-NO-  
QTSSERVER=-NO-  
SSHSERVER=-NO-  
WEBSERVER=-NO-  
APPLETALK_HOSTNAME="User's Computer"  
MySQL=-YES-  
  
^G Get Help  ^O WriteOut  ^R Read File  ^Y Prev Pg  ^K Cut  
Text  ^C Cur Pos  
^X Exit      ^J Justify   ^W Where is  ^V Next Pg  ^U UnCut  
Text^D Del Char
```

3. Use Command-X to exit and save the file.

When you have all these files in place and properly set up, MySQL is ready to start automatically every time you start up Mac OS X. If you ever want to stop MySQL from starting up automatically, simply edit the `hostconfig` file and change the line that reads `MySQL=-YES-` to `MySQL=-NO-`.

## Shutting down MySQL Server

If you want to manually shut down the server, you should use the `mysqladmin` command.



A bug in versions of MySQL prior to 3.23.45 and 4.0.1 prevents the MySQL server from shutting down properly. Make sure you are using these versions or later.

To shut down the server, follow these steps:

1. Log in to the terminal as the `mysql` user.
2. Run the `mysqladmin` command with the `shutdown` parameter, as follows:

```
[localhost:~] mysql% /usr/local/mysql/bin/mysqladmin -u root
shutdown
020304 12:34:56 mysqld ended

[1] + Done      /usr/local/mysql/bin/safe_mysqld --
user=mysql
[localhost:~] mysql%
```

## Setting an administrator password for MySQL

The first step immediately after starting a MySQL server is to set a password for the server administrator account known as `root`.

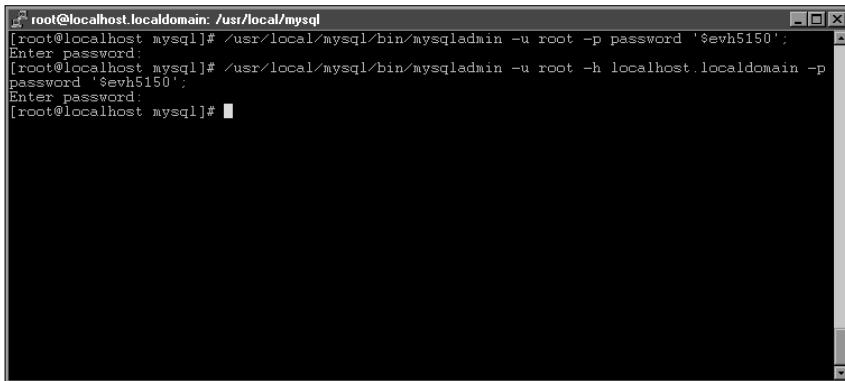


This user account is different from the `root` user on your system; setting the password for this user doesn't affect the password for the `root` user on your system.

The `mysqladmin` utility is used to set the initial password for the `root` user. To set the password, the command is run twice—once for the `localhost` connection and once for connections via the hostname. When the `mysqladmin` command is run, it will prompt you for the password. If you have not set the password, just press Enter without typing anything and the command will run successfully. The syntax to set the password with `mysqladmin` is as follows:

```
[localhost:local/mysql/sql-bench] mysql%
/usr/local/mysql/bin/mysqladmin \
-u root password new_password
[localhost:local/mysql/sql-bench] mysql%
```

An example of setting the `root` password is shown in Figure 5-1.



```
root@localhost.localdomain: /usr/local/mysql
[root@localhost mysql]# /usr/local/mysql/bin/mysqladmin -u root -p password '$evh5150';
Enter password:
[root@localhost mysql]# /usr/local/mysql/bin/mysqladmin -u root -h localhost.localdomain -p
password '$evh5150';
Enter password:
[root@localhost mysql]#
```

**Figure 5-1:** Setting the root password with mysqladmin is your first task as a server administrator.

## Installing MySQL With Mac OS X Server

Apple includes MySQL with Mac OS X Server 10.0.4 and later. It is installed in the `/usr/local/mysql/` directory but it is neither configured nor set to run by default. Apple has several knowledge-base articles that cover how to install and configure MySQL on a Mac OS X server. To find them, go to Apple's support site at <http://www.apple.com/support/> and search the knowledge base for "MySQL".

Refer to the section called "Binary and Source-Code MySQL Installation in Mac OS X: Tasks in Common" (earlier in this chapter) for more information on starting and stopping MySQL and setting a password for the `root` administrative user.

## Installing MySQL Binary on Mac OS X

Compiling and installing your own version of MySQL can be a daunting process. There is an official binary distribution of MySQL for Mac OS X available for download and installation. Many people have created unofficial binary distributions of their own that can be used instead of the official version. Any of these binary versions may be used. They take less time to install and may not require the Apple developer tools to be installed. The drawbacks are that you have less control over the options used and the latest version of the MySQL code may not be available.

The latest official binary version of MySQL for Mac OS X can always be found at <http://www.mysql.com/>. Download the Mac OS X binary appropriate for your Mac OS (Mac OS X or Mac OS X Server).

One of the best independent OS X binary distributions has been created by Marc Liyanage and is available at his Web site (<http://www.entropy.ch/software/macosx/mysql/>).

Installation of each binary distribution is different. Download the installer package and follow the instructions for that distribution.

## Installing MySQL Source Code on Mac OS X

The most flexible approach to installing MySQL for Mac OS X is to use the MySQL source code and compile it yourself.

You will need two basics to compile MySQL yourself:

- ♦ **The latest version of the MySQL source code.** This can always be found at <http://www.mysql.com/>. Download the “tarball” source package for MySQL.
- ♦ **Apple’s developer tools.** If you don’t already have these installed, they can be found on the Developer Tools CD that is included with every copy of Mac OS X or downloaded from <http://developer.apple.com/tools/>.

Once you have these prerequisites, you can proceed with the installation.

## Creating the MySQL User

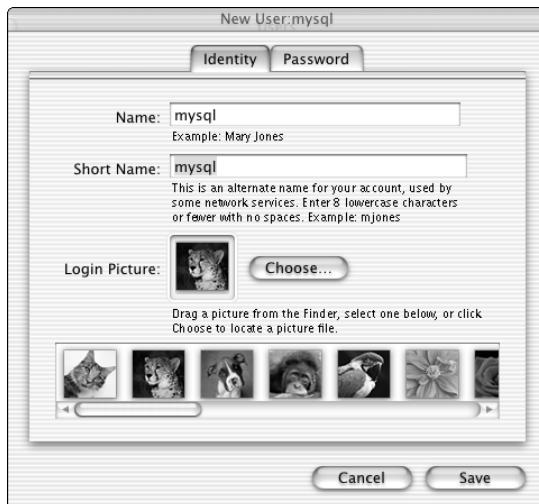
To run the MySQL server securely, you have to create a user account for the MySQL server itself. Follow these steps:

1. Open System Preferences and select the Users preference panel.
2. If you are not already logged in as an administrator, click the lock icon and enter an administrator name and password in the window shown in Figure 5-2.



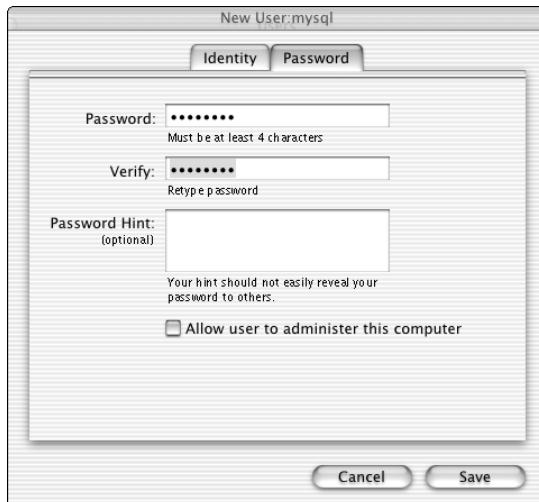
**Figure 5-2:** Entering the Administrator name and password

3. Click the New User button. Enter **mysql** for the Name and Short Name, as shown in Figure 5-3.



**Figure 5-3:** Entering the mysql user

4. Select the Password tab and enter a password for the **mysql** user, as shown in Figure 5-4.



**Figure 5-4:** Entering the mysql password

5. Click Save and close System Preferences.

## Compiling MySQL

The actual MySQL application is installed by unpacking, configuring, and compiling the code you have downloaded. The procedure looks like this:

1. Open the Terminal application and navigate to the location to which you downloaded the MySQL “tarball” source package, much like this:

```
[localhost:~] user% cd Desktop/  
[localhost:~/Desktop] user% ls  
mysql-VERSION.tar.gz
```

2. Use the tar command to expand the source package into its own folder:

```
[localhost:~/Desktop] user% tar zxvf mysql-VERSION.tar.gz  
...  
mysql-VERSION/support-files/mysql.server.sh  
mysql-VERSION/support-files/binary-configure.sh  
mysql-VERSION/support-files/magic  
[localhost:~/Desktop] user%
```

3. Navigate into the new folder and run the configure script, which prepares the package to be compiled on your particular system:

```
[localhost:~/Desktop] user% cd mysql-VERSION/  
[localhost:~/Desktop/mysql-VERSION] user% ./configure --  
prefix=/usr/local/mysql  
...  
creating mysql-test/Makefile  
creating include/mysql_version.h  
creating config.h
```

```
[localhost:~/Desktop/mysql-VERSION] user%
```

4. Run the make command, which actually compiles the MySQL package.



Compilation normally takes quite some time, even on a fast Macintosh.

The procedure looks like this:

```
[localhost:~/Desktop/mysql-VERSION] user% make  
...  
-e 's!'''PERL_DATA_DUMPER''@!@PERL_DATA_DUMPER@!' \  
binary-configure.sh > binary-configure-t  
/bin/mv binary-configure-t binary-configure  
make[2]: Nothing to be done for `all-am'.  
[localhost:~/Desktop/mysql-VERSION] user%
```

5. Install MySQL by running the make install command. Since installing MySQL requires administrative privileges you must use the sudo command before you use the installation command. When the sudo command prompts you for a password, enter your Mac OS X administration password (see the second line of code in this snippet):

```
[localhost:~/Desktop/mysql-VERSION] user% sudo make install  
Password:  
...  
/usr/bin/install -c -m 644 ./binary-configure  
/usr/local/mysql/share/mysql/binary-configure  
make[2]: Nothing to be done for `install-exec-am'.  
make[2]: Nothing to be done for `install-data-am'.  
[localhost:~/Desktop/mysql-VERSION] user%
```

## Configuring MySQL

MySQL must be configured before it can be run. Run the `mysql_install_db` script with the `sudo` command to configure MySQL. The procedure looks like this:

1. Configure MySQL by running the `mysql_install_db` script with the `sudo` command. The procedure looks like this:

```
[localhost:~/Desktop/mysql-VERSION] user% sudo  
scripts/mysql_install_db  
Password:  
...  
To start mysqld at boot time you have to copy  
support-files/mysql.server to the right place for your system
```

```
PLEASE REMEMBER TO SET A PASSWORD FOR THE MySQL root USER !  
This is done with:  
/usr/local/mysql/bin/mysqladmin -u root -p password 'new-  
password'  
/usr/local/mysql/bin/mysqladmin -u root -h localhost -p  
password 'new-password'  
See the manual for more instructions.
```

```
You can start the MySQL daemon with:  
cd /usr/local/mysql ; /usr/local/mysql/bin/safe_mysqld &
```

```
You can test the MySQL daemon with the benchmarks in the  
'sql-bench' directory:  
cd sql-bench ; run-all-tests
```

```
Please report any problems with the  
/usr/local/mysql/bin/mysqlbug script!
```

```
The latest information about MySQL is available on the Web at  
http://www.mysql.com  
Support MySQL by buying support/licenses at  
https://order.mysql.com  
[localhost:~/Desktop/mysql-VERSION] user%
```

2. You must change the ownership of a file and a folder in order to run MySQL. Use the `chown` command with `sudo` to do so, as follows:

```
[localhost:~/Desktop/mysql-VERSION] user% sudo chown -R root  
/usr/local/mysql  
[localhost:~/Desktop/mysql-VERSION] user% sudo chown -R mysql  
/usr/local/mysql/var
```

## Testing MySQL

You should test your installation to make sure everything installed correctly. Do so by starting the MySQL server and having it display its version, as follows:

1. To start the MySQL server, you have to log in as the `mysql` user you created earlier. You can do so with the `su` command. Enter the `mysql` user's password when you are prompted for it, as shown in the second line of the code snippet that follows:

```
[localhost:~] user% su - mysql  
Password:  
[localhost:~] mysql%  
[localhost:~] mysql% /usr/local/mysql/bin/safe_mysqld --  
user=mysql &  
[1] 14542  
  
[localhost:~] mysql%  
[localhost:~] mysql% Starting mysqld daemon with databases  
from /usr/local/mysql/var
```

2. Once MySQL is running, check it by using the `mysqladmin` command to check the version of the MySQL server. The procedure looks like this:

```
[localhost:~] mysql% /usr/local/mysql/bin/mysqladmin version  
/usr/local/mysql/bin/mysqladmin Ver 8.23 Distrib 3.23.49,  
for apple-darwin5.3  
on powerpc  
Copyright (C) 2000 MySQL AB & MySQL Finland AB & TCX  
DataKonsult AB  
This software comes with ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY. This is free  
software,  
and you are welcome to modify and redistribute it under the  
GPL license  
  
Server version      3.23.49  
Protocol version   10  
Connection          Localhost via UNIX socket  
UNIX socket         /tmp/mysql.sock  
Uptime:             1 min 30 sec  
  
Threads: 1  Questions: 1  Slow queries: 0  Opens: 5  Flush  
tables: 1  Open tables: 0  
Queries per second avg: 0.011
```

## Summary

A number of installation tasks must be performed regardless of installation method. These include configuring MySQL for automatic startup and shutdown, and setting the `root` administrator password for MySQL.

- ◆ Mac OS X Server includes MySQL preinstalled; not much configuration is necessary.
- ◆ There is an official MySQL binary installation for Mac OS X as well as several unofficial independent binary distributions (the most notable of which is Marc Liyanage's).
- ◆ The advantages of binary distributions (less time, simpler) have to be weighed against the disadvantages (less control, latest versions may not be available).
- ◆ Installing MySQL from source code is the most configurable method; options are available even during compilation, and editing the source code directly is the most efficient way to customize your implementation of MySQL.



# Starting MySQL

**M**ySQL is a large and often complex collection of client and server software to store and retrieve data.

Sometimes a person who is new to MySQL or SQL entirely is overwhelmed by the depth and number of options involved with what seems to be a simple database task. In this chapter I'll cover some of the basic concepts that developers and administrators alike will probably encounter. My goal is to help the reader become comfortable with MySQL and show some of the common day-to-day tasks performed with MySQL.

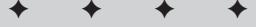
## MySQL Server Administration and Security

This section shows you some common and useful commands that can get a MySQL server running and to keep it running. The first of these—`mysqladmin`—is critically important, frequently used by administrators, and one you should always run on a newly installed MySQL server to ensure the security of the root “superuser” account.

Also, though MySQL is a very stable application (even in large implementations), sooner or later you may face common administrative challenges such as these:

- ◆ Preventing, limiting, or undoing the effects of a security breach
- ◆ Integrating new components into the system
- ◆ Removing (or changing the privileges granted to) specific user accounts
- ◆ Dealing with trouble reports from users who encounter problems with the database

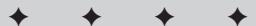
The versatile `mysqladmin` command is a good starting point for understanding and implementing good security and sound administrative policy. This section explores some of its major uses.



### In This Chapter

Introducing MySQL server administration and security

Trying out frequently used MySQL database functions



## Using mysqladmin

You can use `mysqladmin` to accomplish various goals, such as

- ◆ Restoring or enhancing the security of the `root` account
- ◆ Determining the status of the MySQL server while it's running
- ◆ Shutting down the server for upgrades or emergency hardware replacements

This section gives you a glimpse of what you can do with this useful command.

A very useful administration program for MySQL is `mysqladmin`. With `mysqladmin`, the operator can perform many administrative functions without having to enter into the MySQL Command Line Interface (CLI). For example, databases can be created and dropped via `mysqladmin`, and the server can be diagnosed or even shut down. Chapter 10 will cover `mysqladmin` in greater detail. For now I'll concentrate on a few useful options to get you started.

## Setting the root password

As shown in Chapters 3 through 5, the `mysqladmin` command is what you use to set up the initial password for the `root` user in MySQL, and that is the first thing you should do once you get a MySQL server running. To set the `root` password, issue the following command:

```
mysqladmin -u root password 'newpassword'
```

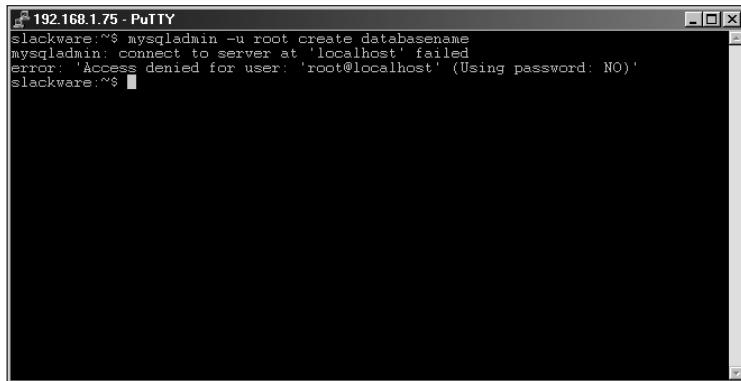
If the password has already been set for the `root` user, you must add the `-p` switch to the command and provide the existing password when prompted. Doing so looks like this:

```
mysqladmin -u root -p password 'mY$ql53'  
Enter password:
```

**Note**

Choose a password carefully. Passwords based on dictionary words (or which are otherwise easily guessable) are not acceptable for most environments. For better data protection, choose a password that is at least 6 characters and includes non-alphanumeric characters.

Most operations with `mysqladmin` require the `-p` switch to be set. If the `-p` switch is not set, you will probably see an error message (as shown in Figure 6-1):



```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
slackware:~$ mysqladmin -u root create databasename
mysqldadmin: connect to server at 'localhost' failed
error: 'Access denied for user: 'root@localhost' (Using password: NO)'
slackware:~$
```

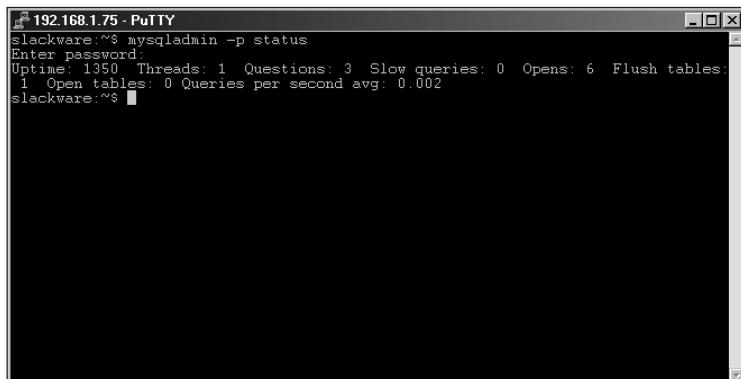
**Figure 6-1:** Common error message when password (-p) is not specified

## Checking MySQL server status

You can use `mysqladmin` to check the status of the MySQL server via the `ping` switch. The command looks like this:

```
mysqladmin -p ping
```

A brief status summary of the MySQL server is available via the `status` switch. An extended version of the `status` switch is `extended-status` (covered in Chapter 10). The output of the `status` statement will look something like Figure 6-2, in which the uptime for this particular server is 1350 seconds (of course, this server isn't very busy—only one thread running and no open tables).



```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
slackware:~$ mysqladmin -p status
Enter password:
Uptime: 1350  Threads: 1  Questions: 3  Slow queries: 0  Opens: 6  Flush tables:
1  Open tables: 0  Queries per second avg: 0.002
slackware:~$
```

**Figure 6-2:** Output of the `mysqladmin status` statement

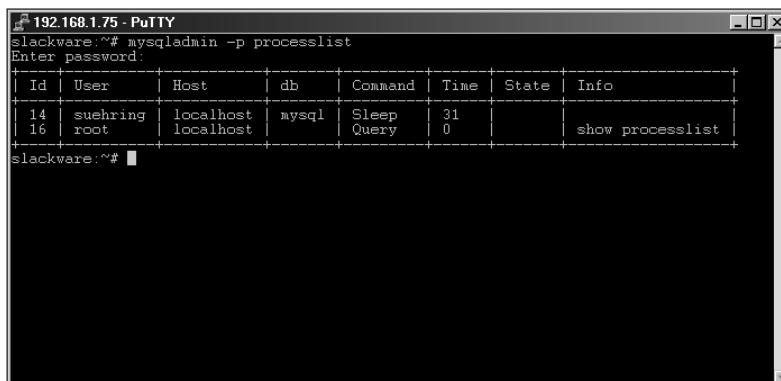
**Note**

Your status output can (and probably will) be substantially different from what's shown here.

## Dealing with inactive connections

Sometimes clients connect to the MySQL server but don't disconnect. As a result, the server can quickly exceed its maximum number of connections (especially if it's normally busy) in which case MySQL refuses further client connections till the traffic lets up.

The number of connections allowed in MySQL varies according to the system hardware, but the administrator can also set some variables to limit. I cover different size implementations in another chapter. To find out what connections are active to the MySQL server, use the `processlist` switch as shown in Figure 6-3:



A screenshot of a PuTTY terminal window titled "192.168.1.75 - PuTTY". The window shows the command "mysqladmin -p processlist" being run, followed by the password prompt "Enter password:". The output displays a table of active connections:

| ID | User     | Host      | db    | Command | Time | State | Info             |
|----|----------|-----------|-------|---------|------|-------|------------------|
| 14 | suehring | localhost | mysql | Sleep   | 31   |       |                  |
| 16 | root     | localhost |       | Query   | 0    |       | show processlist |

**Figure 6-3:** Output of the `mysqladmin processlist` statement

From the output in Figure 6-3, you can see a user named `suehring` is connected from `localhost` to the `mysql` database. The user is currently idle, as shown by the word `Sleep` under the `Command` column. Also shown is the `root` user running a query to show the `processlist`.

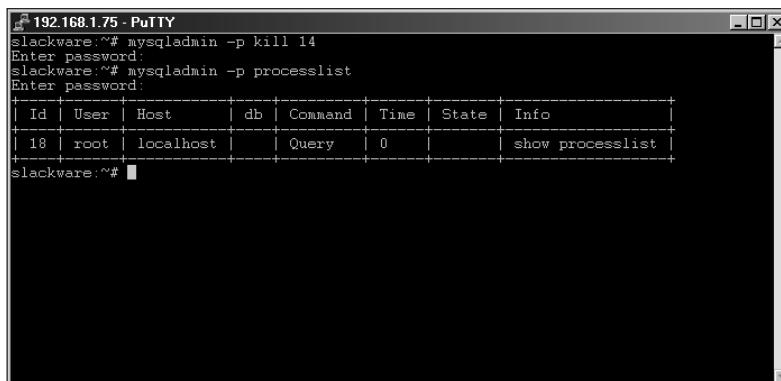
With the `mysqladmin kill` command, you can end a connection to the MySQL database as well. The syntax for killing a connection is as follows:

```
mysqladmin kill <id>
```

For example, to kill `suehring`'s connection to the database, you would issue the following command:

```
mysqladmin -p kill 14
```

Looking at the processlist output in Figure 6-4 you can see that the connection by suehring no longer exists:



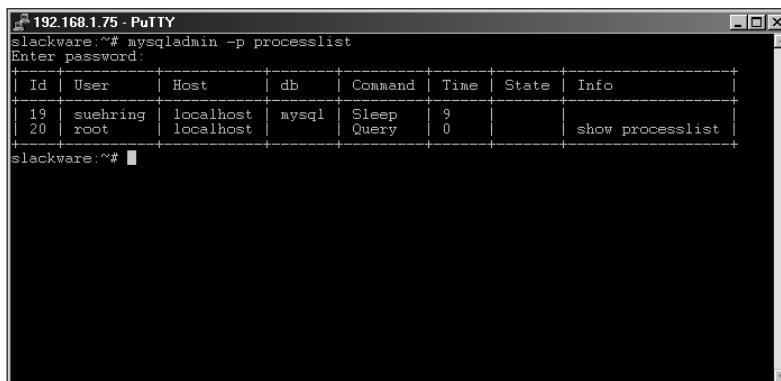
```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
slackware:~# mysqladmin -p kill 14
Enter password:
slackware:~# mysqladmin -p processlist
Enter password:
+----+----+----+----+----+----+----+
| Id | User | Host | db | Command | Time | State |
+----+----+----+----+----+----+----+
| 18 | root | localhost | Query | 0 | show processlist |
+----+----+----+----+----+----+----+
slackware:~#
```

**Figure 6-4:** A processlist statement after a thread has been killed

If suehring was connected via the MySQL CLI, the user will receive the following message when they attempt to perform an operation:

```
ERROR 2006: MySQL server has gone away
No connection. Trying to reconnect...
```

If the connection attempt is successful, the connection is issued a new ID and the operation is executed, as shown by the new processlist in Figure 6-5:



```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
slackware:~# mysqladmin -p processlist
Enter password:
+----+----+----+----+----+----+----+
| Id | User | Host | db | Command | Time | State |
+----+----+----+----+----+----+----+
| 19 | suehring | localhost | mysql | Sleep | 9 | show processlist |
| 20 | root | localhost | mysql | Query | 0 | show processlist |
+----+----+----+----+----+----+----+
slackware:~#
```

**Figure 6-5:** A new connection was created for the user.

## Shut down the server

`mysqladmin` can also be used to shut down the MySQL server. The syntax is intuitive for this operation:

```
mysqladmin -p shutdown
```

`mysqladmin` has a wide range of such useful switches, which provide the versatility that an administrative tool must have.

## Basic MySQL security

One of the first things you should do as a MySQL database administrator is change the `root` password. Accomplishing this task with `mysqladmin` is explained in Chapters 3, 4, and 5 depending on your installation and is covered in this chapter as well. If you have not already done so, now is the time to configure a secure `root` password for your MySQL server. No amount of database security will help if the `root` account can connect with a blank password or no password at all!

Another important, but sometimes overlooked, area of security for MySQL is the security of the machine that houses the MySQL server. If that computer, regardless of operating system, is not kept secure by applying the latest patches and rigorously maintaining security, no amount of database security will keep your data safe. If possible, utilize a firewall to prevent outside connections to the MySQL server or restrict connections to the MySQL server machine in another way such as `netfilter` or `ipchains` in Linux or via an access list on a router.

Numerous options exist for the way that the MySQL server itself is run. Those options are beyond the scope of this chapter but are covered in another chapter. Some options to consider when starting the server are the `--skip-networking` option which prevents the server from listening for network connections and the `--skip-show-database` option which prevents users from showing the names of the databases available on the server.

## Adding a user to MySQL

It is neither customary nor wise to give a mechanic the keys to your house so he or she can fix your car; doing so only creates unnecessary risks. The same can be said for granting access to your data: Using MySQL's `root` user account to perform everyday database operations is a bad idea. It is much more preferable to grant only the necessary access to specific users. Only allow as many privileges as are necessary for each user to complete his or her job.

MySQL access is based on a privilege system. MySQL holds an internal database aptly titled `mysql` with tables for housing privilege data called `user`, `host`, `db`, `tables_priv`, and `columns_priv`. A given user's access to data can be defined down to which columns the user can perform operations on in a particular database table.

For example, a user created for accessing product information for a Web site can be given read access to the product name and price columns in the inventory database's product table. In this manner, if a malicious or even well intentioned user were to gain access to your data through that username and password, they could only read the data and not modify it.

As stated above, access is based upon a privilege system. Privileges are granted and revoked based upon the username, host connecting from, operation requested, database, table, and column. Since MySQL holds the privilege data within tables, normal insert, delete, select, and update operations work as expected.

The basic statement to add a user and allow access to MySQL is the grant statement. Recall from my discussion on conventions used in this book that brackets such as <> denote required portions of syntax for the command, square brackets such as [ ] denote additional modifiers and parentheses such as () denote optional portions of commands. The syntax for the grant statement is as follows:

```
GRANT <privilege [ column(s) ] ( , privilege [ column(s) ] )> to  
<user>(@host) (IDENTIFIED BY 'password') [ WITH GRANT OPTION ];
```

MySQL provides a couple of macros for assigning common privileges. These include all and usage. By using the all macro, you grant all possible privileges to a user (as you may imagine, it's best to use this one sparingly). The usage macro is for adding a user account to MySQL without granting any privileges (and it's probably best not to leave it that way, since a user without privileges can't do anything on the system, including work).

As an example, I'll show you how to add a more-or-less typical user account to MySQL—after which you can use it throughout the book to try out many database operations. Although you don't grant this sample user account any privileges, you would add privileges in a real network situation (or there would be no reason to create the user). Adding users and granting privileges is covered in more detail in later chapters, including Chapter 12.

Connect to the mysql database as the root user from the MySQL CLI, as follows:

```
mysql -u root -p mysql  
mysql> grant usage on *.* to dbuser@localhost identified by  
'evh$5150';  
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.01 sec)
```

**Note**

It is not necessary to connect to the mysql database in order to grant and revoke access to the database via the grant and revoke statements.

Later on in the chapter, a different exercise adds specific privileges for this user account so it can connect to the database that you're about to create.

# Frequently Used MySQL Database Functions

Many of the functions that you use often with MySQL are covered in this section. Having worked with databases and MySQL for years, I encounter the same tasks on a frequent basis: Inserting and updating data, as well as simple selecting, are the bread and butter of many database operators and administrators' livelihoods. Even if you don't create databases often, you'll probably create one with MySQL at some point. Therefore this section shows you how to create your first database, offers a few sample tables, and lays out the building blocks for understanding Structured Query Language (SQL).

## Creating a database

Although the full syntax of the MySQL client interface can be about as complex as you need it to be (it's covered in Chapter 8), creating a database in MySQL is actually pretty simple.



### Note

As a prerequisite for creating a MySQL database, make sure your MySQL software is installed and running already. (If it's not, refer to Chapter 3, 4, or 5 to install the version of MySQL that's appropriate for your platform.)

There are two ways to create a database with MySQL:

- ◆ via the ‘mysqladmin’ command, like this:

```
mysqladmin (-p) create inventory
```

- ◆ from within the MySQL CLI, using the following syntax:

```
CREATE DATABASE [ if not exists ] <dbname>
```



### Note

The `if not exists` keyword produces an error message if a database already exists with the name given.

Recall that statements can span multiple lines in the MySQL CLI, and that you terminate a statement with a semicolon (;). Therefore, to create an example database from within the MySQL CLI, type the following:

```
mysql> create database inventory;  
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.00 sec)
```

The next step is to create tables within the database you just created. To create tables, you'll need to connect to the actual database you want to use. MySQL actually does not require you to be connected to the database in order to create tables. Although you can create tables by using a `<dbname>.tablename` syntax from within the MySQL CLI, it's often less confusing (which saves debugging time) if you connect to the database itself. If you are already within the MySQL CLI, you can type the following:

```
mysql> connect inventory;
Connection id: 10
Current database: inventory
```

If you are at the command prompt, you can get into the MySQL CLI and connect to the database by issuing the following command:

```
mysql -u <username> -p <dbname>
```

For example, here's one that connects the `root` account to the `inventory` database:

```
mysql -u root -p inventory
```

## Creating tables

Regardless of the method you choose, working with the database via the MySQL CLI means you can create tables to store information for a Web site. Before you can create the tables, however, you need a design for the database.



For help with developing a database design, review Chapter 7.

Assessing the needs of your site can suggest a practical direction for database design. For example, the Web site e-commerce database must track a range of different variables—including name of product, type of product, manufacturer, price, and quantity on hand. The initial design calls for three individual tables within the database; Tables 6-1, 6-2, and 6-3 provide examples of how such tables contribute to the design of the example database.

**Table 6-1  
Product Table**

| <b>Column Title</b> | <b>Column Type</b> | <b>Constraints</b>                     |
|---------------------|--------------------|--|
| product_id          | int                | not-null primary key<br>auto_increment |
| name                | varchar(75)        |  |
| quantity            | int                |  |
| price               | decimal(9,2)       |  |

**Table 6-2  
Manufacturer Table**

| <b>Column Title</b> | <b>Column Type</b> | <b>Constraints</b>                     |
|---------------------|--------------------|--|
| manufacturer_id     | int                | not-null primary key<br>auto_increment |
| name                | varchar(50)        |  |

**Table 6-3  
Category Table**

| <b>Column Title</b> | <b>Column Type</b> | <b>Constraints</b>                     |
|---------------------|--------------------|--|
| category_id         | int                | not-null primary key<br>auto_increment |
| product_category    | varchar(50)        |  |

The basic syntax for table creation in MySQL is as follows:

```
CREATE [ temporary ] TABLE [ if not exists ] <tablename>
[ ( <column definition,> ... ) ] [ <table options> ] [ <select
statement> ]
```

The *temporary* keyword creates a table that exists only for the duration of the connection.

- ◆ If there is a table of the same name, the existing table is hidden.
- ◆ Two separate connections can utilize the same temporary table name.

The *if not exists* keyword prevents the table from being created if a table of the same name exists. MySQL only verifies the name of the table and does not attempt to verify if the table structures are the same. When the *if not exists* keyword is used, the operation returns an *OK* regardless of the success or failure of the statement.

As indicated by the brackets ([ ]) around the column definition, it is not necessary to add all of the definitions for the columns when creating a table. At least one column definition is required. The column definition can be modified later through the use of the *ALTER TABLE* statement.

*table options* are used to create different types of tables. The basic table types with MySQL are ISAM, MyISAM and heap. Some table types, including *bdb* (*Berkeley\_db*), *Gemini*, and *innodb* may or may not be included with your MySQL distribution,

depending on the version of MySQL you have and the options chosen while compiling (if applicable). Table 6-4 illustrates the types of tables in MySQL.



MyISAM is the default table type in MySQL. If you try to create a table using a table type that is not supported by your version, MySQL creates it as MyISAM instead—with no warning or error message (though future versions of MySQL will produce a warning when the table type is not supported).

**Table 6-4**  
**MySQL Table Types**

| <b>Table Type</b>  | <b>Attribute</b>  |
|--------------------|---|
| bdb or Berkeley_db | Transactional, page-locking.  |
| gemini             | Transactional, row-level locking, not open-source. Available with NuSphere MySQL. |
| heap               | Data is only stored in volatile memory.   |
| isam               | Normal or standard table.   |
| innodb             | Another type of transactional, row-level locking table.                           |
| merge              | Collection of MyISAM tables to be used as a single table.                         |
| myisam             | As the newer version of isam, this is the default table type.                     |

You can help ensure the safety of your data by using a transactional table type such as bdb, Gemini, or innodb, and here's why:

- ♦ If a problem occurs within the database or system housing the database, the data within a transactional table can be recovered through the use of a rollback or the backup and update logs.
- ♦ Changes made to data can be rolled back or automatically undone if a portion of the update fails.



Transactional tables require more disk space, memory usage, and processor usage than MyISAM tables.

The example database will not need enhancements of transactional tables, therefore the default MyISAM table type will be acceptable.



More information on table types is available in Chapter 10.

For example, to create all three of the example tables, you would type in the following code:

```
CREATE TABLE product (
    product_id int not null primary key auto_increment,
    name varchar(75),
    quantity int,
    price decimal(9,2)
);

CREATE TABLE manufacturer (
    manufacturer_id int not null primary key auto_increment,
    name varchar(50)
);

CREATE TABLE category (
    category_id int not null primary key auto_increment,
    product_category varchar(50)
);
```

The constraints placed on the `id` columns in the tables create a primary key, which is not tied specifically to any real-world use. Accordingly, it's both safe and desirable to `auto_increment` the value as new records are added to the table.

You now have a working database system that can track inventory for an e-commerce Web site.

## Inserting and updating data

A database is only as useful as the data it contains. Therefore, you need to add products to the inventory database. In this section I'll look at how to insert data as well as how to update the data, which is often just as important as the initial insert of the data itself.

### Inserting data

You're ready to insert a few records into the database. You'll accomplish this task via the MySQL CLI. You can insert data into a database via a number of methods including importing from a file or inserting through a program or script. Those topics are covered elsewhere in this book. For now, the MySQL CLI will work because you are only going to add a few records. The basic syntax for an insert is as follows:

```
INSERT [ low_priority | delayed ] [ ignore ] [ into ]
<tablename>
[ ( <columnname>, ... ) ] VALUES (<insert expression>, )
```



Other syntax for the insert statement is discussed in Chapter 9 and in Appendix A.

The `low_priority` keyword delays the insert until no other clients are reading from the table. Use of the `low_priority` keyword is not recommended for MyISAM table types because simultaneous inserts are not possible in such usage.

Use the `delayed` keyword if some clients cannot wait for an insert to complete. This keyword only works with ISAM and MyISAM table types. The client receives an OK for the statement immediately, and the insert is run when the table is not in use by another thread.

Specifying the `ignore` keyword causes duplicate rows to be ignored and not entered when a value collides with a primary key or unique value. If this keyword is not specified, an error occurs and the insert is aborted. It is important to note that records will be inserted up to the record where the collision occurred. For example, if you import a number of records and a collision occurs at record number 432, all records up to number 432 will be inserted into the database.

The `into` keyword is not required, though it can be useful for improving readability.

**Note**

If you don't want to insert values into all columns in a table, specify the column names in parentheses, separated by commas, before you type the required `VALUES` keyword.

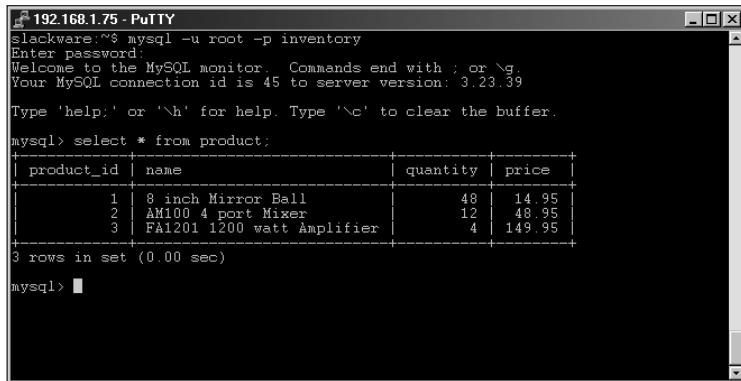
You can now insert a few rows of data into the example database; the SQL for the insert is as follows:

```
INSERT into product VALUES (NULL, "8 inch Mirror Ball", 48, 14.95);
INSERT into product VALUES (NULL, "AM100 4 port Mixer", 12, 48.95);
INSERT into product VALUES (NULL, "FA1201 1200 watt Amplifier", 4, 149.95);
```

The sample data just given shows the most common type of insert. Notice that you placed the keyword `NULL` in the first value. Recall that the first column in the table definition is `product_id`, which is an auto-incrementing field; therefore, it is not acceptable to enter a value for this field. The `NULL` keyword is used as a placeholder in this example and will be substituted automatically with the correct value by MySQL.

## Selecting data

Because selecting is at least as common as inserting, I'll jump ahead slightly and use a simple `SELECT` statement. Figure 6-6 shows the three records you just entered.



```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
slackware:~$ mysql -u root -p inventory
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor.  Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 45 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> select * from product;
+-----+-----+-----+
| product_id | name | quantity | price |
+-----+-----+-----+
| 1 | 8 inch Mirror Ball | 48 | 14.95 |
| 2 | AM100 4 port Mixer | 12 | 48.95 |
| 3 | FA1201 1200 watt Amplifier | 4 | 149.95 |
+-----+-----+-----+
3 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> ■
```

**Figure 6-6:** Sample output of a basic SELECT statement

Cross-Reference

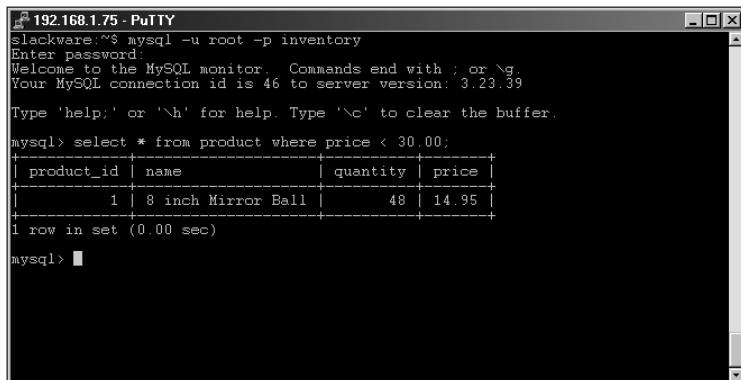
For the full syntax of the SELECT statement, see Chapter 9.

Since I'm looking to jumpstart your usage of MySQL, the basic syntax for the SELECT statement is as follows:

```
SELECT <select phrase> [ FROM <table(s)> [ WHERE <where phrase> ]  
[ GROUP BY <group-by clause> ] [ORDER BY <order-by clause> ]  
[ LIMIT # of rows ] ]
```

The example above selects all columns and rows from the product table.

Use of the where clause modifies the select statement to look only for rows that match the <where phrase>. For example, if you wanted to look for products that had a price less than \$30.00 you could issue the statement in Figure 6-7.



```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
slackware:~$ mysql -u root -p inventory
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor.  Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 46 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> select * from product where price < 30.00;
+-----+-----+-----+
| product_id | name | quantity | price |
+-----+-----+-----+
| 1 | 8 inch Mirror Ball | 48 | 14.95 |
+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> ■
```

**Figure 6-7:** Selecting records that show a price less than \$30.00.

The `where` clause is extremely useful (and almost constantly in use) whenever you work with data in a MySQL database.

The `group by` clause modifies the results of the `select` by ordering the columns by similar data. The `order by` clause arranges the resulting data from a `select` statement into the order specified by the `order-by` clause. For example, to select all the products in order by price (from lowest to highest), you issue the statement like the following (its results are shown in Figure 6-8):

```
select * from product order by price;
```

```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
slackware:~$ mysql -u root -p inventory
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor.  Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 47 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> select * from product order by price;
+-----+-----+-----+
| product_id | name          | quantity | price   |
+-----+-----+-----+
|      1 | 8 inch Mirror Ball |      48 | 14.95  |
|      2 | AM100 4 port Mixer |      12 | 48.95  |
|      3 | FA1201 1200 watt Amplifier |      4 | 149.95 |
+-----+-----+-----+
3 rows in set (0.01 sec)

mysql> ■
```

**Figure 6-8:** Selecting records in a certain order

**Note**

It just happens that the price is in order of product ID for the example database. Such a neat result rarely happens with live data.

If you had a large amount of data in a table and you needed to look at the first  $n$  rows of data, you could do so by adding the `limit` clause onto the end of the `SELECT` statement. An example is shown in Figure 6-9.

```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
slackware:~$ mysql -u root -p inventory
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor.  Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 48 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> select * from product limit 1;
+-----+-----+-----+
| product_id | name          | quantity | price   |
+-----+-----+-----+
|      1 | 8 inch Mirror Ball |      48 | 14.95  |
+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.01 sec)

mysql> ■
```

**Figure 6-9:** Limiting rows of a `SELECT` statement



There are many more options for the `SELECT` statement. Those options, along with additional coverage of the `where`, `group_by`, `order_by`, and `limit` clauses, appear in greater detail in Chapter 9 and in Appendix A.

## Updating data

Updating your data is just as important as inserting the original data—if not more so. Commonly used syntax for the `UPDATE` statement looks like this:

```
UPDATE <tablename> SET <columnname> = <value> ( , <columnname>
= <value> ) [ WHERE <where phrase> ] [ LIMIT <# of rows> ];
```

For example, to update the price of one of the products you could do the following:

```
update product set price = '15.95' where product_id = '1';
```

Figure 6-10 shows the output of a `SELECT` statement that enables the administrator to look at that product after updating.

A screenshot of a PuTTY terminal window titled "192.168.1.75 - PuTTY". The window displays a MySQL session. The user has run an UPDATE query to change the price of a product from 15.95 to 14.95. After the update, a SELECT query is run to show the updated row in the product table.

```
slackware:~$ mysql -u root -p inventory
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor. Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 50 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> update product set price = '14.95' where product_id = '1';
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.00 sec)
Rows matched: 1  Changed: 1  Warnings: 0

mysql> select * from product where product_id = '1';
+-----+-----+-----+
| product_id | name          | quantity | price   |
+-----+-----+-----+
|       1    | 8 inch Mirror Ball |      48 | 14.95  |
+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> ■
```

**Figure 6-10:** The updated product is now shown in the database

If you wanted to update both the price and quantity of a product, you could do so with the following example:

```
update product set price = '14.95',quantity = '60' where
product_id = '1';
```

Figure 6-11 shows the final table. Notice the price for the "8 inch Mirror Ball" is once again \$14.95 and the quantity is now 60.

```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
slackware:~$ mysql -u root -p inventory
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor.  Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 52 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> select * from product;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| product_id | name          | quantity | price   |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
|      1 | 8 inch Mirror Ball |       60 | 14.95 |
|      2 | AM100 4 port Mixer |       12 | 48.95 |
|      3 | FA1201 1200 watt Amplifier |        4 | 149.95 |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
3 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>
```

Figure 6-11: The final table layout after updates

## Preparing a new user for access to the database

Up until now you've been doing the inserts, selects, and updates in the inventory database as the `root` user. Recall (from a bit earlier in this chapter) that you added a user to the database but you couldn't grant any access rights since you didn't have the database built. It's now time to allow the new user access to the `inventory` database.

Since you've already added the user account, you can utilize the `update` statement to revise the permissions and privileges for that user. If you are still in the MySQL CLI, connect to the database called `mysql` by typing the following:

```
connect mysql;
```

The statement should have similar output to this:

```
Connection id: X
Current database: mysql
```

You are now connected to the '`mysql`' database, which holds the grant tables for privileges within the server across all databases.

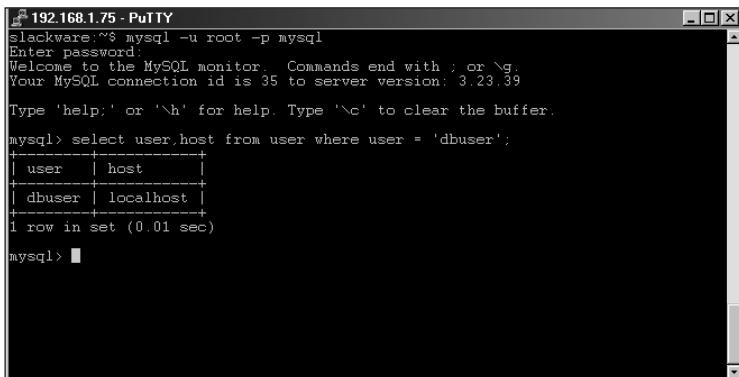
**Note**

You could have remained connected to the `inventory` database and still granted privileges. For simplicity's sake (and to save time in the jumpstart), I had you connect to the `mysql` database instead.

Since you granted the `usage` privilege for the new user in a previous section, the basic framework has already been created for us within the `user` table. To verify that the user exists, issue the following query:

```
select user,host from user where user = 'dbuser';
```

You should see output similar to the Figure 6-12.



```
192.168.1.75 - Putty
slackware:~$ mysql -u root -p mysql
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor.  Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 35 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.
mysql> select user,host from user where user = 'dbuser';
+-----+-----+
| user | host  |
+-----+-----+
| dbuser | localhost |
+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.01 sec)

mysql>
```

**Figure 6-12:** The new user in the database server

If you don't see the output shown in Figure 6-12 when the query has finished, you may want to review the "Adding Users to MySQL" section in this chapter and do some troubleshooting.

Assuming that you have the same output as given in Figure 6-12, it's now time to modify the privileges for this user account so you can connect to the `inventory` database and perform the necessary operations safely. The user account must be able to select rows from the database, as well as insert, update, and delete records. The statement that grants these privileges looks like this:

```
grant select,insert,update,delete on inventory.* to
dbuser@localhost;
```

Exit the MySQL CLI by typing `exit` or `quit`. Reconnect as the new user, like this:

```
mysql -u dbuser -p inventory
```

You should now be prompted for the password that you used to create the user. Upon entering the password you will be granted access to the `inventory` database. Test out your new privileges by issuing a simple `select * from product;` query. Your results should be similar to the example in the previous section.

You now have a simplified version of an electronic-commerce database.

## Altering tables

Regardless of how much time, money, and effort is put into database design, inevitably databases need some redesigning or modification now and then. The reason is simple: Business rules change. The way you use data—and the way data is gathered and stored—changes as time goes by. MySQL allows the database

administrator to change the layout of tables within a database—adding, removing, or modifying columns—via the `alter table` statement. The basic syntax of this command is as follows:

```
ALTER (IGNORE) TABLE <tablename> <alter phrase> [ , <alter phrase> ]
```

Common `<alter phrase>` variables to use with the `ALTER TABLE` statement include the following:

```
ADD <columnname> <create specification>
CHANGE (COLUMN) <oldcolumnname> <create specification>
MODIFY (COLUMN) <create specification>
DROP (COLUMN) <columnname>
RENAME (TO) <newtablename>
```



### Cross-Reference

For more about `<alter phrase>` variables, see Chapter 9.

The `IGNORE` modifier handles instances where there are duplicate values for a column that is being modified to a type where uniqueness is enforced. With `IGNORE` specified the first row is kept where values collide and all others are discarded. If `IGNORE` is not specified and a collision occurs between two values, the change is aborted and any specified changes are rolled back.

The inventory database shows that the `product` table is not tied to the manufacturer table in any way; there's no convenient way to link a product with a manufacturer. This was a purposeful flaw in the database design so you could use the `ALTER TABLE` statement to modify the `product` table and remedy this situation. From the MySQL CLI, enter the following command:

```
alter table product add manufacturer_id int;
```

If you've followed along thus far, you should receive an error message when you perform this operation. That's because you connected to the MySQL inventory database as the `dbuser` you created—but you didn't grant that user the privilege to alter tables. The error message you receive should look like this:

```
ERROR 1044: Access denied for user: 'dbuser@localhost' to
database 'inventory'
```

Disconnect from the CLI and reconnect to the `inventory` database as the `root` user:

```
mysql -u root -p inventory
```

When you run the `alter table` statement from above again you should have much better luck and the `inventory` database will now be updated so that you can

include a manufacturer ID in the table. However, since you named the manufacturer\_id column the same in both the product and the manufacturer tables, you should probably rename the manufacturer\_id column in the product table so you don't get them mixed up later. Here's the necessary command:

```
alter table product change manufacturer_id prod_manu_id int;
```

After you've run this command, disconnect from the CLI and reconnect as the dbuser that you created earlier.

## Describing tables

You should now be connected via the MySQL CLI as the dbuser username that you created earlier. A description of a column or columns in any table is available when you issue the DESCRIBE statement. Its basic syntax is as follows:

```
DESCRIBE <tablename> (columnname [ wildcard ])
```

**Note**

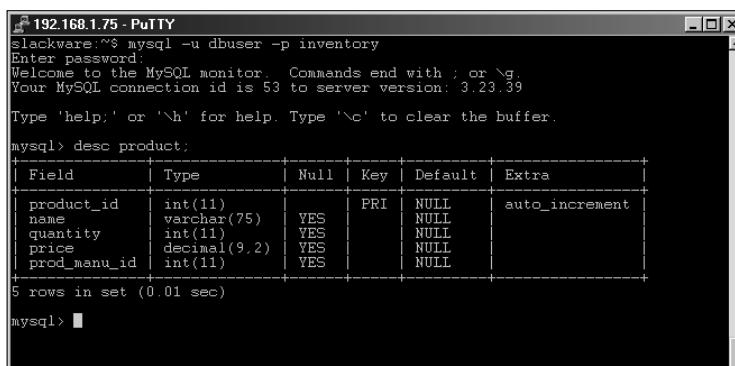
The DESCRIBE statement may be abbreviated to desc and like other statements and commands in MySQL, it is not case-sensitive.

You can use the optional *columnname* and *wildcard* arguments to obtain descriptions of the column or columns specified.

The SHOW statement (which works much like the DESCRIBE statement) shows the columns in a table, though it's quicker to use the DESCRIBE statement (or even its desc abbreviation) to do so. The command syntax looks like this:

```
SHOW columns FROM <tablename> [ FROM <dbname> ] [ LIKE <wildcard> ]
```

For example, Figure 6-13 shows the changes you made in the last section, using the desc statement.



```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
slackware:~$ mysql -u dbuser -p inventory
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor. Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 53 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or 'h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.
mysql> desc product;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Field | Type  | Null | Key  | Default | Extra       |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| product_id | int(11) | YES  | PRI  | NULL    | auto_increment |
| name        | varchar(75) | YES  |       | NULL    |              |
| quantity    | int(11) | YES  |       | NULL    |              |
| price       | decimal(9,2) | YES  |       | NULL    |              |
| prod_manu_id | int(11) | YES  |       | NULL    |              |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
5 rows in set (0.01 sec)

mysql> ■
```

Figure 6-13: Using desc to describe a table layout

The same command using the SHOW statement is as follows:

```
show columns from product;
```

An example of a wildcard column search uses the following query to see all columns in the product table that start with the letter "p" (the output is shown in Figure 6-14):

```
desc product 'p%';
```

| Field        | Type         | Null | Key | Default | Extra          |
|--------------|--------------|------|-----|---------|----------------|
| product_id   | int(11)      |      | PRI | NULL    | auto_increment |
| price        | decimal(9,2) | YES  |     | NULL    |                |
| prod_manu_id | int(11)      | YES  |     | NULL    |                |

3 rows in set (0.00 sec)

**Figure 6-14:** Using a wildcard in a DESCRIBE statement

The same statement using the SHOW statement looks like this:

```
show columns from product like 'p%';
```

## Looking at other database objects

The previous section covered the DESCRIBE statement as well as the SHOW statement for looking at column information within a table. Using the SHOW statement, you can get a list of database objects. This section looks at some typical and useful examples of this statement.

### Cross-Reference

Full coverage of the SHOW statement is in Chapter 9.

Consider the following command as an initial example:

```
SHOW DATABASES (LIKE <wildcard>);
```

This statement shows all the databases in MySQL. If a wildcard is specified, the statement returns databases matching the wildcard, if any.

### Note

The capability of merely looking at the names of the databases does not imply that the current user has permissions to connect or use those databases.

To see the tables in detail, you would issue the following command:

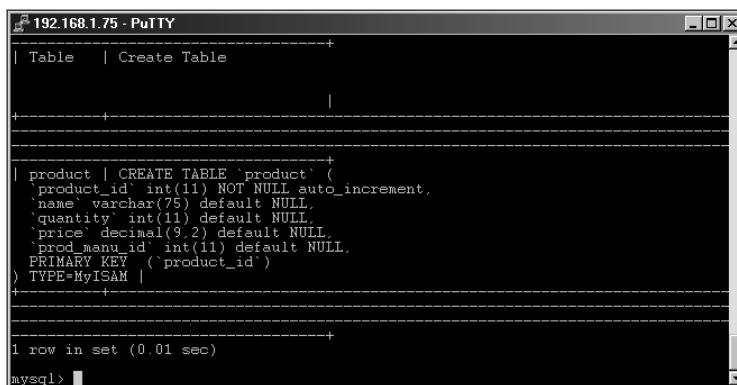
```
SHOW (OPEN) TABLES (FROM <databasename>) (LIKE <wildcard>);
```

The SHOW TABLES statement is very useful to find out names of tables in the current database or any database through the use of the from modifier.

```
SHOW CREATE TABLE <tablename>;
```

Sometimes you may have to dump table structure if you want to recreate the tables later (or on another system) for some different use. For example, as shown in Figure 6-15, some output from the SHOW CREATE TABLE statement from the inventory database looks like this:

```
SHOW CREATE TABLE product;
```



The screenshot shows a PuTTY terminal window titled "192.168.1.75 - PuTTY". The command entered was "SHOW CREATE TABLE product;". The output displays the CREATE TABLE statement for the 'product' table. The table has columns: product\_id (int(11) NOT NULL auto\_increment), name (varchar(75) default NULL), quantity (int(11) default NULL), price (decimal(9,2) default NULL), and prod\_manu\_id (int(11) default NULL). A PRIMARY KEY is defined on the product\_id column, and the table type is MyISAM. The entire statement is as follows:

```
| product | CREATE TABLE `product` (
`product_id` int(11) NOT NULL auto_increment,
`name` varchar(75) default NULL,
`quantity` int(11) default NULL,
`price` decimal(9,2) default NULL,
`prod_manu_id` int(11) default NULL,
PRIMARY KEY (`product_id`)
) TYPE=MyISAM |
```

At the bottom of the terminal window, it says "1 row in set (0.01 sec)".

**Figure 6-15:** Output of the SHOW CREATE TABLE statement for the product table

With the information from the SHOW CREATE TABLE statement, the database administrator could copy the output to create a copy of the table or save the output for later use.

## Summary

This chapter gave a brief overview of some of the most common tasks involved in creating and managing a database.

- ◆ mysqladmin is a useful command for obtaining status information of the server, changing passwords, killing server processes, and shutting down the server itself.

- ◆ Basic security includes not only creating strong passwords, but also granting users only those privileges that are necessary to complete their tasks.
- ◆ You can create a database creation by using `mysqladmin` or by issuing the appropriate commands from the MySQL Command-Line Interface (CLI).
- ◆ Creating and altering tables as well as inserting and updating data is a common task in MySQL.
- ◆ The `SELECT` statement is another versatile command, used frequently in the course of administering a MySQL system.





# Database Concepts and Design

---

**T**hough many database books begin with a chapter on database concepts and design, we get our hands dirty with what you should know both with databases and with MySQL in particular. However, the underlying concepts of databases and their design are important.

## Concepts of Databases

Databases are many things to many people. It is a mistake to say that all databases are electronic. Some other databases include a library and a recipe card file.

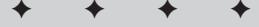
### What is data?

Data is just about anything you can imagine *and quantify*. For example, the records and numbers you keep in a checkbook register are data. The stats you write down if you keep score at a baseball game are data.

For our purposes, I ignore checkbook registers and concentrate on the electronic form of data. However, you could enter personal checks or baseball stats into a computer database program. At the basic level, data is data.

### What is a database?

Databases are not simply electronic places to store data. As already alluded to, thinking of databases in terms not limited to computers is one of the first steps to understanding the concepts.



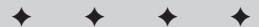
### In This Chapter

Comparing concepts of databases

Creating a database design

Analyzing requirements and defining logical design

Approaching physical design and implementation



**Note**

MySQL is not a database. It is software for *creating and managing* a database.

Databases keep information in *tables*. A table is a structure consisting of at least one column, but usually many more. A database is then a collection of one or more tables of related information. Sorting, indexing, and queries organize data to help the database user.

The letters SQL stand for Structured Query Language.

## Why use a Database?

Someone much wiser than I am said, “Always use the right tool for the job”—and it’s no less true in the world of computing. I’ve seen countless uses of applications such as spreadsheets and word processors (instead of databases) to store data. For an annual holiday card list, this is fine; the time required to set up a database is probably out of proportion to the modest amount of data involved. In the business world, however, a spreadsheet is not an acceptable tool for storing large amounts of data.

For such applications as product catalogs and customer information, a database is by far the best method of storing and retrieving data. Databases offer a way to utilize data efficiently.

Most enterprise-level databases must be created via software designed for the purpose: a Relational Database Management System (RDBMS). Such programs, including MySQL, support *transactional table types*—tables designed to handle the frequent updates and modifications that electronic commerce entails. Each operation performed on data within a database is known as a *transaction*.

**Note**

A transactional system can recreate its steps in case of data corruption. In the event of a system crash, data could be restored from the last tape backup and then the transaction log could be played against the database to restore the data to its condition just before the system crash.

**Caution**

Transactional tables are not completely free from the risk of data loss. Even the best RDBMS cannot offer a 100-percent guarantee that no data loss will occur in a catastrophic system failure.

A successful RDBMS meets the *ACID* test for these issues:

- ◆ **Atomicity:** When a transaction is sent from the user to the database server, the operation is either committed fully or rolled back. In other words, if the hard disk can’t hold the whole transaction, the transaction would be rolled back as if it had never happened. In this manner, data can always be kept consistent.
- ◆ **Consistency:** Operations that violate a rule or a similar mechanism are not committed to the database. If a user doesn’t have access permission, attempts to write to the table are rejected.

- ◆ **Isolation:** An operation on the database is complete before another operation becomes aware of it. If a user is adding records to tables while another user is reading from the same tables, the reader isn't shown results from partial operations. Such partial information could lead to inconsistent and confusing results for the reader.
- ◆ **Durability:** Once a transaction is committed to the database, it is guaranteed to be there. If a catastrophic event happens to the disk, the database will still hold that transaction (assuming no other hardware failure causes a disk corruption).

## How are databases used?

Databases are used in all areas of business. Companies track information about their customers inside of databases. Ever wonder why insurance costs more in some geographical areas than others? Behind the answer is a database. Insurance companies keep general claim information so they may sort and query the data to find patterns that exhibit higher risks—and pass the cost of those risks on to the customer as higher premiums.

Databases have also been there for the explosive growth of the Internet. Online shopping is driven by databases—some of them running on MySQL. When you search for the latest Van Halen CD at your favorite online music store, your search is handed back to a database that then looks up and retrieves the right information, hopefully within a few seconds. Databases can retrieve information lightning-quick and most database server implementations, including MySQL, support *replication* so that the database administrator can add more servers to handle requests.

Databases are becoming more visible in law enforcement. Databases to aid law enforcement are nothing new. (Watching an episode of *Dragnet* from the Sixties, you can see the use of punch cards to search for Social Security records). But databases are more widely used and in ways barely imagined when Jack Webb caught television bandits.

## Database Design

*Database design* is the process of determining and organizing the information to track. Many iterations of a database design occur as you try to achieve an efficient design and maximize your use of resources.

**Tip**

Many simple database applications don't need a strict database design. The effort isn't warranted for the application. I may be invoking the ire of traditional database administrators and designers by stating this. However, spending three months in design meetings for a database that is used once a month for non-critical functions is a waste of resources. For complicated business processes, I strongly recommend spending time designing the database.

The process of designing a complicated database correctly is not easy. It takes time and effort, but the result is worth it. Data modeling is usually the first step in the process. This includes defining the business processes and building an Entity Relationship Diagram.

One of the first processes to design a database is to meet with the end user of the database or data. If you are that person, hold a meeting with yourself. Offer yourself refreshments, too. If you are meeting with clients (internal or external), prepare to get as much information as possible about the business process or database to be designed. The extra work at this stage goes a long way towards making the database successful. A quality data model easily translates into a database.

## The Database Life Cycle

Especially in the business world, a database system behaves much like a living thing. Each stage of its life cycle has distinctive concerns and tasks that fall into a rough sequence much like the following:

- 1. Requirements analysis:** This first step is made up of what seemingly endless meetings that analyze what is required for the new database. The owners and users of the database define their business processes and document the entities, attributes, and relationships that will make up the database.

This analysis is most important to the success of the database project. Without a complete picture of the business process—or full documentation of what the application must have and be—the project will fail. Regardless of how much time goes into the next phases of the project, it's headed for disruption (at best) or disaster (at worst) if you overlook a major item in this step.

Sometimes the systems analyst (you, as administrator) can get so wrapped up in the project itself that he or she neglects to put much thought into the end user. I've found it most helpful to involve the actual end user of the application during the first phase of the design—through interviews and observation. In most instances, you are designing a replacement or improvement for an existing system. The end users are your best source of ideas for improvements in the next version.

Involvement of the end user can come in many forms. End users can be in planning meetings where the application functions and needs can be determined. However, a more successful method for learning how an application is used and can be improved is *observation* of the end users doing their jobs.

Many times those being observed will alter their behavior, either consciously or subconsciously, thus lessening the effectiveness of the information gathered. I recommend a combination of interviews or meetings, and direct observation for a successful analysis.

- 2. Logical design of the database:** This step lays out the logical structure of the program in terms of its tables and their relationships. Three tasks predominate:

- Designing the layout of the database tables (often starting with an Entity-Relationship Diagram)

- Normalizing the candidate tables
- Writing the SQL to produce the database and tables

This second stage can quickly slow a project to a snail's pace. If you get too many cooks in the kitchen during the first phase, the proverbial database soup can spoil. Keeping the second phase organized and on track takes effort. Many times people will want to iterate over a database design not realizing that business rules change and the database will have to change with it.

**3. Physical design of the database:** This step involves actually developing and planning the physical layout of the data within your network and system topology. In a distributed environment, this step includes

- Planning for data distribution
- Organizing such physical elements as memory use, table-cache size, and buffer size



MySQL server variables are discussed in a later chapter.

**4. Implementation and subsequent modification of the database:** During these last steps in the database life cycle, you enter the SQL or other language into your database, along with other scripts and management tools that you've developed while planning and designing the database.

If all goes well, then by the time you reach this last step, you've found all the objects that should be included in the database. Don't worry if you suddenly implement the database and find that you should add a column to all its tables. MySQL syntax can alter table structure rather painlessly.

An icon of a notepad with a pen resting on it.

#### Note

Regardless of how much research and planning you do, a long-term application will must change to be useful. Business rules and processes change over time, so the database and applications must change, too. Good planning in the beginning will make those changes easier and less costly.

## Logical Design

After you gather information on the business process and items to be documented, you are ready to create the *logical design*. This master plan for the logical entities (and their relationships) that make up the database should be as complete and thorough as possible. A good logical design has many facets and phases, including the analysis of relationships and the setting of constraints.

### Entities and attributes

At a basic level of a data model are *entities*—objects that you are interested in as part of the data model you are creating. For example, if you were making an online

store, you would want to know the customer's name. *Steve Suehring* is an example of an entity. The specific name, Steve Suehring, is the entity. For a successful online store, you probably want more than one customer. Therefore you should *abstract* the entity into a general *entity type*. For this example, the entity type would be *Customer*.

Entities have identifying qualities — *attributes*. For example, the *Customer* entity of Steve Suehring has such attributes as height, weight, home address, and telephone number. To manage all the attributes of all the entities, you abstract the attributes into *attribute types* that become part of all the entity types.

At the initial meeting(s) for producing a data model, you define the entities — and subsequent entity types — that you are interested in. In addition, you will most likely start determining attributes and attribute types as well. For now, the entity types can be written down as a simple list. For example, suppose you know that both customer information and product information are to be kept in the database. You could create a list somewhat like the one given here — which, though incomplete, works fine for a basic site:

- ◆ Customer
- ◆ Product
- ◆ Manufacturer

That gives you three entity types. At this point in the research process, I usually jump right into listing some attribute types for each entity type, like this:

- ◆ Name
- ◆ Address
- ◆ Supplemental Address
- ◆ City
- ◆ State
- ◆ Zip
- ◆ Telephone Number
- ◆ E-mail Address
- ◆ Credit Card Number
- ◆ Credit Card Expiration
- ◆ Name on Card
- ◆ Product Name
- ◆ Product Price
- ◆ Quantity on Hand
- ◆ Manufacturer
- ◆ Product Category

 Tip

You can add fun things like Ratings and Reviews for products later. (And if the attribute types in the list are starting to resemble column headings, that's not accidental. More about that later.)

Upon further review, I believe Name should be broken into two separate attributes, First Name and Last Name. I also believe Telephone Number should be broken apart to account for area code and number. (I assume that the online store only ships within the United States, otherwise I would add Country Code as well.) It would also be useful to know the credit card type, even though this information can usually be gleaned from the digits of the card. Having the credit-card type allows some *sanity checking* (the use of a special program to ferret out and report system problems) later in the process. In addition, it would be useful to keep information about the manufacturers such as their address and contact information as well. Here's what the new attribute type list looks like:

- ◆ First Name
- ◆ Last Name
- ◆ Address
- ◆ Supplemental Address
- ◆ City
- ◆ State
- ◆ Zip
- ◆ Area Code
- ◆ Telephone Number
- ◆ E-mail Address
- ◆ Credit Card Type
- ◆ Credit Card Number
- ◆ Credit Card Expiration
- ◆ Name on Card
- ◆ Product Name
- ◆ Product Price
- ◆ Quantity On Hand
- ◆ Manufacturer Name
- ◆ Manufacturer Address
- ◆ Manufacturer City
- ◆ Manufacturer State
- ◆ Manufacturer Zip

- ◆ Manufacturer Contact
- ◆ Manufacturer Area Code
- ◆ Manufacturer Telephone Number
- ◆ Product Category

Now that I have a list of entity types and attribute types for the data model, I can start to analyze how they relate.

## Relationships

In my example, it's obvious that some attribute types relate to each other. For example, each First and Last Name pair can have one or more Addresses, Supplemental Addresses, Cities, States, and Zips.

As should be evident, First Name/Last Name (which I will refer to as Customer Name for brevity's sake), Address, Supplemental Address, City, State, Zip (which I will refer to simply as Address), and so on are all items relating to the Customer entity type. It quickly becomes clear that I could go down a slippery slope because one Customer Name could have more than one Address and one Address could have more than one Customer Name.

However, what may appear clear is not necessarily as clear as you may think. While it is true that a Customer Name could have more than one Address, a Customer Record is made up of one and only one Address. What appeared to be a problem in the design is actually a false relationship.



### Tip

By adding other entity types, you can add support for more than one address to allow the customer to ship to different addresses.

Each relationship has a degree of *cardinality*. In other words, there can be one and only one Manufacturer of a certain product, but that Manufacturer can have many products. Determining the relationships is an art that takes practice. Thinking through the business process thoroughly will help to work out the true relationships for your data model.

Figure 7-1 shows an example of relationships in an Entity-Relationship Diagram. The example illustrates the relationship between manufacturer and products.

- ◆ Each manufacturer can have one or more products, represented by the crow's-foot line near the Product box.
- ◆ Each product can and must have one and only one manufacturer, as represented by the single line near the manufacturer box.

**Tip**

The O shape near the Product entity type indicates that the existence of a product is not required for a Manufacturer to exist in the database. This O is missing from the Manufacturer side of the relationship because a manufacturer is required if there is a product in the database.



**Figure 7-1:** Relationships among some example entity types

## Entity-relationship diagrams

With a list of entity and attribute types for a data model in place—and a basic understanding of how to relate them to each other—you create a diagram that formally shows the relationships of each entity type. The diagram simply groups together like information. This will help to normalize the data and understand the business processes, and possibly find additional entities, attributes, and relationships that must be included in the data model.

*Square or rectangular boxes on the diagram represent entities. Relationships can be represented by number of line formats.*

In looking again at the list of attribute types in the example, it is evident that certain customer-related information is stored in the database. My initial draft of an Entity-Relationship Diagram (ERD) for the example database is shown in Figure 7-2.

## Analysis of diagrams

As I touched on earlier, the manufacturer and product relationships are (mostly) fine. One manufacturer can have many products, but a given product can have only one manufacturer. Examining customer and credit-card relationships in the draft of the ERD in Figure 7-2, you can see that each customer can have more than one credit card stored in the database. However, each credit card can only be associated with one customer. This is not what I would like—I want the entire family to create accounts and use Dad's credit card to buy. To alleviate this problem, I must make both sides of the relationship many-to-many. The second draft of the ERD, in Figure 7-3, shows the new many-to-many relationship.

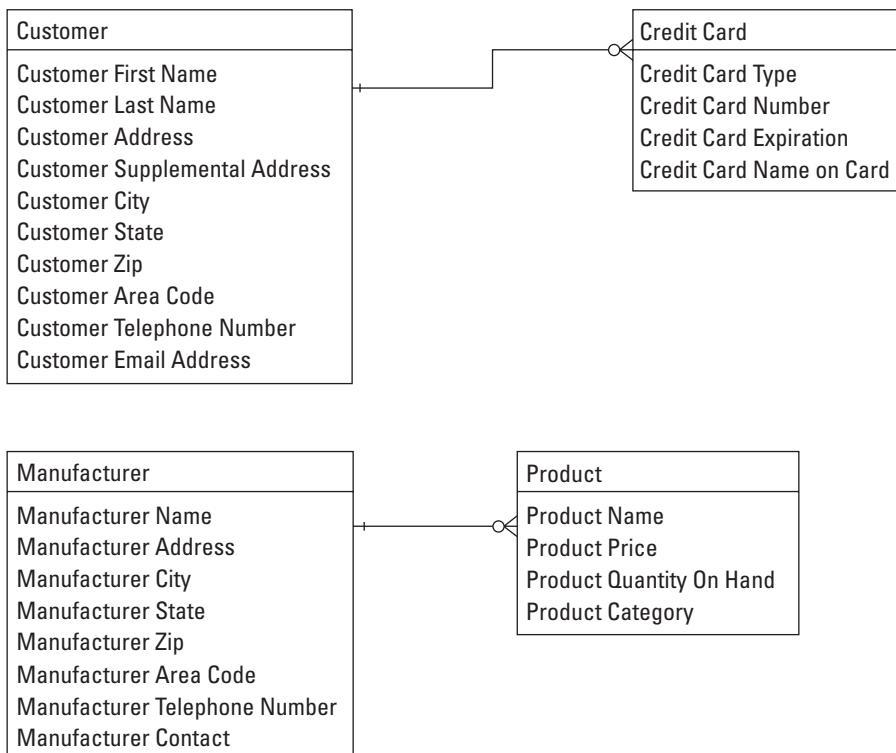
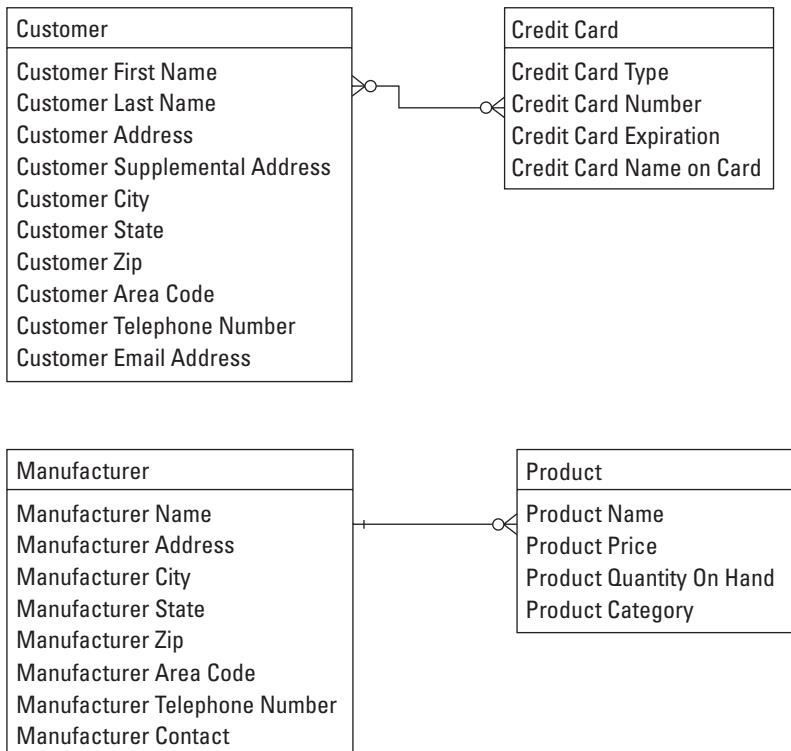
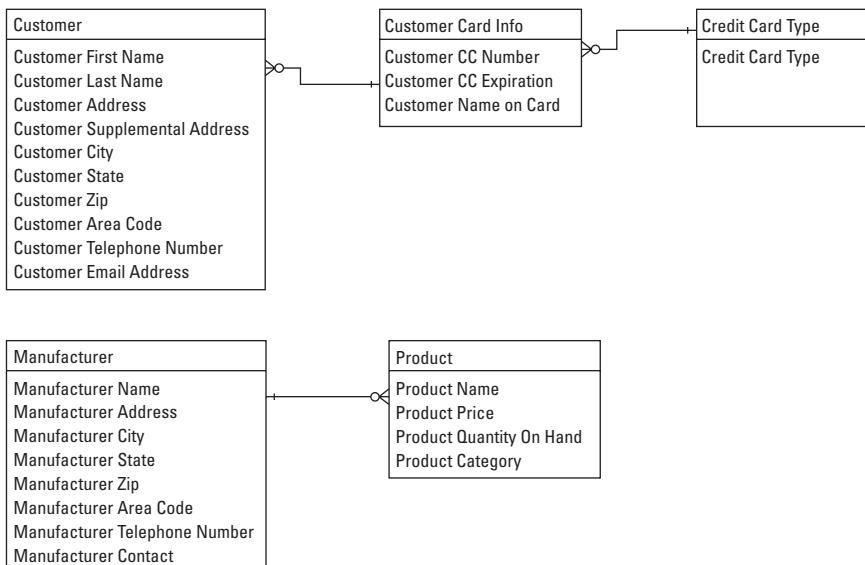


Figure 7-2: First Draft of an ERD for the online store



**Figure 7-3:** Customers can use more than one card, and more than one customer can use the card.

However, a many-to-many relationship should be broken down into two separate one-to-many relationships. Along with breaking the many-to-many relationship apart, I must search for extra attributes that may be disguising themselves as relationships. The result of this analysis is shown in Figure 7-4.



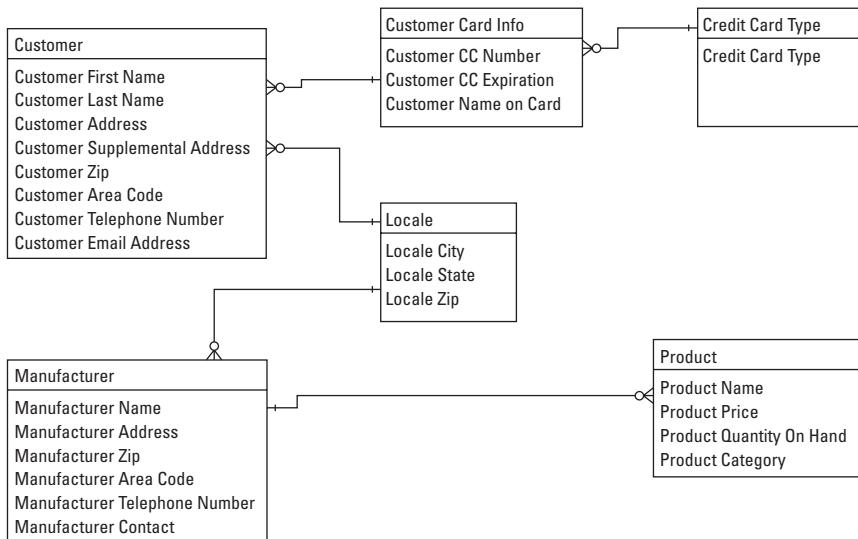
**Figure 7-4:** Results from breakdown of many-to-many relationship.

One major area for improvement in this data model is in the area of the City, State and Zip storage. Since Zip codes define and are always tied to one city and state, there is no reason to store the City and State in both the Customer entity type and the Manufacturer entity type. It would be much more efficient to make another entity type to house the City and State and relate that entity type to both the Customer and Manufacturer entity types. This draft of the ERD is shown in Figure 7-5.

As you can see from the new draft of the data model shown in Figure 7-5, the Zip attribute type is duplicated in both the Customer/Manufacturer entity types and in the Locale entity type as well. This is so I can join or match the information together. For example, I have a customer with a Zip code of 54481. I can then look up the city and state for the zip code of 54481 in the Locale table. Without the zip code being stored in the Customer table, I would have no way to know where the customer lives or where to ship their goodies!

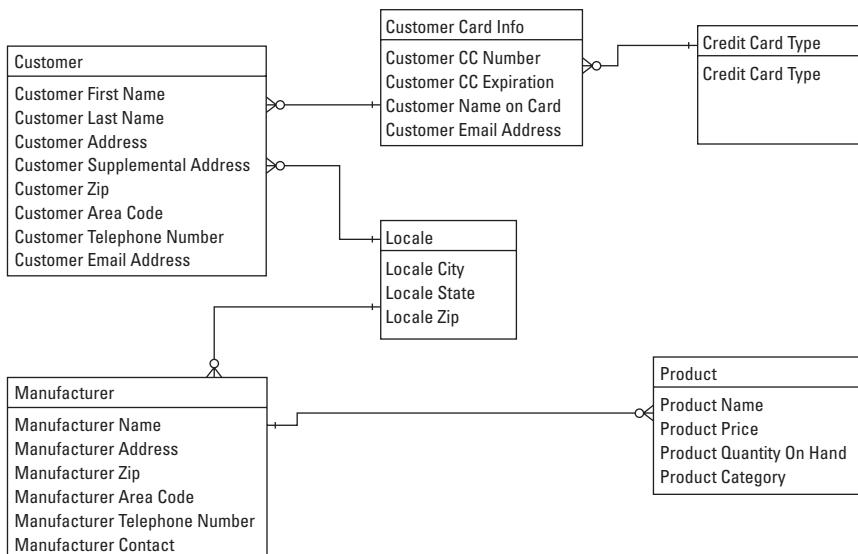
The Zip Code attribute within the Customer entity is known as a foreign key. A foreign key enables you to relate an attribute in one entity to the attribute of another entity. In this case, the Zip Code attribute in the Customer entity type is related to the Zip Code attribute of the Locale entity type.

Based on information about foreign keys, the astute observer may have already noticed the flaw in the Customer to Credit Card relationship. There is no way to tie customers to their credit card information. Either I charge random cards or don't charge at all. A recipe for disaster no matter how you look at it. I must choose a way to relate a customer with their credit card info. Customer name is out because I hope to have more than one John Smith shop at my store. I must find an attribute type that will always be unique within the Customer entity type.



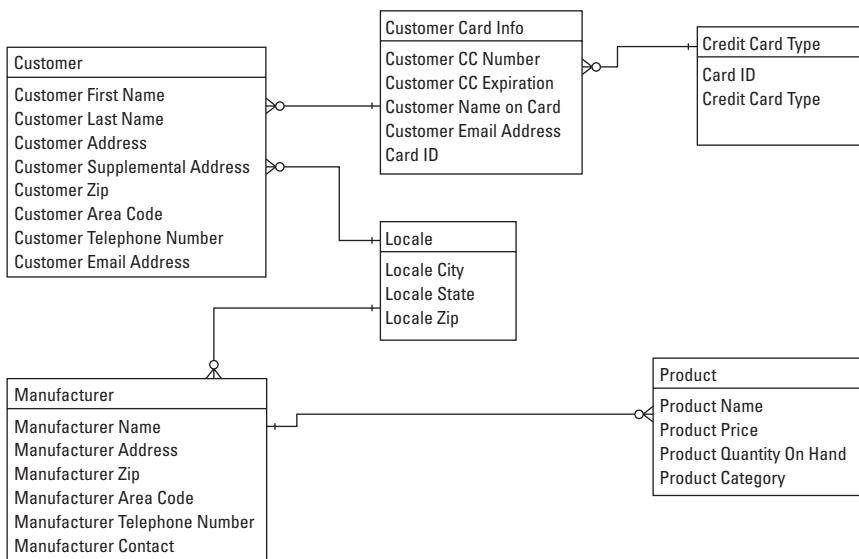
**Figure 7-5:** Placing City, State, and Zip in another entity type makes the model more efficient.

Many online stores choose E-mail Address as the unique attribute in a customer's information. I believe this is a good idea, so I implement my customers' e-mail addresses to relate their credit card information to them, as shown in Figure 7-6.



**Figure 7-6:** Relating customers to their credit cards is rather important.

Yet another iteration of the data model is needed because I must create a relationship between the credit-card type and the credit card. Recall that the type of card could be determined by looking at the digits of the card itself. However, I'd like to do some error checking, so having the customer choose the card type is useful. To relate card type to card number, I could simply add a field to the Customer Card Info table. However, doing so would nullify any efficiency gained from separating those entity types. Therefore I will create a Card ID attribute type that is simply an integer. For example, I will give Visa credit cards an ID of 1, MasterCard an ID of 2, and so on. Figure 7-7 shows the next draft of the data model.



**Figure 7-7:** Addition of the Card ID entity type enables joining of the Customer Card Info and Card Type tables.

An examination of the Product entity type reveals that the Product Category attribute really doesn't belong with that entity type. Therefore I create a new entity type for Product Types. I can now add a Product ID attribute to relate that entity type back to the Product entity type. The result is shown in Figure 7-8.

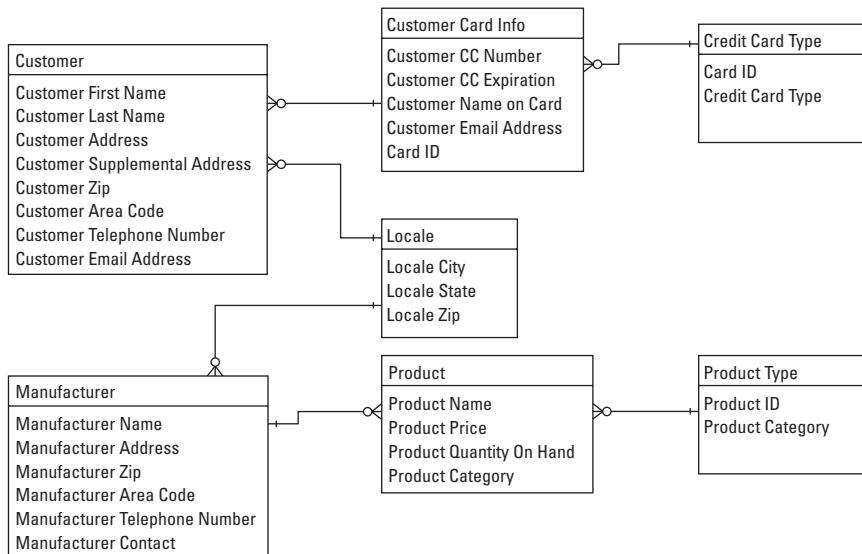


Figure 7-8: Separation of the Product Category from the Product Table

## Constraints

*Constraints* are limitations or controls placed on attributes within an entity. They are used to maintain order and keep the model true to the business process it is describing.

The Uniqueness constraint is one that you encounter frequently. For the online store model to work, the e-mail address of each customer will need to be unique. Additional attributes within other entities also must be guaranteed to be unique, such as the Zip Code attributes in the Locale entity.

**Note**

The Uniqueness constraint is sometimes called a *primary key* within a database table though Uniqueness is only one of the attributes of a primary key.

An *Exclusion constraint* is a logically exclusive OR relationship. With such a constraint, one and only one entity may participate in a relationship with a root entity. For example, if you manufactured widgets and could get parts from an internal or external supplier, one and only one supplier would supply the part for a specific order.

Any entity that exists and has a primary key must also ensure that the primary key exists to meet the constraint of *Entity Integrity*. Since e-mail address is the primary key for the customer entity, if you start a customer record for your online store, they must have an e-mail address to exist at all according to this constraint.

*Referential integrity* means that any foreign key that exists within one table must also have a corresponding row and primary key within the related table. For example, if a Zip Code exists within a customer's record in the example, there must be a corresponding Zip Code record in the `Locale` table for referential integrity.

## Normalization

Long the woe of many a college student learning database concepts, normalization is the practice of getting a database design into a format with no duplications or redundancy of data within the database so the database operates as efficiently as possible. This has obvious benefits of efficiency. However, it can also prevent catastrophic inconsistencies.

There are five *forms* that a data model passes through on its way to being normalized. For our purposes, I'll deal with only the first three forms. As a data model is normalized, it is said to be in (and pass through) First Normal Form, Second Normal Form, Third Normal Form, and so on, like this:

- ◆ **First Normal Form (1NF).** This form is achieved when there are *no repeating attributes*. Table 7-1 shows such a table. For many small projects this type of table is fine. While there is repeated data such as the Team and Location, having the repeats doesn't adversely affect performance on small tables and projects. However, if you had to make a change to the Team for one of the people in the table, the update could take longer. Additionally, if you delete the Steve Suehring record from the table, you would lose all of the Team and Location info, resulting in unforeseen data loss.

**Table 7-1**  
**Table in First Normal Form**

| <b>ID</b> | <b>Name</b>    | <b>Location</b>       | <b>Loc_ID</b> | <b>Team</b> | <b>Team_ID</b> |
|-----------|----------------|-----------------------|---------------|-------------|----------------|
| 3         | Don Sutton     | Baseball Hall of Fame | 355           | Braves      | 95             |
| 4         | Steve Suehring | Bat Boy               | 515           | Dodgers     | 78             |
| 5         | Greg Maddux    | Baseball Hall of Fame | 355           | Braves      | 95             |
| 6         | Jerry Rice     | NFL Hall of Fame      | 400           | 49ers       | 94             |
| 7         | Mika Hakkinen  | Formula One           | 411           | McLaren     | 99             |
| 8         | Steve Young    | NFL Hall of Fame      | 400           | 49ers       | 94             |

- ♦ **Second Normal Form (2NF):** This form includes the 1NF definition and requires that all attributes of a specific entity depend on the *entire key value*. If the key value is only one value, then attributes that depend on it already depend on the entire value, as shown in Figure 7-9.

| Person    |                |
|-----------|----------------|
| Person ID | Person Name    |
| 3         | Don Sutton     |
| 4         | Steve Suehring |
| 5         | Greg Maddux    |
| 6         | Jerry Rice     |
| 7         | Mika Hakkinen  |
| 8         | Steve Young    |

| Location |                       |
|----------|-----------------------|
| Loc_ID   | Location              |
| 355      | Baseball Hall of Fame |
| 515      | Bat Boy               |
| 355      | Baseball Hall of Fame |
| 400      | NFL Hall of Fame      |
| 411      | Formula One           |
| 400      | NFL Hall of Fame      |

| Team    |           |
|---------|-----------|
| Team ID | Team Name |
| 95      | Braves    |
| 78      | Dodgers   |
| 95      | Braves    |
| 94      | 49ers     |
| 99      | McLaren   |
| 94      | 49ers     |

| Table4    |        |         |
|-----------|--------|---------|
| Person ID | Loc_ID | Team ID |
| 3         | 355    | 95      |
| 4         | 515    | 78      |
| 5         | 355    | 95      |
| 6         | 400    | 94      |
| 7         | 411    | 99      |
| 8         | 400    | 94      |

Figure 7-9: Making sure all attributes depend on the key

- ♦ **Third Normal Form (3NF):** This form includes the 2NF definition and requires that all attributes of a specific entity *depend only on the key*, not on other attributes. In other words, the Team is dependent only on the Team\_ID, not on the Name of the person. Figure 7-10 illustrates the final tables for this example.

Note that foreign-key constraints could be used to remove Table4 from the example.

| Person    |                |
|-----------|----------------|
| Person ID | Person Name    |
| 3         | Don Sutton     |
| 4         | Steve Suehring |
| 5         | Greg Maddux    |
| 6         | Jerry Rice     |
| 7         | Mika Hakkinen  |
| 8         | Steve Young    |

| Location |                       |
|----------|-----------------------|
| Loc_ID   | Location              |
| 355      | Baseball Hall of Fame |
| 515      | Bat Boy               |
| 400      | NFL Hall of Fame      |
| 411      | FormulaOne            |

| Team    |           |
|---------|-----------|
| Team ID | Team Name |
| 95      | Braves    |
| 78      | Dodgers   |
| 94      | 49ers     |
| 99      | McLaren   |

| Table4    |        |         |
|-----------|--------|---------|
| Person ID | Loc_ID | Team ID |
| 3         | 355    | 95      |
| 4         | 515    | 78      |
| 5         | 355    | 95      |
| 6         | 400    | 94      |
| 7         | 411    | 99      |
| 8         | 400    | 94      |

Figure 7-10: Final example tables, normalized

## Data Definition Language and Data Markup Language

*Data Definition Language (DDL)* and *Data Markup Language (DML)* are common names for the tools and syntax used to create and work with a database.

- ◆ DDL defines how the data is addressed. DDL examples include CREATE TABLE, CREATE INDEX, and such privilege options as GRANT and REVOKE.

**Note**

- DDL statements do not work with data directly.

- ◆ DML statements actually work with real data. Examples of such statements are INSERT and DELETE.

## Producing the SQL

The last step of Logical Design is creation of the SQL for the database. As this point, you must make some important decisions involving column types and constraints for the candidate tables. There are a number of column types supported by MySQL.



Refer to Appendix A for a complete listing of column types supported by MySQL.

Recalling Figure 7-10's candidate tables, I recommend using `integer` type for the ID columns in all tables. Further, I would recommend column types of `varchar` for the name columns.

For constraints, the ID column in all tables should be required and unique. This makes them primary keys.

## A small graphic of a notepad with a pencil resting on it, labeled "Note".

To create a primary key in MySQL, you must specify the column as `NOT NULL` and `PRIMARY KEY`.

The SQL to create the example tables in MySQL is as follows:

```
CREATE TABLE person (
    person_id int NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,
    person varchar(50)
);
CREATE TABLE location (
    loc_id int NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,
    location varchar(50)
);
CREATE TABLE team (
    team_id int NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,
    team varchar(50)
);
CREATE TABLE table4 (
    tperson_id int NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,
    tloc_id int,
    tteam_id int
);
```

Going back to my ongoing example of an e-commerce Web site, the candidate tables for the structure are created by the following code:

```
CREATE TABLE customer (
    e-mail_address varchar(75) NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,
    first_name varchar(50),
    last_name varchar(50),
    address1 varchar(50),
    address2 varchar(50),
    customer_zip varchar(10),
    area_code char(3),
    telephone_number char(7)
);
CREATE TABLE cardinfo (
    card_id int NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,
    ccnum varchar(16),
    ccexp date,
    name_on_card varchar(100),
    e-mail_address varchar(75)
```

```
 );
CREATE TABLE cardtype (
    card_id int NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,
    card_type varchar(20)
);
CREATE TABLE locale (
    zip varchar(10) NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,
    city varchar(50),
    state char(2)
);
CREATE TABLE manufacturer (
    id int NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,
    name varchar(50),
    address varchar(50),
    zip varchar(10),
    area_code char(3),
    telephone_number char(7),
    contact_name varchar(50)
);
CREATE TABLE product (
    id int NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,
    name varchar(50),
    price decimal(9,2),
    quantity integer,
    manu_id int
);
CREATE TABLE producttype (
    id int NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,
    category varchar(50)
);
```

The `varchar` column type is chosen because it uses space more efficiently than the `char` type. The `char` column type pads the column with extra spaces to fill the length of the column; the `varchar` type adds only one extra byte to store the length of the column. For example, if `char` the column type for the `city` column, the database would always use 50 bytes, regardless of whether the city was named Ames or Stevens Point. The `char` type is fine for `area-code` and `telephone-number` columns (which are always the same length for U.S. phone numbers). The `decimal` column type is chosen for the `product` table's `price` column because the precision can be specified before and after the decimal point. In the example, I use the (9,2) definition that calls for up to 9 digits before the decimal and 2 digits after the decimal. Therefore I can list prices of up to 999,999,999.99 for products in the database.



For a summary of MySQL's column types, see Appendix A.

## Physical Design and Implementation

Once you have a normalized design, turning that design into the actual database and tables on the server is easy.

The Physical Design phase is the third step in the database life cycle. Now is the time to decide how many servers you are going to use for your database application, where they will be physically located, and so on.

The final step after Physical Design planning is to take the SQL statements and create the database. Since you've already designed the SQL for the normalized tables, it is now a matter of simply executing the code to make the database and tables.



### Cross-Reference

There are a number of ways to import data into MySQL, many of which are covered in another chapter.

## Indexing

Much like an index entry in a book, an index entry in a database allows the server to quickly locate information. As you create the physical design of your database, you should choose indices that accelerate queries and thus accelerate the operation of your database server and applications.

With MySQL, an index can be created either during the initial DDL to create the table or during later operation. An example of creating the index with the initial DDL is as follows:

```
CREATE TABLE example (
    id int NOT NULL,
    name varchar(50),
    address varchar(50),
    zip varchar(10),
    INDEX (id, name)
);
```

To specify an index after the initial table has been created, the syntax is generally intuitive:

```
CREATE INDEX index_name on table_name (
    column1,
    column2,
    ...
);
```

MySQL has commands that can help you determine what indices to create. The DESCRIBE command allows you to describe a SELECT statement as well, to see possible keys or indices to create. Another name for the DESCRIBE command in this context is the EXPLAIN command. Some database operators may be familiar with one or the other of these commands; their functions overlap somewhat.

For the example, I've created a test database called `ecommerce` that uses the same example tables as the rest of the chapter.

**Tip**

I write table definitions in a text editor such as `vi` in Linux or Notepad in Windows, as shown in Figures 7-11 and 7-12. By using a text editor to create long DDL and DML commands, you can easily copy and paste them into the MySQL CLI or typing them in through the command line. This can be a lifesaver if you run into problems with the database server (or if your syntax or spelling is wrong for a particular command).



The example database tables are on the CD-ROM so you don't have to type them (though it is good practice).

```

MySQL
CREATE TABLE customer (
    email_address varchar(75) NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,
    first_name varchar(50),
    last_name varchar(50),
    address1 varchar(50),
    address2 varchar(50),
    customer_zip varchar(10),
    area_code char(3),
    telephone_number char(7)
);
CREATE TABLE cardinfo (
    card_id int NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,
    cccn varchar(16),
    ccexp date,
    name_on_card varchar(100),
    email_address varchar(75)
);
CREATE TABLE cardtype (
    card_id int NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,
    card_type varchar(20)
);
CREATE TABLE locale (
    zip varchar(10) NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY
);

```

**Figure 7-11:** Using `vi` to write DDL and DML can be a great timesaver.

For the indexing example, I can add a record into the `locale` and `customer` tables.

```

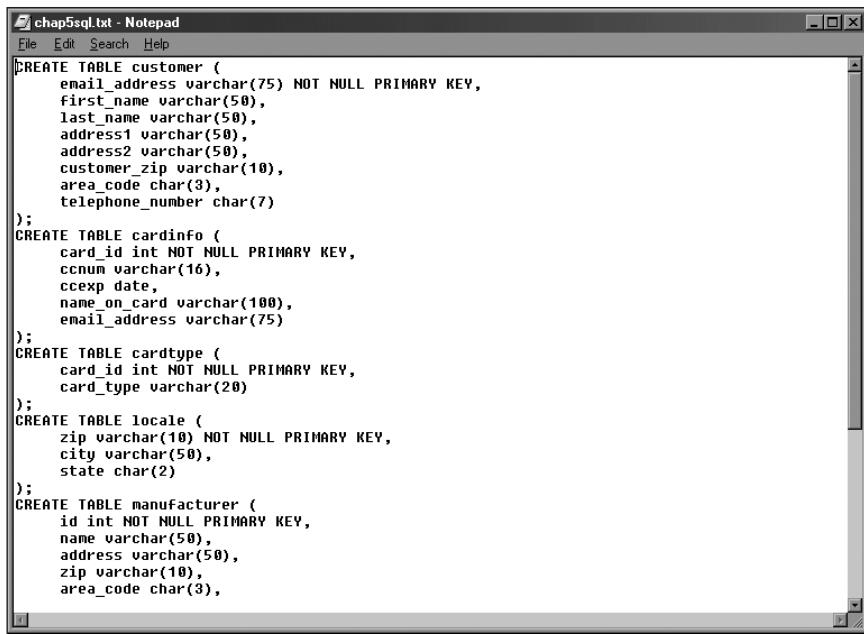
insert into locale values ('54481','Stevens Point','WI');
insert into customer values
('suehring@ngermen.com','Steve','Suehring','834 Main
St.',NULL,'54481','715','5551212');

```

Indexing will usually not help a simple `SELECT` statement such as `select *` from `locale`. To confirm this, you can try the `EXPLAIN` command, as shown in Figure 7-13.

In Figure 7-13, you can see information on the select statement and extra information about how MySQL ran the query. For determining possible indices, the important place to look is the `possible_keys` column; it tells you what columns could be created as an index to improve the performance of the query. For the example, MySQL did not need any indices to efficiently handle the query (as evidenced by the `NULL` in the `primary_keys` column).

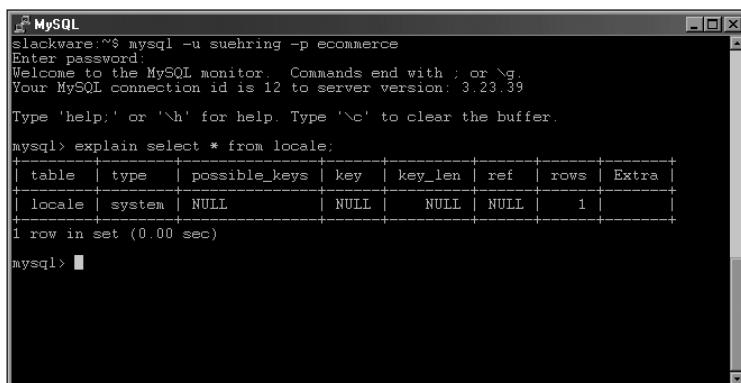
For a more complicated query (shown in Figure 7-14), MySQL believes that it could use a primary key index in the `locale` table to boost efficiency. Since the `Zip` column is already a primary key, the query can run efficiently.



A screenshot of a Windows Notepad window titled "chap5sql.txt - Notepad". The window contains several lines of SQL code used for creating tables and defining their structures. The code includes:

```
CREATE TABLE customer (
    email_address varchar(75) NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,
    first_name varchar(50),
    last_name varchar(50),
    address1 varchar(50),
    address2 varchar(50),
    customer_zip varchar(10),
    area_code char(3),
    telephone_number char(7)
);
CREATE TABLE cardinfo (
    card_id int NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,
    cnum varchar(16),
    cexp date,
    name_on_card varchar(100),
    email_address varchar(75)
);
CREATE TABLE cardtype (
    card_id int NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,
    card_type varchar(20)
);
CREATE TABLE locale (
    zip varchar(10) NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,
    city varchar(50),
    state char(2)
);
CREATE TABLE manufacturer (
    id int NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,
    name varchar(50),
    address varchar(50),
    zip varchar(10),
    area_code char(3),
);
```

**Figure 7-12:** Notepad can be used as a source for creating long DDL and DML commands.



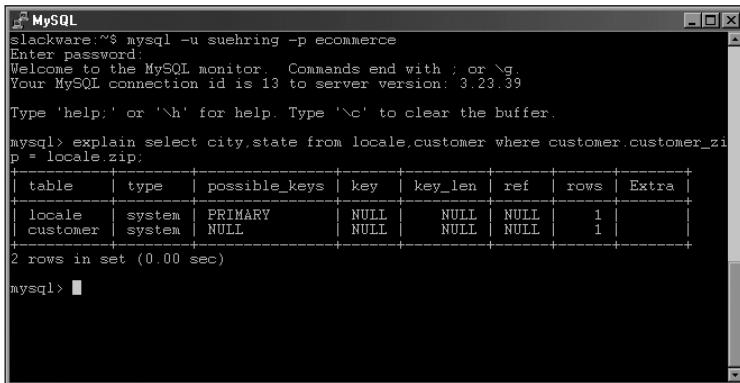
A screenshot of a terminal window titled "MySQL". The session shows a connection to the "ecommerce" database and an "explain" command being run against the "locale" table. The output shows the execution plan:

```
slackware:~$ mysql -u suemring -p ecommerce
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor.  Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 12 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> explain select * from locale;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| table | type  | possible_keys | key   | key_len | ref   | rows  |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| locale | system | NULL          | NULL  | NULL   | NULL  | 1     |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> █
```

**Figure 7-13:** Indexing usually doesn't assist with simple queries.



```

MySQL
slackware:~$ mysql -u suehring -p ecommerce
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor.  Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 13 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

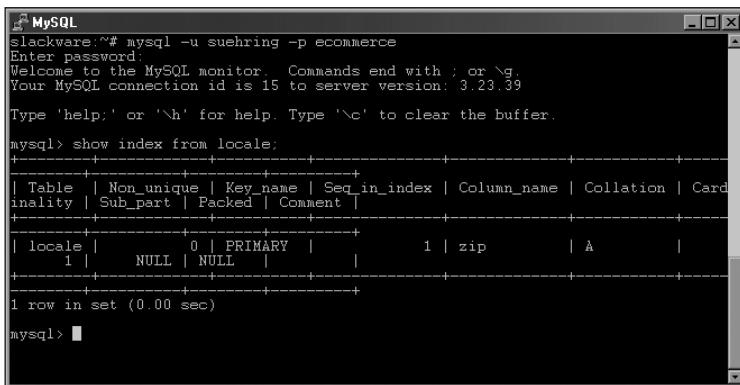
mysql> explain select city.state from locale.customer where customer.customer_zi
p = locale.zip;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| table | type | possible_keys | key | key_len | ref | rows |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| locale | system | PRIMARY | NULL | NULL | NULL | 1 |
| customer | system | NULL | NULL | NULL | NULL | 1 |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
2 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> ■

```

**Figure 7-14:** The primary key index on the `locale` table assists MySQL in performing this query.

To confirm the existence of the primary key index on the `locale` table, the `show index` command can be used (see Figure 7-15).



```

MySQL
slackware:~# mysql -u suehring -p ecommerce
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor.  Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 15 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> show index from locale;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Table | Non_unique | Key name | Seq_in_index | Column_name | Collation | Cardinality |
|       | Sub_part | Packed | Comment |           |           |           |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| locale |        0 | PRIMARY |           | zip        | A          |           |
|       |        1 | NULL    | NULL     |           |           |           |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> ■

```

**Figure 7-15:** The `show index` command gives useful information about indexes.

MySQL allows you to create indexes in a number of ways (even while creating the table itself), via the `alter table` command or the `create index` command.



Indexing and other optimizations for MySQL are discussed in Chapter 12.

## Implementation

The final step in the database life cycle is implementation, which includes:

- ◆ Creation of the physical database and tables on the server
- ◆ Ongoing administration and maintenance of the database

Physically creating the tables for a normalized database design on the database server is simple. The actual writing of the SQL for table creation was done during the Logical Design. Now it is a matter of executing that code on the server.

To create the ecommerce example database, I use the `mysqladmin` tool, as shown in Figure 7-16. I'm highlighting this command inside a whole figure to show that it is normal for the command to return no message when it succeeds. If you have an error, `mysqladmin` will let you know.



Syntax for `mysqladmin` is contained in Chapter 8.

A screenshot of a terminal window titled "MySQL". The window shows the command `mysqladmin -u root -p create ecommerce` being run. The terminal prompt is "slackware:~#". After entering the command, there is a line "Enter password:" followed by a blank line where the password would be entered. The window has standard window controls (minimize, maximize, close) at the top right.

**Figure 7-16:** The `mysqladmin` command returns no message upon successful completion of a database creation.

Once the database is created, you can create the tables within the database based upon the SQL you wrote during the logical design phase. You're ready to enter the DDL to create the tables into the MySQL CLI to create the tables.

Congratulations, the database is complete! However, the database life cycle isn't over. You now have to maintain the database server by

- ◆ Making sure queries are operating as efficiently as possible
- ◆ Checking table health and repairing tables when needed
- ◆ Actively applying bug fixes and security audits.

 Note

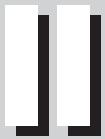
Since databases are practically living things, changes often are required in the life cycle. Using DDL statements like alter table, you can keep the database useful as business rules and processes change.

## Summary

Data is really anything you can imagine and quantify. Though it's not just information in a computer or within a database, Relational Database Management Systems (of which MySQL is an example) make large amounts of data efficiently retrievable and usable.

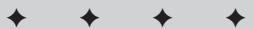
- ◆ A database is a group of organized information, not necessarily on a computer.
- ◆ The database life cycle includes analysis, logical design, physical design, and implementation of the database.
- ◆ Entities, Attributes, and Relationships are the objects that make up a database design.
- ◆ An Entity-Relationship Diagram (ERD) models the layout of the entities, attributes, and relationships. The ERD can be transformed easily into normalized form and then into the physical layout of the database.
- ◆ Normalization is the process of reducing redundancy and waste in a database while improving performance and possibly removing errors.
- ◆ Indexing helps a database to quickly retrieve information.
- ◆ The actual implementation of the database onto the server is the first step in the final phase of the database life cycle. Maintaining and administering the database server is an ongoing process throughout the lifetime of the database.





# SQL Essentials

---



## In This Part

### **Chapter 8**

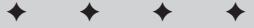
Command Line Interface (CLI)

### **Chapter 9**

SQL According to MySQL

### **Chapter 10**

Databases and Data





# Command Line Interface (CLI)

The MySQL Command-Line Interface—abbreviated CLI and also known as the *command-line tool*—is the program through which the users handle most of their daily interactions with the database. You access the CLI by issuing the `mysql` command.

This chapter looks at some normal CLI tasks, as well as some that may not be obvious but are still useful. An introduction to the CLI lays the groundwork; before long, you can get your hands dirty with some real functions and try out some uses of the CLI.

## Introducing the CLI

Before the advent of GUIs and third-party tools, the MySQL CLI provided the only way to interact with the database. However the CLI offers advantages over some of its newer counterparts insofar as it is tested and stable, it is lightweight, and it comes standard with most installations of MySQL.

The basic syntax for to use the MySQL CLI is as follows:

```
mysql (options) [database]
```

The options for this command help make the MySQL CLI configurable as well as powerful. Should you forget the options and not have this book available, you can get help from the `mysql` command itself by adding the `--help` or `-?` switches after you type it, as shown in Figure 8-1.



### In This Chapter

Introducing the CLI

Starting the  
CLI — basics

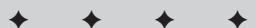
Using environment  
variables in  
MySQL CLI

Choosing when to  
use the CLI Interactive  
mode

Configuring a useful  
MySQL CLI  
environment

Avoiding common  
CLI user errors

Listing alternatives to  
the CLI



```

192.168.1.75 - PuTTY

      (\h) also. Does not work in batch mode.
-u, --user=#          User for login if not current user.
-U, --safe-updates[#=]  i-am-a-dummy[#=]
                      Only allow UPDATE and DELETE that uses keys.
-v, --verbose          Write more. (-v -v -v gives the table output format)
-V, --version          Output version information and exit.
-w, --wait             Wait and retry if connection is down

Default options are read from the following files in the given order:
/etc/my.cnf /usr/local/var/my.cnf ~/my.cnf
The following groups are read: mysql client
The following options may be given as the first argument:
--print-defaults      Print the program argument list and exit
--no-defaults         Don't read default options from any options file
--defaults-file=#    Only read default options from the given file #
--defaults-extra-file=# Read this file after the global files are read

Possible variables for option --set-variable (-O) are:
connect_timeout       current value: 0
max_allowed_packet   current value: 16777216
net_buffer_length     current value: 16384
select_limit          current value: 1000
max_join_size         current value: 1000000
slackware:~$ 

```

**Figure 8-1:** Here I use the help switch to remind myself of the correct syntax for the mysql command.

The CLI can be used in interactive mode where you are talking directly with the server and it is talking back to you, in a sense. In interactive mode the commands you type are sent directly to the server and the results are given back to you within the CLI. An example of the CLI in interactive mode is in Figure 8-2. You can obtain help from within in CLI by typing `help;` or `\h`.

```

192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
slackware:~$ mysql -u root -p mysql
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor.  Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 44 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> select user,host from user where user = 'root';
+-----+-----+
| user | host  |
+-----+-----+
| root | 192.168.1.% |
| root | localhost |
| root | slackware |
+-----+-----+
3 rows in set (0.34 sec)

mysql> 

```

**Figure 8-2:** The CLI in interactive mode

Interactive-mode CLI is a great tool for troubleshooting database problems. For example, you can use the CLI in interactive mode to make sure queries return the expected results or see why they aren't running correctly. You can use commands to analyze tables and queries with the CLI—and you can alter tables to add indexes, change structure, and more. In addition, when using the CLI in interactive mode a history file is recorded. Not only is this a great way to save keystrokes for frequently (or infrequently) used commands, but it can also provide a means (though insecure) of tracking what a user did to break something. Using the CLI interactively makes a number of database tasks easier, including these:

- ◆ Troubleshooting queries
- ◆ Adding users to MySQL
- ◆ Analyzing tables
- ◆ Analyzing queries
- ◆ Altering tables
- ◆ Checking replication status
- ◆ Looking at server health

The `mysql` command can also be used in non-interactive mode, directly from the command line or command prompt. The CLI is also useful in non-interactive mode, as shown in Figure 8-3.

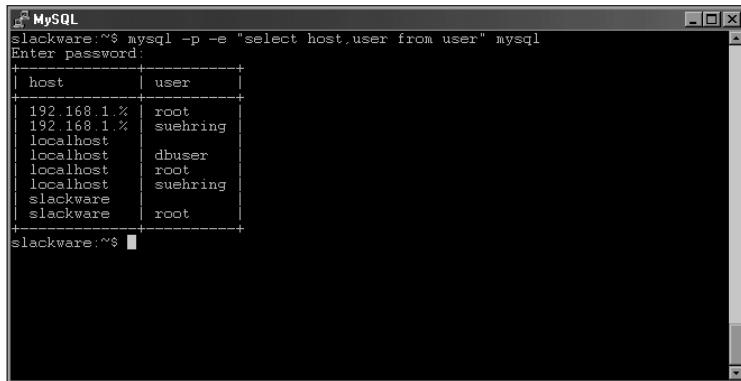
| user | host        |
|------|-------------|
| root | 192.168.1.% |
| root | localhost   |
| root | slackware   |

**Figure 8-3:** The CLI in non-interactive mode in Linux

In non-interactive mode, the CLI provides many of the same functions as in interactive mode. However, in non-interactive mode you don't receive the same feedback from the server (along with the results).

For example, if you perform an `INSERT` operation using the `-e` switch in non-interactive mode, you won't receive a message that tells you the number of rows inserted. When you insert rows in interactive mode, the server gives you feedback that includes the number of rows from the statement.

Some CLI switches are useful only in non-interactive mode, most notably is the `-e` or `--execute` switch. An example of the `-e` switch is shown in Figure 8-4. In the example in Figure 8-4, the `-p` switch specifies that MySQL should prompt for a password and the word `mysql` at the end of the command indicates the database I'd like to connect to—and within which I plan to execute the query that appears in quotes after the `-e` switch. (I provide more information on these switches, and on the syntax of the CLI, later in this chapter.)

A screenshot of a terminal window titled "MySQL". The window shows the command "mysql -p -e "select host,user from user"" being run. It prompts for a password and then displays a table of data. The table has two columns: "host" and "user". The data is as follows:

| host        | user     |
|-------------|----------|
| 192.168.1.% | root     |
| 192.168.1.% | suehring |
| localhost   |          |
| localhost   | dbuser   |
| localhost   | root     |
| localhost   | suehring |
| slackware   |          |
| slackware   | root     |

The MySQL prompt "slackware:~\$ " is visible at the bottom of the window.

**Figure 8-4:** Using the `-e` switch to execute a query in non-interactive mode

Although it is possible to execute other commands with the `-e` switch, I don't normally recommend executing DDL (Data Definition Language) commands such as `ALTER TABLE` with the `-e` switch. MySQL still prints error messages back to the command line, but I've found that DDL commands usually require more than one command to be run (for example, a command to describe a table) before alteration can begin.

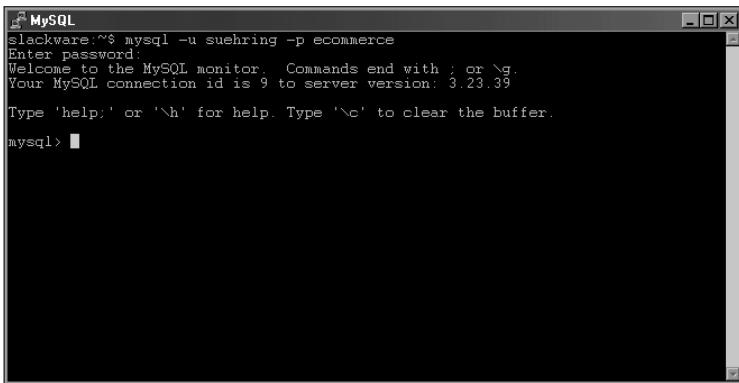
*Command recall*—reusing the command or statement you last typed by pressing the up-arrow on the keyboard—is one of the best features of the MySQL CLI. This feature saves countless keystrokes when you make a typographical or spelling error in the middle of a long query and have to run it again. Additionally, command recall makes large and complex queries easier to work with; if you find that the output is not exactly as you want it, simply use the up-arrow and tweak the query when it appears on-screen.

## Starting the CLI – the Basics

By now you've probably already been introduced to the CLI through some earlier chapters or the introduction in this chapter. Don't worry if you haven't read those chapters; the CLI itself makes only a brief appearance there.

The command to start the MySQL CLI is contained normally in the bin directory of the MySQL installation. However, it may be located in another directory depending on how you installed MySQL or the operating system you are using. In Linux, I've seen the command located in `/usr/bin`, `/usr/local/bin`, `/usr/local/mysql/bin` and somewhere in the `/var` mount.

How you start the MySQL CLI depends largely on what you want to do. To work with a database interactively, you have to supply credentials to establish a connection. Normally those credentials come in the form of a username and a password—though they can include an optional name of the database you’re working with, as well as the hostname (or IP address) of the server. In Figure 8-5, for example, I’m connecting to the local server (`localhost`) as username `suehring` and telling the program to perform two tasks: Ask me for a password and connect me to the ecommerce server.

A screenshot of a terminal window titled "MySQL". The window shows the command `mysql -u suehring -p ecommerce` being run. It prompts for a password and then displays a welcome message from the MySQL monitor, including the connection ID and server version. The MySQL prompt "mysql>" is visible at the bottom.

```
slackware:~$ mysql -u suehring -p ecommerce
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor.  Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 9 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> ■
```

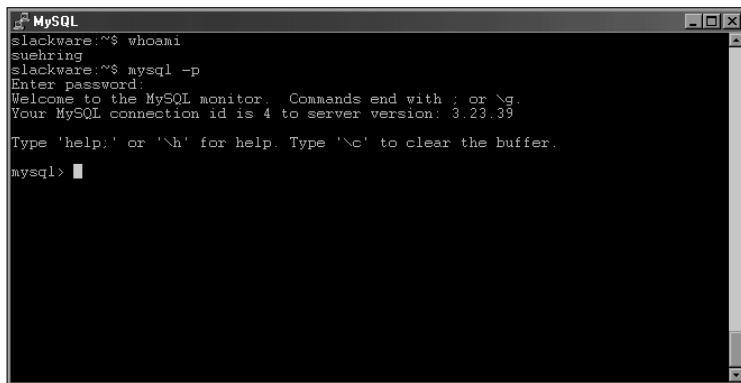
**Figure 8-5:** Connecting as username `suehring` to the ecommerce database and specifying a password

Cross-Reference

The examples throughout this chapter assume that the user account you’re using has sufficient access privileges to perform the operations. If this is not the case, consult Chapter 12 for a description of how to add a user account with specified privileges.

## Specifying the username

When using `mysql` in Linux, normally you need not add the `-u` (username) switch. If the `-u` username switch is not specified, the `mysql` command uses the username from your environment variables. For that authentication to work, the MySQL server must have a user entry with correct privileges in its user table. In Figure 8-6, the `-u` switch is not used, so MySQL grabs the username `suehring` from the environment variables. Because a user `suehring` exists in the MySQL database and has the proper privileges, I can connect to the database server after supplying the correct password.

A screenshot of a terminal window titled "MySQL". The window shows the MySQL monitor interface. The text output includes:  
slackware:~\$ whoami  
suehring  
slackware:~\$ mysql -p  
Enter password:  
Welcome to the MySQL monitor. Commands end with ; or \g.  
Your MySQL connection id is 4 to server version: 3.23.39  
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.  
mysql>   
The window has standard window controls (minimize, maximize, close) at the top.

**Figure 8-6:** MySQL uses the username of the current user if the `-u` switch is not used.

Accordingly, if you are using the CLI as the `root` user, MySQL attempts to connect as the `root` user if the `-u` switch is not used.

If you want to override the default user and have the MySQL CLI authenticate as a different user every time, you can add the `username=<username>` clause to the MySQL configuration file.

**Cross-Reference**

For details on how to set and change default variables for the MySQL CLI, see the "MySQL CLI Environment Variables" section later in this chapter.

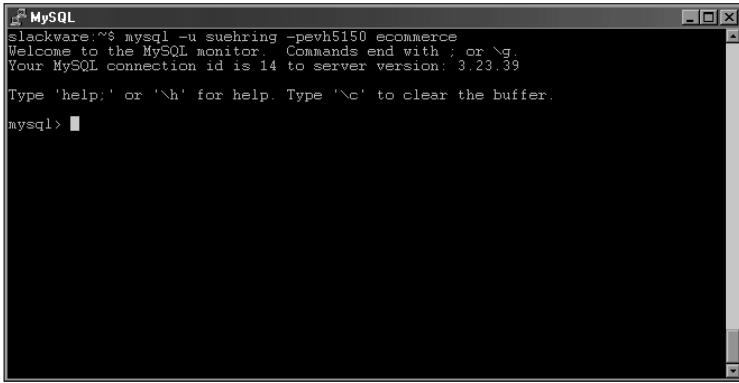
## Specifying the password

One source of confusion for some is the use of the `-p` switch to specify the password. Often people believe that what follows the `-p` is actually the password—but this isn't always the case. The `-p` switch simply tells the `mysql` program to *prompt* for the password if none is given. In the example in Figure 8-5, a space appears after the `-p` switch—it's prompting you for the password. If you want to specify the password on the command line, you can do so by placing the password immediately after the `-p` switch, as shown in Figure 8-7.

**Caution**

Specifying the password on the command line should be considered a security risk because the password is right in plain sight for a would-be attacker to see.

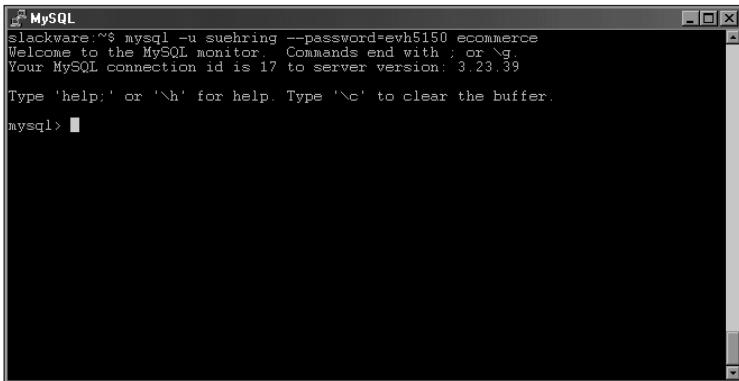
Additionally, the `--password` switch can be substituted for the `-p` switch and is used much the same way. If you provide just the `--password` switch you are prompted for the password. However, unlike the `-p` switch, the `--password` syntax requires you to specify the password on the command line by using an equals sign (=), as shown in Figure 8-8.

A screenshot of a terminal window titled "MySQL". The window shows the command "mysql -u suehring -pvh5150 ecommerce" being run. The output includes a welcome message from the MySQL monitor, the connection ID, and the server version. It also provides help and buffer clearing instructions. A cursor is visible at the bottom of the window.

```
slackware:~$ mysql -u suehring -pvh5150 ecommerce
Welcome to the MySQL monitor. Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 14 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> ■
```

**Figure 8-7:** Specifying the password immediately following the `-p` switch prevents the CLI from prompting for a password.

A screenshot of a terminal window titled "MySQL". The command "mysql -u suehring --password=vuh5150 ecommerce" is shown. The output is identical to Figure 8-7, including the MySQL monitor welcome and connection details. The cursor is at the bottom of the window.

```
slackware:~$ mysql -u suehring --password=vuh5150 ecommerce
Welcome to the MySQL monitor. Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 17 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

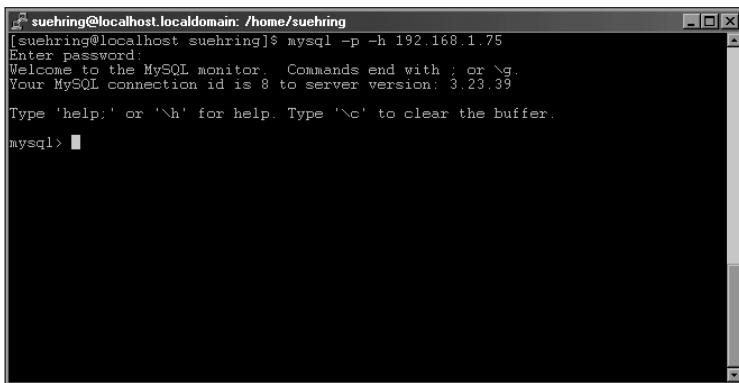
mysql> ■
```

**Figure 8-8:** The syntax for the `--password` switch is slightly different from the `-p` switch.

The `password=<password>` switch can be added into the MySQL configuration file and thus saved between sessions. This is also a security risk. Alternatively, you could simply place the word `password` under the `[mysql]` section of the configuration file and you are prompted for the password just as if you used the `-p` switch. (See this chapter's "MySQL CLI Environment Variables" section for more about working with CLI variables.)

## Specifying the host

In much the same way that MySQL uses the current user if the `-u` switch is not used, not using the `-h` switch makes MySQL assume you mean to connect to the server on the *localhost* (the current machine). If you want to connect to a MySQL server on another machine, you can specify the IP address or hostname of the other MySQL server via the `-h` switch, as shown in Figure 8-9.



```
suehring@localhost.localdomain: /home/suehring
[suehring@localhost suehring]$ mysql -p -h 192.168.1.75
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor.  Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 8 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.
mysql> 
```

**Figure 8-9:** Use the `-h` switch to connect to another MySQL server or leave it blank to connect to the local machine.

If you want to set a default host other than localhost without having to specify the `-h <server>` switch every time you can set the host inside the configuration file, see the discussion of environment variables (later in this chapter) for details on how to set and change default variables for the MySQL CLI. Any host specified in a configuration file is overridden if you specify another `-h <server>` on the command line.

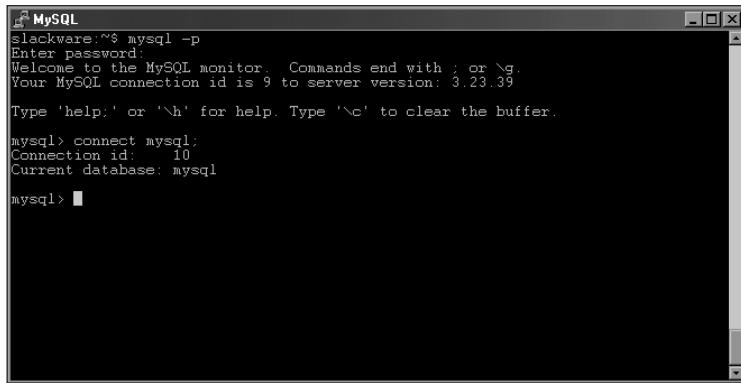
## Specifying the database

The MySQL CLI enables you to specify the database to use without the addition of any switches to the command line. The command expects the database to be specified as the last part of the command line. For example, to use a database called `inventory`, simply add it to the command at the end, like this:

```
mysql -p -u suehring inventory
```

If no database is specified on the command line (assuming you have access privileges), you return automatically to the MySQL CLI—in interactive mode but not connected to any database. To connect and use a database, issue the `connect` statement. In Figure 8-10, I connect to the MySQL server without specifying a database. I can then connect to a database by using the `connect` statement.

If you want to specify the database at a location other than the end of the command line, you can use the `-D` or `--database=<dbname>` switches. To set a default database for MySQL to use upon startup, add a `database=<dbname>` to the MySQL configuration file, see the section on Environment Variables in this chapter for details on how to set and change default variables for the MySQL CLI.

A screenshot of a terminal window titled "MySQL". The window shows the MySQL command-line interface (CLI) running on a Slackware system. The session starts with the MySQL prompt "mysql>". The user enters the command "connect mysql;" which results in the output: "Connection id: 10", "Current database: mysql", and then returns the MySQL prompt again.

**Figure 8-10:** Using the CLI and specifying a database from within the CLI

## MySQL CLI Environment Variables

Regardless of whether you use the CLI in interactive mode, variables are available to control how the CLI operates. When read from configuration files, those variables can be set globally with the use of configuration files—in particular, `my.cnf` or `my.ini` (usually located in the `/etc` or `/usr/local` Linux directory or the `WINNT` directory in Windows 2000).

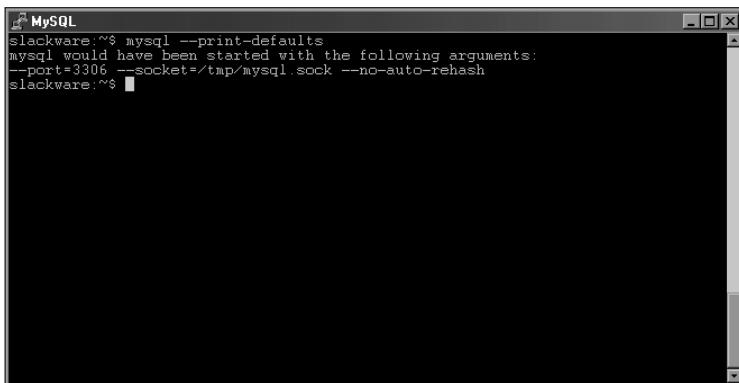
**Note**

If you want to set the variables on a per-user basis, a `.my.cnf` file in each user's home directory can provide customized individual use of the MySQL CLI. Make sure that a dot (.) immediately precedes each user's `.my.cnf` filename—for example, `.my.cnf`. Since the configuration file can reside in each user's home directory, it is only applied when logged in as that user.

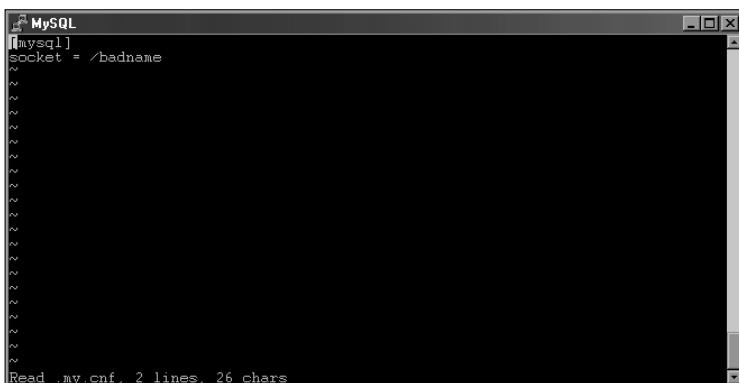
## Determining and changing default variables

To determine the variables the MySQL CLI uses for a particular session, use the `--print-defaults` switch, as shown in Figure 8-11.

Changing a default variable is as simple as editing the configuration file. For example, if I want to change the socket that MySQL connects through from the default `/tmp/mysql.sock`, I could make a `.my.cnf` file (as shown in Figure 8-12) and include a section for the MySQL CLI in brackets with the `socket` option underneath.

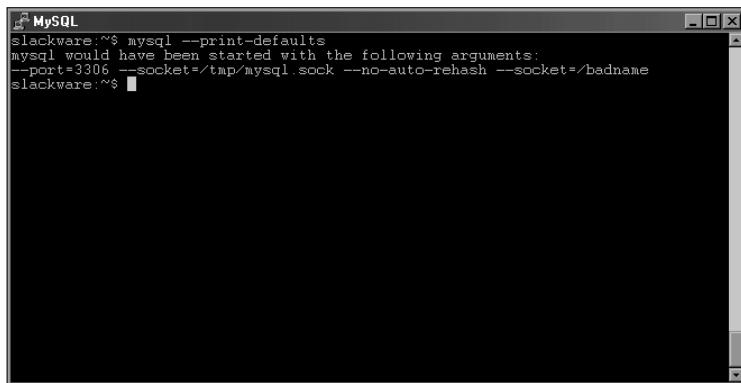


**Figure 8-11:** The --print-defaults switch shows you which environment variables MySQL uses for your session.



**Figure 8-12:** Creating a .my.cnf file in my home directory so I can set defaults for the MySQL CLI

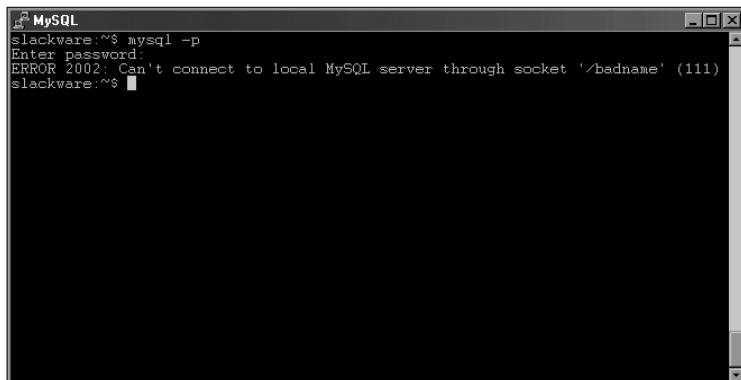
In Figure 8-13, the output of the `--print-defaults` switch, note the new socket name—actually *two* socket defaults. Because local options are read last, the last socket option to be read is applied.



```
MySQL
slackware:~$ mysql --print-defaults
mysql would have been started with the following arguments:
--port=3306 --socket=/tmp/mysql.sock --no-auto-rehash --socket=/badname
slackware:~$
```

**Figure 8-13:** The --print-defaults switch now shows the new defaults that go into effect the next time you start the MySQL CLI.

In the example in Figure 8-13, I changed the socket to a bogus filename that won't actually connect to the MySQL server. The result is the error message you see in Figure 8-14.



```
MySQL
slackware:~$ mysql -p
Enter password:
ERROR 2002: Can't connect to local MySQL server through socket '/badname' (111)
slackware:~$
```

**Figure 8-14:** The socket name I used doesn't exist; therefore I receive an error message when I try to connect.

Some of the more useful client or CLI variables are shown in Table 8-1.

**Table 8-1**  
**Frequently Used MySQL CLI Variables**

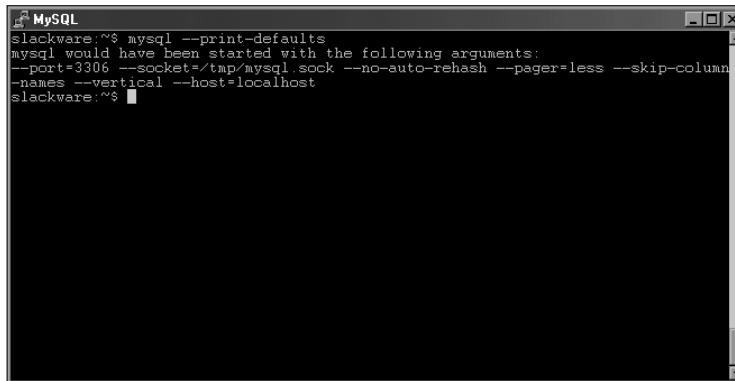
| <b>Variable</b>             | <b>Use</b>   |
|-----------------------------|--|
| <i>socket</i>               | Changes the socket for local connections.  |
| <i>port</i>                 | Changes the port for connections via TCP/IP.                                       |
| <i>password</i>             | Sets the password to be used by the CLI. Potential security risk.                  |
| <i>pager</i>                | Sets the pager such as the more or less commands to control scroll.                |
| <i>host</i>                 | Sets a default host to connect to with all connections.                            |
| <i>database</i>             | Sets a default database.   |
| <i>skip-column-names</i>    | Suppresses the printing of column names with the <code>select</code> statements.   |
| <i>vertical</i>             | Prints output from queries vertically.   |
| <i>html</i>                 | Produces output in HTML format, useful when operating in non-interactive mode.     |
| <i>tee=&lt;filename&gt;</i> | Appends output from interactive mode into the file named <i>&lt;filename&gt;</i> . |

When calling the MySQL program, you can set its variables either in the `.my.cnf` file or on the command line.

**Tip**

Variables set on the command line supersede those set in configuration files.

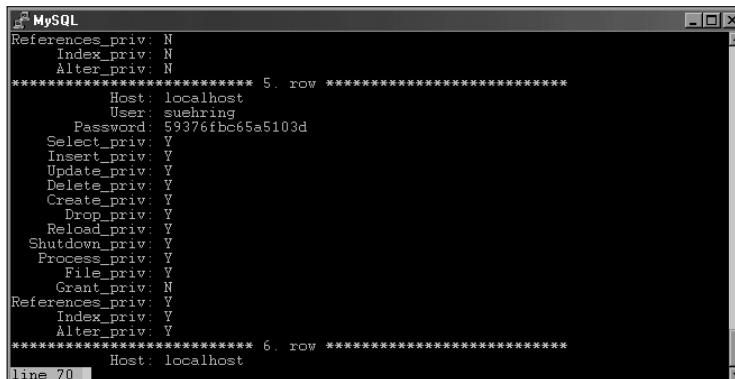
In addition to setting variables, a `--no-defaults` command-line option enables you to override any defaults in configuration files. This is useful if your `.my.cnf` file has a number of default values set, and you want to override them all to use some non-default options. In Figure 8-15, for example, I have set some options that enable me to work more efficiently (since most of the work is done on the local machine).



```
slackware:~$ mysql --print-defaults
mysql would have been started with the following arguments:
--port=3306 socket=/tmp/mysql.sock --no-auto-rehash --pager=less --skip-column-
names --vertical --host=localhost
slackware:~$
```

**Figure 8-15:** Using mysql --print-defaults to see the default options I have for this client

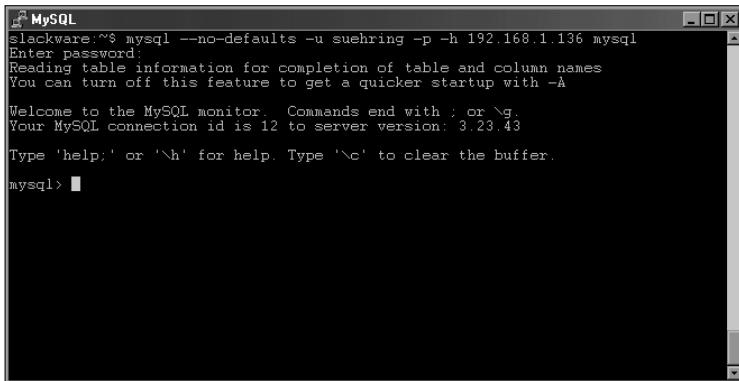
Performing a query with these options yields the results shown in Figure 8-16.



```
References_priv: N
Index_priv: N
Alter_priv: N
*****
5. row *****
Host: localhost
User: suehring
Password: 59376fb665a5103d
Select_priv: Y
Insert_priv: Y
Update_priv: Y
Delete_priv: Y
Create_priv: Y
Drop_priv: Y
Reload_priv: Y
Shutdown_priv: Y
Process_priv: Y
File_priv: Y
Grant_priv: N
References_priv: Y
Index_priv: Y
Alter_priv: Y
*****
6. row *****
Host: localhost
line 70
```

**Figure 8-16:** Running a query with the default options

However, now I have to connect to another MySQL server—and I don't want the vertical or pager options but I do need column names printed. To turn off all the defaults at once—and set my own, basing them on the new host—I use the --no-defaults option (as shown in Figure 8-17).



**Figure 8-17:** Using the `--no-defaults` option on the command line to override all defaults at once

Performing a query shows that the other options (such as vertical and pager) have been turned off, as shown in Figure 8-18.

| localhost   |   |          |                  |   |   |   |   |   |
|-------------|---|----------|------------------|---|---|---|---|---|
| N           | N | N        | N                | N | N | N | N | N |
| N           | N | N        | N                | N | N | N | N | N |
| N           | N | N        | N                | N | N | N | N | N |
| 192.168.1.% | Y | root     | 7d67497627a4539b | Y | Y | Y | Y | Y |
| Y           | Y | Y        | Y                | Y | Y | Y | Y | Y |
| 192.168.1.% | Y | suehring | 7d67497627a4539b | Y | Y | Y | Y | Y |
| Y           | Y | Y        | Y                | Y | Y | Y | Y | Y |

6 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>

**Figure 8-18:** A query with the defaults turned off yields the expected results.

## Using the CLI in Interactive Mode

When you use the CLI in interactive mode, a prompt akin to a shell prompt appears—you get functions, switches, and settings that affect how the CLI operates. Some of these features are better used with the CLI in non-interactive mode; others work more efficiently in interactive mode.

**Note**

When using the MySQL CLI in interactive mode, all commands must be terminated with a semicolon (;). The only three exceptions to this rule are the `exit` command, the `quit` command, and the `connect` command.

## Speeding startup of the CLI

When the CLI starts, it reads in table information to allow for completion, which can sometimes slow the startup. To turn off this default and get a quicker CLI startup, use the `-A` or `--no-auto-rehash` switch. Adding `--no-auto-rehash` to the MySQL configuration file under the `[mysql]` section makes this quicker startup permanent.

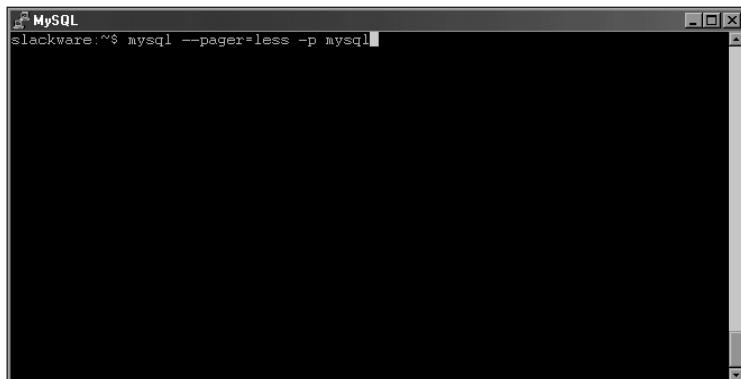
## Making the CLI quieter

When you start the CLI, a welcoming message prints (along with version and session information). In addition, status messages appear on-screen so you can see the progress of the statements you execute. If you'd like to stop that information from showing up, use the `-s` or `--silent` option. To make this arrangement permanent (except for error messages, which still appear as needed), add the `--silent` option under the `[mysql]` section of your MySQL configuration file.

## Using a pager to work with larger amounts of data

Often the results of a `select` statement scroll past the screen when the program has to handle a large (or not even very large) set of data. Through the use of the `pager` option you can set MySQL to return query results split over a number of screens. Using a *pager* command such as the `more` or `less`, you can control the scrolling on a page-by-page basis.

You can set the `pager` option, whether from inside a configuration file or on the command line, by adding the `--pager=<pager>` option to the `mysql` command, as shown in Figure 8-19.



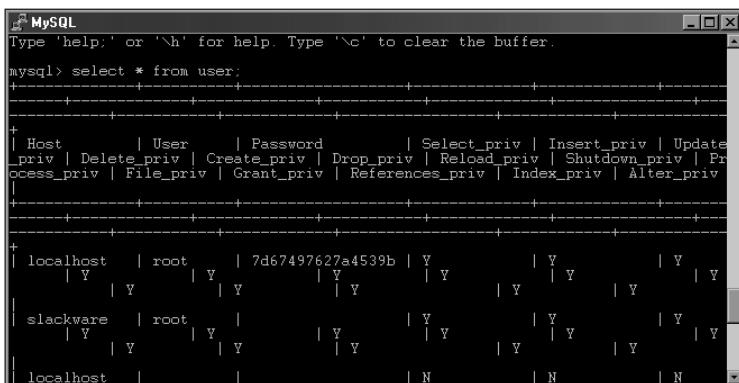
**Figure 8-19:** Using the `--pager` option on the command line specifies the program to control scrolling

**Note**

If the pager option is set in a MySQL configuration file, you can turn it off by using the `--no-pager` switch on the command line.

## Displaying query results vertically

Often the columns in a query result wrap awkwardly around the edges of the screen. Not only is this situation ugly, it's also confusing; the wrapping makes the columns hard to match with their values, as shown in Figure 8-20.

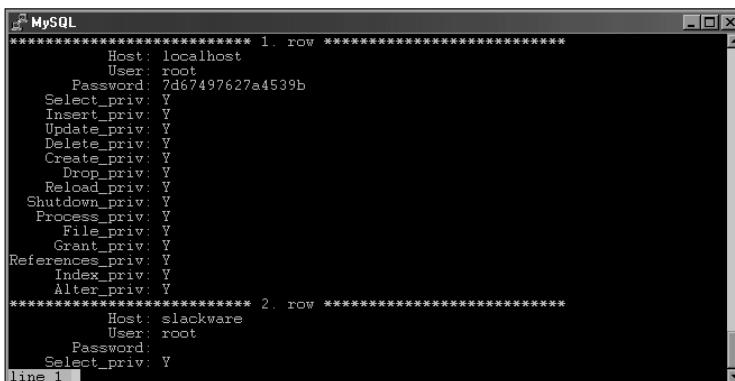


```
MySQL
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> select * from user;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Host | User | Password | Select_priv | Insert_priv | Update_
priv | Delete_priv | Create_priv | Drop_priv | Reload_priv | Shutdown_
priv | Pr
ocess_priv | File_priv | Grant_priv | References_priv | Index_priv | Alter_
priv
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| localhost | root | 7d67497627a4539b | Y | Y | Y
| Y | Y | Y | Y | Y | Y
| slackware | root | | Y | Y | Y
| Y | Y | Y | Y | Y | Y
| localhost | | | N | N | N
```

**Figure 8-20:** Without the vertical option, the output from this query wraps around the screen.

In Figure 8-20, it can be difficult to determine whether a given user actually has the File privilege. However, with the use of the `-E` or `--vertical` switch, the data is displayed with columns following each other vertically. Adding the `vertical` option to the `.my.cnf` file in my home directory—along with the use of a pager command—greatly improved the look and usability of my query's output (as shown in Figure 8-21).



```
*****
1. row *****
Host: localhost
User: root
Password: 7d67497627a4539b
Select_priv: Y
Insert_priv: Y
Update_priv: Y
Delete_priv: Y
Create_priv: Y
Drop_priv: Y
Reload_priv: Y
Shutdown_priv: Y
Process_priv: Y
File_priv: Y
Grant_priv: Y
References_priv: Y
Index_priv: Y
Alter_priv: Y
*****
2. row *****
Host: slackware
User: root
Password:
Select_priv: Y
```

**Figure 8-21:** Using the vertical option and the pager option to make the output more comprehensible

I added the following lines to the [mysql] section of the .my.cnf configuration file to produce the output in Figure 8-21.

```
[mysql]
host=localhost
vertical
pager=/usr/bin/less
```

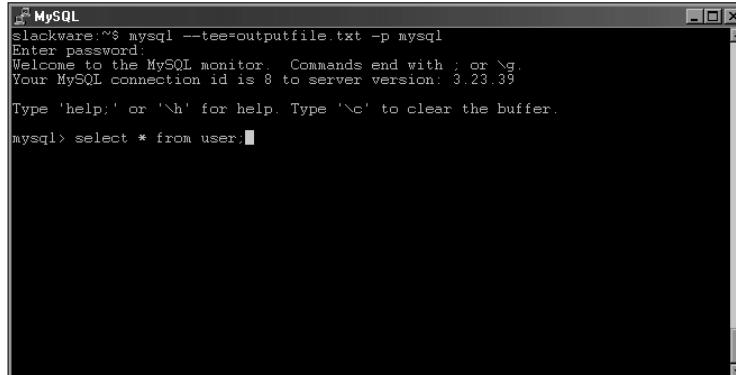
**Note**

The use of --pager won't work when using the CLI in non-interactive mode.

## Using tee to save output

The tee command takes the entire session—including input and output from a command—and appends it to a file that you specify. This function can be helpful when debugging (for security purposes), or simply as an easy way to get data into a file. The switch to use this function with MySQL is --tee=<filename>.

Alternately the switch can be set in the MySQL configuration file with the use of tee=<filename>. For example, Figure 8-22 uses the tee function to append the session onto a file called outfile.txt.



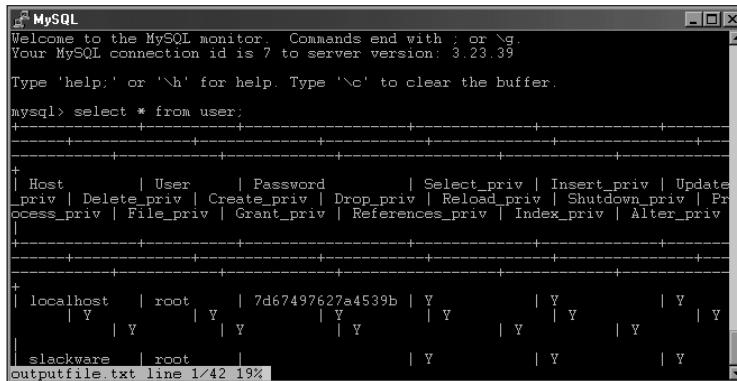
A screenshot of a terminal window titled "MySQL". The window shows the MySQL monitor interface. The user has entered the command "mysql --tee=outputfile.txt -p mysql" and is prompted for a password. After entering the password, the MySQL connection is established, and the user runs the command "select \* from user;". The output of this command is shown in the terminal window, and the text "mysqldump: append session data to outfile" is visible at the bottom of the window, indicating that the session data is being appended to the specified file.

**Figure 8-22:** Using the tee function to append session data to the content of a file

Figure 8-23 shows session data that has been saved to the outfile.txt file.

**Note**

If the tee option is set in a MySQL configuration file, it can be turned off by using the --no-tee switch on the command line.



The screenshot shows the MySQL monitor window. The command `select * from user;` is run, and the output is being directed to a file named `outputfile.txt`. The progress bar at the bottom indicates 19% completion.

| Host      | User | Password         | Select_priv | Insert_priv | Update_priv | Delete_priv | Create_priv | Drop_priv | Reload_priv | Shutdown_priv | Process_priv | File_priv | Grant_priv | References_priv | Index_priv | Alter_priv |
|-----------|------|------------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-----------|-------------|---------------|--------------|-----------|------------|-----------------|------------|------------|
| localhost | root | 7d67497627a4539b | Y           | Y           | Y           | Y           | Y           | Y         | Y           | Y             | Y            | Y         | Y          | Y               | Y          | Y          |
| slackware | root |                  |             | Y           |             |             |             |           |             |               |              |           |            |                 |            |            |

**Figure 8-23:** Here the Tee function has saved session data in the file.

## Printing output in HTML format

Though using the CLI in non-interactive mode is generally the more useful approach, sometimes you may want to run a simple query and then copy and paste its output into a Web page as HTML output. To do so, use the `-H` or `--html` switch (or put the word `html` in your MySQL configuration file under the `[mysql]` section).

## Suppressing column names

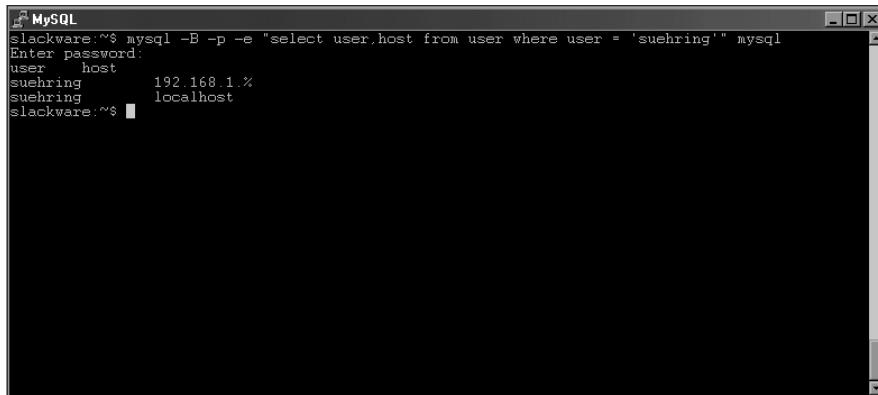
At times I've found it useful to run a query without having the column names print in the output. From within the CLI, this technique can sometimes prevent some confusion by keeping the output from wrapping around on-screen. As with the switch that produces HTML output, this function may be best used in non-interactive mode—though it's sometimes useful in interactive mode as well.

To suppress column names, start the MySQL CLI with the `-N` or `--skip-column-names` switch. To make this suppression permanent, add `skip-column-names` to your MySQL configuration file in the `[mysql]` section.

## Using batch mode to produce tab delimited output

The MySQL CLI also operates in a batch mode that suppresses traditional feedback from the CLI and presents query output in tab-delimited format (see Figure 8-24).

If you enter batch mode and get an error message, the session is immediately terminated. You are sent back to the shell with an echo of the error message (as shown in Figure 8-25).



```
slackware:~$ mysql -B -p -e "select user,host from user where user = 'suehring'" mysql
Enter password:
+-----+-----+
| user | host  |
+-----+-----+
| suehring | 192.168.1.% |
| suehring | localhost |
+-----+-----+
slackware:~$
```

**Figure 8-24:** Using the CLI in batch mode to get tab-delimited output while suppressing other information and feedback from the CLI.



```
slackware:~$ mysql -B -p mysql
Enter password:
select * from bad_table_name;
ERROR 1146 at line 1: Table 'mysql.bad_table_name' doesn't exist
slackware:~$
```

**Figure 8-25:** Errors that occur while you're using batch mode kick you back out to the command shell.

**Note**

You still have to terminate commands with a semicolon (;) while using batch mode interactively.

If you want to prevent MySQL from terminating your session upon error when in batch mode, use the -f or --force switch. With the Force option set, the error message is displayed but the session continues, ignoring the error.

**Caution**

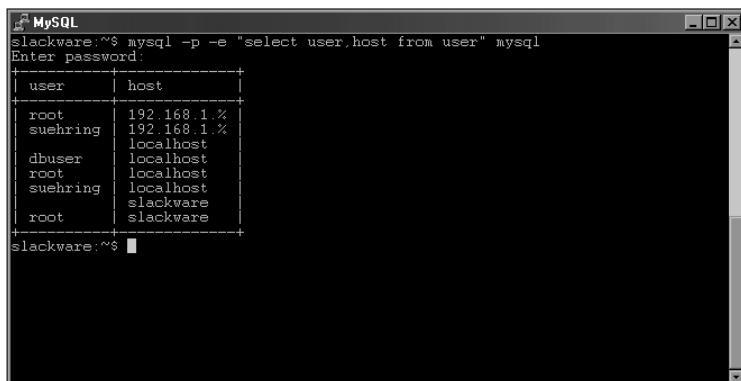
Use the force option with care; one error in the beginning of a series of SQL statements can wreak havoc on the rest of the statements—and possibly the data.

## Using the CLI in Non-Interactive Mode

The CLI need not be used interactively; sometimes running a simple query or command on the server does the job. For example, you may want to redirect the output of a statement to a file, or use a scheduler (such as cron) to schedule the running of a particular command. In such instances, the MySQL CLI can be used in a *non-interactive mode* that makes it operate like any basic, straightforward command.

### Executing a statement

When you're operating in non-interactive mode, one of the most frequent and useful operations is to execute a statement. To do so, you use the `-e` or `--execute=` command-line switch. For example, to run a simple query that finds the users and hosts allowed to connect to a particular database, you can use the `-e` switch as illustrated in Figure 8-26.

A screenshot of a terminal window titled "MySQL". The command entered is "mysql -p -e "select user,host from user" mysql". The password prompt is skipped. The output shows a table with two columns: "user" and "host". The data is as follows:

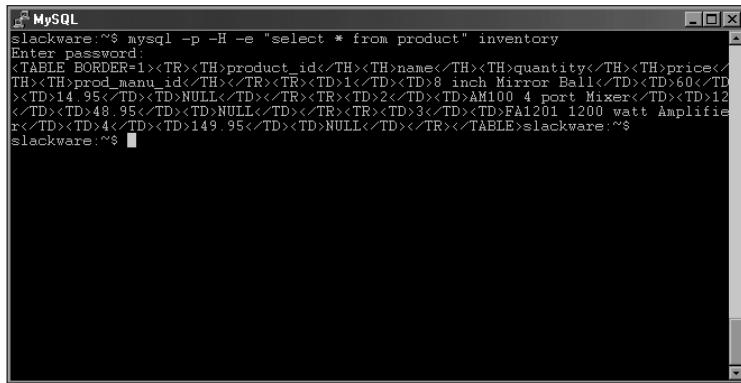
| user     | host        |
|----------|-------------|
| root     | 192.168.1.% |
| suehring | 192.168.1.% |
|          | localhost   |
| dbuser   | localhost   |
| root     | localhost   |
| suehring | slackware   |
| root     | slackware   |

Figure 8-26: Using the `-e` switch to run a simple query

In Figure 8-26, I specified the `-p` switch to have MySQL prompt for the password. Next comes the `-e` switch, followed by the statement to execute in quotes. Finally comes the name of the database to connect to (in this case, `mysql`, because that's where user data is stored).

### Printing HTML output

One especially handy feature of the MySQL CLI is that it can output a query in HTML format—a capability you can use to create a simple Web page from a query without much effort. The switch that produces HTML output is `-H` or `--html`. For example, suppose I want to make a Web page consisting of a simple report of the products in the ecommerce database example (yes, all three of them.) In Figure 8-27, I ran the command to produce the output.



```
slackware:~$ mysql -p -H -e "select * from product" inventory
Enter password:
<TABLE BORDER=1><TR><TH>product_id</TH><TH>name</TH><TH>quantity</TH><TH>price</TH>
<TH>prod_manu_id</TH></TR><TR><TD>1</TD><TD>8 inch Mirror Ball</TD><TD>60</TD>
</TD>14.95</TD><TD>NULL</TD></TR><TR><TD>2</TD><TD>AM100 1 port Mixer</TD><TD>12
</TD><TD>48.95</TD><TD>NULL</TD></TR><TR><TD>3</TD><TD>FA1201 1200 watt Amplifie
r</TD><TD>4</TD><TD>149.95</TD><TD>NULL</TD></TR></TABLE>slackware:~$
```

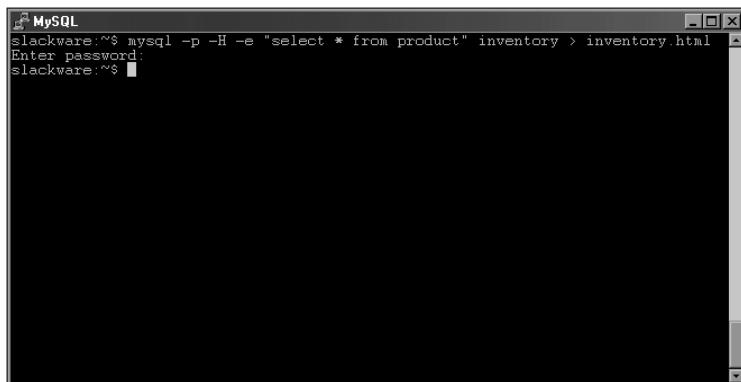
**Figure 8-27:** The output from a HTML-formatted query that uses the CLI

In Figure 8-27, the switches and the order of the command are what you would expect.



Whenever you add an option or a switch to the `mysql` command, be sure to use the correct case. For example, adding the `-H` option gives MySQL different instructions from those specified by the `-h` switch (lowercase `h`). Adding `-h` instead of `-H` would have made MySQL think you were specifying a host instead of calling for HTML output. As you can see from Figure 8-27, the output isn't pretty.

The greatest usefulness of the HTML switch is redirecting output to a file, as shown in Figure 8-28.



```
slackware:~$ mysql -p -H -e "select * from product" inventory > inventory.html
Enter password:
slackware:~$
```

**Figure 8-28:** Redirecting the output from an HTML-formatted query

In Figure 8-28, the output is redirected by using the greater-than sign (>) and the name of the file that receives the output is `inventory.html`.



In Linux, the single greater-than sign (>) causes the redirected output to overwrite whatever is in the receiving file. If you want merely to append the output instead of using it to replace what's in the file, use two greater-than signs (>>).

After moving or copying the file (with the newly appended output) to a place where the Web server can get hold of it, I have a Web page consisting of a simple table that shows the products in the inventory. Figure 8-29 shows what it looks like.

The screenshot shows a Netscape browser window with the title bar "Netscape". The menu bar includes "File", "Edit", "View", "Go", "Window", and "Help". Below the menu is a toolbar with icons for Back, Forward, Reload, Home, Search, Netscape, Print, Security, and Stop. The location bar shows the URL "http://192.168.1.75/inventory.html". The main content area displays a simple HTML table with the following data:

| product_id | name                       | quantity | price  | prod_manu_id |
|------------|----------------------------|----------|--------|--------------|
| 1          | 8 inch Mirror Ball         | 60       | 14.95  | NULL         |
| 2          | AM100 4 port Mixer         | 12       | 48.95  | NULL         |
| 3          | FA1201 1200 watt Amplifier | 4        | 149.95 | NULL         |

**Figure 8-29:** A simple Web page produced with the output from the -H switch

## Suppressing column names

Every time MySQL runs a query, the output of the query includes column names at the top. If you want to exclude column names (as when you append the output to a different file), you can use an option to suppress them.

To suppress column names, start the MySQL CLI with the `-N` or `--skip-column-names` switch. To make this function permanent, add `skip-column-names` to your MySQL configuration file in the `[mysql]` section.

## Printing results vertically

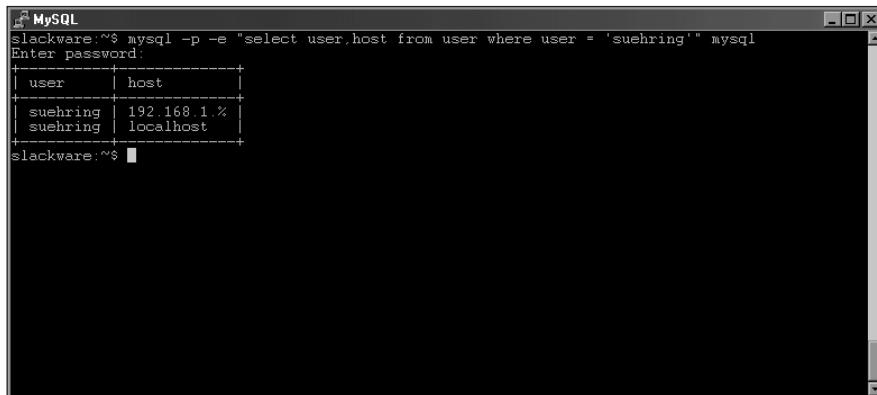
Just as the MySQL CLI can print results vertically when being used interactively to help improve layout, vertical output is sometimes useful in non-interactive mode as well. This is especially true for appending data to a file to be examined later.

The switch to turn on the appropriate option is `-E` or `--vertical`. This format can be made permanent by adding the word `vertical` to your MySQL configuration file under the `[mysql]` section.

## Using batch mode to produce tab-delimited output

To produce output that uses tabs as delimiters, you can use MySQL in batch mode. Turn batch mode on with the `-B` or `--batch` switch (or add the word `batch` to your MySQL configuration file under the `[mysql]` section). In batch mode, the output from a `SELECT` statement would show values separated by tabs instead of by columns (useful if you're importing data into another application, because most applications recognize the tab character as a valid field separator).

In Figure 8-30, I issue a simple `SELECT` statement in normal mode, which formats the fields as a table.



A screenshot of a terminal window titled "MySQL". The window shows the command: "slackware:~\$ mysql -p -e "select user.host from user where user = 'suehring'" mysql". The password prompt "Enter password:" is visible. Below it, the output of the query is shown in a tabular format:

| user     | host        |
|----------|-------------|
| suehring | 192.168.1.% |
| suehring | localhost   |

slackware:~\$

**Figure 8-30:** A query in normal mode produces tabular-formatted output

In Figure 8-31, I issue that same `SELECT` statement, this time in batch mode. Notice that the output no longer has the tabular format. Instead, it shows tabs as delimiters. Using batch mode, I could redirect the output file and import it into another database application.

```
MySQL
slackware:~$ mysql -B -p mysql
Enter password:
select user,host from user where user = 'suehring';
+-----+-----+
| user | host   |
+-----+-----+
| suehring | 192.168.1.% |
| suehring | localhost |
+-----+-----+
select * from db;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Host | Db    | User  | Select_priv | Insert_priv | Update_priv | References_priv | Delete_priv | Create_priv | Drop_priv | Grant_priv | Index_priv |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| %    | test  |       | Y          | Y          | Y          | Y          | N          | N          | Y          | N          | N          |
| %    | test\% |       | Y          | Y          | Y          | Y          | Y          | Y          | Y          | N          | N          |
| localhost | inventory | dbuser | Y          | Y          | Y          | Y          | N          | N          | N          | N          | N          |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
exit
slackware:~$
```

Figure 8-31: Using batch mode to produce output with tab delimiters

**Cross-Reference**

Some other commands and statements—such as `mysqldump` or `SELECT INTO OUTFILE`—may be better suited to exporting data. Those commands are discussed in Chapter 10.

## Creating a Useful MySQL CLI Environment

With all the options covered in this chapter, you may be wondering which ones you should use—and whether to set the options globally (for all users of the CLI), or only for your user account, or only in your home directory. The answers are flexible, determined by what you need your database application to do.

For example, if all users on the computer use the same username to connect to a particular database, you could make that usage a global setting in the MySQL configuration file. Alternatively, if you use a particular username but everyone else uses a different one, you could specify that setting in your local or personal MySQL configuration file.

**Tip**

Programmers still debate the matter of which pager command is best for displaying results. For practicality's sake, you may want to avoid the debate by specifying that setting only in a local or personal configuration file.

A useful environment for the CLI can be as complicated or as simple as you'd like it to be. Ideally, you could produce a configuration file personalized for your use of the MySQL CLI. With a good configuration, you could save time and increase productivity by not having to specify the same options every time you start the CLI.

## A basic MySQL CLI configuration

The following configuration example might be a fine starting point for anyone's use of MySQL. The configuration provides a default pager of less for results that would

scroll more than one screen and it will also tell the CLI to automatically prompt for the password on startup. This should be set in your local configuration file such as the `.my.cnf` file in your home directory in Linux.

```
[mysql]
pager=less
password
```

## A MySQL administration configuration

The following is an example of what an administrator's configuration might look like for MySQL. You would have to add a username of `admin` with proper privileges to the database. The configuration will connect as the user '`admin`' and prompt for a password. The default database to connect to is the `mysql grants` database that houses user rights and privileges. I've chosen a default pager of `less` to specify fewer results on-screen (`less` to scroll through). I added the `vertical` option because I've found that displaying the grant tables vertically really helps comprehension since most of the grant tables will wrap around the screen. Finally, all operations within the CLI will be appended to a logfile for tracking

```
[mysql]
user=admin
password
database=mysql
pager=less
vertical
tee=mysqlaudit.log
```

**Note**

The `tee` option does not provide complete security or tracking for operations performed within a database.

## A client-only MySQL CLI configuration

If you connect to a remote MySQL server frequently, adding a `host=<hostname>` line to the basic configuration might help. With the `host=<hostname>` configuration, the CLI automatically connects to the remote host without requiring you to specify the `-h` switch on the command line.

```
[mysql]
host=192.168.1.75
pager=less
password
```

## Your MySQL CLI configuration

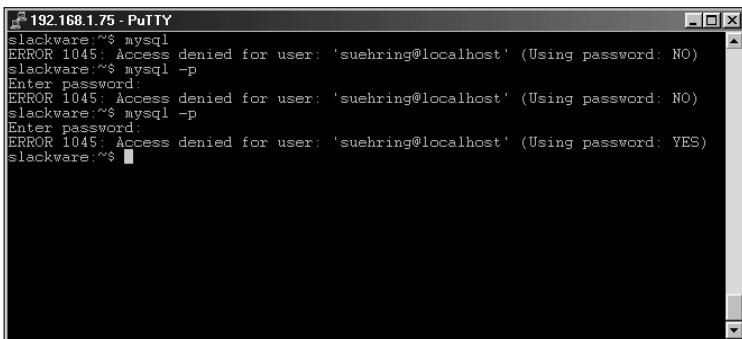
Your MySQL CLI configuration may look somewhat different from the ones I've given as examples. Building and tailoring the configuration to your application and installation is one of many ways you can improve your experience with MySQL.

## Common CLI Errors

Using the CLI myself (and working with many people who are new to databases and the CLI), I've seen quite a few error messages. Often the errors crop up simply because I can't seem to type well that day, but just as often they show up for other reasons that call for some simple troubleshooting.

### Access Denied errors

The Access Denied error has a number of variations, three of which are shown in Figure 8-32.

A screenshot of a PuTTY terminal window titled "192.168.1.75 - PuTTY". The window displays three separate attempts to log into MySQL as user 'suehring' at localhost. In each attempt, the user tries to log in without specifying a password (-p) or enters an empty password. The first two attempts result in an "Access denied for user" error with "Using password: NO". The third attempt results in the same error message but with "Using password: YES", indicating a mistyped password.

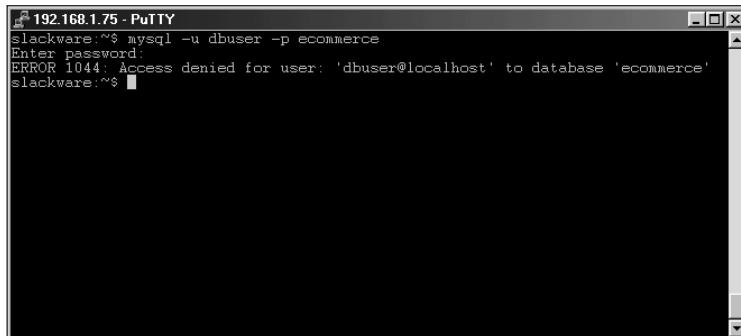
```
slackware:~$ mysql
ERROR 1045: Access denied for user: 'suehring@localhost' (Using password: NO)
slackware:~$ mysql -p
Enter password:
ERROR 1045: Access denied for user: 'suehring@localhost' (Using password: NO)
slackware:~$ mysql -p
Enter password:
ERROR 1045: Access denied for user: 'suehring@localhost' (Using password: YES)
slackware:~$
```

Figure 8-32: Three variations of the Access Denied error with the CLI

Here's what produced the errors shown in Figure 8-32:

- ◆ In the first example I am trying to obtain access to the CLI as the user suehring but I am not specifying a password via the -p switch. This try fails; the error message hints (not too subtly) why: Using Password: No.
- ◆ In the second attempt, I add the -p switch but then press Enter instead of typing the password. Notice the similarity of result between the second and first attempts (though I didn't use the -p switch in the first one).
- ◆ In the third attempt, I use the -p switch but mistype the password. Notice this time that the end of the error message is different: Using Password: Yes.

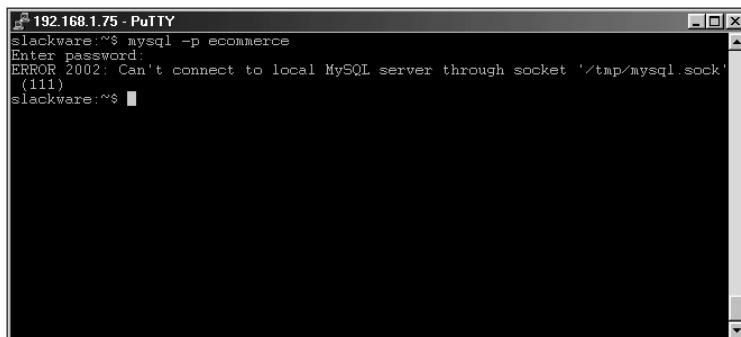
Another variation of the Access Denied error is shown in Figure 8-33: I try to connect to a database on which I have no privileges or rights. As you can see, the error number is different, as is the message.



```
slackware:~$ mysql -u dbuser -p ecommerce
Enter password:
ERROR 1044: Access denied for user: 'dbuser@localhost' to database 'ecommerce'
slackware:~$
```

**Figure 8-33:** Another variation of an Access Denied error occurs when the user doesn't have sufficient privileges to connect to the database.

Figure 8-34 illustrates a common error that can crop up when you try to connect to a MySQL database. There are differing reasons for this error message; the first and foremost is that the MySQL server isn't running. Normally you can solve this problem by starting the MySQL server and attempting to connect again.



```
slackware:~$ mysql -p ecommerce
Enter password:
ERROR 2002: Can't connect to local MySQL server through socket '/tmp/mysql.sock'
(111)
slackware:~$
```

**Figure 8-34:** A common error can mean one of several different problems may exist.

Another cause of the problem shown in Figure 8-34 is that the CLI is attempting to connect through a socket file that doesn't exist. The remedy for this issue is usually to determine *why* the file doesn't exist—for example, because of permissions problems, a file created in the wrong place, or (again) a MySQL server that isn't running.

## Alternatives to the CLI

The CLI is by no means the only method for working with database and data. With the numerous MySQL APIs available, you can write your own method for interacting with the database and data, using many programming languages—or use any of the pre-written programs that were written for working with databases and data. In this section I'm going to discuss two such programs, the MySQLGUI program distributed by MySQL AB as well as the Web-based tool phpMyAdmin.

Of course, since the advent of the Macintosh and Windows graphical user interfaces, the GUI has long been an alternative to the CLI (though some argue that a server operating system shouldn't be required to have a GUI). Although MySQLGUI performs the same functions as the MySQL CLI, it abandons the text-based interface of a traditional CLI and adopts a look that may be more comfortable for longtime Windows and Mac users. You can obtain a copy of the MySQLGUI program directly from MySQL AB.

The MySQLGUI doesn't come with all the bells and whistles that some GUI users expect—in particular, it has no installation or setup program. After you unpack the archive, you have to create your own directories and shortcuts to the program.

The phpMyAdmin suite is a collection of PHP scripts that perform many of the same tasks as the MySQL CLI and its `mysqladmin` command. With phpMyAdmin, you can perform selects, insert, deletes, creation of databases and tables as well as administration tasks such as adding users, showing processes and so forth, all through a Web-based interface.

Installation of phpMyAdmin requires PHP and a Web server such as Apache. You can obtain phpMyAdmin at <http://phpwizard.net>. Because phpMyAdmin runs on a Web server, you can use it to work with your database server and databases from any computer with a Web browser, regardless of platform.



The Apache Web server is included on the CD-ROM with this book, as is PHP.

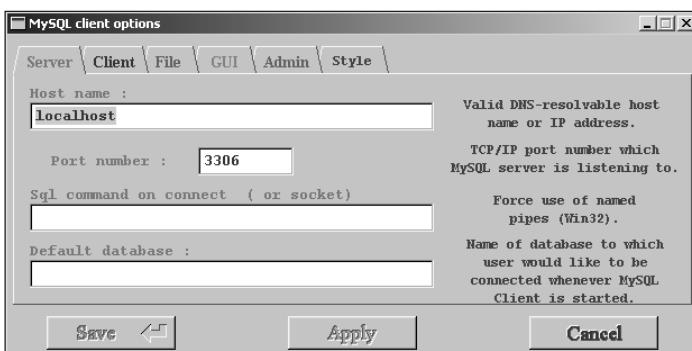
### The basics of MySQLGUI

At first startup, MySQLGUI prompts you for the password (see Figure 8-35). If you enter a password and continue, MySQLGUI attempts to connect as 'root' to the localhost server. If you press the Esc key, however, you get to the MySQLGUI main screen without connecting to the database server.



**Figure 8-35:** MySQLGUI prompts for the password at startup. Pressing Esc bypasses the Password screen.

Before you can perform any actions on the database server, you must supply credentials such as username and password. MySQLGUI also looks for information in configuration files such as `.my.cnf` and `my.ini`. To set or change these options, click `Manage`  $\Rightarrow$  `Options`; alternatively, click the `Options` button on the toolbar. You should see a screen similar to Figure 8-36.



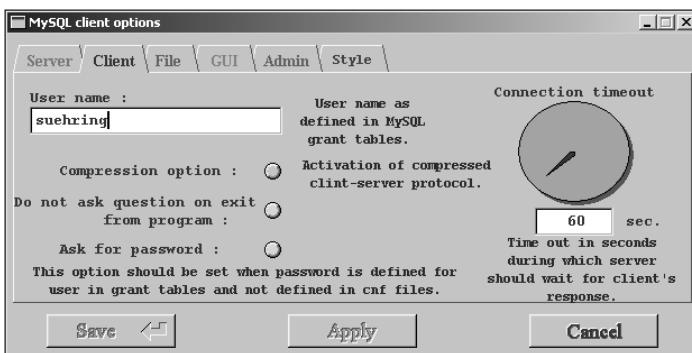
**Figure 8-36:** The Options screen in MySQLGUI is where you set the credentials for connecting to the database server, as well as other program options.

Note that Figure 8-36 also shows a row of tabs across the top of the dialog box. By default, MySQLGUI attempts a connection to the localhost database server (or the machine on which MySQLGUI is running). You can also supply an IP address or DNS name for another MySQL server. If you want to connect to a specific database such as the default `mysql` database, you can set that on this screen as well.

The Client tab, shown in Figure 8-37, is for establishing some basic settings for the client—for example, username (which is `root` by default) and the timeout interval for the connection. For my example, I connect as the user `suehring`—changing the username.



**Caution** The `root` username should be reserved for one user only—the administrative “superuser.” I strongly recommend that you don’t use MySQL’s root user to perform day-to-day tasks with MySQL.



**Figure 8-37:** The Client tab is where you set options such as username and connection timeout.

When you click the Apply button, the Options dialog box closes. If you want to save your settings for the next time you run the program, you must click the Save button after clicking Apply

**Note**

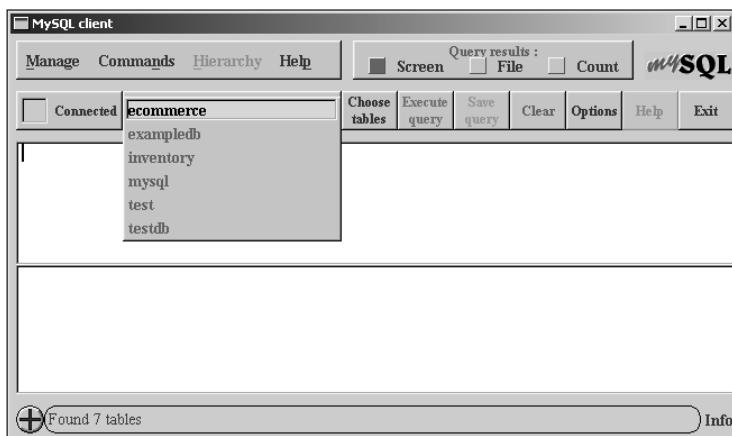
Be sure to click the Save button if you want the options to be saved for the next time you run MySQLGUI.

When your options are set, click the Connect button (in the upper-left area of the MySQLGUI window). A password prompt similar to that in Figure 8-35 appears; mistyping the password produces results that look like Figure 8-38: An informational or error message appears at the bottom of the screen—strikingly similar to the one you'd receive with the MySQL CLI.



**Figure 8-38:** I deliberately mistyped my password to show you the error message you get when you do that.

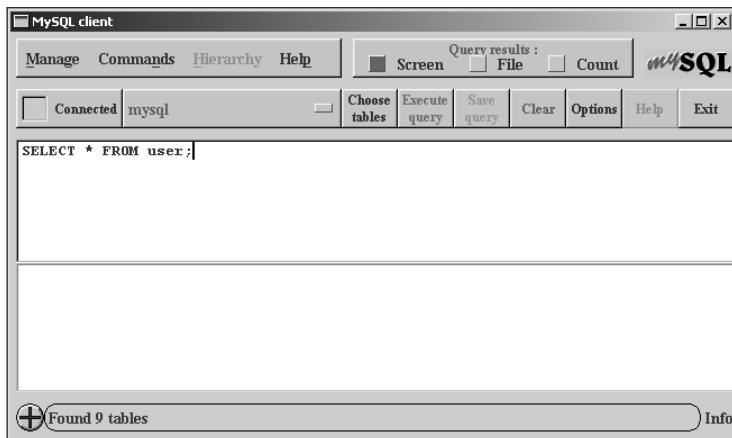
Clicking the Connect button and then typing your password correctly results (logically enough) in a connection to the database server. Notice that if more than one database is available on the server, you can click the drop-down box next to the Connect button and see a complete list (as shown in Figure 8-39). You still see a complete list of databases, even if you don't have any privileges on them. Attempting to connect to a database for which you don't have privileges will result in an error. In addition, when MySQLGUI connects, it places the list of databases in alphabetical order. If you don't have privileges on the first database in that list, you won't be allowed to connect. To correct this problem, set a default database by clicking File  $\leftrightarrow$  Options.



**Figure 8-39:** Connecting to the database server and looking at the databases available on the server

## Running SQL statements with MySQLGUI

Running a query or other SQL statement is really quite simple with MySQLGUI. Simply type the query into the box as shown in Figure 8-40, using a simple query on the `mysql` database such as `SELECT * FROM user`.



**Figure 8-40:** Executing SQL statements with MySQLGUI is easy, as shown by this simple query.

You can choose of what you'd like to do with the results from the statement. Figures 8-36 through 8-39 show three buttons across the top of the main MySQLGUI screen—Screen, File, and Count—that also represent those choices:

- ◆ **Screen:** By default, the Screen option is selected, which prints the results of any statement on-screen only. The results of the `SELECT * FROM user` query open a new dialog box, as shown in Figure 8-41.

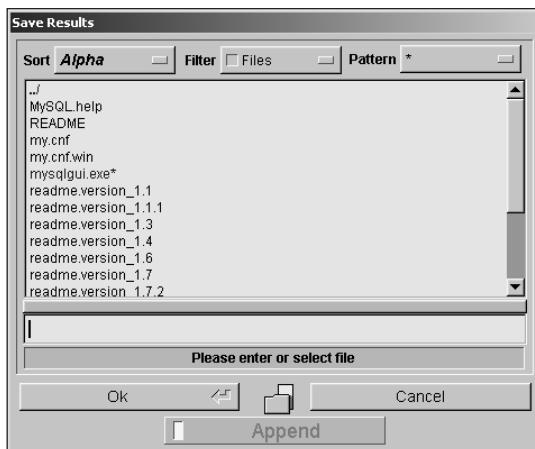
The screenshot shows the MySQL results dialog box. The title bar says 'MySQL results' and the message bar says 'Query conditions were met by 9 rows.' The main area is a table with columns 'host', 'user', and 'p'. The data is as follows:

|   | host        | user     | p  |
|---|-------------|----------|----|
| 2 | localhost   | root     | 7d |
| 3 | slackware   | root     |    |
| 4 | localhost   |          |    |
| 5 | slackware   |          |    |
| 5 | localhost   | suehring | 59 |
| 6 | localhost   | dbuser   | 7d |
| 7 | 192.168.1.% | root     | 7d |
| 8 | 192.168.1.% | suehring | 59 |
| 9 | \%          | suehring |    |

**Figure 8-41:** When you print the results of a statement to the screen, a new dialog box opens automatically.

The Results box gives you the option to save your results to a file.

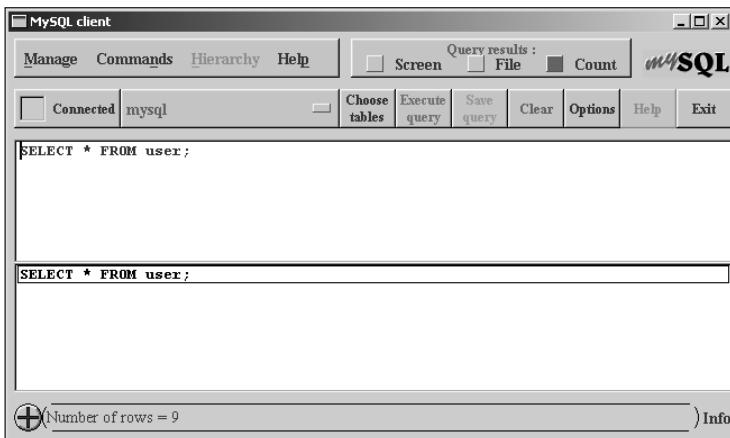
- ◆ **File:** If you want to save the results to a file directly, click the File button. A dialog box similar to the one shown in Figure 8-42 appears, prompting you for the location to which you want to send the results. In response to the prompt for a filename, you can choose to create a new file or append the results to an existing file.



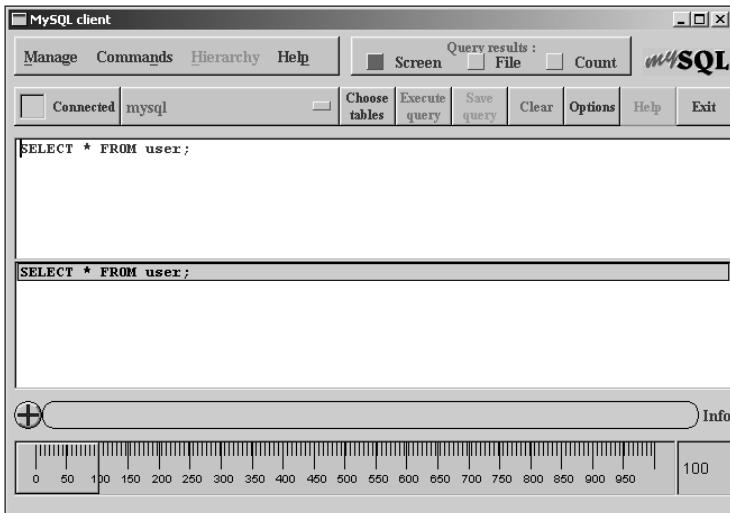
**Figure 8-42:** To save the results to a file, you must select the location and filename for MySQLGUI to send the results to.

- ◆ **Count:** Select this button if you want to see a count of the results instead of printing the output to the screen or to a file. The count appears in the Information section at the bottom of the MySQLGUI screen. For example, the `SELECT * FROM user` query returns 9 rows, as shown in Figure 8-43. The count results appear in the Information section at the bottom of the figure.

You can also use MySQLGUI to limit the number of rows returned by a query. Click Commands  $\Rightarrow$  Query  $\Rightarrow$  With Limit. A slider-bar appears at the bottom of the main MySQLGUI program screen, as shown in Figure 8-44. Simply slide the bar to the left or right, by left-clicking with the mouse and dragging the bar.



**Figure 8-43:** Select the Count option displays the number of rows returned by the statement in the Information section of the MySQLGUI screen.

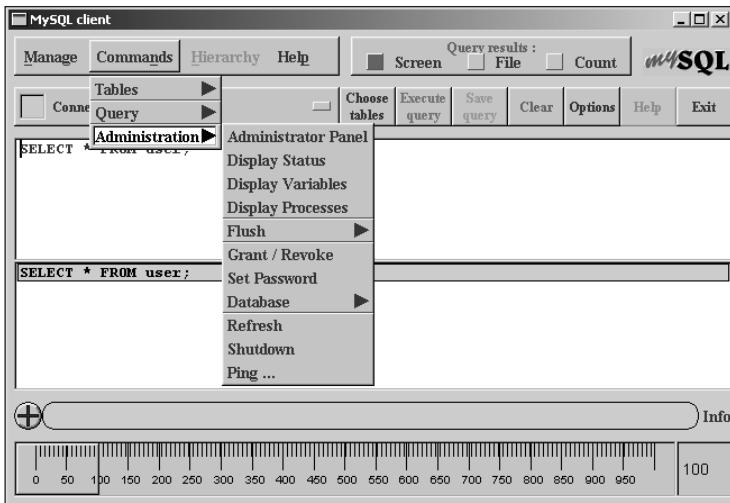


**Figure 8-44:** You can limit the rows returned by a query by selecting the With Limit option.

## Administration with MySQLGUI

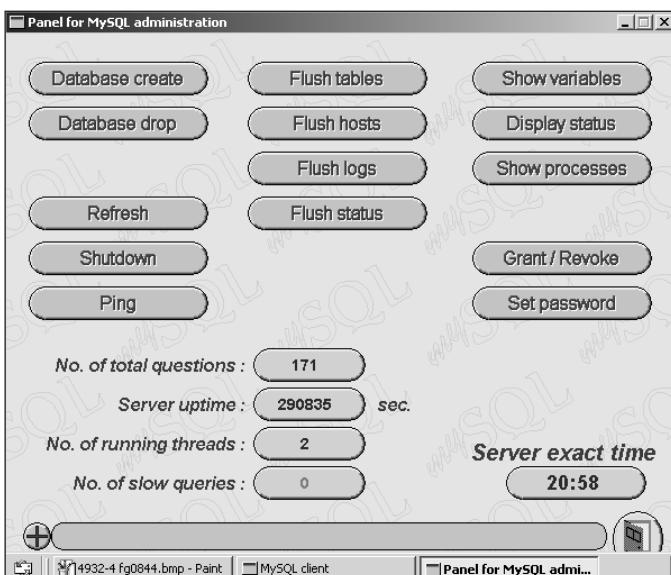
In addition to performing standard MySQL CLI duties (such as running SQL statements), you can use MySQLGUI to perform many administrative tasks such as creating and dropping databases, checking the status of the server, and even shutting the server down.

The Administration menu (below the Commands menu bar) is where you can find numerous commands for monitoring and governing the operation of MySQL database server, as shown in Figure 8-45.



**Figure 8-45:** The Administration commands available with MySQLGUI

To perform some of these same administrative tasks on the MySQL database server, you can bring up an Administration Panel there as well (as shown in Figure 8-46).



**Figure 8-46:** The Administration Panel of MySQLGUI



Administrative commands and tasks are discussed in individual detail throughout this book, most notably in Chapter 9 and Appendix A.

## The basics of phpMyAdmin

phpMyAdmin is a Web-based interface for working with databases and database servers. phpMyAdmin can be used to perform database administration as well as Data Definition Language (DDL) and Data Markup Language (DML) statements. For example, with phpMyAdmin you can create databases and tables and perform statements such as SELECT, INSERT, and DELETE.

As an added bonus, phpMyAdmin runs on various platforms—provided the machines using them can meet the system requirements. To run phpMyAdmin, your system must have not only a MySQL database server, but also the following:

- ◆ A Web server capable of running PHP (for example, Apache Server).
- ◆ PHP version 3 or above.
- ◆ A Web browser such as Netscape Navigator, Microsoft Internet Explorer, or Mozilla.

Though installation of the prerequisites to phpMyAdmin is beyond the scope of this book, the actual installation of phpMyAdmin is really quite easy. Simply create a directory on your Web server and unpack the phpMyAdmin archive to that directory. After unpacking the archive edit the phpMyAdmin configuration file to set parameters for your MySQL server, currently this file is called configuration.inc.php but that name may change in future versions of phpMyAdmin. There is documentation included with phpMyAdmin to assist with steps necessary for installation on your platform.



**Caution** You must restrict access to the Web server directory into which you install phpMyAdmin. Failure to do so can leave your database server and data open to unauthorized access.

## Running SQL statements with phpMyAdmin

As stated previously, phpMyAdmin can perform DDL and DML with ease. Many SQL statements can be built through the use of PHP forms or you can type in your own SQL statements to be executed on the server.

In the basic (or Home) screen for phpMyAdmin, the frame on the left side lists all the databases that the given user has access to. A plus sign (+) next to the database name indicates the existence of tables within the database; clicking the plus sign expands the list and shows which tables are in the database.

Clicking the actual database name in the left frame changes the right frame to a list of tables. The list also mentions actions you can take to change the table(s).

Scrolling down on the right-hand frame, you can see a number of other actions to perform on the database and tables. These include writing your own SQL statements, viewing the schema, and creating a new table. The default actions for a table include Browse, Select, Insert, Properties, Drop, and Empty. Using these default actions, you can build an SQL statement via PHP forms without having to know the underlying SQL. For example, to issue a `SELECT` statement to show the user and host within the user table of the MySQL database you can click the `mysql` database on the left side, click Select and then build a query.

The results of the query are then printed to the screen in a resulting page. You can also redirect the results to a file by selecting that option from the screen. Using a different set of options, you can Edit or Delete a given row of the result set. Clicking Edit for the user `phpuser` results in another page, with options for editing based on the columns in the table.

## Administration with phpMyAdmin

Among the administration tasks that you can perform with phpMyAdmin are creation of databases, editing privileges for users, reloading the server, and diagnosing server variables. The main interface page for phpMyAdmin in Figure 8-47 shows the actions you can perform. The options are self-explanatory and where you need further assistance, there is a Documentation link that connects you directly to MySQL AB's online documentation.

The administrative tasks you can perform—including the assignment of privileges, creation of databases, and choosing the variables you can see with phpMyAdmin—are discussed in greater detail throughout the book.

## Summary

The MySQL CLI is a command-line program for working with databases and the database server.

- ◆ The CLI can be used interactively or non-interactively.

The basic syntax for using the MySQL CLI is

```
mysql [options] [<databasename>]
```

- ◆ You can set a number of command-line options and variables that affect the behavior of the CLI.

- ◆ Three important and frequently used command-line options are

`-u <username>` for specifying the username

`-p` for telling the CLI to prompt for the password

`<databasename>` as the last argument to specify the database to connect to with the CLI

- ◆ You can create a personalized CLI environment through the use of the MySQL configuration files (for example, `~/my.cnf` in Linux).
- ◆ Common errors when connecting to the CLI include Access Denied errors when you type your password incorrectly or the user doesn't have sufficient privileges on the database, and a Cannot Connect through Socket error when the database server isn't running or the socket file doesn't exist.
- ◆ Two popular alternatives to the text-based CLI are MySQLGUI and phpMyAdmin, a cross-platform alternative.
- ◆ MySQLGUI distributed by MySQL AB as an alternative and addition to the text-based CLI. With MySQLGUI you can perform SQL statements as well as database administration.
- ◆ phpMyAdmin is a cross-platform alternative (and addition) to the text-based CLI. phpMyAdmin can help build and perform SQL statements, as well as some administrative tasks.



# SQL According to MySQL

**M**ySQL adheres to nearly all ANSI SQL standards. In fact, MySQL frequently extends those standards, offering more functionality and power for database operations and working with data.

This chapter expands upon the ecommerce database example that I've been developing throughout the book. As part of the expansion, I examine many SQL statements, their syntax, and their use.

First, I examine some utility and administrative commands in MySQL, which lay the groundwork for later statements. Data Definition Language (DDL) is covered next, along with the steps to take when you create or delete databases and tables. An examination of Data Markup Language (DML) wraps up the chapter.

## Utility and Administrative Statements and Commands

Besides Data Definition Language (DDL) or Data Markup Language (DML) statements, other statements and commands in MySQL serve vital purposes. Some of these purposes are administrative; others are basic to the operation of the database and the use of its data.

### SHOW statements

As one who works with numerous companies' database systems, I frequently encounter a new database (or revisit one I haven't seen for a year or more) and need a quick update. The SHOW statement quickly gets me acquainted with the structure

### In This Chapter

Issuing utility and administration commands and statements

Making use of Data Definition Language

Understanding data markup language

Adding examples of SELECT and related functions

of a database (or that of its individual tables); from there I can troubleshoot problems and look at the state of the server itself.

The syntax for the SHOW statement is as follows:

```
SHOW DATABASES [LIKE <wildcard>]
or SHOW [OPEN] TABLES [FROM <dbname>] [LIKE <wildcard>]
or SHOW [FULL] COLUMNS FROM <tablename> [FROM <dbname>]
[LIKE <wildcard>]
or SHOW INDEX FROM <tablename> [FROM <dbname>]
or SHOW TABLE STATUS [FROM <dbname>] [LIKE <wildcard>]
or SHOW STATUS [LIKE <wildcard>]
or SHOW VARIABLES [LIKE <wildcard>]
or SHOW LOGS
or SHOW [FULL] PROCESSLIST
or SHOW GRANTS FOR user
or SHOW CREATE TABLE <tablename>
or SHOW MASTER STATUS
or SHOW MASTER LOGS
or SHOW SLAVE STATUS
```

## SHOW DATABASES

In Figure 9-1, I show two examples of the `SHOW DATABASES` statement: a simple `SHOW DATABASES` statement, and then using the optional `LIKE` modifier. The `LIKE` modifier is useful if you don't know the name of the database you're looking for or if you'd simply like to limit the results to certain databases.

```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
slackware:~$ mysql
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor. Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 17 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer
mysql> show databases;
+-----+
| Database |
+-----+
| ecommerce |
| mysql |
| test |
| testdb |
+-----+
4 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> show databases like 'test%';
+-----+
| Database (test%) |
+-----+
| test |
| testdb |
+-----+
2 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> ■
```

**Figure 9-1:** Using a `SHOW DATABASES` statement to learn about the databases on the MySQL server.

## SHOW TABLES

The `SHOW TABLES` statement and related modifiers enable you to find out what tables are in a given database. As with the `SHOW DATABASES` statement, the `SHOW TABLES` statement enables listing of tables that match a certain pattern via the `LIKE` modifier. It is also possible to list tables from another database on the same server, even if you're connected to a different database at the time. In Figure 9-2, I am connected to the default `mysql` database but I use the `SHOW TABLES` statement to list tables from the `ecommerce` database.

```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
slackware:~$ mysql
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor. Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 19 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type 'c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> connect mysql
Connection id: 20
Current database: mysql

mysql> show tables from ecommerce;
+-----+
| Tables_in_ecommerce |
+-----+
| cardinfo
| cardtype
| customer
| locale
| manufacturer
| product
| producttype |
+-----+
7 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>
```

**Figure 9-2:** The `SHOW TABLES` statement is flexible enough that you can list tables from another database, even if you're not connected to it at the time.

## SHOW OPEN TABLES

The `SHOW OPEN TABLES` statement can assist in troubleshooting and evaluating database performance. The statement gives additional information such as number of cached and in-use copies of the table. In Figure 9-3 I connect to the MySQL server, show tables from the `ecommerce` database, and then connect with another thread to perform a simple selection from the `customer` table. Looking at the open tables from the `ecommerce` database, you can see that the `Customer` table is open.

## SHOW COLUMNS

Using the `SHOW COLUMNS` statement, you can gather information about the columns in a table. For some uses of the `SHOW COLUMNS` statement, the `DESCRIBE` statement can be substituted. As with other `SHOW` statements, the `SHOW COLUMNS` statement supports the use of wildcards. As with the `SHOW TABLES` statement, the optional `FROM <dbname>` modifier can be used to look at columns from another database's tables.

```

192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
slackware:~$ mysql
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor.  Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 22 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> show tables from ecommerce;
+-----+
| Tables_in_ecommerce |
+-----+
| cardinfo
| cardtype
| customer
| locale
| manufacturer
| product
| producttype
+-----+
7 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> show open tables from ecommerce;
+-----+-----+
| Open_tables_in_ecommerce | Comment      |
+-----+-----+
| customer                | cached=1, in_use=0 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> 
```

**Figure 9-3:** Looking at open tables in a database

## SHOW FULL COLUMNS

Using the SHOW FULL COLUMNS statement, you can determine what privileges you have for the columns in that table. In Figure 9-4, I look at the privileges for my user-name, suehring, in the columns of the Customer table.

```

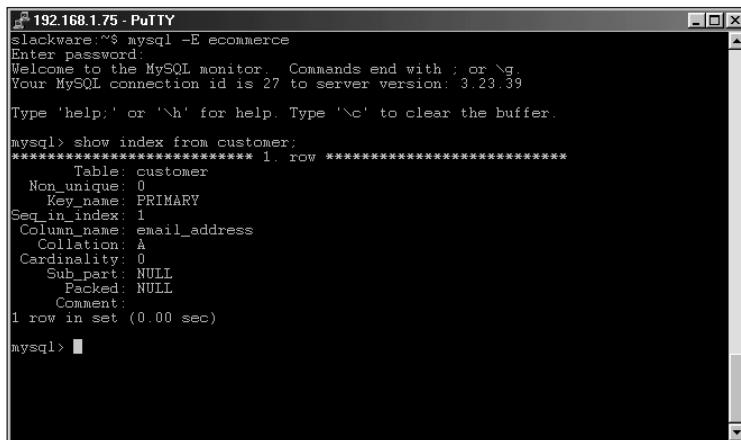
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
mysql> show full columns from customer;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Field          | Type       | Null | Key | Default | Extra | Privileges   |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| email_address | varchar(75) | PRI  |     |         |       | select,insert |
| update_references |          | YES  |     | NULL    |       | select,insert |
| first_name    | varchar(50) | YES  |     | NULL    |       | select,insert |
| last_name     | varchar(50) | YES  |     | NULL    |       | select,insert |
| address1       | varchar(50) | YES  |     | NULL    |       | select,insert |
| address2       | varchar(50) | YES  |     | NULL    |       | select,insert |
| update_references |          | YES  |     | NULL    |       | select,insert |
| customer_zip  | varchar(10) | YES  |     | NULL    |       | select,insert |
| update_references |          | YES  |     | NULL    |       | select,insert |
| area_code      | char(3)     | YES  |     | NULL    |       | select,insert |
| update_references |          | YES  |     | NULL    |       | select,insert |
| telephone_number | varchar(7) | YES  |     | NULL    |       | select,insert |
| update_references |          | YES  |     | NULL    |       | select,insert |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
8 rows in set (0.01 sec)

mysql> 
```

**Figure 9-4:** Using the SHOW FULL COLUMNS command to look at the privileges the current user has for the table

## SHOW INDEX

The `SHOW INDEX` statement also supports the `FROM <dbname>` optional argument. The output from the `SHOW INDEX` command is worth some explanation. Figure 9-5 illustrates the output from the `SHOW INDEX` statement run against the `Customer` table from the `ecommerce` database.



```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
slackware:~$ mysql -E ecommerce
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor. Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 27 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer

mysql> show index from customer;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Key_name | Non_unique | Seq_in_index | Column_name | Collation |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| PRIMARY |          0 |            1 | email_address | A          |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> █
```

**Figure 9-5:** Output from the `SHOW INDEX` statement on the `customer` table of the `ecommerce` database



### Note

I am using the `-E` or vertical output type for the `SHOW INDEX` statement to produce output that is easier to understand.

From the output in Figure 9-5, you can see the table name is `Customer` and the value of `Non_unique` is 0. A value of 0 in the `Non_unique` field means that the index cannot contain duplicates, which is the case for the `Customer` table. The `Key_name` is `PRIMARY`, which shows that this index is actually the Primary Key index for the table. As no records are in the table yet, the `Seq_in_index` value is 1. The `Seq_in_index` is an abbreviation for Sequence In Index.

The value in the `Column_name` field shows the name of the indexed column (in this case, the `email_address` column). The collation column indicates the sorting for the index (in this case, A for *ascending*); this value could also be `NULL`, which would indicate no sorting. `Cardinality` indicates the number of unique values in the index. Because no records exist in this table, the value is 0 in the example.

The `Sub_part` field indicates how much of a column is indexed when only a certain number of characters are indexed. This value is `NULL` when the entire key is indexed, as is the case in the example. Finally, the `Comment` field serves to determine whether the index is a `FULLTEXT` index, which it is not for the example shown.

## SHOW TABLE STATUS

The `SHOW TABLE STATUS` statement is much like other `SHOW` statements; it will accept wildcards. If no `LIKE` wildcard argument is given, the statement returns the table status for each table in the database. This can be quite a bit of information, so I recommend using a pager to split the output—or using a `LIKE` wildcard to limit the output to the table(s) you want information about.



If you're unsure of how to use a pager to divide data, refer to Chapter 8.

Using the `SHOW TABLE STATUS` statement, along with the `LIKE` modifier to limit the output, I can examine the output in greater detail, as in Figure 9-6.

```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
slackware:~$ mysql -E ecommerce
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor. Commands end with ; or \q.
Your MySQL connection id is 28 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer
mysql> show table status like 'customer%';
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Name | Type | Row_format | Rows | Avg_row_length | Data_length |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| customer | MyISAM | Dynamic | 0 | 0 | 4294967295 |
|          |          |          |     |             | Index_length: 1024 |
|          |          |          |     |             | Data_free: 0 |
|          |          |          |     |             | Auto_increment: NULL |
|          |          |          |     |             | Create_time: 2001-11-02 17:16:37 |
|          |          |          |     |             | Update_time: 2001-11-02 17:16:37 |
|          |          |          |     |             | Check_time: NULL |
|          |          |          |     |             | Create_options: |
|          |          |          |     |             | Comment: |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.01 sec)

mysql>
```

**Figure 9-6:** Limiting the output of the `SHOW TABLE STATUS` statement with the `LIKE` modifier

The name of the table, `Customer`, should be obvious. The `Type` of the table is the default for this database server, MyISAM.



Other table types are covered in Chapter 10.

The `Row_format` for the table is `Dynamic` but could also be `Fixed` or `Compressed`. Because this table contains no data, the `Rows`, `Avg_row_length`, and `Data_length` all have 0 values. A couple of infrequently used values are the `Max_data_length` value (which indicates the maximum acceptable value for the data file) and the `Index_length` value (which indicates the length of the index). The `Data_free` value would indicate any allocated-but-unused bytes of data in the database.

A sometimes-useful value is the `Auto_increment` field, which in this instance is `NULL` because this table contains no auto-incremented columns. I've been involved in cases

where a database operator updates an auto-increment field and thus throw it out of sync. Using the `SHOW TABLE STATUS` statement I can find out what the next value is and work from there to determine what it needs to be with a `SELECT` statement.

The `Create_time` and `Update_time` show when the table was created and when it was updated, if different. As you can see from the example in Figure 9-6, the table hasn't been updated. The value of the `Check_time` is `NULL` for this table, which indicates that it hasn't been checked using a tool such as `myisamchk` or an `OPTIMIZE TABLE` statement. The `Create_options` field is also blank as there were no extra options given to the `CREATE` statement that produced this table. Finally, the value of the `Comment` field is blank as well because no comment was given with the `CREATE` statement for this table.

The `SHOW STATUS` statement lists the status of many server variables. The output is the same as the `mysqladmin extended-status` command. Similarly, the `SHOW VARIABLES [LIKE <wild>]` statement also has information that can be obtained through a `mysqladmin` command. The `SHOW VARIABLES` statement shows various settings for variables of the MySQL Server. Both statements return quite a bit of information so I recommend using a pager in the CLI to make the output more manageable.



For more information on the `SHOW STATUS` and `SHOW VARIABLES` statements, see Appendix A or in Chapter 10.

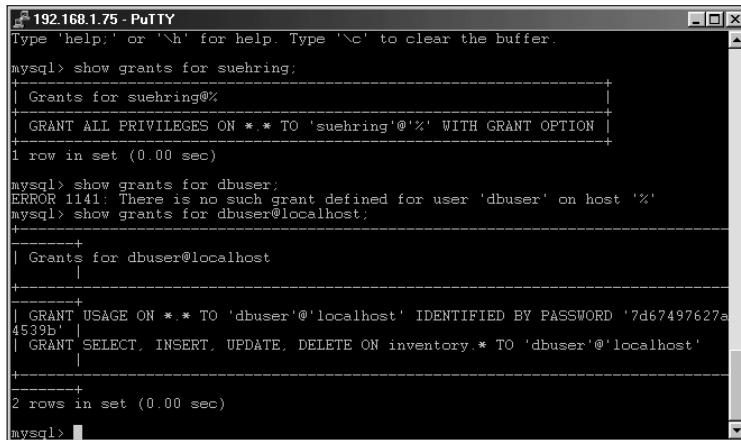
The `SHOW PROCESSLIST` statement shows the current threads open on the database including the first 100 characters of the query that the thread is running. Given the `FULL` modifier, the statement shows the entire query.

## SHOW GRANTS FOR <user>

The `SHOW GRANTS FOR <user>` statement, which I refer to simply as `SHOW GRANTS`, enables you to find out quickly the privileges that a given user has on a server—and the statements you would have to issue if you were to give that user those same privileges.

For example, one task I am confronted with frequently is giving a user access to a new database system as new servers are implemented. The user almost always needs the same access as they have on the existing system. Using the `SHOW GRANTS` statement, I can quickly find out their current privilege level and recreate it on the new server. The `SHOW GRANTS` statement can be a great timesaver (even if some IT pros still tell the user that the change takes at least 48 hours and use the extra time to play video games).

Figure 9-7 shows the grants for a few different users in my test database. As you can see, the `dbuser` account has privileges only from the `localhost`—and only on the `inventory` database. In addition, an error is shown in Figure 9-7 as well. This error occurs because the given user doesn't have privileges to connect from other hosts. To correct the error, I simply specify the host from which the user has privileges.



```

192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> show grants for suehring;
+-----+
| Grants for suehring@%                                |
+-----+
| GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES ON *.* TO 'suehring'@'%' WITH GRANT OPTION |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

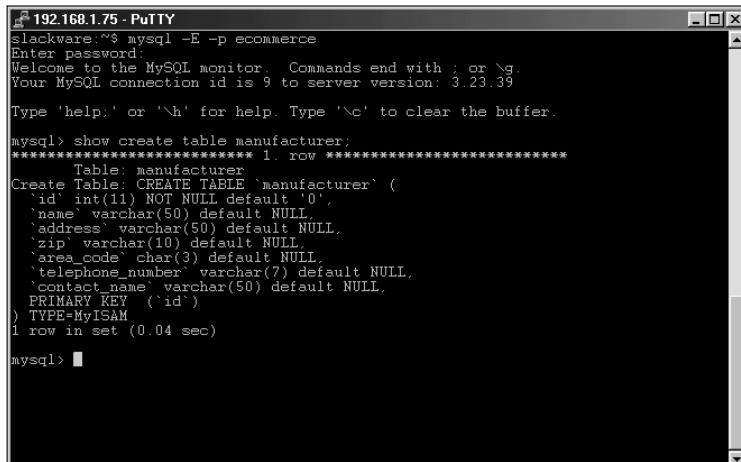
mysql> show grants for dbuser;
ERROR 1141: There is no such grant defined for user 'dbuser' on host '%'
mysql> show grants for dbuser@localhost;
+-----+
| Grants for dbuser@localhost                           |
+-----+
| GRANT USAGE ON *.* TO 'dbuser'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED BY PASSWORD '7d67497627a4539b' |
| GRANT SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE ON inventory.* TO 'dbuser'@'localhost'           |
+-----+
2 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> 
```

**Figure 9-7:** The SHOW GRANTS statement is quite useful in determining what privileges a given user has on a database.

## SHOW CREATE TABLE

The output from the SHOW CREATE TABLE <tablename> statement gives you the SQL required to recreate the table specified by <tablename>. In Figure 9-8, I execute the SHOW CREATE TABLE statement for the Manufacturer table of the ecommerce example database. Notice that I use the -E switch to produce output in vertical mode to make the on-screen display easier to comprehend.



```

slackware:~$ mysql -E -p ecommerce
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor. Commands end with ; or \q.
Your MySQL connection id is 9 to server version: 3.23.39

Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> show create table manufacturer;
***** 1. row *****
Table: manufacturer
Create Table: CREATE TABLE `manufacturer` (
  `id` int(11) NOT NULL default '0',
  `name` varchar(50) default NULL,
  `address` varchar(50) default NULL,
  `zip` varchar(10) default NULL,
  `area_code` char(3) default NULL,
  `telephone_number` varchar(7) default NULL,
  `contact_name` varchar(50) default NULL,
  PRIMARY KEY (`id`)
) TYPE=MyISAM
1 row in set (0.04 sec)

mysql> 
```

**Figure 9-8:** The SHOW CREATE TABLE statement executed against the manufacturer table in the ecommerce example database

Using the output from the statement in Figure 9-8, you could copy and paste the SQL into a text editor for archival purposes—or you could paste it into another MySQL CLI and quickly recreate the table.

**Cross-Reference**

For other methods of creating and recreating tables in MySQL, see Chapter 10.

The SHOW MASTER STATUS, SHOW MASTER LOGS, and SHOW SLAVE STATUS statements are used with replication and are thus beyond the scope of this chapter.

**Cross-Reference**

For more information on the SHOW MASTER STATUS, SHOW MASTER LOGS, and SHOW SLAVE STATUS commands, see Chapter 18 or Appendix A.

## USE/CONNECT

Though not incredibly difficult to use, I believe it useful to cover the CONNECT or matching USE statement. I've been using the CONNECT statement throughout the examples in the book. Both the USE and CONNECT statements perform the same action; the USE statement was added to MySQL for Sybase compatibility. Use the CONNECT/USE statement to connect to another database from in the CLI.

The syntax for the CONNECT or USE statements is

```
CONNECT | USE <dbname>
```

For example, in Figure 9-9, I utilize the CONNECT and USE statements to perform statements and queries on a few different databases. Notice the difference in feedback from the server between the two statements.

```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
slackware:~$ mysql -E -p
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor.  Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 15 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> connect mysql;
Connection id: 16
Current database: mysql

mysql> select user.host from user where user = 'dbuser';
***** 1 row *****
user: dbuser
host: localhost
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> connect ecommerce;
Connection id: 17
Current database: ecommerce

mysql> show tables like 'customer%';
***** 1 row *****
Tables_in_ecommerce (customer%): customer
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> use inventory;
Database changed
mysql>
```

**Figure 9-9:** Using the CONNECT and USE statements to perform queries on different databases

## DESCRIBE

The DESCRIBE statement provides much of the same functionality as the SHOW COLUMNS statement. The DESCRIBE statement, which is provided to for Oracle compatibility, can be abbreviated as DESC and can also be utilized with wildcard characters such as underscore (\_) and percent (%). The syntax for the DESCRIBE statement is

```
DESCRIBE | DESC <tablename> (<columnname> | <wildcard>)
```

## KILL

The KILL statement destroys a specified thread that is using the MySQL database server. The syntax for the KILL statement is

```
KILL <threadnumber>
```

The value for *<threadnumber>* can be obtained via a SHOW PROCESSLIST statement or with the mysqladmin processlist command. The mysqladmin kill command can also kill threads—a process similar to killing another user's process in Linux (the operation requires superuser status). In MySQL, you must have the PROCESS privilege before you can kill threads owned by other users.

## OPTIMIZE TABLE <tablename>

The OPTIMIZE TABLE <tablename> statement examines a table and makes it more efficient where possible. The statement performs the optimizations by repairing the table and defragmenting the database file. The syntax for the OPTIMIZE TABLE statement is

```
OPTIMIZE TABLE <tablename> (, <tablename>...)
```

For tables that have suffered many deletes or changes to fields such as VARCHAR, BLOB, or TEXT variable length, the OPTIMIZE TABLE statement can make repairs and update indexes to make the table operate more efficiently. Using the OPTIMIZE TABLE statement changes the value of the Check\_time field when performing a SHOW TABLE STATUS statement. (The OPTIMIZE TABLE statement is much the same as running a myisamchk on the table, though with only certain options set.)



Although the OPTIMIZE TABLE statement is running, the table is locked.

# Data Definition Language

Data Definition Language (DDL) refers to the statements and functions used to create the framework and rules for working with data. Using a DDL statement, you don't work with data directly; rather, you create or alter the database itself (or the tables in the database).

DDL statements can create and delete databases or create, alter, and delete tables. I'll examine many DDL statements in the upcoming pages in the context of the ecommerce database example that I've been developing throughout the book.



In addition to the DDL statements covered here, Appendix A also contains an in-depth walk-through of SQL syntax.

## Deleting tables

Eventually I'm going to just delete and re-create the ecommerce database example that I've been working with throughout the book. Though it isn't really necessary to delete or drop a database, I thought it would be helpful to show an example of deleting/dropping a table from the ecommerce example database that I've been working on.

The syntax for dropping a table is

```
DROP TABLE [IF EXISTS] <tablename> (, <tablename>)
```

The IF EXISTS keywords can be given to prevent an error if the table doesn't exist. You can also delete more than one table with the command, as indicated by the (, <tablename>) syntax.

In Figure 9-10 I connect to the MySQL server and connect to the ecommerce database so I can drop the product table, as shown.

A screenshot of a terminal window titled "MySQL". The window shows the MySQL command-line interface. The user has connected to the "ecommerce" database and then executed the command "drop table product;". The output shows "Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)".

```
slackware:~$ mysql -p
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor.  Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 3 to server version: 5.2.30
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> connect ecommerce;
Connection id: 4
Current database: ecommerce

mysql> drop table product;
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> 
```

Figure 9-10: Deleting a table from the ecommerce database



Deleting tables is a permanent action with no confirmation. Deleting a table deletes not only the table structure, but also the data contained in the table. In addition, deleting a table is not a transactional process; when a `DROP TABLE` statement is issued, it is immediately committed.

## Deleting and creating databases

As the next step in continuing my ecommerce database example, I'd like to start fresh so everyone is using the same database design and data. To do so, I use the `DROP DATABASE` statement to delete the existing databases created in previous chapters.

The syntax for the `DROP DATABASE` statement is

```
DROP DATABASE [if exists] <database>
```

The syntax for dropping a database with `mysqladmin` is

```
mysqladmin [options] drop <database>
```

In previous chapters, I created a couple of different databases, one called `ecommerce` and the other called `inventory`. Databases can be deleted using the MySQL CLI or with the `mysqladmin` command. An example of each is shown in Figure 9-11.

```
slackware:~$ mysql -p
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor. Commands end with ; or \q.
Your MySQL connection id is 44 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> drop database ecommerce;
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> exit
Bye
slackware:~$ mysqladmin -p drop inventory
Enter password:
Dropping the database is potentially a very bad thing to do.
Any data stored in the database will be destroyed.

Do you really want to drop the 'inventory' database [y/N] Y
Database "inventory" dropped
slackware:~$
```

**Figure 9-11:** Dropping databases via the MySQL CLI and the `mysqladmin` command

As you can see in Figure 9-11, dropping a database in the MySQL CLI offers no confirmation; thus I recommend using the `mysqladmin` command to drop databases as it offers a confirmation prompt before dropping the database.

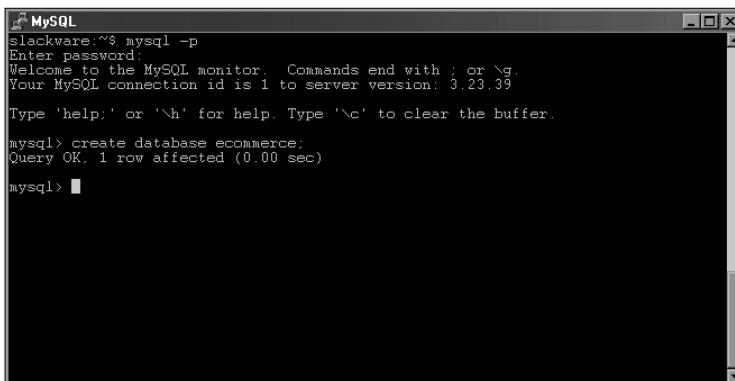
Now that the databases have been dropped, I can start a new database—also called ecommerce (because I plan to use it with the ecommerce site I develop in later chapters). The syntax for creating a database is

```
CREATE DATABASE [IF NOT EXISTS] <dbname>
```

A database can also be created with the mysqladmin command:

```
mysqladmin [options] CREATE <dbname>
```

In Figure 9-12 I recreate the ecommerce database using the CREATE DATABASE statement.

A screenshot of a terminal window titled "MySQL". The window shows the MySQL monitor interface. The user has entered the command "create database ecommerce;" and received a response "Query OK, 1 row affected (0.00 sec)".

```
slackware:~$ mysql -p
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor.  Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 1 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> create database ecommerce;
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> ■
```

Figure 9-12: Creating the ecommerce database via the CLI

## Creating tables

Now that I have a database, it's time to create the tables to actually hold the data. The syntax for the CREATE TABLE statement is

```
CREATE [TEMPORARY] TABLE [IF NOT EXISTS] <tablename>
[(<create_statement>,....)]
 [select_statement]
```

As you can see the statement is quite simple on its face. However numerous options, many of which are beyond the scope of this chapter, make the CREATE TABLE statement powerful.



The CREATE TABLE statement and its options are detailed completely in Appendix A.

The *create\_statement* portion of the statement is where you include specific information such as column names and types, primary keys, indexes, and constraints. The sample CREATE TABLE statements for the ecommerce database (shown later in the chapter) give you a look at column types and some of their options.

One frequently asked question—and source of confusion—is the AUTO\_INCREMENT option. You can add the AUTO\_INCREMENT keyword as a column option when creating a table. A table can have only one AUTO\_INCREMENT column; that column must be a key as well.

When you insert data into a table with an AUTO\_INCREMENT column, the database automatically adds 1 to the last value of the auto-incremented column. By default, the AUTO\_INCREMENT value starts with 1. If you want the database to start with a different initial value, you can add this preference as a table option when you create the table.

```
CREATE TABLE example (ID INT AUTO_INCREMENT PRIMARY KEY)
AUTO_INCREMENT = 10;
```

In the previous example, the table would be created and the first value inserted into the table would receive a value of 10 in the ID column.

With the ecommerce database created, I can now create the tables from the data design produced in Chapter 7. The database design is as follows:

```
CREATE TABLE customer (
    e-mail_address varchar(75) NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,
    first_name varchar(50),
    last_name varchar(50),
    address1 varchar(50),
    address2 varchar(50),
    customer_zip varchar(10),
    area_code char(3),
    telephone_number char(7)
);
CREATE TABLE cardinfo (
    card_ID int,
    cnum varchar(16),
    ccexp date,
    name_on_card varchar(100),
    e-mail_address varchar(75)
);
CREATE TABLE cardtype (
    card_ID int NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,
    card_type varchar(20)
);
CREATE TABLE locale (
    zip varchar(10) NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,
    city varchar(50),
    state char(2)
);
```

```
CREATE TABLE manufacturer (
    ID int NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,
    name varchar(50),
    address varchar(50),
    zip varchar(10),
    area_code char(3),
    telephone_number char(7),
    contact_name varchar(50)
);
CREATE TABLE product (
    ID int NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,
    name varchar(50),
    price decimal(9,2),
    quantity integer,
    manu_ID int,
    cate_ID int
);
CREATE TABLE producttype (
    ID int NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,
    category varchar(50)
);
```



The table layout is available in electronic format on the CD-ROM so you can easily import the design into MySQL.

Using the table layout from the CD-ROM, you can copy and paste tables into the MySQL CLI. Alternatively, you could read the file through the CLI directly (though doing so is beyond the scope of this chapter).



In Chapter 10 I'll show examples of importing data and definitions into MySQL.

In Figure 9-13, I take a copy of the table definitions and paste them into the CLI. As you can see the commands complete successfully. By producing statements in another application and saving them, you always have a quick and easy alternative to re-creating or redoing those statements from scratch.

## Altering tables

Inevitably there comes in time in all databases' lives when their tables will need to be altered. This can happen for any number of reasons—including a change in business rules, an upgrade to an application, or an oversight during the design of the database. The syntax for the `ALTER TABLE` statement is as follows:

```
ALTER [IGNORE] TABLE tbl_name alter_spec [, alter_spec ...]
alter_specification:
    ADD [COLUMN] create_definition [FIRST | AFTER
column_name ]
    or      ADD [COLUMN] (create_definition, create_definition,...)
    or      ADD INDEX [index_name] (index_col_name,...)
```

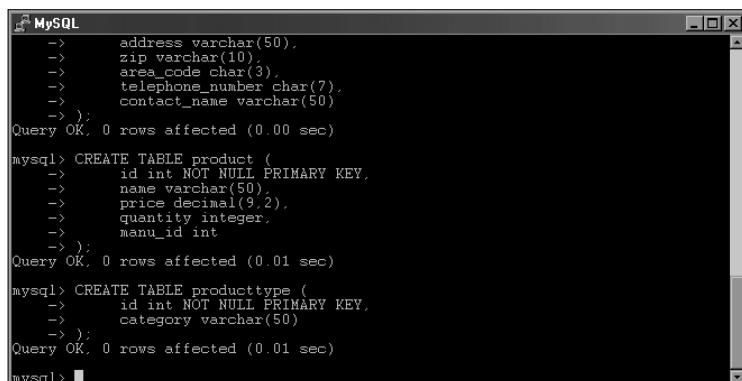
```
or      ADD PRIMARY KEY (index_col_name,...)
or      ADD UNIQUE [index_name] (index_col_name,...)
or      ADD FULLTEXT [index_name] (index_col_name,...)
or      ADD [CONSTRAINT symbol] FOREIGN KEY index_name
(index_col_name,...)
               [reference_definition]
or      ALTER [COLUMN] col_name {SET DEFAULT literal | DROP
DEFAULT}
or      CHANGE [COLUMN] old_col_name create_definition
or      MODIFY [COLUMN] create_definition
or      DROP [COLUMN] col_name
or      DROP PRIMARY KEY
or      DROP INDEX index_name
or      DISABLE KEYS
or      ENABLE KEYS
or      RENAME [TO] new_tb1_name
or      ORDER BY col
or      table_options
```

As you can see, this is quite a complex statement with many options (some of which are beyond the scope of this chapter).

**Cross-Reference**

In Appendix A you'll find more information on the `ALTER TABLE` statement.

Behind the scenes, the `ALTER TABLE` statement makes a temporary copy of the table and then performs the change on the new table before deleting the old table. The only exception to this behavior is the `RENAME` function, which does not create a temporary copy of the table. Any updates made while an `ALTER TABLE` statement is being performed will be made on the temporary copy and thus not lost.



The screenshot shows a Windows command-line interface window titled "MySQL". It contains several MySQL commands being entered and executed:

```
MySQL> address varchar(50),
--> zip varchar(10),
--> area_code char(3),
--> telephone_number char(7),
--> contact_name varchar(50),
--> );
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> CREATE TABLE product (
-->     id int NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,
-->     name varchar(50),
-->     price decimal(9,2),
-->     quantity integer,
-->     manu_id int
--> );
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.01 sec)

mysql> CREATE TABLE producttype (
-->     id int NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,
-->     category varchar(50)
--> );
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.01 sec)

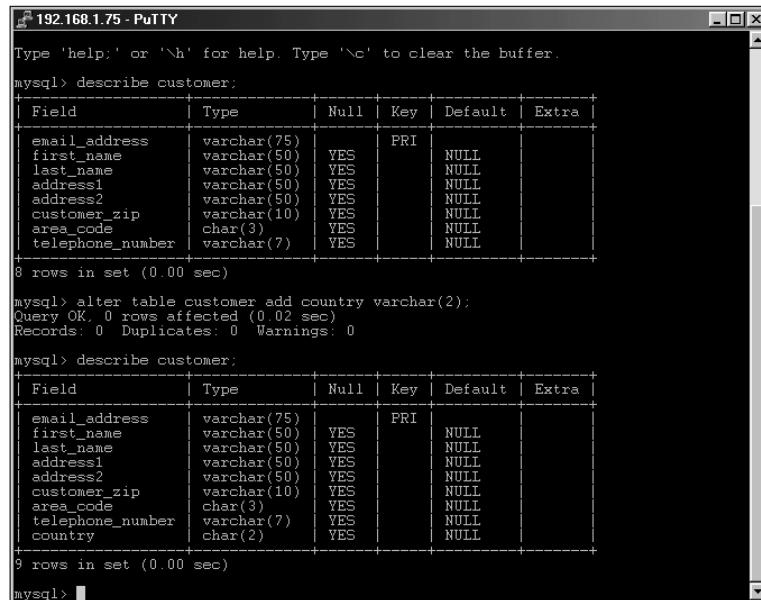
mysql>
```

**Figure 9-13:** Pasting statements into the CLI is a good way to increase productivity.

MySQL offers some extensions to the ANSI92 SQL standard with the `ALTER TABLE` statement. Specifically, this includes the `IGNORE` keyword, which causes MySQL to ignore any duplicate values in a primary key or in a unique column type. When a duplicate value is found, MySQL only uses the first instance of that value. MySQL also enables multiple alterations to be performed in the same `ALTER TABLE` statement.

Many table alterations involve changing a column type or adding a column. Just as common for the database administrator, however, are tasks such as renaming a table and adding indexes.

For example, Figure 9-14 alters the `Customer` table to add a column. The figure shows the table structure before and after this process, via a `DESCRIBE` statement (explained earlier in this chapter).



```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> describe customer;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Field | Type  | Null | Key  | Default | Extra |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| email_address | varchar(75) | YES | PRI | NULL   |
| first_name    | varchar(50)  | YES |      | NULL   |
| last_name     | varchar(50)  | YES |      | NULL   |
| address1      | varchar(50)  | YES |      | NULL   |
| address2      | varchar(50)  | YES |      | NULL   |
| customer_zip   | varchar(10)   | YES |      | NULL   |
| area_code      | char(3)       | YES |      | NULL   |
| telephone_number | varchar(7) | YES |      | NULL   |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
8 rows in set (0.00 sec)

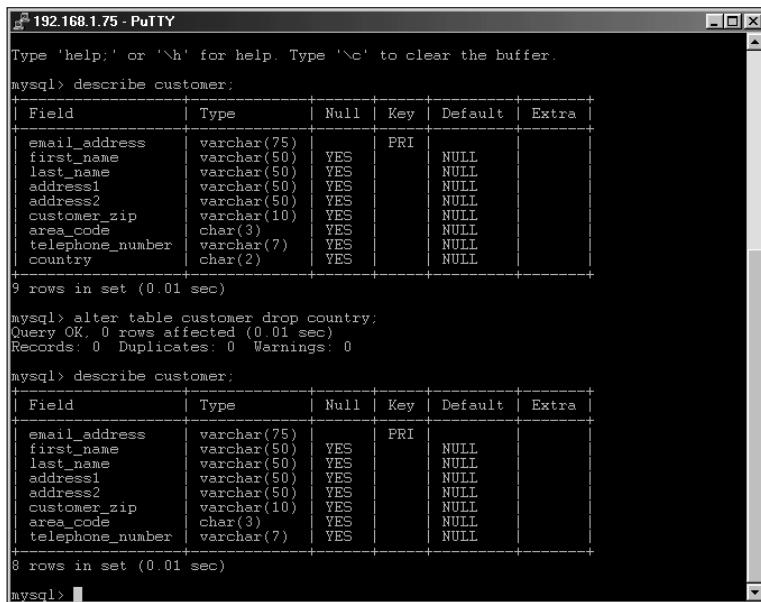
mysql> alter table customer add country varchar(2);
Query OK. 0 rows affected (0.02 sec)
Records: 0  Duplicates: 0  Warnings: 0

mysql> describe customer;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Field | Type  | Null | Key  | Default | Extra |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| email_address | varchar(75) | YES | PRI | NULL   |
| first_name    | varchar(50)  | YES |      | NULL   |
| last_name     | varchar(50)  | YES |      | NULL   |
| address1      | varchar(50)  | YES |      | NULL   |
| address2      | varchar(50)  | YES |      | NULL   |
| customer_zip   | varchar(10)   | YES |      | NULL   |
| area_code      | char(3)       | YES |      | NULL   |
| telephone_number | varchar(7) | YES |      | NULL   |
| country        | char(2)       | YES |      | NULL   |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
9 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>
```

**Figure 9-14:** The `Customer` table layout before an `ALTER TABLE` statement, the `ALTER TABLE` statement, and the table structure after the `ALTER TABLE` statement

Because I don't want the `Country` column to be added to the `Customer` table, I have a good opportunity to demonstrate how to delete or drop a column from a table. Figure 9-15 describes the table structure both before and after the `ALTER TABLE` statement drops a column.



```

192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.
mysql> describe customer;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Field | Type  | Null | Key  | Default | Extra |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| email_address | varchar(75) | YES | PRI | NULL   |       |
| first_name    | varchar(50)  | YES |       | NULL   |       |
| last_name     | varchar(50)  | YES |       | NULL   |       |
| address1      | varchar(50)  | YES |       | NULL   |       |
| address2      | varchar(50)  | YES |       | NULL   |       |
| customer_zip  | varchar(10)  | YES |       | NULL   |       |
| area_code     | char(3)       | YES |       | NULL   |       |
| telephone_number | varchar(7) | YES |       | NULL   |       |
| country        | char(2)       | YES |       | NULL   |       |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
9 rows in set (0.01 sec)

mysql> alter table customer drop country;
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.01 sec)
Records: 0  Duplicates: 0  Warnings: 0

mysql> describe customer;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Field | Type  | Null | Key  | Default | Extra |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| email_address | varchar(75) | YES | PRI | NULL   |       |
| first_name    | varchar(50)  | YES |       | NULL   |       |
| last_name     | varchar(50)  | YES |       | NULL   |       |
| address1      | varchar(50)  | YES |       | NULL   |       |
| address2      | varchar(50)  | YES |       | NULL   |       |
| customer_zip  | varchar(10)  | YES |       | NULL   |       |
| area_code     | char(3)       | YES |       | NULL   |       |
| telephone_number | varchar(7) | YES |       | NULL   |       |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
8 rows in set (0.01 sec)

mysql>

```

**Figure 9-15:** The Customer table layout with the extra column both before and after the column is dropped

As you can see by Figure 9-15, the new column, `Country`, was added to the end of the table definition. If I wanted to add the new column to the beginning of the table, or put it in a location where it might be more intuitive—say, near the address or ZIP code—I could use the `FIRST` or `AFTER` keywords on the statement to do so. Figures 9-16 and 9-17 describe the current table layout, run the `ALTER TABLE` statement with the `FIRST` and `AFTER` keywords, and then describe the table layout after the process is complete.

**Note**

Behind the scenes, I dropped the column between examples to assist with this demonstration.

**Note**

Don't forget to drop the extra `Country` column from the `Customer` table before continuing.

You can change column names and definitions at the same time with the `CHANGE` keyword. For example, I'd like to change the `customer_zip` column to `cust_zip` simply because I'm an inherently lazy typist and that's four letters shorter. In Figure 9-18, I used the `CHANGE` keyword to rename the column; note that both columns share the same column definition.

```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> describe customer;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Field | Type  | Null | Key  | Default | Extra |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| email_address | varchar(75) | YES | PRI   | NULL    |       |
| first_name    | varchar(50)  | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| last_name     | varchar(50)  | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| address1      | varchar(50)  | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| address2      | varchar(50)  | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| customer_zip  | varchar(10)  | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| area_code     | char(3)      | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| telephone_number | varchar(7) | YES |       | NULL    |       |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
8 rows in set (0.01 sec)

mysql> alter table customer add country varchar(2) FIRST;
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.01 sec)
Records: 0  Duplicates: 0  Warnings: 0

mysql> describe customer;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Field | Type  | Null | Key  | Default | Extra |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| country | char(2) | YES | PRI   | NULL    |       |
| email_address | varchar(75) | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| first_name    | varchar(50)  | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| last_name     | varchar(50)  | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| address1      | varchar(50)  | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| address2      | varchar(50)  | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| customer_zip  | varchar(10)  | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| area_code     | char(3)      | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| telephone_number | varchar(7) | YES |       | NULL    |       |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
9 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>
```

**Figure 9-16:** Altering the Customer table to add the new column at the top of the table, using the FIRST keyword

```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

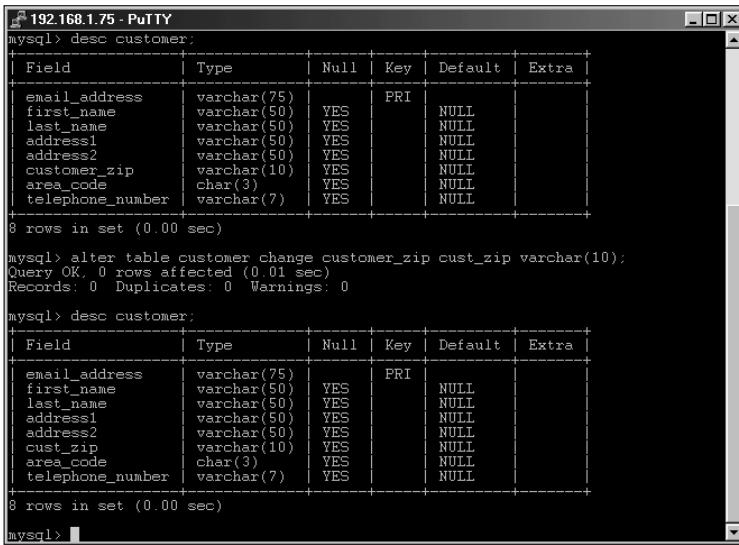
mysql> describe customer;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Field | Type  | Null | Key  | Default | Extra |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| email_address | varchar(75) | YES | PRI   | NULL    |       |
| first_name    | varchar(50)  | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| last_name     | varchar(50)  | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| address1      | varchar(50)  | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| address2      | varchar(50)  | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| customer_zip  | varchar(10)  | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| area_code     | char(3)      | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| telephone_number | varchar(7) | YES |       | NULL    |       |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
8 rows in set (0.01 sec)

mysql> alter table customer add country varchar(2) AFTER customer_zip;
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.01 sec)
Records: 0  Duplicates: 0  Warnings: 0

mysql> describe customer;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Field | Type  | Null | Key  | Default | Extra |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| email_address | varchar(75) | YES | PRI   | NULL    |       |
| first_name    | varchar(50)  | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| last_name     | varchar(50)  | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| address1      | varchar(50)  | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| address2      | varchar(50)  | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| customer_zip  | varchar(10)  | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| country        | char(2)      | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| area_code     | char(3)      | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| telephone_number | varchar(7) | YES |       | NULL    |       |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
9 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>
```

**Figure 9-17:** Altering the Customer table to add a new column at a specific location in the table definition



```

192.168.1.75 - Putty
mysql> desc customer;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Field | Type  | Null | Key  | Default | Extra |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| email_address | varchar(75) | YES | PRI | NULL    |       |
| first_name   | varchar(50)  | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| last_name    | varchar(50)  | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| address1     | varchar(50)  | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| address2     | varchar(50)  | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| customer_zip | varchar(10) | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| area_code    | char(3)      | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| telephone_number | varchar(7) | YES |       | NULL    |       |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
8 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> alter table customer change customer_zip cust_zip varchar(10);
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.01 sec)
Records: 0  Duplicates: 0  Warnings: 0

mysql> desc customer;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Field | Type  | Null | Key  | Default | Extra |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| email_address | varchar(75) | YES | PRI | NULL    |       |
| first_name   | varchar(50)  | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| last_name    | varchar(50)  | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| address1     | varchar(50)  | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| address2     | varchar(50)  | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| cust_zip     | varchar(10) | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| area_code    | char(3)      | YES |       | NULL    |       |
| telephone_number | varchar(7) | YES |       | NULL    |       |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
8 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>

```

**Figure 9-18:** Using the CHANGE keyword to rename a column

I could use a different `CREATE` definition when changing the column as well. Since Figure 9-18 was a relatively simple example of renaming a column, I didn't need to change the column definition. To maintain consistency with the table definitions used throughout the book, I changed the column name `cust_zip` back to `customer_zip`; please do so in your database as well.

You can also modify the column definition through the use of the `MODIFY` keyword. In Figure 9-19, I modify the `contact_name` column in the `Manufacturer` table to allow name lengths of up to 75 characters.

**Note**

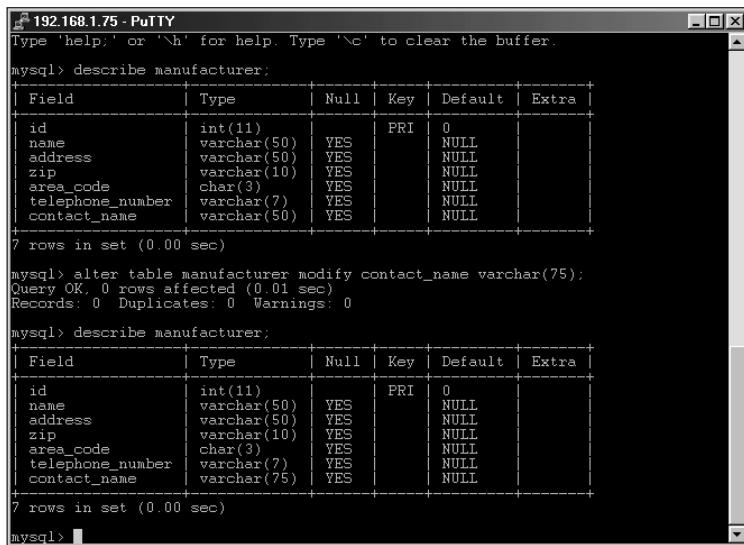
Be sure to change the length of the `contact_name` column back to 50 to maintain consistency with later examples.

Although I don't need to add any primary keys to the example tables, it is useful for you to know that this can be done with the `ALTER TABLE` statement. You may have to add a primary key when you're improving a table design.

Another method for improvement—after the table has been created—is to add a non-primary key index. You can use the `ALTER TABLE` statement to add an index to the table at any time after the table is created. In effect, the `CREATE INDEX` statement is an alias for an `ALTER TABLE` statement.

You may have to rename a table at some point; the `ALTER TABLE` statement can perform this task as well. The syntax for renaming a table is

```
ALTER TABLE <tablename> RENAME [TO] <newtablename>
```



The screenshot shows a PuTTY terminal window titled "192.168.1.75 - PuTTY". The session content is as follows:

```
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.  
mysql> describe manufacturer;  
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+  
| Field | Type | Null | Key | Default | Extra |  
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+  
| id | int(11) | YES | PRI | 0 | |  
| name | varchar(50) | YES | NULL | NULL | |  
| address | varchar(50) | YES | NULL | NULL | |  
| zip | varchar(10) | YES | NULL | NULL | |  
| area_code | char(3) | YES | NULL | NULL | |  
| telephone_number | varchar(7) | YES | NULL | NULL | |  
| contact_name | varchar(50) | YES | NULL | NULL | |  
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+  
7 rows in set (0.00 sec)  
  
mysql> alter table manufacturer modify contact_name varchar(75);  
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.01 sec)  
Records: 0 Duplicates: 0 Warnings: 0  
  
mysql> describe manufacturer;  
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+  
| Field | Type | Null | Key | Default | Extra |  
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+  
| id | int(11) | YES | PRI | 0 | |  
| name | varchar(50) | YES | NULL | NULL | |  
| address | varchar(50) | YES | NULL | NULL | |  
| zip | varchar(10) | YES | NULL | NULL | |  
| area_code | char(3) | YES | NULL | NULL | |  
| telephone_number | varchar(7) | YES | NULL | NULL | |  
| contact_name | varchar(75) | YES | NULL | NULL | |  
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+  
7 rows in set (0.00 sec)  
  
mysql>
```

**Figure 9-19:** Using the `MODIFY` keyword to lengthen the `contact_name` column



### Tip

The word `T0` in brackets, though it's optional, can help make the statement more easily understandable.

## Data Markup Language

Data Markup Language (DML for short) refers to SQL statements that work with and manipulate data in a database. Recall that Data Definition Language or DDL statements work with the actual structure of objects in a database such as the database itself, or tables and columns in a database.

DML includes such statements as `SELECT`, `INSERT`, `DELETE`, and `UPDATE`. I will examine each in the context of the `ecommerce` database example where possible.



### Cross-Reference

In addition to the DML statements covered here, Appendix A also contains an in-depth walk-through of SQL syntax.

## Inserting data into the database with `INSERT`

Any consideration of DML brings up the question of which DML statement to cover first—`SELECT` or `INSERT`. It is another version of the chicken-and-egg question. Although you can't select data without first inserting it, the `INSERT` statement is not the only way to insert data (see Chapter 10 for more information). Because the `INSERT` statement is (perhaps) the most obvious method, I examine it first.

The syntax for the `INSERT` statement is

```
INSERT [LOW_PRIORITY | DELAYED] [IGNORE]
    [INTO] <tablename> [(<columnname>, ...)]
    VALUES (<expression>, ...), (...), ...
or  INSERT [LOW_PRIORITY | DELAYED] [IGNORE]
    [INTO] <tablename>
    SET <columnname>=<expression>, <columnname>=<expression>,
...
or  INSERT [LOW_PRIORITY | DELAYED] [IGNORE]
    [INTO] <tablename> [(<columnname>, ...)]
    SELECT ...
```

Three variations of the `INSERT` statement exist. The syntax is really straightforward for all three variations, with the possible exception of the keywords `LOW_PRIORITY`, `DELAYED`, and `IGNORE`. The optional keyword `INTO` is provided to improve readability of the `INSERT` statement. Though it may come as a surprise (since I'm historically a lazy typist), I use the `INTO` statement in most, if not all, of my `INSERT` statements.

Commas separate values for columns in an `INSERT` statement. If you don't specify column names, MySQL expects that you will provide values for each column in the table. If no value is provided for a given column, the insert fails and returns an error. You can use `NULL` as a placeholder for columns that you don't want to provide values for with the insert. Additionally, you can use two single or double quotes to leave those fields blank. However, using single or double quotes instead of `NULL` in a column puts different values in those columns than would be there if they were specified as `NULL`.

If you want to only set values for certain columns you must enumerate those columns in the `INSERT` statement. For example, in the ecommerce database example I have a small manufacturer for one of the products. The manufacturer does not require a separate contact name. By enumerating the columns that I want to insert into, I can forego placing any value in the `contact_name` column for this entry, as in Figure 9-20.

You should execute the `INSERT` statement in Figure 9-20 to prepare for other examples (later in this chapter) that use it. The command looks like this:

```
insert into manufacturer
  (ID, name, address, zip, area_code, telephone_number) values
  (1, 'Small Widget Manufacturer', '4 Warner
  Blvd', '91120', '818', '5551212');
```

If you attempt to insert a value longer than the column for column types such as `VARCHAR`, `CHAR`, and `BLOB`, the portion of the value that exceeds the column length will be lost. In Figure 9-21, I look at the example table called `nametable`, which has one column called `name`. The `name` column allows a maximum length of

10 characters for data. I attempt to insert the 14-character name Steve Suehring into the name column. As you can see by the SELECT statement following the INSERT, the value was truncated to ten characters.

```

192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
Welcome to the MySQL monitor. Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 4 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> desc manufacturer;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Field | Type  | Null | Key | Default | Extra |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| id   | int(11) | YES  | PRI | 0       |       |
| name | varchar(50) | YES  |      | NULL    |       |
| address | varchar(50) | YES  |      | NULL    |       |
| zip  | varchar(10) | YES  |      | NULL    |       |
| area_code | char(3) | YES  |      | NULL    |       |
| telephone_number | varchar(7) | YES  |      | NULL    |       |
| contact_name | varchar(50) | YES  |      | NULL    |       |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
7 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> insert into manufacturer (id,name,address,zip,area_code,telephone_number)
(id,name,address,zip,area_code,telephone_number) values (1,'Small Widget Manufac
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> 
```

**Figure 9-20:** Inserting values into some columns of a table is possible by specifying the column names.

```

192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> connect testdb;
Connection id: 33
Current database: testdb

mysql> desc nametable;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Field | Type  | Null | Key | Default | Extra |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| name | varchar(10) | YES  |      | NULL    |       |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> insert into nametable values ("Steve Suehring");
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> select * from nametable;
+-----+
| name |
+-----+
| Steve Sueh |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> 
```

**Figure 9-21:** Inserting a value longer than the designated length truncates the data.

When inserting a value, an expression can be used on a previously inserted value. An example is Figure 9-22, in which I connect to a test database and show a description of the example table called exptable. Two columns refer to quantity in this table—quantity and quantity\_needed. I insert a value of 10 for quantity, and would like to have a total of quantity + 20 of these widgets on hand. Therefore I use an expression to add 20 to whatever the value of quantity is for the INSERT statement.

```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
Type 'help,' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> connect testdb;
Connection id: 35
Current database: testdb

mysql> desc exptable;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Field | Type  | Null | Key | Default | Extra |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| quantity | int(11) | YES |     | NULL    |       |
| quantity_needed | int(11) | YES |     | NULL    |       |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
2 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> insert into exptable values (10, quantity+20);
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> select * from exptable;
+-----+-----+
| quantity | quantity_needed |
+-----+-----+
|      10 |            30 |
+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>
```

**Figure 9-22:** Using an expression with an `INSERT` statement to insert a value that's based on a previously inserted value.

The `LOW_PRIORITY` and `DELAYED` keywords modify how, or more appropriately, when the insert is done. With the `LOW_PRIORITY` keyword the insert is held until no other clients are reading from the table. For many tables, this can take quite a long time—and the client thread can't continue until the `INSERT` operation is completed. If you use the `LOW_PRIORITY` keyword with a MyISAM table type, you can't run more than one `INSERT` statement at a time; I don't recommend using the `LOW_PRIORITY` keyword with a MyISAM table type unless you have specific needs.

The `DELAYED` keyword, a MySQL extension to the ANSI SQL standard, returns an `OK` to the inserting client immediately. This can greatly improve performance of applications where a table may be under heavy use and where the application or client cannot wait for the `INSERT` to complete. For example, if you run a `SELECT` statement on a table and that statement takes a long time to complete, the application attempting to perform an insert on the table may appear to be locked up or frozen. Using the `INSERT DELAYED` statement for such an application may prove beneficial. However, since MyISAM tables support simultaneous selects and inserts, using the `INSERT DELAYED` statement might not provide any performance improvement.

The actual `INSERT` statement is placed in a volatile-memory-based queue to be executed when no other threads are using the table. Should the MySQL server crash, be killed, or otherwise stop for any reason, the contents of the `INSERT DELAYED` queue that haven't been executed are lost. For example, if you have four inserts that all use the `INSERT DELAYED` statement, two of them get executed and then the MySQL server dies, the remaining two `INSERT` statements are lost.

**Note**

The `INSERT DELAYED` statement only works with the ISAM and MyISAM table types.

The `IGNORE` keyword tells MySQL to ignore any duplicate values for a primary key or unique column. If the `IGNORE` keyword is not specified and a duplicate value is encountered, MySQL stops the insert process and returns an error. If a duplicate value is encountered and the `IGNORE` keyword is used, that row of data is not inserted into the table.

The upcoming sections examine each of the three `INSERT` variations in turn.

### The `INSERT ... VALUES ...` variation

The syntax for such an `INSERT` statement is

```
INSERT [LOW_PRIORITY | DELAYED] [IGNORE]
       [INTO] tbl_name [(col_name,...)]
          VALUES (expression,...),(...),...
```

I've already given a couple examples using this syntax. At the most basic level, the syntax for this variation of the `INSERT` statement is

```
INSERT INTO <tablename> VALUES (<expression> (, ...)
```

To facilitate examples that appear later in this chapter, I insert some sample data for two of the tables in the ecommerce database—and into additional tables by using the other variations of the `INSERT` statement. The operation looks like this:

```
insert into cardtype values (1,'Visa');
insert into cardtype values (2,'Mastercard');

insert into cardinfo values (1, '0123012345678910', '01/02',
    'Steve Suehring', 'suehring@ngermen.com');
insert into cardinfo values (1, '1234567891011121', '07/01',
    'Steve Suehring', 'vanhalen@coredcs.com');
insert into cardinfo values (2, '0123456789012345', '04/04',
    'Fake Name', 'none@braingia.net');
```

Figure 9-23 shows the results of the statements just given, as they appear when you use the CLI in interactive mode.

Another method for inserting values into a table is to separate them with a comma in the same `INSERT` statement.

```
INSERT INTO product VALUES (1,'Balance',12.99,5,1,2), (2,'Van
Halen - Best of Volume 1',14.99,5,1,2);
```

```

192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
Your MySQL connection id is 40 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> insert into cardtype values (1,'Visa');
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> insert into cardtype values (2,'Mastercard');
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.00 sec)

mysql>
mysql> insert into cardinfo values (1, '0123012345678910', '01/02', 'Steve Suehring', 'suehring@dangermen.com');
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> insert into cardinfo values (1, '1234567891011121', '07/01', 'Steve Suehring', 'vanhalen@corecdcs.com');
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> insert into cardinfo values (2, '0123456789012345', '04/04', 'Fake Name', 'none@braingia.net');
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.00 sec)

mysql>

```

**Figure 9-23:** Running an INSERT statement to insert sample data into the ecommerce database

### The INSERT ... SET ... variation

Another method for inserting data into a table with the `INSERT` statement is via the `SET` syntax. Using the `INSERT ... SET ...` variation you can set values for columns individually. This is particularly useful when you only need to set a small number of columns in a large table. The basic syntax of this variation is as follows:

```
INSERT [LOW_PRIORITY | DELAYED] [IGNORE] [INTO] tbl_name SET
col_name=expression, col_name=expression, ...
```

In addition, the `SET` syntax can also help readability. I'll go back to the ecommerce example and insert some cities into the `locale` table by using the `SET` syntax:

```
insert into locale set zip = '54481', city = 'Stevens Point',
state = 'WI';
insert into locale set zip = '54443', city = 'Junction City',
state = 'WI';
insert into locale set zip = '53211', city = 'Shorewood', state =
'WI';
insert into locale set zip = '54409', city = 'Antigo', state =
'WI';
insert into locale set zip = '54948', city = 'Leopolis', state =
'WI';
insert into locale set zip = '54949', city = 'Manawa', state =
'WI';
```

### The INSERT ... SELECT ... variation

The third variation of the `INSERT` statement is the `INSERT ... SELECT` variation. Using this method you can base the values for the `INSERT` on the results from a `SELECT` statement. The syntax for such an insert is

```
INSERT [LOW_PRIORITY | DELAYED] [IGNORE] [INTO] tbl_name
[(col_name,...)] SELECT ...
```

To quickly populate the customer table with the e-mail addresses that I put in the cardinfo table earlier, I can use an `INSERT ... SELECT ...` statement. I can then update the rows of data later to fill in the rest of the data:

```
insert into customer (e-mail_address) select e-mail_address  
from cardinfo;
```

The previous statement and the results are shown in Figure 9-24.

```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY  
type 'help;' or 'h' for help. Type 'c' to clear the buffer.  
mysql> insert into customer (email_address) select email_address from cardinfo;  
Query OK, 3 rows affected (0.01 sec)  
Records: 3 Duplicates: 0 Warnings: 0  
mysql> select * from customer;  
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+  
| email_address | first_name | last_name | address1 | address2 | custom  
er_zip | area_code | telephone_number |  
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+  
| suehring@dangermen.com | NULL | NULL | NULL | NULL | NULL  
| NULL | NULL | NULL | NULL | NULL |  
| vanhalem@coredcos.com | NULL | NULL | NULL | NULL | NULL  
| NULL | NULL | NULL | NULL | NULL |  
| none@braingia.net | NULL | NULL | NULL | NULL | NULL  
| NULL | NULL | NULL | NULL | NULL |  
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+  
3 rows in set (0.00 sec)  
mysql> ■
```

**Figure 9-24:** Using the `INSERT ... SELECT ...` statement to populate the customer table of the ecommerce example, using data contained in the locale table

## Gathering data with SELECT

By and large, the `SELECT` statement is used more frequently than the `INSERT` statement. Normally you would use the `INSERT` statement to put data into the database only once; a query for looking for data uses the `SELECT` statement more than once. The actual ratio of queries to inserts is largely determined by the application.

The syntax for the `SELECT` statement is as follows:

```
SELECT [STRAIGHT_JOIN] [SQL_SMALL_RESULT] [SQL_BIG_RESULT]  
[SQL_BUFFER_RESULT]  
[HIGH_PRIORITY]  
[DISTINCT | DISTINCTROW | ALL]  
select_expression,...  
[INTO {OUTFILE | DUMPFILE} 'file_name' export_options]  
[FROM table_references  
[WHERE where_definition]  
[GROUP BY {unsigned_integer | col_name | formula} [ASC  
| DESC], ...]  
[HAVING where_definition]
```

```
[ORDER BY {unsigned_integer | col_name | formula} [ASC  
| DESC], ...]  
[LIMIT [offset,] rows]  
[PROCEDURE procedure_name]  
[FOR UPDATE | LOCK IN SHARE MODE]]
```

As you can see the SELECT statement has many options, some of which are beyond the scope of this chapter. Numerous operators and functions can be used in a SELECT statement; I'll look at some of them through examples.



In Appendix A the SELECT statement's syntax is examined along with a complete list of operators and functions to be used with the SELECT statement.

Probably the most basic of SELECT statements is a simple:

```
SELECT * FROM <tablename>;
```

The SELECT expression in this example uses the asterisk wildcard to ask MySQL for all data in all columns in the table called <tablename>. For example, in Figure 9-25 I perform a query for all data in the user table of the MySQL database.

A screenshot of a PuTTY terminal window titled "192.168.1.75 - PuTTY". The window displays the results of a MySQL query. The output shows nine rows of data from the user table, each containing information such as host, user, password, and various privilege flags (N, Y). The last line of the output is "+ 9 rows in set (0.00 sec)". The MySQL prompt "mysql>" is visible at the bottom.

**Figure 9-25:** One of the most basic queries is a SELECT \* from <tablename>. In this case, the query calls for all data in the user table of the database that contains MySQL privileges and grants.

In a select expression you can use aliasing through the use of the AS keyword. This can be useful when using a complicated SELECT expression and you want to make the results return as a more user-friendly or readable column name. An alias can also assist if you want to recall a portion of the SELECT expression in another portion of the statement.

Clearly, the power of the SELECT statement lies in the WHERE modifier; you use that modifier to specify the results that you would like to see from the query. For example, using the WHERE modifier with the previous `SELECT * FROM user` statement I can determine information about only a certain user. Adding a WHERE modifier to the look for information on the user 'suehring' makes the results more useful:

```
SELECT * FROM user WHERE user = 'suehring';
```

The results of the query are in Figure 9-26.

| localhost    | user     | password                          | host                              | plugin                            | authentication | account_locked | binlog_stmt_exec_id | row_format |
|--------------|----------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------|----------------|---------------------|------------|
| 192.168.1.2% | suehring | 59376fb65a5103d                   | Y   N   Y   Y   Y   Y   Y   Y   Y | Y   N   Y   Y   Y   Y   Y   Y   Y |                |                |                     |            |
| %            | suehring | Y   Y   Y   Y   Y   Y   Y   Y   Y | Y   N   Y   Y   Y   Y   Y   Y   Y |                                   |                |                |                     |            |

**Figure 9-26:** Adding a WHERE modifier to the SELECT statement to make the results more useful

As you can see from the simple examples I've provided, the SELECT statement accepts wildcard characters. You can also place wildcard characters in the WHERE portion of the statement as well. To enable the wildcard characters to work, you slightly modify the WHERE portion by substituting the word LIKE for the equals sign (=). The asterisk (\*) is frequently the wildcard to match none- or -any characters—but the asterisk does not work in the WHERE portion of a SELECT statement. The percent sign (%) is a substitute for none-or -any characters wildcard. For example, people frequently forget how to spell my last name, *Suehring*. Using the LIKE function in the SELECT statement, I could put a portion of my name in and still come up with valid results, as shown in Figure 9-27.

Now the statement looks like this:

```
SELECT * FROM user WHERE user LIKE 'sue%';
```

```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.
mysql> SELECT * FROM user WHERE user LIKE 'sue%';
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Host | User | Password | Select_priv | Insert_priv | Update_priv |
| Delete_priv | Create_priv | Drop_priv | Reload_priv | Shutdown_priv | Process_priv |
| File_priv | Grant_priv | References_priv | Index_priv | Alter_priv |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| localhost | suehring | 59376fbc65a5103d | Y | Y | Y |
| Y | Y | N | Y | Y | Y |
| 192.168.1.% | suehring | 59376fbc65a5103d | Y | Y | Y |
| Y | Y | N | Y | Y | Y |
| % | suehring | Y | Y | Y | Y |
| Y | Y | Y | Y | Y | Y |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
3 rows in set (0.01 sec)

mysql>
```

**Figure 9-27:** Using the LIKE function instead of the equals sign for finding information with a wildcard

Another wildcard, the underscore (\_), can be used to substitute one character. Going back to the spelling of my name as an example, people frequently transpose the *h* and the *r*, misspelling the name as *Suerhing*. To find such instances, I could use two underscores together, like this:

```
SELECT * FROM user WHERE user LIKE 'sue__ing';
```

As you can see from Figure 9-28, the results end up the same.

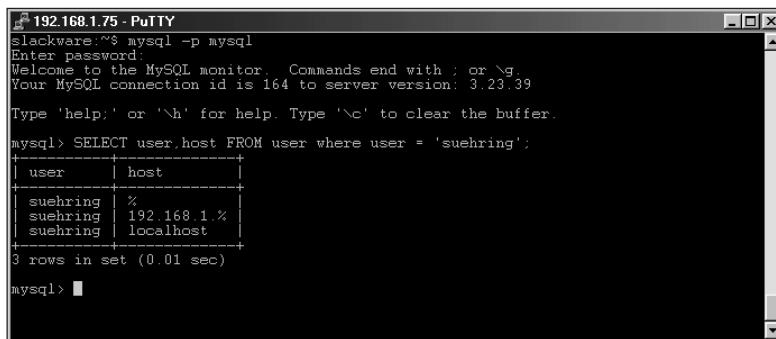
```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.
mysql> SELECT * FROM user WHERE user LIKE 'sue__ing';
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Host | User | Password | Select_priv | Insert_priv | Update_priv |
| Delete_priv | Create_priv | Drop_priv | Reload_priv | Shutdown_priv | Process_priv |
| File_priv | Grant_priv | References_priv | Index_priv | Alter_priv |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| localhost | suehring | 59376fbc65a5103d | Y | Y | Y |
| Y | Y | N | Y | Y | Y |
| 192.168.1.% | suehring | 59376fbc65a5103d | Y | Y | Y |
| Y | Y | N | Y | Y | Y |
| % | suehring | Y | Y | Y | Y |
| Y | Y | Y | Y | Y | Y |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
3 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>
```

**Figure 9-28:** Using the underscore as a wildcard to match one character inside a SELECT statement

I'll come back to the WHERE modifier. For now, I need to jump back to the actual select portion of the SELECT statement. Up until this point I've been using the asterisk to select all columns. You can also select many other items with the SELECT statement including specific columns and the results of functions on columns. For example, if I wanted to only determine which hosts the user 'suehring' is allowed to connect from, I could perform the following query (the results of which are shown in Figure 9-29):

```
SELECT user,host FROM user where user = 'suehring';
```



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled '192.168.1.75 - PuTTY'. The session is connected to a MySQL monitor on a Slackware system. The user has entered their password and is now executing a query. The command is:

```
mysql> SELECT user,host FROM user where user = 'suehring';
```

The resulting table output is:

| user     | host        |
|----------|-------------|
| suehring | %           |
| suehring | 192.168.1.% |
| suehring | localhost   |

Below the table, the message '3 rows in set (0.01 sec)' is displayed. The MySQL prompt 'mysql>' is visible at the bottom.

**Figure 9-29:** Selecting certain columns with the SELECT statement

## SELECT functions

Numerous functions can be used in SELECT statements—some are useful to know (and have around for reference), regardless of whether you use them with a database. This section, however, highlights some functions that illustrate how powerful MySQL can be.



In Appendix A all functions and operators for the SELECT statement are covered in detail.

As with many other portions of SELECT statements, functions can be nested inside each other. For example, the following statement uses two functions, the DATE\_ADD and the NOW functions. The statement results in two days being added to the current date, as determined by the MySQL server:

```
SELECT DATE_ADD(NOW(), INTERVAL 2 day);
```

MySQL also uses functions such as greater than (>), less than (<), equals (=), and the like. Further, the use of logical AND, OR, and NOT is also supported by MySQL SELECT and WHERE clauses. Usage of these functions is pretty intuitive; I provide examples throughout this section and the rest of the book.

MySQL can join tables together in a number of ways so you can select records from multiple tables—or search them for matching records. Selecting from multiple tables is quite simple, just include the table names in the `SELECT` statement and include a method for finding matching rows. More complicated joins and unions can also be accomplished with MySQL so you can perform cross-joins on different columns in a table.



In Appendix A you can see examples of `JOIN` and `UNION`.

## Dates and times with `SELECT`

MySQL includes many functions to work with dates and times. These include functions for conversion of dates and times and functions to determine where a given date falls in a year. In Table 9-1, I list some date and time functions for use with the `SELECT` statement. I'll give examples of usage for them following the table.

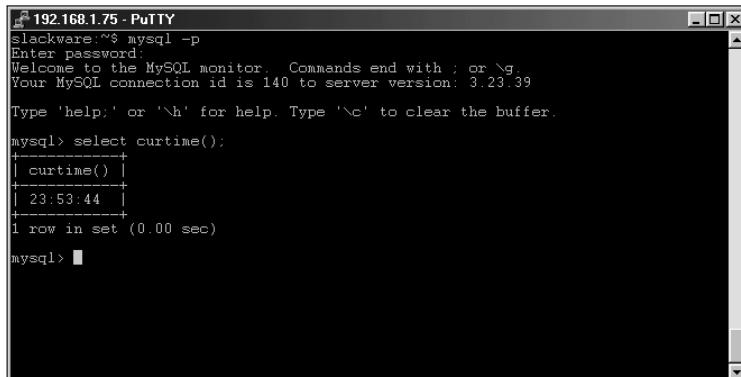
**Table 9-1**  
**Date and time functions with the `SELECT` statement**

| <b>Function Name</b>                | <b>Purpose</b>  |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| <code>CURDATE()</code>              | Returns the current date.   |
| <code>CURTIME()</code>              | As with <code>CURDATE</code> , this returns the current time.               |
| <code>DATE_ADD(D, interval)</code>  | Adds <code>&lt;interval&gt;</code> onto date, D.                            |
| <code>DATE_FORMAT(D, format)</code> | Returns the date in the format specified, see example later in the chapter. |
| <code>DATE_SUB(D, interval)</code>  | Subtracts <code>&lt;interval&gt;</code> from date, D.                       |
| <code>DAYNAME(D)</code>             | Returns the day of the week for a given date in time.                       |
| <code>DAYOFMONTH(D)</code>          | Returns the day of month for a given date, D.                               |
| <code>DAYOFWEEK(D)</code>           | Returns the day of the week that a given date falls upon.                   |
| <code>DAYOFYEAR(D)</code>           | Returns the day of the year for a given date.                               |
| <code>FROM_DAYS(D)</code>           | Returns the actual date that is a number of days, D, away.                  |
| <code>FROM_UNIXTIME(S)</code>       | Converts a Unix/Linux timestamp from native seconds to a date.              |
| <code>HOUR(T)</code>                | Return the hour from a given time value, T.                                 |
| <code>MINUTE(T)</code>              | Returns the minute value from a given time, T.                              |
| <code>MONTH(D)</code>               | Returns the month value from a given date, D.                               |
| <code>MONTHNAME(D)</code>           | Returns the name of the month from a given date, D.                         |
| <code>NOW()</code>                  | Returns the current date and timestamp.                                     |

| Function Name       | Purpose  |
|---------------------|--|
| PERIOD_ADD(D,M)     | Adds the number of months, M, to the given date, D.                    |
| PERIOD_DIFF(D1, D2) | Subtracts the two dates, D1 and D2.                                    |
| QUARTER(D)          | Returns the quarter of the year for the given date, D.                 |
| SECOND(T)           | Returns the second value from a given time, T.                         |
| SEC_TO_TIME(S)      | Converts seconds, S, to a time value.                                  |
| TIME_TO_SEC(T)      | Converts a given time, T, to seconds.                                  |
| TO_DAYS(D)          | Returns a value for the number of days from now until date, D.         |
| UNIX_TIMESTAMP((D)) | Converts date, D, to Unix time or returns current Unix timestamp.      |
| WEEK(D)             | Returns the week of the year for a given date, D.                      |
| WEEKDAY(D)          | Returns the day of the week beginning with Monday for a given date, D. |
| YEAR(D)             | Returns the year value for a given date, D.                            |

As you can see, MySQL includes quite a few functions for working with dates and times. Some functions convert dates and times, some add or subtract dates and time, and some functions simply provide information.

Among those statements that provide information are CURDATE(), NOW(), and CURTIME(). To use these statements simply call them with a SELECT, as shown in Figure 9-30.



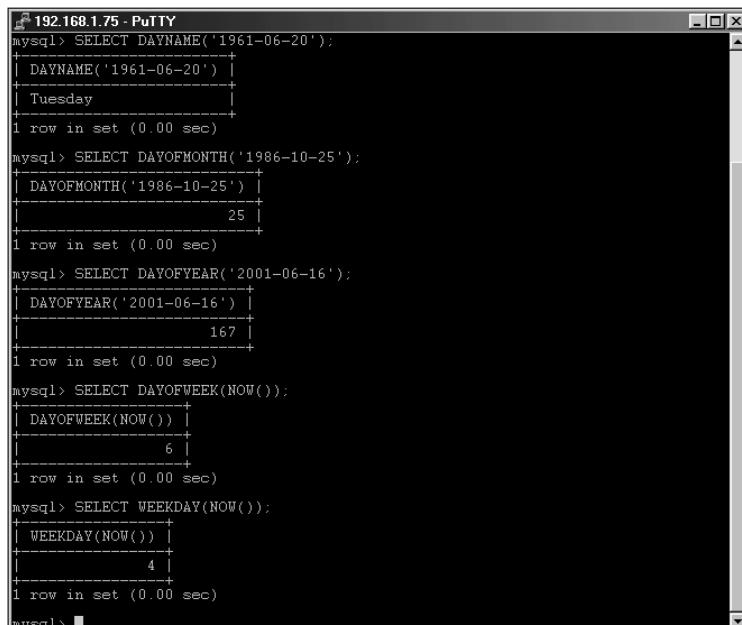
```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
slackware:~$ mysql -p
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor. Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 140 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.
mysql> select curtime();
+-----+
| curtime() |
+-----+
| 23:53:44 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> █
```

**Figure 9-30:** Using the CURTIME() function with select to determine the current time

Other informational functions include those that determine a portion of a date or what day of the week a given date falls on and the like. These include DAYNAME, DAYOFWEEK, DAYOFMONTH, DAYOFYEAR, MONTH, MONTHNAME, QUARTER, WEEK, WEEKDAY, and YEAR. Usage of all these is quite similar; however you may be curious what the difference is between DAYOFWEEK and WEEKDAY. Each of the two functions returns a number value representing a day of the week. However, DAYOFWEEK returns 1 as Sunday, 2 as Monday and so forth while WEEKDAY returns 0 as Monday, 1 as Tuesday, and so forth. Syntax examples follow; results are shown in Figures 9-31 and 9-32.

```
SELECT DAYNAME('1961-06-20');
SELECT DAYOFMONTH('1986-10-25');
SELECT DAYOFYEAR('2001-06-16');
SELECT DAYOFWEEK(NOW());
SELECT MONTH('1973-11-25');
SELECT MONTHNAME('1965-01-29');
SELECT QUARTER('1936-04-01');
SELECT WEEK('1979-04-16');
SELECT WEEKDAY(NOW());
SELECT YEAR('1988-08-08');
```

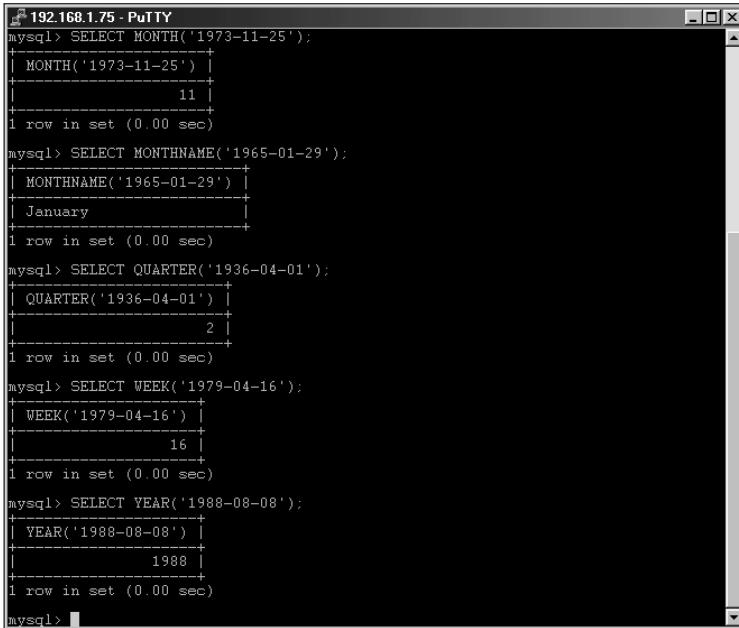


The screenshot shows a PuTTY terminal window titled "192.168.1.75 - PuTTY". It displays several MySQL commands and their results:

- SELECT DAYNAME('1961-06-20'); Result: Tuesday
- SELECT DAYOFMONTH('1986-10-25'); Result: 25
- SELECT DAYOFYEAR('2001-06-16'); Result: 167
- SELECT DAYOFWEEK(NOW()); Result: 6
- SELECT WEEKDAY(NOW()); Result: 4

The results show that DAYOFWEEK returns 6 for Friday, while WEEKDAY returns 4.

**Figure 9-31:** Various date determination functions. Note the difference in determining the DAYOFWEEK versus WEEKDAY for today (Friday)



The screenshot shows a PuTTY terminal window titled "192.168.1.75 - PuTTY". It displays several MySQL commands and their results:

```
mysql> SELECT MONTH('1973-11-25');
+-----+
| MONTH('1973-11-25') |
+-----+
| 11 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT MONTHNAME('1965-01-29');
+-----+
| MONTHNAME('1965-01-29') |
+-----+
| January |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT QUARTER('1936-04-01');
+-----+
| QUARTER('1936-04-01') |
+-----+
| 2 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT WEEK('1979-04-16');
+-----+
| WEEK('1979-04-16') |
+-----+
| 16 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT YEAR('1988-08-08');
+-----+
| YEAR('1988-08-08') |
+-----+
| 1988 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>
```

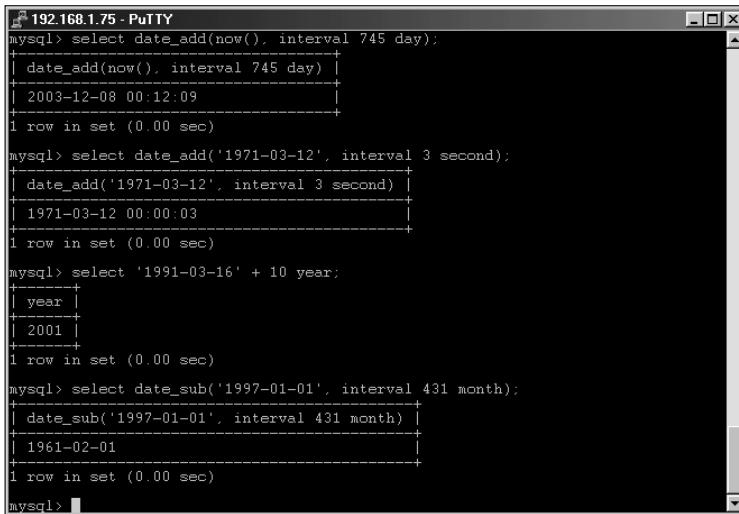
**Figure 9-32:** Other MySQL date determination functions for week, month, quarter, and year

As with the functions that parse a date and return information, other functions parse a given time and return information. These include HOUR, MINUTE, and SECOND. As with the functions for working with days and weeks, the time-based functions also accept a given date/time argument and return information based on that argument.

Some MySQL date and time functions add or subtract dates and time. For example, DATE\_ADD and DATE\_SUB perform addition and subtraction of dates, respectively. Both functions require two arguments, a date and an interval to add or subtract. As stated previously, you can nest functions in statements; this might be a place where you would nest the NOW() function in the DATE\_ADD function to quickly determine the current date.

Both the DATE\_ADD and DATE\_SUB functions have synonyms: ADDDATE and SUBDATE, respectively. In addition, you can also use a plus sign (+) and minus sign (-) as substitutes for the DATE\_ADD and DATE\_SUB functions. The functions accept any valid time interval such as year, month, day, hour, and even second. Results from the following examples are shown in Figure 9-33.

```
SELECT DATE_ADD(NOW(), INTERVAL 745 day);
SELECT DATE_ADD('1971-03-12', INTERVAL 3 second);
SELECT '1991-03-16' + 10 year;
SELECT DATE_SUB('1997-01-01', INTERVAL 431 month);
```



```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
mysql> select date_add(now(), interval 745 day);
+-----+
| date_add(now(), interval 745 day) |
+-----+
| 2003-12-08 00:12:09 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> select date_add('1971-03-12', interval 3 second);
+-----+
| date_add('1971-03-12', interval 3 second) |
+-----+
| 1971-03-12 00:00:03 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> select '1991-03-16' + 10 year;
+-----+
| year |
+-----+
| 2001 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

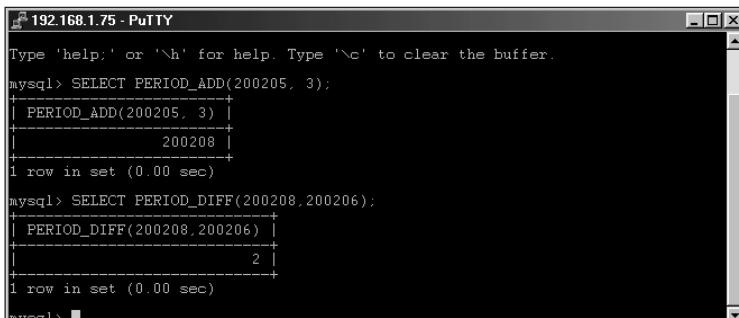
mysql> select date_sub('1997-01-01', interval 431 month);
+-----+
| date_sub('1997-01-01', interval 431 month) |
+-----+
| 1961-02-01 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>
```

**Figure 9-33:** Examples of various date addition and subtraction functions with MySQL

The functions `PERIOD_ADD` and `PERIOD_DIFF` also add and subtract dates, though each works with months only. With `PERIOD_ADD`, you add a number of months to a give date. With `PERIOD_DIFF` you can determine the number of months between two pseudo-date values. The syntax looks like these examples (results appear in Figure 9-34):

```
SELECT PERIOD_ADD(200205, 3);
SELECT PERIOD_DIFF(200208,200206);
```



```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.
mysql> SELECT PERIOD_ADD(200205, 3);
+-----+
| PERIOD_ADD(200205, 3) |
+-----+
| 200208 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT PERIOD_DIFF(200208,200206);
+-----+
| PERIOD_DIFF(200208,200206) |
+-----+
| 2 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>
```

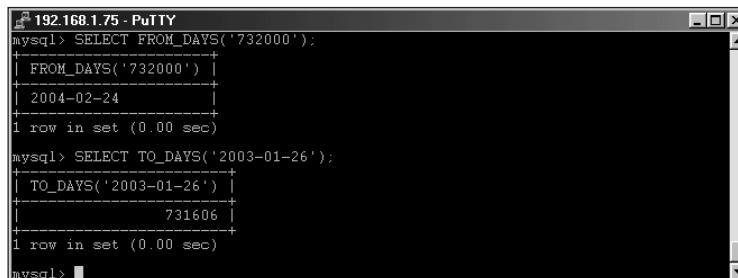
**Figure 9-34:** Using MySQL's `PERIOD_ADD` and `PERIOD_DIFF` functions to work with months

The FROM\_DAYS and TO\_DAYS functions are similar insofar as they tell you the number of days to or from a certain date (see Figure 9-35). For example, to determine the date in a certain number of days, use the FROM\_DAYS with the number as the argument. To determine the number of days from year 0 to a certain date, use the TO\_DAYS function like this:

```
SELECT FROM_DAYS('732000');
SELECT TO_DAYS('2003-01-26');
```

**Note**

The functions work with numbers of days since year zero; therefore the values you use will be quite large.



A screenshot of a PuTTY terminal window titled "192.168.1.75 - PuTTY". The window displays two MySQL queries. The first query is "SELECT FROM\_DAYS('732000');", which returns the date "2004-02-24". The second query is "SELECT TO\_DAYS('2003-01-26');", which returns the number of days "731606". Both queries execute quickly, taking "0.00 sec".

```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
mysql> SELECT FROM_DAYS('732000');
+-----+
| FROM_DAYS('732000') |
+-----+
| 2004-02-24          |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT TO_DAYS('2003-01-26');
+-----+
| TO_DAYS('2003-01-26') |
+-----+
|      731606          |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>
```

**Figure 9-35:** The FROM\_DAYS and TO\_DAYS functions in action.  
Note the large values used as both of the functions work with  
the number of days since year 0.

Some date and time functions convert dates and times from one format to another. These functions include FROM\_UNIXTIME, SEC\_TO\_TIME, TIME\_TO\_SEC, and UNIX\_TIMESTAMP. Using these functions in conjunction with other time and date functions, you can transform the dates and times so they are easier to understand. In Unix/Linux, many are based upon the number of seconds. If you have a Unix timestamp and need to convert that to a more easily readable date, use the FROM\_UNIXTIME function. The UNIX\_TIMESTAMP function gives you the value of the Unix time in seconds. You could nest the two functions to retrieve the current date, but why not just use the CURDATE function? The SEC\_TO\_TIME and TIME\_TO\_SEC functions work with times though not necessarily related to times you'd see on a clock. Thus you can use the SEC\_TO\_TIME function to determine how many hours a session was active. Syntax examples follow (with results in Figure 9-36):

```
SELECT UNIX_TIMESTAMP();
SELECT FROM_UNIXTIME('1000010234');
SELECT SEC_TO_TIME('124024');
SELECT TIME_TO_SEC('51:50:00');
```

```

192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
mysql> SELECT UNIX_TIMESTAMP();
+-----+
| UNIX_TIMESTAMP() |
+-----+
| 1006559030 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT FROM_UNIXTIME('1000010234');
+-----+
| FROM_UNIXTIME('1000010234') |
+-----+
| 2001-09-08 23:37:14 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT SEC_TO_TIME('124024');
+-----+
| SEC_TO_TIME('124024') |
+-----+
| 34:27:04 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT TIME_TO_SEC('51:50:00');
+-----+
| TIME_TO_SEC('51:50:00') |
+-----+
| 186600 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.01 sec)

mysql>

```

**Figure 9-36:** Time and second based conversion functions in MySQL

Out of the functions, the `DATE_FORMAT` statement stands out as unique. This function takes a date and then determines how you would like the date result formatted. Quite a few options exist. Table 9-2 lists the various formatting arguments that you can provide to the `DATE_FORMAT` function.

**Table 9-2**  
**Arguments for use with the `DATE_FORMAT` function**

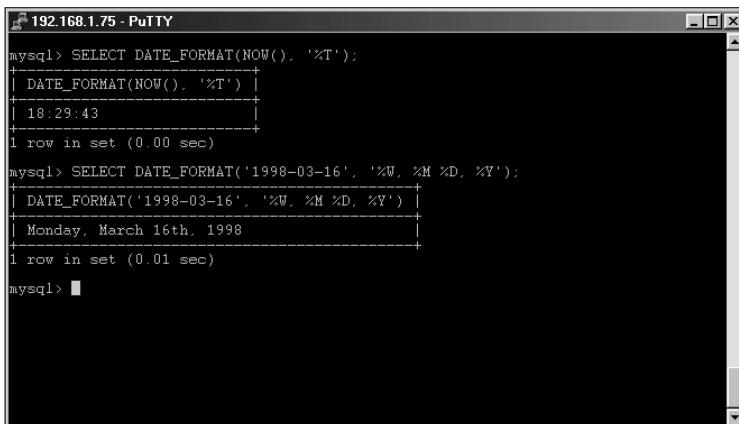
| <b>Argument</b> | <b>Definition</b>   |
|-----------------|---|
| <code>%%</code> | A literal percent sign.   |
| <code>%a</code> | Abbreviated weekday names such as Sun, Mon, and so on.          |
| <code>%b</code> | Abbreviated month names, Jan, Feb, and so on.                   |
| <code>%c</code> | The month number, where 1 is January.                           |
| <code>%D</code> | Numeric day of month with suffix such as 1st, 2nd, and so on.   |
| <code>%d</code> | Two-digit numeric day of month starting with 00, 01, and so on. |
| <code>%e</code> | One-digit numeric day of month starting with 0.                 |
| <code>%H</code> | Two-digit numeric hour starting with 00 in 24-hour format.      |

| Argument | Definition   |
|----------|--|
| %h       | One-digit numeric hour starting with 0 in 12-hour format.  |
| %I       | Two-digit numeric hour starting with 01 in 12-hour format. |
| %i       | Two-digit numeric minute starting with 00.                 |
| %j       | Three-digit day of year starting with 001.                 |
| %k       | One-digit numeric hour starting with 0 in 24-hour format.  |
| %l       | One-digit numeric hour starting with 1 in 12-hour format.  |
| %M       | Long format month name, January, February, and so on.      |
| %m       | Two-digit numeric month starting with 01.                  |
| %p       | AM or PM designation based on the time.                    |
| %r       | Time in 12-hour format including AM or PM.                 |
| %S       | Two-digit numeric seconds.                                 |
| %s       | Two-digit numeric seconds, same as %S.                     |
| %T       | Time in 24-hour format.                                    |
| %U       | One-digit numeric week where Sunday is first day of week.  |
| %u       | One-digit numeric week where Monday is first day of week.  |
| %W       | Long format weekday name such as Monday, Tuesday.          |
| %w       | Numeric day of week where 0 is Sunday.                     |
| %Y       | Four-digit numeric year.                                   |
| %y       | Two-digit numeric year.                                    |

Don't let the options for the DATE\_FORMAT function overwhelm you. Some syntax examples for the DATE\_FORMAT function are as follows:

```
SELECT DATE_FORMAT(NOW(), '%T');  
SELECT DATE_FORMAT('1998-03-16', '%W, %M %D, %Y');
```

The results from the syntax examples for the DATE\_FORMAT function are shown in Figure 9-37.



The screenshot shows a PuTTY terminal window titled "192.168.1.75 - PuTTY". It displays two MySQL queries using the `DATE_FORMAT` function. The first query shows the current date and time in a standard format: "18:29:43". The second query formats the date '1998-03-16' as "Monday, March 16th, 1998". Both queries return one row in approximately 0.00 or 0.01 seconds.

```
mysql> SELECT DATE_FORMAT(NOW(), '%T');
+-----+
| DATE_FORMAT(NOW(), '%T') |
+-----+
| 18:29:43 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT DATE_FORMAT('1998-03-16', '%W, %M %D, %Y');
+-----+
| DATE_FORMAT('1998-03-16', '%W, %M %D, %Y') |
+-----+
| Monday, March 16th, 1998 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.01 sec)

mysql>
```

**Figure 9-37:** The `DATE_FORMAT` function allows customizing of date and time output to fit your application.

## Numerical functions with `SELECT`

As is the case with dates and times, MySQL also includes a rich feature set of numerical functions. Table 9-3 lists some of those functions.

**Table 9-3**  
**Numerical functions with the `SELECT` statement**

|                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| <code>ABS(N)</code>                | Returns the absolute value of a number, N.                                   |
| <code>xBIN(N)</code>               | Returns the binary value for the given number, N.                            |
| <code>xFORMAT(N,D)</code>          | Formats the number, N, to the given decimal place, D.                        |
| <code>xGREATEST(N1,N2, ...)</code> | Provides the highest or greatest number in the given set, N1, N2, and so on. |
| <code>xHEX(D)</code>               | Gives the hexadecimal value for a given decimal number, D.                   |
| <code>xLEAST(N1, N2, ...)</code>   | Returns the smallest or least number in the list N1, N2, and so on.          |
| <code>xMOD(N1, N2)</code>          | Returns the modulo value of the two numbers, N1 and N2.                      |
| <code>xPI()</code>                 | Returns the value of Pi.   |
| <code>POW(N1, N2)</code>           | Raises a number, N1 to the power of another number, N2.                      |
| <code>xROUND(N,(D))</code>         | Rounds a number, N, to the optional decimal places, D.                       |
| <code>SIGN(N)</code>               | Determines whether a value is negative, positive, or zero.                   |

MySQL's numerical functions also include addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division. Addition and subtraction functions can be called through the use of the plus and minus signs, multiplication uses the asterisk, and division uses the front-slash (/). For example, the statement `SELECT 4 + 4` would render a result of 8. The MOD function returns the modulo or remainder from a division of numbers. This function can also be called with the percent sign (%).

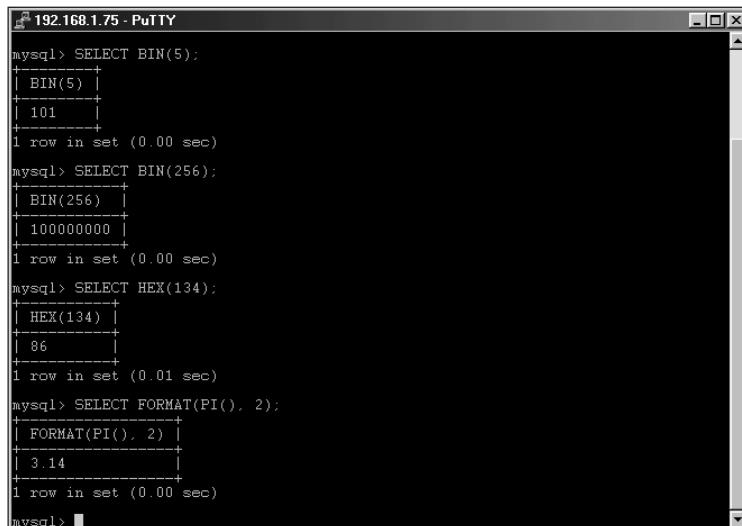
Beyond the functions listed above, MySQL also includes functions for cosine, tangent, arc cosine, cotangent, random, and more. Many of these functions are used only in specialized applications.

**Cross-Reference**

The additional numerical functions for use with MySQL are detailed in Appendix A.

The numerical functions are really straightforward in their use. Most accept a number as an argument. Some interesting functions include the BIN, HEX, and FORMAT functions. The BIN and HEX functions convert a number between formats binary and hexadecimal respectively. The format function is useful when you have extra decimal places and want only to use a certain number of decimal places in your application. Syntax examples and results follow (see Figure 9-38). Notice that I sneaked in a nested function, PI, in the FORMAT function call.

```
SELECT BIN(5);
SELECT BIN(256);
SELECT HEX(134);
SELECT FORMAT(PI(), 2);
```



The screenshot shows a PuTTY terminal window titled "192.168.1.75 - PuTTY". It displays the following MySQL session:

```
mysql> SELECT BIN(5);
+-----+
| BIN(5) |
+-----+
| 101    |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT BIN(256);
+-----+
| BIN(256) |
+-----+
| 100000000 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

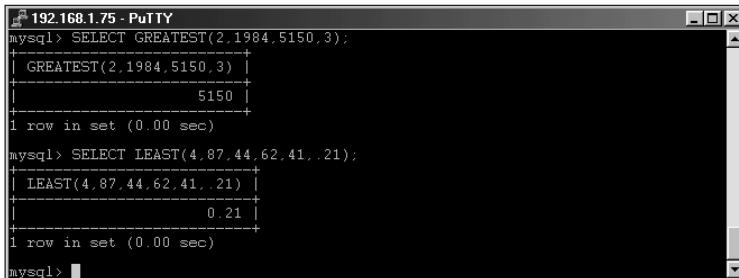
mysql> SELECT HEX(134);
+-----+
| HEX(134) |
+-----+
| 86       |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.01 sec)

mysql> SELECT FORMAT(PI(), 2);
+-----+
| FORMAT(PI(), 2) |
+-----+
| 3.14           |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

**Figure 9-38:** Some of MySQL's numerical functions in action

The GREATEST and LEAST functions are similar insofar as they find the maximum or minimum value given a list of numbers, as shown in Figure 9-39.

```
SELECT GREATEST(2,1984,5150,3);
SELECT LEAST(4,87,44,62,41,.21);
```

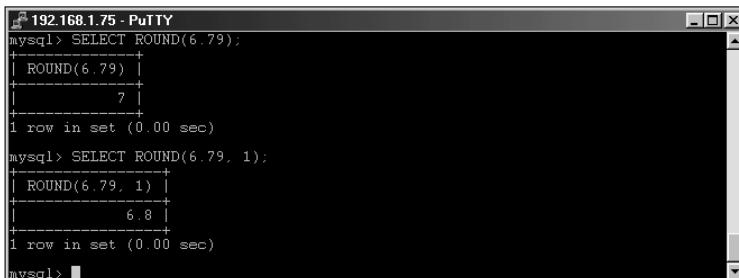


A screenshot of a PuTTY terminal window titled "192.168.1.75 - PuTTY". The window displays two MySQL queries. The first query is "SELECT GREATEST(2,1984,5150,3);", which returns the value 5150. The second query is "SELECT LEAST(4,87,44,62,41,.21);", which returns the value 0.21. Both queries were run in less than 0.00 seconds.

**Figure 9-39:** The GREATEST and LEAST functions in action

The ROUND function can be called with or without an extra argument specifying the number of digits to include after the decimal (see Figure 9-40). If no extra argument is given, the ROUND function will round to the nearest whole number.

```
SELECT ROUND(6.79);
SELECT ROUND(6.79, 1);
```



A screenshot of a PuTTY terminal window titled "192.168.1.75 - PuTTY". The window displays two MySQL queries. The first query is "SELECT ROUND(6.79);", which returns the value 7. The second query is "SELECT ROUND(6.79, 1);", which returns the value 6.8. Both queries were run in less than 0.00 seconds.

**Figure 9-40:** The ROUND function can be called with or without an argument depending on the precision of rounding that you need.

## String functions with the SELECT statement

Functions for working with strings and characters are an important part of MySQL's SELECT and WHERE statements. As with the date and time functions and numerical functions, many string functions are used in specialized cases and applications. Table 9-4 lists many string functions used in MySQL.

**Table 9-4**  
**String functions with the SELECT statement**

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| ASCII(C)               | Returns the ASCII value of the given character, C.  |
| CHAR(N,N)              | Returns the actual character when given an ASCII number(s), N.  |
| CONCAT(S1,S2...)       | Concatenates (joins) the strings, S1, S2 and so on.   |
| CONCAT_WS(S,S1,S2 ...) | Concatenates the strings S1, S2 and so on using separator, S.   |
| FIELD(S,S1,S2,...)     | Returns the number indicating the position of a string, S, as located in the field list, S1, S2, and so on. |
| LCASE(S)               | Converts string, S, into lowercase.   |
| LENGTH(S)              | Returns the character length of string, S.  |
| LIKE                   | Compares strings via pattern matching.  |
| LOAD_FILE(F)           | Loads the contents of file, F, as a string.   |
| LPAD(S,N,C)            | Left-pads the string, S, with the number, N, of characters, C.  |
| LTRIM(S)               | Trims whitespace from the left of string, S.  |
| POSITION(S in S1)      | Determines the first position of substring, S, in string, S1.   |
| REGEXP                 | Compares strings with regular expression pattern matching.  |
| REPLACE(S,O,N)         | Replaces old string, O, with new string, N, in a given string, S.   |
| REVERSE(S)             | Reverses string, S.   |
| RPAD(S,N,C)            | Right-pads the string, S, with the number, N, of characters, C.   |
| RTRIM(S)               | Trims whitespace from the right of string, S.   |
| SPACE(N)               | Returns a string consisting of N spaces.  |
| STRCMP(S1,S2)          | Compares the two strings, S1 and S2.  |
| TRIM((RS) from S)      | Remove string, RS, from string, S (see example following this list)   |
| UCASE(S)               | Converts string, S, into uppercase.   |

Out of the string functions, the ASCII and CHAR functions stand out as unique. These two functions work with strings to determine or return their ASCII value. (See Figure 9-41.) The CHAR function can accept more than one ASCII number in the argument list.

```
SELECT ASCII('W');
SELECT CHAR(51,65);
```

```

192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
mysql> SELECT ASCII('W');
+-----+
| ASCII('W') |
+-----+
|      87     |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT CHAR(51,65);
+-----+
| CHAR(51,65) |
+-----+
|    3A        |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>

```

**Figure 9-41:** The ASCII and CHAR functions. Notice that when given more than one argument, the CHAR value returns the corresponding values without any separation.

The LTRIM and RTRIM functions along with the LPAD and RPAD functions both perform similar duties. The LTRIM and LPAD functions operate on the left side of a string while the RTRIM and RPAD functions operate on, you guessed it, the right side of a string. The LTRIM and RTRIM functions remove whitespace from a string while the LPAD and RPAD functions add a specified number of characters to a string to make it a certain length. The characters to be added with LPAD and RPAD can be whitespace or other characters. The total length of the string will be the length specified; any initial string longer than that length gets trimmed. (See Figure 9-42.)

```

SELECT LTRIM('Hello World');
SELECT RTRIM('Goodbye World      ');
SELECT LPAD('Internet',5,' ');
SELECT LPAD('Internet',10,'-');
SELECT RPAD('Another string',16,:');

```

A somewhat different function for removing characters from a string is TRIM. Both the LTRIM and RTRIM functions only remove whitespace characters. However, with TRIM you can specify the character or string to remove. With TRIM you can also specify whether to remove the characters from the left side, right side, or both sides of the string. The syntax is somewhat specific for the TRIM function. If you include options such as BOTH, LEADING, or TRAILING, you must include the word FROM in the statement. The TRIM function will remove whitespace if you don't include any options such as BOTH, LEADING, TRAILING, or the string to remove. The command looks like this:

```

TRIM ((BOTH | LEADING | TRAILING) (<stringtoremove>) FROM)
<string>;

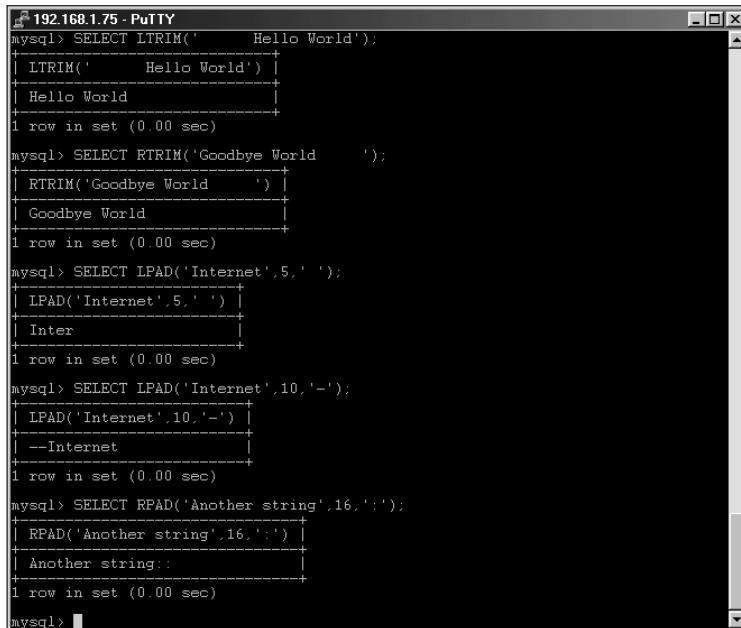
```

Syntax examples follow (as well as results in Figure 9-43):

```

SELECT TRIM('Hello Rebecca');
SELECT TRIM(BOTH '$' FROM '$$$$$Survey Says$$$$');
SELECT TRIM(LEADING 'S' FROM 'Steve Suehring');

```



```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
mysql> SELECT LTRIM('      Hello World');
+-----+
| LTRIM('      Hello World') |
| Hello World                 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT RTRIM('Goodbye World      ');
+-----+
| RTRIM('Goodbye World      ') |
| Goodbye World                |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

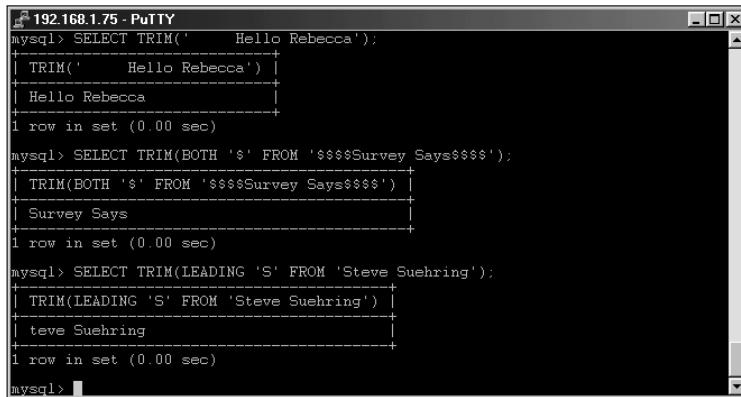
mysql> SELECT LPAD('Internet',5,' ');
+-----+
| LPAD('Internet',5,' ') |
| Inter                     |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT LPAD('Internet',10,'-');
+-----+
| LPAD('Internet',10,'-') |
| --Internet               |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT RPAD('Another string',16,'::');
+-----+
| RPAD('Another string',16,'::') |
| Another string::              |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>
```

Figure 9-42: Some MySQL string functions in action



```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
mysql> SELECT TRIM('      Hello Rebecca');
+-----+
| TRIM('      Hello Rebecca') |
| Hello Rebecca                |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT TRIM(BOTH '$' FROM '$$$$$Survey Says$$$$');
+-----+
| TRIM(BOTH '$' FROM '$$$$$Survey Says$$$$') |
| Survey Says                         |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

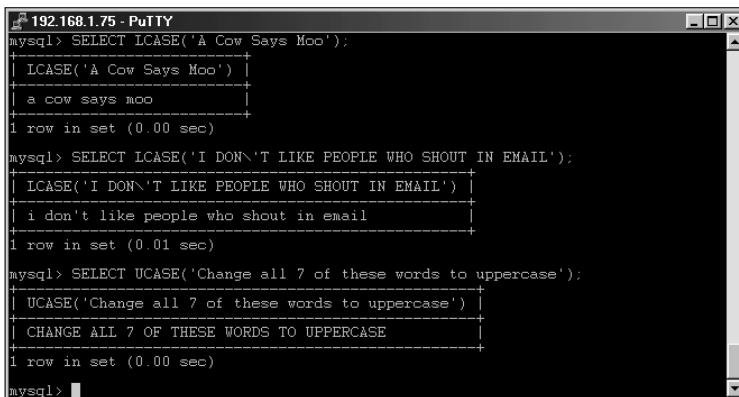
mysql> SELECT TRIM(LEADING 'S' FROM 'Steve Suehring');
+-----+
| TRIM(LEADING 'S' FROM 'Steve Suehring') |
| teve Suehring                      |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>
```

Figure 9-43: Examples of the MySQL TRIM function

The LCASE and UCASE functions are also related. LCASE converts a string to all lowercase characters while UCASE converts the string to all uppercase characters. The syntax for their use is the same and is quite simple. The results are shown in Figure 9-44.

```
SELECT LCASE('A Cow Says Moo');
SELECT LCASE('I DON\'T LIKE PEOPLE WHO SHOUT IN E-MAIL');
SELECT UCASE('Change all 7 of these words to uppercase');
```



The screenshot shows a PuTTY terminal window titled "192.168.1.75 - PuTTY". It displays three MySQL queries and their results:

```
mysql> SELECT LCASE('A Cow Says Moo');
+ LCASE('A Cow Says Moo') +
| a cow says moo |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT LCASE('I DON`T LIKE PEOPLE WHO SHOUT IN EMAIL');
+ LCASE('I DON`T LIKE PEOPLE WHO SHOUT IN EMAIL') +
| i don't like people who shout in email |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.01 sec)

mysql> SELECT UCASE('Change all 7 of these words to uppercase');
+ UCASE('Change all 7 of these words to uppercase') +
| CHANGE ALL 7 OF THESE WORDS TO UPPERCASE |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>
```

**Figure 9-44:** The UCASE and LCASE functions for converting strings to upper and lowercase.

Sometimes you just need some space. The good news is that MySQL includes a function to provide you with as many spaces as you'd like. The function is aptly titled `SPACE` and expects the number of spaces as an argument. I'll use the `SPACE` function in an example with the `CONCAT` function.

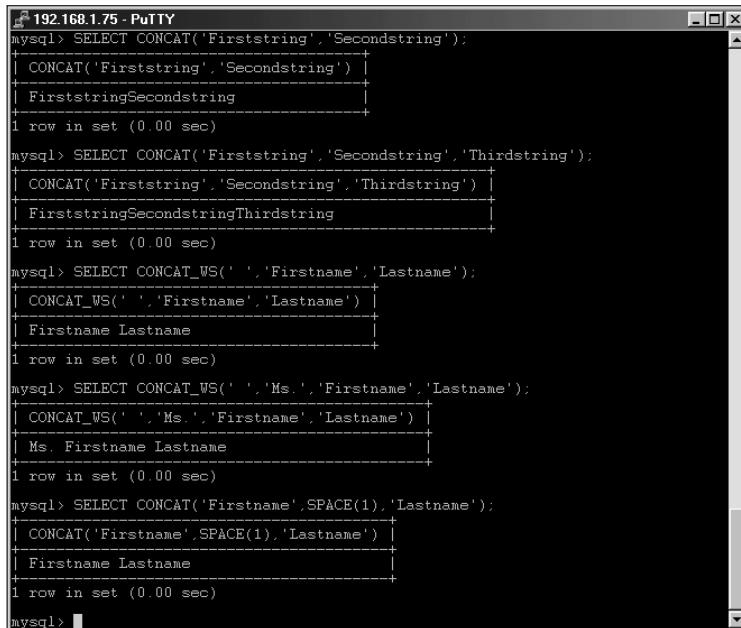
Both `CONCAT` and `CONCAT_WS` perform similar functions. Both functions take strings and concatenate or join them together. The `CONCAT_WS` function enables you to specify a separator between the strings, such as a space. One way to use the `CONCAT_WS` function is to join a first name and last name separated by a space:

```
SELECT CONCAT('Firststring','Secondstring');
SELECT CONCAT('Firststring','Secondstring','Thirdstring');
SELECT CONCAT_WS(' ','Firstname','Lastname');
SELECT CONCAT_WS(' ','Ms.','Firstname','Lastname');
```

As an alternative to the `CONCAT_WS` function, you could use the `SPACE` function in the argument list with `CONCAT`, like this:

```
SELECT CONCAT('Firstname',SPACE(1),'Lastname');
```

The results from the syntax examples given here appear in Figure 9-45.



```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
mysql> SELECT CONCAT('Firststring','Secondstring');
+-----+
| CONCAT('Firststring','Secondstring') |
+-----+
| FirststringSecondstring |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT CONCAT('Firststring','Secondstring','Thirdstring');
+-----+
| CONCAT('Firststring','Secondstring','Thirdstring') |
+-----+
| FirststringSecondstringThirdstring |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT CONCAT_WS(' ','Firstname','Lastname');
+-----+
| CONCAT_WS(' ','Firstname','Lastname') |
+-----+
| Firstname Lastname |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT CONCAT_WS(' ','Ms.','Firstname','Lastname');
+-----+
| CONCAT_WS(' ','Ms.','Firstname','Lastname') |
+-----+
| Ms. Firstname Lastname |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT CONCAT('Firstname',SPACE(1),'Lastname');
+-----+
| CONCAT('Firstname',SPACE(1),'Lastname') |
+-----+
| Firstname Lastname |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

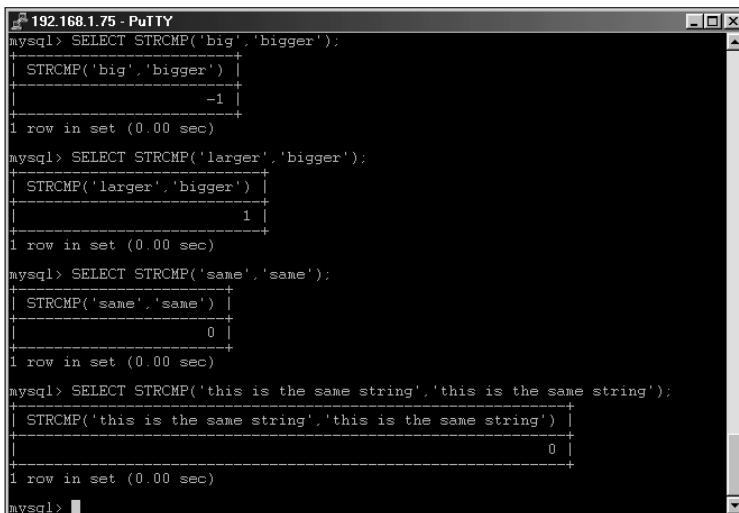
mysql>
```

**Figure 9-45:** The CONCAT and CONCAT\_WS functions as well as an example of the SPACE function

The STRCMP function takes two strings as arguments and determines whether they are the same. For example, consider the following instances:

```
SELECT STRCMP('big','bigger');
SELECT STRCMP('larger','bigger');
SELECT STRCMP('same','same');
SELECT STRCMP('this is the same string','this is the same
string');
```

If the strings are the same, the STRCMP function will return 0. If the first string is smaller than the second according to the current ordering, the function returns -1. The STRCMP function returns 1 in all other cases. (See Figure 9-46.)



The screenshot shows a PuTTY terminal window titled "192.168.1.75 - PuTTY". It displays several MySQL queries using the STRCMP function:

```
mysql> SELECT STRCMP('big','bigger');
+-----+
| STRCMP('big','bigger') |
+-----+
|          -1          |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT STRCMP('larger','bigger');
+-----+
| STRCMP('larger','bigger') |
+-----+
|            1            |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT STRCMP('same','same');
+-----+
| STRCMP('same','same') |
+-----+
|            0            |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT STRCMP('this is the same string','this is the same string');
+-----+
| STRCMP('this is the same string','this is the same string') |
+-----+
|            0            |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>
```

**Figure 9-46:** The STRCMP function compares strings and returns an integer value based upon the results.

Other methods exist for comparing strings in MySQL. Most notable is the LIKE function. The syntax for the LIKE function is different from the others that I've been covering in the sections on SELECT and WHERE functions. As with the other functions that utilize parentheses for their arguments, the LIKE function compares the strings much like an equals sign (=) would. However, the LIKE function matches a pattern instead of a just a literal string.

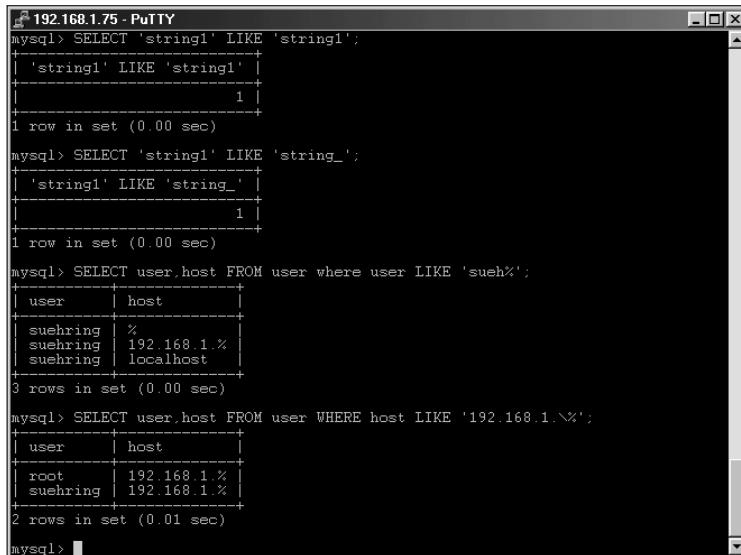
```
SELECT 'string1' LIKE 'string1';
SELECT 'string1' LIKE 'string_';
```

The LIKE function returns 1 if the comparison matches or 0 otherwise. The power of LIKE really emerges with the use of wildcards such as the underscore and the percent sign, as shown in Figure 9-47. Further, the LIKE function is most used in the WHERE portion of a SELECT statement for non-exact matches.

```
SELECT user,host FROM user WHERE user LIKE 'sueh%';
```

If you want to match a literal percent sign or underscore in a pattern, be sure to escape the percent with a backslash. For example, if I wanted to find a value that contained a percent sign, I can query for that by adding a backslash before the percent sign, like this:

```
SELECT user,host FROM user WHERE host LIKE '192.168.1.\%';
```



The screenshot shows a PuTTY terminal window titled "192.168.1.75 - PuTTY". It displays several MySQL commands and their results:

```
mysql> SELECT 'string1' LIKE 'string1';
+-----+
| 'string1' LIKE 'string1' |
+-----+
| 1 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT 'string1' LIKE 'string_';
+-----+
| 'string1' LIKE 'string_' |
+-----+
| 1 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT user.host FROM user WHERE user LIKE 'sueh%';
+-----+
| user | host |
+-----+
| suehring | % |
| suehring | 192.168.1.% |
| suehring | localhost |
+-----+
3 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT user.host FROM user WHERE host LIKE '192.168.1.\%';
+-----+
| user | host |
+-----+
| root | 192.168.1.% |
| suehring | 192.168.1.% |
+-----+
2 rows in set (0.01 sec)
```

**Figure 9-47:** Some basic examples with the LIKE function to match patterns, some with wildcards

The `LIKE` function has two useful modifiers: the `ESCAPE` and `BINARY` keywords. (See Figure 9-48.) The `ESCAPE` modifier changes the character used to escape a literal percent sign or underscore in a pattern. The `BINARY` keyword changes the case-sensitivity of the pattern match. However, if a column is a binary column already (such as the `user` column of the MySQL GRANTS database), the `BINARY` keyword does not change the behavior.

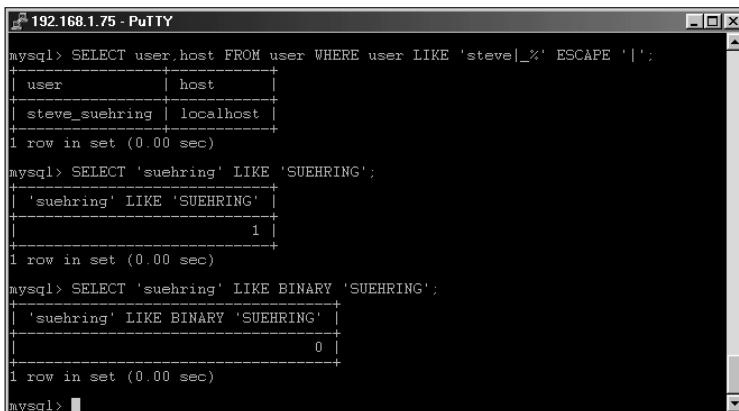
```
SELECT user,host FROM user WHERE user LIKE 'steve|_%' ESCAPE
'|';
SELECT 'suehring' LIKE 'SUEHRING';
SELECT 'suehring' LIKE BINARY 'SUEHRING';
```

MySQL also includes regular expression type matching via the `REGEXP` or `RLIKE` function. Using the `REGEXP` function, of which the `RLIKE` function is synonym for `REGEXP`, you can utilize more complicated pattern matching inside the `SELECT` and `WHERE` statement.

The `LIKE` and `REGEXP` functions can be negated with the use of the `NOT` keyword, in effect, using `NOT LIKE` will match those records unlike the pattern.

The `FIELD` and `POSITION` functions are somewhat similar and at the same time different. The similarity between the two functions is that they both look for a string position. Consider the following examples:

```
SELECT FIELD('Suehring','Spencer','Tuescher','Guthrie',
'Suehring','Leu','Hein');
SELECT POSITION('Sue' IN 'Steve Suehring');
```



```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
mysql> SELECT user.host FROM user WHERE user LIKE 'steve\_%' ESCAPE '|';
+-----+-----+
| user | host |
+-----+-----+
| steve_suehring | localhost |
+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

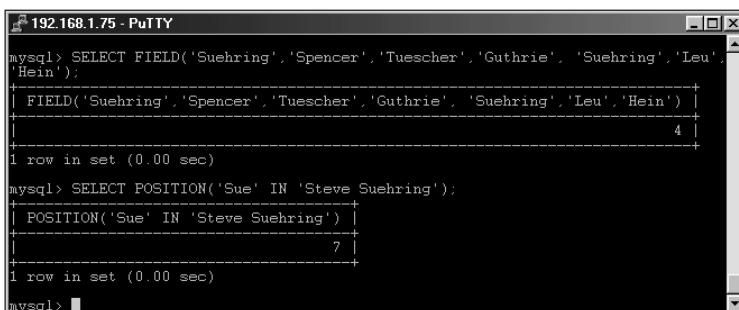
mysql> SELECT 'suehring' LIKE 'SUEHRING';
+-----+
| 'suehring' LIKE 'SUEHRING' |
+-----+
| 1 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT 'suehring' LIKE BINARY 'SUEHRING';
+-----+
| 'suehring' LIKE BINARY 'SUEHRING' |
+-----+
| 0 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>
```

**Figure 9-48:** Pattern matching with LIKE and the ESCAPE and BINARY modifiers

The difference is that the FIELD function returns the number of the argument in the argument list that matches a given string. The POSITION function returns the position of a substring in one string. The FIELD function looks for the first instance of the string the first argument in the list. In the following example, the FIELD function serves to determine the location of the string 'Suehring' in the list of names. The POSITION function looks for a substring in the instance of the given string. (See Figure 9-49.) Note the difference in syntax between the two statements. If the string or substring is not found, both functions return a value of 0.



```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
mysql> SELECT FIELD('Suehring', 'Spencer', 'Tuescher', 'Guthrie', 'Suehring', 'Leu', 'Hein');
+-----+
| FIELD('Suehring', 'Spencer', 'Tuescher', 'Guthrie', 'Suehring', 'Leu', 'Hein') |
+-----+
| 4 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT POSITION('Sue' IN 'Steve Suehring');
+-----+
| POSITION('Sue' IN 'Steve Suehring') |
+-----+
| 7 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>
```

**Figure 9-49:** The FIELD and POSITION functions in action. Note the difference in syntax between the two statements.

The REPLACE function can be useful when preparing for large-scale changes to records. The syntax for the replace function calls for three arguments. The first argument is the string you're looking to search in. The second argument is the old string or the one you want to search for and replace. The third and final argument

for the REPLACE function is the new string, or the one that you would like to use as a replacement. See Figure 9-50 for the results from the following syntax example:

```
SELECT REPLACE('I want to work with Old string','Old string','New string');
```

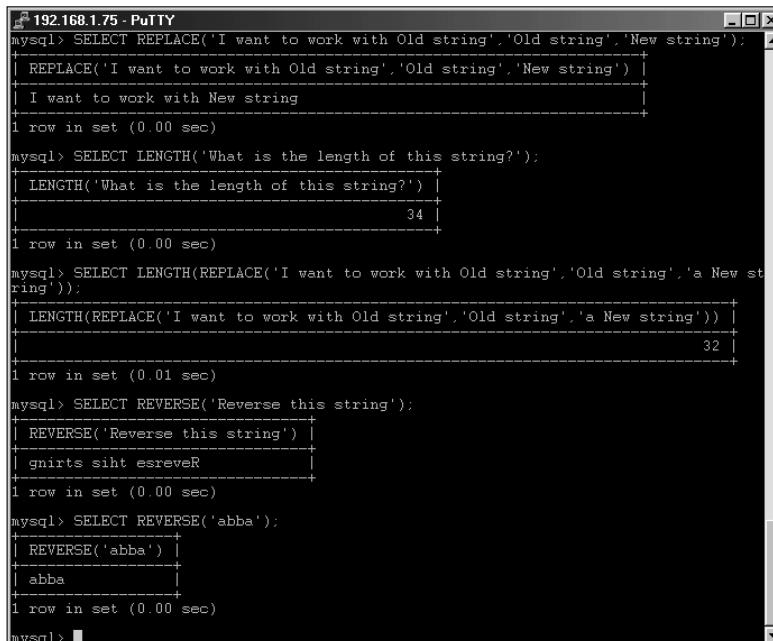
The LENGTH function can also be quite helpful. The LENGTH function determines the length of a given string. A couple examples follow including a nesting of the REPLACE function. The results from the following examples are shown in Figure 9-50:

```
SELECT LENGTH('What is the length of this string?');
SELECT LENGTH(REPLACE('I want to work with Old string','Old string','a New string'));
```

One final example to include in Figure 9-50 is the REVERSE function. As you may have guessed, the REVERSE function reverses a string:

```
SELECT REVERSE('Reverse this string');
SELECT REVERSE('abba');
```

I'm not sure how useful this capability would be in the context I'm using it, but when combined or nested with other functions, the REVERSE function can provide a meaningful purpose.



The screenshot shows a PuTTY terminal window titled "192.168.1.75 - PuTTY". It displays several MySQL queries and their results:

- Query 1: `SELECT REPLACE('I want to work with Old string','Old string','New string');`  
Result: | REPLACE('I want to work with Old string','Old string','New string') |  
| I want to work with New string |  
+-----+  
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
- Query 2: `SELECT LENGTH('What is the length of this string?');`  
Result: | LENGTH('What is the length of this string?') |  
| 34 |  
+-----+  
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
- Query 3: `SELECT LENGTH(REPLACE('I want to work with Old string','Old string','a New string'));`  
Result: | LENGTH(REPLACE('I want to work with Old string','Old string','a New string')) |  
| 32 |  
+-----+  
1 row in set (0.01 sec)
- Query 4: `SELECT REVERSE('Reverse this string');`  
Result: | REVERSE('Reverse this string') |  
| gnirts siht esreveR |  
+-----+  
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
- Query 5: `SELECT REVERSE('abba');`  
Result: | REVERSE('abba') |  
| abba |  
+-----+  
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

**Figure 9-50:** The REPLACE, LENGTH, and REVERSE functions. Note the use of nesting with the LENGTH function.

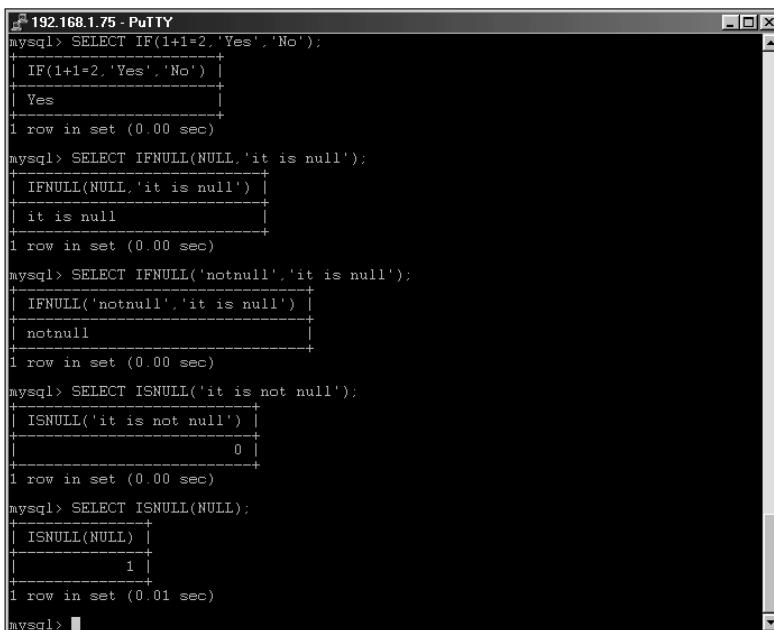
The final string-related SELECT/WHERE function that I cover in this chapter is the LOAD\_FILE function. You can use this function to tell MySQL to “read in” the contents of a given file as a string. Note that the contents of the file must be smaller than the MySQL variable max\_allowed\_packet. The syntax for the LOAD\_FILE function calls for you to provide the full path and filename. The function will return NULL if you don’t have permission to read the file from the operating system. Examples of successful and failed usage of the LOAD\_FILE function look like this:

```
SELECT LOAD_FILE('/home/suehring/testfile.txt');
SELECT LOAD_FILE('/etc/shadow');
```

The results of these examples appear in Figure 9-51.

**Note**

You must have the FILE privilege before you can use the LOAD\_FILE function. In addition, you must have appropriate permissions to work with the file itself.



A screenshot of a PuTTY terminal window titled "192.168.1.75 - PuTTY". The window displays several MySQL queries and their results. The queries include IF, IFNULL, and ISNULL functions, as well as the LOAD\_FILE function. The results show the expected output for each query, such as 'Yes' or 'it is null'. The terminal window has a dark background and light-colored text.

```
mysql> SELECT IF(1+1=2,'Yes','No');
+ IF(1+1=2,'Yes','No') +
| Yes
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT IFNULL(NULL,'it is null');
+ IFNULL(NULL,'it is null') +
| it is null
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT IFNULL('notnull','it is null');
+ IFNULL('notnull','it is null') +
| notnull
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT ISNULL('it is not null');
+ ISNULL('it is not null') +
| 0
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT ISNULL(NULL);
+ ISNULL(NULL) +
| 1
+-----+
1 row in set (0.01 sec)

mysql>
```

**Figure 9-51:** A successful and failed use of the LOAD\_FILE function

## Other functions with the SELECT statement

Some functions in MySQL don't fall into any specific category (such as a string or numerical). Table 9-5 lists some of those functions.

**Table 9-5**  
**Other functions with the SELECT statement**

| <b>Function</b>  | <b>Description</b>   |
|------------------|--|
| DATABASE()       | Returns the name of the current database.  |
| ENCRYPT(S, salt) | Encrypt string, S, using optional salt.  |
| IF(T, R1, R2)    | Just like a normal IF statement, runs a test, T and returns value R1 if true or value R2 if false. |
| IFNULL(R1, R2)   | If R1 is not NULL, return R1, else return R2.  |
| ISNULL(E)        | Returns 1 if expression, E, is NULL.   |
| LAST_INSERT_ID() | Returns the value of the last ID inserted, useful with auto_increment columns.                     |
| MD5(S)           | Returns an MD5 sum for string, S.  |
| PASSWORD(S)      | Returns an encrypted string, S. Similar to the passwd command.                                     |
| VERSION()        | Returns the current version of the MySQL server.   |

As you can see from Table 9-5, these functions are really simple in their use. Most are specialized for use with a particular application or task. Here are examples for some of these functions (with results shown in Figure 9-52):

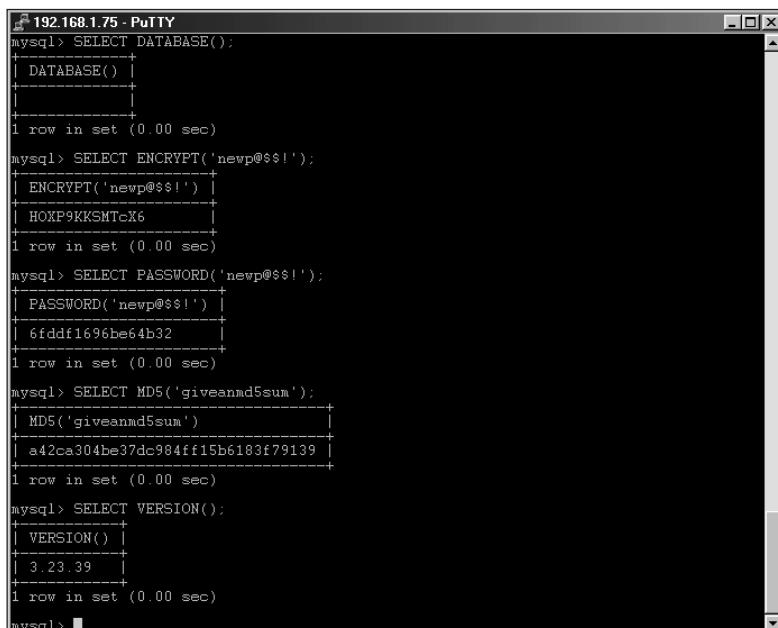
```
SELECT DATABASE();
SELECT ENCRYPT('newp@$#!');
SELECT PASSWORD('newp@$#!');
SELECT MD5('giveanmd5sum');
SELECT VERSION();
```

Notice the difference between the ENCRYPT and PASSWORD functions. Use the PASSWORD function to encrypt a password for use in the MySQL grant tables.

**Note**

Use the `PASSWORD` function to create a password entry for the user table of the MySQL grant tables.

A frequently asked question among MySQL users is how to determine the number of the last ID used on an `auto_increment` column. The `LAST_INSERT_ID()` function is for this purpose. Simply call `SELECT LAST_INSERT_ID()` as a statement and you will receive the ID of the last insert. The ID is valid only on a per-connection basis, so you will need to call this after the inserts in the same session.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "192.168.1.75 - PuTTY". It displays several MySQL commands and their results:

```
mysql> SELECT DATABASE();
+-----+
| DATABASE() |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT ENCRYPT('newp@$$!');
+-----+
| ENCRYPT('newp@$$!') |
+-----+
| HOXP9KKSMTcX6 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT PASSWORD('newp@$$!');
+-----+
| PASSWORD('newp@$$!') |
+-----+
| 6fdddf1696be64b32 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT MD5('giveanmd5sum');
+-----+
| MD5('giveanmd5sum') |
+-----+
| a42ca304be37dc984ff15b6183f79139 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

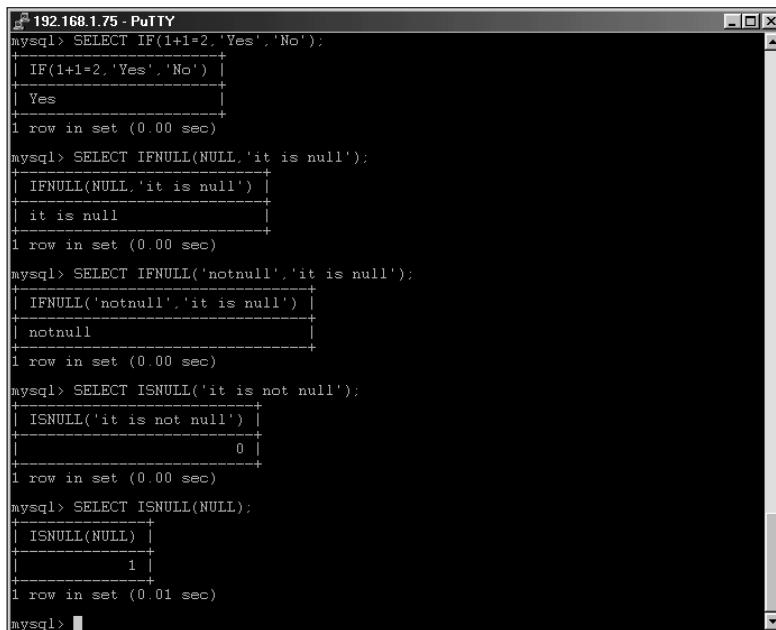
mysql> SELECT VERSION();
+-----+
| VERSION() |
+-----+
| 3.23.39 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>
```

**Figure 9-52:** Examples of various other functions in MySQL.

The `IF`, `ISNULL`, and `IFNULL` functions all perform tests and return a value based on the results of the test. The `IF` function runs a test on the first argument and returns the second value if the first expression is true; the function returns the final argument if the expression is false. The `IFNULL` function returns the second argument if the first argument is `NULL`, otherwise it returns the first argument. Finally, the `ISNULL` function returns 1 if the argument is `NULL` (otherwise the function returns 0). Here are some examples, with results shown in Figure 9-53:

```
SELECT IF(1+1=2,'Yes','No');
SELECT IFNULL(NULL,'it is null');
SELECT IFNULL('notnull','it is null');
SELECT ISNULL('it is not null');
SELECT ISNULL(NULL);
```



```

192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
mysql> SELECT IF(1+1=2,'Yes','No');
+-----+
| IF(1+1=2,'Yes','No') |
+-----+
| Yes
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT IFNULL(NULL,'it is null');
+-----+
| IFNULL(NULL,'it is null') |
+-----+
| it is null
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT IFNULL('notnull','it is null');
+-----+
| IFNULL('notnull','it is null') |
+-----+
| notnull
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT ISNULL('it is not null');
+-----+
| ISNULL('it is not null') |
+-----+
| 0
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT ISNULL(NULL);
+-----+
| ISNULL(NULL) |
+-----+
| 1
+-----+
1 row in set (0.01 sec)

mysql>

```

**Figure 9-53:** Functions to test an expression or whether a value is NULL

### Grouping, ordering, and limiting with SELECT

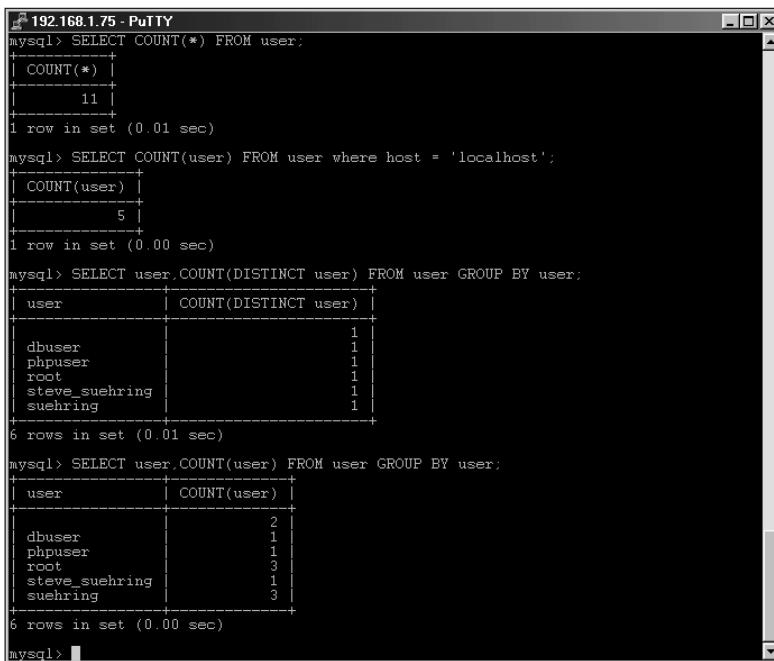
The SELECT statement enables powerful grouping and ordering functions that help to sort the results of the statements and thus make them more useful. Table 9-6 lists some grouping functions.

**Table 9-6**  
**Grouping functions with SELECT**

| <b>Function</b>   | <b>Definition</b>                                       |
|-------------------|---|
| COUNT(X)          | Returns a count of the results from expression, X.      |
| COUNT(DISTINCT X) | Returns the unique non-null results from expression, X. |
| AVG(X)            | Returns the average of expression, X.                   |
| MIN(X)            | Returns the minimum value of expression, X.             |
| MAX(X)            | Returns the maximum value of expression, X.             |
| SUM(X)            | Returns the sum of expression, X.                       |

I can show these functions best in the following examples; results are in Figure 9-54:

```
SELECT COUNT(*) FROM user;
SELECT COUNT(user) FROM user where host = 'localhost';
SELECT user,COUNT(DISTINCT user) FROM user GROUP BY user;
SELECT user,COUNT(user) FROM user GROUP BY user;
```



The screenshot shows a PuTTY terminal window titled "192.168.1.75 - PuTTY". It displays four MySQL queries and their results:

- Query 1: `SELECT COUNT(*) FROM user;` Result: 11 rows in set (0.01 sec)
- Query 2: `SELECT COUNT(user) FROM user where host = 'localhost';` Result: 5 rows in set (0.00 sec)
- Query 3: `SELECT user,COUNT(DISTINCT user) FROM user GROUP BY user;` Result:

| user           | COUNT(DISTINCT user) |
|----------------|----------------------|
| dbuser         | 1                    |
| phpuser        | 1                    |
| root           | 1                    |
| steve_suehring | 1                    |
| suehring       | 1                    |

6 rows in set (0.01 sec)
- Query 4: `SELECT user,COUNT(user) FROM user GROUP BY user;` Result:

| user           | COUNT(user) |
|----------------|-------------|
| dbuser         | 2           |
| phpuser        | 1           |
| root           | 3           |
| steve_suehring | 1           |
| suehring       | 3           |

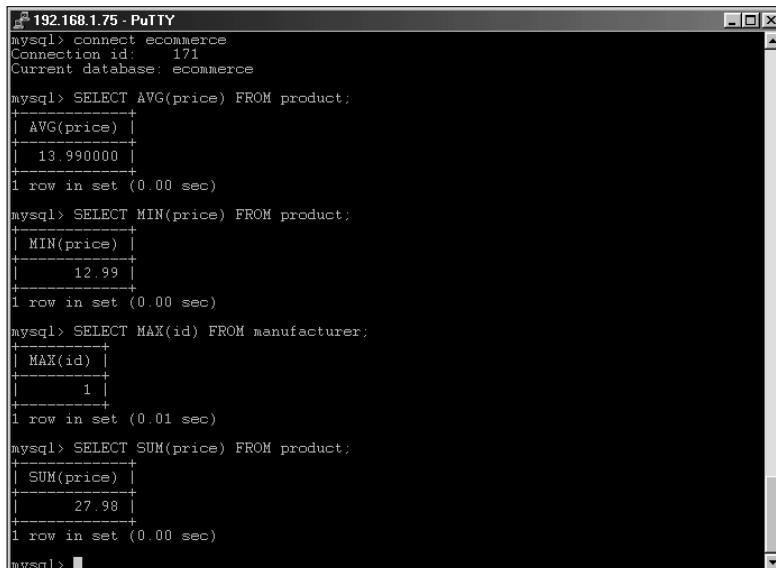
6 rows in set (0.00 sec)

**Figure 9-54:** Examples of the COUNT function for grouping the results from a query

The next set of examples comes from the ecommerce sample database that I've been working with in this chapter and throughout the book (results in Figure 9-55):

```
SELECT AVG(price) FROM product;
SELECT MIN(price) FROM product;
SELECT MAX(ID) FROM manufacturer;
SELECT SUM(price) FROM product;
```

Frequently I have to test a SELECT statement. For example, I might have the WHERE portion of the statement wrong, or a typo may crop up elsewhere in the statement. I also frequently work with fairly large tables that hold millions of records. Thus the LIMIT keyword has helped me countless times. Using LIMIT, I can set the SELECT statement to only return a subset of the results, thus potentially saving me from running a large and long query on a huge table.



The screenshot shows a PuTTY terminal window titled "192.168.1.75 - PuTTY". It displays several MySQL commands and their results:

```
mysql> connect ecommerce
Connection id: 171
Current database: ecommerce

mysql> SELECT AVG(price) FROM product;
+-----+
| AVG(price) |
+-----+
| 13.990000 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT MIN(price) FROM product;
+-----+
| MIN(price) |
+-----+
| 12.99 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT MAX(id) FROM manufacturer;
+-----+
| MAX(id) |
+-----+
| 1 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.01 sec)

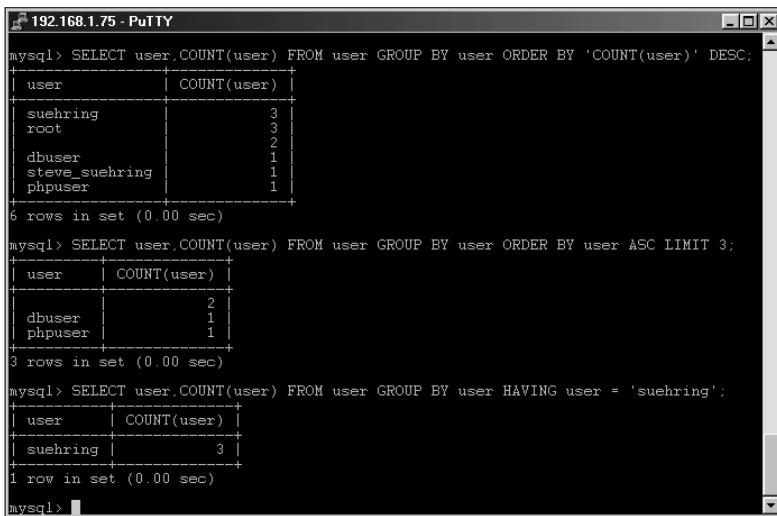
mysql> SELECT SUM(price) FROM product;
+-----+
| SUM(price) |
+-----+
| 27.98 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>
```

Figure 9-55: The results from some mathematical grouping functions

Looking at one of the previous COUNT examples, if you wanted to order the results you could use the ORDER BY function. The ORDER BY function can sort the results in either ascending or descending order through the use of the ASC or DESC keywords. In addition, you can use the HAVING keyword for even further parsing of results from a GROUP BY clause. I'll expand on some earlier examples here (and show the results in Figure 9-56):

```
SELECT user,COUNT(user) FROM user GROUP BY user ORDER BY
'COUNT(user)' DESC;
SELECT user,COUNT(user) FROM user GROUP BY user ORDER BY user
ASC LIMIT 3;
SELECT user,COUNT(user) FROM user GROUP BY user HAVING user =
'suehring';
```



```

192.168.1.75 - PuTTY

mysql> SELECT user,COUNT(user) FROM user GROUP BY user ORDER BY 'COUNT(user)' DESC;
+-----+-----+
| user | COUNT(user) |
+-----+-----+
| suehring | 3 |
| root | 3 |
|          | 2 |
| dbuser | 1 |
| steve_suehring | 1 |
| phpuser | 1 |
+-----+-----+
6 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT user,COUNT(user) FROM user GROUP BY user ORDER BY user ASC LIMIT 3;
+-----+-----+
| user | COUNT(user) |
+-----+-----+
|          | 2 |
| dbuser | 1 |
| phpuser | 1 |
+-----+-----+
3 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT user,COUNT(user) FROM user GROUP BY user HAVING user = 'suehring';
+-----+-----+
| user | COUNT(user) |
+-----+-----+
| suehring | 3 |
+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>

```

**Figure 9-56:** Using ORDER BY and HAVING to sort the results from queries

## Updating data with the UPDATE statement

I've been attempting to come up with a witty anecdote to begin this section and I cannot. It's certainly not that I don't like the UPDATE statement or that I don't believe it is useful. The UPDATE statement is really simple and intuitive, with only a few options. The equally simple truth is that the UPDATE statement is for making changes to existing records in the database. Its syntax looks like this:

```

UPDATE [LOW_PRIORITY] [IGNORE] tbl_name
    SET col_name1=expr1, [col_name2=expr2, ...]
    [WHERE where_definition]
    [LIMIT #]

```

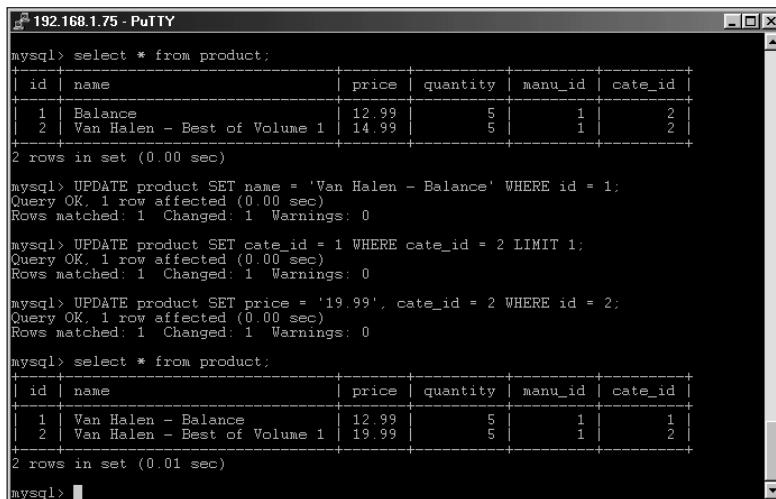
As does INSERT, the UPDATE statement includes the LOW\_PRIORITY and IGNORE keywords—and using these keywords has the exact same effects. The LOW\_PRIORITY keyword tells the UPDATE statement to wait until no other clients are reading from the table. The IGNORE statement causes any collisions in non-unique columns to be ignored (another similarity to the INSERT statement).

As with the SELECT statement, you can use a WHERE clause in the UPDATE statement to modify or drill down to the records you want to update. If you don't include a WHERE clause, you update all the records in the table. Another important similarity to SELECT is that you can use the LIMIT modifier to limit the number of records affected by the statement. Syntax examples follow (with results in Figure 9-57):

```

UPDATE product SET name = 'Van Halen - Balance' WHERE ID = 1;
UPDATE product SET cate_ID = 1 WHERE cate_ID = 2 LIMIT 1;
UPDATE product SET price = '19.99', cate_ID = 2 WHERE ID = 2;

```



```

192.168.1.75 - PuTTY

mysql> select * from product;
+----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| id | name           | price | quantity | manu_id | cate_id |
+----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| 1  | Balance        | 12.99 |      5    |     1    |     2    |
| 2  | Van Halen - Best of Volume 1 | 14.99 |      5    |     1    |     2    |
+----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
2 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> UPDATE product SET name = 'Van Halen - Balance' WHERE id = 1;
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.00 sec)
Rows matched: 1  Changed: 1  Warnings: 0

mysql> UPDATE product SET cate_id = 1 WHERE cate_id = 2 LIMIT 1;
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.00 sec)
Rows matched: 1  Changed: 1  Warnings: 0

mysql> UPDATE product SET price = '19.99', cate_id = 2 WHERE id = 2;
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.00 sec)
Rows matched: 1  Changed: 1  Warnings: 0

mysql> select * from product;
+----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| id | name           | price | quantity | manu_id | cate_id |
+----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| 1  | Van Halen - Balance | 12.99 |      5    |     1    |     1    |
| 2  | Van Halen - Best of Volume 1 | 19.99 |      5    |     1    |     2    |
+----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
2 rows in set (0.01 sec)

mysql>

```

**Figure 9-57:** A look at the product table prior to the UPDATE statements, the three UPDATE statements, and a look at the product table after the updates

## Delete

The `DELETE` statement can be used to delete specific records or the entire contents of tables; its syntax is as follows:

```

DELETE [LOW_PRIORITY | QUICK] FROM <tablename>
[WHERE where_clause]
[ORDER BY ...]
[LIMIT #]

```

or

```

DELETE [LOW_PRIORITY | QUICK] <tablename>[.*] [<tablename>[.*]
... ] FROM
tblereferences [WHERE where_clause]

```

I'll dispense with some syntactical commonalities among many of the DML statements. The `LOW_PRIORITY` keyword causes the `DELETE` to wait until no other clients are using the table. The `WHERE` clause tells the `DELETE` statement which records to delete. The `ORDER BY` clause determines the order by which the `DELETE` will occur. The `LIMIT` modifier causes the `DELETE` to only delete the specified number of rows. Though not common to other DML statements, the `QUICK` modifier can assist to speed up certain `DELETE` statements.

The `DELETE` statement has two versions. The first version of the `DELETE` statement simply deletes from one table. The second version of the `DELETE` statement enables deletion from multiple tables. I'll show a syntax example or two for each type of `DELETE`.

```
DELETE FROM example1 WHERE ID = 1;  
DELETE FROM example1 ORDER by ID LIMIT 1;  
DELETE example1,example2 FROM example1,example2,example3 WHERE  
example1.ID = example2.ID AND example2.ID = example3.ID;
```

In the last of these examples, any matching rows are deleted from the *example1* and *example2* tables only.

Showing my true System Administrator colors, I admit that my favorite action is performing deletes. Few ways of starting a day are more rewarding than removing a few hundred thousand records.

## Summary

MySQL includes a large number of commands and statements used for administration as well as performance tuning and informational purposes. These statements include the `SHOW`, `DESCRIBE`, and `KILL`.

- ◆ MySQL also includes most ANSI92 compatibility in the Data Definition Language (DDL) statements.
- ◆ MySQL extends the ANSI92 standard in some DDL statements.
- ◆ As with DDL, MySQL features compatibility with most ANSI92 Data Markup Language (DML) statements.
- ◆ Like DDL, MySQL extends the ANSI92 standard in the area of DML.



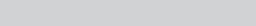
# Databases and Data

A database is primarily a tool for organizing data into an accessible and usable form. That may seem obvious, but some of questions I'm asked most frequently about are the brass-tacks of organizing data in MySQL database—choosing the right table type, importing and exporting data, and using the `mysqladmin` command to diagnose database problems correctly.

Choosing the right table type is important; different applications may benefit from particular table types. Importing data into MySQL from other applications (such as Microsoft Access or Oracle) is a frequent task facing administrators migrating to MySQL. Finally, using the `mysqladmin` command successfully is an important part of working with a MySQL server. This chapter examines all these subjects in detail.

## Choosing the Right MySQL Table Type

A *table type* is one of various sets of characteristics that you can apply to a database table in MySQL—usually for a specialized purpose, even though the appearance of MySQL tables may be similar from type to type. Just as you could use a kitchen table to perform surgery, or a picnic table as a desk, you could use a MySQL table for a purpose other than that for which it's designed—but why?



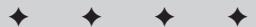
### In This Chapter

Introducing the MySQL table types

Fine-tuning the syntax when using the `mysqladmin` command

Exporting data from MySQL databases

Importing data into MySQL databases



**Tip**

All MySQL table types store data – but there's usually a *best* type for any application.

This section examines the table types supported in MySQL. With a solid understanding of the available table types, you're better equipped to choose the correct table type for your application.

## MySQL table types

The six types of MySQL tables are best considered as three groups for the sake of compatibility:

♦ **Non-transactional tables.** For many applications, non-transactional table types will be sufficient and will use fewer resources than transactional tables. For example, an online catalog, customer database, application database, and many other applications can utilize non-transactional tables successfully. The default table type in MySQL is the non-transactional MyISAM type. MyISAM is the table type of choice for nearly all applications. The three non-transactional table types are

- ISAM
- HEAP

The HEAP type is stored in volatile memory. If you are using a HEAP table type and MySQL crashes or is shut down, all data in the table is lost! However, the HEAP table type is fast, making it a good choice for temporary tables.

- MyISAM

Based on the ISAM table type, MyISAM is the default for MySQL.

♦ **MERGE tables.**

The MERGE table type is a special extension of the MyISAM table.

♦ **Transaction-safe (transactional) tables.** Transactional tables can combine statements and then commit or roll them back if some fail. Transactional tables are much safer in the event of MySQL or system crashes. These two table types are

- InnoDB
- BerkeleyDB

The table types you can use depend on the version of MySQL installed on your server. Some table types weren't available in earlier versions of MySQL. Further, the tables available follow these general rules:

♦ If you compiled MySQL from source code, you had the option to choose table types during the compilation process.

- ◆ If you installed MySQL from a binary version, you may or may not have transactional tables included. The MySQL-MAX version includes both InnoDB and BerkeleyDB. Some MySQL versions specific to flavors of Linux such as Debian include BerkeleyDB.



Chapter 2 reviews the advantages of transactional and non-transactional tables.

**Tip**

Running the `mysqladmin variables` command outputs quite a bit of information so you may need to pipe the output to a pager such as *more* or *less*.

Figure 10-1 shows the output for the command `mysqladmin -p variables`. I check for the lines that indicate whether BerkeleyDB and InnoDB tables are enabled. Figure 10-1 shows that only BerkeleyDB is available on this server. Therefore, I must use one of two approaches to choosing a table type:

- ◆ I can choose BerkeleyDB.
- ◆ Since non-transactional tables are available by default I can choose non-transactional tables, such as
  - ISAM
  - MyISAM
  - HEAP

A screenshot of a terminal window titled "MySQL". The window displays the output of the command `mysqladmin -p variables`. The output is a table of MySQL variables and their values. The variables listed are: delayed\_queue\_size (value 1000), flush (value OFF), flush\_time (value 0), have\_bdb (value YES), have\_gemini (value NO), have\_innodb (value DISABLED), have\_isam (value YES), and have\_raid (value NO). The terminal window has a scroll bar on the right side. At the bottom left, it says "Line 24".

|                    |          |
|--------------------|----------|
| delayed_queue_size | 1000     |
| flush              | OFF      |
| flush_time         | 0        |
| have_bdb           | YES      |
| have_gemini        | NO       |
| have_innodb        | DISABLED |
| have_isam          | YES      |
| have_raid          | NO       |

**Figure 10-1:** Using the `mysqladmin -p variables` command to determine whether InnoDB or BerkeleyDB tables are supported

Figure 10-2 shows the output of the mysqladmin variables command on a server where both the BerkeleyDB and InnoDB tables enabled.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "192.168.1.1 - PuTTY". The output of the mysqladmin variables command is displayed in a table format:

|             |     |
|-------------|-----|
| flush       | OFF |
| flush_time  | 0   |
| have_bdb    | YES |
| have_gemini | NO  |
| have_innodb | YES |
| have_isam   | YES |
| have_raid   | NO  |

line 24

**Figure 10-2:** The mysqladmin variables command on a server with both BerkeleyDB and InnoDB tables enabled

## MyISAM

The default table type for tables created in MySQL is MyISAM. The MyISAM table type is an extension of the ISAM table type.

**Note**

The MyISAM table type will eventually replace the ISAM table type. In a future version of MySQL, the ISAM table type will no longer be offered.

MyISAM uses a B-tree index type and compresses indexes whenever possible. For string-based indexes such as those on CHAR and VARCHAR columns, MyISAM tables space-compress the index. To use compressed numeric-based indexes add PACK\_KEYS=1 in the process of creating the table.

Tables can be damaged by a system crash, a crash of the MySQL server, or any number of unforeseen events. If queries fail to return complete results or other unexplained errors occur, the table may need repair. Corrupt or broken MyISAM tables can be repaired with the `myisamchk` command.



Chapter 13 shows how to repair broken tables and solve other MySQL problems.

There are three table formats for MyISAM tables:

- ◆ Static
- ◆ Dynamic
- ◆ Compressed

MySQL chooses Static or Dynamic table formats automatically when you create the table. The Compressed table format must be created manually through the use of the `myisampack` utility.

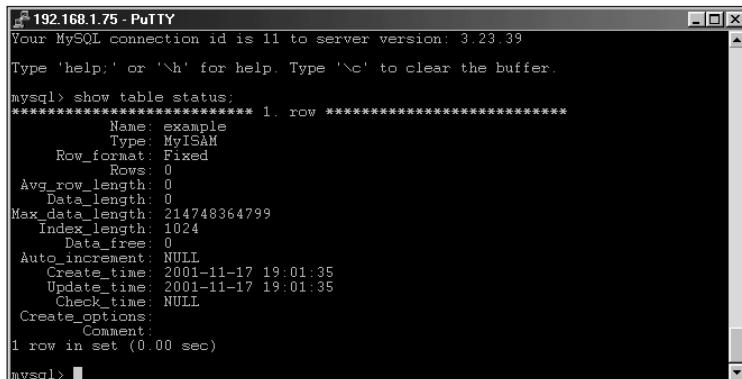
### Static format

The Static table format is the default and is used when there are no variable-length column types in the table such as `VARCHAR` or `BLOB`. If variable-length columns are used, MySQL will choose the Dynamic format for the table.

An example of a table definition looks like this as follows:

```
CREATE TABLE example (id int(5) NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,
    name char(25),
    title char(20)
);
```

In the preceding example table, all columns are fixed length as shown by the `SHOW TABLE STATUS` statement in Figure 10-3.



The screenshot shows a PuTTY terminal window titled "192.168.1.75 - PuTTY". The command `SHOW TABLE STATUS` is run, and the output is displayed. The table `example` is listed with the following details:

| Column          | Value               |
|-----------------|---------------------|
| Name            | example             |
| Type            | MyISAM              |
| Row_format      | Fixed               |
| Rows            | 0                   |
| Avg_row_length  | 0                   |
| Data_length     | 0                   |
| Max_data_length | 214748364799        |
| Index_length    | 1024                |
| Data_free       | 0                   |
| Auto_increment  | NULL                |
| Create_time     | 2001-11-17 19:01:35 |
| Update_time     | 2001-11-17 19:01:35 |
| Check_time      | NULL                |
| Create_options  |                     |
| Comment         |                     |

**Figure 10-3:** The `SHOW TABLE STATUS` command reveals that the table is in Fixed row format.

Static tables have two advantages:

- ◆ With the exception of volatile-memory table types such as HEAP, the Static table format is the fastest of the three MyISAM options because its columns are a uniform size. For example, a `CHAR` column is padded with extra whitespace characters to bring the column up to the defined size; a `VARCHAR` column is not padded with extra characters. Since the column is always the same size, MySQL can sort through the data quicker as it knows that the column is a constant length regardless of the size of the data held within the column.
- ◆ Padding of fields to the same size makes Static tables safer. The repair utility `myisamchk` can easily predict the boundaries of columns in a row.

**Caution**

The trade-off for `Static` table speed is *disk space*. Because each record must be padded with characters to bring it to the defined length, each row consumes the maximum defined disk space, even if the actual data is short. Of course, if each record is exactly same fixed length as the definition there is no additional disk space consumption with a `Static` table.

### Dynamic format

Dynamic tables minimize disk-space usage because the size of the table depends on the actual size of the data.

**Note**

Bytes are stored for each column in a `Dynamic` table to keep track of the length of the data.

If you perform an `UPDATE` on a data record, the updated data may actually be stored in a different location in the datafile. For example, if you insert a value into a column such as an address and then update that address to a much longer address, the updated column may actually be stored in a different location or fragmented away from the rest of the record. This fragmentation can be repaired with the `myisamchk` utility.

Moving fixed-length or static data columns into another table may accelerate those tables, if it is possible and reasonable to organize your data this way. You should determine whether fragmentation or variable-length columns adversely affects performance enough to warrant dividing the tables. To accomplish this, compare the number of variable-length columns in the table to the number of static length columns. If an index relies on static columns, it may be beneficial to move the variable-length column to another table. However, moving the variable-length column to another table can add overhead as that table is joined with the original table.

**Caution**

`Dynamic` tables can be more difficult for MySQL to repair after a crash. Because updates to the data can cause fragmentation, some pieces of a record may be lost when repairing the table. `Static` table repairs are easier because all columns are of the same defined length.

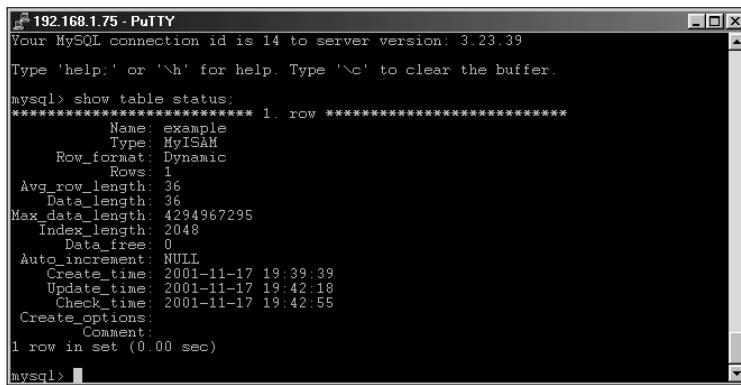
Using the following `ALTER TABLE` statement, I have altered the example table definition shown previously in this section.

```
ALTER TABLE example MODIFY name varchar(10);
```

**Note**

Changing one column from `CHAR` to `VARCHAR` changes all `CHAR` columns to the variable-length `VARCHAR` format.

Running the `SHOW TABLE STATUS` statement again as shown in Figure 10-4 shows the row format is now `Dynamic` (one or more columns in the table is now a variable-length type).



```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
Your MySQL connection id is 14 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> show table status;
***** 1. row *****
  Name: example
    Type: MyISAM
  Row_format: Dynamic
    Rows: 1
Avg_row_length: 36
  Data_length: 36
Max_data_length: 4294967295
  Index_length: 2048
    Data_free: 0
Auto_increment: NULL
  Create_time: 2001-11-17 19:39:39
  Update_time: 2001-11-17 19:42:18
  Check_time: 2001-11-17 19:42:55
Create_options:
Comment:
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>
```

**Figure 10-4:** The SHOW TABLE STATUS statement now shows the row format has changed due to the alteration of the table definition.

## Compressed format

Compressed tables are read-only. Because they are read-only, Compressed tables are good for rarely changed data—and they take up little disk space. For example, a library may have reference material sorted in a database. The book titles, authors, and other information are static. Taking such information and storing it in a compressed table in a database saves disk space thus enabling the library to store a huge amount of data at a lower cost.

Compressed tables are compressed with the `myisampack` utility. Compressed tables can be either Static or Dynamic and can be unpacked with the `myisamchk` command.



### Note

Compressed tables cannot have BLOB or TEXT column types.

## MyISAM variables

There are a number of variables and parameters that can change the behavior of MyISAM tables. The variables and parameters control things like

- ◆ Automatic recovery of crashed tables
- ◆ Size of buffers and caches
- ◆ How indexes are created



### Tip

To determine the current values for the variables and parameters, use the `mysqladmin variables` command, as shown in Figure 10-5.

```
| myisam_recover_options | OFF
| myisam_max_extra_sort_file_size | 256
| myisam_max_sort_file_size | 2047
| myisam_sort_buffer_size | 8388608
| net_buffer_length | 1024
| net_read_timeout | 30
| net_retry_count | 10
| net_write_timeout | 60
line 66
```

**Figure 10-5:** The default values for four of the MyISAM table variables and parameters

**Note**

You may see a slightly different value for the options shown in Figure 10-5 depending on the version of MySQL you’re using and the architecture the server is running on.

The variables and parameters can be set two ways:

- ◆ On the command line when starting the MySQL server process
- ◆ Inside a configuration file (such as `/etc/my.cnf` in Linux)

MySQL can be configured to repair MyISAM tables automatically at startup. When a table is closed, MySQL sets a value in the header of the .MYI database file. If this value indicates that the table was not closed properly, a table repair is necessary. Using the `myisam-recover` variable, you can control if and how an automatic repair is performed. The `myisam-recover` variable accepts any combination of four parameters:

`DEFAULT` Setting the option value to `DEFAULT` is the same as simply using `myisam-recover` with no option.

`BACKUP` Using `BACKUP` creates a backup of the datafile (identified with the `.BAK` extension) to prevent loss of data during recovery.

`FORCE` The `FORCE` option repairs the table, regardless of how many rows are lost.

`QUICK` This option attempts only to repair the index. The `QUICK` option can only be used in conjunction with the `skip-locking` server parameter.

**Caution**

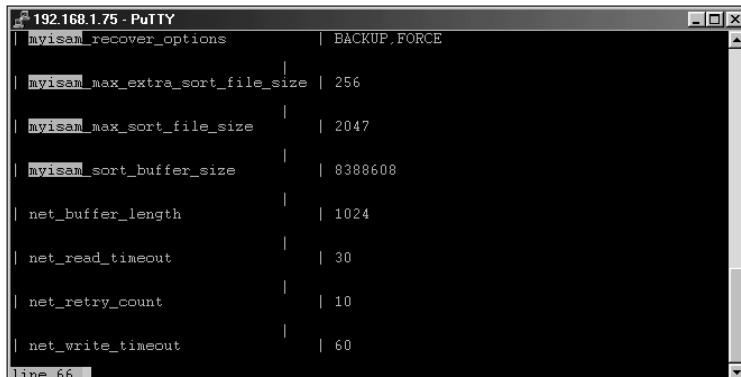
If you are going to use the `FORCE` option it is a good idea to use the `BACKUP` option to prevent unforeseen data loss.

In Figure 10-5, the value of `myisam-recover-options` indicates that there are no options set for recovery in the example. When a table is opened with the `myisam-recover` variable set, MySQL checks the table to make sure it was closed properly.

You can set options either with `myisam-recover` on the command line (as the server is started), or in a configuration file. For example, to use the `BACKUP` and `FORCE` options with `myisam-recover` I add the following line to the `[mysqld]` section of the `/etc/my.cnf` file in Linux.

```
myisam-recover = BACKUP, FORCE
```

After adding the preceding line to the `my.cnf` configuration file and restarting the server the `mysqladmin variables` command reflects the change, as shown in Figure 10-6.



| Variable                                     | Value                      |
|--|----------------------------|
| <code>myisam_recover_options</code>          | <code>BACKUP, FORCE</code> |
| <code>myisam_max_extra_sort_file_size</code> | <code>256</code>           |
| <code>myisam_max_sort_file_size</code>       | <code>2047</code>          |
| <code>myisam_sort_buffer_size</code>         | <code>8388608</code>       |
| <code>net_buffer_length</code>               | <code>1024</code>          |
| <code>net_read_timeout</code>                | <code>30</code>            |
| <code>net_retry_count</code>                 | <code>10</code>            |
| <code>net_write_timeout</code>               | <code>60</code>            |

**Figure 10-6:** Using the `BACKUP` and `FORCE` automatic recovery options as shown by the `mysqladmin variables` command

**Note**

Some versions of MySQL may show different values for the variables shown in Figure 10-6.

**Note**

MySQL makes a backup file when using the `BACKUP` option. This `BACKUP` file can be the same size as the table file.

Another option used when recovering tables is `myisam_sort_buffer_size`. This option controls how large the buffers should be for recovery. Set this variable either on the command line using `-O myisam_sort_buffer_size=` or inside a configuration file, using a `set-variable` line in the `[mysqld]` section.

A couple of options deal with indexes and MyISAM tables. These options include `myisam_max_extra_sort_file_size` and `myisam_max_sort_file_size`. The options control how to create indexes and when to use other methods to create them. Both options are set on the command line or in the configuration file with a set-variable option.

## MERGE

The MERGE table type is a relative newcomer to MySQL. A MERGE table is a collection of identical MyISAM tables grouped together as if they were one table. Only certain operations are allowed with MERGE tables, such as

- ◆ SELECT
- ◆ INSERT
- ◆ DELETE
- ◆ UPDATE



**Caution** The MyISAM tables must contain the same column definitions and layout. If the tables are not defined exactly the same, you cannot create a MERGE table.

MERGE tables speed up operations when identical tables need to be joined. However, creating a MERGE table also increases the number of File Descriptors needed. If you have multiple tables with the same layout where you would normally be performing a JOIN on the tables, a MERGE table can be beneficial.



**Caution** As of this writing, performing a `DROP TABLE` or a `DELETE FROM` with no WHERE specification on a MERGE table only drops or deletes the MERGE table specification, not the data contained in the merged tables.

To create a MERGE table, use the following syntax:

```
CREATE TABLE <tablename> (<column definitions>) TYPE=MERGE  
UNION=(<tablename>,<tablename>...) INSERT_METHOD=<LAST|NO>
```

If you do not specify an `INSERT_METHOD` or set the `INSERT_METHOD` to `NO`, you can't perform an `INSERT` on the newly created table.

## ISAM

Though ISAM tables will be disappearing from MySQL, some older or legacy databases still use them.



**Tip** Use MyISAM for new databases.

As with MyISAM tables, ISAM tables use a B-tree index and can compress keys to save on space. ISAM tables can be repaired with the `isamchk` utility.



ISAM tables are dependent upon the architecture or OS in which they are created. For example, datafiles of an ISAM table running on an Alpha processor can't be moved or copied to a computer running an x86-type processor.

## HEAP

HEAP-type tables exist only in *volatile memory*. When the MySQL server dies for any reason, all existing HEAP tables die—along with any data they contained. Because they reside in memory only, HEAP tables are useful for temporary tables and are fast.



Think of a HEAP table much like a RAM drive. The RAM drive exists only in memory and is therefore fast—but the contents of the drive go away as soon as the machine is turned off.



Don't store any permanent data in a HEAP table!

HEAP tables are different enough from other tables that knowing their characteristics may help you avoid misusing them. For instance, HEAP tables do not support `auto_increment` columns, nor do HEAP tables support BLOB or TEXT column types.



Because a HEAP table stores data in RAM, one HEAP table can potentially use all the available memory in your system! To prevent such excess, you can create the table with the `MAX_ROWS` modifier or you can control the maximum size for the table through the `max_heap_table_size` server variable.

Using the `mysqladmin variables` command, I note the default `max_heap_table_size` value of 16777216 for the MySQL server, as shown in Figure 10-7.

|                      |            |
|----------------------|------------|
| max_connections      | 100        |
| max_connect_errors   | 10         |
| max_delayed_threads  | 20         |
| max_heap_table_size  | 16777216   |
| max_join_size        | 4294967295 |
| max_sort_length      | 1024       |
| max_user_connections | 0          |
| max_tmp_tables       | 32         |

line 57

**Figure 10-7:** The default value for the `max_heap_table_size` determines how much memory a HEAP table can use.

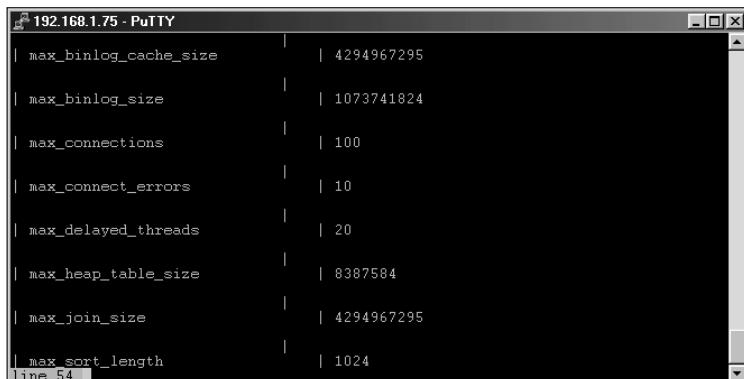
To change the value, edit the [mysqld] section of your MySQL server configuration file, /etc/my.cnf on some Linux flavors, and add the following (where X is the new value):

```
set-variable = max_heap_table_size=X
```

For example, I want to set the maximum memory usage for a HEAP table on my server to 8MB of RAM. I add the following to the /etc/my.cnf file:

```
set-variable = max_heap_table_size=8M
```

After restarting the MySQL server, I re-run the mysqladmin variables command, as shown in Figure 10-8.



| Variable              | Value      |
|-----------------------|------------|
| max_binlog_cache_size | 4294967295 |
| max_binlog_size       | 1073741824 |
| max_connections       | 100        |
| max_connect_errors    | 10         |
| max_delayed_threads   | 20         |
| max_heap_table_size   | 8387584    |
| max_join_size         | 4294967295 |
| max_sort_length       | 1024       |

**Figure 10-8:** Changing the default value for max\_heap\_table\_size in the MySQL server configuration file

## InnoDB

InnoDB is one of two native transactional tables included with MySQL (the other is Gemini, distributed with NuSphere Enhanced MySQL). InnoDB is not included with a normal MySQL binary distribution. To enable InnoDB, you must compile it in or use a MySQL-Max version of MySQL. Further, you must set at least one variable in the my.cnf file, the innodb\_data\_file\_path variable. The variable should be set under the [mysqld] section. Additional variables and parameters can be set to assist with performance of InnoDB tables.



NuSphere Enhanced MySQL is discussed in greater depth in Chapter 20.

InnoDB tables offer row-level locking and transactional features such as COMMIT and ROLLBACK. The advantage of such a table type is that you can prevent incomplete updates from writing or changing data in the event of a system crash or other

event. Additionally, InnoDB supports the use of Foreign Keys to protect referential integrity.

To create an InnoDB table you must specify Type = InnoDB with your CREATE TABLE statement. A syntax example follows:

```
CREATE TABLE example (
    id int,
    name varchar(30)
)
Type = InnoDB;
```

**Tip**

If you currently have MyISAM tables and want to convert them to InnoDB, the easiest method for doing so is simply to create an identical InnoDB table and then import or re-insert the data from the existing MyISAM table.

InnoDB tables have a number of limitations.

- ◆ You cannot have a BLOB or TEXT column type in an InnoDB table.
- ◆ Tables cannot have more than 1,000 columns.
- ◆ Unique indexes cannot be created on a prefix.

### InnoDB variables and parameters

A number of options can be set to boost the performance of InnoDB tables. All of these options should be set under the [mysqld] section of the configuration file. The innodb\_data\_file\_path must be set to InnoDB to be enabled. The syntax for this parameter is as follows:

```
innodb_data_file_path=<filename>:<size>
```

The <filename> parameter specifies the name of the InnoDB database. The <size> parameter is usually given with an M for Megabytes and must be at least ten megabytes (10M). Upon startup, MySQL creates a <filename> in the DATADIR of the MySQL installation in the size of <size> as specified in the configuration file. Additionally, logfiles are created in the DATADIR. The parameters can also be separated by semicolons to add more databases and can also be given relative paths. For example, to use two InnoDB databases located in a directory—innodb1 and innodb2, each 250 megabytes in size—use the following syntax:

```
innodb_data_file_path =
innodb1/database1:250M;innodb2/database2:250M
```

You can change the location of the data file and the logfiles with the parameters innodb\_data\_home\_dir and innodb\_log\_group\_home\_dir respectively. These options are also set in the [mysqld] section of the MySQL configuration file. The options expect paths as values. Any directories specified with the innodb\_data\_file\_path are relative from the standpoint of innodb\_data\_home\_dir. For

example, to set /usr/local/data/innodb as the path for the data, the syntax would be as follows:

```
innodb_data_home_dir = /usr/local/data/innodb
```

In the `innodb_data_file_path` example earlier, the data files for the two databases would be `/usr/local/data/innodb/innodb1` and `/usr/local/data/innodb/innodb2` respectively.

**Note**

Check to make sure that the directories you specify actually exist—and that MySQL has permission to access them.

InnoDB logfiles are rotated in a circular pattern. You can set the number of logfiles kept using the `innodb_log_files_in_group` variable. The default value is 2. Set this variable via the `set-variable` parameter in the MySQL configuration file or using the `-O` switch on the `mysqld` command line.

Another option affecting the logfiles of InnoDB tables is `innodb_log_file_size`. The `innodb_log_file_size` variable determines how large to make the logfiles. The bigger the value, the less disk activity is needed due to flushing. However, setting the value of `innodb_log_file_size` too large can cause recovery time to lengthen. The `innodb_log_file_size` value can be a maximum of 4 gigabytes for all logfiles combined.

The `innodb_log_buffer_size` variable controls how large the buffer should be prior to writing to the log. As with the `innodb_log_file_size`, a larger `innodb_log_buffer_size` value results in fewer disk operations. The maximum value for this variable is half the `innodb_log_file_size`.

Another variable that affects disk writes—and thus speed and performance—is `innodb_flush_log_at_trx_commit`. The default value for `innodb_flush_log_at_trx_commit` is 1. The value of 1 for this variable indicates that after every COMMIT, the transaction will be written to the logfile and thus made permanent. If you want to compromise this safety for speed, you can set the value for `innodb_flush_log_at_trx_commit` to 0.

Yet another variable to affect disk performance is the `innodb_buffer_pool_size` variable. Though it does not affect logging like the preceding variables, the `innodb_buffer_pool_size` affects how memory is used. With the `innodb_buffer_pool_size` variable, you tell the MySQL server how much memory to use when it caches table and index data. The larger you set this value, the more data and indexes can be cached in memory, which cuts down on disk operations. Be careful, however, not to set this value too large—if you do, the server may do so many paging or swap-to-disk operations that not enough physical memory is left for normal server processes. Windows-based servers, or other servers that “waste” resources to support a GUI, are especially prone to such memory shortages.

The `innodb_additional_mem_pool_size` defines the amount of memory that MySQL should use to store data dictionary information. MySQL AB recommends this value be two megabytes (2M). However, if you have a large number of tables, you may want to consider increasing this value.

An important variable to know about even though you may never need to change the default is `innodb_lock_wait_timeout`. In the event of a lock that the InnoDB handler cannot detect or clear, this variable automatically starts the process to roll the transaction back and release the lock.

## BerkeleyDB

BerkeleyDB (which you may see abbreviated as BDB) is another type of transactional table available in the AB version of MySQL. As with InnoDB, BerkeleyDB tables require additional support, which you can get in one of two ways:

- ◆ The MySQL MAX version of MySQL offers built-in support.
- ◆ You can compile support for BerkeleyDB tables into your version of MySQL if you are installing from source code.

Also as with InnoDB, BerkeleyDB also offers COMMIT and ROLLBACK for transactions. BerkeleyDB is, however, available on only a limited range of architectures:

- ◆ Linux on Intel
- ◆ Solaris on Sparc
- ◆ SCO OpenServer
- ◆ SCO UnixWare

Unlike InnoDB, BerkeleyDB requires no particular options be set to enable it.

## BerkeleyDB variables and parameters

As with InnoDB, some variables and parameters can be set for BerkeleyDB to affect the behavior of the tables.

- ◆ If you want to start the server without BerkeleyDB support, use the `--skip-bdb` parameter.
- ◆ To set the home directory for BerkeleyDB files use the `--bdb-home=<directory>` variable.
- ◆ The logfile directory for BerkeleyDB tables is set with the `--bdb-logdir=<directory>` variable.
- ◆ The temporary directory is set with the `--bdb-tempdir=<directory>`.

- ◆ Other options to change the behavior are the `--bdb-nosync` and `--bdb-no-recover` parameters. These options affect the recovery of BerkeleyDB tables.
- ◆ To change the locking behavior, the `set-variable` (or `-O` if on the command line) `bdb_max_lock=N` should be set. This variable controls the maximum number of locks available for BerkeleyDB tables. For example, within the `[mysqld]` section of the MySQL configuration file you would place:

```
set-variable = bdb_max_lock=N
```

- ◆ The `--bdb-lock-detect=X` parameter sets how MySQL works with locks on tables. Valid values for X are

- DEFAULT
- OLDEST
- YOUNGEST
- RANDOM

**Note**

The variables and parameters can be set on the `mysqld` command line or in the MySQL configuration file.

## Administering Your Database with mysqladmin

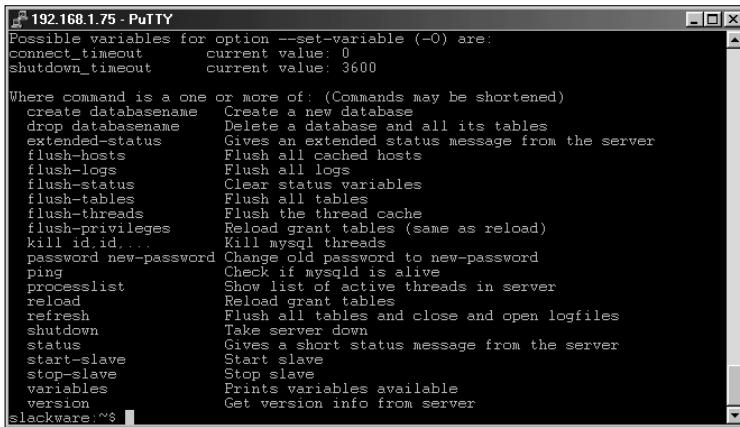
The `mysqladmin` command serves to perform administration tasks on MySQL databases and database servers. With the `mysqladmin` command you can create and delete databases, stop the server, kill threads, perform server maintenance, and examine server variables. Should you forget the syntax or usage of the `mysqladmin` command, you can always type `mysqladmin` with no arguments or with the `--help` or the `-?` switches and get a summary of the commands and syntax of the `mysqladmin` command. Part of the output from this help is shown in Figure 10-9.

### Common switches

Running the `mysqladmin` command with no arguments, you see a number of switches exactly like those used for the MySQL CLI command `mysql`. These options include the `-u` or `--user` switch, the `--password` or `-p` switch, the `--host` or `-h` switch, the `--port` switch, and the `-E` or `--vertical` switch.

**Cross-Reference**

Chapter 8 covers switches the same as the MySQL CLI.



```
Possible variables for option --set-variable (-O) are:
connect_timeout      current value: 0
shutdown_timeout     current value: 3600

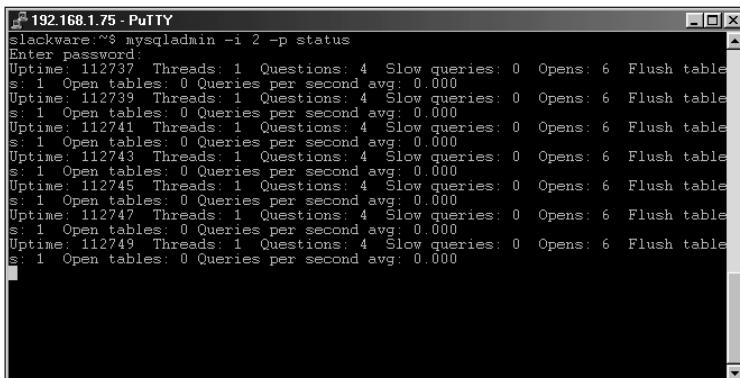
Where command is one or more of: (Commands may be shortened)
  create database      Create a new database
  drop database        Delete a database and all its tables
  extended-status      Gives an extended status message from the server
  flush-hosts          Flush all cached hosts
  flush-logs           Flush all logs
  flush-status         Clear status variables
  flush-tables         Flush all tables
  flush-threads        Flush the thread cache
  flush-privileges    Reload grant tables (same as reload)
  kill id,id...        Kill mysql threads
  password new-password Change old password to new-password
  ping                Check if mysqld is alive
  processlist          Show list of active threads in server
  reload              Reload grant tables
  refresh              Flush all tables and close and open logfiles
  shutdown             Take server down
  status               Gives a short status message from the server
  start-slave          Start slave
  stop-slave           Stop slave
  variables            Prints variables available
  version              Get version info from server
slackware ~$
```

**Figure 10-9:** Should you forget the commands or syntax of the mysqladmin command, you can simply type **mysqladmin** with no arguments and get a summary.

## Special switches

There are also switches specific to the mysqladmin command.

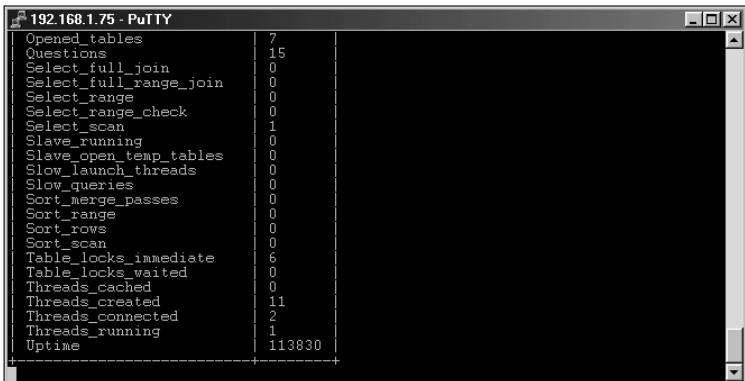
A switch that can be useful for monitoring MySQL performance is the **-i** or **-sleep=N** switch. Using this switch, you can set mysqladmin to rerun the specified command every *N* seconds. In Figure 10-10, I use the **-i** switch to run the mysqladmin status command every 2 seconds. As you can see, the server isn't busy but the example is still useful.



```
slackware ~$ mysqladmin -i 2 -p status
Enter password:
Uptime: 112737 Threads: 1 Questions: 4 Slow queries: 0 Opens: 6 Flush tables: 1 Open tables: 0 Queries per second avg: 0.000
Uptime: 112739 Threads: 1 Questions: 4 Slow queries: 0 Opens: 6 Flush tables: 1 Open tables: 0 Queries per second avg: 0.000
Uptime: 112741 Threads: 1 Questions: 4 Slow queries: 0 Opens: 6 Flush tables: 1 Open tables: 0 Queries per second avg: 0.000
Uptime: 112743 Threads: 1 Questions: 4 Slow queries: 0 Opens: 6 Flush tables: 1 Open tables: 0 Queries per second avg: 0.000
Uptime: 112745 Threads: 1 Questions: 4 Slow queries: 0 Opens: 6 Flush tables: 1 Open tables: 0 Queries per second avg: 0.000
Uptime: 112747 Threads: 1 Questions: 4 Slow queries: 0 Opens: 6 Flush tables: 1 Open tables: 0 Queries per second avg: 0.000
Uptime: 112749 Threads: 1 Questions: 4 Slow queries: 0 Opens: 6 Flush tables: 1 Open tables: 0 Queries per second avg: 0.000
slackware ~$
```

**Figure 10-10:** Using the **-i** switch, you can configure mysqladmin to run the specified command at regular intervals.

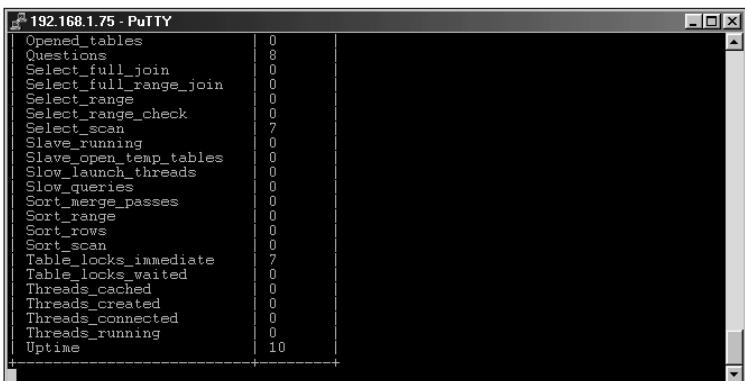
Another switch to use with the `mysqladmin` command is the `-r` or `--relative` switch. Using the `-r` switch together with the `extended-status` command, you can see the changes in the values provided by the `extended-status` command over the specified time interval. In Figure 10-11 you can see the initial run of the `extended-status` command. In Figure 10-12 you can see the next run after a 10-second interval has elapsed; note the `Uptime` is only 10 because 10 seconds have elapsed.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "192.168.1.75 - PuTTY". The output of the `mysqladmin extended-status -r` command is displayed. The table contains the following data:

| MySQL Status Variable  | Value  |
|------------------------|--------|
| Opened_tables          | 7      |
| Questions              | 15     |
| Select_full_join       | 0      |
| Select_full_range_join | 0      |
| Select_range           | 0      |
| Select_range_check     | 0      |
| Select_scan            | 1      |
| Slave_running          | 0      |
| Slave_open_temp_tables | 0      |
| Slow_launch_threads    | 0      |
| Slow_queries           | 0      |
| Sort_merge_passes      | 0      |
| Sort_range             | 0      |
| Sort_rows              | 0      |
| Sort_scan              | 0      |
| Table_locks_immediate  | 6      |
| Table_locks_waited     | 0      |
| Threads_cached         | 0      |
| Threads_created        | 11     |
| Threads_connected      | 2      |
| Threads_running        | 1      |
| Uptime                 | 113830 |

**Figure 10-11:** First output of the `mysqladmin extended-status` command with the `-r` switch for keeping track of relative values



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "192.168.1.75 - PuTTY". The output of the `mysqladmin extended-status -r` command is displayed. The table contains the following data:

| MySQL Status Variable  | Value |
|------------------------|-------|
| Opened_tables          | 0     |
| Questions              | 8     |
| Select_full_join       | 0     |
| Select_full_range_join | 0     |
| Select_range           | 0     |
| Select_range_check     | 0     |
| Select_scan            | 7     |
| Slave_running          | 0     |
| Slave_open_temp_tables | 0     |
| Slow_launch_threads    | 0     |
| Slow_queries           | 0     |
| Sort_merge_passes      | 0     |
| Sort_range             | 0     |
| Sort_rows              | 0     |
| Sort_scan              | 0     |
| Table_locks_immediate  | 7     |
| Table_locks_waited     | 0     |
| Threads_cached         | 0     |
| Threads_created        | 0     |
| Threads_connected      | 0     |
| Threads_running        | 0     |
| Uptime                 | 10    |

**Figure 10-12:** The second output of the `mysqladmin extended-status` command using the `-r` switch to track relative or changed values

**Note**

The `-r` or `--relative` switch currently only works with the `mysqladmin extended-status` switch.

## Functions with mysqladmin

I've shown quite a few examples of the `mysqladmin` command throughout the book. It's now time to examine the commands and functions that make the `mysqladmin` command so useful.

**Cross-Reference**

Chapter 8 on MySQL CLI explains adding the switches for specifying command line parameters such as `user (-u)` and `password (-p)`.

### Creating and dropping databases

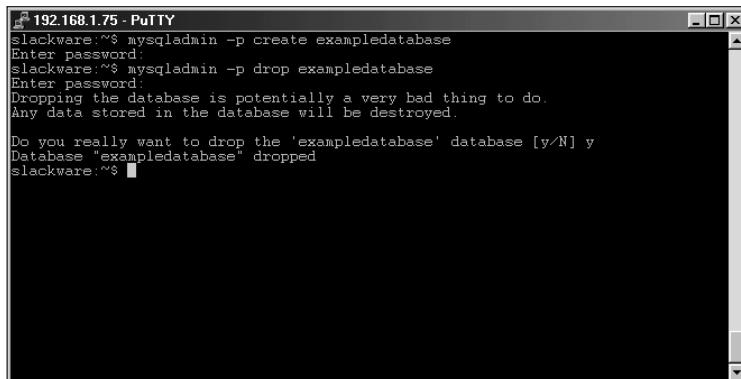
The `mysqladmin` command serves to create and drop or delete databases. The syntax for creating a database with the `mysqladmin` command is as follows:

```
mysqladmin create <database>
```

Similarly, the syntax for dropping a database is much the same:

```
mysqladmin drop <database>
```

In Figure 10-13, I create and drop a database. Notice the verification that precedes the actual deletion of the database.



The screenshot shows a PuTTY terminal window titled "192.168.1.75 - PuTTY". The session is running on a Slackware system. The user enters the command `mysqladmin -p create exampledatabase`, prompting for a password. Then, the user enters the command `mysqladmin -p drop exampledatabase`. A warning message appears: "Dropping the database is potentially a very bad thing to do. Any data stored in the database will be destroyed." The user is then prompted with "Do you really want to drop the 'exampledatabase' database [y/N]". The user types "y" and the database is dropped.

```
slackware:~$ mysqladmin -p create exampledatabase
Enter password:
slackware:~$ mysqladmin -p drop exampledatabase
Enter password:
Dropping the database is potentially a very bad thing to do.
Any data stored in the database will be destroyed.

Do you really want to drop the 'exampledatabase' database [y/N] y
Database "exampledatabase" dropped
slackware:~$
```

**Figure 10-13:** Creating and then dropping a database, using the `mysqladmin` command

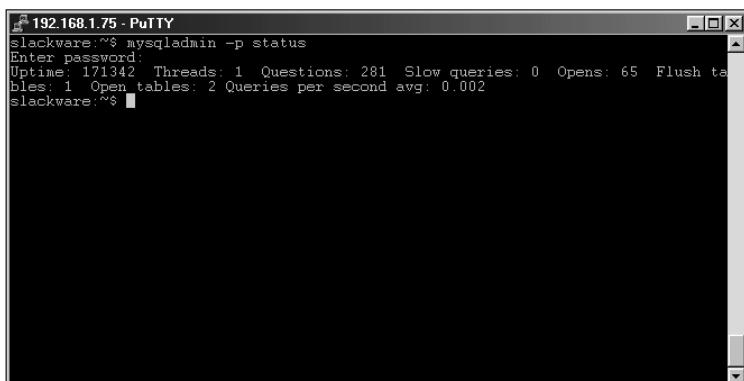
## Obtaining server status information

An important part of monitoring server performance and diagnosing problems is done by looking at the values of server parameters. A concise overview of many important server values is obtained using the functions in this section.

- ♦ **Status.** The `status` function returns a quick overview of some important server parameters:

- The `Uptime` parameter is the number of seconds the server has been running.
- The `Threads` column contains the quantity of the number of active clients or threads running or connected at the time.
- The value of `Questions` is the number of questions or statements that the MySQL server has received since startup.
- The `Slow queries` value indicates the number of times that a query has taken longer than the value set for a slow query. This value, `long_query_time`, can be set by the administrator and may be helpful in tuning the server.
- The `Opens` value indicates the total number of tables that MySQL has opened since startup.
- The `Flush tables` parameter indicates the number of times a `FLUSH`, `RELOAD`, or `REFRESH` statement has been executed.
- The `Open tables` value indicates the number of tables currently open.
- `Memory in use` indicates how much memory is currently allocated to `mysqld`.
- `Max memory used` indicates the maximum memory amount allocated to `mysqld`.

An example of the output from the `status` function is shown in Figure 10-14.



The screenshot shows a PuTTY terminal window titled "192.168.1.75 - PuTTY". The command entered is "mysqladmin -p status". The password was entered and then the command was run. The output shows various server statistics:

```
slackware:~$ mysqladmin -p status
Enter password:
Uptime: 171342 Threads: 1 Questions: 281 Slow queries: 0 Opens: 65 Flush ta
bles: 1 Open tables: 2 Queries per second avg: 0.002
slackware:~$
```

Figure 10-14: Output from the `mysqladmin status` command

- ◆ **Extended-status.** As you might expect, the extended-status function returns much more information about server parameters and performance than does the status function. When you tune server variables to get better performance from the MySQL server, the extended-status function is frequently useful.



Chapter 11 and Chapter 13 cover tuning your server parameters.

Figure 10-15 shows an example of part of the output from the extended-status function.

A screenshot of a Putty terminal window titled "192.168.1.75 - PuTTY". The command entered is "mysqladmin extended-status". The output is a table with two columns: "Variable\_name" and "Value". The table lists various MySQL performance metrics. A scroll bar is visible on the right side of the terminal window.

| Variable_name            | Value |
|--------------------------|-------|
| Aborted_clients          | 0     |
| Aborted_connects         | 47    |
| Bytes_received           | 12568 |
| Bytes_sent               | 89048 |
| Connections              | 121   |
| Created_tmp_disk_tables  | 0     |
| Created_tmp_tables       | 0     |
| Created_tmp_files        | 0     |
| Delayed_insert_threads   | 0     |
| Delayed_writes           | 0     |
| Delayed_errors           | 0     |
| Flush_commands           | 1     |
| Handler_delete           | 34    |
| Handler_read_first       | 16    |
| Handler_read_key         | 120   |
| Handler_read_next        | 57    |
| Handler_read_prev        | 0     |
| Handler_read_rnd         | 0     |
| Handler_read_rnd_next    | 1259  |
| Handler_update           | 25    |
| Handler_write            | 49    |
| Key_blocks_used          | 44    |
| Key_read_requests        | 311   |
| Key_reads                | 35    |
| Key_write_requests       | 163   |
| Key_writes               | 96    |
| Max_used_connections     | 2     |
| Not_flushed_key_blocks   | 0     |
| Not_flushed_delayed_rows | 0     |
| Open_tables              | 0     |
| Open_files               | 0     |
| Open_streams             | 0     |
| Opened_tables            | 68    |
| Questions                | 293   |
| Select_full_join         | 0     |
| Select_full_range_join   | 0     |
| More...                  |       |

**Figure 10-15:** Partial output from the mysqladmin extended-status command

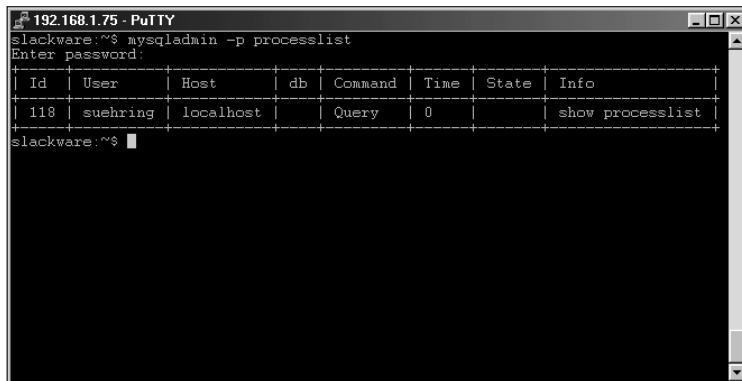
- ◆ **Processlist.** The processlist function lists the currently active or open connections to a MySQL server. These can be from applications, the CLI, other MySQL servers, or through any other communication with the MySQL server.

The eight columns in the processlist function output provide a snapshot of activity on the database server at the instant the command was run.

- The *Id* column is a counter of the connections to the database server and is incremented with each new connection.
- The *User* is the user performing the action.
- The *Host* is where the user's connection originated.

- A *db* column indicates whether the command or statement involved a database.
- The *Command* column indicates the type of command that was run.
- The *Time* column indicates the time of the connection.
- The *State* column indicates what the process is doing, from waiting, to opening connection, establishing communication, and so forth.
- The *Info* column shows what statement or command the process is running.

An example of the processlist function is shown in Figure 10-16.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "192.168.1.75 - PutTY". The command entered is "mysqladmin -p processlist". The output is as follows:

```
slackware:~$ mysqladmin -p processlist
Enter password:
+----+----+----+----+----+----+----+
| Id | User | Host | db | Command | Time | State |
+----+----+----+----+----+----+----+
| 118 | suehring | localhost | | Query | 0 | show processlist |
+----+----+----+----+----+----+----+
slackware:~$
```

**Figure 10-16:** The MySQL processlist function for use with the mysqladmin command

**Tip**

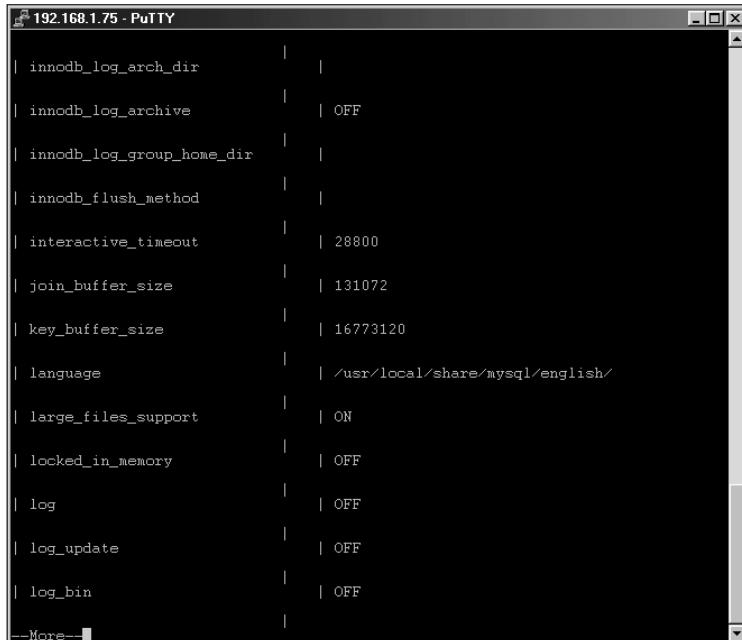
Using the processlist function I was able to troubleshoot a problem where a developer was opening multiple connections to the database and closing none of them. The clients would issue a command and then sit idle until they timed out. The server would reach its client connection limit quickly and start refusing legitimate connections. The processlist function showed that there were a number of connections from the application user and the connections remained open. By changing the connection\_timeout value and restarting the server, I was able to solve the problem. Without the processlist command troubleshooting this issue would have been difficult.

- ♦ **Variables.** The variables function outputs the various options and server parameters that the MySQL server operates with. These include parameters like

- Connection timeouts
- Types of tables included with the server

- Server version
- Sizes of caches and buffers

An example of the output from the `mysqladmin variables` command is shown in Figure 10-17. The command to reproduce this output is `mysqladmin variables`.



|                           |                                 |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------|
| innodb_log_arch_dir       |                                 |
| innodb_log_archive        | OFF                             |
| innodb_log_group_home_dir |                                 |
| innodb_flush_method       |                                 |
| interactive_timeout       | 28800                           |
| join_buffer_size          | 131072                          |
| key_buffer_size           | 16773120                        |
| language                  | /usr/local/share/mysql/english/ |
| large_files_support       | ON                              |
| locked_in_memory          | OFF                             |
| log                       | OFF                             |
| log_update                | OFF                             |
| log_bin                   | OFF                             |

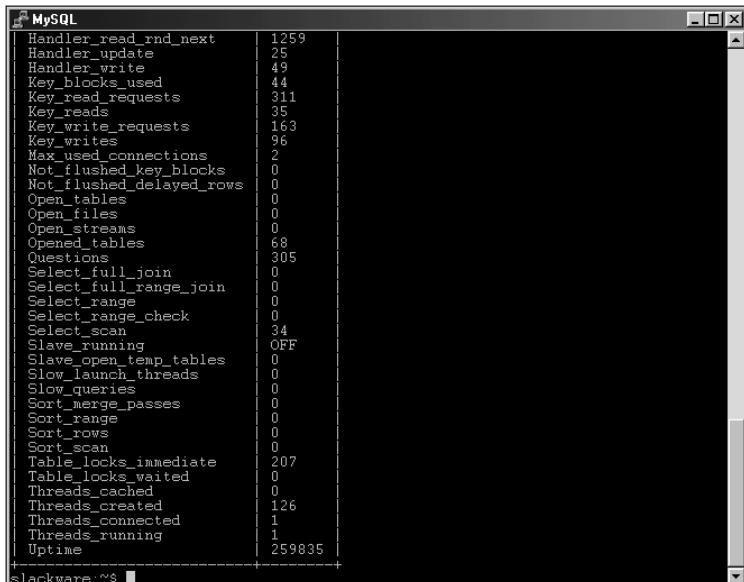
**Figure 10-17:** The output from the `mysqladmin variables` command shows the options that the MySQL server uses.

## Functions for clearing server parameters

The `mysqladmin` command provides numerous functions for flushing or clearing server parameters. The functions are as follows:

- ◆ **flush-hosts** This function clears the MySQL DNS host cache. By default MySQL stores the connecting hosts to IP resolution. If you change the host's DNS entry or a number of errors occur during a connection, the host may be blocked by MySQL. Performing a `mysqladmin flush-hosts` operation clears the DNS host cache and solves the problem.

- ◆ **flush-logs** MySQL also keeps a number of logfiles. These can include update logs and binary update logs. The `flush-logs` function purges logfiles and restarts the logging process. For update logs done with the standard numbering extension, the new logfile has the last logfile's extension incremented by one. The `flush-logs` function does not touch the error log, `<host-name>.err`, typically located in your data directory.
- ◆ **flush-status** This function takes `status` type variables and resets them to zero—useful for debugging server performance and parameters. Figure 10-18, for example, shows partial output from the `extended-status` function after I run the `flush-status` function. Figure 10-19 shows the results of another run of the `extended-status` function immediately after I run the `flush-status` function. The command to flush the status variables is `mysqladmin flush-status`.



A screenshot of a terminal window titled "MySQL". The window displays a table of server status parameters. The columns are labeled with parameter names and their corresponding values. The table includes rows for Handler types (Handler\_read\_rnd\_next, Handler\_update, Handler\_write), Key operations (Key\_blocks\_used, Key\_read\_requests, Key\_reads, Key\_write\_requests), Connection metrics (Max\_used\_connections, Questions), and various query and thread statistics. The "Uptime" row shows the server has been running for 259835 seconds. The bottom of the window shows the prompt "slackware:~\$".

|                          |        |
|--------------------------|--------|
| Handler_read_rnd_next    | 1259   |
| Handler_update           | 25     |
| Handler_write            | 49     |
| Key_blocks_used          | 44     |
| Key_read_requests        | 311    |
| Key_reads                | 35     |
| Key_write_requests       | 163    |
| Key_writes               | 96     |
| Max_used_connections     | 2      |
| Not_flushed_key_blocks   | 0      |
| Not_flushed_delayed_rows | 0      |
| Open_tables              | 0      |
| Open_files               | 0      |
| Open_streams             | 0      |
| Opened_tables            | 68     |
| Questions                | 305    |
| Select_full_join         | 0      |
| Select_full_range_join   | 0      |
| Select_range             | 0      |
| Select_range_check       | 0      |
| Select_scan              | 34     |
| Slave_running            | OFF    |
| Slave_open_temp_tables   | 0      |
| Slow_launch_threads      | 0      |
| Slow_queries             | 0      |
| Sort_merge_passes        | 0      |
| Sort_range               | 0      |
| Sort_rows                | 0      |
| Sort_scan                | 0      |
| Table_locks_immediate    | 207    |
| Table_locks_waited       | 0      |
| Threads_cached           | 0      |
| Threads_created          | 126    |
| Threads_connected        | 1      |
| Threads_running          | 1      |
| Uptime                   | 259835 |

**Figure 10-18:** A snapshot of server parameters prior to running the `mysqladmin flush-status` command

- ◆ **flush-tables** The `flush-tables` function should be used with care. This function closes any and all open tables. Even if a table is in use, the `flush-tables` function closes those as well. This can result in errors to the client. I've found that this function sometimes must be used on extremely busy servers that seem unresponsive to a shutdown command.

The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "MySQL" with a black background. It displays a table of server parameters. The table has two columns: the parameter name and its value. The parameters listed include Handler\_read\_rnd\_next, Handler\_update, Handler\_write, Key\_blocks\_used, Key\_read\_requests, Key\_reads, Key\_write\_requests, Key\_writes, Max\_used\_connections, Not\_flushed\_key\_blocks, Not\_flushed\_delayed\_rows, Open\_tables, Open\_files, Open\_streams, Opened\_tables, Questions, Select\_full\_join, Select\_full\_range\_join, Select\_range, Select\_range\_check, Select\_scan, Slave\_running, Slave\_open\_temp\_tables, Slow\_launch\_threads, Slow\_queries, Sort\_merge\_passes, Sort\_range, Sort\_rows, Sort\_scan, Table\_locks\_immediate, Table\_locks\_waited, Threads\_cached, Threads\_created, Threads\_connected, Threads\_running, and Uptime. The "Uptime" value is 259899. The bottom of the window shows the command "slackware:~\$".

|                          |        |
|--------------------------|--------|
| Handler_read_rnd_next    | 0      |
| Handler_update           | 0      |
| Handler_write            | 0      |
| Key_blocks_used          | 44     |
| Key_read_requests        | 0      |
| Key_reads                | 0      |
| Key_write_requests       | 0      |
| Key_writes               | 0      |
| Max_used_connections     | 0      |
| Not_flushed_key_blocks   | 0      |
| Not_flushed_delayed_rows | 0      |
| Open_tables              | 0      |
| Open_files               | 0      |
| Open_streams             | 0      |
| Opened_tables            | 0      |
| Questions                | 309    |
| Select_full_join         | 0      |
| Select_full_range_join   | 0      |
| Select_range             | 0      |
| Select_range_check       | 0      |
| Select_scan              | 0      |
| Slave_running            | OFF    |
| Slave_open_temp_tables   | 0      |
| Slow_launch_threads      | 0      |
| Slow_queries             | 0      |
| Sort_merge_passes        | 0      |
| Sort_range               | 0      |
| Sort_rows                | 0      |
| Sort_scan                | 0      |
| Table_locks_immediate    | 0      |
| Table_locks_waited       | 0      |
| Threads_cached           | 0      |
| Threads_created          | 128    |
| Threads_connected        | 1      |
| Threads_running          | 1      |
| Uptime                   | 259899 |

**Figure 10-19:** Another snapshot of server parameters immediately after the flush-status function

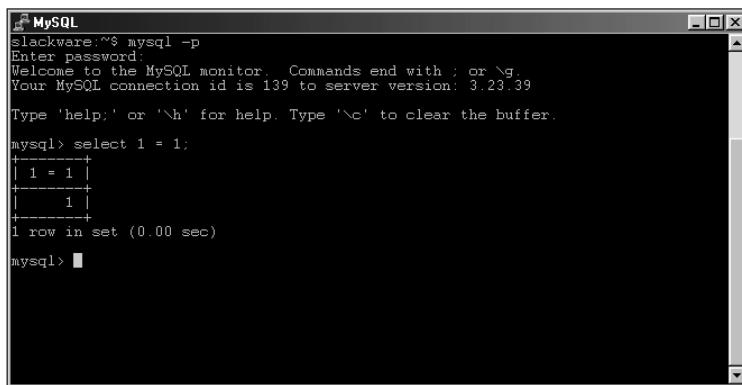
- ◆ **refresh** The refresh function is a combination of the flush-tables and flush-logs functions.
- ◆ **flush-privileges** A frequently used function, though maybe not via the mysqladmin command, is the flush-privileges function. The flush-privileges function causes the GRANTS tables to be reloaded, making MySQL aware of any changes to those tables. If statements working with those tables are done with a GRANT or REVOKE statement, using the flush-privileges function is unnecessary. However, if using any other SQL statement on any of the grants tables, you must flush-privileges or optionally reload the server.
- ◆ **reload** The reload function is a synonym for the flush-privileges function.

## Killing MySQL processes

The word *kill* sounds somewhat harsh, but this is the name of the function to terminate a client process or thread in the server. Using the mysqladmin processlist command, you can determine the id of a client or process that needs to be terminated. Issuing the mysqladmin kill function terminates that process. This does not stop the client from reconnecting; in fact, the CLI reconnects automatically.

Here's a simple example of the `kill` function:

1. Using the MySQL CLI, I connect to the MySQL CLI and issue a simple SELECT statement, as shown in Figure 10-20.



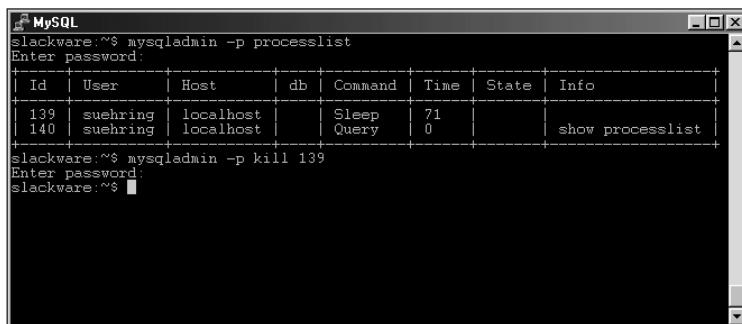
```
MySQL
slackware:~$ mysql -p
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor. Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 139 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> select 1 = 1;
+-----+
| 1 = 1 |
+-----+
| 1 |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>
```

**Figure 10-20:** Connecting to the MySQL CLI and performing a basic SELECT statement

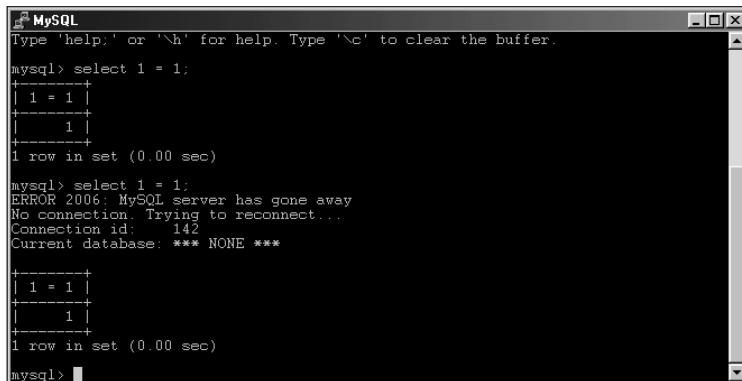
2. In Figure 10-21 I run the `mysqladmin processlist` command to determine the ID of the other client connection. As you can see it is 139 as shown by the `id` column of the output. Also in Figure 10-21 I issue the `mysqladmin kill` command to terminate the process.



```
MySQL
slackware:~$ mysqladmin -p processlist
Enter password:
+----+----+----+----+----+----+----+
| Id | User | Host | db | Command | Time | State |
+----+----+----+----+----+----+----+
| 139 | suehring | localhost | Sleep | 71 |       |
| 140 | suehring | localhost | Query | 0 | show processlist |
+----+----+----+----+----+----+----+
slackware:~$ mysqladmin -p kill 139
Enter password:
slackware:~$
```

**Figure 10-21:** Using the `mysqladmin processlist` and `mysqladmin kill` commands to terminate a client process

3. Finally, in Figure 10-22 I attempt to run the same SELECT statement as in Figure 10-20. Notice the Error message produced by the CLI.

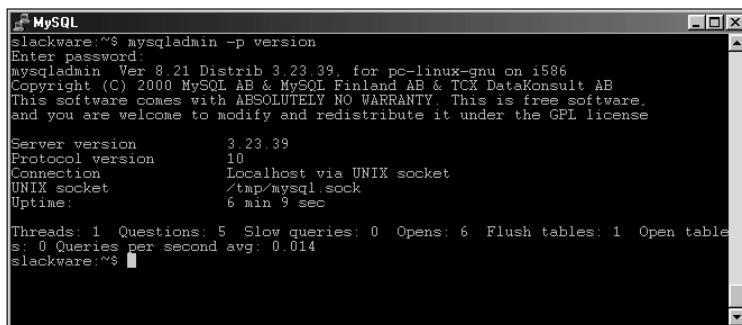


The screenshot shows a Windows-style application window titled "MySQL". Inside, a command-line interface is displayed. The user runs two SELECT statements: "select 1 = 1;". Both statements return a single row with the value "1". After the second statement, the user receives an error message: "ERROR 2006: MySQL server has gone away. No connection. Trying to reconnect...". The connection ID is 142, and the current database is "NONE". The user then runs another SELECT statement, which also returns a single row with the value "1". The entire session ends with the prompt "mysql>".

**Figure 10-22:** Issuing the same SELECT statement as in Figure 10-20 results in an error but the statement runs.

## Information functions

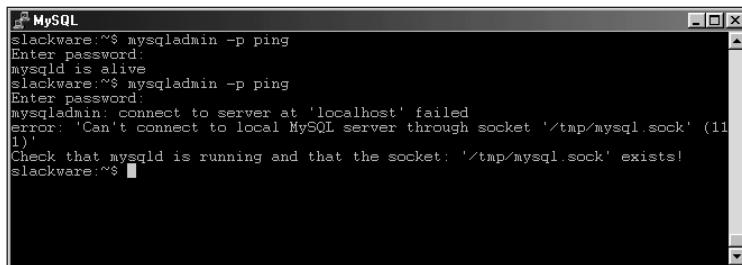
- ◆ The `version` function informs the user what version of the server is running along with some other pertinent information about the server, including status and uptime information. An example is shown in Figure 10-23.



The screenshot shows a terminal window on Slackware Linux. The user runs the command `mysqladmin -p version`. They are prompted for a password. The output shows the MySQL server version (3.23.39), distribution (pc-linux-gnu), copyright information from MySQL AB & MySQL Finland AB & Tcx DataKonsult AB, and a note about the software being free and redistributable under the GPL license. It also displays the server's protocol version (10), connection details (localhost via UNIX socket at /tmp/mysql.sock), and uptime (6 min 9 sec). At the bottom, performance statistics are shown: threads (1), questions (5), slow queries (0), opens (6), flush tables (1), open tables (0), and queries per second average (0.014). The session ends with the prompt "slackware:~\$".

**Figure 10-23:** Output from the `mysqladmin version` command shows the server version along with other useful information on server performance.

- ◆ The ping function simply tells the administrator whether the server, mysqld, is alive. If the server is not alive, the command returns an error. In Figure 10-24 I run the command on the server while it is running, then secretly stop the server in another window (see **Figure 10-26**) and re-run the ping function again.



```
MySQL
slackware:~$ mysqladmin -p ping
Enter password:
mysqld is alive
slackware:~$ mysqladmin -p ping
Enter password:
mysqladmin: connect to server at 'localhost' failed
error: 'Can't connect to local MySQL server through socket '/tmp/mysql.sock' (11
1)'
Check that mysqld is running and that the socket: '/tmp/mysql.sock' exists!
slackware:~$
```

**Figure 10-24:** The mysqladmin ping command in action. The first attempt is successful; the second fails because I shut the MySQL server down in another window.

## Changing passwords through mysqladmin

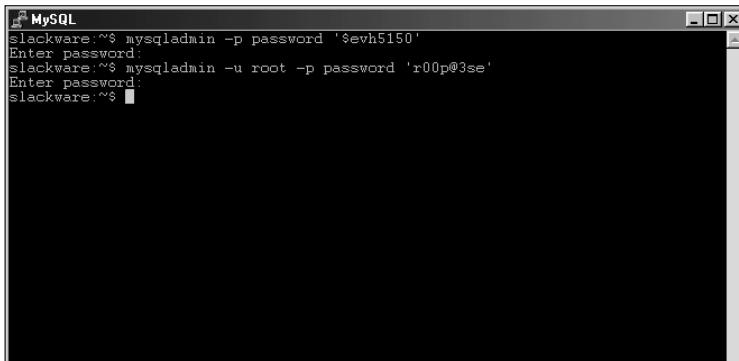
The mysqladmin command can also be used to set or change passwords for users in the MySQL database. In fact, this is how you changed the initial root password for the server back when it was installed.

The syntax for the password function can sometimes cause confusion. The syntax is as follows:

```
mysqladmin (-u username) (-p) password 'newpassword'
```

The `-u username` switch is necessary if you do not want to change the password for the current user. If you need to supply an existing password for the user account specified with the `-u username` switch (or for yourself if you don't use the `-u username` switch), then you must use the `-p` switch to have `mysqladmin` prompt for a password. Next the function name, `password`, is required. Finally, the new password is given as the last argument. The new password must be quoted.

I've prepared a couple of examples, shown in Figure 10-25. The first example changes the password for the current user, which happens to be `suehring`. The second example changes the password for the root user. Both are localhost changes.

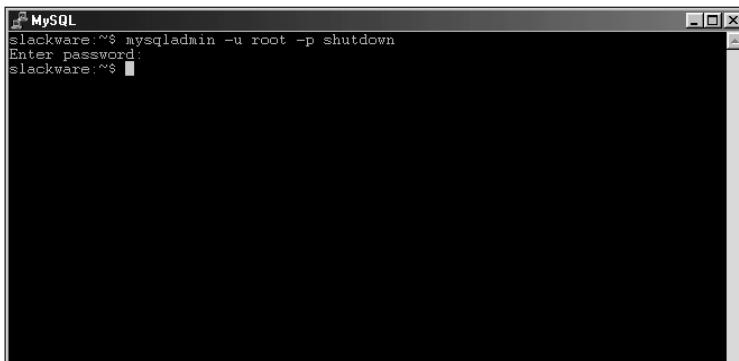


```
MySQL
slackware:~$ mysqladmin -p password '$evh5150'
Enter password:
slackware:~$ mysqladmin -u root -p password 'r00p@3se'
Enter password:
slackware:~$
```

**Figure 10-25:** Examples of changing passwords with the mysqladmin password command

### Stopping the MySQL server with mysqladmin

The shutdown function stops the MySQL server through the mysqladmin command. As with any shutdown, the command has to wait until threads are through with tables; this requirement protects the integrity of the data. The shutdown function provides no feedback to the user, see Figure 10-26.



```
MySQL
slackware:~$ mysqladmin -u root -p shutdown
Enter password:
slackware:~$
```

**Figure 10-26:** The mysqladmin shutdown command provides no feedback to the user upon success.

### Replication functions with mysqladmin

There are two main functions of mysqladmin for use with replication. These are the start-slave and stop-slave functions. These functions start and stop a slave replication process.

**Cross-Reference**

Replication takes updates to data from one server and automatically copies them in real-time to another MySQL server. Chapter 18 covers replication. If you are not using replication, these functions are of no use.

## Exporting Data

Two main methods are available for exporting data from a MySQL database:

- ◆ `mysqldump`
- ◆ the `SELECT INTO OUTFILE` statement.

Whether you're looking to make a simple backup of the server or export certain columns from a table into another program such as Microsoft Access, the exporting utilities and statements included with MySQL will help.

**Note**

You can also use a program called `mysqlhotcopy` to make a copy of a database. In addition, through the use of the MySQL CLI in non-interactive mode or with the `Tee` option, results can be saved or redirected into a file.

### **mysqldump**

The `mysqldump` utility is a powerful program for extracting database and table structure along with the actual data. The `mysqldump` utility is sufficiently granular so that you could get the table structure and data from just one table or from all tables of all databases. If you would just like the table structure with no data you can do that as well. If you want just the data with no table structure, `mysqldump` also provides that functionality. The basic syntax for `mysqldump` is as follows:

```
mysqldump [OPTIONS] database [tables]
```

**Note**

When given no arguments, `mysqldump` simply prints a syntax reference.

**Cross-Reference**

There are quite a few options with `mysqldump`. Some of the options and switches such as those for specifying the username and password have been discussed in other chapters. If you are unsure how to specify a username or password with MySQL utilities, please refer to Chapter 8 for more details.

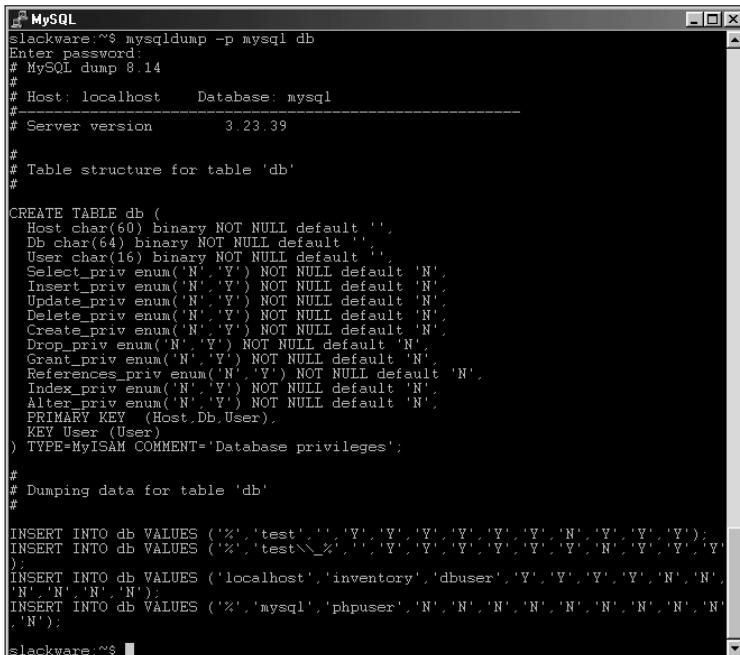
There are two variables that can affect your ability to dump tables with large columns: `max_allowed_packet` and `net_buffer_length`. Both can be set using the `-O` or `--set-variable` switch on the `mysqldump` command line or in the MySQL configuration file.

The `mysqldump` utility uses comments (escaped with `/* */`) to select options that may only be found in newer versions of MySQL. For example, when creating a

database the IF NOT EXISTS keywords were introduced in version 3.23.12 of MySQL. The keywords IF NOT EXISTS will be enclosed in an escape sequence along with the version number. This allows the functionality of IF NOT EXISTS to be used by those versions that can handle it and safely ignored without error on those versions that do not include the function.

Normal usage of mysqldump calls for the command along with options such as user-name and password followed by the name of the database to dump and (optionally) specific tables and columns to dump. In Figure 10-27 the mysqldump command is issued to dump just the db table of the MySQL grants database. The command is as follows:

```
mysqldump -p mysql db
```



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "MySQL" with the command "mysqldump -p mysql db" being run. The output displays the CREATE TABLE statement for the 'db' table, which includes columns for Host, Db, User, and various privilege types (Select\_priv, Insert\_priv, Update\_priv, Delete\_priv, Create\_priv, Drop\_priv, Grant\_priv, References\_priv, Index\_priv, Alter\_priv). It also shows the primary key constraint and the MyISAM storage type. Below the table structure, there are several INSERT statements for the 'db' table, including rows for 'test', 'localhost', and 'mysql' users with their respective privileges.

```
slackware:~$ mysqldump -p mysql db
Enter password:
# MySQL dump 8.14
#
# Host: localhost    Database: mysql
#
# Server version      3.23.39
#
# Table structure for table 'db'
#
CREATE TABLE db (
  Host char(60) binary NOT NULL default '',
  Db char(64) binary NOT NULL default '',
  User char(16) binary NOT NULL default '',
  Select_priv enum('N','Y') NOT NULL default 'N',
  Insert_priv enum('N','Y') NOT NULL default 'N',
  Update_priv enum('N','Y') NOT NULL default 'N',
  Delete_priv enum('N','Y') NOT NULL default 'N',
  Create_priv enum('N','Y') NOT NULL default 'N',
  Drop_priv enum('N','Y') NOT NULL default 'N',
  Grant_priv enum('N','Y') NOT NULL default 'N',
  References_priv enum('N','Y') NOT NULL default 'N',
  Index_priv enum('N','Y') NOT NULL default 'N',
  Alter_priv enum('N','Y') NOT NULL default 'N',
  PRIMARY KEY (Host,Db,User),
  KEY User (User)
) TYPE=MyISAM COMMENT='Database privileges';

#
# Dumping data for table 'db'
#
INSERT INTO db VALUES ('%','test','','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','N','Y','Y','Y');
INSERT INTO db VALUES ('%','test\_\_Z','','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','N','Y','Y','Y');
INSERT INTO db VALUES ('localhost','inventory','dbuser','Y','Y','Y','Y','N','N','N','N','N','N');
INSERT INTO db VALUES ('%','mysql','phpuser','N','N','N','N','N','N','N','N','N','N');

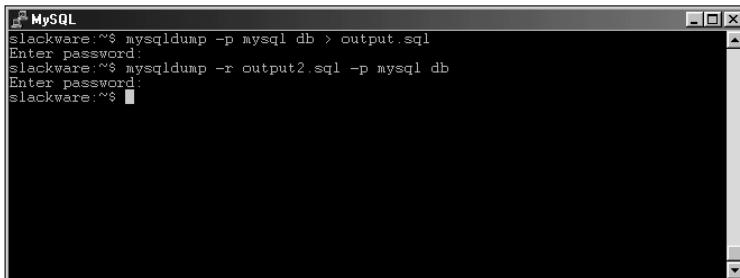
slackware:~$
```

**Figure 10-27:** Using mysqldump to obtain the DDL and DML for one table of one database

For most of its uses, mysqldump redirects the output to a file instead of sending the output to stdout or to the screen (which is the default). The characters used to redirect output can vary by OS:

- ◆ In Linux, you perform redirect operations with the greater-than (>) sign.
- ◆ In Windows, use the -r or --result-file= switch with mysqldump, which assists the newline and carriage return.

Figure 10-28 shows examples of both redirect methods.



```
slackware:~$ mysqldump -p mysql db > output.sql
Enter password:
slackware:~$ mysqldump -r output2.sql -p mysql db
Enter password:
slackware:~$
```

**Figure 10-28:** Examples of redirecting output via the greater-than sign and the -r switch

### Specifying records to be dumped

You can even get more specific than a particular table with `mysqldump`. The use of the `--where=` or `-w` switch enables you to add a `SELECT` statement. For example, to dump only the contents of the `user` table of the MySQL grants database where the user is '`suehring`', the command in Figure 10-29 could be issued:

```
mysqldump -p "--where=user='suehring'" mysql user
```

The `where` clause can be longer than one argument. For example, the following command is valid:

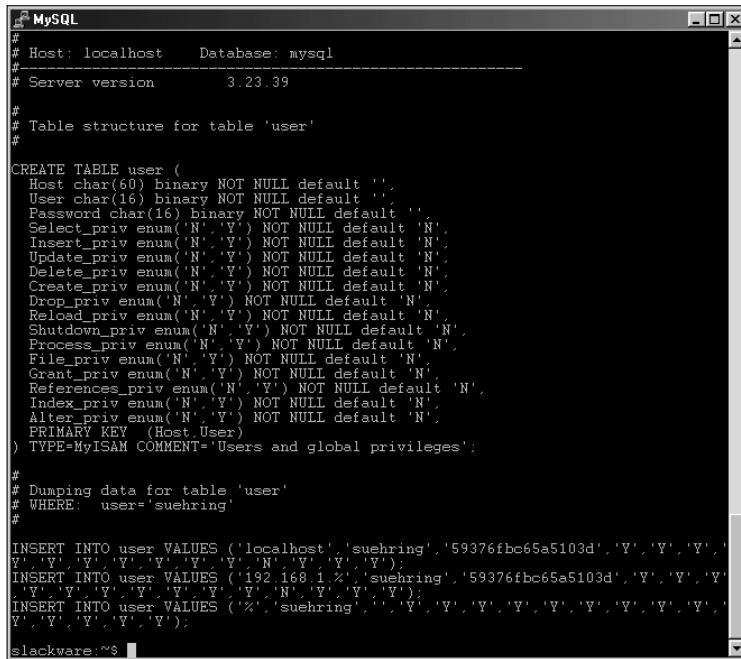
```
mysqldump -p "--where=user='suehring' and host = 'localhost'" mysql user
```

### Controlling the INSERT statement

Two options control how any `INSERT` statements are done with `mysqldump`. These options are `-c` (`--complete-insert`), or `-e` (`--extended-insert`). The default is `extended-insert`.

Examples with both types of insert options are shown in Figure 10-30. The commands to reproduce these examples are as follows:

```
mysqldump -t -p -e "--where=user='suehring' and host =
'localhost'" mysql user
mysqldump -t -p -c "--where=user='suehring' and host =
'localhost'" mysql user
```



```
# Host: localhost      Database: mysql
# Server version      3.23.39
#
# Table structure for table 'user'
#
CREATE TABLE user (
  Host char(60) binary NOT NULL default '',
  User char(16) binary NOT NULL default '',
  Password char(16) binary NOT NULL default '',
  Select_priv enum('N','Y') NOT NULL default 'N',
  Insert_priv enum('N','Y') NOT NULL default 'N',
  Update_priv enum('N','Y') NOT NULL default 'N',
  Delete_priv enum('N','Y') NOT NULL default 'N',
  Create_priv enum('N','Y') NOT NULL default 'N',
  Drop_priv enum('N','Y') NOT NULL default 'N',
  Reload_priv enum('N','Y') NOT NULL default 'N',
  Shutdown_priv enum('N','Y') NOT NULL default 'N',
  Process_priv enum('N','Y') NOT NULL default 'N',
  File_priv enum('N','Y') NOT NULL default 'N',
  Grant_priv enum('N','Y') NOT NULL default 'N',
  References_priv enum('N','Y') NOT NULL default 'N',
  Index_priv enum('N','Y') NOT NULL default 'N',
  Alter_priv enum('N','Y') NOT NULL default 'N',
  PRIMARY KEY (Host,User)
) TYPE=MyISAM COMMENT='Users and global privileges';

#
# Dumping data for table 'user'
# WHERE: user='suehring'
#
INSERT INTO user VALUES ('localhost', 'suehring', '59376fbcc65a5103d', 'Y', 'Y', 'Y',
'Y', 'Y', 'Y', 'Y', 'Y', 'N', 'Y', 'Y', 'Y');
INSERT INTO user VALUES ('192.168.1.%', 'suehring', '59376fbcc65a5103d', 'Y', 'Y', 'Y',
'Y', 'Y', 'Y', 'Y', 'Y', 'N', 'Y', 'Y', 'Y');
INSERT INTO user VALUES ('%', 'suehring', '59376fbcc65a5103d', 'Y', 'Y', 'Y', 'Y', 'Y', 'Y',
'Y', 'Y', 'Y', 'Y', 'Y', 'Y');
```

**Figure 10-29:** Using the `--where=` switch to specify only certain records to be dumped

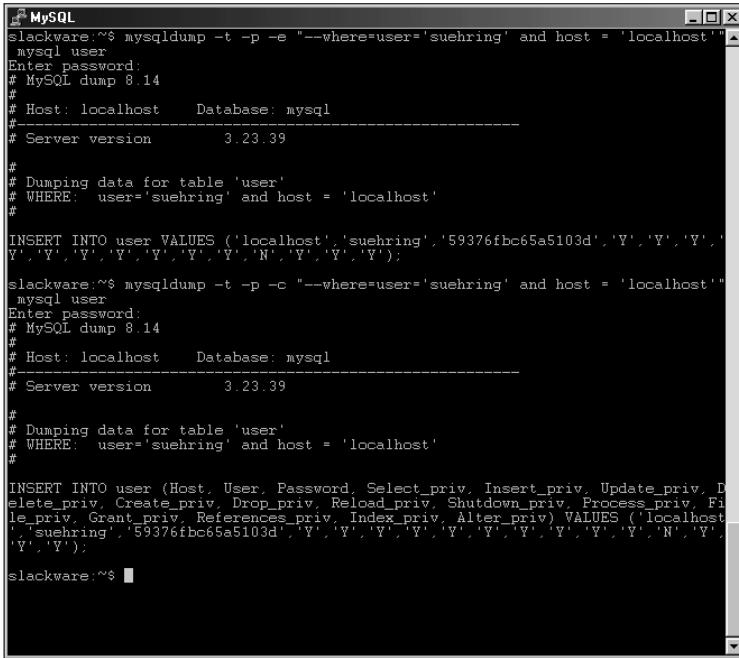
## Suppressing DDL

In the examples in Figure 10-30, you may have noticed an extra option: `-t` (also known as `--no-create-info`), which suppresses the DDL or the statements that would otherwise create the table.

The `-t` option can be useful for making a quick backup of the data in a table. For example, if you have another server that contains the same table structure and only want to migrate your data to the new server, you could suppress the DDL with the `-t` option. The result is the DML or statements to insert the data into the table or tables.

## Suppressing DML and data

Just as you might want to suppress the printing of table creation statements in the output of a `mysqldump`, you might also want to suppress the actual DML or insert statements from the output as well. The switch for this option is `-d` or `--no-data`.



```

MySQL
slackware:~$ mysqldump -t -p -e "--where=user='suehring' and host = 'localhost'" user
mysql user
Enter password:
# MySQL dump 8.14
#
# Host: localhost    Database: mysql
#
# Server version      3.23.39
#
# Dumping data for table 'user'
# WHERE: user='suehring' and host = 'localhost'
#
INSERT INTO user VALUES ('localhost','suehring','59376fbc65a5103d','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','N','Y','Y','Y');

slackware:~$ mysqldump -t -p -c "--where=user='suehring' and host = 'localhost'" user
mysql user
Enter password:
# MySQL dump 8.14
#
# Host: localhost    Database: mysql
#
# Server version      3.23.39
#
# Dumping data for table 'user'
# WHERE: user='suehring' and host = 'localhost'
#
INSERT INTO user (Host, User, Password, Select_priv, Insert_priv, Update_priv, Delete_priv, Create_priv, Drop_priv, Reload_priv, Shutdown_priv, Process_priv, File_priv, Grant_priv, References_priv, Index_priv, Alter_priv) VALUES ('localhost','suehring','59376fbc65a5103d','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','N','Y','Y','Y');
slackware:~$ 

```

**Figure 10-30:** Examples of the types of INSERT statements that can be produced by mysqldump

Using the `-d` switch, a `mysqldump` will simply output the table (and possibly database) creation statements. This feature can be useful for making a skeleton copy of the database and table structure on another server. Figure 10-31 is an example of the `-d` switch in action, producing the DDL for the `ecommerce` database. The command for this example is as follows:

```
mysqldump -p -d ecommerce
```

### Adding drops and locks

`mysqldump` can be configured to add statements to lock and unlock tables around `INSERT` statements. Doing so ensures that the `INSERT` will complete without an unexpected change in the data or contention for the table. The switch to enable the locking function is `--add-locks`.

You can also lock the tables around the reads that produce the output of `mysqldump`. The switch `-l` or `--lock-tables` turns this function on.

The `--add-drop-table` switch tells `mysqldump` to add a `DROP TABLE` statement just before creating the table. Adding this switch can be helpful if you already have tables of the same name that do not contain useful data.

```

MySQL
PRIMARY KEY (zip)
) TYPE=MyISAM;

#
# Table structure for table 'manufacturer'
#

CREATE TABLE manufacturer (
  id int(11) NOT NULL default '0',
  name varchar(50) default NULL,
  address varchar(50) default NULL,
  zip varchar(10) default NULL,
  area_code char(3) default NULL,
  telephone_number varchar(7) default NULL,
  contact_name varchar(50) default NULL,
  PRIMARY KEY (id)
) TYPE=MyISAM;

#
# Table structure for table 'product'
#

CREATE TABLE product (
  id int(11) NOT NULL default '0',
  name varchar(50) default NULL,
  price decimal(9,2) default NULL,
  quantity int(11) default NULL,
  manu_id int(11) default NULL,
  cate_id int(11) default NULL,
  PRIMARY KEY (id)
) TYPE=MyISAM;

#
# Table structure for table 'producttype'
#

CREATE TABLE producttype (
  id int(11) NOT NULL default '0',
  category varchar(50) default NULL,
  PRIMARY KEY (id)
) TYPE=MyISAM;

```

**Figure 10-31:** The `-d` or `--no-data` switch causes `mysqldump` to exclude the DML or INSERT statements from the output.



Using the `--add-drop-table` switch will cause all data to be lost in any tables that are removed.

`mysqldump` also includes a switch that can specify a number of the previously discussed options as well as others. The switch is the `--opt` switch and includes the switches `--add`, `--add-drop-tables`, `--add-locks`, `--extended-insert`, `--lock-tables`, and `--quick`.



If you are going to use the `--add`, `--add-drop-tables`, `--add-locks`, `--extended-insert`, `--lock-tables`, or `--quick` switch, specifying the `--opt` switch is a timesaver.

## Special formatting functions with `mysqldump`

With `mysqldump` you can specify a number of options that determine how the output will look. These include special quotation of fields in the output, escaping or enclosing the fields in a special manner, and terminating lines and fields with the desired character. The switches or options to specify on the `mysqldump` command line are as follows:

```
--quote-names
--tab=
```

```
--fields-terminated-by=
--fields-enclosed-by=
--fields-optionally-enclosed-by=
--fields-escaped-by=
--lines-terminated-by=
```

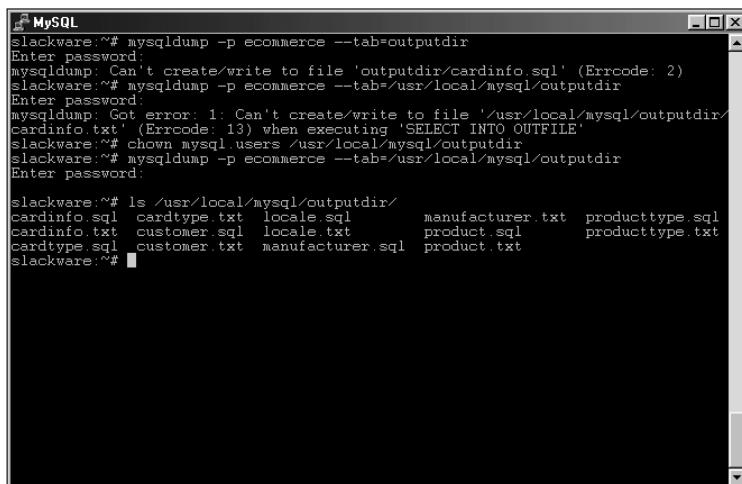
The first switch, `--quote-names`, places backquotes (`) around the names of tables and databases.

The second switch, `--tab=`, can also be abbreviated as `-T`. The `--tab=` switch causes `mysqldump` to create two files, placing output from each table in the argument list. One file `<tablename>.sql` is the normal output of the DDL that you would expect from `mysqldump`. The second file, `<tablename>.txt`, is a tab-delimited file containing only the data from the table.

**Tip**

The `--tab=` switch can be useful for importing data into other applications such as Microsoft Access.

The `--tab=` or `-T` switch expects a directory or path as an argument, in effect, using `--tab=outputdir` will cause the results to be placed in a directory called `outputdir`. It is important that MySQL have permission to write into that directory. For this reason, the `--tab=` switch only works when run from the server that `mysqld` runs on. A few examples of the `--tab=` switch are shown in Figure 10-32. The first attempt is unsuccessful because the specified directory does not exist. In the second attempt, the MySQL server does not have permission to write into the directory specified. The final attempt is successful.



```
slackware:~# mysqldump -p ecommerce --tab=outputdir
Enter password:
mysqldump: Can't create/write to file 'outputdir/cardinfo.sql' (Errcode: 2)
slackware:~# mysqldump -p ecommerce --tab=/usr/local/mysql/outputdir
Enter password:
mysqldump: Got error: 1: Can't create/write to file '/usr/local/mysql/outputdir/
cardinfo.txt' (Errcode: 13) when executing 'SELECT INTO OUTFILE'
slackware:~# chown mysql.mysql /usr/local/mysql/outputdir
slackware:~# mysqldump -p ecommerce --tab=/usr/local/mysql/outputdir
Enter password:
slackware:~# ls /usr/local/mysql/outputdir/
cardinfo.sql    cardtype.txt   locale.sql        manufacturer.txt  producttype.sql
cardinfo.txt    customer.sql   locale.txt       product.sql      producttype.txt
cardtype.sql    customer.txt  manufacturer.sql product.txt
slackware:~#
```

**Figure 10-32:** Three examples of use of the `--tab=` switch, two unsuccessful and one successful

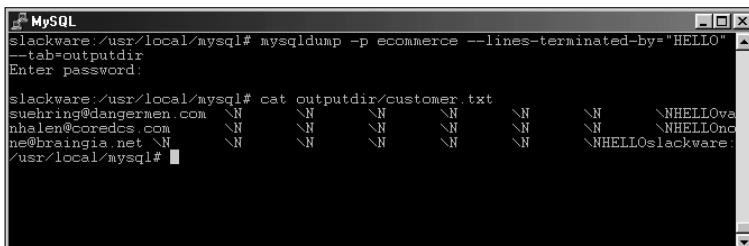
The `--line-` and `--fields-` options require the use of the `--tab=` switch. Each option is sufficiently self-explanatory. If you want to terminate or enclose a field of the output with a string you can do so with these functions. Also, things like `\n` for newline and `\t` for tab are supported, so you can separate fields or lines by those characters as well. The keyword `OPTIONALLY` used with `ENCLOSED` causes only `CHAR` and `VARCHAR` column types to be enclosed in the specified manner. Examples of various `mysqldump` commands that use these switches are shown in Figures 10-33 through 10-36.

```
slackware:/usr/local/mysql# mysqldump -p ecommerce --fields-terminated-by=+ --tab=outputdir
Enter password:
slackware:/usr/local/mysql# cat outputdir/customer.txt
suehring@dangermen.com+N+N+N+N+N+N+N+
vanhalen@coredcos.com+N+N+N+N+N+N+N+
none@braingia.net+N+N+N+N+N+N+N+N+
slackware:/usr/local/mysql#
```

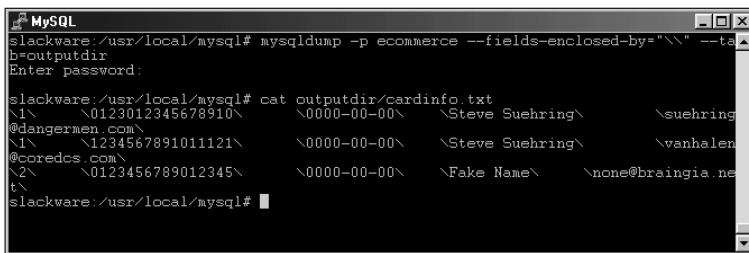
**Figure 10-33:** Performing the command: `mysqldump -p ecommerce --fields-terminated-by=+ --tab=outputdir` to produce output with fields terminated by a plus sign (+)

```
slackware:/usr/local/mysql# mysqldump -p ecommerce --fields-terminated-by="\n" --tab=outputdir
Enter password:
slackware:/usr/local/mysql# cat outputdir/customer.txt
suehring@dangermen.com
+N
+N
+N
+N
+N
+N
+N
+N
vanhalen@coredcos.com
+N
+N
+N
+N
+N
+N
+N
+N
none@braingia.net
+N
+N
+N
+N
+N
+N
+N
+N
slackware:/usr/local/mysql#
```

**Figure 10-34:** Running the command `mysqldump -p ecommerce --fields-terminated-by="\n" --tab=outputdir` to separate all fields by a newline (\n)

A screenshot of a terminal window titled 'MySQL'. The command run is 'mysqldump -p ecommerce --lines-terminated-by="HELLO" --tab=outputdir'. The output shows three rows of data from the 'customer' table. The columns are separated by tabs, and each row ends with the word 'HELLO' followed by a new line.

**Figure 10-35:** The mysqldump -p ecommerce --lines-terminated-by="HELLO" --tab=outputdir command is run to terminate lines by the word HELLO.

A screenshot of a terminal window titled 'MySQL'. The command run is 'mysqldump -p ecommerce --fields-enclosed-by="\\\" --tab=outputdir'. The output shows three rows of data from the 'cardinfo' table. Each column value is enclosed in double quotes, and each row ends with a backslash. The backslash is represented as two slashes in the actual command.

**Figure 10-36:** The mysqldump -p ecommerce --fields-enclosed-by="\\\" --tab=outputdir command to produce output with a backslash around the fields. Note the use of two slashes in the actual command.

### The all-databases function

There are two macro-level functions to dump all databases with mysqldump. With such functions it is possible to make a backup copy of an entire database server—though MySQL AB recommends that you use the mysqlhotcopy utility for this purpose.

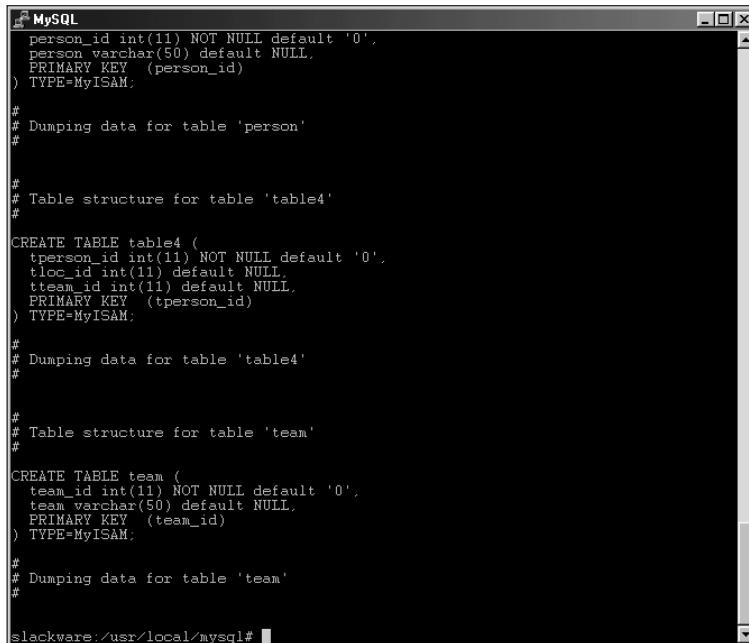


The mysqlhotcopy utility for making backups is covered in Chapter 14.

The first option, --all-databases or -A, dumps all databases, including database structure and data. The --all-databases option also creates the actual databases as well.

In Figure 10-37 the --all-databases macro serves to dump all databases contained on my example server. The command to run is as follows:

```
mysqldump -A -p
```



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "MySQL" with the command "mysqldump -A" running. The output displays the creation scripts for three tables: "person", "table4", and "team". The "person" table has columns person\_id (int(11) NOT NULL default '0'), person (varchar(50) default NULL), and a primary key (person\_id). The "table4" and "team" tables also have similar structures with columns tperson\_id, tloc\_id, tteam\_id, and team respectively.

```
MySQL [person] > mysqldump -A > /tmp/dump.sql
  person_id int(11) NOT NULL default '0',
  person varchar(50) default NULL,
  PRIMARY KEY  (person_id)
) TYPE=MyISAM;

#
# Dumping data for table 'person'

#
# Table structure for table 'table4'

CREATE TABLE table4 (
  tperson_id int(11) NOT NULL default '0',
  tloc_id int(11) default NULL,
  tteam_id int(11) default NULL,
  PRIMARY KEY  (tperson_id)
) TYPE=MyISAM;

#
# Dumping data for table 'table4'

#
# Table structure for table 'team'

CREATE TABLE team (
  team_id int(11) NOT NULL default '0',
  team varchar(50) default NULL,
  PRIMARY KEY  (team_id)
) TYPE=MyISAM;

#
# Dumping data for table 'team'

slackware:/usr/local/mysql#
```

**Figure 10-37:** Using the -A or --all-databases macro to dump the contents of all databases and data on the server.

As you can see by Figure 10-37, all output was sent to the screen. Oops! If there were any large tables on the server, the output could have taken quite some time. Using `mysqldump` avoids tying up the screen by redirecting the output to a file. As stated previously, in Linux you use the greater-than sign (>) to accomplish this redirection. For example, to rerun the --all-databases macro from the example in Figure 10-37, the command would be

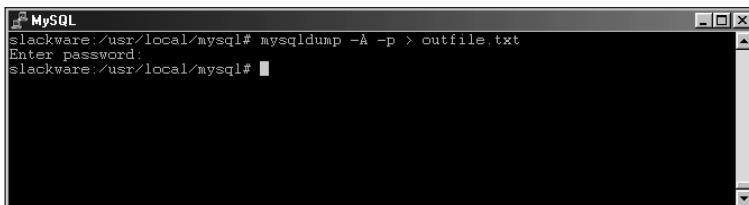
```
mysqldump -A > outfile.txt
```

Performing that command produces a file that could be imported onto another server or servers to create a snapshot of the database server at that point in time. The file could also be used as a backup as well. Figure 10-38 shows another run of the command, followed by a look at the resulting data.

## The databases function

The second macro-level function with `mysqldump` is the --databases or -B function. This option takes databases as arguments, producing the same type of output as the --all-databases macro. Specifically, the --databases function includes all DDL to create the database(s) and table(s) as well as the USE statements to connect to those new databases. The difference between the --databases and

the `--all-databases` macro is that you can use the `--databases` option to specify only the databases you'd like to use; the `--all-databases` option includes all databases.

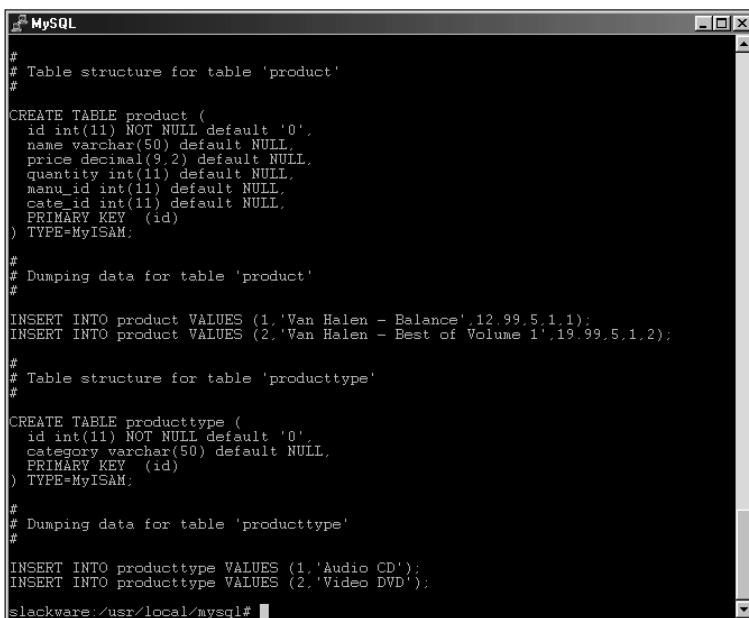


```
slackware:/usr/local/mysql# mysqldump -A -p > outfile.txt
Enter password:
slackware:/usr/local/mysql#
```

**Figure 10-38:** Taking the `mysqldump` command and redirecting the output to a file

The `--databases` function expects at least one database name to follow as an argument. If you want to specify more than one database, separate the database names with single spaces. In Figure 10-39 the `--databases` function serves to produce a dump of the MySQL grants database and the ecommerce database example. Normally I would redirect the output to a file (as shown in Figure 10-38); the command that produces these results is as follows:

```
mysqldump -p --databases mysql ecommerce
```



```
# Table structure for table 'product'
#
CREATE TABLE product (
  id int(11) NOT NULL default '0',
  name varchar(50) default NULL,
  price decimal(9,2) default NULL,
  quantity int(11) default NULL,
  menu_id int(11) default NULL,
  cate_id int(11) default NULL,
  PRIMARY KEY  ((id))
) TYPE=MyISAM;

# Dumping data for table 'product'
#
INSERT INTO product VALUES (1,'Van Halen - Balance',12.99,5,1,1);
INSERT INTO product VALUES (2,'Van Halen - Best of Volume 1',19.99,5,1,2);

# Table structure for table 'producttype'
#
CREATE TABLE producttype (
  id int(11) NOT NULL default '0',
  category varchar(50) default NULL,
  PRIMARY KEY  ((id))
) TYPE=MyISAM;

# Dumping data for table 'producttype'
#
INSERT INTO producttype VALUES (1,'Audio CD');
INSERT INTO producttype VALUES (2,'Video DVD');

slackware:/usr/local/mysql#
```

**Figure 10-39:** Using the `--databases` function to produce a dump of two databases

Another switch, the `--tables` switch, is used with the `--databases` function to specify the tables in the database to include in the output.

### Suppressing creation of databases

With the two macro level functions defined previously, the `--all-databases` switch and the `--databases` switch, you can prevent `mysqldump` from issuing the statement to create the database or databases. The switch for this action is `-n` or `--no-create-db`.

For example, if you are migrating from one server to another and already have the databases created there is no reason to include `CREATE DATABASE` statements in the results from `mysqldump`. Using the `-n` switch, no `CREATE DATABASE` statements will be included.

## SELECT INTO OUTFILE

Another method for extracting or exporting data from MySQL is with the `SELECT ... INTO OUTFILE` statement. This statement is usually run from inside the MySQL CLI and can produce output much the same as `mysqldump`.

The `SELECT INTO OUTFILE` statement is really a `SELECT` statement at heart, with the `INTO OUTFILE` modifier thrown onto the end to send the output of the query into a file. Therefore, modifiers such as grouping and ordering as well as the `WHERE` clause are available for use with the `INTO OUTFILE` statement.



Chapter 9 and Appendix B provide more information on the `SELECT` statement. Chapter 9 shows examples of the `SELECT` statement in action while Appendix B provides the syntax of the `SELECT` statement in MySQL.

The output file when using the `INTO OUTFILE` modifier is located in the database's directory on the server. For example, if your "`datadir`" for MySQL is `/usr/local/var` underneath which appear the directories for the various databases, the `OUTFILE` will appear inside the actual database's directory unless specified otherwise.

As with the `mysqldump --tab` utility, the `SELECT INTO OUTFILE` statement produces the data in a tab-delimited format. This makes it easy to import into a program such as Microsoft Access.

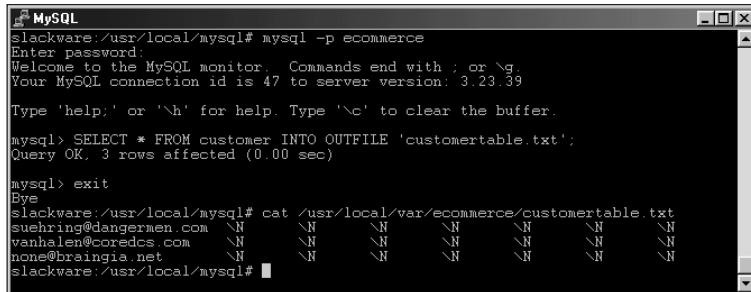


Unlike the `mysqldump` utility, the `SELECT INTO OUTFILE` statement does not support the selection of all tables from multiple databases. If you want to export the data to another MySQL server, `mysqldump` is the better choice.

Much the same as `mysqldump`, `SELECT INTO OUTFILE` supports a number of options that control how the data is exported. These options include `FIELDS TERMINATED BY`, `LINES TERMINATED BY`, `FIELDS ENCLOSED BY`, and `FIELDS ESCAPED BY`. These options work the same as with `mysqldump`.

The file specified in the `SELECT ... INTO OUTFILE` statement cannot already exist. If the file exists, the statement will fail.

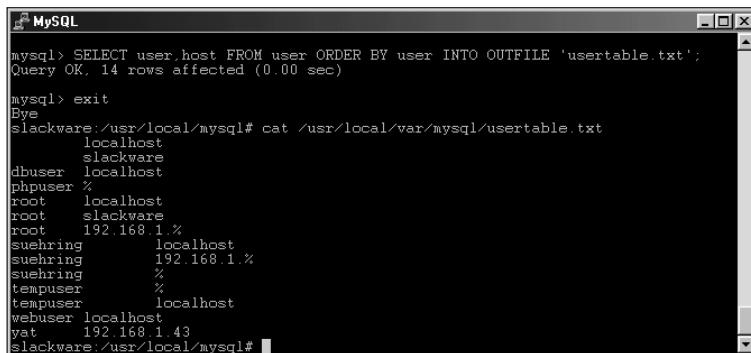
Most of the battle with the `SELECT ... INTO OUTFILE` statement is getting the `SELECT` statement correct. Syntax examples for the `SELECT ... INTO OUTFILE` statement follow, as shown in Figures 10-40 and 10-41.



```
MySQL> SELECT * FROM customer INTO OUTFILE 'customertable.txt';
Query OK, 3 rows affected (0.00 sec)

MySQL> exit
Bye
slackware:/usr/local/mysql# cat /usr/local/var/mysql/customertable.txt
suehring@dangermen.com    \N      \N      \N      \N      \N      \N
vanhalen@coredc.com        \N      \N      \N      \N      \N      \N
none@brainigia.net         \N      \N      \N      \N      \N      \N
slackware:/usr/local/mysql#
```

**Figure 10-40:** An example of a basic `SELECT` statement coupled with the `INTO OUTFILE` modifier and then a look at the results in the file

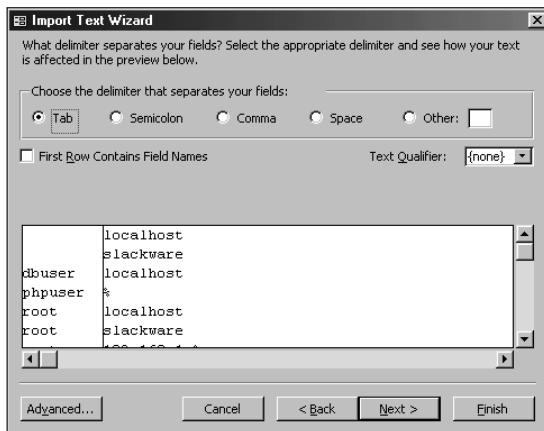


```
MySQL> SELECT user.host FROM user ORDER BY user INTO OUTFILE 'usertable.txt';
Query OK, 14 rows affected (0.00 sec)

MySQL> exit
Bye
slackware:/usr/local/mysql# cat /usr/local/var/mysql/usertable.txt
localhost
slackware
dbuser localhost
phpuser %
root localhost
root slackware
root 192.168.1.%
suehring   localhost
suehring   192.168.1.%
suehring   %
tempuser   %
tempuser   localhost
webuser localhost
yat       192.168.1.43
slackware:/usr/local/mysql#
```

**Figure 10-41:** Another `SELECT` statement using an `ORDER BY` coupled with the `INTO OUTFILE` modifier and then a look at the results in the file

The output from the statement in Figure 10-40 (and many others exported through MySQL) can be imported into other programs such as Microsoft Access. Most programs can recognize the Tab character as a delimiter. An example of importing the output from Figure 10-41 is shown in Figure 10-42.



**Figure 10-42:** Importing the data into Microsoft Access, produced from a `SELECT INTO OUTFILE` statement

## Importing Data

Showing an example of the import process at the end of the preceding section leads directly into this section, Importing Data Into MySQL Databases. This section examines three methods for importing data into MySQL: From the CLI, with the `LOAD DATA INFILE` statement, and with the `mysqlimport` utility.

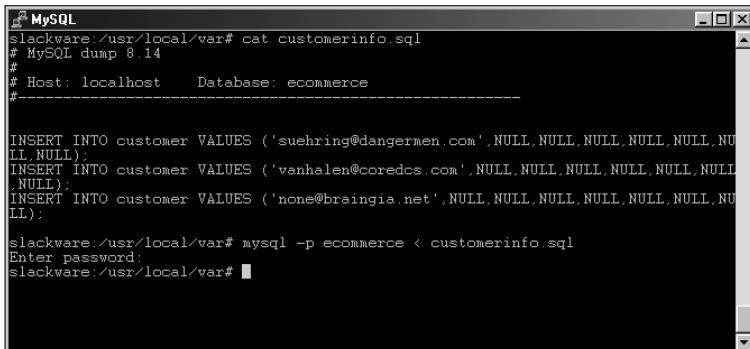
### CLI

The MySQL CLI includes the ability to import data. In reality, the CLI allows any SQL statements in a file to be read in via the command line. The syntax for this feature is as follows:

```
mysql [OPTIONS] database < filename
```

The options would include things like the user, host, and password for the MySQL CLI to authenticate just as with any other use of the CLI. The file is expected to contain valid SQL statements, many times `INSERT` or `UPDATE` statements produced with `mysqldump`.

For example, Figure 10-43 shows the contents of a file to import into the `ecommerce` database. The contents of the file were produced with `mysqldump`. Figure 10-43 also shows the command that will insert these into the database. It really is that simple.



```
MySQL
slackware:/usr/local/var# cat customerinfo.sql
# MySQL dump 8.14
#
# Host: localhost    Database: ecommerce
#



INSERT INTO customer VALUES ('suehring@dangermen.com',NULL,NULL,NULL,NULL,NULL,NULL,NULL);
INSERT INTO customer VALUES ('vanhalen@coredc.com',NULL,NULL,NULL,NULL,NULL,NULL,NULL);
INSERT INTO customer VALUES ('none@braingia.net',NULL,NULL,NULL,NULL,NULL,NULL,NULL);

slackware:/usr/local/var# mysql -p ecommerce < customerinfo.sql
Enter password:
slackware:/usr/local/var#
```

**Figure 10-43:** Importing the contents of a file into a database through the MySQL CLI

## LOAD DATA INFILE

The complement to the `SELECT ... INTO OUTFILE` statement is the `LOAD DATA INFILE` statement. This statement is normally run from the MySQL CLI to import data into a table. The syntax for this statement is as follows:

```
LOAD DATA [LOW_PRIORITY | CONCURRENT] [LOCAL] INFILE
  'filename.txt'
  [REPLACE | IGNORE]
  INTO TABLE <tablename>
  [FIELDS
    [TERMINATED BY '\t']
    [[OPTIONALLY] ENCLOSED BY ''']
    [ESCAPED BY '\\\' ]
  ]
  [LINES TERMINATED BY '\n']
  [IGNORE <N> LINES]
  [(<columnname>,....)]
```

The `LOW_PRIORITY` keyword causes the `LOAD DATA` statement to wait until no other clients are reading from the table. The `CONCURRENT` keyword allows other clients to read from the table while the `LOAD DATA` statement is executing.

Files are normally assumed to be on the server machine. With the `LOCAL` keyword, however, the file is read from the client host that executes the command. The filename specified must be an absolute path, whether in the data directory of MySQL or in the actual database's directory on the server.



Using the `LOCAL` keyword blocks you from stopping the import process once it begins.

The `LOAD DATA INFILE` statement enables you to determine the action when a collision occurs for records being imported to a unique column. The statement can either replace the existing record with the new one or ignore the new record entirely. The keywords to specify this behavior are `REPLACE` and `IGNORE`, respectively.

**Cross-Reference**

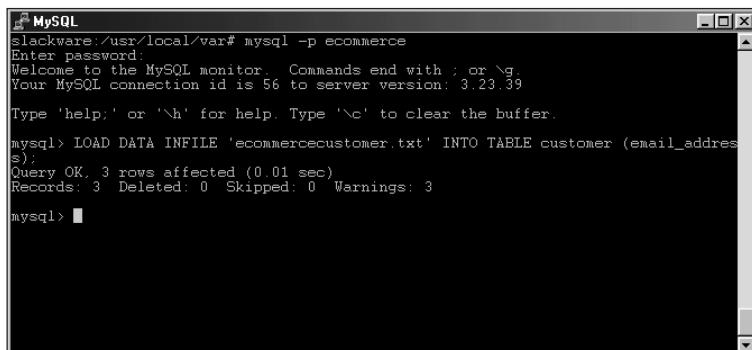
Other `LOAD DATA INFILE` options (such as the `FIELDS TERMINATED BY`, and `LINES TERMINATED BY`) work the same as in the `SELECT ... INTO OUTFILE` statement and `mysqldump`. This chapter includes descriptions and syntax examples for these options.

One additional behavior not found in the `SELECT ... INTO OUTFILE` statement or `mysqldump` utility is `IGNORE <N> LINES`. This modifier appears in the `LINES TERMINATED BY` clause. Using the `IGNORE <N> LINES` modifier you can tell the `LOAD DATA INFILE` statement to ignore or skip over a certain number of lines at the beginning of the file to be imported. For example, if you have the column names as the first line of the file you can have the `LOAD DATA INFILE` statement ignore that first line with the addition of `IGNORE 1 LINES` to the `LOAD DATA INFILE` STATEMENT.

You can also specify only certain columns to import into. The column or column list comes at the end of the statement; if specifying more than one column, separate them with a comma. For example, to import one of the files from a previous example and only import the `email_address` column, the following statement is issued:

```
LOAD DATA INFILE 'ecommercecustomer.txt' INTO TABLE customer (email_address);
```

The results from the preceding statement are shown in Figure 10-44.



```
slackware:/usr/local/var# mysql -p ecommerce
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor.  Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 56 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.
mysql> LOAD DATA INFILE 'ecommercecustomer.txt' INTO TABLE customer (email_address);
Query OK, 3 rows affected (0.01 sec)
Records: 3  Deleted: 0  Skipped: 0  Warnings: 3
mysql> ■
```

**Figure 10-44:** An example of using the `LOAD DATA INFILE` statement to import only one column

## mysqldump

The `mysqldump` utility is a command-line program for exporting data from a MySQL database. The `mysqldump` utility is similar in usage to the `LOAD DATA INFILE` statement. The basic syntax for the `mysqldump` utility is as follows:

```
mysqldump [OPTIONS] database [textfile]
```



### Tip

As with most MySQL programs, you can obtain a syntax listing for `mysqldump` by typing the command with no switches or arguments, or by using the `-?` or `--help` switch.

Much like the MySQL CLI, `mysqldump` uses the same switches for specifying the user, host, port, password, and so on.



### Cross-Reference

Chapter 8 covers the basic switches.

As `mysqldump` is really a command-line version of `LOAD DATA INFILE`, the functionality is nearly the same. One exception not located in another statement or command is the `-d` or `--delete` switch. Using `--delete`, `mysqldump` will delete the contents of the table prior to importing.

With `LOAD DATA INFILE`, if you specify a column or columns to import into you do so by adding them onto the end of the statement. With `mysqldump`, this is added with the `-c` or `--columns=` switch. The `REPLACE` and `IGNORE` functionality is called with the `-r` or `--replace` and `-I -r --ignore`, respectively.

Much like the `LOAD DATA INFILE`, `SELECT ... INTO OUTFILE`, and `mysqldump` utilities the use of switches for formatting is supported by `mysqldump`. These are as follows:

```
--fields-terminated-by=
--fields-enclosed-by=
--fields-optionally-enclosed-by=
--fields-escaped-by=
--lines-terminated-by=
```

The `--local` or `-L` switch tells `mysqldump` to look on the local client for the file to import. This is as opposed to the normal behavior where MySQL will search for the file on the server running `mysqld`. Notice that the switch is an uppercase `L`. The lowercase `L` (`-l`) switch is a synonym for the `--lock-tables` function that locks all tables before proceeding with the import.

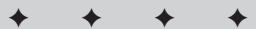
## Summary

- ◆ MySQL includes six table types. Three are non-transactional, two are transactional, and one resides only in volatile memory.
- ◆ The main table type in MySQL is MyISAM. MyISAM descends from the ISAM table type that includes fewer features. The MERGE table type is a collection of MySQL tables for quicker operation.
- ◆ The two transactional table types in MySQL are BerkeleyDB and InnoDB. These table types use more resources than regular non-transactional tables but are safer in the event of error.
- ◆ The HEAP table type is a temporary table that resides only in volatile memory.
- ◆ The mysqladmin command is a powerful command for management and administration of a MySQL server.
- ◆ With mysqladmin you can stop the server, troubleshoot performance problems, and create or delete databases.
- ◆ There are two main methods for exporting data from MySQL, mysqldump and the SELECT ... INTO OUTFILE statement.
- ◆ The mysqldump utility includes the ability to export both DDL and DML. Therefore, with mysqldump you can create a complete snapshot of a server including databases, tables, and the actual data.
- ◆ The SELECT ... INTO OUTFILE statement is normally run from the MySQL CLI. With SELECT ... INTO OUTFILE you have the power of a regular SELECT statement while exporting data with many powerful options.
- ◆ There are three main methods for importing data into MySQL. Data can be imported through the MySQL CLI, with the LOAD DATA INFILE statement, or with mysqlimport.
- ◆ The MySQL CLI enables you to execute SQL statements by reading the contents of a file from the command line.
- ◆ With the LOAD DATA INFILE statement you can import through the CLI with a number of options such as how to handle duplicate values.
- ◆ The mysqlimport utility is a command-line version of LOAD DATA INFILE and includes the same options. The mysqlimport utility also includes an option to delete the data from the table prior to import.





# Administration



## In This Part

### **Chapter 11**

Server Configurations

### **Chapter 12**

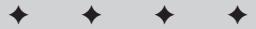
Security

### **Chapter 13**

Debugging and  
Repairing Databases

### **Chapter 14**

Performance Tuning





# Server Configurations

**A**s evidenced nearly everywhere in this book, MySQL is highly customizable. From customizations during the installation process detailed in Chapters 3, 4, and 5 to configurations for the CLI that I wrote about in Chapter 8, MySQL is the most customizable major database server available. Of course you would expect so since you can download the source code for MySQL and write it to your exact specifications.

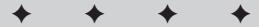
In this chapter I'm going to examine server configurations and customizations through the use of the my.cnf or my.ini configuration files. These configurations will mainly work with server variables and switches for the mysqld server process. I'll begin with a look at the variables and switches themselves and then use some samples that come with the MySQL software for small, medium, and large installations.

## MySQL Server Variables

MySQL can and should be tuned to the physical server hardware that it is running on and for the main application or applications that it will be serving. A great many variables can be changed that alter the way a server operates. When set correctly these variables can improve the performance of the server and thus the applications using the database. As you would expect, when set incorrectly these variables can degrade the performance of the server as well. In this section I'll examine the variables themselves.

### Viewing current server variables

You can look at all the variables and settings for the server through the `SHOW VARIABLES` statement from in the MySQL CLI or with the `mysqladmin variables` command. The statement and command yield the same results, as shown in Figure 11-1. The command to reproduce the output shown in Figure 11-1 is `mysqladmin variables`; the full output follows.



### In This Chapter

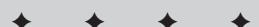
Classifying MySQL server variables

Benchmarking and testing MySQL

Examining sample configuration files

Developing your own configuration file

Running more than one MySQL Server on the same machine



```
+----+-----+
| Variable_name      | Value
+----+-----+
| ansi_mode          | OFF
| back_log            | 50
| basedir             | /usr/local/
| bdb_cache_size      | 8388600
| bdb_log_buffer_size | 0
| bdb_home             |
| bdb_max_lock        | 10000
| bdb_logdir           |
| bdb_shared_data      | OFF
| bdb_tmpdir           |
| bdb_version          | Sleepycat Software: Berkeley DB 3.2.9a: (Jun
e 12, 2001)
line 1
```

**Figure 11-1:** Partial output from the mysqladmin variables statement

Table 11-1 shows some MySQL server variables command, along with brief descriptions of their purposes. The additional variables presented in the output of the mysqladmin variables do not affect server performance. Most of those variables and settings are discussed in other chapters throughout the book.

**Table 11-1**  
**MySQL server variables**

| <b>Variable</b>     | <b>What it does</b>  |
|---------------------|--|
| bdb_cache_size      | Sets size of buffer for caching rows and indexes of BDB tables.  |
| bdb_log_buffer_size | Sets size of buffer for the BDB logs.                            |
| bdb_max_lock        | Sets maximum number of locks you can have on a BDB table.        |
| binlog_cache_size   | Sets size of cache for statements to be put into the binary log. |

| <b>Variable</b>        | <b>What it does</b>  |
|------------------------|--|
| connect_timeout        | Determines the length of time mysqld will wait for a connection.   |
| delay_key_write        | Determines when the key can be flushed (tables with this option active cannot have the key flushed until the table is closed). |
| delayed_insert_limit   | Sets number of rows to be inserted before the delay is released.   |
| delayed_insert_timeout | Sets amount of time to wait for INSERT DELAYED statements.   |
| delayed_queue_size     | Sets size of the queue for INSERT DELAYED statements in rows.  |
| flush_time             | Sets time (in seconds) to free up resources by closing all tables.   |
| have_bdb               | Enabled if BerkeleyDB (BDB) tables are available.  |
| have_gemini            | Enabled if Gemini tables are available.  |
| have_innodb            | Enabled if InnoDB tables are available.  |
| have_isam              | Indicates whether ISAM tables are available.   |
| have_raid              | Indicates whether RAID will be used.   |
| have_ssl               | Indicates whether SSL is available.  |
| interactive_timeout    | Sets amount of time mysqld waits for activity on interactive clients.  |
| join_buffer_size       | Sets size of buffer used for full JOIN operations.   |
| key_buffer_size        | Sets size of buffer used for indexes shared among threads.   |
| large_files_support    | Indicates whether this version of mysqld supports large files.   |
| log                    | Indicates whether the logging of all queries is enabled.   |
| log_update             | Indicates whether the logging of updates is enabled.   |
| log_bin                | Indicates whether a binary log file format is in use.  |
| log_slave_updates      | Indicates whether updates from the slave should be logged.   |
| long_query_time        | Sets number of seconds before the Slow Queries counter is enabled.   |
| max_allowed_packet     | Sets maximum size of any one packet.   |

*Continued*

**Table 11-1 (continued)**

| <b>Variable</b>                 | <b>What it does</b>   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| max_binlog_cache_size           | Sets maximum size of the cache for the binary log.                                  |
| max_binlog_size                 | Sets maximum size of the binary log.  |
| max_connections                 | Sets maximum number of simultaneous connections.                                    |
| max_connect_errors              | Sets maximum number of errors from a given host.                                    |
| max_delayed_threads             | Sets maximum number of threads to start for <code>INSERT DELAYED</code> statements. |
| max_heap_table_size             | Sets maximum size for a HEAP table.   |
| max_join_size                   | Sets maximum size for joins.  |
| max_sort_length                 | Sets number of bytes to use for sorting BLOB and TEXT columns.                      |
| max_user_connections            | Sets maximum number of simultaneous user connections.                               |
| max_tmp_tables                  | Sets maximum number of temporary tables to create.                                  |
| max_write_lock_count            | Sets number of write locks that occur before a read lock is enabled.                |
| myisam_max_extra_sort_file_size | Sets maximum size before the key cache is used.                                     |
| myisam_max_sort_file_size       | Sets maximum size of the temporary file used to create an index with myisam table.  |
| myisam_sort_buffer_size         | Sets size of buffer for myisam index functions.                                     |
| net_buffer_length               | Sets size of communications buffer.   |
| net_read_timeout                | Specifies time to wait between reads before closing a thread.                       |
| net_retry_count                 | Specifies number of times to retry a connection before closing.                     |
| net_write_timeout               | Specifies time to wait between writes before closing a thread.                      |
| open_files_limit                | Specifies number of file descriptors to open.                                       |
| query_buffer_size               | Sets initial size of the query buffer.  |
| record_buffer                   | Specifies buffer to use for threads that do sequential scans.                       |
| skip_locking                    | Indicates whether internal or external locking is in use.                           |

| <b>Variable</b>   | <b>What it does</b>   |
|-------------------|---|
| slow_launch_time  | Increments a counter if a thread takes longer than this interval to launch. |
| sort_buffer       | Allocates buffer for functions that sort.                                   |
| table_cache       | Sets maximum number of open tables across all threads.                      |
| thread_cache_size | Sets number of threads to keep in cache for reuse.                          |
| thread_stack      | Sets size of stack for an individual thread.                                |
| tmp_table_size    | Sets maximum size for a temp table before being converted to myisam.        |
| wait_timeout      | Sets maximum time to wait for a connection until it is timed out.           |

The server I've been using in many of the examples in this book is a convenient example of setting variables. It's a Pentium 200MMX with 96MB RAM, running Slackware Linux. On this server, I had to change a couple of settings to avoid using up all the memory. The defaults for my server are as follows:

```
***** 1. row
Variable_name: ansi_mode
Value: OFF
***** 2. row
Variable_name: back_log
Value: 50
***** 3. row
Variable_name: basedir
Value: /usr/local/
***** 4. row
Variable_name: bdb_cache_size
Value: 8388600
***** 5. row
Variable_name: bdb_log_buffer_size
Value: 0
***** 6. row
Variable_name: bdb_home
Value:
***** 7. row
Variable_name: bdb_max_lock
Value: 10000
***** 8. row
Variable_name: bdb_logdir
Value:
***** 9. row
Variable_name: bdb_shared_data
Value: OFF
```

```
***** 10. row
Variable_name: bdb_tmpdir
Value:
*****
***** 11. row
Variable_name: bdb_version
Value: Sleepycat Software: Berkeley DB 3.2.9a: (June
12, 2001)
*****
***** 12. row
Variable_name: binlog_cache_size
Value: 32768
*****
***** 13. row
Variable_name: character_set
Value: latin1
*****
***** 14. row
Variable_name: character_sets
Value: latin1 dec8 dos german1 hp8 koi8_ru latin2 swe7
usa7 cp1251 danish hebrew win1251 estonia hungarian koi8_ukr
win1251ukr greek win1250 croat cp1257 latin5
*****
***** 15. row
Variable_name: concurrent_insert
Value: ON
*****
***** 16. row
Variable_name: connect_timeout
Value: 5
*****
***** 17. row
Variable_name: datadir
Value: /usr/local/var/
*****
***** 18. row
Variable_name: delay_key_write
Value: ON
*****
***** 19. row
Variable_name: delayed_insert_limit
Value: 100
*****
***** 20. row
Variable_name: delayed_insert_timeout
Value: 300
*****
***** 21. row
Variable_name: delayed_queue_size
Value: 1000
*****
***** 22. row
Variable_name: flush
Value: OFF
*****
***** 23. row
Variable_name: flush_time
Value: 0
*****
***** 24. row
Variable_name: have_bdb
Value: DISABLED
*****
***** 25. row
Variable_name: have_gemini
Value: NO
```

```
***** 26. row
Variable_name: have_innodb
Value: DISABLED
***** 27. row
Variable_name: have_isam
Value: YES
***** 28. row
Variable_name: have_raid
Value: NO
***** 29. row
Variable_name: have_ssl
Value: NO
***** 30. row
Variable_name: init_file
Value:
***** 31. row
Variable_name: innodb_data_file_path
Value:
***** 32. row
Variable_name: innodb_data_home_dir
Value:
***** 33. row
Variable_name: innodb_flush_log_at_trx_commit
Value: OFF
***** 34. row
Variable_name: innodb_log_arch_dir
Value:
***** 35. row
Variable_name: innodb_log_archive
Value: OFF
***** 36. row
Variable_name: innodb_log_group_home_dir
Value:
***** 37. row
Variable_name: innodb_flush_method
Value:
***** 38. row
Variable_name: interactive_timeout
Value: 28800
***** 39. row
Variable_name: join_buffer_size
Value: 131072
***** 40. row
Variable_name: key_buffer_size
Value: 12288
***** 41. row
Variable_name: language
Value: /usr/local/share/mysql/english/
***** 42. row
Variable_name: large_files_support
Value: ON
```

```
***** 43. row
Variable_name: locked_in_memory
Value: OFF
***** 44. row
Variable_name: log
Value: OFF
***** 45. row
Variable_name: log_update
Value: OFF
***** 46. row
Variable_name: log_bin
Value: OFF
***** 47. row
Variable_name: log_slave_updates
Value: OFF
***** 48. row
Variable_name: long_query_time
Value: 10
***** 49. row
Variable_name: low_priority_updates
Value: OFF
***** 50. row
Variable_name: lower_case_table_names
Value: 0
***** 51. row
Variable_name: max_allowed_packet
Value: 1047552
***** 52. row
Variable_name: max_binlog_cache_size
Value: 4294967295
***** 53. row
Variable_name: max_binlog_size
Value: 1073741824
***** 54. row
Variable_name: max_connections
Value: 100
***** 55. row
Variable_name: max_connect_errors
Value: 10
***** 56. row
Variable_name: max_delayed_threads
Value: 20
***** 57. row
Variable_name: max_heap_table_size
Value: 8387584
***** 58. row
Variable_name: max_join_size
Value: 4294967295
***** 59. row
Variable_name: max_sort_length
Value: 1024
```

```
***** 60. row
Variable_name: max_user_connections
Value: 0
***** 61. row
Variable_name: max_tmp_tables
Value: 32
***** 62. row
Variable_name: max_write_lock_count
Value: 4294967295
***** 63. row
Variable_name: myisam_recover_options
Value: BACKUP,FORCE
***** 64. row
Variable_name: myisam_max_extra_sort_file_size
Value: 256
***** 65. row
Variable_name: myisam_max_sort_file_size
Value: 2047
***** 66. row
Variable_name: myisam_sort_buffer_size
Value: 8388608
***** 67. row
Variable_name: net_buffer_length
Value: 1024
***** 68. row
Variable_name: net_read_timeout
Value: 30
***** 69. row
Variable_name: net_retry_count
Value: 10
***** 70. row
Variable_name: net_write_timeout
Value: 60
***** 71. row
Variable_name: open_files_limit
Value: 0
***** 72. row
Variable_name: pid_file
Value: /usr/local/var/slackware.pid
***** 73. row
Variable_name: port
Value: 3306
***** 74. row
Variable_name: protocol_version
Value: 10
***** 75. row
Variable_name: record_buffer
Value: 131072
***** 76. row
Variable_name: query_buffer_size
Value: 0
```

```
***** 77. row
Variable_name: safe_show_database
Value: OFF
***** 78. row
Variable_name: server_id
Value: 1
***** 79. row
Variable_name: skip_locking
Value: ON
***** 80. row
Variable_name: skip_networking
Value: OFF
***** 81. row
Variable_name: skip_show_database
Value: OFF
***** 82. row
Variable_name: slow_launch_time
Value: 2
***** 83. row
Variable_name: socket
Value: /tmp/mysql.sock
***** 84. row
Variable_name: sort_buffer
Value: 65528
***** 85. row
Variable_name: table_cache
Value: 4
***** 86. row
Variable_name: table_type
Value: MYISAM
***** 87. row
Variable_name: thread_cache_size
Value: 0
***** 88. row
Variable_name: thread_stack
Value: 65536
***** 89. row
Variable_name: transaction_isolation
Value: READ-COMMITTED
***** 90. row
Variable_name: timezone
Value: CST
***** 91. row
Variable_name: tmp_table_size
Value: 33554432
***** 92. row
Variable_name: tmpdir
Value: /tmp/
***** 93. row
Variable_name: version
Value: 3.23.39
***** 94. row
Variable_name: wait_timeout
Value: 28800
```

Although the `SHOW VARIABLES` output given here does contain even more variables, these are beyond the scope of this chapter.

## So many variables, so little time

As you can see from Table 11-1 and the variable printout, I speak the truth about the large number of server variables and settings available for an administrator to work with. When you add capabilities such as replication, even more variables and settings must be considered.

At this point you may be asking, “Which variables and settings do I *really* have to change and which ones can be left at the defaults?” I certainly can’t preach that all variables must be set for each server; in my view, that’s neither true nor practical. Responding to testing and feedback from users of MySQL, MySQL AB has set defaults for most variables that will work well.

Another reason not to set all the variables is that the MySQL server itself is quite efficient for most uses of the database—anywhere from just a few records to a few hundred thousand or more. I’ve worked with large databases (*millions* of rows) on what I would consider normal hardware—Pentium-class computers with 128MB RAM—and noticed no performance problems that would make me want to change too many server variables.

However, working with specific applications or databases may require that you set or change variables to improve performance of the MySQL server. Some reasons you may have to set variables include the following:

- ◆ A specific application performs operations on the database slow or cause the server to lag.
- ◆ The use of lower-end hardware or small amounts of resources.
- ◆ Using MySQL on a server that runs many other applications and services.
- ◆ Inefficient or poorly written applications that cause problems for the server or database.
- ◆ A desire to improve your server’s performance.

Coming back to the original question in this section, how do you know which variables to set if you want optimal performance from MySQL? Luckily, MySQL AB has done some of the homework for many implementations; two features of its installation program can help you optimize MySQL:

- ◆ **A suite of applications helps you benchmark your server’s performance.** MySQL also includes another set of tests known as the *Crash-me* tests. Together with the MySQL Benchmark applications, the Crash-me tests help you give your server a vigorous test. These applications and scripts help determine and test the limits of your server by simulating real-world scenarios. The benchmarking applications are a series of tests contained in the `sql-bench` directory within your MySQL installation. The Crash-me tests are

contained within one program aptly titled `crash-me`, and also in the `sql-bench` directory. In the next section I'll look at some of the benchmarking applications included with MySQL.

**Tip**

Even with the tests and benchmarking, you still need a way to simulate a real-world load on a database server. A program called Super-smack does that job; you can use it to try out various values as you set parameters until you get the ones that work best for your configuration. Super-smack is available for free from MySQL AB. To get Super-smack, go to the Contributed Software section of the MySQL Web site <http://www.mysql.com/downloads/contrib.html>.

- ◆ **Sample configuration files let you try out different-size implementations.** Look for these sample configs in the `support-files` directory of your MySQL installation. Four sample configuration files are included:

- `my-small.cnf`
- `my-medium.cnf`
- `my-large.cnf`
- `my-huge.cnf`

The sample configuration files are covered in detail later in this chapter.

## MySQL Benchmarking and Testing

Included with the MySQL software are applications and scripts for testing the limits and variables of the MySQL server. These tests can help to improve performance by showing obvious bottlenecks on the actual hardware with close to real-world scenarios. Using specific tests you can simulate how your server will be used and see what improvements must be made. I've had times where running the tests saved me from implementing a server on hardware that couldn't stand up to the load for the application to be run.

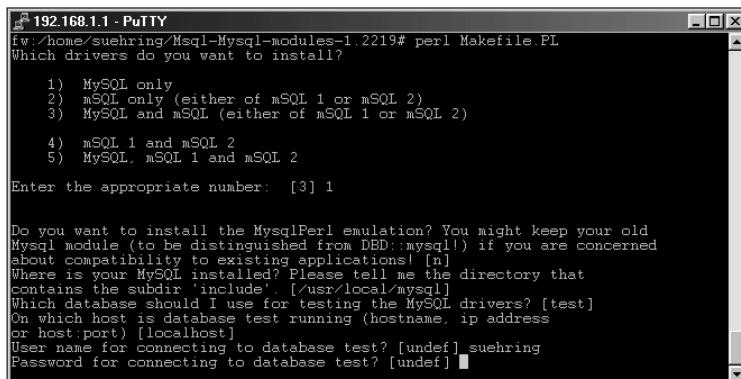
## Requirements for the applications

The Benchmark and Crash-me applications use a number of different types of statements and functions. The applications are included with Binary installations of MySQL and MySQL-Max as well as with the MySQL source code. To use the applications from an RPM-based installation, make sure you install the `mysql-bench` RPM (in addition to the other MySQL RPMs). Additional requirements for the benchmarking and Crash-me applications are as follows:

- ◆ Perl
- ◆ Perl-DBI
- ◆ Mysql-Mysqld-modules

All the latest copies of the Perl-DBI and the Msql-Mysql-modules can be found on CPAN, <http://www.cpan.org>.

Perl is normally included with Linux, though you may not have installed it when you installed the operating system. Follow the instructions included with the Perl-DBI for installation of the software. The Msql-Mysql-modules ask some relevant questions during the installation, see Figure 11-2.



```
fw:/home/suehring/Msql-Mysql-modules-1.2219# perl Makefile.PL
Which drivers do you want to install?
1) MySQL only
2) mSQL only (either of mSQL 1 or mSQL 2)
3) MySQL and mSQL (either of mSQL 1 or mSQL 2)
4) mSQL 1 and mSQL 2
5) MySQL, mSQL 1 and mSQL 2
Enter the appropriate number: [3] 1

Do you want to install the MysqPexl emulation? You might keep your old
Mysql module (to be distinguished from DBD::mysql!) if you are concerned
about compatibility to existing applications! [n]
Where is your MySQL installed? Please tell me the directory that
contains the subdir 'include'. [/usr/local/mysql]
Which database should I use for testing the MySQL drivers? [test]
On which host is database test running (hostname, ip address
or host:port) [localhost]
User name for connecting to database test? [undef] suehring
Password for connecting to database test? [undef]
```

**Figure 11-2:** Running Makefile.PL for the Msql-Mysql-modules poses some questions about how you would like to configure the modules.

How you answer the questions for installation largely depends on how you intend to use the modules, and whether you have a previous version installed. If you intend to use mSQL through a Perl application, you may want to consider installing the module for that in addition to the MySQL module. In Figure 11-2, I simply select MySQL because I don't plan to use mSQL, via Perl or otherwise, for the examples.

## Running the tests

Once you have the prerequisites installed you can run the Benchmark applications and Crash-me tests. The applications are located in the `sql-bench` directory in your MySQL server directory. The Benchmarking suite includes various tests for different types of applications to look at different aspects of server performance—in particular, how it handles some crucial aspects of database operation:

- ◆ Big tables
- ◆ Alteration of tables
- ◆ Connections
- ◆ Creation of tables

- ◆ Inserts
- ◆ Selects
- ◆ Query optimization and other aspects of the server

The final test in the suite is called the Wisconsin test. (And no, this isn't something I'm just making up because I'm from the state of Wisconsin.) The Wisconsin test is a comprehensive set of tests to look at query optimization and performance of other aspects of the server.

The `sql-bench` directory contains a number of scripts, as shown in Figure 11-3.

```

192.168.1.1 - PuTTY
fw:/usr/local/mysql/sql-bench# ls -la
total 488
drwxr-xr-x  7 505      234        4096 Jun 11 17:43 .
drwxr-xr-x 12 505      234        4096 Jun 11 17:43 ..
-rw-r--r--  1 505      234        665 Jun 11 06:17 ChangeLog
drwxr-xr-x  2 505      234        4096 Jun 11 06:26 Comments/
drwxr-xr-x  4 505      234        4096 Jun 11 06:26 Data/
-rw-r--r--  1 505      234        4320 Jun 11 06:17 README*
drwxr-xr-x  2 505      234       16384 Jun 11 06:26 Results/
drwxr-xr-x  2 505      234        8192 Jun 11 06:26 Results-win32/
-rw-r--r--  1 505      234        818 Jun 11 06:17 TODO
-rwxr--r--  1 505      234       13966 Jun 11 17:42 bench-init.pl*
-rwxr--r--  1 505      234       16223 Jun 11 17:42 compare-results*
-rwxr--r--  1 505      234       9829 Jun 11 17:42 copy-db*
-rwxr--r--  1 505      234       107877 Jun 11 17:42 crash-me*
-rwxr--r--  1 505      234       22088 Jun 11 17:42 graph-compare-results*
drwxr-xr-x  2 505      234       4096 Jun 11 06:26 limits/
-rwxr--r--  1 505      234       6897 Jun 11 17:42 run-all-tests*
-rwxr--r--  1 505      234       97239 Jun 11 17:42 server-cfg*
-rwxr--r--  1 505      234       24887 Jun 11 17:42 test-ATIS*
-rwxr--r--  1 505      234       4989 Jun 11 17:42 test-alter-table*
-rwxr--r--  1 505      234       4138 Jun 11 17:42 test-big-tables*
-rwxr--r--  1 505      234       8610 Jun 11 17:42 test-connect*
-rwxr--r--  1 505      234       6932 Jun 11 17:42 test-create*
-rwxr--r--  1 505      234       46128 Jun 11 17:42 test-insert*
-rwxr--r--  1 505      234       13588 Jun 11 17:42 test-select*
-rwxr--r--  1 505      234       11836 Jun 11 17:42 test-wisconsin*

```

**Figure 11-3:** A directory listing for the `sql-bench` directory in MySQL

You can run the tests individually or all at once. Regardless of the whether you run them one at a time or all at once, you must specify at least a password to enable the programs to run. Other command-line switches are available to specify user and host. For example, to run the `test-select` application, the following command line would be used:

```
./test-select --password=password
```

As you can see, you have to specify the actual password on the command line for the application to run. If you specify the user, do so with the `--user=username` syntax. To specify the host, use `--host=host` syntax.

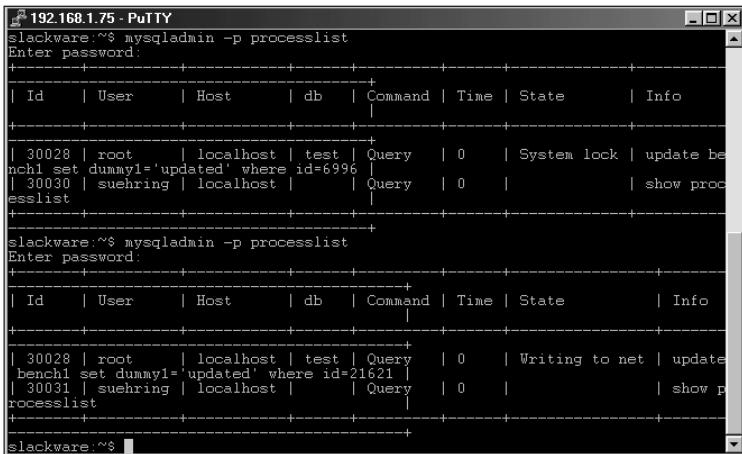
The script that calls all the other testing applications (and runs them all in sequence) is called `run-all-tests`. This script also requires that the password be given as an argument. Running this script on a slower server—say, a Pentium 200MMX with 96MB RAM—can increase the server load (not to mention that the tests themselves take hours). Therefore I would not recommend running these tests in a production environment.

**Caution**

Running the testing suite can cause performance problems on the MySQL server. I recommend against running the testing suite during peak usage or in a production environment.

Currently the tests are not multithreaded; they open one connection at a time to the MySQL server. This does limit the ability of the tests to truly simulate a real-world environment where multiple users or threads frequently use the database simultaneously. In future versions, MySQL AB will add to the testing suite to run multiple threads.

If the tests are taking an incredibly long time and you think something may have gone wrong, you can check the progress of the tests with a couple commands on the MySQL server. Running the `SHOW PROCESSLIST` statement or `mysqladmin processlist` command will a single thread running for the tests, as shown in Figure 11-4. Note the different values in the 'Info' field as the testing suite runs `INSERT` statements.



```
192.168.1.75 - Putty
slackware:~$ mysqladmin -p processlist
Enter password:
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Id   | User   | Host   | db    | Command | Time   | State  | Info
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| 30028 | root   | localhost | test | Query   | 0      | System lock | update bench1 set dummy1='updated' where id=6996
| 30030 | suehring | localhost |      | Query   | 0      |          | show processlist
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
slackware:~$ mysqladmin -p processlist
Enter password:
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Id   | User   | Host   | db    | Command | Time   | State  | Info
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| 30028 | root   | localhost | test | Query   | 0      | Writing to net | update bench1 set dummy1='updated' where id=21621
| 30031 | suehring | localhost |      | Query   | 0      |          | show processlist
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
slackware:~$
```

**Figure 11-4:** The `mysqladmin processlist` shows the progress of the testing suite, in this instance the `INSERT` tests.

Because the tests simulate so many different applications and implementations, if you know you're going to have an `INSERT`-heavy application, you can limit the testing to just the `INSERT` test. Then, by tweaking variables to improve `INSERT` performance and rerunning the test, you can see whether you get a noticeable performance improvement from the new settings.

## Sample Configuration Files

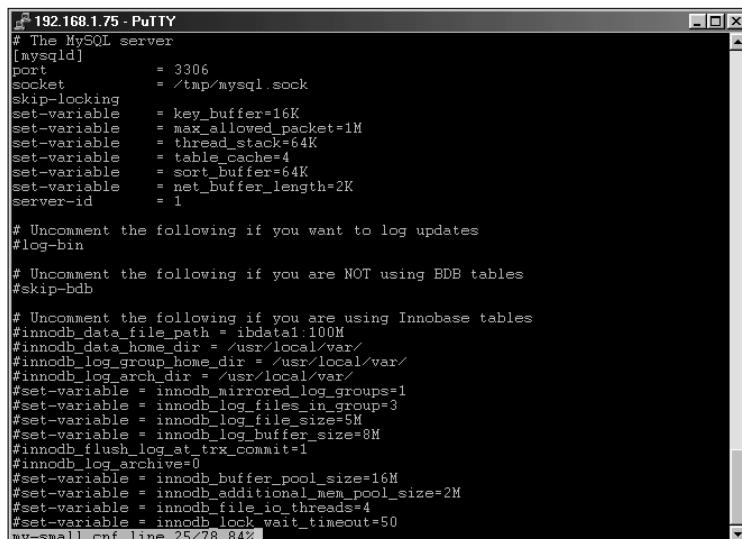
Four sample configuration files come with MySQL. These files provide defaults based on the hardware that MySQL server will be run on. The sample configuration files can provide a good starting point for defaults. For most applications, the default settings will work just fine.

### Examination of the sample configuration files

The sample configuration files can be found in the '`support-files`' directory of your MySQL installation. The four files range in recommended use from machines with less than 64MB RAM to machines with 1G to 2G RAM. For each of the files, I'm going to examine the main server portion underneath the `[mysqld]` section, and also other changes that take place in the file to affect other applications such as `Mysqldump` and so on.

The first file, for machines with less than 64MB RAM, is called `my-small.cnf`. MySQL AB recommends this configuration file for use where MySQL is not the primary application, and is only used now and then for minor database functions.

The relevant section from `my-small.cnf` is shown in Figure 11-5.



```
# The MySQL server
[mysqld]
port      = 3306
socket    = /tmp/mysql.sock
skip-locking
set-variable = key_buffer=16K
set-variable = max_allowed_packet=1M
set-variable = thread_stack=64K
set-variable = table_cache=4
set-variable = sort_buffer=64K
set-variable = net_buffer_length=2K
server-id = 1

# Uncomment the following if you want to log updates
#log-bin

# Uncomment the following if you are NOT using EDB tables
#skip-bdb

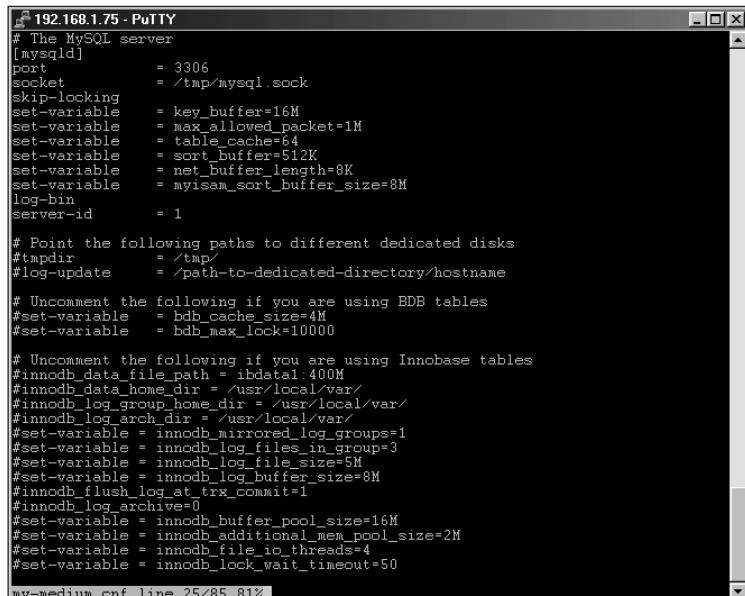
# Uncomment the following if you are using InnoDB tables
#innodb_data_file_path = ibdata1:100M
#innodb_data_home_dir = /usr/local/var/
#innodb_log_group_home_dir = /usr/local/var/
#innodb_log_arch_dir = /usr/local/var/
#set-variable = innodb_mirrored_log_groups=1
#set-variable = innodb_log_files_in_group=3
#set-variable = innodb_log_file_size=5M
#set-variable = innodb_log_buffer_size=8M
#innodb_flush_log_at_trx_commit=1
#innodb_log_archive=0
#set-variable = innodb_buffer_pool_size=16M
#set-variable = innodb_additional_mem_pool_size=2M
#set-variable = innodb_file_io_threads=4
#set-variable = innodb_lock_wait_timeout=50
my-small.cnf line 25/78 84%
```

**Figure 11-5:** The `[mysqld]` section from the `my-small.cnf` example defaults file for MySQL

The second file, `my-medium.cnf`, is for machines with smaller amounts of memory (under 128MB). If MySQL is the sole application (or one of a few primary applications) running on a machine like this, then the medium configuration file may be for you. In addition, if you have 128MB to 256MB and MySQL will be working with other applications (such as Apache or other services), the medium configuration would be a good starting point for a configuration file.

The example section of the configuration file for `[mysqld]` is shown in Figure 11-6.

The third configuration file, `my-large.cnf`, is meant for systems that have more than 512MB RAM, though less than 1GB RAM. The server is mainly responsible for database tasks with MySQL—therefore it isn't running many other services. Of course, running a Web server for an interface would probably be acceptable. However, a production Web server for public use would be better run on a separate server.



```
# The MySQL server
[mysqld]
port          = 3306
socket        = /tmp/mysql.sock
skip-locking
set-variable  = key_buffer=16M
set-variable  = max_allowed_packet=1M
set-variable  = table_cache=64
set-variable  = sort_buffer=512K
set-variable  = net_buffer_length=8K
set-variable  = myisam_sort_buffer_size=8M
log-bin
server-id    = 1

# Point the following paths to different dedicated disks
#tmpdir       = /tmp/
#log-update   = /path-to-dedicated-directory/hostname

# Uncomment the following if you are using BDB tables
#set-variable = bdb_cache_size=4M
#set-variable = bdb_max_lock=10000

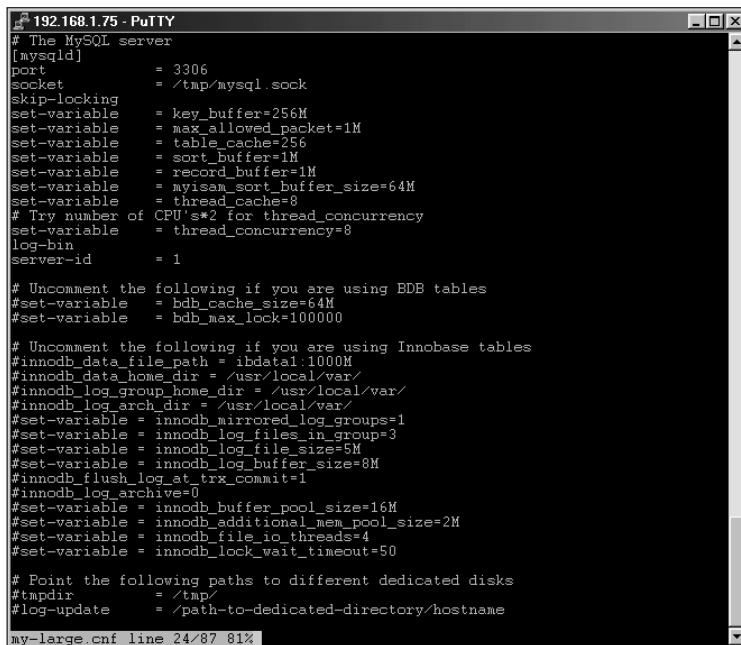
# Uncomment the following if you are using InnoDB tables
#innodb_data_file_path = ibdata1:400M
#innodb_data_home_dir = /usr/local/var/
#innodb_log_group_home_dir = /usr/local/var/
#innodb_log_arch_dir = /usr/local/var/
#set-variable  = innodb_mirrored_log_groups=1
#set-variable  = innodb_log_files_in_group=3
#set-variable  = innodb_log_file_size=5M
#set-variable  = innodb_log_buffer_size=8M
#innodb_flush_log_at_trx_commit=1
#innodb_log_archive=0
#set-variable  = innodb_buffer_pool_size=16M
#set-variable  = innodb_additional_mem_pool_size=2M
#set-variable  = innodb_file_io_threads=4
#set-variable  = innodb_lock_wait_timeout=50

my-medium.cnf line 25/85 81%
```

**Figure 11-6:** The `[mysqld]` section from the `my-medium.cnf` example defaults file for MySQL

The `[mysqld]` section for `my-large.cnf` is shown in Figure 11-7.

Finally, the example configuration file for the largest configurations is `my-huge.cnf`. This file is meant as an example file for systems with 1GB RAM or more, where MySQL is the *sole* application or service running on the server. If you intend to run any other applications or services, you should run them servers other than the MySQL server—and you can use this example file as a good starting point. If you are running a MySQL server in such an environment, you will probably have to set other variables specifically to match your application.



```
# The MySQL server
[mysqld]
port          = 3306
socket        = /tmp/mysql.sock
skip-locking
set-variable  = key_buffer=256M
set-variable  = max_allowed_packet=1M
set-variable  = table_cache=256
set-variable  = sort_buffer=1M
set-variable  = record_buffer=1M
set-variable  = myisam_sort_buffer_size=64M
set-variable  = thread_cache=8
# Try number of CPU's*2 for thread_concurrency
set-variable  = thread_concurrency=8
log-bin
server-id    = 1

# Uncomment the following if you are using EDB tables
#set-variable  = bdb_cache_size=64M
#set-variable  = bdb_max_lock=100000

# Uncomment the following if you are using InnoDB tables
#innodb_data_file_path = ibdata1:1000M
#innodb_data_home_dir = /usr/local/var/
#innodb_log_group_home_dir = /usr/local/var/
#innodb_log_arch_dir = /usr/local/var/
#set-variable  = innodb_mirrored_log_groups=1
#set-variable  = innodb_log_files_in_group=3
#set-variable  = innodb_log_file_size=5M
#set-variable  = innodb_log_buffer_size=8M
#innodb_flush_log_at_trx_commit=1
#innodb_log_archive=0
#set-variable  = innodb_buffer_pool_size=16M
#set-variable  = innodb_additional_mem_pool_size=2M
#set-variable  = innodb_file_io_threads=4
#set-variable  = innodb_lock_wait_timeout=50

# Point the following paths to different dedicated disks
#tmpdir       = /tmp/
#log-update   = /path-to-dedicated-directory/hostname

my-large.cnf line 24/87 81%
```

**Figure 11-7:** The [mysqld] section from the my-large.cnf example configuration file for MySQL.

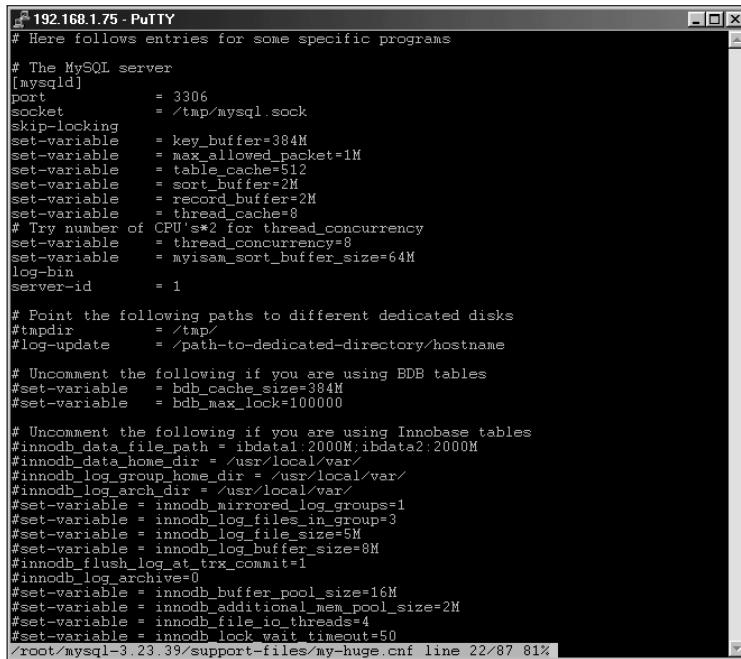
The [mysqld] section from the example configuration file is shown in Figure 11-8.

Notice how the configuration file examples differ from each other. In the example configuration file for Huge database servers, the buffer sizes take advantage of the large amounts of RAM memory available for use. The configuration-file example for Small servers uses much less RAM for buffers and other parameters.

## Developing your own configuration file

The first recommendation I have is to *use an example file that closely matches your configuration* — not only of your machine, but also of your planned application(s). For example, I use the my-small.cnf file for the example server that I'm using — a Pentium 200MMX with 96MB RAM.

After starting the database server, monitor the variables and performance through the use of the mysqladmin extended-status command. Of course, your users will tell you if the database is performing slowly.



```
# Here follows entries for some specific programs
# The MySQL server
[mysqld]
port          = 3306
socket        = /tmp/mysql.sock
skip-locking
set-variable  = key_buffer=384M
set-variable  = max_allowed_packet=1M
set-variable  = table_cache=512
set-variable  = sort_buffer=2M
set-variable  = record_buffer=2M
set-variable  = thread_cache=8
# Try number of CPU's*2 for thread_concurrency
set-variable  = thread_concurrency=8
set-variable  = myisam_sort_buffer_size=64M
log-bin
server-id    = 1

# Point the following paths to different dedicated disks
#tmpdir       = /tmp/
#log-update   = /path-to-dedicated-directory/hostname

# Uncomment the following if you are using BDB tables
#set-variable = bdb_cache_size=384M
#set-variable = bdb_max_lock=100000

# Uncomment the following if you are using InnoDB tables
#innodb_data_file_path ibdata1:2000M;ibdata2:2000M
#innodb_data_home_dir = /usr/local/var/
#innodb_log_group_home_dir = /usr/local/var/
#innodb_log_arch_dir = /usr/local/var/
#set-variable = innodb_mirrored_log_groups=1
#set-variable = innodb_log_files_in_group=3
#set-variable = innodb_log_file_size=5M
#set-variable = innodb_log_buffer_size=8M
#innodb_flush_log_at_trx_commit=1
#innodb_log_archive=0
#set-variable = innodb_buffer_pool_size=16M
#set-variable = innodb_additional_mem_pool_size=2M
#set-variable = innodb_file_io_threads=4
#set-variable = innodb_lock_wait_timeout=50
[root@mysql-3-23-39 support-files]# my-huge.cnf line 22/87 81%
```

**Figure 11-8:** The [mysqld] section from the my-huge.cnf example configuration file for MySQL.

When the performance of the MySQL server is degraded, it is time to analyze why it is happening. One item that can assist, though it does create performance degradation itself, is the `log` option in the configuration file. Using the `log` function, you can ensure that all queries to the server are logged (see Figure 11-9). Using this log file, you can then determine whether queries can be optimized—or whether you have to fine-tune a server variable. To enable the `log` function, add the keyword `log` within the [mysqld] section of the MySQL configuration file.

Other logging options, as defined in Table 11-1, can assist in diagnosing what parameters and variables are working and which ones might not be. With some patience while tuning the server, you can use these logging options to help make MySQL’s performance exceptional.

 **Tip**

Be sure to turn off logging when it’s needed; it can degrade performance.

 **Caution**

Be careful not to increase too many values at once or make memory-based values too large. This can cause disk-swapping behavior as the server runs out of available RAM and has to use (slower) virtual memory.

```

192.168.1.75 - Putty
slackware:~# tail /usr/local/var/slackware.log
011130 20:55:30      4 Connect    root@localhost on mysql
011130 20:55:40      4 Query     SELECT * FROM user
011130 20:55:42      4 Query     SELECT user FROM user WHERE user = 'suehring'
011130 20:55:47      4 Query     SELECT * FROM user.host
011130 20:55:51      4 Query     SELECT * FROM user.db
011130 20:56:07      4 Query     SELECT * FROM user.db WHERE user.user = db.u
ser
011130 20:56:19      4 Query     SELECT user.host FROM user.db WHERE user.us
er = db.user
011130 20:56:26      4 Query     SELECT user.user.host FROM user.db WHERE
user.user = db.user
011130 20:56:32      4 Query     SELECT user.user.host.db.db FROM user.d
b WHERE user.user = db.user
011130 20:56:42      4 Quit
slackware:~#

```

**Figure 11-9:** An example of the logfile for queries with the log option enabled in the configuration file

Figure 11-10, for example, shows sample output from a run of the test-select benchmark.

```

192.168.1.75 - Putty
slackware:/usr/local/sql-bench# Time for select_query_cache (10000): 1025 wallclock secs (12.62 usr 1.04 sys + 0.00 cusr 0.00 csys = 0.00 CPU)
Time for select_query_cache2 (10000): 1020 wallclock secs (12.20 usr 0.97 sys + 0.00 cusr 0.00 csys = 0.00 CPU)

Testing big selects on the table
Time for select_big (70:17207): 7 wallclock secs ( 0.47 usr 0.11 sys + 0.00 c
usr 0.00 csys = 0.00 CPU)
Time for select_query_cache2 (10000): 1020 wallclock secs (11.01 usr 0.94 sys +
0.00 cusr 0.00 csys = 0.00 CPU)

Testing big selects on the table
Time for select_big (70:17207): 6 wallclock secs ( 0.58 usr 0.04 sys + 0.00 c
usr 0.00 csys = 0.00 CPU)
Note: Query took longer than time-limit: 600
Estimating end time based on:
123 queries in 3 loops of 10 loops took 731 seconds
Estimated time for select_range (410:334594): 2436 wallclock secs (33.13 usr 5.
57 sys + 0.00 cusr 0.00 csys = 0.00 CPU)
Note: Query took longer than time-limit: 600
Estimating end time based on:
123 queries in 3 loops of 10 loops took 729 seconds
Estimated time for select_range (410:334594): 2430 wallclock secs (32.53 usr 6.
37 sys + 0.00 cusr 0.00 csys = 0.00 CPU)

slackware:/usr/local/sql-bench# Note: Query took longer than time-limit: 600
Estimating end time based on:
26425 queries in 3775 loops of 10000 loops took 601 seconds
Estimated time for min_max_on_key (70000): 1592 wallclock secs (82.12 usr 7.79
sys + 0.00 cusr 0.00 csys = 0.00 CPU)
Note: Query took longer than time-limit: 600
Estimating end time based on:
26376 queries in 3768 loops of 10000 loops took 601 seconds
Estimated time for min_max_on_key (70000): 1595 wallclock secs (88.14 usr 7.54
sys + 0.00 cusr 0.00 csys = 0.00 CPU)
Note: Query took longer than time-limit: 600
Estimating end time based on:
7680 queries in 1536 loops of 10000 loops took 601 seconds
Estimated time for count_on_key (50000): 3912 wallclock secs (64.45 usr 5.99 sy
s + 0.00 cusr 0.00 csys = 0.00 CPU)

Note: Query took longer than time-limit: 600

```

**Figure 11-10:** Sample output of the test-select benchmarking application running with the generic my-small.cnf configuration file

After getting the results, I take a look at the values from `mysqladmin extended-status`, as shown in Figure 11-11.

| Created_tmp_disk_tables  | 0         |
|--------------------------|-----------|
| Created_tmp_tables       | 15544     |
| Created_tmp_files        | 7284      |
| Delayed_insert_threads   | 0         |
| Delayed_writes           | 0         |
| Delayed_errors           | 0         |
| Flush_commands           | 1         |
| Handler_delete           | 0         |
| Handler_read_first       | 33765     |
| Handler_read_key         | 20039289  |
| Handler_read_next        | 150937273 |
| Handler_read_prev        | 15086     |
| Handler_read_rnd         | 36620000  |
| Handler_read_rnd_next    | 445606105 |
| Handler_update           | 19800000  |
| Handler_write            | 135660000 |
| Key_blocks_used          | 11        |
| Key_read_requests        | 10000584  |
| Key_reads                | 2167169   |
| Key_write_requests       | 68976     |
| Key_writes               | 68976     |
| Max_used_connections     | 1         |
| Not_flushed_key_blocks   | 0         |
| Not_flushed_delayed_rows | 0         |
| Open_tables              | 0         |
| Open_files               | 0         |
| Open_streams             | 0         |
| Opened_tables            | 11        |
| Questions                | 142376    |
| Select_full_join         | 0         |
| Select_full_range_join   | 0         |
| Select_range             | 17050     |
| Select_range_check       | 0         |
| Select_scan              | 53695     |
| Slave_running            | OFF       |
| Slave_open_temp_tables   | 0         |
| Slow_launch_threads      | 0         |
| Slow_queries             | 60        |
| Sort_merge_passes        | 3642      |
| Sort_range               | 0         |
| Sort_rows                | 36620000  |
| Sort_scan                | 5642      |
| Table_locks_immediate    | 142363    |

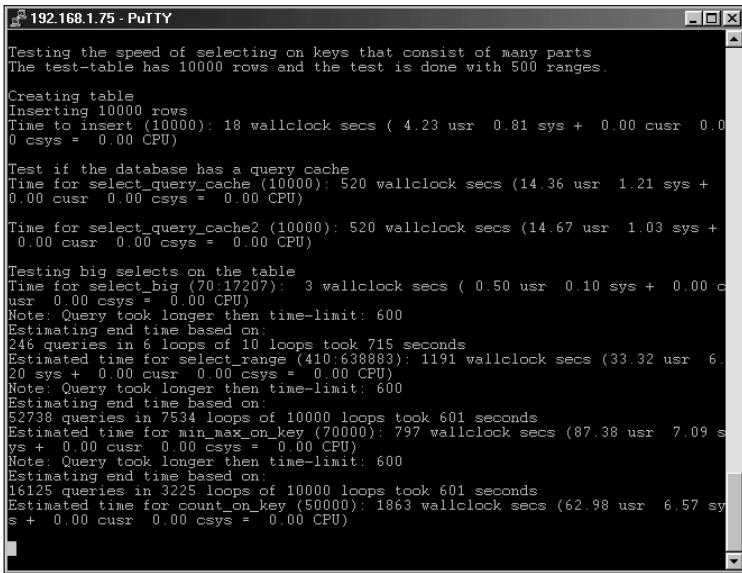
**Figure 11-11:** Examination of the values from the `mysqladmin extended-status` command after running the test-select benchmark

Notice the values for `key_read_requests` and `key_reads`. This indicates that there were a large number of requests for index use and that many of them couldn't be handled by the `key_buffer`. Therefore, I increase the `key_buffer_size` in the configuration file and re-run the tests to see whether I can get any improved results. The results of the new test are shown in Figure 11-12.

The increase in performance for the `test_select` application did not come without cost. To get the performance improvement, I increased the `key_buffer_size` value to 16M from 16K! On a server with only 96MB RAM to begin with, this might not be such a good idea—disk swapping can increase if other applications that are currently running require much memory.

Also, notice that the increase in `key_buffer_size` does not show up on the same order as the increase in performance. In effect, I increased the value from 16K to 16M. That's an increase of 1,000 times. If you compare the results from Figure 11-10 and Figure 11-12 you'll see that the times were cut by roughly 50%. Therefore increasing the `key_buffer_size` value to 16M is (to put it mildly) somewhat aggressive for this implementation.

The key\_buffer\_size example just given shows you how to diagnose the performance of your MySQL server. You should be able to use your knowledge of the commands to work with the server and improve performance where necessary.



The screenshot shows a PuTTY terminal window with the title "192.168.1.75 - PuTTY". The window displays the output of a MySQL benchmark script. The text in the window includes:

```
Testing the speed of selecting on keys that consist of many parts
The test-table has 10000 rows and the test is done with 500 ranges.

Creating table
Inserting 10000 rows
Time to insert (10000): 18 wallclock secs ( 4.23 usr  0.81 sys +  0.00 cusr  0.0
0 csys =  0.00 CPU)

Test if the database has a query cache
Time for select_query_cache (10000): 520 wallclock secs (14.36 usr  1.21 sys +
0.00 cusr  0.00 csys =  0.00 CPU)

Time for select_query_cache2 (10000): 520 wallclock secs (14.67 usr  1.03 sys +
0.00 cusr  0.00 csys =  0.00 CPU)

Testing big selects on the table
Time for select_big (70:17207): 3 wallclock secs ( 0.50 usr  0.10 sys +  0.00 c
user  0.00 csys =  0.00 CPU)
Note: Query took longer than time-limit: 600
Estimating end time based on:
246 queries in 6 loops of 10 loops took 715 seconds
Estimated time for select_range (410:638883): 1191 wallclock secs (33.32 usr  6.
20 sys +  0.00 cusr  0.00 csys =  0.00 CPU)
Note: Query took longer than time-limit: 600
Estimating end time based on:
52738 queries in 7534 loops of 10000 loops took 601 seconds
Estimated time for min_max_on_key (70000): 797 wallclock secs (87.38 usr  7.09 s
ys +  0.00 cusr  0.00 csys =  0.00 CPU)
Note: Query took longer than time-limit: 600
Estimating end time based on:
16125 queries in 3225 loops of 10000 loops took 601 seconds
Estimated time for count_on_key (50000): 1863 wallclock secs (62.98 usr  6.57 sy
s +  0.00 cusr  0.00 csys =  0.00 CPU)
```

**Figure 11-12:** An increase in the key\_buffer\_size value greatly improved performance for the test-select benchmark.

Other variables that can assist in improving performance depend on the hardware and applications. For example, if you have an application that opens many threads and neglects to close them, you could lower the connect\_timeout variable. Of course, the better solution would be to fix the faulty application and have a talk with the developer who designed it.

Another example: The error message "Too many open tables" indicates that you might consider increasing the table\_cache size or changing the design of the databases on the server. Other variables (some of them relatively self-evident) can be set with little trouble—for example, the max\_user\_connections variable. If you need to make more connections available, you can increase this value and restart the server.

## Bringing it all together

Applications change, data changes, and other parameters on the server have to change as well. Therefore tuning and monitoring of server variables is not a one-time task. You should check and monitor performance regularly through the extended-status and status commands, as well as by monitoring the logs.

If you notice a slowdown of MySQL during certain operations you may have to tweak a variable or two. Through proper diagnostics and testing, you can determine which variables to alter to improve performance. MySQL provides enough feedback and tools to help you get this job done.

## Running More Than One MySQL Server on the Same Machine

A server configuration that some administrators find the need to implement is one where multiple instances of MySQL are running on the same physical machine. The MySQL server software uses completely separate databases that know nothing of the other MySQL server or servers running on that machine. This section looks at how to install multiple MySQL servers on the same computer.

### Configuration of multiple MySQL servers

For more than one MySQL server to run successfully on the same machine, the servers must use different directories for the MySQL server files and databases. In addition, each server must use a unique socket file and port number. If you are installing from source, you can specify these parameters at compile time. This is the method recommended by MySQL AB; it looks like this:

```
./configure --with-tcp-port=<port_num>, with-unix-socket-path=<socket_file>, --prefix=<directory>
```

If you want to use binary versions of MySQL you can specify the path and file options on the command-line or in a MySQL configuration file. Here's the syntax to use when you specify them on the command line:

```
./mysqld_safe --socket=<socket_file> --port=<port_num> --datadir=<dir>
```



In older versions of MySQL, the command to start the server is `safe_mysqld`.

### Connecting to multiple MySQL servers

When connecting to a MySQL server that is not listening on the default port of 3306 or is available through a non-default socket file you must specify this on the command-line. For example, to connect to a MySQL server running on port 6603 using the CLI, the additional switch `--port=<port>` or `-P <port>` is necessary:

```
mysql --port=6603
```

Other defaults may be read from the default MySQL configuration file. However, this file may refer to the wrong MySQL server. Using the `--defaults-file=<filename>`, you can specify the file that is read for defaults.

If you don't specify a hostname, MySQL will assume that you are connecting to the server on localhost and will use the socket to connect to the server. In such an event you need to specify the location of the socket file. Do so with the `-S <socket_file>` or `--socket=<socket_file>` switch; the command looks like this:

```
mysql --socket=/directory/socketfile.sock
```

## Summary

MySQL can be—and should be—tuned to the physical server hardware that it is running on, and configured for the main application or applications that it will be serving. When set correctly, the MySQL server variables can improve the performance of the server and thus the applications using the database.

- ◆ You can look at all the variables and settings for the server through the `SHOW VARIABLES` statement from within the MySQL CLI (or with the `mysqladmin variables` command).
- ◆ Though many settings are available for a MySQL server, most of them do need not be individually configured.
- ◆ MySQL comes with benchmarking and testing utilities for diagnosing server performance.
- ◆ MySQL AB has included sample configuration files for different sizes and applications.
- ◆ Among these configuration files, you can choose from small, medium, large, and huge implementations.
- ◆ Once an example configuration file has been chosen, it should be customized for the application and installation that the MySQL server will be used for.
- ◆ Customizing the server variables is a process that takes time. The administrator can change settings and then use one or all of the benchmarking utilities to test the performance of the MySQL server.
- ◆ Because data and applications change, the server should be monitored for performance issues. If you notice performance degradation, further testing should reveal where bottlenecks are.



# Security

**A**n oft-overlooked area of MySQL and computers in general is security. How many patches and security fixes have to come out for a Web server before an administrator updates it? How often does a server have to be broken into before an administrator turns off unnecessary services and changes unsecured default settings? These questions are not rhetorical; sooner or later, every administrator must face them.

This chapter introduces some simple security rules and suggestions to improve the security of your MySQL server and the integrity of the data you keep there.

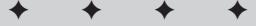
## Security of the MySQL Host Server

The *least-privilege system* is a high-security approach to the assigning of access privileges to users. It requires that no unnecessary services be enabled on the server, that the server software gets regular updates as soon as they are available, and that users are not given more privileges than their work requires.

If everyone subscribed to the least-privilege system, I believe there would be much less business for security consultants. Although I admit that it takes time to apply patches and keep up with security updates, the same arguments still apply: How much time does it take to repair a server damaged by unauthorized use? How valuable is your data if you “can’t afford” to spend the time securing your systems?

A good starting point in any discussion of system security is to define *unauthorized use* and *attack* in consistent, practical terms. Although the words themselves may seem obvious, attacks and unauthorized uses actually incorporate several distinct concepts:

- ◆ Exploits, whether initiated from outside or inside, take advantage of a security hole for the attacker’s own gain.



### In This Chapter

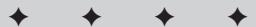
Implementing security for the MySQL host server

Setting up MySQL software security

Configuring MySQL authentication and privileges

Managing user accounts in MySQL

Coping with common security problems



- ◆ Attacks (again, whether initiated from outside or inside) are often more aggressive and seek to disrupt, damage, or even bring down the target system.
- ◆ Unauthorized use is not limited to purposeful attacks or exploits on a server or network; it can also be unintended, as in these examples:
  - A user with too many privileges may not realize they are inappropriate, use them inefficiently or incorrectly, and waste system resources such as storage space and bandwidth.
  - A harried developer who means no harm can unleash faulty code that disrupts a server no less than does a hacker attack.
  - Sometimes an administrator's test of system security goes awry and interferes too much with its operation.

Knowing that your system is vulnerable to disruption, whether malicious or unintentional, should shape your security policy. The least-privilege concept provides a good starting point, as in these examples:

- ◆ Providing a well-thought-out set of limited privileges to a developer helps ensure that new applications for the server are realistically tested, but also limits the possible consequences of running faulty code.
- ◆ Limiting users to minimal necessary privileges can thwart some attacks before they even begin.



#### Note

Although the usual assumption is that attacks always start outside and/or are always intentional, it's far from true. When I refer to attacks, attackers, or unauthorized uses, I have in mind a wider definition that includes both intentional and unintentional disruptions.

## Locating security information

Many administrators and would-be administrators complain that they have trouble keeping up with updates. No central repository of information for updates and reports of exploits now exists (although that may be all to the good—why give hackers any more ideas than they already have?); in the world of network security, you're largely on your own. To give you a useful starting point as you grapple with issues of network security, I've included some online sites that can help, and interspersed this chapter with some essential security concepts to keep in mind, the first of which is as follows:



#### Note

Maintain a proactive approach to keeping up with exploits and problems with software you are running.

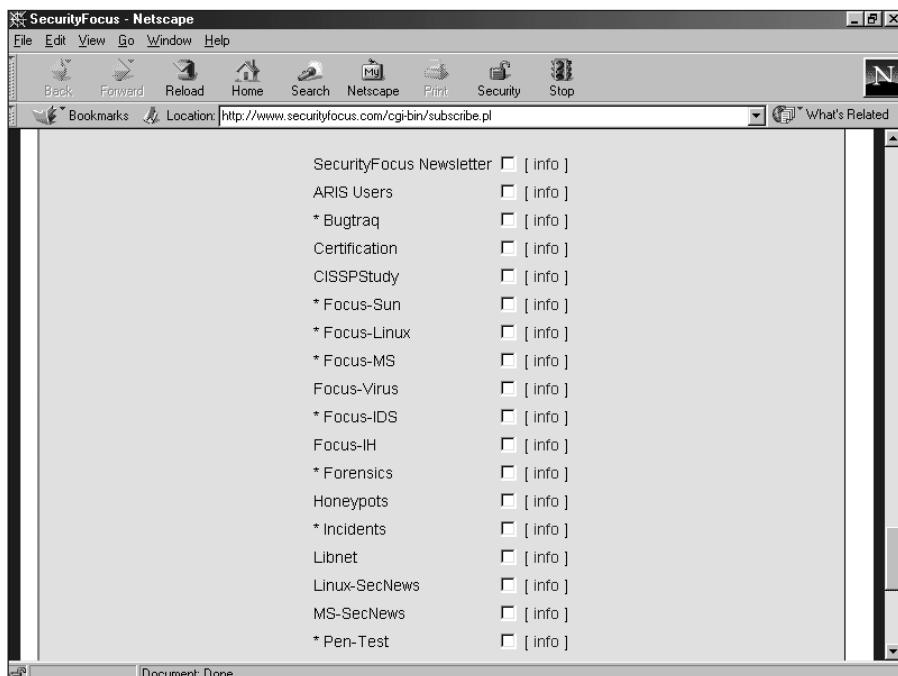
Security does require a proactive approach; keeping servers and software secure is difficult enough. Companies that want to maintain a viable reputation for their

products may want to suppress all knowledge of exploits or try to keep them secret, but by far the more ethical response to security vulnerability is to produce, document, and distribute an effective patch. The availability of such patches (and a good track record for producing them in a timely manner) is one telling criterion that helps define an above-average vendor.

## Security focus

Even though information on security is scattered across the Internet at diffuse locations, one Web site stands out as a consistent repository for reliable information: Security Focus, <http://www.securityfocus.com/>. Using this site an administrator can keep up with exploits and security patches as soon as they are available.

The Security Focus Web site is also home to numerous mailing lists, security-related and otherwise. Figure 12-1 shows some of the mailing lists available for subscription on the Security Focus Web site. One of the most notable and famous is the Bugtraq mailing list, widely regarded as the most adept at keeping up with security issues across a wide variety of platforms. For people worried about being inundated with yet more e-mail, many high-volume lists at Security Focus offer digest-mode subscriptions as well.



**Figure 12-1:** Some mailing lists, security-related and otherwise, available from the Security Focus Web site

## Apply patches and fixes

Just keeping up with the exploits and holes that come to light in servers and software isn't enough. You must apply the patches and fixes as soon as they are released. This brings me to the simple second rule:



### Note

Apply patches and fixes as soon as they are released.

If no patch is available, try to find a workaround that effectively thwarts attacks. For example, I've maintained a system that ran a public FTP server serving thousands of real users. Along with the real users, the FTP server also allowed anonymous access for non-paying people from all over the Internet to download files.

A certain exploit against that particular FTP server could only be done by anonymous access. No patch was immediately available from the vendor, so I chose to disable anonymous access until a patch could be released. Although this is not an optimal solution, sometimes you have to disable access for a relatively short time in order to avoid a much worse alternative—a non-trusted user getting administrative rights. As soon as a patch was available for the FTP server, I applied it and re-enabled anonymous access.

## Disable unused programs and services

Every now and again, just for fun, I assist a friend with the security of his computer systems by performing a port scan of his servers. I never cease to be amazed at how many ports he leaves open for the world to take advantage of. He runs a basic Web server that also serves as an e-mail server. Such a server should have no more than three ports open: TCP port 80 for the Web server, TCP port 25 for the SMTP server and TCP port 110 for the POP3 server. Unfortunately, it doesn't stop there. He was surprised to learn that he also had an NNTP server and even an IRC server running!

The lesson is summed up in another basic security principle:



### Note

Disable unused services and verify that only the services you specify are running.

Much of the problem with extraneous services being enabled stems from the default installations of many operating systems and software. My friend's problem arose because he chose default options while installing Microsoft's Internet Information Server. However, the problem isn't limited to Microsoft operating systems and software. Choosing what appear to be the default options with Red Hat Linux can also yield many invisibly enabled services that are also security problems.

With a program such as `nmap` you can effectively scan both TCP and UDP ports of an Internet server to find unexpected ports that may be running. The `nmap` program is available for Linux and Windows but can scan against any IP-based host. In Figure 12-2 I run a basic `nmap` scan against one of my local machines.

```
192.168.1.1 - PuTTY
fw:~# nmap 192.168.1.71
Starting nmap V. 2.54BETA30 ( www.insecure.org/nmap/ )
Interesting ports on ns2 (192.168.1.71):
(The 1536 ports scanned but not shown below are in state: closed)
Port      State       Service
21/tcp    open        ftp
22/tcp    open        ssh
23/tcp    open        telnet
25/tcp    open        smtp
53/tcp    open        domain
80/tcp    open        http
111/tcp   open        sunrpc
113/tcp   open        auth
139/tcp   open        netbios-ssn
515/tcp   open        printer
673/tcp   open        unknown
678/tcp   open        unknown
683/tcp   open        unknown

Nmap run completed -- 1 IP address (1 host up) scanned in 4 seconds
fw:~#
```

**Figure 12-2:** The nmap program can assist in determining open ports on one of your servers.



Never perform port scans against any IP or server that you are not responsible for. Doing so can get you terminated by your ISP or worse!

Most versions of Linux and many other operating systems include a program called netstat that can help you determine which ports your sever is using to listen to online traffic. Although netstat is a powerful program that does much more than just showing which ports are listening, that listening function is a source of potential security headaches. In Figure 12-3, for example, I run the command netstat -an to produce basic output of the ports that this server is listening on. This server is listening for connections to TCP port 22 for ssh connections, UDP ports 67 and 68 to talk to a DHCP server, and TCP port 3306 for MySQL.

```
192.168.1.1 - PuTTY
Active Internet connections (servers and established)
Proto Recv-Q Send-Q Local Address          Foreign Address        State
tcp     0      20 192.168.1.22           192.168.1.135:1410  ESTABLISHED
tcp     0      0 0.0.0.0:3306            0.0.0.0:*
tcp     0      0 0.0.0.0:22            0.0.0.0:*
tcp     0      0 0.0.0.0:67            0.0.0.0:*
udp     0      0 0.0.0.0:68            0.0.0.0:*
raw    0      0 0.0.0.0:1             0.0.0.0:*
raw    0      0 0.0.0.0:6             0.0.0.0:*
raw    0      0 0.0.0.0:1             0.0.0.0:*
raw    0      0 0.0.0.0:6             0.0.0.0:*
Active UNIX domain sockets (servers and established)
Proto RefCnt Flags  Type      State         I-Node Path
unix  0      [ ACC ]   STREAM   LISTENING  237967 /tmp/mysql.sock
unix  0      [ ]      STREAM   CONNECTED  99      @00000001
line 1/15 (END)
```

**Figure 12-3:** The netstat -an command shows the ports of this server that are available for connection.

After using a program such as `netstat` or `nmap`, you should have a clearer picture of what services are running on your server. The more services you have running, the more vulnerable the server is to attack. Thus turning off all unnecessary services can save you time and headaches.

## MySQL Software Security

Up to this point, I've been looking at what you can do with the security of the host that runs the MySQL server. The security of the MySQL host server is an essential first step in enhancing the overall security of the database server (and thus the data). Without first securing the host server, no amount of MySQL security will keep your data safe.

In this section I'm going to examine what can be done with the MySQL server itself. This includes keeping the server up to date, securing communication channels, and monitoring the server status.

### MySQL updates

Though only one piece of the security puzzle the MySQL software itself is (like any other software) susceptible to problems and security exploits. Though these have been very few and far between for MySQL, the problems can happen nonetheless. Developing a systematic approach for keeping up to date with MySQL software will assist in keeping the database safe from attack.

The best method for monitoring when a new version of MySQL is released is by subscribing to the MySQL Announce mailing list. Offered for free by MySQL AB, this mailing list will give you updates when new versions of MySQL are released. Don't worry about it overcrowding your inbox; the MySQL Announce list is low-volume.

Another mailing list available for MySQL is the main MySQL mailing list. This list is much higher volume as it contains questions from general users of MySQL and discussion of many MySQL-related topics. If you would like to learn more about the inner workings of MySQL, this mailing list can help.



I've included a link to the mailing list section of the MySQL Web site on the Links document on the CD-ROM with this book.

When an update is released, you must make backups of your data prior to proceeding with the upgrade. This is necessary because of the inherent unknown in upgrades of any nature. I've usually found that if I take the time to make backups nothing will go wrong—but if I forego that step, inevitably something will fail.



In Chapter 13 backup and recovery of MySQL databases is covered in detail.

Since the upgrade process is quite customized (depending on your installation), exhaustive coverage is neither possible nor desirable here. Often the solution is as simple as recompiling or overwriting an existing MySQL installation.

## Run the server as a non-privileged user

In Linux/Unix, you can set the user account that runs the MySQL server process, `mysqld`. (This is as opposed to running the server process as the `root` superuser on the system.) Figure 12-4 shows a process listing from Linux, with the server running as a non-privileged regular user called `mysql`.

```
slackware:/usr/local# ps -auwx | grep mysql | grep -v grep
root 14703 0.4 0.8 1560 768 pts/2 S 20:30 0:00 sh /usr/local/bin/
safe mysqld --datadir=/usr/local/var --pid-file=/us
mysql 14730 0.8 4.5 35252 4304 pts/2 S 20:30 0:00 /usr/local/libexe
c/mysqld --basedir=/usr/local --datadir=/usr/local/v
mysql 14732 0.0 4.5 35252 4304 pts/2 S 20:30 0:00 /usr/local/libexe
c/mysqld --basedir=/usr/local --datadir=/usr/local/v
mysql 14733 0.0 4.5 35252 4304 pts/2 S 20:30 0:00 /usr/local/libexe
c/mysqld --basedir=/usr/local --datadir=/usr/local/v
mysql 14734 0.0 4.5 35252 4304 pts/2 S 20:30 0:00 /usr/local/libexe
c/mysqld --basedir=/usr/local --datadir=/usr/local/v
slackware:/usr/local#
```

**Figure 12-4:** Running the MySQL server as a non-privileged user can prevent unauthorized access in the event of an exploit performed on the server.

By running the server as a normal user in Linux/Unix, the server only has the same privileges as that user. In other words, if the server is exploited the attacker cannot gain further access or perform other privileged processes on the server.

To enable MySQL to run as another user on the system, follow these steps:

1. Add the user, and if desired a group, to the server. This is normally accomplished via the `useradd` and `groupadd` commands.
2. Make sure the user has access to the data and server files for MySQL. This step is accomplished with a combination of `chown` and `chmod` in Linux.
3. Add the `--user=username` option to the `mysqld` command line, or add the line `user = username` to the `my.cnf` file under the `[mysqld]` section.



Full details of installation of the MySQL server, including details on configuring the server to run as a non-privileged user, are located in Chapter 3.

## Firewalling the MySQL server

The most effective security to protect the MySQL server from outside attack is to prevent people from the outside from gaining access to the server. Installing a firewall to protect the server will help to prevent access from non-trusted hosts.

Using a passive firewalling solution to simply prevent attacks is a good solution. The use of a firewall stops outside or non-trusted locations from even knowing that a MySQL server is available at your location. An attacker can't gain access to your data if they can't find it.

Another option is to use an *active firewall* that listens on common (and even uncommon) ports for a non-trusted user sending a port-scan or probe to your machines. The active firewall then completely blocks access from that IP address to all ports.

If you must allow access to the MySQL server from outside the firewall, you need only allow access to the port on which MySQL listens for TCP connections. By default, this is port 3306. Further, you should only allow access to the MySQL port from specific trusted IP addresses. You could also create an SSH tunnel through a trusted host without having to open up any ports for MySQL on the firewall.

Even with a firewall in place, you must make sure that trusted hosts don't serve as a launching point for attackers. Monitor these machines to make sure they are up to date and have the latest security patches. Using the active firewalling solution, you can monitor these servers to make sure they aren't originating port scans or other common probes against the servers in your network or within your trusted domain.

## Communicating securely with the MySQL server

As of version 4 of MySQL, communication over TCP via the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) is possible. Prior to this all communication between server and client passed unencrypted. The ambitious attacker could therefore watch traffic as it passed and gather information on data as well as user and password information.

With SSL support enabled, the traffic between the MySQL server and the client is encrypted. Even if an attacker gains enough access to eavesdrop on an electronic conversation, he or she can't make sense of the resulting data.

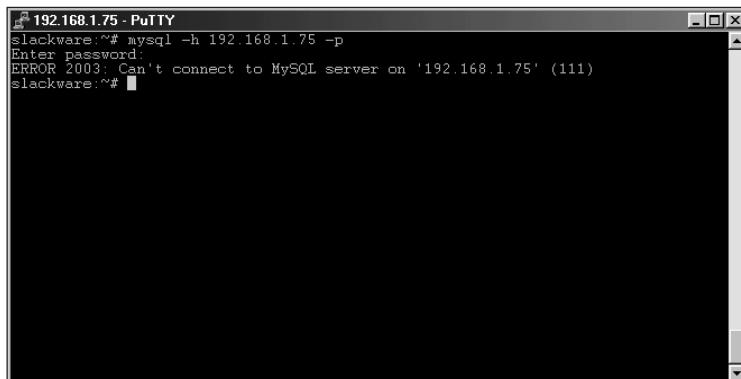


The SSL option is not enabled on a connection by default. However, you can enable it and even require it through the use of the additional user privilege system when SSL is compiled into MySQL.

## Using socket-based connections

By default, MySQL listens for connections both through sockets for local connections and via TCP/IP for remote connections. If you will not be connecting to MySQL from any hosts other than the MySQL server itself, you should disable the TCP/IP option in MySQL.

Disabling networking prevents you from using the `-h` or `host` option, whether from the local machine or from other hosts on the network. Attempting to connect to a MySQL server that is not available (or not listening for connections) via TCP/IP will result in an error, as shown in Figure 12-5.



```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
slackware:~# mysql -h 192.168.1.75 -p
Enter password:
ERROR 2003: Can't connect to MySQL server on '192.168.1.75' (111)
slackware:~#
```

**Figure 12-5:** Attempting to connect to a MySQL server that is not listening for connections, using TCP/IP

You can disable TCP/IP-based connections by adding the `--skip-networking` option to the command line when starting the server. Another way to disable TCP/IP access is to add the `skip-networking` option to the `[mysqld]` section of the MySQL configuration file.

**Note**

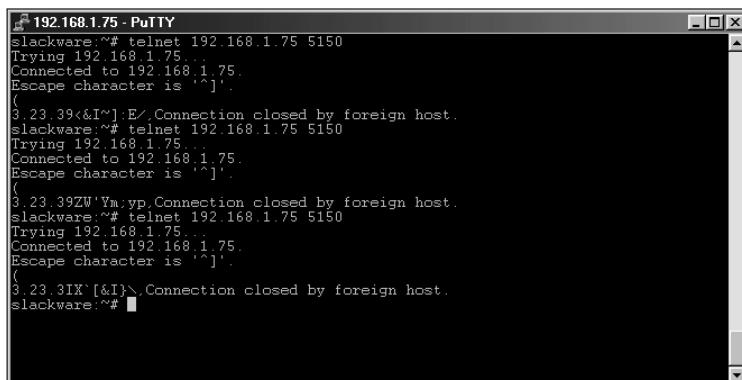
In the future, MySQL AB may alter the connection sequence, thus altering the fingerprint for MySQL. For older servers the fingerprint will remain the same.

## Changing the MySQL default port

While certainly not a substitute for a firewall or for disabling TCP/IP networking, another method for slowing an attack is to change the port that MySQL listens on for connections. By default, MySQL listens on TCP port 3306 for connections. If you change the default port, a curious person who scans for port 3306 won't discover

that you have a MySQL server unless he or she uses other methods for fingerprinting the server on another port.

Fingerprinting a MySQL server is possible. A curious person could open connections on random or sequential ports and see a familiar signature or fingerprint thus discovering your MySQL server. In Figure 12-6, I have the MySQL server set to listen on port 5150. Then, by simply telnetting to that port, I can see a repeatable pattern.



```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
slackware:~# telnet 192.168.1.75 5150
Trying 192.168.1.75...
Connected to 192.168.1.75.
Escape character is '^]'.
(
3,23,39<&I~]>E/ Connection closed by foreign host.
slackware:~# telnet 192.168.1.75 5150
Trying 192.168.1.75...
Connected to 192.168.1.75.
Escape character is '^]'.
(
3,23,39W`Vm`yp Connection closed by foreign host.
slackware:~# telnet 192.168.1.75 5150
Trying 192.168.1.75...
Connected to 192.168.1.75.
Escape character is '^]'.
(
3,23,3IX`[&I]>\.Connection closed by foreign host.
slackware:~#
```

**Figure 12-6:** Telnetting to a port that MySQL listens on shows a definite fingerprint indicating that it is indeed a MySQL server.

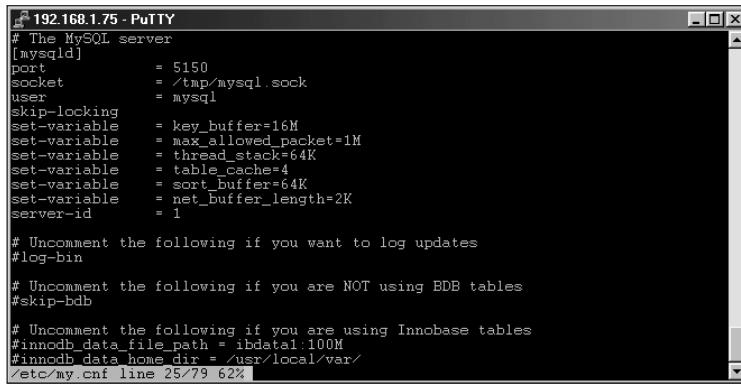
Notice, in Figure 12-6, that the pattern is always the same. The beginning of the session opens with a left parentheses followed by a line-feed. Then a pattern of digits is shown followed by eight characters. Each time I telnet to the server, the pattern repeats. Now I know not only that there is a MySQL server on this host but also what version of the server is running, as indicated by the digits.

As you can see, simply changing the port will not stop an ambitious attacker. The speed and triviality with which an attacker could scan 65,000 ports for a MySQL server makes changing the default port somewhat of a moot point. However, I still believe that changing the default port can serve a purpose to discourage the casual onlooker or curious person.

To change the default port that MySQL listens for TCP/IP connections on, add the line `port = N` to the `[mysqld]` section of the MySQL configuration file. For example, in Figure 12-7 the `[mysqld]` section is shown from an example server configuration file. (Note that the port number has been changed for the server.)

**Note**

For the sake of security, you must change any applications – including the MySQL CLI – so they connect via the alternative port number.



```
# The MySQL server
[mysqld]
port          = 5150
socket        = /tmp/mysql.sock
user          = mysql
skip-locking
set-variable  = key_buffer=16M
set-variable  = max_allowed_packet=1M
set-variable  = thread_stack=64K
set-variable  = table_cache=4
set-variable  = sort_buffer=64K
set-variable  = net_buffer_length=2K
server-id    = 1

# Uncomment the following if you want to log updates
#log-bin

# Uncomment the following if you are NOT using BDB tables
#skip-bdb

# Uncomment the following if you are using InnoDB tables
#innodb_data_file_path = ibdata1:100M
#innodb_data_home_dir = /usr/local/var/
/etc/my.cnf line 25/79 62%
```

**Figure 12-7:** Changing the port that the MySQL server listens on can help to hide the server from a curious person.

## Monitoring data sent to MySQL

When data is entered into a database from applications, especially those that allow users to type in their own values, you must check the data for errors and other anomalies. It is the responsibility of the developer to ensure that data sent to the MySQL server is clean and free from error. The errors occur from two sources:

- ◆ **A malicious attack:** With intentional attacks on the application and database, the attacker may attempt to escape DDL statements into the application. There are simple methods for preventing this type of attack including a least-privileged user and data cleansing.
- ◆ **Normal users:** Sometimes normal users of an application are more dangerous than a would-be attacker. Regardless of how many notes and documents you create for use of the application, inevitably someone will innocently enter an illegal value. The developer must account for these errors and provide some feedback to the user via error messages or regular beatings.

As an administrator, you should attempt to make sure that the developer understands what is needed from a database side to make sure the data is safe. This includes working with the developer on the design of the database and tables within the database so that the incoming data is of the proper length and type for the column.

Just as important is making sure the developer performs necessary cleansing of inputted data. These steps can be enumerated for items that the administrator and developer must work on together:

- ◆ Use a least-privileged user for connections from the application to the database or use more than one user; one user for inserts and updates, one for selects.
- ◆ Check all values to ensure that they are the expected format, string or number.

- ◆ Check all values for length.
- ◆ Check all values to make sure they contain no unexpected characters.

These tips may seem like common sense, but you might be surprised at how many applications don't check for errors in the data, or give incoming data only a glance.



Later in this chapter, I show how to add users to the database. Armed with this information, you can then add a least-privileged user account that you can use to connect to the database from applications. Thus, even if you miss a step in error checking (or someone finds a way around error checking), the damage is minimal.

## Disabling DNS

One method of attacking a server or manipulating data is to masquerade as a trusted server or client in a MySQL client-server exchange. This type of attack is possible against all applications that utilize Domain Name System (DNS) data, not just MySQL. By posing as a trusted or known host, the attacker can potentially gain an inappropriate level of privileges.

For a DNS attack to occur, the attacker must be able to alter the DNS data on one of the resolvers for your MySQL server. For example, if you have 192.168.1.1 set as a DNS server for your MySQL server, the attacker must alter the DNS data on 192.168.1.1 and send back false information about hosts in your MySQL communication. An attacker could also spoof packets within the communication and pretend to be 192.168.1.1. If DNS data is altered or untrusted an attacker could also pretend to be a trusted host because the host is part of the MySQL authentication scheme.

DNS attacks are not limited solely to the server. A DNS attack could be performed against a client as well. In a client attack, false information is passed to the client and a fake MySQL server poses as the real server (thus getting authentication information as well as the data being passed from client to server).

A lightbulb icon with the word "Tip" next to it.

### Tip

To prevent a DNS attack from being successful, you can turn off hostname lookups in MySQL. All connections will be based on IP address, with the exception of local-host connections. To disable DNS use from MySQL, start mysqld with the command-line switch `--skip-name-resolve`. You can also add `skip-name-resolve` to the MySQL configuration file.

## Dynamic MySQL monitoring of Web pages

Using the HTML function of the MySQL CLI you can create a Web page with server information. With a scheduler such as cron you could then create the Web page in regular intervals to monitor the performance of the MySQL server. The resulting Web pages won't win awards for design, but they will produce useful information for administration of the MySQL server.

Using these pages, the administrator can monitor the MySQL server's performance. This can save time and make it so other administrators can monitor the MySQL server without having to know the backend commands for MySQL administration.

**Note**

You should protect these Web pages via effective passwords; unauthorized access to them is especially dangerous.

A requirement for viewing dynamic monitoring Web page on a network is to get a Web server running. This does not have to be the same physical machine as the one that houses the MySQL server. If the machines are separate you will need to automatically transfer the resulting output from the MySQL commands to the Web server.

The following example processes are performed in Linux, running an Apache Web server. (Your version of Linux may vary slightly from the one shown here.)

### Creating the fake database

The steps involved to produce a MySQL monitoring Web page are as follows:

1. Make a publicly available directory to hold HTML output, using this command:  
`mkdir mysqlmonitor`
2. Create a password method to prevent unauthorized access to the directory; the `.htaccess` file is a useful example, and Figure 12-8 shows how to create one.

<AuthType Basic>  
  
<Limit GET POST>  
require valid-user  
</Limit>  
  
The status bar at the bottom of the terminal window shows 'Read htaccess, 9 lines, 159 chars'." data-bbox="224 570 746 785"/>

```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
<AuthUserFile /var/lib/apache/.htpasswd>
<AuthGroupFile /dev/null>
<AuthName "Authorization Required">
<AuthType Basic>

<Limit GET POST>
require valid-user
</Limit>

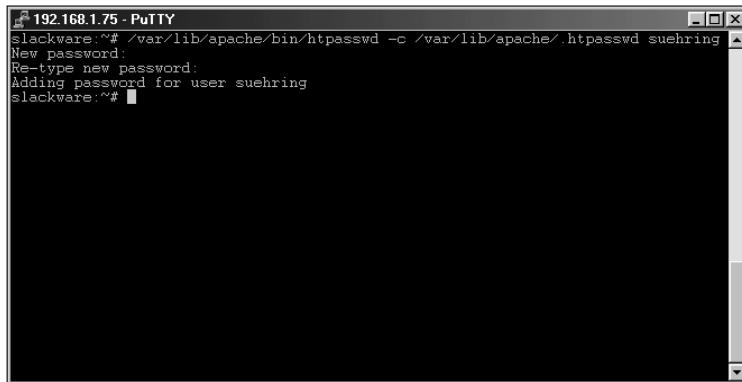
Read htaccess, 9 lines, 159 chars
```

**Figure 12-8:** Creating a `.htaccess` file within the `mysqlmonitor` directory to prevent unauthorized access to the MySQL monitoring Web pages.

3. With the `.htaccess` file in place, you must create a password file to accompany the `.htaccess` file. The name of the file is specified in the `.htaccess` file.

The user that you add for `htaccess` does not need to be a system user or exist on the system in any way except in the password file for `htaccess`. The following command creates the password file (as specified in the `.htaccess` file) and adds a user called `suehring` to the access file (as shown in Figure 12-9):

```
htpasswd -c /var/lib/apache/.htpasswd suehring
```

A screenshot of a terminal window titled "192.168.1.75 - Putty". The window shows the command "htpasswd -c /var/lib/apache/.htpasswd suehring" being run. The terminal prompts for a new password, asks to re-type it, and then confirms that a password has been added for the user "suehring".

```
slackware:~# /var/lib/apache/bin/htpasswd -c /var/lib/apache/.htpasswd suehring
New password:
Re-type new password:
Adding password for user suehring
slackware:~#
```

**Figure 12-9:** Using the `htpasswd` command to create the password file specified in the `.htaccess` file and adding a user called `suehring` to the password file

**Note**

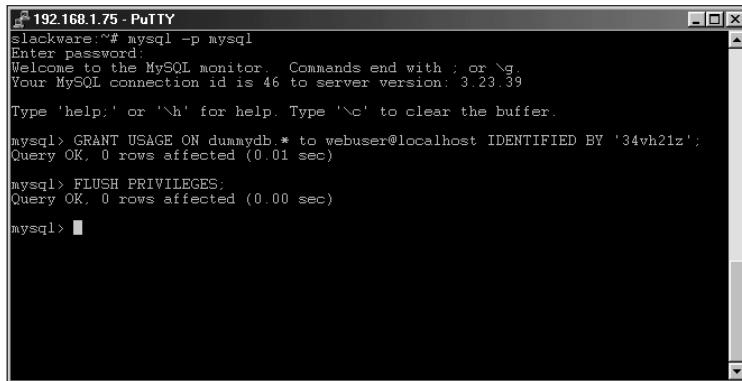
The password file for `.htaccess` should not be in a publicly available directory. In addition, adding a user to the password file for `htaccess` does not affect the user's rights on the system, if any.

4. Now add a user to the MySQL database to retrieve the information for the Web pages. To accomplish this, create a fake database and give the user access to the database.

Creating a fake database enables you to have a user on the database server with only a bare minimum of privileges—and then only on a database that holds no tables or data. You can use the `mysqladmin` command to create the fake database; do so from inside the CLI, or however you'd like. The command looks like this:

```
mysqladmin -p create dummydb
```

5. With the fake database in place, you can add the user to the database server (normally done via the MySQL CLI, as shown in Figure 12-10).

A screenshot of a PuTTY terminal window titled "192.168.1.75 - PuTTY". The session is connected to a MySQL monitor on a Slackware system. The user has entered the MySQL command-line interface and run two commands: "GRANT USAGE ON dummydb.\* to webuser@localhost IDENTIFIED BY '34vh21z';" and "FLUSH PRIVILEGES;". Both commands were successful, with zero rows affected.

```
slackware:~# mysql -p mysql
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor.  Commands end with ; or \q.
Your MySQL connection id is 46 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> GRANT USAGE ON dummydb.* to webuser@localhost IDENTIFIED BY '34vh21z';
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.01 sec)

mysql> FLUSH PRIVILEGES;
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> ■
```

**Figure 12-10:** Adding a user to the MySQL database server

6. Since you're creating Web pages with status information, the user doesn't need any extra privileges. The following command simply creates the user on the database server (but does not give the user privileges such as SELECT, INSERT, DELETE, or the like):

```
GRANT USAGE ON dummydb.* to Webuser@localhost IDENTIFIED BY  
'34vh21z';
```

**Note**

The `FLUSH PRIVILEGES` statement is not necessary when you're using the `GRANT` statement.

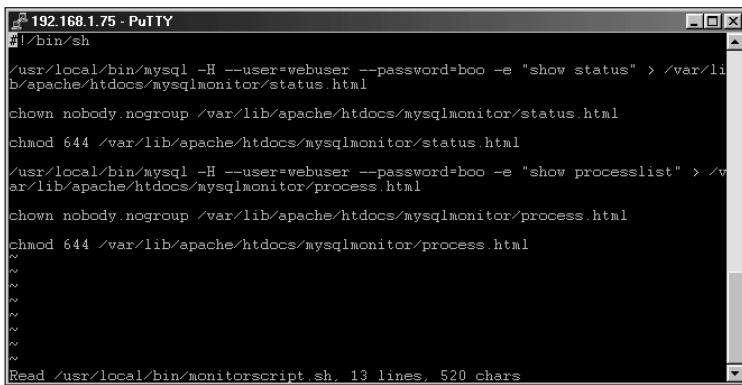
### Creating the script that makes the Web pages

With the Web server and access method ready, you can create a script for producing the actual Web pages. The script itself can be a simple shell script (which Windows users know as a Windows script), or it can be done in another language such as Perl. The concept for the script is simple: Run the MySQL CLI command `mysql` in batch mode, use the `-H` switch to produce HTML output, and redirect that output to a file.

Figures 12-11 and 12-12 show examples of simple scripts to check the status of the server via the `SHOW STATUS` statement—and also to look at the processes running on the server via the `SHOW PROCESSLIST` statement. Figure 12-11 is a simple shell script; Figure 12-12 is a script written in Perl.

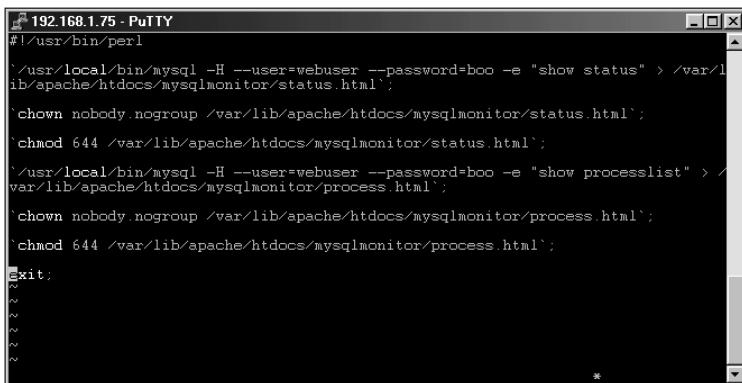
**Note**

You will probably need to change the paths to both the MySQL CLI and the directory in which you want to produce the HTML output from the script.



```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
#!/bin/sh
/usr/local/bin/mysql -H --user=webuser --password=boo -e "show status" > /var/lib/apache/htdocs/mysqlmonitor/status.html
chown nobody.nogroup /var/lib/apache/htdocs/mysqlmonitor/status.html
chmod 644 /var/lib/apache/htdocs/mysqlmonitor/status.html
/usr/local/bin/mysql -H --user=webuser --password=boo -e "show processlist" > /var/lib/apache/htdocs/mysqlmonitor/process.html
chown nobody.nogroup /var/lib/apache/htdocs/mysqlmonitor/process.html
chmod 644 /var/lib/apache/htdocs/mysqlmonitor/process.html
~
~
~
~
~
~
~
Read /usr/local/bin/monitorscript.sh, 13 lines, 520 chars
```

**Figure 12-11:** A shell script for creating two Web pages to monitor MySQL server information



```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
#!/usr/bin/perl
`/usr/local/bin/mysql -H --user=webuser --password=boo -e "show status" > /var/lib/apache/htdocs/mysqlmonitor/status.html`;
`chown nobody.nogroup /var/lib/apache/htdocs/mysqlmonitor/status.html`;
`chmod 644 /var/lib/apache/htdocs/mysqlmonitor/status.html`;
`/usr/local/bin/mysql -H --user=webuser --password=boo -e "show processlist" > /var/lib/apache/htdocs/mysqlmonitor/process.html`;
`chown nobody.nogroup /var/lib/apache/htdocs/mysqlmonitor/process.html`;
`chmod 644 /var/lib/apache/htdocs/mysqlmonitor/process.html`;
exit;
~
~
~
~
~
~
```

**Figure 12-12:** A Perl script for creating two Web pages to monitor MySQL server information. This script can be run on any system that has Perl, including Windows and Mac OS X systems, by changing the location of Perl at the top of the script.



Both these scripts are included on the CD-ROM.



Be sure to control access to the script. It contains the password for one of the users on your MySQL server.

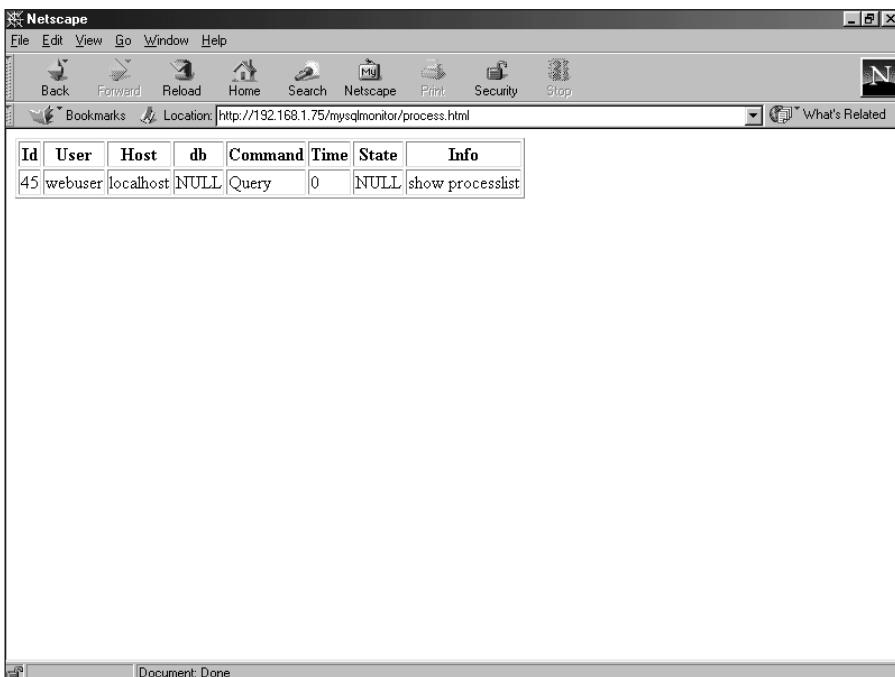
You could get fancy and use a concatenate redirect of the output to place both commands in one file. Adding the output into one file gives you one place to monitor. You could also create another script to produce output at opposite intervals; thus you could monitor changes in the variables over time.

The output from either script is shown (as viewed through a Web browser) in Figures 12-13 and 12-14.

A screenshot of a Netscape browser window displaying the output of a MySQL SHOW STATUS statement. The browser has a standard menu bar (File, Edit, View, Go, Window, Help) and toolbar (Back, Forward, Reload, Home, Search, Netscape, Print, Security, Stop). The address bar shows the URL: http://192.168.1.75/mysqlmonitor/status.html. The main content area is a table with two columns: Variable\_name and Value.

| Variable_name           | Value |
|-------------------------|-------|
| Aborted_clients         | 0     |
| Aborted_connects        | 13    |
| Bytes_received          | 2717  |
| Bytes_sent              | 34332 |
| Connections             | 45    |
| Created_tmp_disk_tables | 0     |
| Created_tmp_tables      | 0     |
| Created_tmp_files       | 0     |
| Delayed_insert_threads  | 0     |
| Delayed_writes          | 0     |
| Delayed_errors          | 0     |
| Flush_commands          | 1     |
| Handler_delete          | 2     |
| Handler_read_first      | 7     |
| Handler_read_key        | 6     |
| Handler_read_next       | 0     |
| Handler_read_prev       | 0     |
| Handler_read_end        | 0     |

**Figure 12-13:** The output from the SHOW STATUS statement, as produced by the MySQL CLI HTML switch



**Figure 12-14:** The remaining output from the SHOW PROCESSLIST statement as produced by the MySQL CLI HTML switch

The final step, though optional, is to schedule the script to run automatically. How often you would like to schedule the script depends on how busy your server is, and how often you want to schedule it. Using cron in Linux, I schedule the script to run every 15 minutes, as shown in Figure 12-15.

A screenshot of a PuTTY terminal window titled "192.168.1.75 - PuTTY". The window contains the following text:

```
#Script to produce HTML output for monitoring of MySQL server.  
0,15,30,45 * * * * /usr/local/bin/pmonitor.php
```

The terminal window has a black background with white text and a standard window title bar.

**Figure 12-15:** Scheduling the monitoring script to run every 15 minutes by using the cron command in Linux

# MySQL Authentication and Privileges

Prior to getting down to the dirty business of working with users, I believe it is necessary to give an overview of the MySQL authentication system. This includes the stages of authentication as well as the privileges that can be granted and revoked. (This also gives me another chance to get on a soapbox about passwords.)

## Overview of MySQL authentication

The MySQL privilege system works on a number of levels prior to allowing access to the server. Unlike systems where simply a username and password are examined to determine access, MySQL uses the username, password, and host to determine access level for the database.

MySQL uses a two-stage process for determination of your access level, the connection level and process level. Using these two levels, in two sequential steps, the MySQL server determines

- ◆ Whether you are allowed to connect at all.
- ◆ Whether you have privileges to perform the requested operation or statement.

During the first stage, which I will refer to as the Connection Stage, the MySQL server combines the user and host provided as credentials and determines if the given combination is allowed to connect with the given password.

1. The first phase of the Connection Stage combines the host, user, and password columns from the `users` table of the MySQL grants database.
  - If no database is included in the connection request, access is granted or denied at this point. The host column within the grants database can contain any valid hostname, IP address, or localhost. In addition, the wildcards % and \_ are valid as are netmask values. For all hosts, the % wildcard can be used. For example, `username'192.168.1.%'` would grant access to `username` from any address within the 192.168.1.0/24 range. This is the same as `username'192.168.1.0/255.255.255.0'`. If given `username'%'` then `username` at any host would be allowed.
  - If a database is included within the connection request, the second phase begins.

2. The second phase of the Connection Stage of authentication is to verify credentials for the database.

This phase is performed against the `db` table of the MySQL grants database. The `db` table is examined for host, database, and user. If access to all databases is granted to the user, this stage automatically passes; otherwise access is granted or denied, depending on the information in the `db` table.

3. The third phase of the Connection Stage is performed against the `host` table of the MySQL grants database. The `host` and `db` columns from the `host` table are included in this phase.

If connections from a host are restricted in some way, this table determines appropriate access.

During the next (second) stage of MySQL authentication, the requested process is examined for specific privileges to determine access. For example, if the user attempts to issue a `SELECT` statement, the authentication process looks again at the `user` table of the MySQL grants database. If authentication passes the `user` table, it is again passed on to the `db` table and then to the `host` table. If the statement is run against a table, the `tables_priv` table is also consulted for authentication; if the statement runs against a column or columns, then the `columns_priv` table is consulted.

## MySQL privileges

Each table of the MySQL grants database provides the privileges shown in Table 12-1 (with the exception of the `RELOAD`, `SHUTDOWN`, `PROCESS`, and `FILE` privileges, which are limited to the `user` table because they have no meaning in other contexts).

Table 12-1  
MySQL Privileges and their functions

| Privilege  | Function   |
|------------|--|
| SELECT     | Table-level privilege for selecting data or performing queries.  |
| INSERT     | Table-level privilege for adding data.   |
| UPDATE     | Table-level privilege for updating or changing data.   |
| DELETE     | Table-level privilege for deleting data from tables.   |
| INDEX      | Table-level privilege for creating and deleting indexes.   |
| ALTER      | Table-level privilege for changing table layout.   |
| CREATE     | Database-, table-, and index-level privilege for creation of databases, tables and indexes.                                      |
| DROP       | Database- and table-level privilege for deleting databases and tables.   |
| GRANT      | Database- and table-level privilege for enabling a user to alter privileges for other users including adding and deleting users. |
| REFERENCES | Database- and table-level privilege for using references.  |
| RELOAD     | Server-level privilege for reloading and flushing server parameters.   |
| SHUTDOWN   | Server-level privilege for stopping the MySQL database server.   |
| PROCESS    | Server- level privilege to enable process listing and killing.   |
| FILE       | Server- level privilege to work with files such as selecting into outfile.   |

 Note

If the FILE privilege is given to a user, that user will be able to read the contents of all other databases on the server.

The privileges are simple insofar as they mean what they are named. To issue a SELECT statement, you need the SELECT privilege, to insert data you need the INSERT privilege, and so on.

## Security of passwords

Working with an Internet service provider, I can't count the number of times I've seen people choose bad passwords. I've seen all the mistakes in the book, from choosing the username as the password to using the worst old favorite possible (the word *password*). I believe these types of mistakes are, in the words of James R. Leu, "completely unacceptable." Regular users may have an excuse for choosing poor passwords, but System and Database Administrators don't. As the person who is in charge of a server or servers, it is your job to use passwords that cannot be easily guessed or cracked.

### Password guidelines

I've put together some guidelines that should help you choose effective passwords, come up with stronger ones, and keeping the ones you have secure.

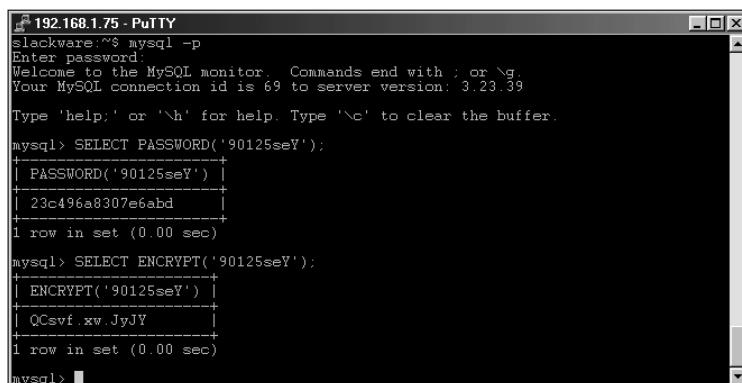
- ◆ Passwords should be six characters at an absolute minimum.
- ◆ Passwords should include a mix of alphanumeric characters such as letters and numbers and non-alphanumeric characters, such as "@#\$^&\*".
- ◆ When you create a password, never use words that you can find in a dictionary (or those same words spelled backwards).
- ◆ Passwords should include the use of both sides of the keyboard or both hands while typing. In other words, don't use passwords that require you to use only your left hand or the left side of the keyboard only.
- ◆ Passwords should be different across servers. Don't use the same password for all of your servers, routers, and other gear. Thus, if one machine is compromised, the attacker cannot automatically gain access to your other servers.
- ◆ Don't write your passwords down. If you feel you can't remember a password and must write something down, write down a word or phrase that will remind you of the password.

## MySQL passwords

There is general confusion over whether the Unix encryption structure is compatible with MySQL because a UNIX encryption does look somewhat similar to a MySQL encryption. Even so, MySQL passwords are stored with an encryption algorithm different from that of the standard Unix encryption method. For this reason, you cannot simply transfer your password and its encryption key from a password file to the MySQL grants database.

MySQL includes a function to create a valid MySQL encryption: `PASSWORD()`. Using the `PASSWORD` function, a user with access to a MySQL CLI could create a valid encryption for use in MySQL. The user could then take the encryption and transfer it to the server administrator for addition to the MySQL grants database.

As stated previously there is some confusion over the use of crypts within the user table of the MySQL grants database. Part of this confusion comes because of the `ENCRYPT()` function. The `ENCRYPT()` function creates a Unix style encryption but it is not valid in the MySQL grants database. In Figure 12-16, for example, I use the `PASSWORD()` function to create a valid MySQL password. The resulting password could be transferred to the administrator for the server and he or she would never be able to see my unencrypted password. I also use the `ENCRYPT()` function as a reference to show the difference, given the same plaintext password.



```
192.168.1.75 - PuTTY
slackware:~$ mysql -p
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor. Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 69 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.
mysql> SELECT PASSWORD('90125seY');
+-----+
| PASSWORD('90125seY') |
+-----+
| 23c496a8307e6abd |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT ENCRYPT('90125seY');
+-----+
| ENCRYPT('90125seY') |
+-----+
| QCsvf.xv.JyJY |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>
```

**Figure 12-16:** The `PASSWORD()` function creates a valid MySQL encryption while the `ENCRYPT()` function does not.

## MySQL User Management

For maximum security, I recommend implementing the least-privilege concept of permissions. When issuing grants and privileges to users of a database, you should give them only the privileges they need to perform their jobs.

You can create user accounts in MySQL by one of two methods: Using the GRANT statement or using the INSERT statement. For the purposes of this chapter I will be concentrating solely on the GRANT statement and its opposite statement, REVOKE.

If you choose to use an INSERT or UPDATE statement for working with the grants database, you must use the FLUSH PRIVILEGES statement as well. If you use a GRANT or REVOKE statement, the database server sees the changes immediately.

If you change a user's access to a database while they are connected to that database, the change will not take effect immediately for that user. In addition, if you change a user's global privileges or change their password it will not take effect until the next time they connect. Therefore, you should kill the user's process in order for the changes to take effect for these instances.

Two macro-level grants are not listed in Table 12-1: the ALL PRIVILEGES and USAGE macros. The ALL PRIVILEGES macro can be substituted in a GRANT or REVOKE statement instead of having to enumerate each of the privileges. The USAGE macro simply creates the user account with no privileges. In other words, think of the USAGE macro as a placeholder. It allows the administrator to create the user account and come back to it later to set privileges.

**Note**

The ALL PRIVILEGES macro does not include (and so does not grant) the administrative privilege of granting and revoking privileges.

## Adding users and granting privileges

In MySQL, adding a user and granting privileges can occur simultaneously. You can also add multiple users—with the same privileges—simultaneously. The basic statement for adding a user and setting privileges is the GRANT statement.

The syntax for the GRANT statement is as follows:

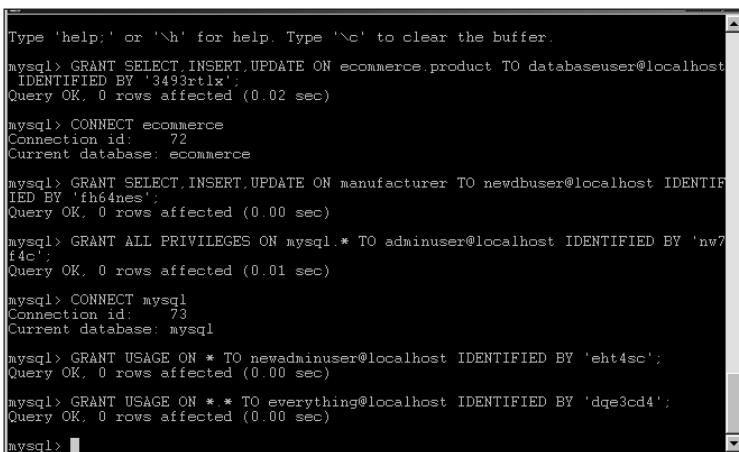
```
GRANT privilege [(<columnlist>)] [, privilege [(<columnlist>)]  
...]  
    ON {<tablename> | * | *.* | <databasename>.*}  
    TO username(@<host>) [IDENTIFIED BY 'password']  
        [, username(@<host>) [IDENTIFIED BY 'password']] ...]  
    [REQUIRE  
        [{SSL| X509}]  
        [CIPHER cipher [AND]]  
        [ISSUER issuer [AND]]  
        [SUBJECT subject]]  
    [WITH GRANT OPTION]
```

**Note**

To use the GRANT statement, you must have the GRANT privilege.

In my time as a database administrator, I've most frequently used the `USAGE` macro to initially create the user and then gone back and granted individual privileges for the user at a later time. With the `USAGE` macro the user will be added to the grants database as normal except no privileges will be given to the user. The `USAGE` macro can be helpful if the actual database hasn't been created yet (or tables haven't been created within the database).

As you can see by the syntax listing, the `GRANT` statement accepts wildcards for the database and also wildcards within the database context to indicate all tables. For example, to grant privileges on a specific table within a database, you can use `databasename.tablename` (or simply `tablename` if you are in the database at the time). Contrast this with granting privileges on all tables within a database (which you call with the `databasename.*` syntax, or simply with `*` from within the database). Also, granting privileges to all databases and tables is possible with the use of the `*.*` wildcard syntax. Examples of these grants are shown in Figure 12-17.

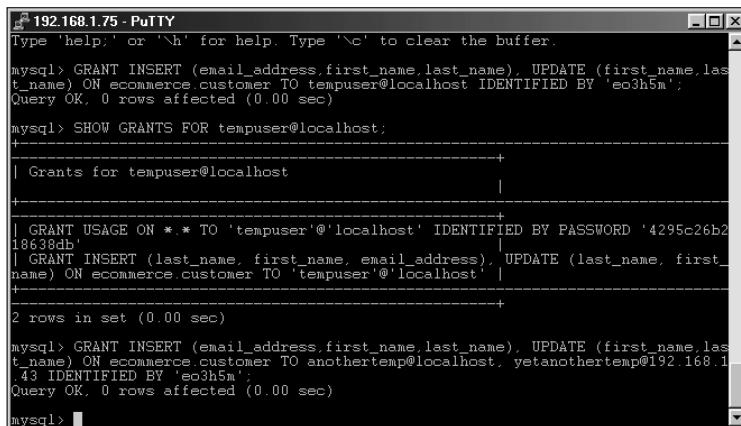
A screenshot of a terminal window showing MySQL command-line interface. The window title is 'Terminal'. The MySQL prompt is 'mysql>'. The user has run several GRANT commands:

- `GRANT SELECT,INSERT,UPDATE ON ecommerce.product TO databaseuser@localhost IDENTIFIED BY '3493rlx';` Query OK. 0 rows affected (0.02 sec)
- `CONNECT ecommerce` Connection id: 72 Current database: ecommerce
- `GRANT SELECT,INSERT,UPDATE ON manufacturer TO newdbuser@localhost IDENTIFIED BY 'fb64nes';` Query OK. 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)
- `GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES ON mysql.* TO adminuser@localhost IDENTIFIED BY 'nw7fac';` Query OK. 0 rows affected (0.01 sec)
- `CONNECT mysql` Connection id: 73 Current database: mysql
- `GRANT USAGE ON * TO newadminuser@localhost IDENTIFIED BY 'eht4sc';` Query OK. 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)
- `GRANT USAGE ON *.* TO everything@localhost IDENTIFIED BY 'dqe3cd4';` Query OK. 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)

The MySQL prompt 'mysql>' is visible at the bottom of the window.

**Figure 12-17:** Examples of GRANT statements in differing scenarios

With the `GRANT` statement you can specify that the privilege will only apply to certain columns within a given table. You can also specify more than one privilege within a statement and apply that to the same or different columns within the same table or `database.table` structure. In addition, you can give the same privileges to multiple users at the same time if you separate the `users/host/password` portions with commas. Examples of these grants are shown in Figure 12-18.



The screenshot shows a PuTTY terminal window titled "192.168.1.75 - PuTTY". The user is running MySQL commands to grant privileges. The session starts with a GRANT statement for a user named 'tempuser' on the local host, allowing them to insert and update records in the 'ecommerce.customer' table. This is followed by a SHOW GRANTS command, which displays the granted privileges. Another GRANT statement is shown, granting usage and specific INSERT and UPDATE permissions on the same table to the same user from a different host ('192.168.1.75'). Finally, another GRANT statement is issued with a wild host value ('%') and a wild port value ('43'), granting similar permissions to the user.

```
mysql> GRANT INSERT (email_address,first_name,last_name), UPDATE (first_name,la
t_name) ON ecommerce.customer TO tempuser@localhost IDENTIFIED BY 'eo3h5m';
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> SHOW GRANTS FOR tempuser@localhost;
+-----+
| Grants for tempuser@localhost |
+-----+
| GRANT USAGE ON *.* TO 'tempuser'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED BY PASSWORD '4295c26b2
18638db' |
| GRANT INSERT (last_name, first_name, email_address), UPDATE (last_name, first_
name) ON ecommerce.customer TO 'tempuser'@'localhost' |
+-----+
2 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> GRANT INSERT (email_address,first_name,last_name), UPDATE (first_name,la
t_name) ON ecommerce.customer TO anothertemp@localhost, yetanothertemp@192.168.1
,43 IDENTIFIED BY 'eo3h5m';
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)

mysql>
```

**Figure 12-18:** Some variations of the GRANT statement as useful syntax examples

The value for <host> can contain any valid hostname, IP address, or localhost. In addition, the wildcards % and \_ are valid as are netmask values. For all hosts, the % wildcard can be used. When using a wildcard or netmask value, the <host> portion must be quoted. For example, `username'192.168.1.%'` would grant access to `username` from any address within the 192.168.1.0/24 range. This is the same as `username'192.168.1.0/255.255.255.0'`. If given `username'%'` then `username` at any host would be allowed.

You can require the user connect only via a secure connection such as Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) or with X509. This functionality is achieved by adding the REQUIRE modifier to the GRANT statement.

If you wish for the user to have the ability to add, delete, and alter privileges within the database you must add the WITH GRANT OPTION modifier to the end of the GRANT statement. This is true even if you use the ALL PRIVILEGES macro to enable all privileges for the user. The GRANT privilege is not included with the ALL PRIVILEGES macro.



Use care when issuing GRANT statements so as not to give too many privileges or give them to unintended users.

As with all database administration, you should be careful when issuing GRANT statements. Since MySQL uses a user/host combination for authentication, there can be multiple users in the database with the same username. Ensuring that you are granting access to the correct user or users is very important.

If you are unsure of the grants that a given user has, you can issue the SHOW GRANTS FOR statement. For example, to find out the grants and privileges given to Webuser (from a previous example in this chapter), issue the following statement:

```
SHOW GRANTS FOR Webuser@localhost;
```

## Deleting users and revoking privileges

The REVOKE statement is used to remove privileges from a user. The syntax for the REVOKE statement is as follows:

```
REVOKE privilege [(<columnlist>)] [, privilege [(<columnlist>)]  
...]  
ON [<tablename> | * | *.* | <databasename>.*]  
FROM username [, username ...]
```

The syntax is quite similar to that of the GRANT statement. The REVOKE statement can apply to a column or columns, databases and tables can be specified and wildcarded and multiple users can be revoked simultaneously.

The ALL PRIVILEGES macro works with the REVOKE statement the same as with the GRANT statement. This is important to know because if you have granted the GRANT privilege to the user and use a REVOKE ALL PRIVILEGES statement, the GRANT option will still be there! Therefore, you must perform a separate statement of REVOKE GRANT OPTION ... for this occasion.

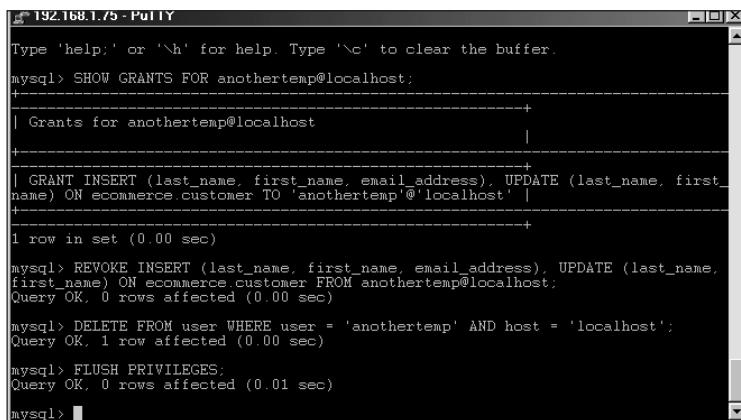
Issuing a REVOKE statement does not delete the user from the MySQL grants database. To delete a user from the grants database you must specifically issue a DELETE statement to remove them from the grants database.



Use caution when issuing any REVOKE or DELETE statements as you can easily revoke all privileges from all users or even delete all users from the database, including the root user!

The syntax for the DELETE statement is the same to remove user accounts as it is to delete rows from the tables of other databases. Remember that MySQL uses the user and host combined to identify a user. Therefore you can have as many users with the username robert in the database, but only one robert that connects *from a specific host*. Therefore you must be extremely careful when issuing the DELETE statement so as to not delete all those other Bobs from the database server! A misguided or careless DELETE statement can result in removal of all privileges for all users, not just for robert. After issuing the correct DELETE statement, don't forget to run the FLUSH PRIVILEGES statement so the deletion takes effect on the server.

Figure 12-19 shows all privileges being revoked from an example user, after which a deletion removes the user account entirely from the database.



The screenshot shows a PuTTY terminal window titled "192.168.1.75 - Putty". The MySQL command-line interface is running. The user has run the following commands:

```
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.
mysql> SHOW GRANTS FOR anothertemp@localhost;
+-----+
| Grants for anothertemp@localhost |
+-----+
| GRANT INSERT (last_name, first_name, email_address), UPDATE (last_name, first_name) ON ecommerce.customer TO 'anothertemp'@'localhost' |
+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> REVOKE INSERT (last_name, first_name, email_address), UPDATE (last_name, first_name) ON ecommerce.customer FROM anothertemp@localhost;
Query OK. 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> DELETE FROM user WHERE user = 'anothertemp' AND host = 'localhost';
Query OK. 1 row affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> FLUSH PRIVILEGES;
Query OK. 0 rows affected (0.01 sec)

mysql>
```

**Figure 12-19:** An example REVOKE statement, followed by an example DELETE statement. The FLUSH PRIVILEGES statement causes the delete to take effect immediately, preventing the (now-former) user from making a new connection.

Revoking all privileges from a user won't necessarily truly remove all of their privileges. Specific privileges need to be specifically revoked. The `SHOW GRANTS FOR` statement can be quite useful in this situation to determine what specific privileges a user has—for example, `SHOW GRANTS FOR Webuser@localhost`.

## Changing passwords and other parameters

Sooner or later, you will have to change a user's password as you administer a database server. You may also have to change a username or alter the host parameters for a database user. MySQL provides a function specifically for changing passwords; for other changes, normal SQL statements are required.

There are two methods for changing a password in MySQL. The first is with the `SET PASSWORD` statement; the second is the `UPDATE` statement. Both statements make use of the `PASSWORD()` function to encrypt the password. Examples of both methods for changing a password are in Figure 12-20.

Use the `UPDATE` statement to change other parameters such as usernames and hosts. The syntax for the `UPDATE` statement is the same in this context as it is in other DML statements. In Figure 12-21, I issue various `UPDATE` statements to change usernames and hosts. Following the `UPDATE`, I issue the `FLUSH PRIVILEGES` statement to make the changes take effect immediately.

```

Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> SELECT user,host,password FROM user WHERE user = 'yetanothertemp';
+-----+-----+-----+
| user | host  | password        |
+-----+-----+-----+
| yetanothertemp | 192.168.1.43 | 7d27c3316052e2cf |
+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> SET PASSWORD FOR yetanothertemp@192.168.1.43 = PASSWORD('cmt4hs');
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> SELECT user,host,password FROM user WHERE user = 'yetanothertemp';
+-----+-----+-----+
| user | host  | password        |
+-----+-----+-----+
| yetanothertemp | 192.168.1.43 | 7d27c3316052e2cf |
+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> UPDATE user SET password = PASSWORD('eeh408s') WHERE user = 'yetanothertemp' AND host = '192.168.1.43';
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.01 sec)
Rows matched: 1  Changed: 1  Warnings: 0

mysql> SELECT user,host,password FROM user WHERE user = 'yetanothertemp';
+-----+-----+-----+
| user | host  | password        |
+-----+-----+-----+
| yetanothertemp | 192.168.1.43 | 3909e37f675e97ad |
+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> FLUSH PRIVILEGES;
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.01 sec)

mysql> 
```

**Figure 12-20:** Using SET PASSWORD and UPDATE to change passwords for users in MySQL

### Cross-Reference

The UPDATE statement is discussed In Chapter 9 and in Appendix A.

```

Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> UPDATE user SET user = 'yat' WHERE user = 'yetanothertemp' AND host = '192.168.1.43';
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.00 sec)
Rows matched: 1  Changed: 1  Warnings: 0

mysql> UPDATE user SET host = '192.168.1.0/255.255.255.0' WHERE user = 'tempuser' AND host = 'localhost';
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.00 sec)
Rows matched: 1  Changed: 1  Warnings: 0

mysql> FLUSH PRIVILEGES;
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> 
```

**Figure 12-21:** Examples of UPDATE statements to change usernames and hosts in the MySQL grants database

When using the `SET PASSWORD` statement, MySQL sees the change immediately. However, when using an `UPDATE` statement, whether for updating a password or changing another parameter, you must issue the `FLUSH PRIVILEGES` statement for the change to take effect.

## Common Problems

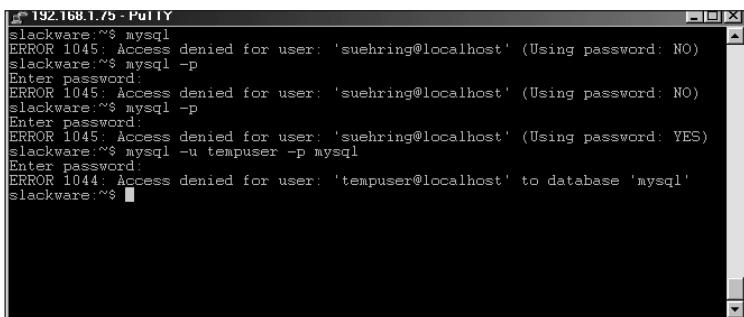
Though there are many problems that on their face appear to be authentication problems, they are really related to server or other operating system issues. Those types of errors are hopefully covered elsewhere in this book. This section specifically examines some common error messages related to authentication. In addition, a recurring issue surfaces: Too often, people forget the `root` password for MySQL. I'd like to think that they forget because MySQL is so stable that they don't need to connect to it for administration tasks. Regardless, I'll look at how to change the `root` password if you do forget it.

### Access denied

There are numerous reasons why you might receive an `Access Denied` error message when attempting to perform an operation. For that matter, you might get one simply by trying to connect to a MySQL server. This section examines the most common of these messages, which include the following:

- ◆ **Password:** Personally speaking, my most common cause of an `Access Denied` error is because I can't type my password straight. Therefore, this is the first thing that comes to mind when thinking of items to check when you receive an `Access Denied` error.
- ◆ **Username:** Is it allowed to connect?
- ◆ **Hostname or host:** MySQL might not be able to properly identify the user/host combination, in which case it refuses access.

The MySQL CLI is very good at remembering and telling you what was provided to it for credentials. I've provided some examples of error messages in Figure 12-22:



```
slackware:~$ mysql
ERROR 1045: Access denied for user: 'suehring@localhost' (Using password: NO)
slackware:~$ mysql -p
Enter password:
ERROR 1045: Access denied for user: 'suehring@localhost' (Using password: NO)
slackware:~$ mysql -p
Enter password:
ERROR 1045: Access denied for user: 'suehring@localhost' (Using password: YES)
slackware:~$ mysql -u tempuser -p mysql
Enter password:
ERROR 1044: Access denied for user: 'tempuser@localhost' to database 'mysql'
slackware:~$
```

Figure 12-22: Various Access Denied errors

- ◆ In the first example, I simply forgot to specify the `-p` switch to have MySQL prompt me for a password.
- ◆ In the second example, I remember the `-p` switch but only press Enter at the prompt.
- ◆ The third example is familiar to me (and to too many of us): a mistyped password.
- ◆ The final example is denied simply because the user does not have any privilege that allows connection to the `mysql` database.

The third example in Figure 12-22 is interesting because that same error can occur if the user exists but the password is different for that user/host combination. For example, if a database has two users called `suehring`, one user/host combination could be `suehring@localhost` and another could be `suehring@192.168.1.1`. If the passwords are different for each user/host combination and I typed the wrong password for either one, the same error would occur.

**Note**

MySQL uses the user/host combination for authentication against a password.

## Oops, I forgot the root password

Though you someday may be in a situation that requires you to perform these steps on your MySQL server, I sincerely hope you never have to. If you have forgotten the `root` password for MySQL and don't have any other users with `GRANT` privileges on the database server, you will need to reset the password in order to be able to perform `GRANTS` and possibly other functions. Here are the steps, and may you never need them:

1. Stop the database.

- If you have a user account in the database with the SHUTDOWN privilege, now would be the time to use that account. The first step in the process for emergency password recovery is to stop the MySQL server. In a perfect world, you could issue a SHUTDOWN command to the MySQL server.
- If you don't have a user with the SHUTDOWN privilege, you have to kill the server with an operating-system command (in Linux, this is the kill command; in Windows, it's the End Task box that appears after you use Ctrl+Alt+Del).

 Caution

MySQL AB specifically recommends that you *don't* use the -9 signal when you issue the operating system's kill command.

2. Restart the server with the --skip-grant-tables command-line switch.

3. Set the password, using one of the following methods:

- Set the password as you would for a new installation:

```
mysqladmin -h <hostname> -u root password '<password>'
```

 Note

The new password must be in single quotes. Substitute your host for <hostname> and the new password for <password>.

- Alternatively, you can enter the MySQL CLI and change the password.

4. Issue the FLUSH PRIVILEGES statement so that MySQL reads the other grants and privileges and the new password takes effect.

## Summary

MySQL security is a topic of many facets, but with three main areas of concern: the host server, the MySQL software, and the user accounts. No one facet is more important than another; securing all is necessary to protect the database. In pursuit of that goal, the least-privilege system is a security approach that gives users only the absolute minimum of access needed to perform their jobs.

♦ Implementing and preserving the security of the host server involves three basic rules:

- Maintain a proactive approach to keeping up with exploits and problems with software you are running.
- Apply patches and fixes as soon as they are released.
- Disable unused services and verify that only the services you specify are running.

- ♦ With MySQL software security there are a number of items you can do to improve security. These include keeping the software updated, firewalling the server, running the server as a non-privileged user, and additional steps to assist in security of the MySQL software.
- ♦ MySQL authentication and privileges determine what access a user will have for a database. Authentication is done with a user/host combination.
- ♦ There are many privileges that can be granted to a user. The privileges can be granted with granularity to the column level with a table.
- ♦ Privileges are normally given to a user through the use of the GRANT statement and taken away from a user with a REVOKE statement. The DELETE statement is necessary to remove a user completely from the database.
- ♦ It is common to receive Access Denied error messages when attempting to connect to a database. These errors can occur for a number of reasons, some as simple as typing the password incorrectly.



# Debugging and Repairing Databases

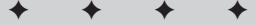
In a perfect world, computers and computer software would work correctly the first time. In a perfect world, hard disks would never fail. In a perfect world, I would have a much better introduction for this chapter than a cliché about computer failures.

Part of administration of any computer system is a good routine of backups. In this chapter I'll look at methods for backing up the data in the MySQL server. MySQL AB includes several methods for producing backups of the data and datafiles.

Having backups is just one of the facets of managing a database server. If something goes awry with the data, know what can be done to correct the problems. I'll examine some tools included with MySQL for troubleshooting and repairing table problems.

If repairing can't fix a problem, you'll need to restore from a backup. The restore process and related commands are covered in this chapter as well.

After reading this chapter you should be able to successfully perform backups, restores, and troubleshooting for table problems. I recommend making a backup or two as soon as possible.



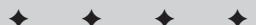
## In This Chapter

Performing database backups

Troubleshooting and repairing database problems

Restoring a database

Devising a plan for regular backups



## Performing Database Backups

As part of my consulting for business database systems, I once received an emergency call from a new client who had the unfortunate incident that everyone fears: A hard drive failure. The client and I tried desperately to recover the drive, even working with the manufacturer. It became evident that no amount of effort to recover the drive was going to bring it back to life. The obvious next step to get their business back online was to restore from backup. I'll never forget the pause when I said, "It appears we'll need to restore from backup." The client had no backup of the drive—thus no backup of the database.

The previous scenario is all too common. No backups are done to critical data and no extra copies are stored, even on the same disk. When something catastrophic happens, the hard drive and all the data on it can be lost. With the client, we eventually sent the hard drive back to the manufacturer and they were able to perform expensive data recovery. The client ended up with a week's worth of downtime and a large bill from the hard drive manufacturer for data recovery.

This section examines some tools for making backups of the data within MySQL. These tools include `mysqlhotcopy`, `mysqldump`, and the `BACKUP TABLE` statement.

### mysqlhotcopy

The program `mysqlhotcopy` is the MySQL AB recommended method for backing up a database. With `mysqlhotcopy` you can make a backup of a live database and have the results copied to another directory. The `mysqlhotcopy` program is actually written in Perl—so be sure to have Perl and its related MySQL-Perl libraries installed.

As with all programs, `mysqlhotcopy` has its limitations:

- ◆ **It presently supports only cp.** Therefore `mysqlhotcopy` doesn't copy the resulting file to another server. However, this function can be added (along with other methods) for ensuring the storage of the backup in a different location.
- ◆ **It can run only on the actual database server.** An administrator must connect to the database server to run the command, or schedule it with a scheduling program such as `cron`.

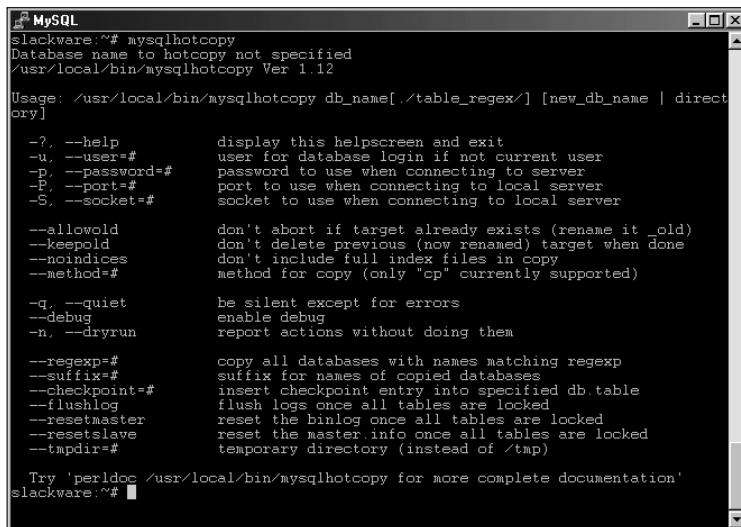


Because `mysqlhotcopy` uses the `cp` command, it cannot run on Microsoft Windows platforms such as Windows 2000.

Should you want more information on the `mysqlhotcopy` command (and you don't have this book available), you can run the following command:

```
perldoc mysqlhotcopy
```

The result is a summary of the `mysqlhotcopy` command. As with many other MySQL commands and scripts, you can obtain a syntax description by simply typing the command, as shown in Figure 13-1.



A screenshot of a terminal window titled "MySQL". The window displays the usage information for the `mysqlhotcopy` command. It starts with the command itself and its location, followed by a detailed explanation of each option and its purpose. The options include `-?`, `--help`, `-u`, `--user=`, `-p`, `--password=`, `-P`, `--port=`, `-S`, `--socket=`, `--allowold`, `--keepold`, `--noindices`, `--method=`, `-q`, `--quiet`, `--debug`, `-n`, `--dryrun`, `--regexp=`, `--suffix=`, `--checkpoint=`, `--flushlog`, `--resetmaster`, `--resetslave`, and `--tmpdir=`. The help text also includes a note about trying `perldoc` for more complete documentation.

```
slackware:~# mysqlhotcopy
Database name to hotcopy not specified
/usr/local/bin/mysqlhotcopy Ver 1.12
Usage: /usr/local/bin/mysqlhotcopy db_name[./table_regex/] [new_db_name | directory]

-?, --help          display this helpscreen and exit
-u, --user=#       user for database login if not current user
-p, --password=#   password to use when connecting to server
-P, --port=#       port to use when connecting to local server
-S, --socket=#     socket to use when connecting to local server

--allowold         don't abort if target already exists (rename it _old)
--keepold          don't delete previous (now renamed) target when done
--noindices        don't include full index files in copy
--method=#         method for copy (only "cp" currently supported)

-q, --quiet        be silent except for errors
--debug            enable debug
-n, --dryrun       report actions without doing them

--regexp=#         copy all databases with names matching regexp
--suffix=#         suffix for names of copied databases
--checkpoint=#    insert checkpoint entry into specified db.table
--flushlog         flush logs once all tables are locked
--resetmaster      reset the binlog once all tables are locked
--resetslave       reset the master.info once all tables are locked
--tmpdir=#         temporary directory (instead of /tmp)

Try 'perldoc /usr/local/bin/mysqlhotcopy' for more complete documentation'
slackware:~#
```

**Figure 13-1:** The syntax of the `mysqlhotcopy` command can be obtained by typing the command with no arguments.

As Figure 13-1 shows, the basic syntax for the `mysqlhotcopy` command is

```
mysqlhotcopy <database>[./<table>] [<newdatabase> | <directory>]
```

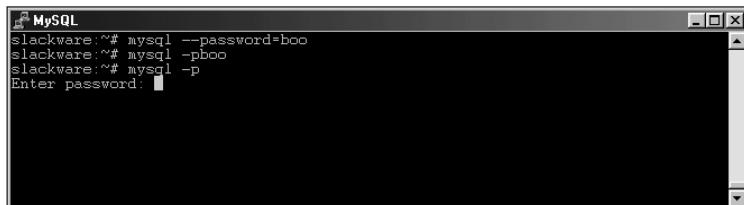
Figure 13-1 also shows these other options and switches that you can use with the `mysqlhotcopy` command (note the case sensitivity):

- u or --user
- S or --socket
- P or --port
- debug
- q or --quiet



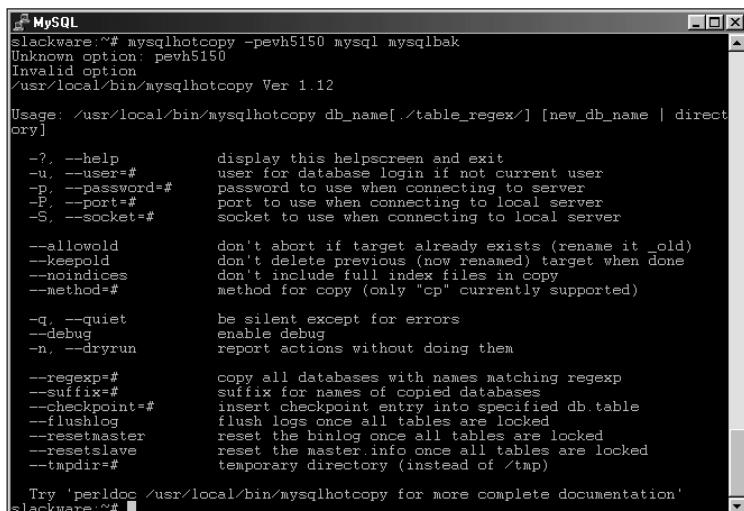
Chapter 8 contains detailed discussion of switches (such as those for specifying username, port, and socket) to use with the `mysqlhotcopy` command.

One notable exception in the behavior of the switches is the `-p` or `--password` switch. Normally, programs such as the MySQL CLI and `mysqladmin` prompt for a password when you use the `-p` switch (as shown in Figure 13-2). You could also specify the password on the actual command line, also illustrated in Figure 13-2.



**Figure 13-2:** The variations of the types of password entry methods for most MySQL commands

Unlike most programs that come with MySQL, `mysqlhotcopy` doesn't prompt for a password. Rather, the password must be specified on the command line. In addition, if you use the `-p` switch `mysqlhotcopy` expects a space after the `-p`. Figure 13-3 shows an example of this behavior. If the space isn't given after the `-p` switch, an Invalid Option error message results.

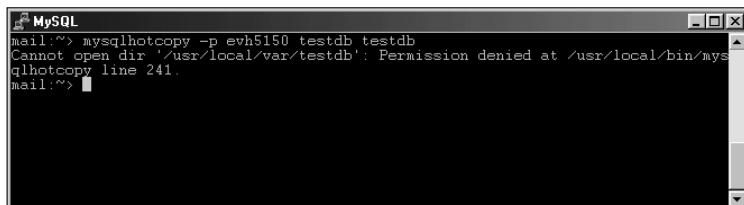


**Figure 13-3:** Attempting to give the password without a space after the `-p` switch results in an error.

At its most basic level, the `mysqlhotcopy` script performs the following three steps:

1. Locks the table or tables specified.
  2. Flushes the tables to close any open tables.
  3. Performs the actual copying of the data files.
- ◆ Because `mysqlhotcopy` performs a lock tables as the first step, no other clients can use the tables while `mysqlhotcopy` runs.
  - ◆ The locking can take quite some time on large tables.
  - ◆ The flushing of the tables will cause all open tables to close.
  - ◆ The actual copy can be time-consuming if the tables are large as well.

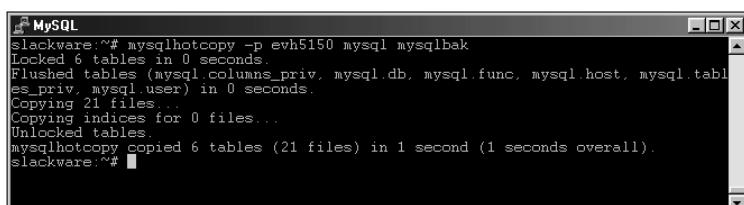
The `mysqlhotcopy` script makes an actual electronic copy of the datafiles for the database. Therefore any user account that runs `mysqlhotcopy` must have sufficient privileges to read the directory in which the datafiles reside. For example, Figure 13-4 shows an attempt to run `mysqlhotcopy` as a normal user in Linux. Normal users don't have the requisite privileges on the database directory; the command fails.



```
mail:~> mysqlhotcopy -p evh5150 testdb testdb
Cannot open dir '/usr/local/var/testdb': Permission denied at /usr/local/bin/mysqlhotcopy line 241.
mail:~>
```

**Figure 13-4:** `mysqlhotcopy` requires that the user running the script have sufficient privileges to read the database directory.

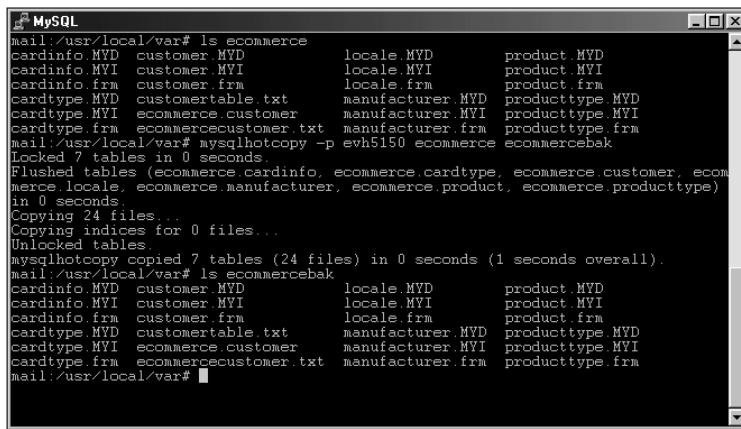
A simple summary (a common usage of the `mysqlhotcopy` program) is shown in Figure 13-5. In the figure, the MySQL grants database (`mysql`) is copied or backed up to a new database called `mysqlbak`.



```
slackware:~# mysqlhotcopy -p evh5150 mysql mysqlbak
Locked 6 tables in 0 seconds.
Flushed tables (mysql.columns_priv, mysql.db, mysql.func, mysql.host, mysql.tables_priv, mysql.user) in 0 seconds.
Copying 21 files...
Copying indices for 0 files...
Unlocked tables.
mysqlhotcopy copied 6 tables (21 files) in 1 second (1 seconds overall).
slackware:~#
```

**Figure 13-5:** A common usage of the `mysqlhotcopy` program to make a copy of the MySQL grants database

`mysqlhotcopy` also copies any other files within the directory housing the database as well. For example, if you have files such as those produced with `mysqldump`, performing a `mysqlhotcopy` of the database copies those to the new location. Figure 13-6 shows an example of this behavior. A listing of the `ecommerce` database directory is done, then a `mysqlhotcopy` to make a backup of the database into `ecommercebak`, followed by a listing of the new `ecommercebak` directory.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "MySQL" with the following command and output:

```
mail:/usr/local/var# ls ecommerce
cardinfo.MYD customer.MYD locale.MYD product.MYD
cardinfo.MYI customer.MYI locale.MYI product.MYI
cardinfo.frm customer.frm locale.frm product.frm
cardtype.MYD customerable.txt manufacturer.MYD producttype.MYD
cardtype.MYI ecommerce.customer manufacturer.MYI producttype.MYI
cardtype.frm ecommercecustomer.txt manufacturer.frm producttype.frm
mail:/usr/local/var# mysqlhotcopy -p evh5150 ecommerce ecommercebak
Locked 7 tables in 0 seconds
Flushed tables (ecommerce.cardinfo, ecommerce.cardtype, ecommerce.customer, ecommerce.locale, ecommerce.manufacturer, ecommerce.product, ecommerce.producttype)
in 0 seconds
Copying 24 files...
Copying indices for 0 files...
Unlocked tables.
mysqlhotcopy copied 7 tables (24 files) in 0 seconds (1 seconds overall).
mail:/usr/local/var# ls ecommercebak
cardinfo.MYD customer.MYD locale.MYD product.MYD
cardinfo.MYI customer.MYI locale.MYI product.MYI
cardinfo.frm customer.frm locale.frm product.frm
cardtype.MYD customerable.txt manufacturer.MYD producttype.MYD
cardtype.MYI ecommerce.customer manufacturer.MYI producttype.MYI
cardtype.frm ecommercecustomer.txt manufacturer.frm producttype.frm
mail:/usr/local/var#
```

**Figure 13-6:** The `mysqlhotcopy` script copies all files located in the database's directory on the server.

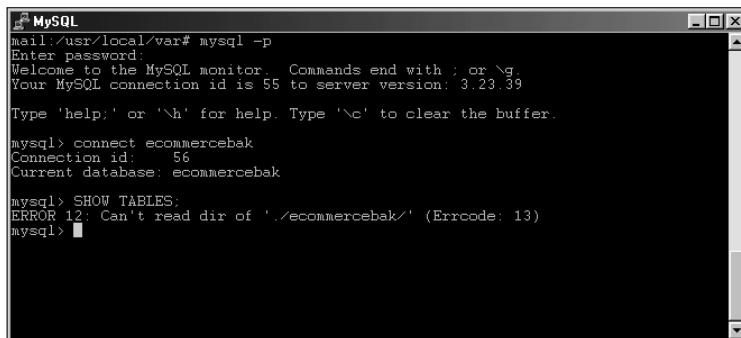
Recall the basic syntax for the `mysqlhotcopy` program:

```
mysqlhotcopy <database>[./<table_regexp>/]
[<newdatabase> | <directory>]
```

You have two possible destinations for the backup:

- ◆ A new database
- ◆ A directory in a different location

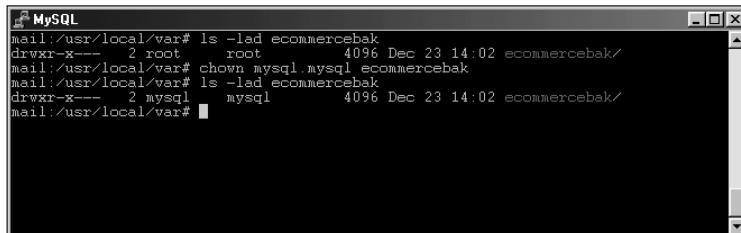
The examples in Figures 13-5 and 13-6 each made new databases. However, attempting to use either database can result in an error message, as shown in Figure 13-7.



```
mail:/usr/local/var# mysql -p
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor.  Commands end with ; or \q.
Your MySQL connection id is 55 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.
mysql> connect ecommercebak
Connection id: 56
Current database: ecommercebak
mysql> SHOW TABLES;
ERROR 12: Can't read dir of './ecommercebak/' (Errcode: 13)
mysql>
```

**Figure 13-7:** The MySQL server does not have sufficient privileges to read the database of a recently backed up database with mysqlhotcopy.

The error in Figure 13-7 occurs because the `mysqlhotcopy` script was run as the root or superuser. Therefore the new database directory was created by and is owned by root. Because the database server files are owned by the username `mysql`—and the server runs as that user—it cannot read the contents of the new database directory. You can fix this with a command such as `chown`. For example, Figure 13-8 shows the directory ownership and permissions before and after the `chown` command in Linux. Figure 13-8 also shows a successful connection to the backup copy created by `mysqlhotcopy`.



```
mail:/usr/local/var# ls -lad ecommercebak
drwxr-x--- 2 root      root          4096 Dec 23 14:02 ecommercebak
mail:/usr/local/var# chown mysql.mysql ecommercebak
mail:/usr/local/var# ls -lad ecommercebak
drwxr-x--- 2 mysql     mysql         4096 Dec 23 14:02 ecommercebak
mail:/usr/local/var#
```

**Figure 13-8:** Changing ownership of the new database created by mysqlhotcopy

The other method for backing up a database is to another directory. For added precaution, the directory could be on a separate physical disk. Instead of providing a database name for `mysqlhotcopy` to back up to, you specify a directory name. You must make sure that the directory exists. Figure 13-9 shows an example of using `mysqlhotcopy` to make a backup of a database to a directory. In the first attempt, the directory does not exist. The second attempt is successful. A directory listing is provided for convenience.

```

mail:/usr/local/var# mysqlhotcopy -p evh5150 mysql '/usr/local/var/mysqlbackup'
Last argument ('/usr/local/var/mysqlbackup') is not a directory
mail:/usr/local/var# mkdir mysqlbackup
mail:/usr/local/var# mysqlhotcopy -p evh5150 mysql '/usr/local/var/mysqlbackup'
Locked 6 tables in 0 seconds.
Flushed tables (mysql.columns_priv, mysql.db, mysql.func, mysql.host, mysql.tables_priv, mysql.user) in 0 seconds.
Copying 21 files...
Copying indices for 0 files...
Unlocked tables.
mysqlhotcopy copied 6 tables (21 files) in 1 second (1 seconds overall).
mail:/usr/local/var# ls -la
total 1324
drwxr-x--- 13 mysql    mysql      4096 Dec 23 14:28 .
drwxr-xr-x 19 root     root      4096 Dec 18 21:35 ..
-rw-r--r--  1 root     root   476099 Dec 23 12:11 back.sql
-rw-r--r--  1 root     root    388 Dec 10 19:55 customerinfo.sql
drwxr-x---  2 mysql    users    4096 Dec  2 13:21 dummydb/
drwxr-x---  2 mysql    mysql    4096 Dec 22 23:55 ecommerce/
drwxr-x---  2 mysql    mysql    4096 Dec 23 14:02 ecommercebak/
drwxr-x---  2 mysql    mysql    4096 Nov 25 21:49 exampledb/
drwxr-x---  2 mysql    mysql    4096 Nov  6 14:09 inventory/
-rw-r--r--  1 mysql    root     143 Dec 18 23:15 mail.err
-rw-rw----  1 mysql    users    3 Dec 18 23:15 mail.pid
drwxr-xr-x  2 mysql    mysql    4096 Dec 10 19:30 mysql/
drwxr-xr-x  3 root     root    4096 Dec 23 14:28 mysqlbackup/
drwxr-x---  2 mysql    mysql    4096 Dec 13 23:16 mysqlbak/
drwxr-xr-x  2 mysql    mysql    4096 Dec  7 17:43 outfile/
-rw-rw----  1 mysql    users    116 Dec 17 16:33 product.MYD
-rw-rw----  1 mysql    users    8692 Dec 17 16:33 product.frm
-rw-r--r--  1 mysql    mysql   50032 Dec 18 23:14 slackware.err
-rw-r--r--  1 mysql    mysql   1721 Nov 30 21:13 slackware.log
-rw-r--r--  1 root     root     40 Dec 17 22:56 team.MYD
drwxr-x---  2 mysql    mysql  724992 Dec  1 23:47 test/
drwxr-x---  2 mysql    mysql  4096 Dec 23 12:11 testdb/

```

**Figure 13-9:** Using mysqlhotcopy to make a backup of a MySQL database to a directory

mysqlhotcopy isn't limited to simply making backups of the entire database—or even to one database. I'll look at how to back up more than one database within this section as well. For now, I'm going to examine how to make a backup of only certain tables within a database.

Again, recalling the syntax of the mysqlhotcopy program, you can specify tables within the format of a regular expression. In effect, you specify the tables that match a certain *pattern* that you want to back up. For example, to back up all tables in the ecommerce database that contain the word *product*, the command in Figure 13-10 is issued.

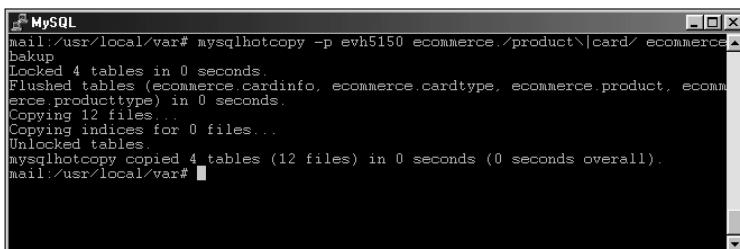
```

mail:/usr/local/var# mysqlhotcopy -p evh5150 ecommerce./product/ ecommercebakup
Locked 2 tables in 0 seconds.
Flushed tables (ecommerce.product, ecommerce.producttype) in 0 seconds.
Copying 6 files...
Copying indices for 0 files...
Unlocked tables.
mysqlhotcopy copied 2 tables (6 files) in 0 seconds (0 seconds overall).
mail:/usr/local/var#

```

**Figure 13-10:** Backing up only certain tables with the mysqlhotcopy command

At first, you might not think this method convenient or powerful enough for backing up tables (more than one table cannot be specified). However, by using the regular expression character for logical "OR", you can back up more than one table name with mysqlhotcopy. In Figure 13-11, I re-run the command from Figure 13-10 and add the logical OR (or the pipe character) to the command because I want to back up the tables that contain the word `card`. Notice that the pipe character must be allowed to "escape" by using a backslash.



```
MySQL
mail:/usr/local/var# mysqlhotcopy -p evh5150 ecommerce./product\|card/ ecommerce
backup
Locked 4 tables in 0 seconds.
Flushed tables (ecommerce.cardinfo, ecommerce.cardtype, ecommerce.product, ecommerce.producttype) in 0 seconds.
Copying 12 files...
Copying indices for 0 files...
Unlocked tables.
mysqlhotcopy copied 4 tables (12 files) in 0 seconds (0 seconds overall).
mail:/usr/local/var#
```

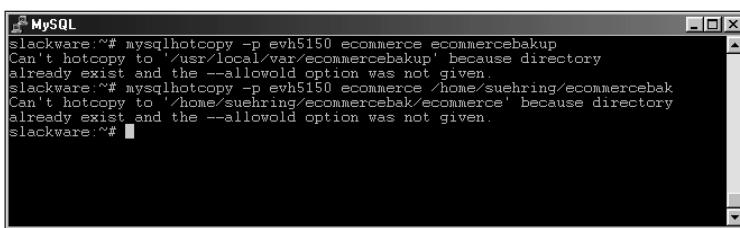
**Figure 13-11:** Using the regular expression syntax for a logical OR you can back up more than one table with mysqlhotcopy.

Up to this point I've only been looking at the basic syntax of `mysqlhotcopy`. `mysqlhotcopy` includes a number of switches that directly affect the operation of the program. These switches can change which databases are copied, how they are copied, and any extra functions that `mysqlhotcopy` should perform.

When `mysqlhotcopy` makes a backup copy of a database the process fails if there is already a database of the same name. This has the obvious advantage of preventing an accidental overwrite of a vital database. Figure 13-12 shows an example of the error message when the destination database already exists.

**Note**

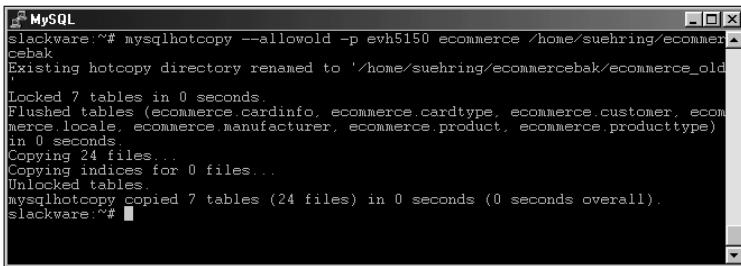
`mysqlhotcopy` indicates an error if the destination exists regardless of whether the destination is a database or a directory.



```
slackware:~# mysqlhotcopy -p evh5150 ecommerce ecommercebakup
Can't hotcopy to '/usr/local/var/ecommercebakup' because directory
already exist and the --allowold option was not given.
slackware:~# mysqlhotcopy -p evh5150 ecommerce /home/suehring/ecommercebak
Can't hotcopy to '/home/suehring/ecommercebak/ecommerce' because directory
already exist and the --allowold option was not given.
slackware:~#
```

**Figure 13-12:** If the destination exists, whether it is a database or directory, the `mysqlhotcopy` script fails and generates the error message shown.

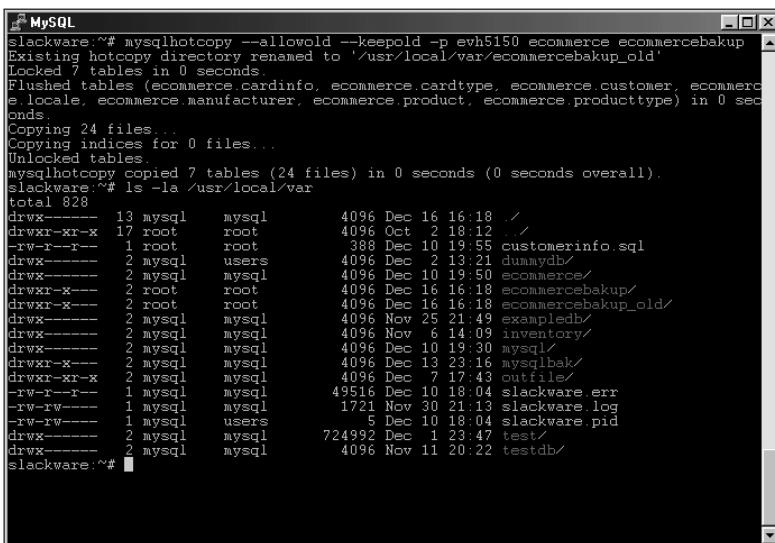
To allow `mysqlhotcopy` to overwrite the destination database or directory, you use the `--allowold` switch. The `--allowold` switch changes the existing destination and appends `_old` to the name of the existing destination. When the copy is successfully completed, the old directory and files therein are deleted. Figure 13-13 shows an example of this behavior.



```
slackware:~# mysqlhotcopy --allowold -p evh5150 ecommerce /home/suehring/ecommerce
cebak
Existing hotcopy directory renamed to '/home/suehring/ecommercebak/ecommerce_old'
Locked 7 tables in 0 seconds.
Flushed tables (ecommerce.cardinfo, ecommerce.cardtype, ecommerce.customer, ecommerce.locale, ecommerce.manufacturer, ecommerce.product, ecommerce.producttype) in 0 seconds.
Copying 24 files...
Copying indices for 0 files...
Unlocked tables.
mysqlhotcopy copied 7 tables (24 files) in 0 seconds (0 seconds overall).
slackware:~#
```

**Figure 13-13:** The `--allowold` switch moves the existing destination and appends the extension `_old` to the name. After the copy is complete, the old directory is deleted.

Although the `--allowold` switch enables you to perform a backup even if the stated destination already exists, `mysqlhotcopy` deletes the old copy as its final step in the backup process. If you want to keep the old copy after the command is complete, use the `--keepold` switch. Figure 13-14 shows `mysqlhotcopy` with the `--keepold` switch added as well as a listing of the MySQL data directory after the `mysqlhotcopy` command runs to keep the old copy of the data using the `--keepold` switch.



```
slackware:~# mysqlhotcopy --keepold -p evh5150 ecommerce ecommercebakup
Existing hotcopy directory renamed to '/usr/local/var/ecommercebakup_old'
Locked 7 tables in 0 seconds.
Flushed tables (ecommerce.cardinfo, ecommerce.cardtype, ecommerce.customer, ecommerce.locale, ecommerce.manufacturer, ecommerce.product, ecommerce.producttype) in 0 seconds.
Copying 24 files...
Copying indices for 0 files...
Unlocked tables.
mysqlhotcopy copied 7 tables (24 files) in 0 seconds (0 seconds overall).
slackware:~# ls -la /usr/local/var
total 828
drwxr--r-- 13 mysql    mysql      4096 Dec 16 16:18 .
drwxr-xr-x  17 root     root      4096 Oct  2 18:12 ..
-rw-r--r--  1 root     root      388 Dec 10 19:55 customerinfo.sql
drwxr--r--  2 mysql    users      4096 Dec  2 13:21 dummydb/
drwxr--r--  2 mysql    mysql      4096 Dec 10 19:50 ecommerce/
drwxr-xr--  2 root     root      4096 Dec 16 16:18 ecommercebakup/
drwxr-xr--  2 root     root      4096 Dec 16 16:18 ecommercebakup_old/
drwxr--r--  2 mysql    mysql      4096 Nov 25 21:49 examplesdb/
drwxr--r--  2 mysql    mysql      4096 Nov  6 14:09 inventory/
drwxr--r--  2 mysql    mysql      4096 Dec 10 19:30 mysql/
drwxr-xr--  2 mysql    mysql      4096 Dec 13 23:16 mysqlbak/
drwxr-xr-x  2 mysql    mysql      4096 Dec  7 17:43 outfile/
-rw-r--r--  1 mysql    mysql      49516 Dec 10 18:04 slackware.err
-rw-rw----  1 mysql    mysql     1721 Nov 30 21:13 slackware.log
-rw-rw----  1 mysql    users      5 Dec 10 18:04 slackware.pid
drwxr--r--  2 mysql    mysql     724992 Dec  1 23:47 test/
drwxr--r--  2 mysql    mysql      4096 Nov 11 20:22 testdb/
slackware:~#
```

**Figure 13-14:** Adding the `--keepold` switch tells `mysqlhotcopy` to keep the old destination after performing a copy where the destination already exists.

To copy more than one database at a time, you can use the `--regexp` switch to create a regular expression of matching databases. This switch uses a syntax similar to the one that tells `mysqlhotcopy` which tables to copy. Figure 13-15 shows an example of the `--regexp` switch in action.



The `--regexp` option does not run well currently; it may be fixed in a future version of `mysqlhotcopy`.

```
mail:/usr/local/var# mysqlhotcopy -p evh5150 --regexp=test dbbackup
Use of uninitialized value at /usr/local/bin/mysqlhotcopy line 230.
Use of uninitialized value at /usr/local/bin/mysqlhotcopy line 231.
Use of uninitialized value at /usr/local/bin/mysqlhotcopy line 230.
Use of uninitialized value at /usr/local/bin/mysqlhotcopy line 231.
copying multiple databases, but last argument ('/usr/local/var/dbbackup') is not a
directory
mail:/usr/local/var# mkdir dbbackup
mail:/usr/local/var# mysqlhotcopy -p evh5150 --regexp=test dbbackup
Use of uninitialized value at /usr/local/bin/mysqlhotcopy line 230.
Use of uninitialized value at /usr/local/bin/mysqlhotcopy line 231.
Use of uninitialized value at /usr/local/bin/mysqlhotcopy line 230.
Use of uninitialized value at /usr/local/bin/mysqlhotcopy line 231.
Can't hotcopy to '/usr/local/var/dbbackup', '/usr/local/var/dbbackup' because dir
ecotory
already exist and the --allowold option was not given.
mail:/usr/local/var#
```

**Figure 13-15:** The `--regexp` switch serves to copy more than one database at a time but is currently quite buggy.

You can also specify a suffix for copied databases with the `--suffix` switch. Doing so can help to keep a standard suffix for all backed-up databases. In Figure 13-16, for example, I use the `--suffix` switch to create a backup with an extension of `_bak`.

```
slackware:/usr/local/var# mysqlhotcopy -p evh5150 --suffix=.bak ecommerce
Using copy suffix '.bak'
Locked 7 tables in 0 seconds.
Flushed tables (ecommerce.cardinfo, ecommerce.cardtype, ecommerce.customer, ecommerce
.locale, ecommerce.manufacturer, ecommerce.product, ecommerce.producttype) in 0 sec
onds.
Copying 24 files...
Copying indices for 0 files...
Unlocked tables
mysqlhotcopy copied 7 tables (24 files) in 0 seconds (0 seconds overall).
slackware:/usr/local/var#
```

**Figure 13-16:** Using the `--suffix` switch to create a backup with a special extension

To see an example of what `mysqlhotcopy` would do given a set of arguments, use the `-n` or `--dryrun` switch. The `-n` or `--dryrun` switch provides a listing of what would happen without actually performing the operation. An example of the `--dryrun` switch is shown in Figure 13-17.

```

slackware:~# mysqlhotcopy --dryrun -p evh5150 --allowold ecommerce ecommercebak
mkdir '/usr/local/var/ecommercebak' 0750
LOCK TABLES ecommerce.cardinfo READ, ecommerce.cardtype READ, ecommerce.customer READ, ecommerce.locale READ, ecommerce.manufacturer READ, ecommerce.product READ, ecommerce.producttype READ
FLUSH TABLES /*+132323 ecommerce.cardinfo, ecommerce.cardtype, ecommerce.customer, ecommerce.locale, ecommerce.manufacturer, ecommerce.product, ecommerce.producttype */
Copying 24 files...
cp -p '/usr/local/var/ecommerce/cardinfo.MYD' '/usr/local/var/ecommerce/cardinfo.MYI' '/usr/local/var/ecommerce/cardinfo.frm' '/usr/local/var/ecommerce/cardtype.MYD' '/usr/local/var/ecommerce/cardtype.frm' '/usr/local/var/ecommerce/customer.MYD' '/usr/local/var/ecommerce/customer.MYI' '/usr/local/var/ecommerce/customer.frm' '/usr/local/var/ecommerce/customertable.txt' '/usr/local/var/ecommerce/ecommerce.customer.MYD' '/usr/local/var/ecommerce/ecommerce.customer.MYI' '/usr/local/var/ecommerce/ecommerce.customer.frm' '/usr/local/var/ecommerce/ecommercecustomer.MYD' '/usr/local/var/ecommerce/ecommercecustomer.MYI' '/usr/local/var/ecommerce/ecommercecustomer.frm' '/usr/local/var/ecommerce/manufacturer.MYD' '/usr/local/var/ecommerce/manufacturer.MYI' '/usr/local/var/ecommerce/manufacturer.frm' '/usr/local/var/ecommerce/product.MYD' '/usr/local/var/ecommerce/product.MYI' '/usr/local/var/ecommerce/product.frm' '/usr/local/var/ecommerce/producttype.MYD' '/usr/local/var/ecommerce/producttype.MYI' '/usr/local/var/ecommerce/producttype.frm' '/usr/local/var/ecommercebak'
Copying indices for 0 files...
UNLOCK TABLES
slackware:~#

```

**Figure 13-17:** Using the `--dryrun` or `-n` switch you can see what would happen with `mysqlhotcopy` without actually performing the backup.

Other options for `mysqlhotcopy` include the following:

| <b>Option</b>              | <b>Description</b>   |
|----------------------------|--|
| <code>--noindices</code>   | Excludes any index files from the backup.  |
| <code>--flushlog</code>    | Performs the same functions as the <code>flush-logs</code> function with <code>mysqladmin</code> to reset any logging. Related to replication. |
| <code>--resetmaster</code> | Restarts the replication process.  |
| <code>--resetslave</code>  | Restarts the replication process.  |
| <code>--tmpdir</code>      | Changes the location of the temporary directory used by <code>mysqlhotcopy</code> (which is <code>/tmp</code> by default).                     |

Later this chapter provides an example of a script that automates the process of making backups with `mysqlhotcopy`.



The script for automating backups with `mysqlhotcopy` is also located on the CD ROM included with this book.

## mysqldump

With `mysqldump`, you can obtain a copy of the database structure, as well as the actual data for all databases on the server. The `mysqldump` command is flexible enough that you can specify structural units as small as tables and export them. Taking the output from `mysqldump` and importing it back into MySQL, you can quickly reproduce an entire database server, along with all its data.



For further details of the `mysqldump` program, see Chapter 10.

For example, in Figure 13-18 the `mysqldump` command runs to create a backup of all databases on the server and place the contents in a file called `serverbackup.sql`. The contents of the file include the DDL to create the databases and internal structure for the databases. The file also includes the DML and data contained in the databases.

A screenshot of a terminal window titled "MySQL". The window shows a command-line interface with the following text:

```
mail:/usr/local/var# mysqldump -A -p > serverbackup.sql
Enter password:
mail:/usr/local/var#
```

The window has standard window controls (minimize, maximize, close) at the top right.

**Figure 13-18:** Using `mysqldump` to export the entire contents of a database server including DDL and DML

The file created by `mysqldump` could then be saved or archived to a remote location or tape drive. Because `mysqldump` can be run from a remote machine, the file would automatically be a redundant backup in case of hardware failure on the MySQL server. If the hard drive fails on the MySQL server, the file produced by `mysqldump` on the remote machine would still be intact.

The file produced by `mysqldump` can then be imported into a new MySQL server by simply reading it in through the CLI. Figure 13-19 shows an example of reading the output of a `mysqldump` into the CLI. No output or success message prints to the screen upon completion.

A screenshot of a terminal window titled "MySQL". The window shows a command-line interface with the following text:

```
mail:/usr/local/var# mysql -p < serverbackup.sql
```

The window has standard window controls (minimize, maximize, close) at the top right.

**Figure 13-19:** Importing the output of a `mysqldump` file is as easy as reading it into the CLI.

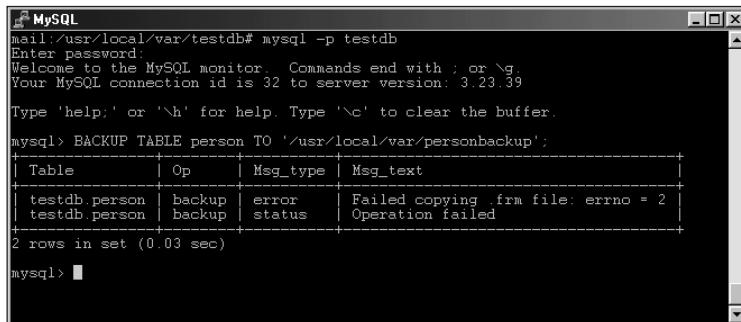
## BACKUP TABLE

Another method for backing up an individual table is via the BACKUP TABLE statement. This statement runs from within (or using) the MySQL CLI. The syntax is as follows:

```
BACKUP TABLE <tablename>[, <tablename>] TO '<directory>'
```

The BACKUP TABLE statement expects a path and directory as the argument for backup location. The statement currently only works with MyISAM tables as well. The BACKUP TABLE statement makes a copy of the .frm and .MYD files for the given table. If you're backing up more than one table at a time, you should issue a LOCK TABLES statement before the BACKUP TABLE statement to ensure consistency amongst the tables. Don't forget to issue a FLUSH TABLES statement upon completion.

Upon completion, the BACKUP TABLE statement prints a status message. If an error occurs, its message is also printed as part of the BACKUP TABLE output. For example, if the target directory does not exist, you receive a message similar to that in Figure 13-20.

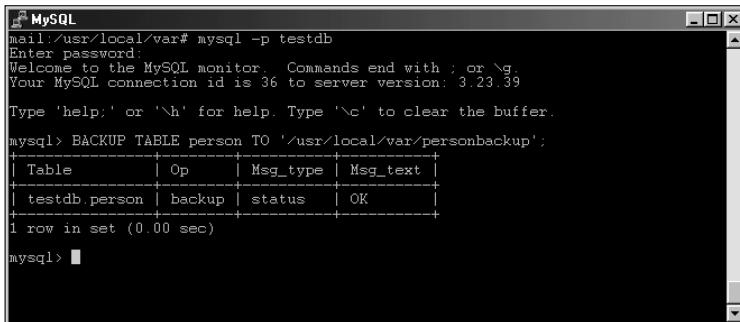


A screenshot of a terminal window titled "MySQL". The window shows the MySQL command-line interface. The user has entered the command "BACKUP TABLE person TO '/usr/local/var/personbackup';". The output shows a table with three rows. The first row is a header with columns: Table, Op, Msg\_type, and Msg\_text. The second and third rows show the results of the backup operation for the 'person' table. Both rows have 'Op' set to 'backup'. The second row is an 'error' type message: "Failed copying .frm file: errno = 2". The third row is a 'status' type message: "Operation failed". A status message at the bottom of the screen says "2 rows in set (0.03 sec)".

| Table         | Op     | Msg_type | Msg_text                            |
|---------------|--------|----------|-------------------------------------|
| testdb.person | backup | error    | Failed copying .frm file: errno = 2 |
| testdb.person | backup | status   | Operation failed                    |

**Figure 13-20:** The BACKUP TABLE statement produces a status message upon completion, as well as an error message if needed.

In Figure 13-21, a successful example of the BACKUP TABLE statement is shown—along with the resulting status message.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "MySQL" with the following command-line session:

```
mail:/usr/local/var# mysql -p testdb
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor.  Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 36 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> BACKUP TABLE person TO '/usr/local/var/personbackup';
+-----+-----+-----+
| Table | Op   | Msg_type | Msg_text |
+-----+-----+-----+
| testdb.person | backup | status    | OK
+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> █
```

Figure 13-21: A successful run of the BACKUP TABLE statement

## Troubleshooting and Repairing Table Problems

I once had a client who, instead of logging in to a machine and typing *reboot*, would simply turn the machine off and then back on. He couldn't figure out why the files on the system were corrupt and some tables in the database would often give errors and need repair. He blamed the corruption and errors on just about everything else, and didn't even think that turning the machine off *without shutting down the applications* could affect the integrity of anything on the computer. MySQL is a stable and robust database server, but even MySQL would have a hard time maintaining data integrity in such a situation.

Although I can't say that table corruption never results from an error in the database itself, normally the server maintains the integrity of its data at all times. Instances of table errors and corruption usually point to a dirty shutdown of MySQL or the server, a hardware failure, or some other catastrophe not directly related to the MySQL server.

When a failure does occur, make sure you have backups of both the data *and* the table structure that keeps your data organized. Having current and quality backups is the first line of defense in administration of the MySQL server. Aside from catastrophe, tables can sometimes suffer from fragmentation. This can occur because of deletes and updates to a table. Knowing how to optimize tables is another aspect of administration of a MySQL server.

This section examines the commands and statements you use for troubleshooting and repairing tables in MySQL. Most of the section concentrates on the MyISAM table type (the default in MySQL), although some tools can be used with the BerkeleyDB (BDB) transactional table type.

## mysqlcheck

`mysqlcheck` is a relatively new command for working with MyISAM tables.

**Note**

The `myisamchk` program requires you to stop the server before running checks or repairs. However, the `mysqlcheck` command allows the server to be running while performing the checks and repairs.

**Caution**

If a client is working with the table at the same time that `mysqlcheck` attempts the requested operation, the operation fails.

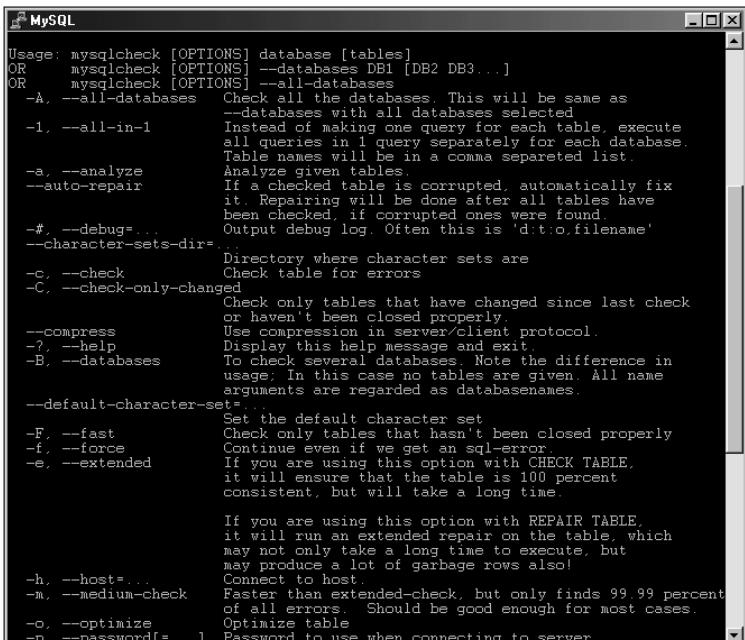
The `mysqlcheck` command serves as the basis for most other troubleshooting functions with MySQL.

**Cross-Reference**

Like other commands with MySQL, `mysqlcheck` has many command-line switches and options the same. Refer to Chapter 8 on the MySQL CLI for full explanation of the common options, such as `-#` or `--debug`, `--character-sets-dir`, `--default-character-set`, `--compress`, `-?` or `--help`, `-h` or `--host`, `-p` or `--password`, `-P` or `--port`, `-S` or `--socket`, `-u` or `--user`, and `-V` or `--version`.

**Tip**

As with many other commands with MySQL, you can obtain a syntax reference simply by typing the command, as shown in Figure 13-22.



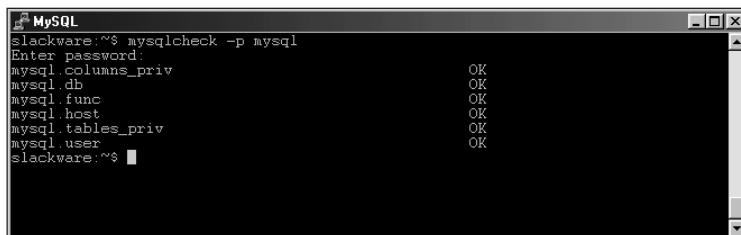
```
MySQL> mysqlcheck [OPTIONS] database [tables]
OR
mysqlcheck [OPTIONS] --databases DB1 [DB2 DB3...]
OR
mysqlcheck [OPTIONS] --all-databases
-A, --all-databases      Check all the databases. This will be same as
                         --databases with all databases selected
-1, --all-in-1           Instead of making one query for each table, execute
                         all queries in 1 query separately for each database.
                         Table names will be in a comma separated list.
-a, --analyze            Analyze given tables.
--auto-repair           If a checked table is corrupted, automatically fix
                         it. Repairing will be done after all tables have
                         been checked, if corrupted ones were found
-#, --debug=...          Output debug log. Often this is 'd:t:o,filename'
--character-sets-dir=...
-e, --check              Directory where character sets are
                         Check table for errors
-C, --check-only-changed
                         Check only tables that have changed since last check
                         or haven't been closed properly.
--compress               Use compression in server/client protocol.
-?-, --help               Display this help message and exit.
-B, --databases          To check several databases. Note the difference in
                         usage: In this case no tables are given. All name
                         arguments are regarded as databasename.
--default-character-set=
-F, --fast               Set the default character set
                         Check only tables that hasn't been closed properly
-f, --force               Continue even if we get an sql-error
-e, --extended            If you are using this option with CHECK TABLE,
                         it will ensure that the table is 100 percent
                         consistent, but will take a long time.
                         If you are using this option with REPAIR TABLE,
                         it will run an extended repair on the table, which
                         may not only take a long time to execute, but
                         may produce a lot of garbage rows also!
-h, --host=...            Connect to host.
-m, --medium-check        Faster than extended-check, but only finds 99.99 percent
                         of all errors. Should be good enough for most cases.
-o, --optimize            Optimize table
-p, --password[=...]      Password to use when connecting to server.
```

**Figure 13-22:** Typing `mysqlcheck` with no options yields a syntax and options reference for the command.

The basic syntax for the `mysqlcheck` command is as follows:

```
mysqlcheck [OPTIONS] database [tables]
```

When called with no options, `mysqlcheck` examines the tables within the given database for errors. If no errors are found, a status message of `OK` is printed for each table, as shown in Figure 13-23.



```
MySQL
slackware:~$ mysqlcheck -p mysql
Enter password:
mysql.columns_priv          OK
mysql.db                      OK
mysql.func                     OK
mysql.host                     OK
mysql.tables_priv              OK
mysql.user                     OK
slackware:~$
```

**Figure 13-23:** Mysqlcheck prints an `OK` status message for each table free from errors during the default check operation.

`Mysqlcheck` also includes a function to analyze the key distribution for a table. This function is called with the `-a` or `--analyze` switch on the command line. The output when using this function is the same as with the default use of `mysqlcheck` when called with no options; the command outputs an `OK` status message. If the table does not need further analysis the status message is `Table is already up to date`. For example, if no changes have taken place, `mysqlcheck` recognizes this fact and does not perform additional analysis, as shown in Figure 13-24.

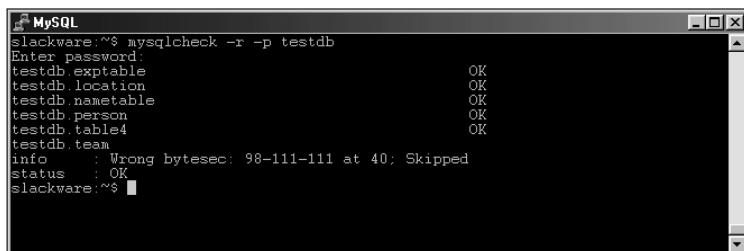


```
MySQL
slackware:~$ mysqlcheck -a -p ecommerce
Enter password:
ecommerce.cardinfo           Table is already up to date
ecommerce.cardtype            Table is already up to date
ecommerce.customer             Table is already up to date
ecommerce.locale                Table is already up to date
ecommerce.manufacturer          Table is already up to date
ecommerce.product                 Table is already up to date
ecommerce.producttype           Table is already up to date
slackware:~$
```

**Figure 13-24:** Mysqlcheck -a outputs a different status message if the table does not need analysis.

If you perform a large number of deletes or other changes to a table, you can improve performance by using the `-o` or `--optimize` switch with `mysqlcheck`. Optimizing the table will defragment the table. Like the process for analyzing a table, the optimization process will provide a status message for tables within the database.

The final main function with mysqlcheck is to repair the table. This function is called with the `-r` or `--repair` option. The repair function can fix most any problem with a table. However, the repair function can sometimes lose data; therefore I'll stress again to make sure you have backups. If `mysqlcheck` reports an error and you're going to repair it, it is always a good idea to check the integrity of your backups before proceeding. Figure 13-25 shows an example of `mysqlcheck` repairing a table. (Note that I purposely corrupted the table for this example.)



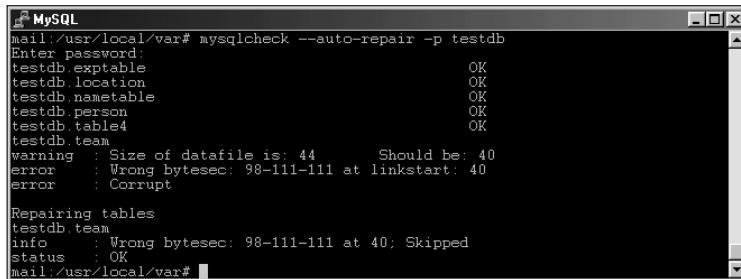
```
slackware:~$ mysqlcheck -r -p testdb
Enter password:
testdb.exptable          OK
testdb.location          OK
testdb.nametable         OK
testdb.person             OK
testdb.table4             OK
testdb.team               OK
info                      Wrong bytesec: 98-111-111 at 40; Skipped
status                   OK
slackware:~$
```

Figure 13-25: Using `mysqlcheck` to repair a corrupt table

When you use the main (default) option to check databases and tables with which `mysqlcheck`, you have several levels or degrees at which to examine the table(s) for errors:

| <b>Command</b>                                       | <b>Function</b>   |
|--|---|
| <code>-C</code> or <code>--check</code>              | The default option; checks all tables.                      |
| <code>-C</code> or <code>--check-only-changed</code> | Checks only tables that have changed since the last check.  |
| <code>-F</code> or <code>--fast</code>               | Looks for and examines tables that weren't closed properly. |
| <code>-q</code> or <code>--quick</code>              | Does not check row-level objects.                           |
| <code>-m</code> or <code>--medium-check</code>       |   |
| <code>-e</code> or <code>--extended</code>           |   |

If you want for `mysqlcheck` to automatically repair any errors it finds, add the `--auto-repair` switch. Figure 13-26 shows an example of using the `auto-repair` switch with `mysqlcheck` to repair a broken table.

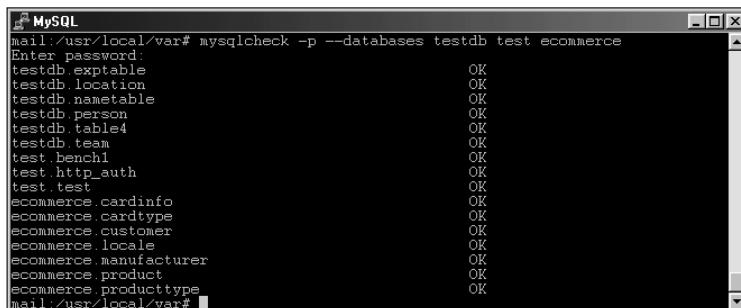


```
mail:/usr/local/var# mysqlcheck --auto-repair -p testdb
Enter password:
testdb.exptable OK
testdb.location OK
testdb.nametable OK
testdb.person OK
testdb.table4 OK
testdb.team OK
warning : Size of datafile is: 44 Should be: 40
error   : Wrong bytesec: 98-111-111 at linkstart: 40
error   : Corrupt
Repairing tables
testdb.team
info   : Wrong bytesec: 98-111-111 at 40; Skipped
status : OK
mail:/usr/local/var#
```

**Figure 13-26:** Use the `--auto-repair` switch to automatically repair a table when a problem is found.

Two functions defined with `mysqlcheck` examine all databases or more than one specified database.

| <b>Command</b>                              | <b>Function</b>   |
|---|---|
| <code>--all-databases</code>                | Runs the specified operation on all databases within the MySQL server.  |
| <code>-B</code> or <code>--databases</code> | Checks more than one, but not all, databases; used with the names of the databases separated by whitespace. Figure 13-27 shows an example of the <code>--databases</code> switch in use, examining three databases on the server. |



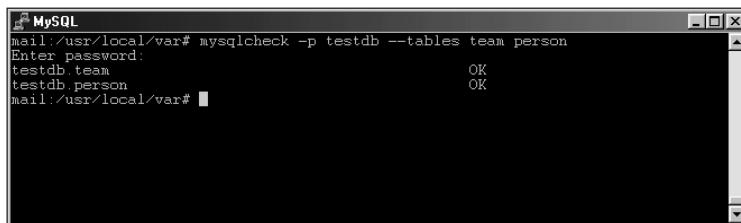
```
mail:/usr/local/var# mysqlcheck -p --databases test ecommerce
Enter password:
testdb.exptable OK
testdb.location OK
testdb.nametable OK
testdb.person OK
testdb.table4 OK
testdb.team OK
test.bench1 OK
test.http_auth OK
test.test OK
ecommerce.cardinfo OK
ecommerce.cardtype OK
ecommerce.customer OK
ecommerce.locale OK
ecommerce.manufacturer OK
ecommerce.product OK
ecommerce.producttype OK
mail:/usr/local/var#
```

**Figure 13-27:** The `--databases` switch examines one or more databases with `mysqlcheck`.

If you want to only examine certain tables within a database, use the `--tables` switch. Because delete operations can cause fragmentation, you can speed up your examination by adding a `--tables <tablename>` clause so the `mysqlcheck` command examines only the specified table(s). To specify more than one table, separate the tablenames with whitespace. Figure 13-28 shows an example of `mysqlcheck` examining certain tables with the `--tables` switch.

**Note**

The `--tables` switch cannot be used with the `--databases` or `-B` switch.



```
MySQL
mail:/usr/local/var# mysqlcheck -p testdb --tables team person
Enter password:
testdb.team          OK
testdb.person         OK
mail:/usr/local/var#
```

**Figure 13-28:** The `--tables` switch causes `mysqlcheck` to examine only the specified table or tables.

To change the performance of `mysqlcheck` the `-1` or `--all-in-one` switch can be used. This switch causes `mysqlcheck` to use a single query for all operations within a given database. This is as opposed to the normal behavior of one query per table.

The `-F` or `--force` option causes `mysqlcheck` to continue its operation even if an error is encountered. Using this option can sometimes cause corruption or other problems.

## myisamchk

The `myisamchk` utility serves to check and repair MyISAM tables while the MySQL server is offline. Much of the syntax and many of the switches for `myisamchk` are the same as those for `mysqlcheck`.

The switches that `mysqlcheck` shares in common with other MySQL utilities include those for obtaining help and setting default character sets. As with the other utilities, I'll forego coverage of the following basic switches in this section:

- `-#` or `--debug`
- `--character-sets-dir`
- `--default-character-set`
- `--compress`
- `-O` or `--set-variable`

```
-? or --help  
-V or --version
```

The basic syntax for myisamchk is as follows:

```
myisamchk [OPTIONS] <tablename>[.MYI] (<tablename>[.MYI])
```

myisamchk has global options aside from those previously described. The **--wait** switch informs myisamchk to pause if the table is already locked. Using the **-s** switch causes myisamchk to be quieter as it goes about its business. Multiple **-s** switches can make the command even more silent. The **-v** switch causes myisamchk to print more information as it works. As with the **-s** switch, you can use more than one **-v** switch to increase the verbosity of myisamchk.

myisamchk has two basic modes of operation: Check and Repair. The default action for myisamchk is to check the tables specified. Figure 13-29 shows a basic usage of myisamchk.

```
MySQL  
mail:/usr/local/var/testdb# myisamchk team  
Checking MyISAM file: team  
Data records: 2 Deleted blocks: 0  
- check file-size  
- check key delete-chain  
- check record delete-chain  
- check index reference  
- check data record references index: 1  
- check record links  
mail:/usr/local/var/testdb#
```

Figure 13-29: An example of basic usage of myisamchk

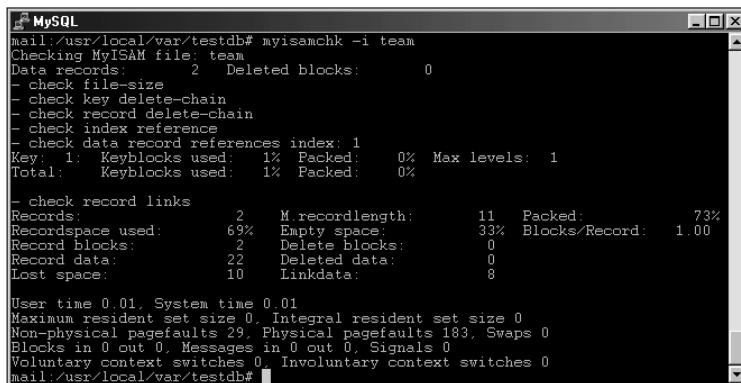
## Options for checking tables with myisamchk

The options relating to checking tables with myisamchk are as follows:

```
-c or --check  
-e or --extended-check  
-F or --fast  
-C or --check-only-changed  
-f or --force  
-i or --information  
-m or --medium-check  
-U or --update-state  
-T or --read-only
```

The **-c** switch (which instructs the utility to check) is the default with `myisamchk`. The **--extended-check**, **--fast**, **--check-only-changed**, **--force**, and **--medium-check** options were discussed in the preceding section on `mysqlcheck`.

The **--information** switch prints more information on the table(s) examined. Figure 13-30 shows an example of the `myisamchk` command run with the **-i** switch. Compare the results to Figure 13-29 to see the extra information printed.



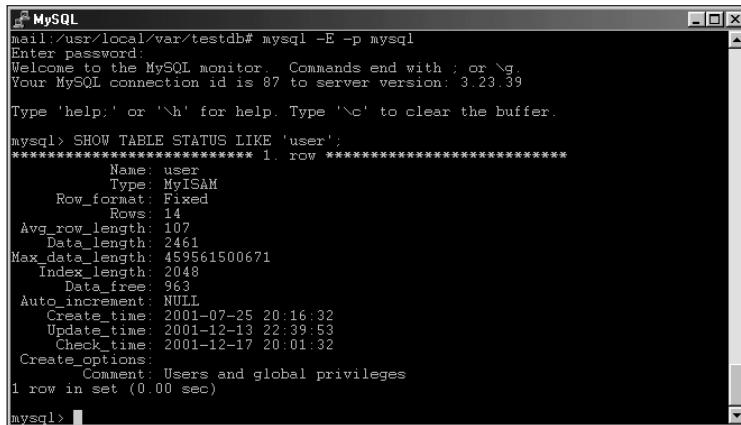
The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "MySQL" with the command `mail:/usr/local/var/testdb# myisamchk -i team` entered. The output displays detailed statistics for the "team" table:

```
Checking MyISAM file: team
Data records:      2 Deleted blocks:      0
- check file-size
- check key delete-chain
- check record delete-chain
- check index reference
- check data record references index: 1
Key: 1 Keyblocks used: 1% Packed: 0% Max levels: 1
Total: Keyblocks used: 1% Packed: 0%
- check record links
Records:        2 M.recordlength:      11 Packed:    73%
Recordspace used: 69% Empty space: 33% Blocks/Record: 1.00
Record blocks:   2 Delete blocks: 0
Record data:     22 Deleted data: 0
Lost space:     10 Linkdata: 8
User time 0.01, System time 0.01
Maximum resident set size 0, Integral resident set size 0
Non-physical pagefaults 29, Physical pagefaults 183, Swaps 0
Blocks in 0 out 0, Messages in 0 out 0, Signals 0
Voluntary context switches 0, Involuntary context switches 0
mail:/usr/local/var/testdb#
```

**Figure 13-30:** Using the **-i** or **--information** switch tells `myisamchk` to print more information about the table or tables that it examines.

The **-T** or **--read-only** switch tells `myisamchk` not to update the `Check_time` table variable. (Information about tables can be obtained with the `SHOW TABLE STATUS` statement using the CLI.) Normally, when `myisamchk` operates on a table, it updates the `Check_time` variable. Examples of the **-T** or **--read-only** switch appear in Figures 13-31 through 13-33.

Figure 13-31, the `SHOW TABLE STATUS` statement displays a table that hasn't been checked recently. Figure 13-32 shows a run of the `myisamchk` command with the **-T** switch. (Notice that the command operates the same as it would without the **-T** switch.) Figure 13-33 shows the `SHOW TABLE STATUS` command run again; notice that `Check_time` still hasn't changed.

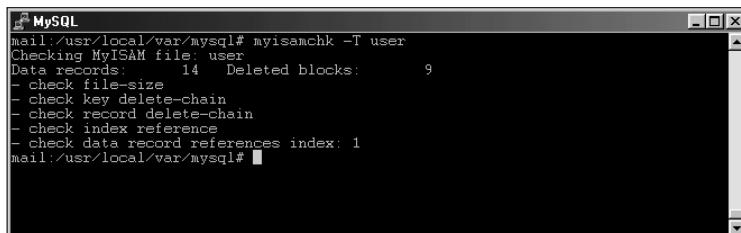


```
mail:/usr/local/var/testdb# mysql -E -p mysql
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor.  Commands end with ; or \q.
Your MySQL connection id is 87 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> SHOW TABLE STATUS LIKE 'user';
***** 1. row *****
  Name: user
    Type: MyISAM
  Row_format: Fixed
    Rows: 14
Avg_row_length: 107
  Data_length: 2461
Max_data_length: 459561500671
  Index_length: 2048
  Data_free: 963
Auto_increment: NULL
  Create_time: 2001-07-25 20:16:32
  Update_time: 2001-12-13 22:39:53
  Check_time: 2001-12-17 20:01:32
Create_options:
Comment: Users and global privileges
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

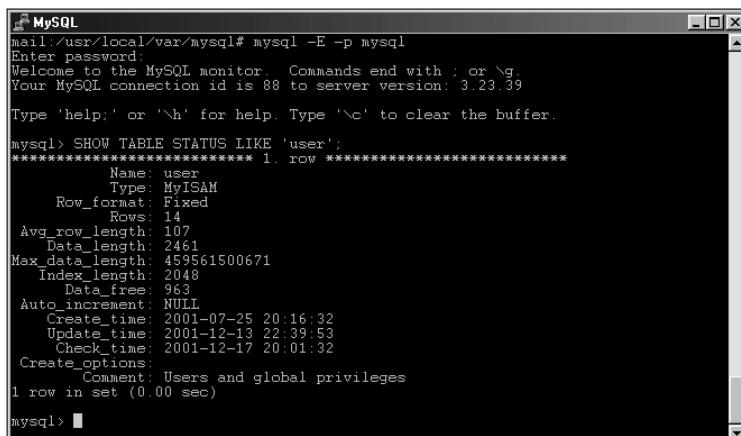
mysql>
```

**Figure 13-31:** The SHOW TABLE STATUS statement shows that the table hasn't been checked recently.



```
mail:/usr/local/var/mysql# myisamchk -T user
Checking MyISAM file: user
Data records: 14 Deleted blocks: 9
- check file-size
- check key delete-chain
- check record delete-chain
- check index reference
- check data record references index: 1
mail:/usr/local/var/mysql#
```

**Figure 13-32:** Performing a myisamchk with the -T switch that causes the Check\_time to not be updated.



```
mail:/usr/local/var/mysql# mysql -E -p mysql
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor.  Commands end with ; or \q.
Your MySQL connection id is 88 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> SHOW TABLE STATUS LIKE 'user';
***** 1. row *****
  Name: user
    Type: MyISAM
  Row_format: Fixed
    Rows: 14
Avg_row_length: 107
  Data_length: 2461
Max_data_length: 459561500671
  Index_length: 2048
  Data_free: 963
Auto_increment: NULL
  Create_time: 2001-07-25 20:16:32
  Update_time: 2001-12-13 22:39:53
  Check_time: 2001-12-17 20:01:32
Create_options:
Comment: Users and global privileges
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>
```

**Figure 13-33:** Looking at the output from SHOW TABLE STATUS again, the value for Check\_time has indeed remained the same even though I checked the table with myisamchk.

If you suspect a table contains errors or corruption and want to prevent further use of the table, the `-U` or `--update-state` switch with `myisamchk` marks any table where an error is found as a *crashed table*—which effectively prevents any further use of the table, even with a `SELECT` statement, until the table is repaired. Clients attempting to work with the table receive an error message. Figure 13-34 shows an example of a simple `SELECT` statement performed on a table, using the MySQL CLI.

```
MySQL
mail:/usr/local/var# mysql -p testdb
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor. Commands end with ; or \q.
Your MySQL connection id is 90 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer
mysql> SELECT * FROM team;
+-----+-----+
| team_id | team   |
+-----+-----+
|       1 | boo    |
|       2 | egfef  |
+-----+-----+
2 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>
```

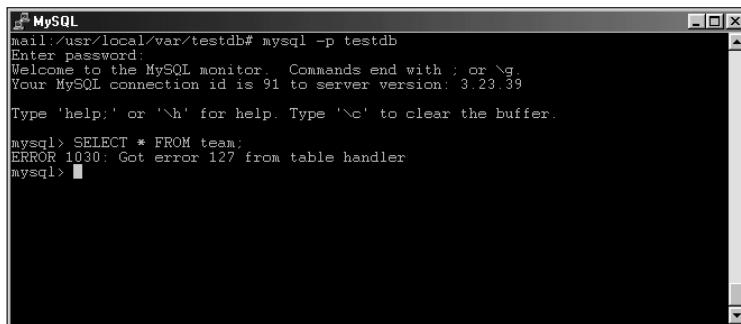
**Figure 13-34:** A simple `SELECT` statement, performed through the CLI on a table that I suspect to be corrupt

Although there's no way to tell from the `SELECT` statement, I suspect that this table might be corrupt. Therefore I perform a `myisamchk` on the table and use the `-U` switch, as shown in Figure 13-35.

```
MySQL
mail:/usr/local/var# cd testdb
mail:/usr/local/var/testdb# myisamchk -U team
Checking MyISAM file: team
Data records: 2 Deleted blocks: 0
  check file-size
myisamchk: warning: Size of datafile is: 44           Should be: 40
- check key delete-chain
- check record delete-chain
- check index reference
- check data record references index: 1
- check record links
myisamchk: error: Wrong bytesec: 98-111-111 at linkstart: 40
MyISAM-table 'team' is corrupted
Fix it using switch "-r" or "-o"
mail:/usr/local/var/testdb#
```

**Figure 13-35:** Running `myisamchk` with the `-U` switch to mark the table as crashed and prevent further use

Figure 13-36 shows what happens when I attempt to run the previously successful `SELECT` statement on the table again. The `SELECT` statement fails because the table is marked as crashed—which (even if it seems inconvenient at the moment) actually helps by preventing further corruption or invalid results.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "MySQL" with the following text:

```
mail:/usr/local/var/testdb# mysql -p testdb
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor.  Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 91 to server version: 3.23.39
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> SELECT * FROM team;
ERROR 1030: Got error 127 from table handler
mysql> █
```

**Figure 13-36:** The same SELECT statement that was previously successful now fails because the table is marked as crashed.

### Options for repairing tables with myisamchk

Because checking is the default option with myisamchk, you can only use the repair or recover function by specifying the **-r** or **--recover** switch on the myisamchk command line.



**Tip** If the normal **-r** switch fails, the options that repair or recover tables with myisamchk can also be used with the **-o** or **--safe-recover** switch

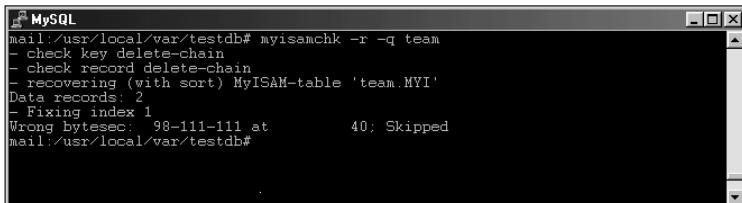
The repair or recover switches are as follows:

- B or --backup**
- D or --data-file-length**
- e or --extend-check**
- f or --force**
- k or --keys-used**
- l or --no-symlinks**
- n or --sort-recover**
- t or --tmpdir**
- q or --quick**
- u or --unpack**

A basic repair or recovery with myisamchk can be run with the following command syntax:

```
myisamchk -r -q <tablename>
```

Figure 13-37 shows the results of this command.



```
MySQL
mail:/usr/local/var/testdb# myisamchk -r -q team
  check key delete-chain
  - check record delete-chain
  - recovering (with sort) MyISAM-table 'team.MYI'
Data records: 2
  Fixing index 1
Wrong bytesec: 98-111-111 at      40: Skipped
mail:/usr/local/var/testdb#
```

**Figure 13-37:** A basic quick repair with myisamchk

myisamchk does not necessarily use memory efficiently for repairs. Therefore you should set variables on the myisamchk command line using the `-O` or `--set-variable` switch. Doing so will make the repair process faster. Ideally, the `key_buffer` and `sort_buffer` values would be about a quarter of the total system memory to maximize efficiency of the myisamchk repair.

The following variables affect the performance of myisamchk:

- key\_buffer\_size
- read\_buffer\_size
- write\_buffer\_size
- sort\_buffer\_size
- sort\_key\_blocks
- decode\_bits

To determine the current setting for the variables, simply type the `myisamchk` command with no arguments (as shown in Figure 13-38).



You can type the command shown in Figure 13-38 safely while the server runs.

As stated previously, the variables can be set on the command line using the `-O` or `--set-variable` switch (as shown in Figure 13-39). The variables can also be set inside the configuration file such as `my.cnf` in Linux. To set the variables in the configuration file, place them underneath the `[myisamchk]` section.

```

MySQL
Change the character set used by the index
-t, --tmpdir=path Path for temporary files
-q, --quick Faster repair by not modifying the data file.
One can give a second '-q' to force myisamchk to
modify the original datfile in case of duplicate keys
-u, --unpack Unpack file packed with myisampack.

Other actions:
-a, --analyze Analyze distribution of keys. Will make some joins in
MySQL faster. You can check the calculated distribution
by using '--describe --verbose table_name'.
-d, --description Prints some information about table.
-A, --set-auto-increment[=value]
Force auto_increment to start at this or higher value
If no value is given, then sets the next auto_increment
value to the highest used value for the auto key + 1.
-S, --sort-index Sort index blocks. This speeds up 'read-next' in
applications
-R, --sort-records[#]
Sort records according to an index. This makes your
data much more localized and may speed up things
(It may be VERY slow to do a sort the first time!)

Default options are read from the following files in the given order:
/etc/my.cnf /usr/local/var/my.cnf ~/.my.cnf
The following groups are read: myisamchk
The following options may be given as the first argument:
--print-defaults Print the program argument list and exit
--no-defaults Don't read default options from any options file
--defaults-file=# Only read default options from the given file #
--defaults-extra-file=# Read this file after the global files are read

Possible variables for option --set-variable (-O) are:
key_buffer_size current value: 8384512
read_buffer_size current value: 262136
write_buffer_size current value: 262136
sort_buffer_size current value: 8388600
sort_key_blocks current value: 16
decode_bits current value: 9
mail:/usr/local/var# 

```

**Figure 13-38:** Determining the current values for myisamchk variables is done by simply typing the myisamchk command without switches or arguments.

```

MySQL
mail:/usr/local/var/testdb# myisamchk -O key_buffer_size=48M -O sort_buffer_size=
=16M team
Checking MyISAM file: team
Data records: 2 Deleted blocks: 0
myisamchk: warning: Table is marked as crashed
- check file-size
- check key delete-chain
- check record delete-chain
- check index reference
- check data record references index: 1
- check record links
myisamchk: error: Wrong bytesec: 98-111-111 at linkstart: 40
MyISAM-table 'team' is corrupted
Fix it using switch "-r" or "-o"
mail:/usr/local/var/testdb# 

```

**Figure 13-39:** Setting variables on the myisamchk command line by using the -O switch.

One of the more important options to use when repairing a table is the `-B` or `--backup` switch. Using the `--backup` switch will cause `myisamchk` to make a backup copy of the data file before you attempt to repair or optimize it. Doing so can be extremely helpful if you want to safeguard the table contents where a repair or optimize function might cause a problem.

If you have a problem with a table that the normal repair process cannot fix, you may want to attempt the `-e` or `--extend-check` option. This switch tries to recover every row from a table. If you'd like to get a faster repair, the `-q` or `--quick` option performs the recovery without modifying the data file. The use of two `-q` switches on the command line fixes duplicate index values.

Three file-system options that affect the performance of `myisamchk` are

| <b>Command</b>                                | <b>Function</b>   |
|---|---|
| <code>-t</code> or <code>-tmpdir</code>       | Changes the location that <code>myisamchk</code> uses for the temporary directory.                  |
| <code>-l</code> or <code>--no-symlinks</code> | Tells <code>myisamchk</code> not to follow symbolic links in the file system when examining tables. |
| <code>-u</code> or <code>-unpack</code>       | Causes <code>myisamchk</code> to unarchive a file packed with <code>myisampack</code> .             |

## ANALYZE TABLE

The `ANALYZE TABLE` statement runs through (or using) the MySQL CLI. It is the equivalent of running `mysqlcheck` with the `--analyze` switch.



For more information on optimizing tables, see the section on `mysqlcheck` in this chapter.

## OPTIMIZE TABLE

The `OPTIMIZE TABLE` statement runs through (or using) the MySQL CLI. It is the equivalent of running `mysqlcheck` with the `--optimize` switch. Optimizing a table is useful if you have changed variable length rows or deleted many rows from a table. It reduces fragmentation within the tables that it checks. The syntax for the `OPTIMIZE TABLE` statement is as follows:

```
OPTIMIZE TABLE <tablename>[, <tablename>]
```



For more information on optimizing tables, see the section on `mysqlcheck` in this chapter.

## CHECK TABLE

The CHECK TABLE statement runs through (or using) the MySQL CLI. It is the equivalent of running mysqlcheck with the `--check` switch or with no arguments at all, as it is the default for mysqlcheck.



For more information on optimizing tables, see the section on mysqlcheck in this chapter.

## REPAIR TABLE

The REPAIR TABLE statement runs through (or using) the MySQL CLI. It is the equivalent of running mysqlcheck with the `--repair` switch.



For more information on optimizing tables, see the section on mysqlcheck in this chapter.

# Restoring a MySQL Database

Restoring a database can be a stressful process—the database or server may have crashed, causing problems that need to be corrected; the repair process may not have worked on a corrupt table; a user may have inadvertently deleted all the data. Whatever the reason, a good backup can save the day. A previous section in this chapter discussed the process of creating the backups. This section looks at how to restore them.

There is no universally right or wrong way to restore from a backup, but there is a universally practical principle to use: *How you restore from a backup is determined by how the backup was created*. Consider these examples:

- ◆ If you used mysqlhotcopy to make the backup, you can use mysqlhotcopy to restore the database—or simply copy the database directory to the proper location and recreate the privileges for the individual accounts.
- ◆ If you created the backup by using the BACKUP TABLE statement, the RESTORE TABLE statement would be the natural complement.
- ◆ If you created the backup by using the mysqldump utility, then you can restore using the MySQL CLI.

## mysqlhotcopy

The mysqlhotcopy program is for making backups of entire database directories. However, you can also use mysqlhotcopy to restore from a previously backed-up copy of a database directory. For example, suppose you've used mysqlhotcopy to create a backup of the ecommerce database called ecommercebak. If something happens to the ecommerce database and you have to restore it, the mysqlhotcopy program can do so.

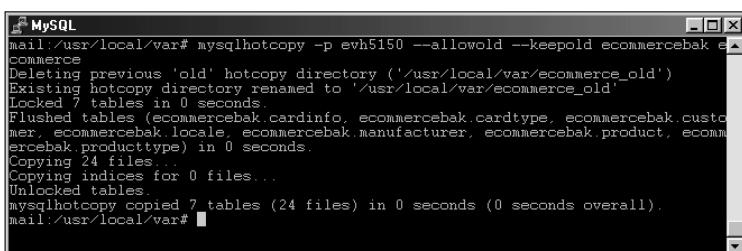
The following command would restore the ecommercebak database to the ecommerce directory and make a backup of the broken ecommerce database at the same time:

```
mysqlhotcopy -p <password> --allowold --keepold ecommercebak  
ecommerce
```

**Note**

Often, when mysqlhotcopy creates a backup, it doesn't update the permissions properly for your database server. Therefore using this utility to restore from a backup may generate a No tables to copy error. If you receive this error message, check the ownership of the directory holding the backup.

The results of this command are shown in Figure 13-40.

A screenshot of a terminal window titled "MySQL". The command entered is "mysqlhotcopy -p evh5150 --allowold --keepold ecommercebak ecommerce". The output shows the process of deleting previous hotcopy directories, renaming existing ones, locking tables, flushing data, copying 24 files, and unblocking tables. It concludes by stating that 7 tables were copied in 0 seconds overall.

```
mail:/usr/local/var# mysqlhotcopy -p evh5150 --allowold --keepold ecommercebak ecommerce  
Deleting previous 'old' hotcopy directory ('/usr/local/var/ecommerce_old')  
Existing hotcopy directory renamed to '/usr/local/var/ecommerce_old'  
Locked 7 tables in 0 seconds.  
Flushed tables (ecommercebak.cardinfo, ecommercebak.cardtype, ecommercebak.customer,  
ecommercebak.locale, ecommercebak.manufacturer, ecommercebak.product, ecommercebak.producttype) in 0 seconds.  
Copying 24 files...  
Copying indices for 0 files...  
Unlocked tables.  
mysqlhotcopy copied 7 tables (24 files) in 0 seconds (0 seconds overall).  
mail:/usr/local/var#
```

**Figure 13-40:** Restoring a previously backed-up database with the mysqlhotcopy program

## RESTORE TABLE

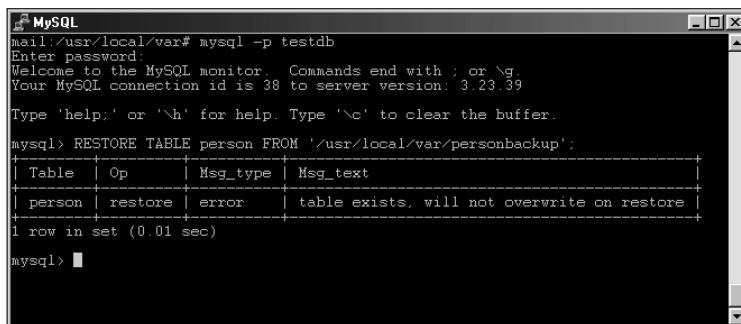
The RESTORE TABLE statement is the complement to the BACKUP TABLE statement. If you used the BACKUP TABLE statement to back up your tables, you can easily restore them to your MySQL server by using the RESTORE TABLE statement with the MySQL CLI. The syntax for the RESTORE TABLE statement is as follows:

```
RESTORE TABLE <tablename> (, <tablename>) FROM '<directory>'
```

Like the `BACKUP TABLE` statement, the `RESTORE TABLE` statement produces a status message as the output for the command. Even an error message can serve as a kind of status message in this context. For example, earlier in the chapter (refer to Figure 13-21), I created a backup of the table `testdb.person` and put it in the directory `/usr/local/var/personbackup`. Suppose I try to restore that table through the CLI, using the following command:

```
RESTORE TABLE person FROM '/usr/local/var/personbackup'
```

The table already exists—so MySQL doesn’t restore the table, producing (instead) the error message shown in Figure 13-41.



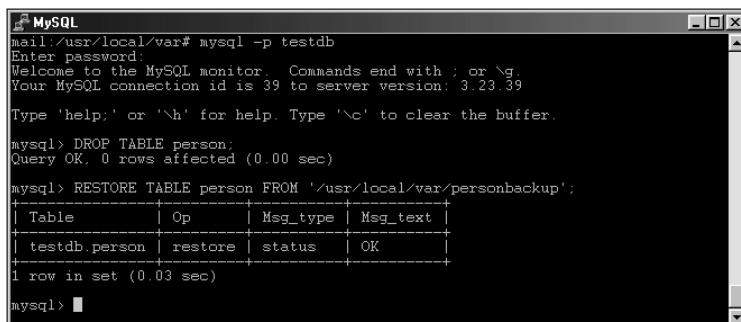
A screenshot of the MySQL monitor window. The command entered is `RESTORE TABLE person FROM '/usr/local/var/personbackup'`. The response shows an error message: "table exists, will not overwrite on restore".

| Table  | Op      | Msg_type | Msg_text                                    |
|--------|---------|----------|---|
| person | restore | error    | table exists, will not overwrite on restore |

1 row in set (0.01 sec)

**Figure 13-41:** Attempting to overwrite an existing table causes a failure.

Before restoring from a backup with the `RESTORE TABLE` statement, you must drop the table. Figure 13-42 shows the `DROP TABLE` statement along with the successful results from the `RESTORE TABLE` statement.



A screenshot of the MySQL monitor window. First, the `DROP TABLE person` command is run, resulting in "Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)". Then, the `RESTORE TABLE person FROM '/usr/local/var/personbackup'` command is run, resulting in a success message: "status OK".

| Table         | Op      | Msg_type | Msg_text |
|---------------|---------|----------|----------|
| testdb.person | restore | status   | OK       |

1 row in set (0.03 sec)

**Figure 13-42:** Using the `RESTORE TABLE` statement to restore a table backed up earlier with the `BACKUP TABLE` statement.



Be extremely careful running the `DROP TABLE` statement; it deletes the entire contents – every last shred of data – in the directory!

## The MySQL CLI

For backups or dumps created with the `mysqldump` utility, you can import or restore those into MySQL through the MySQL CLI. Because the `mysqldump` utility creates output as SQL statements, the files containing the output can then be imported or replayed simply by executing the statements.

Obviously for anything more than a few statements it becomes burdensome to copy and paste these into the CLI by hand. The use of the less-than sign (<) for redirecting the contents of a file into the CLI can alleviate the work of copying and pasting SQL into the CLI. Taking the contents of a file produced with `mysqldump` and redirecting it into MySQL is a simple process.

Recall that `mysqldump` produces output (as shown in Figure 13-43).

```
MySQL
DROP TABLE IF EXISTS cardinfo;
CREATE TABLE cardinfo (
    card_id int(11) default NULL,
    ccmun varchar(16) default NULL,
    ccexp date default NULL,
    name_on_card varchar(100) default NULL,
    email_address varchar(75) default NULL
) TYPE=MyISAM;
#
# Dumping data for table 'cardinfo'
#
INSERT INTO cardinfo VALUES (1,'0123012345678910','0000-00-00','Steve Suehring',
'suehring@dangermen.com');
INSERT INTO cardinfo VALUES (1,'1234567891011121','0000-00-00','Steve Suehring',
'venhalen@coredc.com');
INSERT INTO cardinfo VALUES (2,'0123456789012345','0000-00-00','Fake Name','none
@braingia.net');

#
# Table structure for table 'cardtype'
#
DROP TABLE IF EXISTS cardtype;
CREATE TABLE cardtype (
    card_id int(11) NOT NULL default '0',
    card_type varchar(20) default NULL,
    PRIMARY KEY (card_id)
) TYPE=MyISAM;
#
# Dumping data for table 'cardtype'
#
INSERT INTO cardtype VALUES (1,'Visa');
INSERT INTO cardtype VALUES (2,'Mastercard');
ecommerce sql line 10/155 28%
```

Figure 13-43: Example output from `mysqldump`

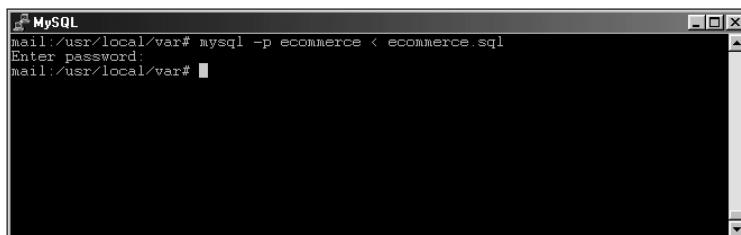
If you've made a complete backup of a database with `mysqldump` and need to recreate the database and data, you can import it through the MySQL CLI with a command line that looks like this:

```
mysql [OPTIONS] < <filetoinput>
```

As you can see from this command, importing into MySQL through the CLI is easy. The [OPTIONS] section can include things like username, password, host, and so forth. Another option that you may need to include is the name of the database. The output from `mysqldump` can include the DDL to create the database. If you do not have DDL to create the database included with the `mysqldump` output, then you will need to include the name of the database in your MySQL CLI command line. For example, the following command imports the contents of the file from Figure 13-43:

```
mysql -p <password> ecommerce < ecommerce.sql
```

The execution of this command is shown in Figure 13-44.



```
MySQL
mail:/usr/local/var# mysql -p ecommerce < ecommerce.sql
Enter password:
mail:/usr/local/var#
```

**Figure 13-44:** Importing an actual file produced with `mysqldump` into the CLI with the use of the redirect character

## Devising a Plan for Database Backups

The programs and tools discussed in this chapter are only useful if you actually take the time to actually use them. Making backups and optimizing tables is an important part of database administration. In this section I'll give an example of a simple script and method for regularly backing up the data in your MySQL server.



Chapter 14 discusses methods for optimizing tables and suggests a regimen of table maintenance.

I'll be using the `mysqldump` command to create backups of the database server. The resulting output can be huge if you're backing up a large database or databases. However the advantage of `mysqldump` is that the output is in plaintext—you can edit the file so it only imports the data you want restored. The resulting output file can also be compressed, which saves space.

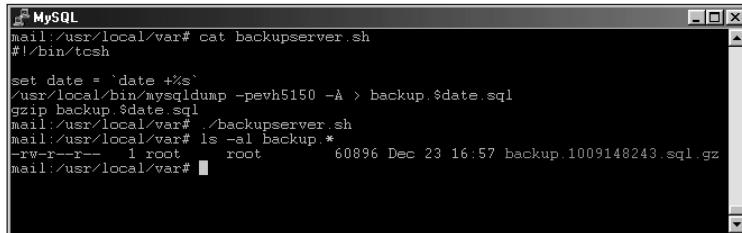
The command to back up all databases with `mysqldump` is as follows:

```
mysqldump -A [OPTIONS] > <outputfile>
```

For example, to create a backup of all databases on my example server, I run this command:

```
mysqldump -A -p > backup.sql
```

Ideally, I wouldn't need to be present to watch the command run—so I make a simple script to produce—and then compress—a backup. The script is shown in Figure 13-45.



```
MySQL
mail:~/usr/local/var# cat backupserver.sh
#!/bin/tcsh

set date = `date +%s`
/usr/local/bin/mysqldump -p`echo $date` -A > backup.$date.sql
gzip backup.$date.sql
mail:~/usr/local/var# ./backupserver.sh
mail:~/usr/local/var# ls -al backup/*
-rw-r--r-- 1 root      root          60896 Dec 23 16:57 backup.1009148243.sql.gz
mail:~/usr/local/var#
```

**Figure 13-45:** A simple shell script to make a backup of all databases using `mysqldump`

The script first gets the date so I can keep more than one day's worth of backup files. Next the script runs `mysqldump` and sends the output to a file containing the date variable set earlier. Finally, the script compresses the resulting file with the `gzip` utility.

Using a scheduler such as `cron`, you can schedule this script to run as often as you'd like.

**Note**

Store this file in a secure location and make sure that it is archived to another medium (such as tape) or otherwise copied to another physical medium regularly.

Another method for creating a backup is with `mysqlhotcopy`. The same methods used for creating a script with `mysqldump` can also be used with `mysqlhotcopy`.

**Cross-Reference**

The limitations and methods of `mysqlhotcopy` are covered earlier in this chapter.

## Summary

MySQL has three basic methods for making backups: `mysqlhotcopy`, `mysqldump`, and `BACKUP TABLE`. Each has its own way of performing backups, an operation indispensable to data integrity and database security.

- ◆ The `mysqlhotcopy` utility works by making a copy of the actual directory containing the database files. It must be run from the actual database server.
- ◆ The `mysqldump` utility produces the DDL and DML to recreate the databases and tables as new. It can be run from a machine other than the database server and can back up one, more than one, or all databases at once.
- ◆ The `BACKUP TABLE` statement runs with the MySQL CLI. It can create backups of one or more than one table within a database.
- ◆ The two commands for checking most table types in MySQL are `mysqlcheck` and `myisamchk`.
- ◆ Four statements are used with the MySQL CLI for working with tables: `ANALYZE TABLE`, `CHECK TABLE`, `OPTIMIZE TABLE`, and `REPAIR TABLE`. The statements are similar in function to their `mysqlcheck` counterparts.
- ◆ The `mysqlcheck` utility can work with databases while the server is online whereas `myisamchk` should not be used in this manner.
- ◆ The `myisamchk` utility can repair most problems with tables and can create backups of tables before working with them for additional data safety.
- ◆ To restore databases and tables the `mysqlhotcopy` command can be used along with the MySQL CLI and the `RESTORE TABLE` statement.
- ◆ The MySQL CLI can be used to import files created with `mysqldump` such as a backup file of a database or table.
- ◆ Create a regular routine for backing up the database on your server. Without backups, you can lose all the data on your server in the event of a catastrophic event.





# Performance Tuning

**M**ySQL AB has gone to great lengths to see that MySQL performs well. However, the developers can't foresee every implementation of MySQL. It's impossible to set every variable appropriately by default. For this reason, many variables can be set by the database administrator to improve performance for the specific application.

Though tips and hints for enhancing and improving the performance of the MySQL server are dispersed throughout the book, this chapter provides additional information for setting variables and improving MySQL performance

## Troubleshooting Servers

As with the first portion of Chapter 11 (which treats enhancing the performance of the MySQL server), this first part of Chapter 14 examines troubleshooting and improving the server itself. One of the most important methods for troubleshooting server problems is to examine logfiles. I'll look at the different logfiles that are available with MySQL as the first portion of this chapter.

Knowing how to determine what needs improvement is indispensable to improving server performance. Therefore I'll begin with basic troubleshooting techniques and commands, and then recap some server variables and performance-related options.

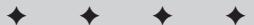
MySQL AB has included some good suggestions for performance-related variables within their sample configuration files. I recommend using those files for examples to match your server configuration and resource availability.

### In This Chapter

Troubleshooting the Server

Optimizing Databases and Tables

Optimizing Queries





Chapter 11 examines the MySQL configuration files in detail.

## MySQL logfiles

A feature I use frequently for troubleshooting is the MySQL logfiles. The four common logfile types are listed in Table 14-1.

**Table 14-1  
Types of Logfiles with MySQL**

| <b>Log Type</b> | <b>Use</b>  |
|-----------------|---|
| Binary log      | Stores all updates or changes to data, used in replication                              |
| Error log       | Records errors encountered by the server.   |
| Query log       | Stores all connections and queries.   |
| Slow query log  | Stores queries that take longer than <code>long_query_time</code> or don't use indexes. |



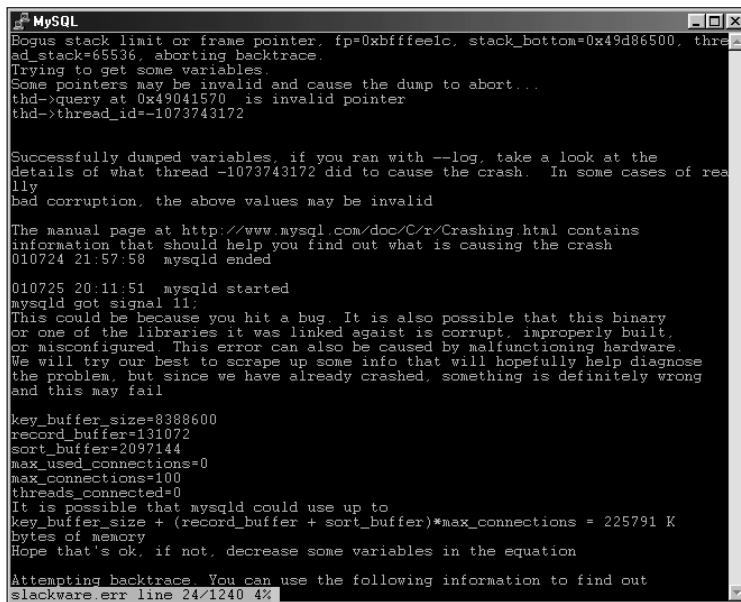
Two logfile types, the isam and the update logs, are outside the scope of this book.

One logfile of particular importance is the MySQL error log. If the server won't start, many operating systems will record a trace that can indicate why the server won't start or why it crashed. Starts and stops of the server are recorded in the error logfile. An example error log is shown in Figure 14-1.

By default, the *error log* is stored in the data directory for MySQL with a name of `<hostname>.err` (`<hostname>` is the hostname of the server). To change the location of the error log, set it with the `err-log` option underneath the `[safe_mysqld]` section of the MySQL configuration file.

```
err-log = /var/log/mysql.err
```

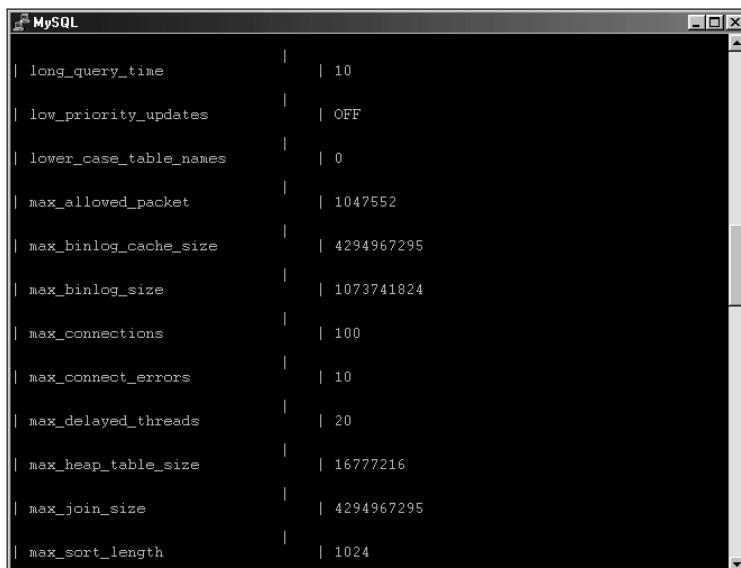
To store all inserts and updates to data, use the *binary log*. The `log-bin` option under the `[mysqld]` section of the configuration file enables the binary log, which is stored in the data directory. The binary log is also useful during replication on the replication master, as the logfile that records updates for the slaves. This file contains binary data; the contents of a binary update log are shown in Figure 14-2.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "MySQL" with a black background and white text. It displays a crash dump from a MySQL server. The text includes:

- Bogus stack limit or frame pointer, fp=0xbffffe1c, stack\_bottom=0x49d86500, thread\_stack=0x49d86500, thread\_id=1073743172
- Trying to get some variables.
- Some pointers may be invalid and cause the dump to abort...
- thd->query at 0x49041570 is invalid pointer
- thd->thread\_id=-1073743172
- Successfully dumped variables, if you ran with --log, take a look at the details of what thread -1073743172 did to cause the crash. In some cases of really bad corruption, the above values may be invalid
- The manual page at <http://www.mysql.com/doc/C/r/Crashing.html> contains information that should help you find out what is causing the crash
- 010724 21:57:58 mysqld ended
- 010725 20:11:51 mysqld started
- mysqld got signal 11:
- This could be because you hit a bug. It is also possible that this binary or one of the libraries it was linked against is corrupt, improperly built, or misconfigured. This error can also be caused by malfunctioning hardware.
- We will try our best to scrape up some info that will hopefully help diagnose the problem, but since we have already crashed, something is definitely wrong and this may fail
- key\_buffer\_size=8388600
- record\_buffer=131072
- sort\_buffer=2097144
- max\_used\_connections=0
- max\_connections=100
- threads\_connected=0
- It is possible that mysqld could use up to key\_buffer\_size + (record\_buffer + sort\_buffer)\*max\_connections = 225791 K bytes of memory
- Hope that's ok, if not, decrease some variables in the equation
- Attempting backtrace. You can use the following information to find out slackware err line 24/1240 4%

Figure 14-1: A sample error log where the server crashed



|                        |            |
|------------------------|------------|
| long_query_time        | 10         |
| low_priority_updates   | OFF        |
| lower_case_table_names | 0          |
| max_allowed_packet     | 1047552    |
| max_binlog_cache_size  | 4294967295 |
| max_binlog_size        | 1073741824 |
| max_connections        | 100        |
| max_connect_errors     | 10         |
| max_delayed_threads    | 20         |
| max_heap_table_size    | 16777216   |
| max_join_size          | 4294967295 |
| max_sort_length        | 1024       |

Figure 14-2: An example of the binary log recorded with MySQL

The *query log* records connections and queries made to the MySQL server. Using the query log, you can debug connection problems or query issues with the server. The query log is enabled by adding the `log` option below the `[mysqld]` section in the MySQL configuration file. By default, the query log is recorded in the data directory of your MySQL server and is named `<hostname>.log`. This can be changed by adding `a = <path/filename>` to the `log` option in the configuration file, like this:

```
log = /var/log/mysqlquery.log
```

An example of the data stored in the query log is shown in Figure 14-3.

```

MySQL
/usr/local/libexec/mysqld, Version: 3.23.39-log, started with:
Tcp port: 5150  Unix socket: /tmp/mysql.sock
Time          Id Command Argument
011223 19:52:58      1 Connect    root@localhost on
011223 19:53:00      1 Quit
011223 19:53:03      2 Connect    root@localhost on mysql
011223 19:53:04      2 Query     select * from user
011223 19:54:37      3 Connect    root@localhost on
011223 19:54:37      3 Query     CREATE DATABASE /*!32312 IF NOT EXISTS*/ dbb
backup
011223 19:54:37      3 Init DB   dbbackup
011223 19:54:37      3 Query     CREATE DATABASE /*!32312 IF NOT EXISTS*/ dum
mydb
011223 19:54:37      3 Init DB   dummydb
011223 19:54:37      3 Query     CREATE DATABASE /*!32312 IF NOT EXISTS*/ eco
nmerce
011223 19:54:37      3 Init DB   ecommerce
011223 19:54:37      3 Query     CREATE TABLE cardinfo (
011223 19:54:37      3 Query     card_id int(11) default NULL,
011223 19:54:37      3 Query     cccnum varchar(16) default NULL,
011223 19:54:37      3 Query     cccexp date default NULL,
011223 19:54:37      3 Query     name_on_card varchar(100) default NULL,
011223 19:54:37      3 Query     email_address varchar(75) default NULL
011223 19:54:37      3 Query     ) TYPE=MyISAM
011223 19:54:49      3 Quit
011223 19:54:49      4 Connect    root@localhost on
011223 19:54:49      4 Query     DROP TABLE IF EXISTS cardinfo
011223 19:54:49      4 Quit
011223 19:54:56      5 Connect    root@localhost on ecommerce
011223 19:54:56      5 Query     DROP TABLE IF EXISTS cardinfo
011223 19:54:56      5 Query     CREATE TABLE cardinfo (
011223 19:54:56      5 Query     card_id int(11) default NULL,
011223 19:54:56      5 Query     cccnum varchar(16) default NULL,
011223 19:54:56      5 Query     cccexp date default NULL,
011223 19:54:56      5 Query     name_on_card varchar(100) default NULL,
mail.log line 1/107 28%

```

**Figure 14-3:** An example of the query log in MySQL

I've used the query log to watch poorly written applications perform poorly written queries and then leave their connections open. Another log that can be used for this purpose is the *slow query log*, which records two types of slow queries:

- ◆ Queries that take longer than the value of the `long_query_time` variable
- ◆ Queries that don't use an index with the `log-long-format` option

To enable the slow query log, add the `log_slow_queries` option underneath the `[mysqld]` section of the MySQL configuration file. You can also change the target for the logfile from the default of `<hostname>-slow.log` to another name by adding `=<filename>` when using the `log_slow_queries` option, as in the following example:

```
log_slow_queries = slowquery.log
```

To determine the value of the `long_query_time` variable, use the `mysqladmin variables` command. The results are shown in Figure 14-4.

```

| long_query_time      | 10
| low_priority_updates | OFF
| lower_case_table_names | 0
| max_allowed_packet   | 1047552
| max_binlog_cache_size | 4294967295
| max_binlog_size       | 1073741824
| max_connections        | 100
| max_connect_errors    | 10
| max_delayed_threads   | 20
| max_heap_table_size    | 16777216
| max_join_size          | 4294967295
| max_sort_length         | 1024

```

**Figure 14-4:** The `long_query_time` variable controls how long a query has to take before it is recorded in the Slow Query Log.

You can change the value for `long_query_time` by adding the following to the MySQL configuration file under the `[mysqld]` section:

```
set-variable = long_query_time=<value>
```

The value is given in seconds. For example, to shorten the `long_query_time` value to 3 seconds, you would add the following line to the `[mysqld]` section to the MySQL configuration file, like this:

```
set-variable = long_query_time=3
```

## Troubleshooting and performance functions with mysqladmin

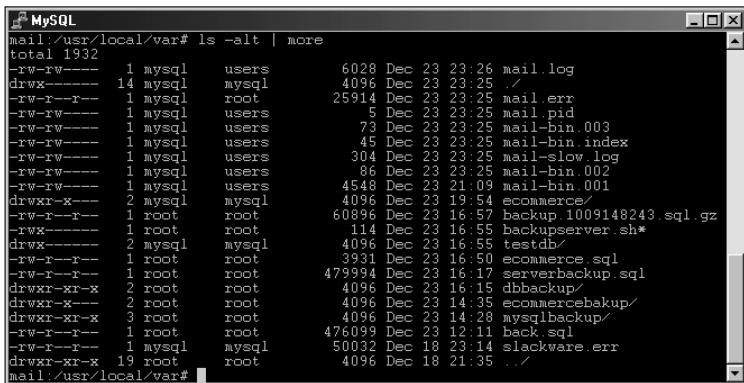
The `mysqladmin` command has numerous functions that assist with server administration.



Chapter 10 covers these functions in detail.

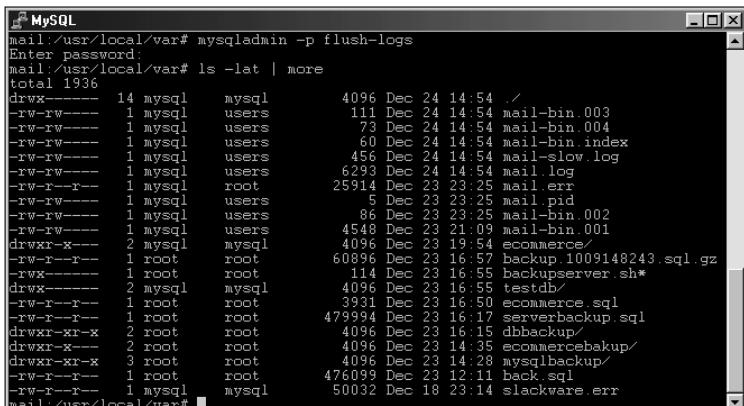
## Functions to clear logfiles

Logfiles can be reset or rotated to the next logfile through the `flush-logs` function. For example, Figure 14-5 shows a directory listing of the numerous logfiles running on this server. Figure 14-6 shows the `mysqladmin flush-logs` function being run, followed by another directory listing. In that case, the binary log has been rotated to number 004 in the sequence and the server has also accessed other logs.



```
mail:/usr/local/var# ls -alt | more
total 1932
-rw-rw---- 1 mysql users 6028 Dec 23 23:26 mail.log
drwxr----- 14 mysql mysql 4096 Dec 23 23:25 .
-rw-r----- 1 mysql root 25914 Dec 23 23:25 mail.err
-rw-r----- 1 mysql users 5 Dec 23 23:25 mail.pid
-rw-r----- 1 mysql users 73 Dec 23 23:25 mail-bin 003
-rw-r----- 1 mysql users 45 Dec 23 23:25 mail-bin index
-rw-r----- 1 mysql users 304 Dec 23 23:25 mail-slow.log
-rw-r----- 1 mysql users 86 Dec 23 23:25 mail-bin 002
-rw-r----- 1 mysql users 4548 Dec 23 21:09 mail-bin 001
drwxr-x--- 2 mysql mysql 4096 Dec 23 19:54 ecommerce/
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 60896 Dec 23 16:57 backup/1009148243.sql.gz
-rwx----- 1 root root 114 Dec 23 16:55 backupserver.sh*
drwxr----- 2 mysql mysql 4096 Dec 23 16:55 testdb/
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 3931 Dec 23 16:50 ecommerce.sql
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 479994 Dec 23 16:17 serverbackup.sql
drwxr-x--- 2 root root 4096 Dec 23 16:15 dbbackup/
drwxr-x--- 2 root root 4096 Dec 23 14:35 ecommercebackup/
drwxr-x--- 3 root root 4096 Dec 23 14:28 mysqlbackup/
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 476099 Dec 23 12:11 back.sql
-rw-r--r-- 1 mysql mysql 50032 Dec 18 23:14 slackware.err
drwxr-x--- 19 root root 4096 Dec 18 21:35 ...
mail:/usr/local/var#
```

**Figure 14-5:** A directory listing showing the logfiles and timestamps before the `flush-logs` function is run



```
mail:/usr/local/var# mysqladmin -p flush-logs
Enter password:
mail:/usr/local/var# ls -lat | more
total 1936
drwxr----- 14 mysql mysql 4096 Dec 24 14:54 .
-rw-r----- 1 mysql users 111 Dec 24 14:54 mail-bin 003
-rw-r----- 1 mysql users 73 Dec 24 14:54 mail-bin 004
-rw-r----- 1 mysql users 60 Dec 24 14:54 mail-bin index
-rw-r----- 1 mysql users 456 Dec 24 14:54 mail-slow.log
-rw-r----- 1 mysql users 6293 Dec 24 14:54 mail.log
-rw-r--r-- 1 mysql root 25914 Dec 23 23:25 mail.err
-rw-r----- 1 mysql users 5 Dec 23 23:25 mail.pid
-rw-r----- 1 mysql users 86 Dec 23 23:25 mail-bin 002
-rw-r----- 1 mysql users 4548 Dec 23 21:09 mail-bin 001
drwxr-x--- 2 mysql mysql 4096 Dec 23 19:54 ecommerce/
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 60896 Dec 23 16:57 backup/1009148243.sql.gz
-rwx----- 1 root root 114 Dec 23 16:55 backupserver.sh*
drwxr----- 2 mysql mysql 4096 Dec 23 16:55 testdb/
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 3931 Dec 23 16:50 ecommerce.sql
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 479994 Dec 23 16:17 serverbackup.sql
drwxr-x--- 2 root root 4096 Dec 23 16:15 dbbackup/
drwxr-x--- 3 root root 4096 Dec 23 14:28 mysqlbackup/
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 476099 Dec 23 12:11 back.sql
-rw-r--r-- 1 mysql mysql 50032 Dec 18 23:14 slackware.err
mail:/usr/local/var#
```

**Figure 14-6:** The `mysqladmin flush-logs` function is run along with another directory listing.

## Other flush functions with mysqladmin

`mysqladmin` has five other functions for flushing objects. These are shown in Table 14-2.

**Table 14-2**  
**Flush functions with mysqladmin**

| <b>Function name</b> | <b>Purpose</b>  |
|----------------------|---|
| flush-hosts          | Clears the DNS cache of MySQL. Can assist if a host gets blocked due to errors.                       |
| flush-logs           | Clears and cycles MySQL logfiles.   |
| flush-privileges     | Reloads the MySQL grants database so privilege changes take effect.                                   |
| flush-status         | Clears server counters found with the <code>status</code> and <code>extended-status</code> functions. |
| flush-tables         | Closes all open tables.   |
| flush-threads        | Closes all open threads.  |

**Cross-Reference**

The flush functions are discussed in detail in Chapter 10.

Two flush functions have *synonyms* or *aliases*.

- ◆ The `reload` function is an alias for the `flush-privileges` function. Both reload the grant tables.
- ◆ The `refresh` function is an alias that performs both the duties of the `flush-tables` function and the `flush-logs` function. Running a `mysqladmin refresh` will close all open tables and restart logging (or cycle the logfiles).

## Status and variable functions

In addition to the functions that flush or reset values and objects with `mysqladmin`, other functions examine server status and variables.

**Cross-Reference**

The flush functions are discussed in detail in Chapter 10.

The functions and their purposes are shown in Table 14-3.

**Table 14-3**  
**Status and Variable functions with mysqladmin**

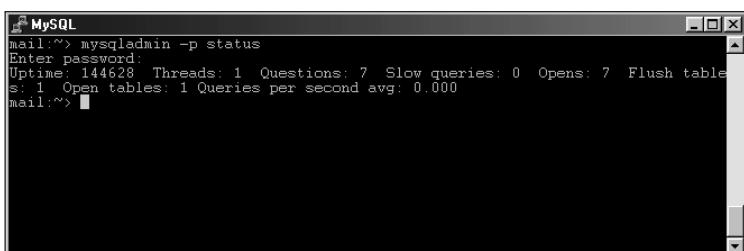
| <b>Function</b> | <b>Purpose</b>  |
|-----------------|---|
| extended-status | Prints the current value for many server counters and status-related objects. |
| ping            | Checks to see if the mysqld process is still alive.                           |
| processlist     | Lists the currently open processes, along with their status and action.       |
| status          | Prints a short status message on the server with some status-related objects. |
| variables       | Outputs the current values for the variables set for the MySQL server.        |

The `status` and `extended-status` functions are related because they both output the current status of various counters within the server. The `status` message shows relatively few important objects; the output of `extended-status` shows many objects.

**Tip**

Unless you have an insanely small resolution on a huge monitor, you'll probably need to pipe or redirect the output from the `extended-status` function so it doesn't scroll by too fast on-screen.

Figure 14-7 shows an example of the `status` function. The full output from the `extended-status` function follows as well.



```
mail:~> mysqladmin -p status
Enter password:
Uptime: 144628 Threads: 1 Questions: 7 Slow queries: 0 Opens: 7 Flush tables: 1 Open tables: 1 Queries per second avg: 0.000
mail:~>
```

**Figure 14-7:** Output from the `mysqladmin status` function shows the current values for important counters.

Compare the output from the `status` function in Figure 14-7 to the following output from the `extended-status` function.

| Variable_name   | Value |
|-----------------|-------|
| Aborted_clients | 0     |

|                          |        |
|--------------------------|--------|
| Aborted_connects         | 0      |
| Bytes_received           | 280    |
| Bytes_sent               | 5745   |
| Connections              | 7      |
| Created_tmp_disk_tables  | 0      |
| Created_tmp_tables       | 0      |
| Created_tmp_files        | 0      |
| Delayed_insert_threads   | 0      |
| Delayed_writes           | 0      |
| Delayed_errors           | 0      |
| Flush_commands           | 1      |
| Handler_delete           | 0      |
| Handler_read_first       | 1      |
| Handler_read_key         | 2      |
| Handler_read_next        | 8      |
| Handler_read_prev        | 0      |
| Handler_read_rnd         | 0      |
| Handler_read_rnd_next    | 60     |
| Handler_update           | 0      |
| Handler_write            | 0      |
| Key_blocks_used          | 3      |
| Key_read_requests        | 8      |
| Key_reads                | 3      |
| Key_write_requests       | 0      |
| Key_writes               | 0      |
| Max_used_connections     | 0      |
| Not_flushed_key_blocks   | 0      |
| Not_flushed_delayed_rows | 0      |
| Open_tables              | 1      |
| Open_files               | 6      |
| Open_streams             | 0      |
| Opened_tables            | 7      |
| Questions                | 10     |
| Select_full_join         | 0      |
| Select_full_range_join   | 0      |
| Select_range             | 0      |
| Select_range_check       | 0      |
| Select_scan              | 1      |
| Slave_running            | OFF    |
| Slave_open_temp_tables   | 0      |
| Slow_launch_threads      | 0      |
| Slow_queries             | 0      |
| Sort_merge_passes        | 0      |
| Sort_range               | 0      |
| Sort_rows                | 0      |
| Sort_scan                | 0      |
| Table_locks_immediate    | 6      |
| Table_locks_waited       | 0      |
| Threads_cached           | 0      |
| Threads_created          | 6      |
| Threads_connected        | 1      |
| Threads_running          | 1      |
| Uptime                   | 145212 |

Some of the same counters are included in the status and extended-status forms. (Chapter 10 has more information on the specific values.)

## MySQL CLI troubleshooting and performance functions

The MySQL CLI includes many of the same functions as the `mysqladmin` command. For example, the `mysqladmin flush-logs` function is replaced with the `FLUSH LOGS` statement when executed with the CLI. The `mysqladmin status` command is replaced with the `SHOW STATUS` statement when used with the CLI. Table 14-4 shows `mysqladmin` functions with their CLI equivalents.

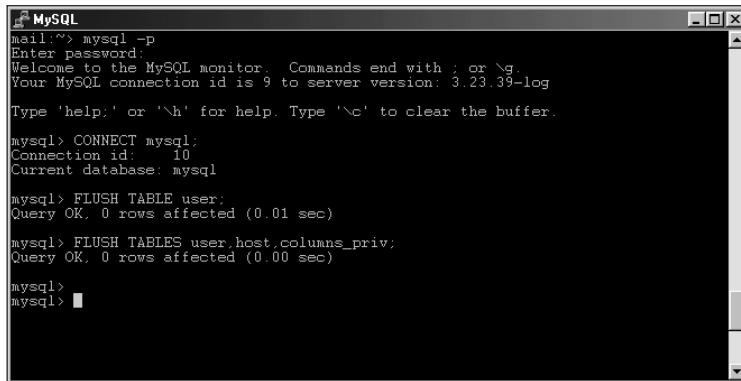
**Table 14-4  
Functions with mysqladmin and the MySQL CLI**

| <i>Mysqladmin function</i> | <i>MySQL CLI equivalent</i> |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Variables                  | SHOW VARIABLES              |
| Status                     | SHOW STATUS                 |
| Processlist                | SHOW PROCESSLIST            |
| Flush-hosts                | FLUSH HOSTS                 |
| Flush-privileges           | FLUSH PRIVILEGES            |
| Flush-logs                 | FLUSH LOGS                  |
| Flush-tables               | FLUSH TABLES                |
| Flush-status               | FLUSH STATUS                |

When run from within the CLI, the `FLUSH TABLES` statement has three variations. The first is the normal `FLUSH TABLES` statement that closes all open tables. The second variation closes only specified tables and can be called in singular or plural form:

```
FLUSH [TABLE | TABLES] <tablename> (, <tablename>)
```

Two examples of the `FLUSH TABLES` statement with specific tables are shown in Figure 14-8.



```
mail:~> mysql -p
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor.  Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 9 to server version: 3.23.39-log
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> CONNECT mysql;
Connection id: 10
Current database: mysql

mysql> FLUSH TABLE user;
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.01 sec)

mysql> FLUSH TABLES user,host,columns_priv;
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)

mysql>
mysql> ■
```

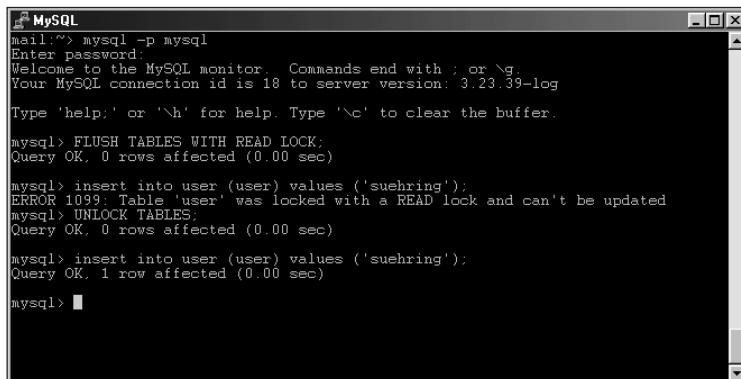
**Figure 14-8:** The FLUSH TABLES statement using specific tables

The third variation of the FLUSH TABLES statement is as follows:

```
FLUSH TABLES WITH READ LOCK <tablename>
```

The FLUSH TABLES WITH READ LOCK statement closes all open or in-use tables, just like the FLUSH TABLES statement. However, the FLUSH TABLES WITH READ LOCK statement also places a lock on the tables that must be manually unlocked with the UNLOCK TABLES statement.

Figure 14-9 shows an example of the FLUSH TABLES WITH READ LOCK statement, an attempt to read from one of the locked tables, and then the UNLOCK TABLES statement to allow access again.



```
mail:~> mysql -p mysql
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor.  Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 18 to server version: 3.23.39-log
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> FLUSH TABLES WITH READ LOCK;
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> insert into user (user) values ('suehring');
ERROR 1099: Table 'user' was locked with a READ lock and can't be updated
mysql> UNLOCK TABLES;
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> insert into user (user) values ('suehring');
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.00 sec)

mysql>
mysql> ■
```

**Figure 14-9:** An example of the FLUSH TABLES WITH READ LOCK statement.

## mysqlshow

Though complemented by SHOW statements in the CLI, the mysqlshow command can find the structure of databases, tables, and columns. The mysqlshow statement is unlike other commands in MySQL. You can't simply type the command to get a syntax printing. To see a syntax reference for the mysqlshow command, you should add the --help switch, as shown in Figure 14-10.



The -? switch is listed as a synonym for the --help switch, but it doesn't work.

```
MySQL
mail:~> mysqlshow -?
mysqlshow: No match
mail:~> mysqlshow --help
mysqlshow Ver 8.3 Distrib 3.23.39 for pc-linux-gnu (i586)
Copyright (C) 2000 MySQL AB & MySQL Finland AB & TCX DataKonsult AB
This software comes with ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY. This is free software,
and you are welcome to modify and redistribute it under the GPL license

Shows the structure of a mysql database (databases,tables and columns)

Usage: mysqlshow [OPTIONS] [database [table [column]]]

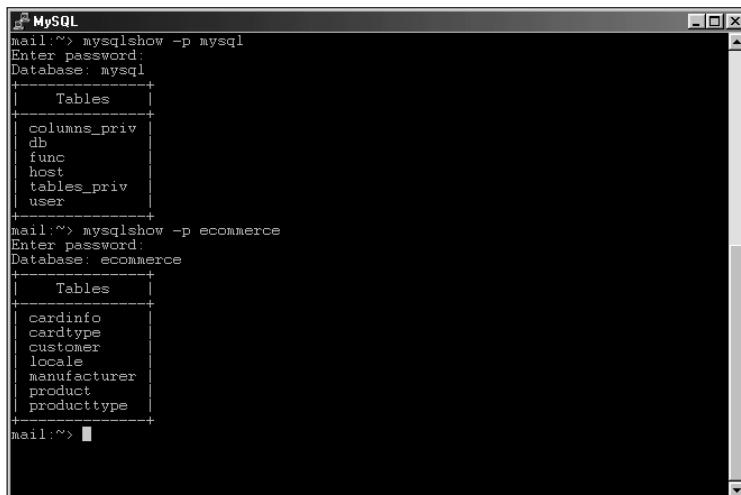
-#, --debug=...      output debug log. Often this is 'd:t:o,filename'
-?, --help           display this help and exit
-c, --character-sets-dir=...
                   Directory where character sets are
-C, --compress     Use compression in server/client protocol
-h, --host=...      connect to host
-i, --status        Shows a lot of extra information about each table
-k, --keys          show keys for table
-p, --password[=...] password to use when connecting to server
                   If password is not given it's asked from the tty.
-P, --port=...      Port number to use for connection
-S, --socket=...    Socket file to use for connection
-u, --user[#=...]   user for login if not current user
-v, --verbose       more verbose output. You can use this multiple times
                   to get even more verbose output.
-V, --version       output version information and exit

If last argument contains a shell or SQL wildcard (*, ?, % or _) then only
what's matched by the wildcard is shown.
If no database is given then all matching databases are shown.
If no table is given then all matching tables in database are shown
If no column is given then all matching columns and columntypes in table
are shown

Default options are read from the following files in the given order:
/etc/my.cnf /usr/local/var/my.cnf ~/my.cnf
The following groups are read: mysqlshow client
The following options may be given as the first argument:
--print-defaults   Print the program argument list and exit
--no-defaults     Don't read default options from any options file
--defaults-file=#
                   Only read default options from the given file #
```

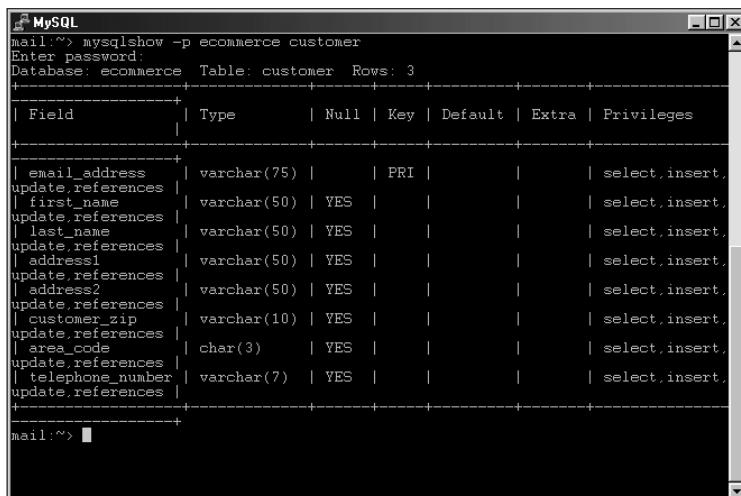
**Figure 14-10:** A syntax reference for the mysqlshow command is obtained by adding the --help switch.

Using the mysqlshow command is quite similar to using other commands with MySQL: The -u switch defines the user, the -p switch can define the password, the -h switch defines the host, and so on. The output from the mysqlshow command is similar to the output from the equivalent CLI command (such as SHOW TABLES or SHOW COLUMNS). Examples of the output from the mysqlshow command appear in Figures 14-11 and 14-12.



```
mail:~> mysqlshow -p mysql
Enter password:
Database: mysql
+-----+
| Tables |
+-----+
| columns_priv |
| db |
| func |
| host |
| tables_priv |
| user |
+-----+
mail:~> mysqlshow -p ecommerce
Enter password:
Database: ecommerce
+-----+
| Tables |
+-----+
| cardinfo |
| cardtype |
| customer |
| locale |
| manufacturer |
| product |
| producttype |
+-----+
mail:~>
```

**Figure 14-11:** Using the mysqlshow command to show the tables within a database



```
mail:~> mysqlshow -p ecommerce customer
Enter password:
Database: ecommerce Table: customer Rows: 3
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Field | Type | Null | Key | Default | Extra | Privileges
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| email_address | varchar(75) | PRI | | | select,insert,
update_references |
| first_name | varchar(50) | YES | | | select,insert,
update_references |
| last_name | varchar(50) | YES | | | select,insert,
update_references |
| address1 | varchar(50) | YES | | | select,insert,
update_references |
| address2 | varchar(50) | YES | | | select,insert,
update_references |
| customer_zip | varchar(10) | YES | | | select,insert,
update_references |
| area_code | char(3) | YES | | | select,insert,
update_references |
| telephone_number | varchar(?) | YES | | | select,insert,
update_references |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
mail:~>
```

**Figure 14-12:** Using the mysqlshow command to list the columns within a table of the ecommerce database

# Optimizing Databases and Tables

Certain optimizing techniques can change the structure of databases and tables to make them operate more efficiently. In addition, certain statements can optimize tables with performance enhancements such as defragmentation.

The use of indexes will help performance immensely on large datasets. MySQL stores indexes and data in separate files to maximize efficiency. Adding an index (or creating one with a table) will help when performing operations on the data; that way MySQL need only look at a subset of the data for the correct result.

If there is a PRIMARY KEY index on the table, it should be a short task to maximize speed. If you frequently search on multiple columns, index the columns with the most used column being the first in the list. However, don't make unnecessary indexes.

The EXPLAIN statement can assist in determining when an index might be useful. The EXPLAIN statement is used with a SELECT statement. For example, Figure 14-13 uses the EXPLAIN statement to show indexes used by a SELECT statement.

The screenshot shows a MySQL command-line interface window. It displays the results of three MySQL commands:

- The first command is `DESC customer;`, which shows the structure of the `customer` table. The output includes fields like `email_address`, `first_name`, `last_name`, `address1`, `address2`, `customer_zip`, `area_code`, and `telephone_number`. The `email_address` field is identified as the primary key (PRI).
- The second command is `DESC cardinfo;`, which shows the structure of the `cardinfo` table. The output includes fields like `card_id`, `ccnum`, `ccep`, `name_on_card`, and `email_address`.
- The third command is `EXPLAIN SELECT first_name, last_name FROM customer.cardinfo WHERE customer_email_address = cardinfo.email_address;`, which provides an execution plan for the query. The output shows the table, type, possible\_keys, key, key\_len, ref, rows, and Extra columns for both the `customer` and `cardinfo` tables. The `customer` table has a primary key (PRIMARY), while the `cardinfo` table does not have a key listed. The `rows` column indicates 3 rows for both tables, and the `Extra` column for the `customer` table includes the text "where used".

**Figure 14-13:** A description of two tables in the ecommerce database along with an EXPLAIN statement to examine the SELECT statement being used to find the first and last names of customers

The Possible\_keys and Keys columns in the output of the EXPLAIN statement show possible keys that MySQL could use for the SELECT—and the actual key (if any) that MySQL used for the query.

All index types in MySQL are stored in B-Tree format. They can improve performance with a WHERE clause. Since most SELECT statements will use a WHERE clause, an index can be the single most important improvement you make for better performance. Indexes can also quickly sort, locate the maximum and minimum values for a column, and assist with a join of two or more tables.

The syntax for creating an index during a CREATE TABLE statement is

```
CREATE TABLE <tablename> (<columnname>, ...,
    index <indexname> (column(s) to include in index)
);
```

 **Note**

Creating a column as a PRIMARY KEY also enables MySQL to optimize queries.

You can also create an index after the table has been created through the create index or alter table commands. The create index command is actually an alias for an alter table statement. The syntax for a create index statement is as follows:

```
CREATE INDEX <indexname> on <tablename> (column(s) to include);
```

Save disk space by choosing the correct column types and making the data as small as possible. Choosing the *smallest or most appropriate* column type helps MySQL work efficiently with the data. Choosing fixed-length columns can also increase speed.

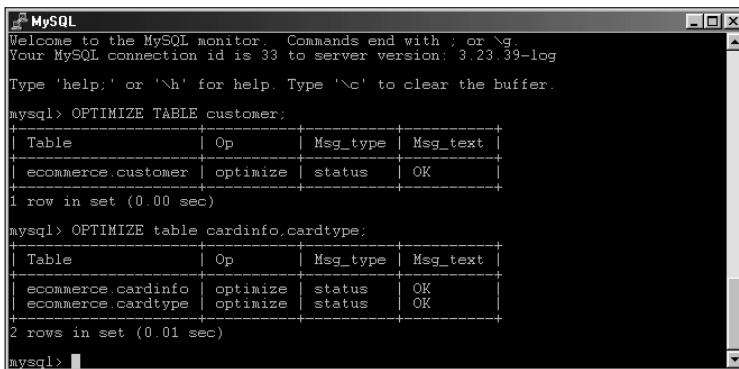
 **Note**

Fixed length columns may end up wasting space since MySQL will always allocate the defined amount of bytes for the column regardless of the actual data length.

The OPTIMIZE TABLE statement run with the MySQL CLI is used to defragment a table or tables. The statement only works with MyISAM and BDB tables. OPTIMIZE TABLE repairs any deleted or split rows and also sorts indexes. Two examples of the OPTIMIZE TABLE statement are shown in Figure 14-14.

 **Caution**

While the OPTIMIZE TABLE statement is running, the table is locked. Be aware that this can take a fair amount of time, depending on the size of the table.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "MySQL". It displays the MySQL monitor interface. The user has run two commands: "OPTIMIZE TABLE customer;" and "OPTIMIZE table cardinfo,cardtype;". Both commands return a single row indicating an "OK" status. The output is as follows:

```
Welcome to the MySQL monitor. Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 33 to server version: 3.23.39-log
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> OPTIMIZE TABLE customer;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Table | Op   | Msg_type | Msg_text |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| ecommerce.customer | optimize | status    | OK      |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> OPTIMIZE table cardinfo,cardtype;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Table | Op   | Msg_type | Msg_text |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| ecommerce.cardinfo | optimize | status    | OK      |
| ecommerce.cardtype | optimize | status    | OK      |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
2 rows in set (0.01 sec)

mysql>
```

Figure 14-14: The OPTIMIZE TABLE statement in action

## Optimizing Queries

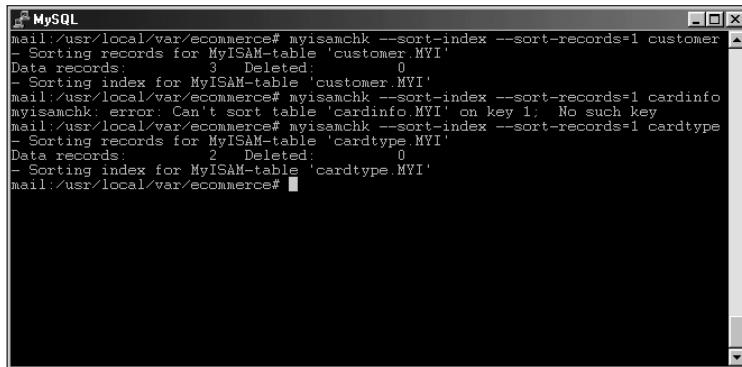
MySQL performs many optimizations for queries and statements without the user having to be involved. These include processes like examination of clauses and statements to determine how they could be phrased in a more efficient manner, and rejection of some statements without running them if they are invalid. MySQL also performs background optimization of DISTINCT statements and JOIN statements.

If this process is automated, what's your role? In the previous section I examined the EXPLAIN statement. The EXPLAIN statement can help you determine the indexes to use with a SELECT statement. Useful indexes are the key to improving server performance when your database applications perform many reads.

After the database has been populated, sorting the indexes within the database may be helpful. You can do this with the myisamchk statement. For example, to sort on the first index, issue the following command:

```
myisamchk --sort-index --sort-records=1
```

Figure 14-15 shows the previous command when run against a few tables within the ecommerce database. The second attempt in the example fails because no indexes exist in the cardinfo table.



```
MySQL
mail:/usr/local/var/ecommerce# myisamchk --sort-index --sort-records=1 customer
  - Sorting records for MyISAM-table 'customer.MYI'
  Data records: 3 Deleted: 0
  - Sorting index for MyISAM-table 'customer.MYI'
mail:/usr/local/var/ecommerce# myisamchk --sort-index --sort-records=1 cardinfo
myisamchk: error: Can't sort table 'cardinfo.MYI' on key 1: No such key
mail:/usr/local/var/ecommerce# myisamchk --sort-index --sort-records=1 cardtype
  - Sorting records for MyISAM-table 'cardtype.MYI'
  Data records: 2 Deleted: 0
  - Sorting index for MyISAM-table 'cardtype.MYI'
mail:/usr/local/var/ecommerce#
```

**Figure 14-15:** Examples of the myisamchk command to sort indexes on tables within the ecommerce database

## Summary

The use of various MySQL logfiles is a major asset when troubleshooting the server or dealing with other database problems.

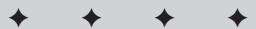
- ◆ The error log is an important tool for helping to determine why the server crashes or won't start.
- ◆ The binary update log and the query log can help you watch for updates that cause problems; they can also help you look for any SELECT statements that create performance problems.
- ◆ The slow query log shows queries that take longer than the specified time or don't use an index.
- ◆ The mysqladmin command contains useful functions for troubleshooting the server including flush functions and status and variable functions.
- ◆ The flush functions with mysqladmin reset or clear counters, logfiles, and even the MySQL privilege system.
- ◆ The MySQL CLI also includes flush functions along with functions to show variables and monitor server performance.

- ◆ Indexes can help speed up operations with databases.
- ◆ The EXPLAIN statement is used to look at the indexes that a SELECT statement can use or might benefit from.
- ◆ You can create indexes during the table creation statement or through the use of a separate CREATE INDEX statement.
- ◆ The OPTIMIZE TABLE statement is used to repair and defragment MyISAM and BDB tables.
- ◆ MySQL performs many optimizations in the background without any user intervention. Statements are analyzed before they are run to determine validity and how to phrase them better for improved performance.



# Development

---



## In This Part

### **Chapter 15**

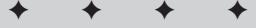
Perl Development

### **Chapter 16**

PHP Development

### **Chapter 17**

ODBC/JDBC





# Perl Development

I've been using Perl for many years. I've found the language extremely useful in server and network administration. Without Perl, my job would've been impossible to do.

MySQL has an application-programming interface (API) for Perl. It's called the Perl Database Interface (DBI), and programmers can use it to create powerful applications that perform every function imaginable — from administration tasks to reporting to Web applications — with a MySQL server. The Perl-DBI combines full access to the power of MySQL with the ease of Perl.



## Note

The DBI allows access to many different database types. To enable access to MySQL, however, a MySQL-specific database driver (DBD) must be used. This chapter refers to the combination of DBI-and-DBD as either "the DBI" or "Perl-DBI."

This chapter builds a few applications that take advantage of the Perl-DBI. Before building the applications, I show you the Perl API itself — and the many functions included with it.

The example applications stick to the fundamentals of using the Perl DBI and the MySQL DBD. For the time being, you can forego building a guestbook application (a common exercise in books devoted to Perl). If you want to build a guestbook later, the examples in this chapter provide a good foundation for doing so.

◆ ◆ ◆ ◆

## In This Chapter

Installing the Perl DBI  
and the MySQL DBD

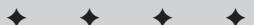
Introducing the DBI

Using functions  
with the DBI

Building basic  
applications

Building Web  
applications

Producing a Web site  
for e-commerce



## Installing the Perl DBI And MySQL DBD

A prerequisite for installing the DBI and the MySQL DBD is having Perl itself installed. Installation of Perl is beyond the scope of this book; this section assumes that you already have Perl installed. The steps given here simply install the Perl-DBI and the MySQL DBD on a Linux system.

### Where to get the DBI and DBD

The latest copies of the Perl DBI and MySQL DBD can be obtained at your local CPAN mirror, <http://www.cpan.org>. The MySQL DBD is actually a combination of the DBD for the MySQL database as well as the DBD for MySQL.

### Installing the DBI

Once you've obtained the DBI and DBD for MySQL, you unpack the archive by using the `tar` command in Linux. The command syntax is

```
tar -zxvf <filename>
```

and here's an example:

```
tar -zxvf DBI-1.20.tar.gz
```

Unpacking the DBI results in a `DBI-<version>` directory that contains the files necessary to create the DBI, as shown in Figure 15-1.

Before unpacking and installing the DBD, you need to compile the DBI software. Change into the newly created DBI directory; the command syntax is

```
cd DBI-<version>
```

and here's an example:

```
cd DBI-1.20
```

The first step towards installation is executing the Makefile for the software. This is accomplished with the command:

```
perl Makefile.PL
```

```

mail:~# tar -zxvf DBI-1.20.tar.gz
DBI-1.20/
DBI-1.20/DBI_xs
DBI-1.20/lib/
DBI-1.20/lib/DBD/
DBI-1.20/lib/DBD/NullP.pm
DBI-1.20/lib/DBD/Sponge.pm
DBI-1.20/lib/DBD/ExampleP.pm
DBI-1.20/lib/DBD/Proxy.pm
DBI-1.20/lib/DBI/
DBI-1.20/lib/DBI/FAQ.pm
DBI-1.20/lib/DBI/W32ODBC.pm
DBI-1.20/lib/DBI/DBD.pm
DBI-1.20/lib/DBI/Format.pm
DBI-1.20/lib/DBI/Shall.pm
DBI-1.20/lib/DBI/ProxyServer.pm
DBI-1.20/lib/Bundle/
DBI-1.20/lib/Bundle/DBI.pm
DBI-1.20/lib/Win32/
DBI-1.20/lib/Win32/DBIODBC.pm
DBI-1.20/MANIFEST
DBI-1.20/dbipport.h
DBI-1.20/Changes
DBI-1.20/
DBI-1.20//proxy.t
DBI-1.20//examp.t
DBI-1.20//basics.t
DBI-1.20//shell.t
DBI-1.20//subclass.t
DBI-1.20//preparse.t
DBI-1.20//dbidrv.t
DBI-1.20//meta.t
DBI-1.20/dbish.PL
DBI-1.20/dbi_sql.h
DBI-1.20/Perl_xs
DBI-1.20/Driver_xst
DBI-1.20/README
DBI-1.20/DBIXS.h
DBI-1.20/test.pl
DBI-1.20/dbd_xsh.h
DBI-1.20/Makefile.PL
DBI-1.20/DBI.pm
DBI-1.20/dbiproxy.PL
DBI-1.20/TODO
mail:~#

```

**Figure 15-1:** Unpacking the DBI results in a directory containing the files necessary to create the actual DBI software

**Note**

Because the `Makefile.PL` filename is case-sensitive, entering `makefile.PL` doesn't work.

Executing the command just described yields results similar to Figure 15-2.

```

mail:~/DBI-1.20# perl Makefile.PL
*** Note:
The optional PIRPC-modules (RPC::PIServer etc) are not installed.
If you want to use the DBD::Proxy driver and DBI::ProxyServer
modules, then you'll need to install the RPC::PIServer, RPC::PIClient,
Storable and Net::Daemon modules. The CPAN Bundle::DBI may help you.
You can install them any time after installing the DBI.
You do *not* need these modules for typical DBI usage.

Optional modules are available from any CPAN mirror, in particular
http://www.perl.com/CPAN/modules/by-module
http://www.perl.org/CPAN/modules/by-module
ftp://ftp.funet.fi/pub/languages/perl/CPAN/modules/by-module

Checking if your kit is complete...
Looks good
Writing Makefile for DBI

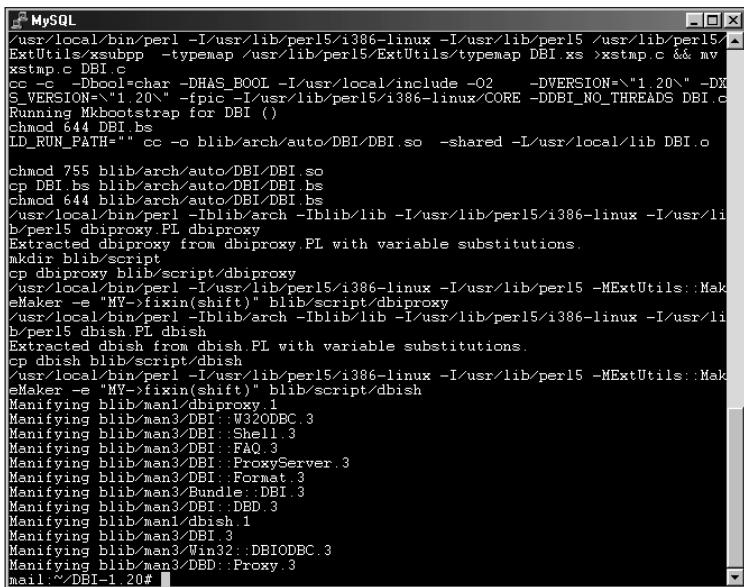
Remember to actually *read* the README file!
Use 'make' to build the software (dmake or nmake on Windows).
Then 'make test' to execute self tests.
Then 'make install' to install the DBI and then delete this working
directory before unpacking and building any DBD::* drivers.

mail:~/DBI-1.20#

```

**Figure 15-2:** Executing the Makefile for the DBI

The next step for installation of the DBI is to compile the software. This is accomplished with the `make` command. Executing the `make` command results in a fair amount of output scrolling on the screen; this is normal (see Figure 15-3).



```
MySQL
/usr/local/bin/perl -I/usr/lib/perl5/i386-linux -I/usr/lib/perl5 /usr/lib/perl5/ExtUtils/xsubpp -typemap /usr/lib/perl5/ExtUtils/typemap DBI.xs >xstmp.c && mv xstmp.c DBI.c
cc -c DBI.c -DHAS_BOOL -I/usr/local/include -O2 -DVERSION=\"1.20\" -DXS_VERSION=<"1.20"> -fpic -I/usr/lib/perl5/i386-linux/CORE -DDBI_NO_THREADS DBI.c
Running Mkbootstrap for DBI ()
chmod 644 DBI.bs
LD_RUN_PATH="" cc -o blib/arch/auto/DBI/DBI.so -shared -L/usr/local/lib DBI.o
chmod 755 blib/arch/auto/DBI/DBI.so
cp DBI.bs blib/arch/auto/DBI/DBI.bs
chmod 644 blib/arch/auto/DBI/DBI.bs
/usr/local/bin/perl -Iblib/arch -Iblib/lib -I/usr/lib/perl5/i386-linux -I/usr/lib/perl5/dbiproxy.PL dbiproxy
Extracted dbiproxy from dbiproxy.PL with variable substitutions.
mkdir blib/script
cp dbiproxy blib/script/dbiproxy
/usr/local/bin/perl -I/usr/lib/perl5/i386-linux -I/usr/lib/perl5 -MExtUtils::MakeMaker -e "MY->fixin(shift)" blib/script/dbiproxy
/usr/local/bin/perl -Iblib/arch -Iblib/lib -I/usr/lib/perl5/i386-linux -I/usr/lib/perl5/dbish.PL dbish
Extracted dbish from dbish.PL with variable substitutions.
cp dbish blib/script/dbish
/usr/local/bin/perl -I/usr/lib/perl5/i386-linux -I/usr/lib/perl5 -MExtUtils::MakeMaker -e "MY->fixin(shift)" blib/script/dbish
Manifying blib/man1/dbiproxy.1
Manifying blib/man3/DBI::W32ODBC.3
Manifying blib/man3/DBI::Shell.3
Manifying blib/man3/DBI::FAQ.3
Manifying blib/man3/DBI::ProxyServer.3
Manifying blib/man3/DBI::Format.3
Manifying blib/man3/DBI::Bundle::DBI.3
Manifying blib/man3/DBI::DBD.3
Manifying blib/man1/dbish.1
Manifying blib/man3/DBI.3
Manifying blib/man3/Win32::DBIODBC.3
Manifying blib/man3/DBD::Proxy.3
mail:~/DBI-1.20#
```

**Figure 15-3:** Compiling the DBI

There are two steps remaining for installation of the DBI. The next portion of the installation is to test the software before actually installing it on the system. This is accomplished with the `make test` command. The `make test` command tests the DBI to make sure that the upcoming installation works as planned. The output from the `make test` command for installation of the DBI should look much like Figure 15-4.

The final stage of the DBI installation is to run the `make install` command to actually install the software, as shown in Figure 15-5.

**Note**

Systems and configurations differ; your output may look slightly different.

```
mail:~/DBI-1.20# make test
PERL_DL_NONLAZY=1 /usr/local/bin/perl -Iblib/arch -Iblib/lib -I/usr/lib/perl5/i386-linux -I/usr/lib/perl5 -e 'use Test::Harness qw(&runtests $verbose); $verbose = 1; runtests @ARGV; t/*.t'
t/basics...ok
t/dbddrv...ok
t/examp...ok
t/meta...ok
t/prepare...ok
t/proxy...skipping test on this platform
t/shell...ok
t/subclass...ok
All tests successful. 1 test skipped.
Files=8 Tests=240, 5 wallclock secs ( 4.60 cusr + 0.26 csys =  4.86 CPU)
PERL_DL_NONLAZY=1 /usr/local/bin/perl -Iblib/arch -Iblib/lib -I/usr/lib/perl5/i386-linux -I/usr/lib/perl5 test.pl
test.pl
DBI test application $Revision: 11.2 $
Using '/root/DBI-1.20/blib'
Switch: DBI 1.20 by Tim Bunce, 1.20
Available Drivers: ExampleP, Proxy, mysql
dbi ExampleP: testing 5 sets of 20 connections:
Connecting... 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20
Disconnecting...
Connecting... 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20
Disconnecting...
Connecting... 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20
Disconnecting...
Connecting... 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20
Disconnecting...
Connecting... 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20
Disconnecting...
Connecting... 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20
Made 100 connections in 0 wallclock secs ( 0.14 usr + 0.01 sys = 0.15 CPU)

Testing handle creation speed...
5000 NullP statement handles cycled in 3.8 cpu+sys seconds (1319 per sec)

test.pl done
mail:~/DBI-1.20#
```

**Figure 15-4:** Output from your make test command (to test the DBI software before installation) is similar to that shown here.

```
mail:~/DBI-1.20# make install
Skipping '/usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/i386-linux/auto/DBI/DBIxS.h' (unchanged)
Skipping '/usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/i386-linux/auto/DBI/dbd_xs.h' (unchanged)
Skipping '/usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/i386-linux/auto/DBI/dbi_sql.h' (unchanged)
Skipping '/usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/i386-linux/auto/DBI/Driver_xst' (unchanged)
Skipping '/usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/i386-linux/auto/DBI/dbipport.h' (unchanged)
Skipping '/usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/i386-linux/auto/DBI/DB_so' (unchanged)
Skipping '/usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/i386-linux/auto/DBI/DB_bs' (unchanged)
Files found in blib/arch --> Installing files in blib/lib into architecture dependent library tree!
Skipping '/usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/i386-linux/DBI/W32ODBC.pm' (unchanged)
Skipping '/usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/i386-linux/DBI/FAQ.pm' (unchanged)
Skipping '/usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/i386-linux/DBI/Shell.pm' (unchanged)
Skipping '/usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/i386-linux/DBI/ProxyServer.pm' (unchanged)
Skipping '/usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/i386-linux/DBI/Format.pm' (unchanged)
Skipping '/usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/i386-linux/DBI/DBD.pm' (unchanged)
Skipping '/usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/i386-linux/DBI/DBD.pm' (unchanged)
Skipping '/usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/i386-linux/DBD/ExampleP.pm' (unchanged)
Skipping '/usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/i386-linux/DBD/Proxy.pm' (unchanged)
Skipping '/usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/i386-linux/DBD/NullP.pm' (unchanged)
Skipping '/usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/i386-linux/DBD/Sponge.pm' (unchanged)
Skipping '/usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/i386-linux/DBI/Bundle/DBI.pm' (unchanged)
Skipping '/usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/i386-linux/Win32/DBIODEC.pm' (unchanged)
Skipping '/usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/i386-linux/DBI.pm' (unchanged)
Skipping '/usr/man/man1/dbiproxy.1' (unchanged)
Skipping '/usr/man/man1/dbish.1' (unchanged)
Skipping '/usr/lib/perl5/man/man3/DBI::W32ODBC.3' (unchanged)
Skipping '/usr/lib/perl5/man/man3/DBI::Shell.3' (unchanged)
Skipping '/usr/lib/perl5/man/man3/DBI::FAQ.3' (unchanged)
Skipping '/usr/lib/perl5/man/man3/DBI::ProxyServer.3' (unchanged)
Skipping '/usr/lib/perl5/man/man3/DBI::Format.3' (unchanged)
Skipping '/usr/lib/perl5/man/man3/DBI::Bundle::DBI.3' (unchanged)
Skipping '/usr/lib/perl5/man/man3/DBI::DBD.3' (unchanged)
Skipping '/usr/lib/perl5/man/man3/DBI.3' (unchanged)
Skipping '/usr/lib/perl5/man/man3/Win32::DBIODEC.3' (unchanged)
Skipping '/usr/lib/perl5/man/man3/DBD::Proxy.3' (unchanged)
Skipping '/usr/bin/dbiproxy' (unchanged)
Skipping '/usr/bin/dbish' (unchanged)
Writing '/usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/i386-linux/auto/DBI/.packlist'
Appending installation info to '/usr/lib/perl5/i386-linux/perllocal.pod'
mail:~/DBI-1.20#
```

**Figure 15-5:** The final stage to actually install the DBI is accomplished with the make install command.

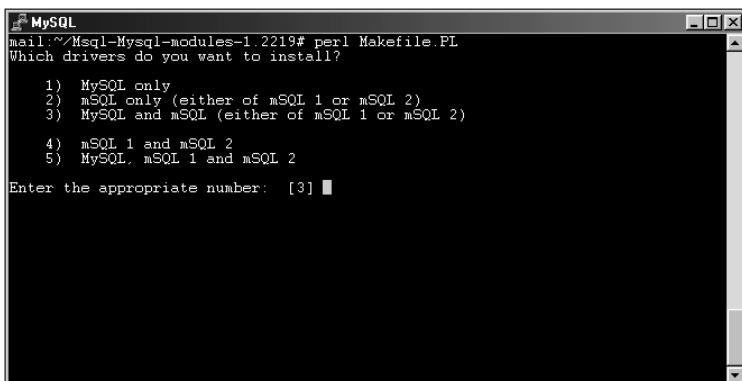
## Installing the MySQL DBD

The MySQL Database Driver or DBD is a combined with the driver for the mSQL database system. As stated previously, the DBD can be obtained at your local CPAN mirror or at <http://www.cpan.org>. The installation process for the DBD is somewhat similar to the DBI however there are some questions that must be answered during the installation.

Use the tar command to unpack the MySQL DBD archive, typically called `Mysql-Mysql-modules-<version>.tar.gz`. For example:

```
tar -zxvf Mysql-Mysql-modules-1.2219.tar.gz
```

Change into the newly created `Mysql-Mysql-modules` directory with the cd command and type **perl Makefile.PL** to begin the installation process for the MySQL DBD. You'll be asked a series of questions, the first of which determines whether you'd like to install the driver for MySQL, mSQL versions 1 and 2, or all drivers, as shown in Figure 15-6.



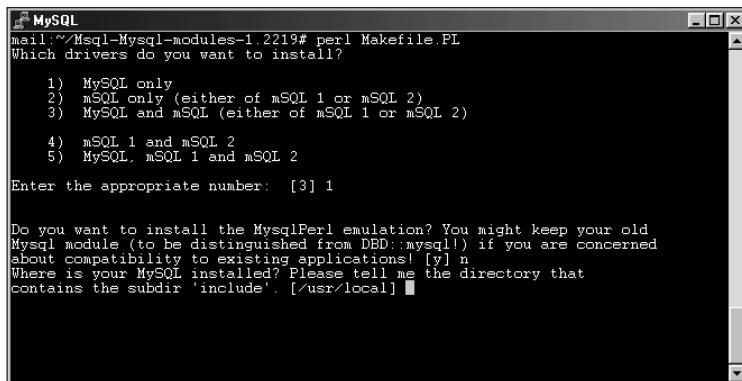
**Figure 15-6:** The first question for the `Makefile` command used to build the database drivers

For the purposes of this installation, I choose only the MySQL option, number 1.

The second question during the installation of the DBD is whether to install `Mysqlperl` emulation. (`Mysqlperl` is the old version of the DBD for MySQL and Perl.) If you have old applications that may have been created using the syntax of the `Mysqlperl` driver, then you should say yes to this option. For this installation, I don't need `Mysqlperl` emulation, so I answer N for no.

The third question asks for the location of the MySQL server files. For my test server, the default of `/usr/local` is correct. However, your installation of MySQL may be

(and probably is) in a different location. As stated in the prompt in Figure 15-7, the location should be where the Makefile can find the 'include' directory of the MySQL installation.

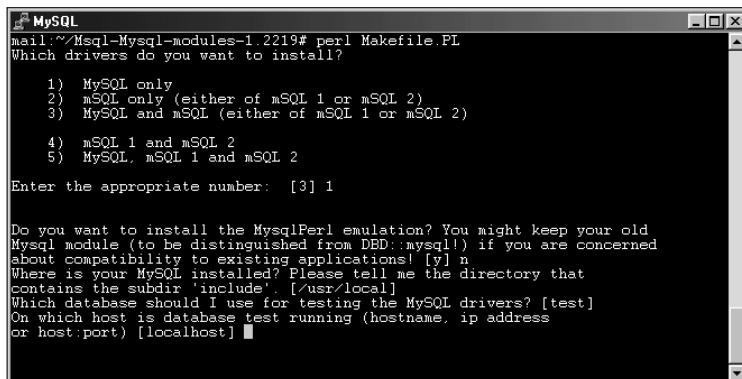


```
mail:~/Msql-Mysql-modules-1.2219# perl Makefile.PL
Which drivers do you want to install?
1) MySQL only
2) mSQL only (either of mSQL 1 or mSQL 2)
3) MySQL and mSQL (either of mSQL 1 or mSQL 2)
4) mSQL 1 and mSQL 2
5) MySQL, mSQL 1 and mSQL 2
Enter the appropriate number: [3] 1

Do you want to install the MySQLPerl emulation? You might keep your old
MySQL module (to be distinguished from DBD::mysql!) if you are concerned
about compatibility to existing applications! [y] n
Where is your MySQL installed? Please tell me the directory that
contains the subdir 'include'. [/usr/local] ■
```

**Figure 15-7:** The location of the MySQL server files is necessary. The default (/usr/local) is correct for my example server.

The next series of questions sets the parameters for testing of the driver. The first question is the name of the database that the installation process should use for testing. The MySQL server usually includes a database called 'test'; therefore this is an easy choice to leave at the default of 'test' at the prompt. The second question in this series asks for the name of the server to use for testing. (The test server shown in Figure 15-8 runs on the local machine; the default of localhost is acceptable.)



```
mail:~/Msql-Mysql-modules-1.2219# perl Makefile.PL
Which drivers do you want to install?
1) MySQL only
2) mSQL only (either of mSQL 1 or mSQL 2)
3) MySQL and mSQL (either of mSQL 1 or mSQL 2)
4) mSQL 1 and mSQL 2
5) MySQL, mSQL 1 and mSQL 2
Enter the appropriate number: [3] 1

Do you want to install the MySQLPerl emulation? You might keep your old
MySQL module (to be distinguished from DBD::mysql!) if you are concerned
about compatibility to existing applications! [y] n
Where is your MySQL installed? Please tell me the directory that
contains the subdir 'include'. [/usr/local]
Which database should I use for testing the MySQL drivers? [test]
On which host is database test running (hostname, ip address
or host:port) [localhost] ■
```

**Figure 15-8:** Using the test database for testing, with the server running on the local machine. Both defaults are accepted if you press Return or Enter.

The next two questions have no defaults. The first asks for the username to use for testing the driver; the second asks for the password for that user. I'll be using the root user account for testing and giving that password as well, as in Figure 15-9.

```
MySQL
mail:~/Msql-Mysql-modules-1.2219# perl Makefile.PL
Which drivers do you want to install?
1) MySQL only
2) mSQL only (either of mSQL 1 or mSQL 2)
3) MySQL and mSQL (either of mSQL 1 or mSQL 2)
4) mSQL 1 and mSQL 2
5) MySQL, mSQL 1 and mSQL 2

Enter the appropriate number: [3] 1

Do you want to install the MySQLPerl emulation? You might keep your old
MySQL module (to be distinguished from DBD::mysql!) if you are concerned
about compatibility to existing applications! [y] n
Where is your MySQL installed? Please tell me the directory that
contains the subdir 'include' [/usr/local]
Which database should I use for testing the MySQL drivers? [test]
On which host is database test running (hostname, ip address
or host:port) [localhost]
User name for connecting to database test? [undef] root
Password for connecting to database test? [undef] evh5150
Creating files for MySQL .....
Checking if your kit is complete...
Looks good
Warning: prerequisite Data::ShowTable 0 not found at (eval 14) line 220.
Note (probably harmless): No library found for -lgz
Using DBI 1.20 installed in /usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/i386-linux/auto/DBI
Writing Makefile for DBD::mysql
Writing Makefile for Msql-Mysql-modules
mail:~/Msql-Mysql-modules-1.2219#
```

**Figure 15-9:** Using the root user account for testing of the MySQL DBD

The questions you just answered create files that serve as the basis for the next step in the process: the actual creation of the DBD. Warnings about a missing library and Data>Showtable can be ignored. Begin this next phase by typing **make**.

You begin the testing phase by typing the following command:

```
make test
```

If you happen to mistype (or specify a user, password, or test database that doesn't exist) during the initial stage of the installation, this testing phase fails miserably and shows errors that resemble Figure 15-10.

However, if you provided correct information for the testing portion of the initial phase the tests should complete successfully, as shown in Figure 15-11.

```

MySQL
dubious      Test returned status 255 (wstat 65280, 0xff00)
DIED. FAILED tests 1, 4-90
    Failed 88/90 tests, 2.22% okay
t/dbdadmin.....DBI->connect(database=test) failed: Access denied for user:
root@localhost' (Using password: YES) at t/dbdadmin.t line 60
Cannot connect Access denied for user: root@localhost' (Using password: YES)
    Either your server is not up and running or you have no
    permissions for accessing the DSN DBI:mysql:database=test.
    This test requires a running server and write permissions.
    Please make sure your server is running and you have
    permissions, then retry.
dubious      Test returned status 10 (wstat 2560, 0xa00)
DIED. FAILED tests 1-20
    Failed 20/20 tests, 0.00% okay
Failed Test  Status Wstat Total Fail  Failed  List of failed
----- 
t/10dsnlist.t 10 2560   3   3 100 00% 1-3
t/20creatdrop.t 10 2560   5   5 100 00% 1-5
t/30insertfetch.t 10 2560  11  11 100 00% 1-11
t/40bindparam.t 10 2560  28  28 100 00% 1-28
t/40blobs.t 10 2560  11  11 100 00% 1-11
t/40listfields.t 10 2560  16  16 100 00% 1-16
t/40nulls.t 10 2560  11  11 100 00% 1-11
t/40numrows.t 10 2560  25  25 100 00% 1-25
t/50chopblanks.t 10 2560  35  35 100 00% 1-35
t/50commit.t 255 65280  30  30 100 00% 1-30
t/ak-dbd.t 255 65280  90  88 97.78% 1, 4-90
t/dbdadmin.t 10 2560  20  20 100 00% 1-20
1 test skipped.
Failed 12/14 test scripts, 14.29% okay. 283/290 subtests failed, 2.41% okay.
make[1]: *** [test_dynamic] Error 2
make[1]: Leaving directory `/root/MySQL-MySQL-modules-1.2219/mysql'
make: *** [test] Error 2
mail: ~/MySQL-MySQL-modules-1.2219# 

```

**Figure 15-10:** The testing phase of the DBD installation fails if you provided incorrect information during the initial stage of the installation.

```

MySQL
mkdir ..../lib/auto/DBD/mysql
mkdir ..../lib/man3
cp lib/DBD/mysql.pm ..../lib/DBD/mysql.pm
cp lib/Bundle/DBD/mysql.pm ..../lib/Bundle/DBD/mysql.pm
cp lib/Mysql::Statement.pm ..../lib/Mysql::Statement.pm
cp lib/Mysql.pm ..../lib/Mysql.pm
cc -c -I/usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/i386-linux/auto/DBI -I/usr/local/include/mysql
-I..../dbd -I/usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/i386-linux/auto/DBI -I/usr/lib/perl5/i386-li
nux -Dbool=char -DHAS_BOOL -I/usr/local/include -O2 -DVERSION='2.0419' -DXS
 VERSION='2.0419' -fpic -I/usr/lib/perl5/i386-linux/CORE -DDBD_MYSQL dbdimp.c
/usr/local/bin/perl -p -e "s/^DRIVER`/mysql/g" < /usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/i386-l
inux/auto/DBI/Driver.xst > mysql.xsi
/usr/local/bin/perl -I/usr/lib/perl5/i386-linux -I/usr/local/include -I/usr/lib/perl5/
ExtUtils/xsubpp -object_capi -typemap /usr/lib/perl5/ExtUtils/typemap mysql.xs
>xstamp.c && mv xstamp.c MySQL.c
Warning: duplicate function definition 'rows' detected in mysql_xs, line 407
cc -c -I/usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/i386-linux/auto/DBI -I/usr/local/include/mysql
make[1]: Entering directory `/root/MySQL-MySQL-modules-1.2219/mysql'
make[1]: Leaving directory `/root/MySQL-MySQL-modules-1.2219/mysql'
make[1]: Entering directory `/root/MySQL-MySQL-modules-1.2219/mysql'
PERL_DL_NOMLAZY=1 /usr/local/bin/perl -I..../lib/arch -I..../lib -I/usr/lib/pe
rl5/i386-linux -I/usr/lib/perl5 -e 'use Test::Harness qw(qv $verbose); $v
erbose=0; runtests @ARGV;' t/*
t/00base.....ok
t/10dsnlist....ok
t/20creatdrop....ok
t/30insertfetch....ok
t/40bindparam....ok
t/40blobs....ok
t/40listfields....ok
t/40nulls....ok
t/40numrows....ok
t/50chopblanks....ok
t/50commit....ok
t/60leaks..... skipping test on this platform
t/ak-dbd....ok
t/dbdadmin....ok
All tests successful 1 test skipped.
Files=14, Tests=290, 29 wallclock secs ( 5.76 cusr + 0.57 csys =  6.33 CPU)
make[1]: Leaving directory `/root/MySQL-MySQL-modules-1.2219/mysql'
mail: ~/MySQL-MySQL-modules-1.2219# 

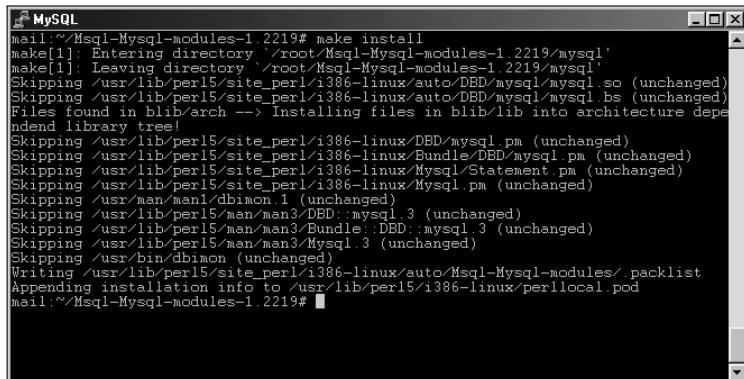
```

**Figure 15-11:** Successful testing of the DBD

Finally, install the MySQL Perl DBD by typing the following command:

```
make install
```

The Normal installation dialog box should appear while the DBD is installed in the proper locations (see Figure 15-12).



```
mail:~/Msql-Mysql-modules-1.2219# make install
make[1]: Entering directory '/root/Msql-Mysql-modules-1.2219/mysql'
make[1]: Leaving directory '/root/Msql-Mysql-modules-1.2219/mysql'
Skipping /usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/i386-linux/auto/DBD/mysql/mysql.so (unchanged)
Skipping /usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/i386-linux/auto/DBD/mysql/mysql.bs (unchanged)
Files found in blib/arch --> Installing files in blib/lib into architecture dependent library tree!
Skipping /usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/i386-linux/DBD/mysql.pm (unchanged)
Skipping /usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/i386-linux/Bundle::DBD/mysql.pm (unchanged)
Skipping /usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/i386-linux/MySQL/Statement.pm (unchanged)
Skipping /usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/i386-linux/MySQL.pm (unchanged)
Skipping /usr/man/man1/dbimon.1 (unchanged)
Skipping /usr/lib/perl5/man/man3/DBD::mysql.3 (unchanged)
Skipping /usr/lib/perl5/man/man3/Bundle::DBD::mysql.3 (unchanged)
Skipping /usr/lib/perl5/man/man3/MySQL.3 (unchanged)
Skipping /usr/bin/dbimon (unchanged)
Writing /usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/i386-linux/auto/Msql-Mysql-modules/ packlist
Appending installation info to /usr/lib/perl5/i386-linux/perllocal.pod
mail:~/Msql-Mysql-modules-1.2219#
```

**Figure 15-12:** Normal installation output when you run the make install command to install the MySQL DBD

Other specific drivers and tools can be installed to work with MySQL and Perl; their installation process looks much the same as this one.

## Introducing the DBI

The Perl DBI is the name for a database-independent set of software programs that a programmer can use with many different databases—using the same functions in every case. The DBI saves having to account for the multitude of access methods used for different databases. For example, the DBI enables the programmer to use different database drivers (DBDs) for databases such as Oracle, mSQL, Sybase, and others—without having to learn an entirely new syntax to program each one.

The upcoming portion of the chapter introduces the DBI itself—in particular, the basics of DBI use (such as connecting to a database and disconnecting), as well as the DBI's error-handling capability.

## Basic DBI Usage

The DBI is built around an object-oriented programming style. Within that context, the database driver is initialized, connections to the database are created, commands

and statements are run, and the connections are destroyed. Whenever you create an object, the DBI identifies it—as a driver, a database, or a statement—by associating it with one of three logical markers (known as *handles*) that correspond to those three types of objects: (drivers, databases, or statements). The handles are actually pointers to specific *instances* of objects.

From a programming standpoint, you declare that you'd like to use the DBI in your program by adding the following line near the beginning of your program:

```
use DBI;
```

## Driver handles

DBI driver handles are available for many database types. For the purposes of this book, you need be concerned only with the MySQL driver handle.



### Tip

You can use more than one driver handle within the same program to connect to different database types. You can only use one driver handle per database. (Then again, why would you need more than one handle to the same driver?)

You initialize the driver handle (or more properly, the DBI does so) behind the scenes. For example, the driver handle for MySQL is created when you call the `connect` method for the DBI.

## Database handles

Database handles are the controls you use to manipulate database-related programs. When a database handle is created, you connect to the MySQL database and provide credentials such as username, password, and database name. These credentials are the same as those you would supply to connect with the MySQL CLI (or the `mysqladmin` command and so forth).

The standard naming scheme for a database handle is the `$dbh` variable (which I use throughout this chapter). A database handle is created automatically whenever you call the `connect` method; the syntax looks like this:

```
$dbh = DBI->connect($datasource, $credentials)
```

The parent driver handle is also created—automatically—when the database handle is created. (Connection and disconnection get a closer look in an upcoming section of this chapter.)

MySQL allows multiple simultaneous connections when using methods such as the CLI; connections using the DBI have the same capability. Therefore, multiple database handles can be created that attach to the same database. Further, each database handle is a completely separate object; you need not worry about commands or results colliding with each other.

## Statement handles

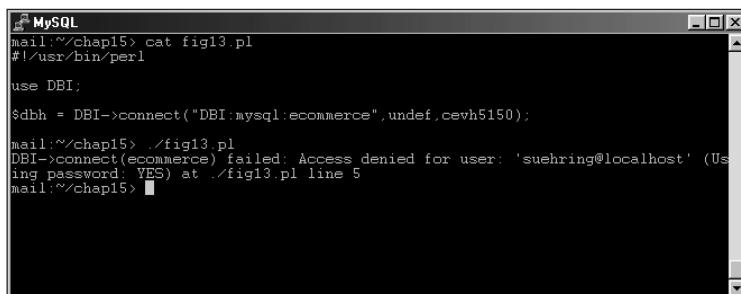
*Statement handles* are the means by which actual SQL and related statements are executed against the MySQL server. The statement handle is the child of the database handle; can issue multiple statements using the same database handle.

Each statement you issue gets its own statement handle, usually referred to by the \$sth variable name. Think of this process as issuing multiple statements from within the CLI. You don't have to reconnect to the CLI for each SELECT statement (for example); you can issue multiple statements.

## Connecting to and disconnecting from the database with the DBI

Interaction with the database can only be done after a connection is made. The connection is known as a database handle and usually referred to by the \$dbh variable name. The driver handle is created in the background when a connection is made.

Use the connect method to create a database handle and connect to the database. When using the connect method, you must supply credentials as you would if you were connecting through the CLI. For example, if you have to specify a password (and you should), then connecting through the CLI means you have to specify that same password when you connect through the DBI. Figure 15-13 shows some failed connections attempted with a DBI-based Perl program; they fail when proper credentials aren't supplied.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "MySQL". The command entered is "mail:~/chap15> cat fig13.pl". The script content is:

```
#!/usr/bin/perl  
  
use DBI;  
  
$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql:ecommerce", undef, cevh5150);
```

The output shows the error: "DBI->connect(ecommerce) failed: Access denied for user: 'suehring@localhost' (Using password: YES) at ./fig13.pl line 5".

**Figure 15-13:** Errors when a DBI-based application doesn't have proper credentials to connect to the database requested

The authentication scheme is the same for a DBI-based Perl application as it is for any other connection to the database. The username supplied must be allowed access from the host where the program is running; the username must be allowed to access the database; the password supplied with the username must match; and other credentials must be correctly supplied, as is the case with any other connection to the database server.

Recall that the basic syntax for a connection is

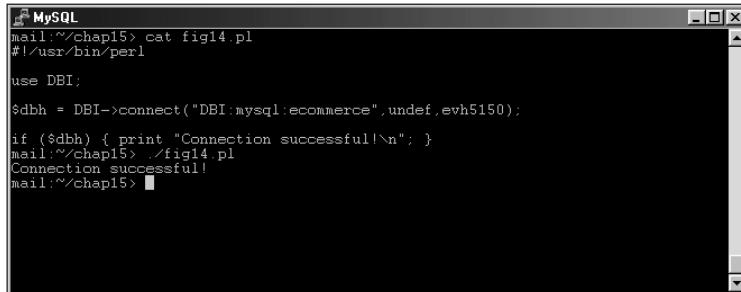
```
$dbh = DBI->connect ($datasource, $credentials);
```

The \$datasource for MySQL contains a reference to the MySQL DBD followed by the optional name of the database you want to connect to, followed by the optional hostname of the database server that houses the database. Here's an example:

```
$dbh = DBI->connect ("DBI:mysql:ecommerce", $credentials);
```

would connect to the ecommerce database on the local host and create a database handle (\$dbh), assuming the credentials supplied in \$credentials are correct.

For example, Figure 15-14 shows a small example application that, when executed, issues a simple "Connection successful" output message.



```
MySQL
mail:~/chap15> cat fig14.pl
#!/usr/bin/perl

use DBI;

$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql:ecommerce", undef, evh5150);

if ($dbh) { print "Connection successful\n"; }

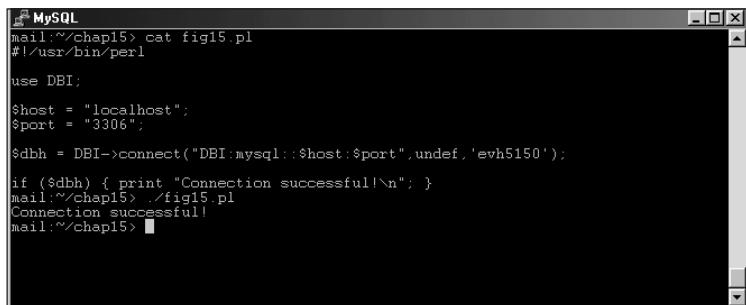
mail:~/chap15> ./fig14.pl
Connection successful!
mail:~/chap15>
```

**Figure 15-14:** A small application for connecting to the ecommerce database

As stated previously, the database itself is optional within the Datasource portion of the DBI connect operation that creates the object. The following command (which creates a database handle) is valid as well:

```
$dbh = DBI->connect ("DBI:mysql:", $credentials);
```

Other portions of the Datasource include the optional host and port. If no host or port is supplied, the host is assumed to be `localhost` and the port is assumed to be the default port, 3306. For example, Figure 15-15 shows different methods for supplying the host and/or port for connecting to the database.



```
MySQL mail:~/chap15> cat fig15.pl
#!/usr/bin/perl

use DBI;

$host = "localhost";
$port = "3306";

$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql:$host:$port", undef, 'evh5150');

if ($dbh) { print "Connection successful!\n"; }

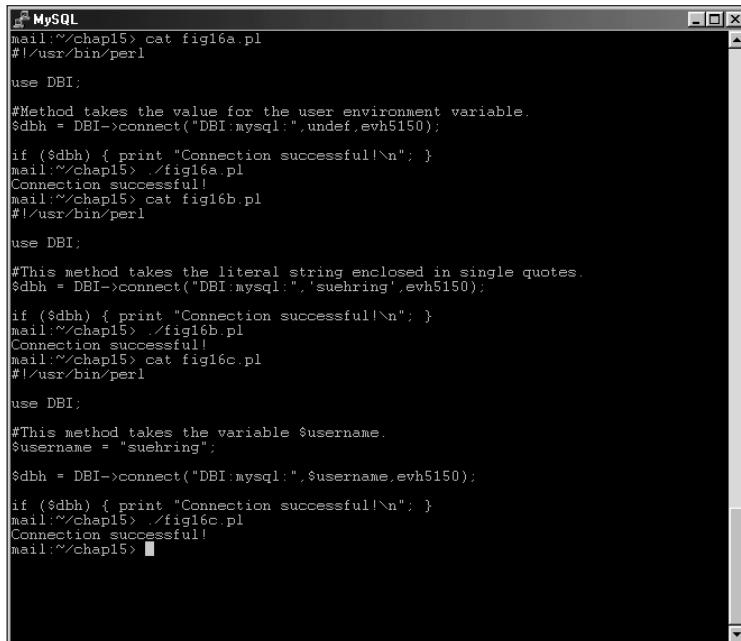
mail:~/chap15> ./fig15.pl
Connection successful!
mail:~/chap15>
```

**Figure 15-15:** Methods for specifying host and port for the Datasource portion of the database handle

Notice the word `undef` within the program in Figure 15-14. The `undef` is a placeholder where the username would normally go. In this instance, `undef` is there; the DBI takes the value of the `user` environment variable and puts it in the place of the username credential.

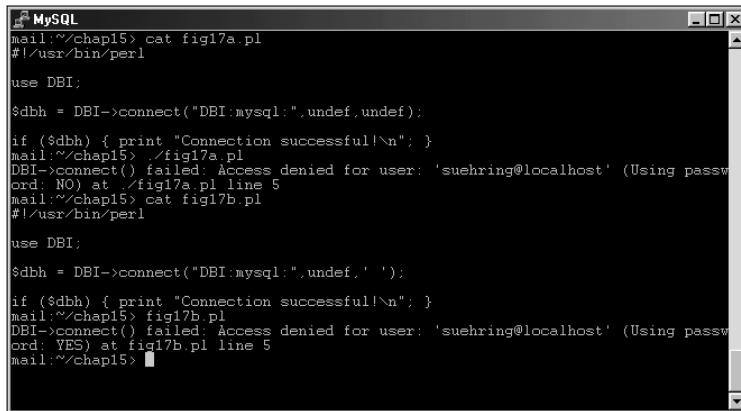
If you want to supply the username, you should enclose the username in single or double quotation marks. However, if you supply the username as a variable, the DBI interpolates the variable without requiring you to use quotes. Figure 15-16 shows a few examples of correct methods for specifying the `username` credential as part of the `$dbh` creation.

If you supply `undef` as the password or don't use a password at all, it is assumed that no password is used. This is as opposed to specifying a blank password. Figure 15-17 shows examples of two scripts and the errors that result from running them with the different password methods. Notice the error from the first script (where MySQL believes no password is specified) and from the second script (where a blank password is specified).



```
#!/usr/bin/perl
use DBI;
#Method takes the value for the user environment variable.
$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql:", undef, evh5150);
if ($dbh) { print "Connection successful!\n"; }
mail:~/chap15> ./fig16a.pl
Connection successful!
mail:~/chap15> cat fig16b.pl
#!/usr/bin/perl
use DBI;
#This method takes the literal string enclosed in single quotes.
$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql:", 'suehring', evh5150);
if ($dbh) { print "Connection successful!\n"; }
mail:~/chap15> ./fig16b.pl
Connection successful!
mail:~/chap15> cat fig16c.pl
#!/usr/bin/perl
use DBI;
#This method takes the variable $username.
$username = "suehring";
$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql:", $username, evh5150);
if ($dbh) { print "Connection successful!\n"; }
mail:~/chap15> ./fig16c.pl
Connection successful!
mail:~/chap15>
```

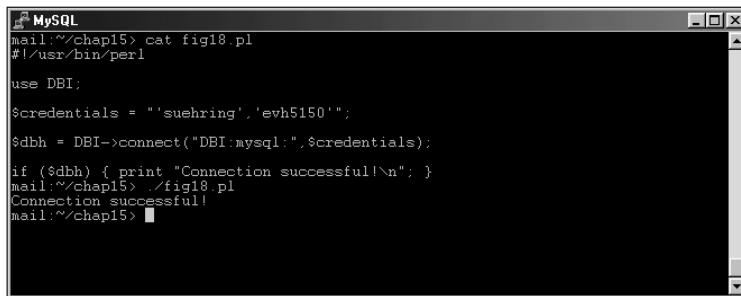
**Figure 15-16:** Various methods for specifying the username portion of the credentials when creating a connection



```
#!/usr/bin/perl
use DBI;
$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql:", undef, undef);
if ($dbh) { print "Connection successful!\n"; }
mail:~/chap15> ./fig17a.pl
DBI->connect() failed: Access denied for user: 'suehring@localhost' (Using passw
ord: NO) at ./fig17a.pl line 5
mail:~/chap15> cat fig17b.pl
#!/usr/bin/perl
use DBI;
$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql:", undef, '');
if ($dbh) { print "Connection successful!\n"; }
mail:~/chap15> ./fig17b.pl
DBI->connect() failed: Access denied for user: 'suehring@localhost' (Using passw
ord: YES) at ./fig17b.pl line 5
mail:~/chap15>
```

**Figure 15-17:** Different methods for specifying a password, one using the `undef` placeholder and one specifying a blank password

Of course, you could supply the credentials inside one variable as well (see Figure 15-18).



```
MySQL
mail:~/chap15> cat fig18.pl
#!/usr/bin/perl

use DBI;

$credentials = "'suehring','evh5150'";

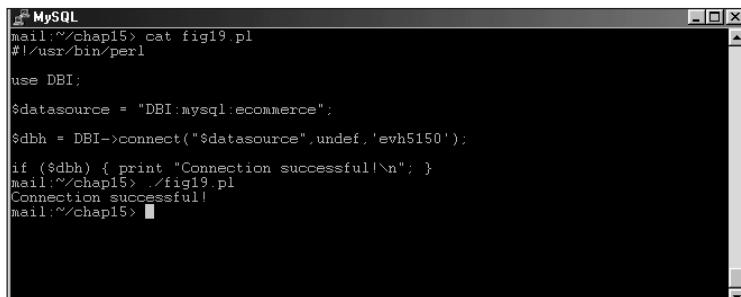
$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql:$credentials");

if ($dbh) { print "Connection successful!\n"; }
mail:~/chap15> ./fig18.pl
Connection successful!
mail:~/chap15>
```

**Figure 15-18:** Creating the proper credentials inside a variable.

`$credentials` is also a valid way to connect.

Also as the credentials portion of the connection can be supplied in a variable, the Datasource could also be supplied in whole or in part by variable interpolation. For example, you could define the host as `$host`, the database name as `$database`, and so forth: You could even supply the entire Datasource as a variable, `$datasource` (or the name of your choosing.) Figure 15-19 illustrates some of these points.



```
MySQL
mail:~/chap15> cat fig19.pl
#!/usr/bin/perl

use DBI;

$datasource = "DBI:mysql:ecommerce";

$dbh = DBI->connect("$datasource", undef, 'evh5150');

if ($dbh) { print "Connection successful!\n"; }
mail:~/chap15> ./fig19.pl
Connection successful!
mail:~/chap15>
```

**Figure 15-19:** Specifying portions of the Datasource through the use of variables can help to make the program more readable.

Examining what I have defined so far:

```
$dbh = DBI->connect($datasource, $credentials);
```

I'd like to introduce the final portion of database handle creation with the DBI and MySQL DBD. The final portion is optional and consists of attributes or elements that affect the behavior of the handle itself. Therefore, adding this onto the \$dbh definition I've been using:

```
$dbh = DBI->connect($datasource, $credentials, \%elements);
```

A number of elements are available here, most notably those that define how errors are handled and what to do with extra blank spaces for CHAR column types. I'll examine error handling in the next section; therefore I'll save further discussion of the optional elements until then.

Up until now, I've looked at methods for connecting to the database. By now, you have more than enough information to connect to a database. However, disconnecting from a database is important as well.

Normally, when your program exits, the disconnection is automatic thus saving the programmer the work of having to explicitly issue a `disconnect` command. In practice, however, always explicitly disconnect your database handles. This is because there are times when using multiple handles in a program that you may need to disconnect old handles to preserve resources.

If you do not issue an explicit disconnect, Perl disconnects the handle as part of the `DESTROY` process when a program terminates. You may see an error or warning like:

```
Database handle destroyed without explicit disconnect
```

This should remind you to go back and issue a `disconnect` statement within your program. The syntax for the `disconnect` method is:

```
$dbh->disconnect;
```

Therefore, you can see that it is possible to disconnect only certain database handles. For example, if your program has three database handles, `$dbh0`, `$dbh1`, `$dbh2`, you could simply issue a `disconnect()` to the specific handle or handles that you no longer need.

You may want to check the return status of the disconnection to make sure that it was successful. You can do this by checking the return value from the `disconnect` call, using the following command:

```
$dis = $dbh->disconnect;
```

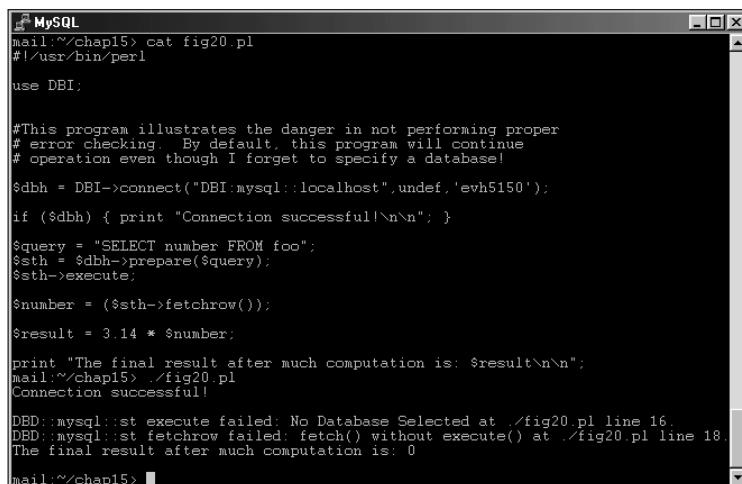
If the value of `$dis` evaluates true, then the disconnection was successful; otherwise the disconnection failed.

## Handling errors with the DBI

In most instances, error handling is automatic with the DBI. This was evidenced by earlier Figures and examples in this chapter. The error messages look quite similar to those you would see with other MySQL tools such as the CLI or `mysqladmin`. Sometimes you may want to disable this automatic error-checking in favor of manual error checking (or a combination of automatic and manual).

Error handling is configured using the attributes or elements discussed in a previous section. There are two attributes of DBI error-checking: `PrintError` and `RaiseError`. By default, `PrintError` is enabled. `PrintError` simply prints the error message to the screen and continues execution of the program as if nothing had happened. This is bad if your program is relying on information from the database and a statement or command fails to execute.

To illustrate this behavior, take a look at the program in Figure 15-20. In this program, I query a database for a number and then perform a computation based on that number. I allow `PrintError` to perform the error checking in the program, but do no further error handling myself. You can see the results of the program in action in Figure 15-20 as well. The program happily continues, even though the query execution failed. If these results were to be automatically e-mailed to me using a scheduling program such as `cron`, I wouldn't see these error messages.



```
MySQL
mail:~/chap15> cat fig20.pl
#!/usr/bin/perl

use DBI;

#This program illustrates the danger in not performing proper
# error checking. By default, this program will continue
# operation even though I forgot to specify a database!

$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql::localhost", undef, 'evh5150');

if ($dbh) { print "Connection successful!\n\n"; }

$query = "SELECT number FROM foo";
$stmt = $dbh->prepare($query);
$stmt->execute();

$number = ($stmt->fetchrow());
$result = 3.14 * $number;

print "The final result after much computation is: $result\n\n";
mail:~/chap15> ./fig20.pl
Connection successful!
The final result after much computation is: 0

DBD::mysql::st execute failed: No Database Selected at ./fig20.pl line 16.
DBD::mysql::st fetchrow failed: fetch() without execute() at ./fig20.pl line 18.
The final result after much computation is: 0
mail:~/chap15>
```

**Figure 15-20:** A program continues execution in the event of an error when using the default `PrintError` for error-checking.

Though disabled by default, the `RaiseError` attribute causes the program to terminate immediately upon encountering an error with the DBI. By creating an attribute hash, `%attr`, and setting `RaiseError` to 1, the `RaiseError` attribute becomes operational and thus terminates the program if an error is encountered. Figure 15-21 shows an example of the same program from Figure 15-20 with the `%attr` hash created and then appended to the database handle initialization.

**Tip**

Note the use of the backslash to escape the `%` in the database handle creation.



```
MySQL
mail:~/chap15> cat fig21.pl
#!/usr/bin/perl

use DBI;

%attr = (RaiseError => 1);

$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql::localhost", undef, 'evh5150', \%attr);

if ($dbh) { print "Connection successful\n\n"; }

$query = "SELECT number FROM foo";
$stmt = $dbh->prepare($query);
$stmt->execute();

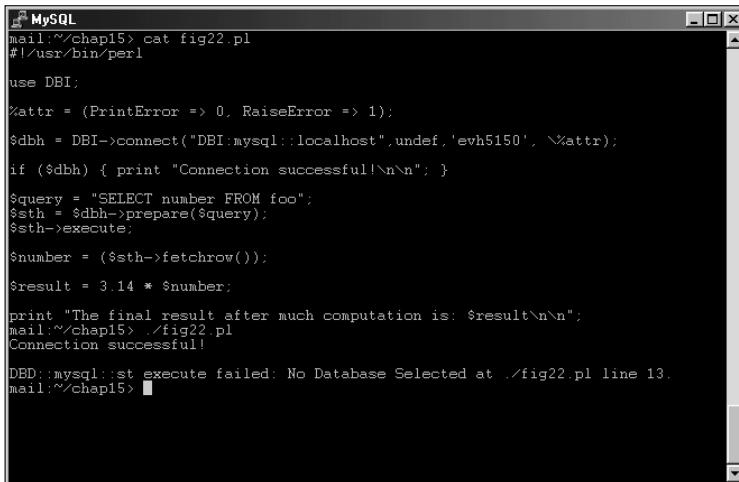
$number = ($stmt->fetchrow());
$result = 3.14 * $number;

print "The final result after much computation is: $result\n\n";
mail:~/chap15> ./fig21.pl
Connection successful!

DBD::mysql::st execute failed: No Database Selected at ./fig21.pl line 13.
DBD::mysql::st execute failed: No Database Selected at ./fig21.pl line 13.
mail:~/chap15>
```

**Figure 15-21:** Using `RaiseError` to terminate a program immediately if an error occurs

Notice in Figure 15-21 that the same error message is printed twice. This is expected behavior. Remember that `PrintError` is enabled by default. Therefore, when an error occurs, `PrintError` sees it and prints the error. Only when `RaiseError` handles the error does the program terminate. If you want to disable `PrintError`, set its value to 0, as shown in Figure 15-22.



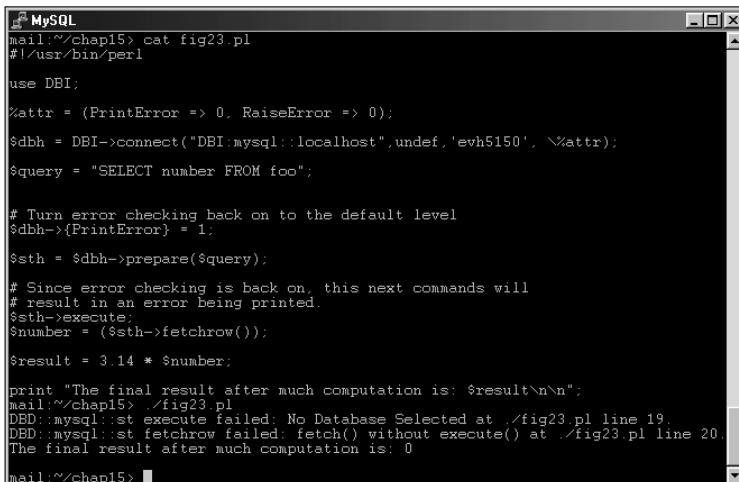
```

#!/usr/bin/perl
use DBI;
%attr = (PrintError => 0, RaiseError => 1);
$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql::localhost", undef, 'evh5150', \%attr);
if ($dbh) { print "Connection successful\n\n"; }
$query = "SELECT number FROM foo";
$stmt = $dbh->prepare($query);
$stmt->execute();
$number = ($stmt->fetchrow());
$result = 3.14 * $number;
print "The final result after much computation is: $result\n\n";
mail:~/chap15> ./fig22.pl
Connection successful!
DBD::mysql::st execute failed: No Database Selected at ./fig22.pl line 13.
mail:~/chap15>

```

**Figure 15-22:** Setting PrintError to 0 in the %attr attribute hash to prevent duplicate printing of the error message

You can also toggle the behavior of the PrintError and RaiseError attributes within the program. For example, if you want to disable all error checking for a certain statement you can set the values of PrintError and RaiseError to 0 and then re-enable one or both after the statement executes. Figure 15-23 shows an example that disables all error checking by the DBI, performs a statement, and then re-enables the default PrintError error-checking method.



```

#!/usr/bin/perl
use DBI;
%attr = (PrintError => 0, RaiseError => 0);
$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql::localhost", undef, 'evh5150', \%attr);
$query = "SELECT number FROM foo";

# Turn error checking back on to the default level
$dbh->{PrintError} = 1;
$stmt = $dbh->prepare($query);

# Since error checking is back on, this next command will
# result in an error being printed.
$stmt->execute();
$number = ($stmt->fetchrow());
$result = 3.14 * $number;
print "The final result after much computation is: $result\n\n";
mail:~/chap15> ./fig23.pl
DBD::mysql::st execute failed: No Database Selected at ./fig23.pl line 19.
DBD::mysql::st fetchrow failed: fetch() without execute() at ./fig23.pl line 20.
The final result after much computation is: 0
mail:~/chap15>

```

**Figure 15-23:** Selective error checking within the same program

If you choose to disable the error-checking feature, you must perform error checking and handling manually. This can be achieved in numerous ways including the die or warn functions. Another method for manual error checking is the use of an IF test. Because most operations with the DBI return a value of `undef` for a failure, if the value from the operation does not exist, then you can assume that the execution failed. If it evaluates `true`, then you can be assured that the database handle was created. Figure 15-24 shows some examples of manual error checking.

**Tip**

I've been using an IF test in the examples throughout this chapter to test whether the `$dbh` database-handle variable evaluated to `true` or `false`.



```
MySQL
mail:~/chap15> cat fig24.pl
#!/usr/bin/perl

use DBI;

# Disable all automatic error-checking
%attr = (PrintError => 0, RaiseError => 0);

$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql::localhost", undef, 'evh5150', \%attr);

# Error Checking using an IF test.
if ($dbh) { print "Connection successful\n\n"; }

$query = "SELECT number FROM foo";

# Error check using the die function
$stmt = $dbh->prepare($query) or die "Prepare failed: $DBI::errstr";
$stmt->execute or die "Execution failed: $DBI::errstr";

$number = ($stmt->fetchrow());
$result = 3.14 * $number;

print "The final result after much computation is: $result\n\n";
mail:~/chap15> ./fig24.pl
Connection successful

Execution failed: No Database Selected at ./fig24.pl line 17.
mail:~/chap15>
```

Figure 15-24: Using manual error-checking methods

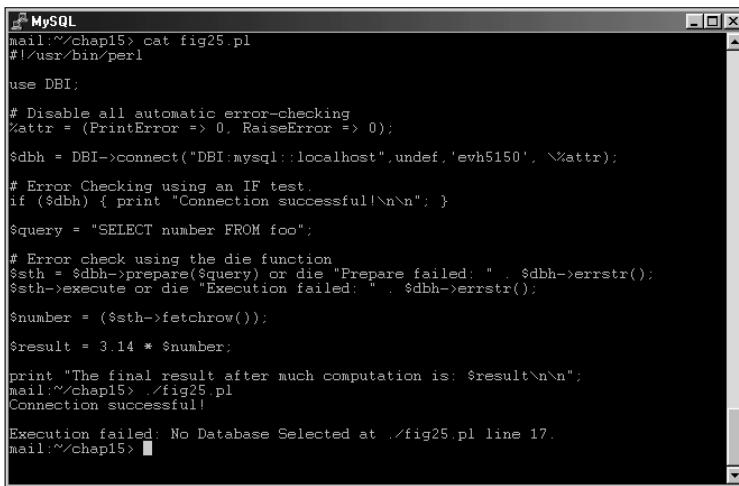
### Built-in error status methods

There are built-in methods for working with error status messages. The example program in Figure 15-24 showed one of these, `errstr`. Another method that I'll highlight is the `err()` method. The `errstr()` method contains the string text message of the error. The `err()` method contains the error number corresponding to the error.

The `errstr()` and `err()` methods exist both at the DBI level and at the handle level. At the DBI level, as used in Figure 15-24, the methods contain the information for the last-used handle. The handle-level methods are called as shown:

```
$dbh->errstr();
$dbh->err();
```

Modifying the program from Figure 15-24 to use the handle methods is quite simple, as shown in Figure 15-25.



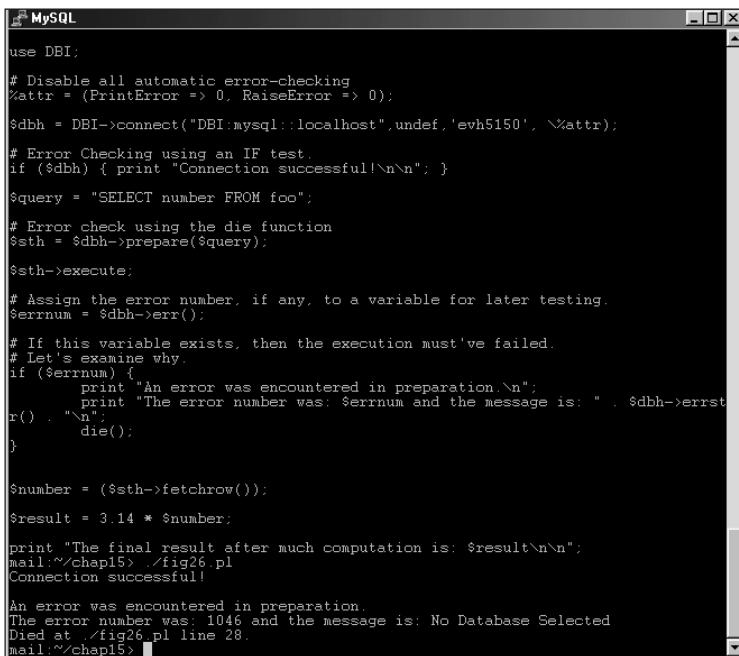
```

#!/usr/bin/perl
use DBI;
# Disable all automatic error-checking
%attr = (PrintError => 0, RaiseError => 0);
$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql::localhost", undef, 'evh5150', \%attr);
# Error Checking using an IF test.
if ($dbh) { print "Connection successful!\n\n"; }
$query = "SELECT number FROM foo";
# Error check using the die function
$stmt = $dbh->prepare($query) or die "Prepare failed: " . $dbh->errstr();
$stmt->execute or die "Execution failed: " . $dbh->errstr();
$number = ($stmt->fetchrow());
$result = 3.14 * $number;
print "The final result after much computation is: $result\n\n";
mail:~/chap15> ./fig25.pl
Connection successful!
Execution failed: No Database Selected at ./fig25.pl line 17.
mail:~/chap15>

```

**Figure 15-25:** Using manual error checking and the handle-level error methods

Using handle-level error methods you could assign the `err` results to variables for later testing. An example of a program using this type of test is shown in Figure 15-26.



```

#!/usr/bin/perl
use DBI;
# Disable all automatic error-checking
%attr = (PrintError => 0, RaiseError => 0);
$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql::localhost", undef, 'evh5150', \%attr);
# Error Checking using an IF test.
if ($dbh) { print "Connection successful!\n\n"; }
$query = "SELECT number FROM foo";
# Error check using the die function
$stmt = $dbh->prepare($query);
$stmt->execute;
# Assign the error number, if any, to a variable for later testing.
$errnum = $dbh->err();
# If this variable exists, then the execution must've failed
# Let's examine why.
if ($errnum) {
    print "An error was encountered in preparation.\n";
    print "The error number was: $errnum and the message is: " . $dbh->errstr() . "\n";
    die();
}

$number = ($stmt->fetchrow());
$result = 3.14 * $number;
print "The final result after much computation is: $result\n\n";
mail:~/chap15> ./fig26.pl
Connection successful!
An error was encountered in preparation.
The error number was: 1046 and the message is: No Database Selected
Died at ./fig26.pl line 28.
mail:~/chap15>

```

**Figure 15-26:** Using handle-level error methods and assigning one to a variable for later use

## Functions with the DBI

So far, I've discussed four functions as an introduction to the DBI:

```
connect()
disconnect()
err()
errstr()
```

I've used some other functions in examples. This section examines those functions, along with others for use with the DBI and MySQL DBD.

Going back to examples shown in previous figures in this chapter you'll see the creation of a statement handle, \$sth, and the use of the `prepare()` method along with the `execute()` method. The `prepare()` method takes an SQL statement and stores or parses it for later execution by the DBI. The `execute()` method then takes that prepared statement and runs it against the database engine. The `execute()` method returns the number of rows affected for non-`SELECT` statements. With a `SELECT` statement a True value is returned upon successful execution.

The examples of the `prepare()` and `execute()` methods shown previously were done in such a manner as to produce an error. Therefore, I'll leave those examples alone and show a new example program with a successful `prepare()` and `execute()` method call, as shown in Figure 15-27.

```
MySQL
mail:~/chap15> cat fig27.pl
#!/usr/bin/perl

use DBI;

$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql:mysql:", undef, 'evh5150');

if ($dbh) { print "Connection successful!\n\n"; }

$query = "SELECT user FROM user";
$stmt = $dbh->prepare($query);
$stmt->execute();

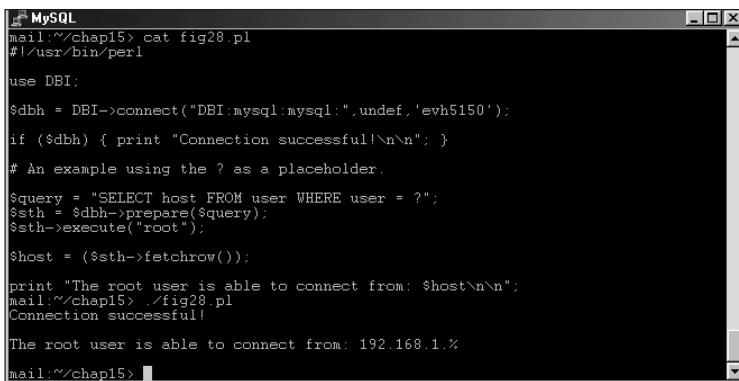
$user = ($stmt->fetchrow());

print "The first user in the MySQL user table is: $user\n\n";
mail:~/chap15> ./fig27.pl
Connection successful!
The first user in the MySQL user table is: phpuser
mail:~/chap15>
```

**Figure 15-27:** A successful execution of a MySQL statement using the Perl DBI

The `prepare()` and `execute()` methods both take optional arguments or place-holders that are substituted into the actual statement at execution time, much like a variable would be. The placeholder is the question mark (?). The `bind_param()` method substitutes the actual values for the question-mark placeholder when using

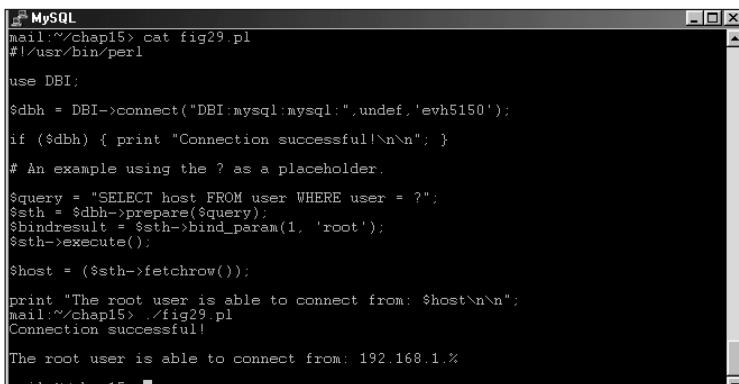
`prepare()`. Alternatively, the substitution can take place at execution time by supplying an argument to the `execute()` call. Figure 15-28 shows an example of this behavior.



```
#!/usr/bin/perl
use DBI;
$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql:mysql", undef, 'evh5150');
if ($dbh) { print "Connection successful!\n\n"; }
# An example using the ? as a placeholder.
$query = "SELECT host FROM user WHERE user = ?";
$sth = $dbh->prepare($query);
$sth->execute("root");
$host = ($sth->fetchrow());
print "The root user is able to connect from: $host\n\n";
mail:~/chap15> ./fig28.pl
Connection successful!
The root user is able to connect from: 192.168.1.%
```

**Figure 15-28:** Using a placeholder to substitute a value at execution time for a `SELECT` statement

An example of the `bind_param` function is shown in Figure 15-29.



```
#!/usr/bin/perl
use DBI;
$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql:mysql", undef, 'evh5150');
if ($dbh) { print "Connection successful!\n\n"; }
# An example using the ? as a placeholder.
$query = "SELECT host FROM user WHERE user = ?";
$sth = $dbh->prepare($query);
$bindresult = $sth->bind_param(1, 'root');
$sth->execute();
$host = ($sth->fetchrow());
print "The root user is able to connect from: $host\n\n";
mail:~/chap15> ./fig29.pl
Connection successful!
The root user is able to connect from: 192.168.1.%
```

**Figure 15-29:** Using the `bind_param` function to substitute values in a `prepare()` call

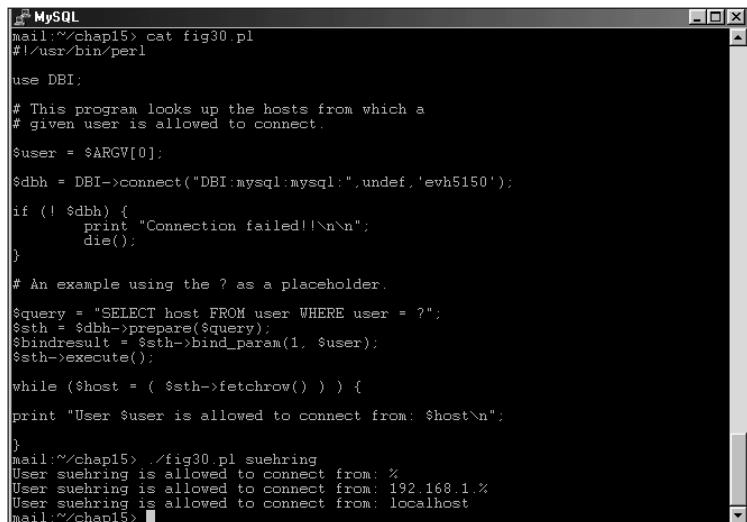
Naturally, you could substitute variables for the values in the `bind_param` argument list. The `bind_param` argument list also takes an optional third argument for the type of data (such as `CHAR`, `NUMERIC`, and so on).

Another function in Figures 15-27 through 15-29 is of particular interest: `fetchrow()`. This and several related functions retrieve results from executed MySQL statements by using the DBI. The `fetch` functions are listed in Table 15-1.

**Table 15-1**  
**Fetch functions to retrieve statement results**

| <b>Function name</b>             | <b>Description</b>   |
|----------------------------------|--|
| <code>fetchall_arrayref</code>   | Retrieves all data as a reference to an array.                                   |
| <code>fetchrow()</code>          | Retrieves one value. Useful where one value is selected as a result.             |
| <code>fetchrow_array()</code>    | Retrieves results and places them in an array.                                   |
| <code>fetchrow_arrayref()</code> | Retrieves data as a referenced array.  |
| <code>fetchrow_hashref()</code>  | Retrieves data as a hash. Operates similarly to <code>fetchrow_arrayref</code> . |

I believe that examples of the different `fetch` functions serve better than a written explanation. For the examples in Figures 15-27 through 15-29, I retrieved only the first row of results. If you want to retrieve more than one row using the `fetchrow()` method, you have to loop through the results with a function such as `while`, as shown in Figure 15-30.



```
MySQL
mail:~/chap15> cat fig30.pl
#!/usr/bin/perl

use DBI;

# This program looks up the hosts from which a
# given user is allowed to connect.

$user = $ARGV[0];

$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql:mysql", undef, 'evh5150');

if (! $dbh) {
    print "Connection failed!!\n";
    die();
}

# An example using the ? as a placeholder.

$query = "SELECT host FROM user WHERE user = ?";
$sth = $dbh->prepare($query);
$bindresult = $sth->bind_param(1, $user);
$sth->execute();

while ($host = ( $sth->fetchrow() ) ) {
    print "User $user is allowed to connect from: $host\n";
}

mail:~/chap15> ./fig30.pl suehring
User suehring is allowed to connect from: %
User suehring is allowed to connect from: 192.168.1.%
User suehring is allowed to connect from: localhost
mail:~/chap15>
```

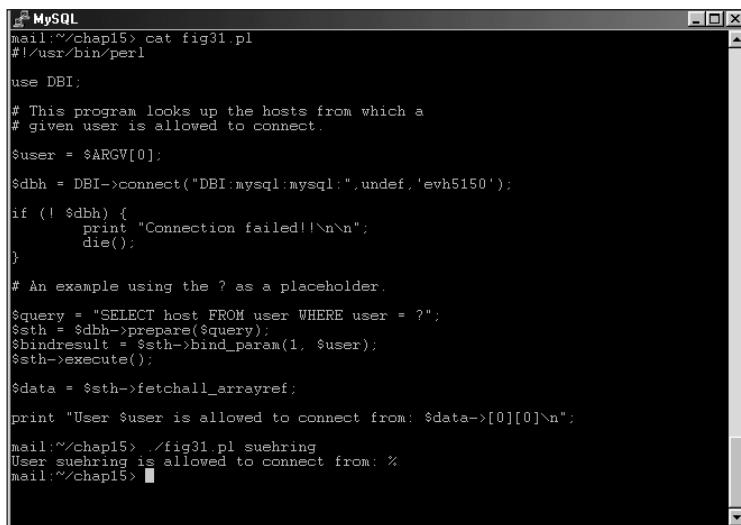
**Figure 15-30:** Retrieving all the results for the query, using a `while` loop and `fetchrow`

Figure 15-30 is a small useful program for determining the hosts that a user is allowed to connect from. The program takes the username to search for as an argument and returns the names of the hosts for which the user has an entry in the user table of the MySQL grants database.

**Note**

If the host field of the user table is blank, the program from Figure 15-30 may return incomplete or incorrect results.

Figure 15-31 shows an example of the `fetchall_arrayref()` method for retrieving query results. The method gets all the results at once and places them in an array with each row contained as part of the array. As this is a multi-dimensional array, the results need to be accessed as such.



```

MySQL
mail:~/chap15> cat fig31.pl
#!/usr/bin/perl

use DBI;

# This program looks up the hosts from which a
# given user is allowed to connect.

$user = $ARGV[0];

$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql:mysql:", undef, 'evh5150');

if (! $dbh) {
    print "Connection failed!!\n\n";
    die();
}

# An example using the ? as a placeholder.

$query = "SELECT host FROM user WHERE user = ?";
$sth = $dbh->prepare($query);
$bindresult = $sth->bind_param(1, $user);
$sth->execute();

$data = $sth->fetchall_arrayref();
print "User $user is allowed to connect from: $data->[0][0]\n";

mail:~/chap15> ./fig31.pl suehring
User suehring is allowed to connect from: %
mail:~/chap15>

```

**Figure 15-31:** The `fetchall_arrayref()` method in action

Figure 15-32 modifies the same program from the previous two figure illustrations to use the `fetchrow_array()` method. This method is frequently used for retrieving results where the `SELECT` statement queries for more than one column.

The final two methods, `fetchrow_arrayref()` and `fetchrow_hashref()`, both retrieve results as references to arrays or hashes, respectively. With `fetchrow_hashref()` the first row of results contain the field names for the values with the actual values being stored thereafter. An example of the `fetchrow_arrayref()` method is shown in Figure 15-33.

```

#!/usr/bin/perl
use DBI;
# This program looks up the hosts from which a
# given user is allowed to connect.
$user = $ARGV[0];
$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql:mysql:", undef, 'evh5150');
if (! $dbh) {
    print "Connection failed!!\n\n";
    die();
}
# An example using the ? as a placeholder.
$query = "SELECT host,password FROM user WHERE user = ?";
$sth = $dbh->prepare($query);
$bindresult = $sth->bind_param(1, $user);
$sth->execute();
while (($host,$pass) = $sth->fetchrow_array) {
    print "User $user is allowed to connect from: $host using $pass\n";
}
mail:~/chap15> ./fig32.pl suehring
User suehring is allowed to connect from: localhost using 59376fbc65a5103d
User suehring is allowed to connect from: 192.168.1.% using 59376fbc65a5103d
User suehring is allowed to connect from: % using 59376fbc65a5103d
mail:~/chap15>

```

**Figure 15-32:** The `fetchrow_array()` method is frequently used as a means to retrieve results from a query.

```

#!/usr/bin/perl
use DBI;
# This program looks up the hosts from which a
# given user is allowed to connect.
$user = $ARGV[0];
$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql:mysql:", undef, 'evh5150');
if (! $dbh) {
    print "Connection failed!!\n\n";
    die();
}
# An example using the ? as a placeholder.
$query = "SELECT host,password FROM user WHERE user = ?";
$sth = $dbh->prepare($query);
$bindresult = $sth->bind_param(1, $user);
$sth->execute();
# This is from the first record retrieved.
$host = $sth->fetchrow_arrayref->[0];
# This is actually from the second record retrieved.
$pass = $sth->fetchrow_arrayref->[1];
print "User $user is allowed to connect from: $host using $pass\n";
# This retrieves the entire row of data and assigns it to variables.
($anotherhost,$anotherpass) = @{$sth->fetch};
print "User $user is allowed to connect from: $anotherhost using $anotherpass\n"
;

mail:~/chap15> ./fig33.pl suehring
User suehring is allowed to connect from: localhost using 59376fbc65a5103d
User suehring is allowed to connect from: % using 59376fbc65a5103d
mail:~/chap15>

```

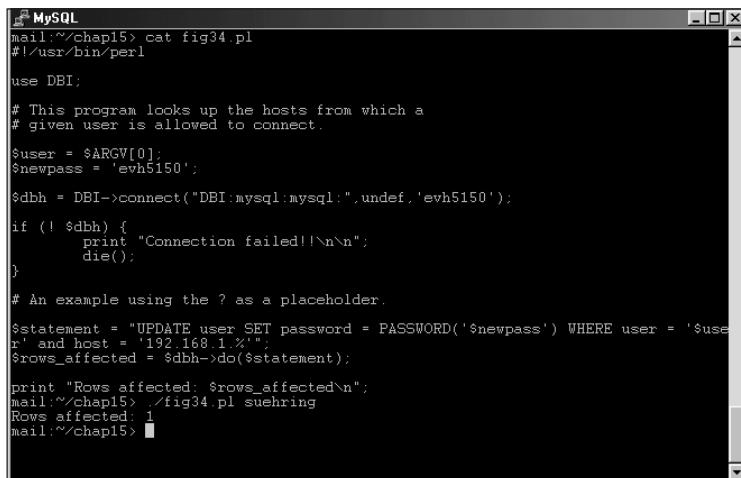
**Figure 15-33:** An example of the `fetchrow_arrayref` method for retrieving results from a query

Figure 15-33 illustrates the `fetchrow_arrayref()` method. Notice that the first call retrieves the host from the query, and the second call actually retrieves the password corresponding to the second entry or second row of results. The third method call retrieves an entire row of results from the query at once.

Not all interactions with the database require both a `prepare()` and `execute()` method call. The `do()` method enables you to execute statements without having to make two separate calls as with `prepare()` and `execute()`. Like the `prepare()` and `execute()` methods, `do()` can accept placeholders. The placeholders are question marks and should be included as the last argument of the `do()` method call. Figure 15-34 shows an example of `do()`.

**Note**

You cannot retrieve results using a `do()` method call, so it is not appropriate for `SELECT` statements. The `do()` method does return the number of rows affected by the statement. Therefore, it can be helpful to store this value for sanity checking. In other words, you can compare the number of returned rows to ensure that the value makes sense for the given query.



```

MySQL
mail:~/chap15> cat fig34.pl
#!/usr/bin/perl

use DBI;

# This program looks up the hosts from which a
# given user is allowed to connect.

$user = $ARGV[0];
$newpass = 'evh5150';

$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql:mysql", undef, 'evh5150');

if (! $dbh) {
    print "Connection failed!!\n\n";
    die();
}

# An example using the ? as a placeholder.

$statement = "UPDATE user SET password = PASSWORD('{$newpass}') WHERE user = '$user'
and host = '192.168.1.%'";
$rows_affected = $dbh->do($statement);

print "Rows affected: $rows_affected\n";
mail:~/chap15> ./fig34.pl suehring
Rows affected: 1
mail:~/chap15>

```

**Figure 15-34:** Using the `do()` method call to execute a statement without having to prepare it in a separate statement

Another method, `dump_results()`, can assist to print results for testing purposes while you are programming. `dump_results()` calls another method, `neat_string()`, to format the results and make them look nicer as output. The `dump_results()` method can take up to five arguments. The syntax is as follows:

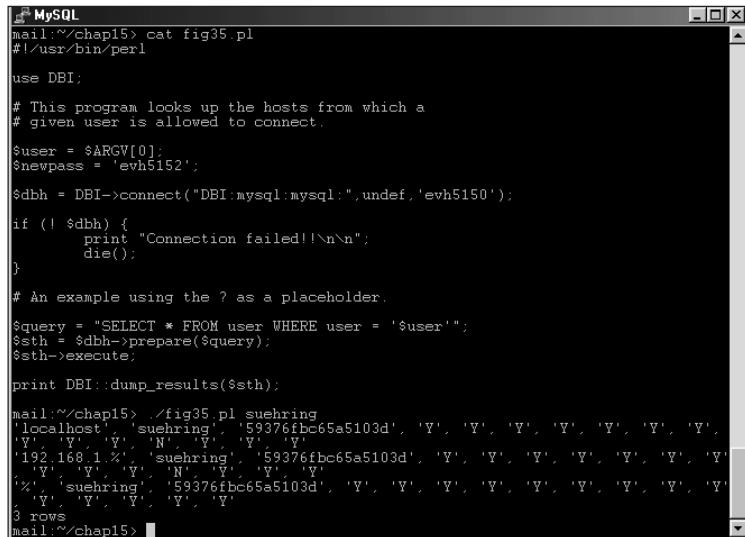
```

$result = DBI::dump_results($sth, $length, $line_break,
$field_break, $filedes);

```

The first argument, \$sth or the statement handle, is required. The second argument, represented by \$length in the example, is the maximum length for the results to print. The third and fourth arguments specify how you want to separate the lines and fields respectively. The default for a line break is the newline (\n), and the default for a field separator is a comma. The final argument, represented by \$filedes, is a pointer to a file handle to indicate a file to which the results should be dumped (instead of to the screen) on STDOUT. You don't save the results of the dump\_results() method; rather, you use Perl's print function to print them.

More than one figure is necessary to fully illustrate the syntax and use of the dump\_results() method. Figure 15-35 shows a basic instance; Figure 15-36 shows a basic usage. Figure 15-36 demonstrates setting a maximum length for the second argument.



```
MySQL
mail:~/chap15> cat fig35.pl
#!/usr/bin/perl

use DBI;

# This program looks up the hosts from which a
# given user is allowed to connect.

$user = $ARGV[0];
$newpass = 'evh5152';

$dbh = DBI->connect('DBI:mysql:mysql', undef, 'evh5150');

if (! $dbh) {
    print "Connection failed!!\n\n";
    die();
}

# An example using the ? as a placeholder.

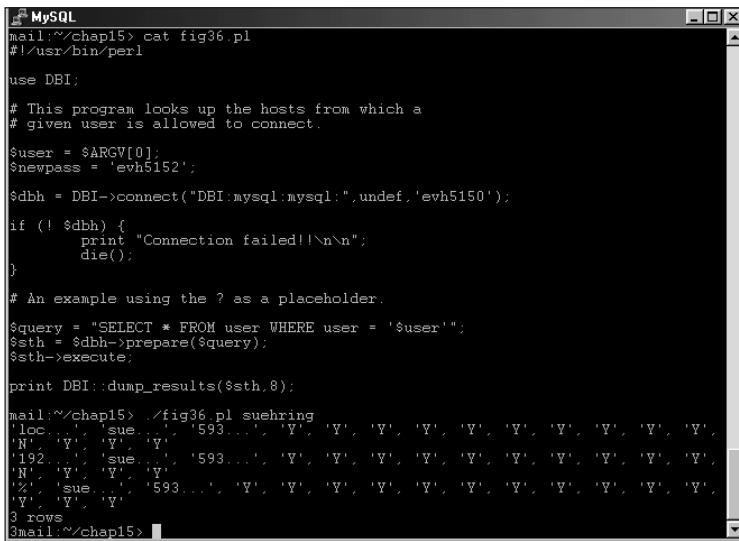
$query = "SELECT * FROM user WHERE user = '$user'";
$stmt = $dbh->prepare($query);
$stmt->execute();

print DBI::dump_results($stmt);

mail:~/chap15> ./fig35.pl suehring
localhost 'suehring' '59376fb65a5103d', 'Y', 'Y', 'Y', 'Y', 'Y', 'Y',
'Y', 'Y', 'N', 'Y', 'Y', 'Y'
192.168.1.21 'suehring' '59376fb65a5103d', 'Y', 'Y', 'Y', 'Y', 'Y', 'Y',
'Y', 'Y', 'N', 'Y', 'Y', 'Y'
% 'suehring' '59376fb65a5103d', 'Y', 'Y', 'Y', 'Y', 'Y', 'Y', 'Y',
'Y', 'Y', 'Y', 'Y', 'Y', 'Y', 'Y', 'Y'
3 rows
mail:~/chap15>
```

Figure 15-35: A basic use of the dump\_results() method

Figure 15-37 shows a usage of field separators and the manual setting of line breaks; Figure 15-38 demonstrates the use of a file handle to dump results into a file instead of to the screen.



```

#!/usr/bin/perl
use DBI;
# This program looks up the hosts from which a
# given user is allowed to connect.

$user = $ARGV[0];
$newpass = 'evh5152';

$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql:mysql", undef, 'evh5150');

if (! $dbh) {
    print "Connection failed!\n\n";
    die();
}

# An example using the ? as a placeholder.

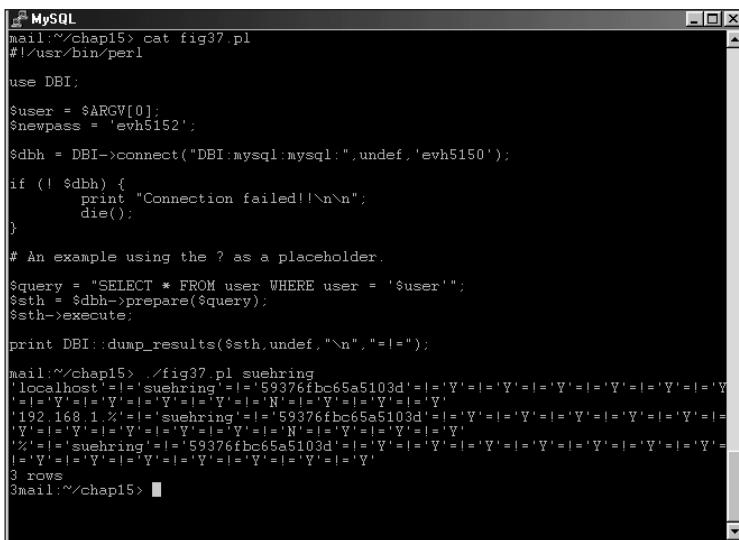
$query = "SELECT * FROM user WHERE user = '$user'";
$sth = $dbh->prepare($query);
$sth->execute();

print DBI::dump_results($sth,8);

mail:~/chap15> ./fig36.pl suehring
'loc' 'suehring' '593...','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y'
'N' 'Y' 'Y'
'192.168.1.1' 'suehring' '593...','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y'
'N' 'Y' 'Y'
'%' 'suehring' '593...','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y'
'Y' 'Y'
3 rows
3mail:~/chap15>

```

**Figure 15-36:** Setting the maximum length to 8 with the second argument of the `dump_results()` method



```

#!/usr/bin/perl
use DBI;
$user = $ARGV[0];
$newpass = 'evh5152';

$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql:mysql", undef, 'evh5150');

if (! $dbh) {
    print "Connection failed!\n\n";
    die();
}

# An example using the ? as a placeholder.

$query = "SELECT * FROM user WHERE user = '$user'";
$sth = $dbh->prepare($query);
$sth->execute();

print DBI::dump_results($sth,undef,"=\n","=");

mail:~/chap15> ./fig37.pl suehring
'localhost'='suehring'='59376fbc65a5103d'='Y'='Y'='Y'='Y'='Y'='Y'='Y'='Y'='Y'='Y'='Y'='Y'
'='!=Y'='!=Y'='!=Y'='!=Y'='!=Y'='!=Y'='!=Y'='!=Y'='!=Y'='!=Y'='!=Y'='!=Y'='!=Y'='!=Y'
'192.168.1.1'='suehring'='59376fbc65a5103d'='Y'='Y'='Y'='Y'='Y'='Y'='Y'='Y'='Y'='Y'='Y'='Y'
'='!=Y'='!=Y'='!=Y'='!=Y'='!=Y'='!=Y'='!=Y'='!=Y'='!=Y'='!=Y'='!=Y'='!=Y'='!=Y'='!=Y'
'%'='suehring'='59376fbc65a5103d'='Y'='Y'='Y'='Y'='Y'='Y'='Y'='Y'='Y'='Y'='Y'='Y'='Y'
'='!=Y'='!=Y'='!=Y'='!=Y'='!=Y'='!=Y'='!=Y'='!=Y'='!=Y'='!=Y'='!=Y'='!=Y'='!=Y'='!=Y'
3 rows
3mail:~/chap15>

```

**Figure 15-37:** Using an odd combination of characters as a field separator and manually setting the line break to a newline

```

#!/usr/bin/perl
use DBI;
$user = $ARGV[0];
$newpass = 'evh5152';
$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql:mysql", undef, 'evh5150');
if (! $dbh) {
    print "Connection failed!\n";
    die();
}
# An example using the ? as a placeholder.
$query = "SELECT * FROM user WHERE user = '$user'";
$stmt = $dbh->prepare($query);
$stmt->execute();
open (FILE, ">resultsfile");
print DBI::dump_results($stmt, undef, undef, *FILE);
close(FILE);
mail:~/chap15> ./fig38.pl suehring
3mail:~/chap15> cat resultsfile
localhost' 'suehring' '59376fbc65a5103d' 'Y' 'Y' 'Y' 'Y' 'Y' 'Y'
'Y' 'Y' 'Y' 'N' 'Y' 'Y'
'192.168.1.1' 'suehring' '59376fbc65a5103d' 'Y' 'Y' 'Y' 'Y' 'Y' 'Y'
'%' 'suehring' '59376fbc65a5103d' 'Y' 'Y' 'Y' 'Y' 'Y' 'Y'
'Y' 'Y' 'Y' 'Y' 'Y' 'Y'
3 rows
localhost' 'suehring' '59376fbc65a5103d' 'Y' 'Y' 'Y' 'Y' 'Y' 'Y'
'Y' 'Y' 'Y' 'N' 'Y' 'Y'
'192.168.1.1' 'suehring' '59376fbc65a5103d' 'Y' 'Y' 'Y' 'Y' 'Y' 'Y'
'%' 'suehring' '59376fbc65a5103d' 'Y' 'Y' 'Y' 'Y' 'Y' 'Y'
'Y' 'Y' 'Y' 'Y' 'Y' 'Y'
3 rows
mail:~/chap15>

```

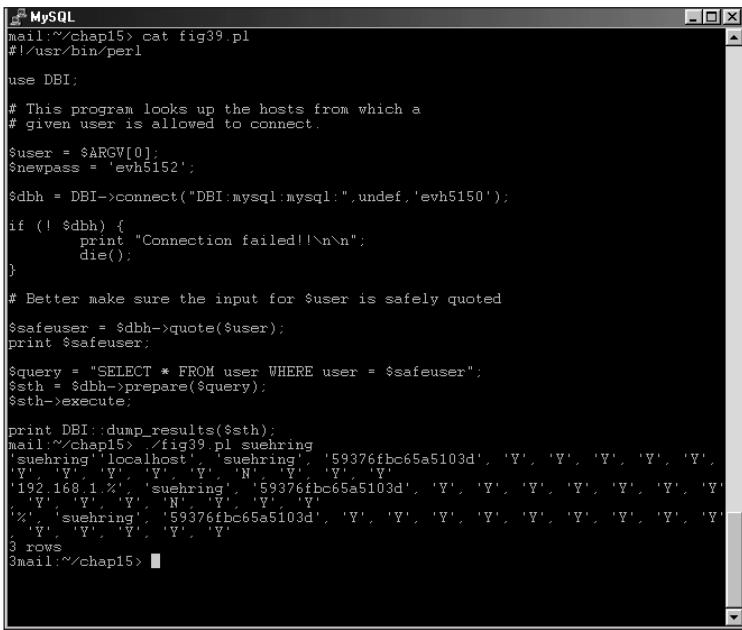
**Figure 15-38:** Using a file handle to dump the results to a file instead of to STDOUT

Though not technically necessary for the MySQL DBD, the `finish()` method can be used to recycle statement handles and improve the readability of your code. The `finish()` method releases the remaining results from a statement handle and frees it for another use. The MySQL DBD does not require you to finish before issuing another prepare statement, but doing so can greatly assist in tracing code if you need to go back and examine the code at a later date.

Finally, if you have to clean up input received from a user or through a Web form, you should know about the `quote()` method that makes strings safe for use inside an SQL statement. It takes a sole argument—the string to work with—and results in an SQL-safe string. Figure 15-39 shows an example of the `quote()` method.

#### Note

When using the `quote()` method, you do not need to include quotes around the strings inside queries. Notice, for example, the change in the way the variable `$safeuser` is called in Figure 15-39.



```
MySQL
mail:~/chap15> cat fig39.pl
#!/usr/bin/perl

use DBI;

# This program looks up the hosts from which a
# given user is allowed to connect.

$user = $ARGV[0];
$newpass = 'evh5152';

$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql:mysql", undef, 'evh5150');

if (! $dbh) {
    print "Connection failed!\n\n";
    die();
}

# Better make sure the input for $user is safely quoted
$safeuser = $dbh->quote($user);
print $safeuser;

$query = "SELECT * FROM user WHERE user = $safeuser";
$stmt = $dbh->prepare($query);
$stmt->execute();

print DBI::dump_results($stmt);
mail:~/chap15> ./fig39.pl suehring
'suehring','localhost','suehring','59376fbc65a5103d','Y','Y','Y','Y',
'Y','Y','Y','Y','N','Y','Y','Y','Y'
192.168.1.%','suehring','59376fbc65a5103d','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y',
'Y','Y','Y','N','Y','Y','Y','Y'
%','suehring','59376fbc65a5103d','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y','Y',
'Y','Y','Y','Y'
3 rows
3mail:~/chap15>
```

Figure 15-39: The `quote()` method serves to make strings SQL safe.

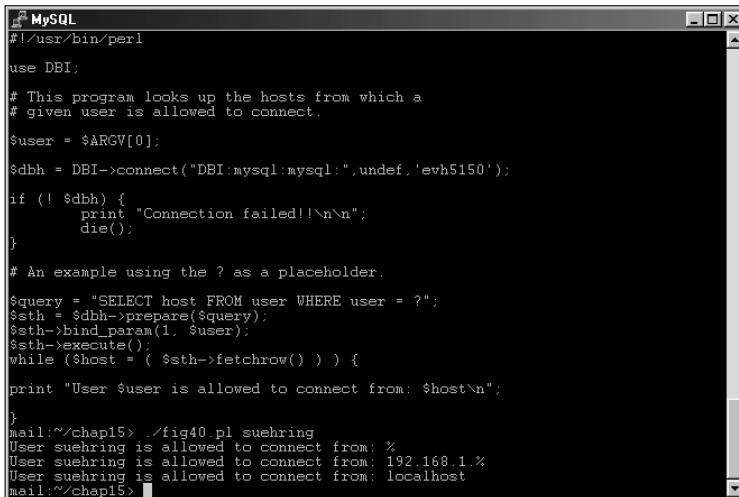
## Building Basic Applications

I've been making basic applications throughout this chapter—inside examples of error messages, queries, and updates. This section expands on some of those examples to show a basic Perl-based DBI application that uses functions and methods discussed in the previous section. The goal is to prepare you for building the applications needed to manage an e-commerce Web site in a later section.

### MySQL User Manager

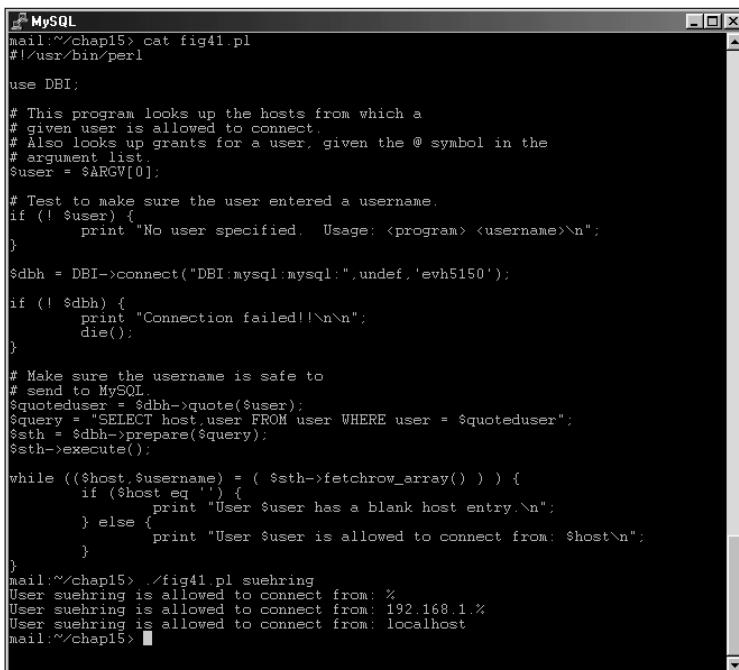
An earlier example created a small application to look at the hosts from which a given user is allowed to connect. I'll expand on that example here, making a more powerful user manager to examine the privileges that a given user/host combination has. As a starting point, Figure 15-40 illustrates the earlier program.

This program, though fine for the examples, is woefully inadequate when it comes to error checking. For example, if the `host` field is blank, the program evaluates the `while` loop as `false` and stops iterating through it. Further, no input validation is done. I've made changes to the program to make it check for errors and continue through the `while` loop even if the `host` is blank. I'm doing some shenanigans on the actual query to make sure that it always returns something regardless of whether the `host` is blank. I added the `user` to the query results so as to make it always evaluate `true` for the `while` loop. The program is shown in Figure 15-41.



```
#!/usr/bin/perl
use DBI;
# This program looks up the hosts from which a
# given user is allowed to connect.
$user = $ARGV[0];
$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql:mysql:", undef, 'evh5150');
if (! $dbh) {
    print "Connection failed!!\n";
    die();
}
# An example using the ? as a placeholder.
$query = "SELECT host FROM user WHERE user = ?";
$sth = $dbh->prepare($query);
$sth->bind_param(1, $user);
$sth->execute();
while ($host = ( $sth->fetchrow() ) ) {
    print "User $user is allowed to connect from: $host\n";
}
mail:~/chap15> ./fig40.pl suehring
User suehring is allowed to connect from: %
User suehring is allowed to connect from: 192.168.1.%
User suehring is allowed to connect from: localhost
mail:~/chap15>
```

**Figure 15-40:** A small program to query the hosts for a given user in the MySQL grants database



```
#!/usr/bin/perl
use DBI;
# This program looks up the hosts from which a
# given user is allowed to connect
# Also looks up grants for a user, given the @ symbol in the
# argument list.
$user = $ARGV[0];
# Test to make sure the user entered a username.
if (! $user) {
    print "No user specified. Usage: <program> <username>\n";
}
$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql:mysql:", undef, 'evh5150');
if (! $dbh) {
    print "Connection failed!!\n";
    die();
}
# Make sure the username is safe to
# send to MySQL.
$quoteduser = $dbh->quote($user);
$query = "SELECT host,user FROM user WHERE user = $quoteduser";
$sth = $dbh->prepare($query);
$sth->execute();
while ((($host, $username) = ( $sth->fetchrow_array() ) ) ) {
    if ($host eq '') {
        print "User $user has a blank host entry.\n";
    } else {
        print "User $user is allowed to connect from: $host\n";
    }
}
mail:~/chap15> ./fig41.pl suehring
User suehring is allowed to connect from: %
User suehring is allowed to connect from: 192.168.1.%
User suehring is allowed to connect from: localhost
mail:~/chap15>
```

**Figure 15-41:** Adding error checking and other improvements to a small user management program with the Perl DBI

To make the program even more useful I've added the ability to look up the privileges that a given user/host pair has. This shows an example of another type of statement being performed on the MySQL database other than a SELECT. The program is too large to fit into a figure illustration but I've included the program here and also some sample output in Figure 15-42.

```
#!/usr/bin/perl

use DBI;

# This program looks up the hosts from which a
# given user is allowed to connect.
# Also looks up grants for a user, given the @ symbol
# in the argument list.

$user = $ARGV[0];

# Test to make sure the user entered a username.
if (! $user) {
    print "No user specified. Usage: <program> \
<username>\n";
}

$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql:mysql:", undef, 'evh5150');

if (! $dbh) {
    print "Connection failed!!\n\n";
    die();
}

# If there's an @ symbol then the user wants to look up
# grants.
if ($user =~ m/\/@/) {
    ($user,$inhost) = split(/\@/, $user);

    # Make sure the username and host are safe to
    # send to MySQL.
    $quoteduser = $dbh->quote($user);
    $quotedhost = $dbh->quote($inhost);
    &priv($user,$inhost);
}
else {
    # User wants to simply lookup the hosts allowed
    # for given username.

    # Make sure the username is safe to
    # send to MySQL.
    $quoteduser = $dbh->quote($user);
```

```
$query = "SELECT host,user FROM user WHERE \
user = $quoteduser";
$sth = $dbh->prepare($query);
$sth->execute();

while (($host,$username) = ( \
$sth->fetchrow_array() ) ) {
    if ($host eq '') {
        print "User $user has a \
blank host entry.\n";
    }
    else {
        print "User $user is allowed \
to connect from: $host\n";
    }
}
}

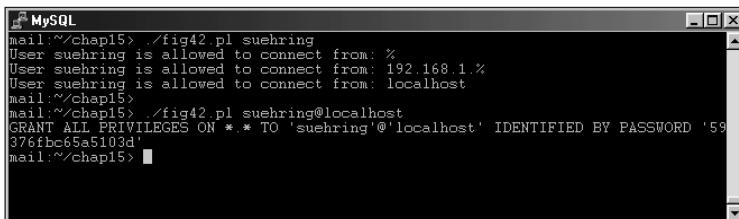
sub priv
{

# This subroutine looks up the grants for the given
# user/host pair.

($user,$host) = @_;

$query = "SHOW GRANTS FOR $user@$host";
$sth = $dbh->prepare($query);
$sth->execute();

while ($grant = ( $sth->fetchrow() ) ) {
    print "$grant\n";
}
}
```



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled 'MySQL'. The command entered is '/fig42.pl suehring'. The output displays three rows of grants for the user 'suehring': one row for '%' (any host), one for '192.168.1.%', and one for 'localhost'. Below this, another command is entered: 'GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES ON \*.\* TO 'suehring '@localhost' IDENTIFIED BY PASSWORD '59376fbcc65a5103d''. The terminal prompt 'mail:~/chap15>' appears at the bottom.

**Figure 15-42:** Usage examples of the MySQL User Management program I've built with the DBI

Other additions and modifications can be made to the simple user manager program that I've started. I'd still like to see better error checking in it as well as more features. Another modification that would be useful would be enabling the program to add users to MySQL. If a user isn't found, the program could ask whether to add the user and then ask for the password.



Chapter 19 examines the integration of Linux and MySQL and offers some additional programs for management and administration.



The user-management program given in this section is included on the CD-ROM with this book.

## Building Web Pages with the DBI

The e-commerce Web site that I'm building is mainly managed with Web-based tools. This offers the advantage of enabling employees to update the Web site from anywhere and with minimal training. Further, the use of Web-based tools for management lessens the risk of a user error accidentally ruining the data. This section examines how to build Web pages with data from a MySQL database. This is in preparation for the final section of this chapter, which entails the building of the e-commerce Web site.

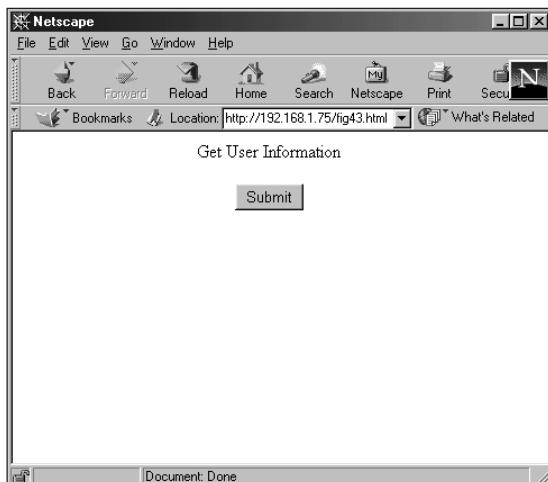
Programs written to interact with a Web server are sometimes referred to as Common Gateway Interface or CGI programs, sometimes even as CGI scripts. Perl programs written for the Web are also sometimes called CGIs and are typically executed by the Web server. A better term would probably be Web applications. For this section I'll be referring to CGI programs or CGI scripts interchangeably with Web applications.

This section assumes that you have a Web server running and the ability to execute CGI programs with the Perl module `CGI.pm`. In the background, programs written for the Web operate the same as non-Web based programs; the same Perl routines that work in other programs work with a CGI script. It should be noted that because CGIs typically are executed by non-privileged Web servers that not all routines may work the same.

For the purposes of this book, a *static page* is one contained entirely in a file, typically with a `.html` or `.htm` extension. The page rarely changes; when it does, it is edited by hand. A *dynamic page* is a page built automatically (or by a process other than writing the HTML each time), and it contains data that changes often.

## A simple Web application to query MySQL

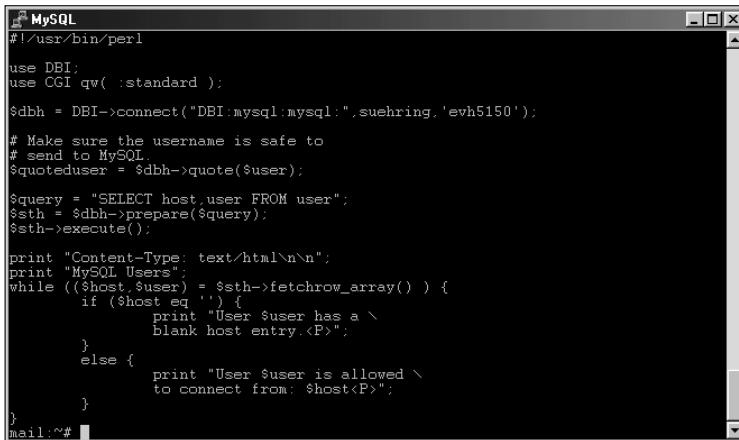
One of the basic building blocks of a CGI program is the Web form called with the <form> HTML tag. The Web form calls an action or program to execute. This program is the CGI. As a simple example, consider the Web page in Figure 15-43—a simple button created on a static Web page, using the HTML shown later. When clicked, that button calls a CGI (contained in Figure 15-44) and outputs the results to another Web page (as shown in Figure 15-45).



**Figure 15-43:** A static Web page with a form button to call a CGI

The HTML to produce the static Web page from Figure 15-43:

```
<html>
<center>
Get User Information
<form action="/cgi-bin/fig44.cgi">
<input type=button name=fig44 value="Submit">
</form>
</center>
</html>
```

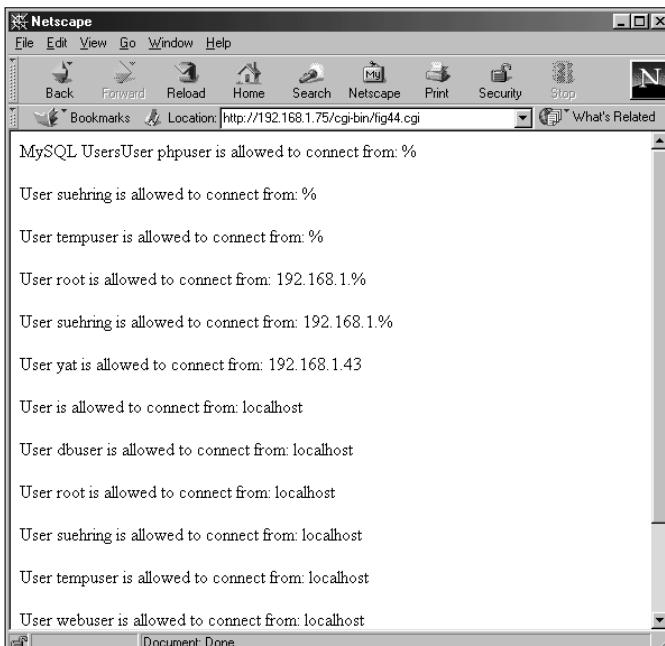


```

#!/usr/bin/perl
use DBI;
use CGI qw( :standard );
$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql:mysql:",$uehring,'evh5150');
# Make sure the username is safe to
# send to MySQL
$quoteduser = $dbh->quote($user);
$query = "SELECT host,user FROM user";
$stmt = $dbh->prepare($query);
$stmt->execute();
print "Content-Type: text/html\n\n";
print "MySQL Users";
while ((@host,$user) = $stmt->fetchrow_array()) {
    if (@host eq '') {
        print "User $user has a \n
              blank host entry.<P>";
    }
    else {
        print "User $user is allowed \n
              to connect from: $host<P>";
    }
}
mail:~# 

```

**Figure 15-44:** The CGI that is executed when the form button is selected



**Figure 15-45:** The results from the CGI automatically build a dynamic Web page.

Looking at the code in Figure 15-44, notice the addition of the `use CGI` directive. This addition takes advantage of the `CGI.pm` module and all its features to ease the burden on CGI programmers. Also note the addition of the following line:

```
print "Content-Type: text/html\n\n";
```

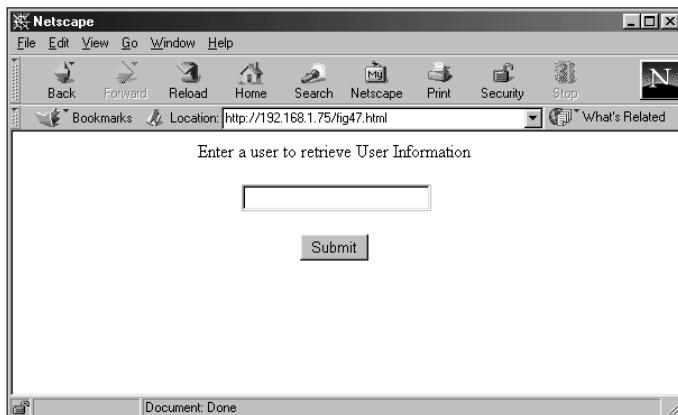
The previous line of code prints an HTML header to the Web browser so it knows to read the output as a Web page. Finally, notice that the newline characters (\n) in the print statements have been replaced with the HTML tag for a paragraph, <P>.

## Accepting input from a form

The program shown in the previous section isn't powerful. I can enhance the program by allowing for user input, much like the User Management program shown in previous examples in this chapter. I'll add a text input box to enable the user to input a username to query against the MySQL database.

Much of the error checking that I added in the previous section is still applicable. The HTML for the new version of the Web page is shown with the resulting page in Figure 15-46.

```
<html>
<center>
Enter a user to retrieve User Information
<form method=post action="/cgi-bin/fig47.cgi">
<input type=text length=30 name=user><P>
<input type=submit name=fig44 value="Submit">
</form>
</center>
</html>
```



**Figure 15-46:** An input form for a Web-based version of the user manager program

The code for the Web version of the user manager is as follows:

```
#!/usr/bin/perl
```

```
use DBI;
```

```
use CGI qw( :standard );

# This program looks up the hosts from which a
# given user is allowed to connect.
# Also looks up grants for a user, given the @ symbol in the
# argument list.

# Get the input from the form.
$user = param("user");

# Test to make sure the user entered a username.
if (! $user) {
    print "No user specified. Usage: <program>
<username><P>";
}

# Print an HTML header
print "Content-Type: text/html\n\n";

# Connect to the database
$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql:mysql:",suehring,'evh5150');

if (! $dbh) {
    print "Connection failed!!<P>";
    die();
}

# If there's an @ symbol then the user wants to look up
# grants.
if ($user =~ m/\/@/) {
    ($user,$inhost) = split(/\@/, $user);

    # Make sure the username and host are safe to
    # send to MySQL.
    $quoteduser = $dbh->quote($user);
    $quotedhost = $dbh->quote($inhost);
    &priv($user,$inhost);
}
else {
    # User wants to simply lookup the hosts allowed
    # for given username.

    # Make sure the username is safe to
    # send to MySQL.
    $quoteduser = $dbh->quote($user);
```

```

$query = "SELECT host,user FROM user WHERE \
user = $quoteduser";
$sth = $dbh->prepare($query);
$sth->execute();

while (($host,$username) = ( $sth->fetchrow_array() ) )
{
    if ($host eq '') {
        print "User $user has a \
blank host entry.<P>";
    }
    else {
        print "User $user is allowed \
to connect from: $host<P>";
    }
}

sub priv
{

# This subroutine looks up the grants for the given
# user/host pair.

($user,$host) = @_;

$query = "SHOW GRANTS FOR $user\@$host";
$sth = $dbh->prepare($query);
$sth->execute();

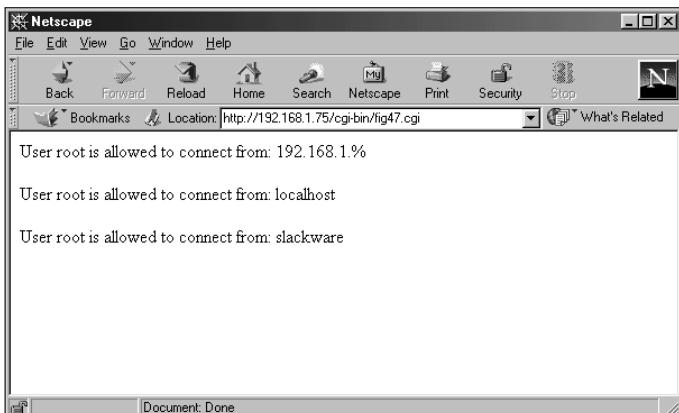
while ($grant = ( $sth->fetchrow() ) ) {
    print "$grant<P>";
}
}

```

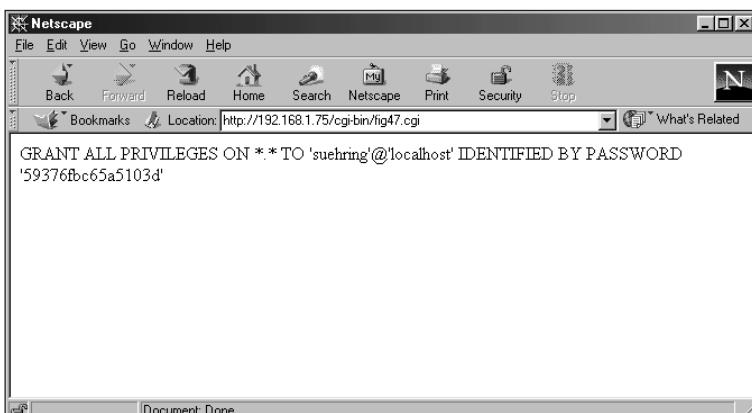
The code is basically the same as the code used to produce Figure 15-42. The notable addition or change is the following line:

```
$user = param("user");
```

Instead of getting the user for input from the command line in `$ARGV[0]`, the input comes from the Web form. The `param()` function is contained the `CGI.pm` module. Some output examples from this program are shown in Figures 15-47 and 15-48.



**Figure 15-47:** The Web version of the MySQL user-manager program



**Figure 15-48:** Another example of the Web version of the user-manager program, calling the program with the @ syntax

The examples in this section show how easy it is to write MySQL enabled applications for the Web in Perl. Knowledge of Perl is the key and beyond that implementing and modifying the programs for MySQL is a simple task.

## Producing an E-Commerce Web site

The goal of this section is to produce a successful e-commerce Web site (built using the Perl DBI) that includes behind-the-scenes tools that aren't on the Web, as well as the engine that runs the Web site itself. The previous two sections have shown

examples of building basic applications using the Perl DBI, as well as how to use the Perl DBI to build dynamic Web pages based on data in the MySQL database. This section combines those two components to produce a fully functional, albeit simple, e-commerce Web site.

## Database layout

The initial database design and layout has already been done in previous chapters. I've modified it somewhat, altering it as I develop the Web site. The database layout now is as follows:

```
CREATE TABLE customer (
    email_address varchar(75) NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,
    first_name varchar(50),
    last_name varchar(50),
    address1 varchar(50),
    address2 varchar(50),
    customer_zip varchar(10),
    area_code char(3),
    telephone_number char(7)
);
CREATE TABLE cardinfo (
    card_id int NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,
    ccnum varchar(16),
    ccexp date,
    name_on_card varchar(100),
    email_address varchar(75)
);
CREATE TABLE cardtype (
    card_id int NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,
    card_type varchar(20)
);
CREATE TABLE locale (
    zip varchar(10) NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,
    city varchar(50),
    state char(2)
);
CREATE TABLE manufacturer (
    id int NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,
    name varchar(50),
    address varchar(50),
    zip varchar(10),
    area_code char(3),
    telephone_number char(7),
    contact_name varchar(50)
);
CREATE TABLE product (
    id int NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY auto_increment,
    name varchar(50),
    artist varchar(50),
```

```
        price decimal(9,2),
        quantity integer,
        manu_id int,
        description varchar(255),
        category_id int
    );
CREATE TABLE producttype (
    id int NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,
    category varchar(50)
);
```

**Note**

If you have the ecommerce database on your server now, it would be a good time to drop the database and start over with a fresh version, using the layout listed in this section.

One table, cardtype, needs to have a couple of credit card types entered into it. I could build a Web page and CGI for this purpose, but this data doesn't change frequently. Manual entry is quicker if all you need put in the database is the two card types that the site accepts.

```
INSERT INTO cardtype VALUES (1,'Visa');
INSERT INTO cardtype VALUES (2,'Mastercard');
```

Related to the cardtype input, the producttype table also needs to be populated with some initial data. I'll be selling music, movies, books, and video games at the site so I'll use three product types or categories.

```
INSERT INTO producttype VALUES (1, 'CD');
INSERT INTO producttype VALUES (2, 'DVD');
INSERT INTO producttype VALUES (3, 'Book');
INSERT INTO producttype VALUES (4, 'PC CD-ROM Video Game');
```

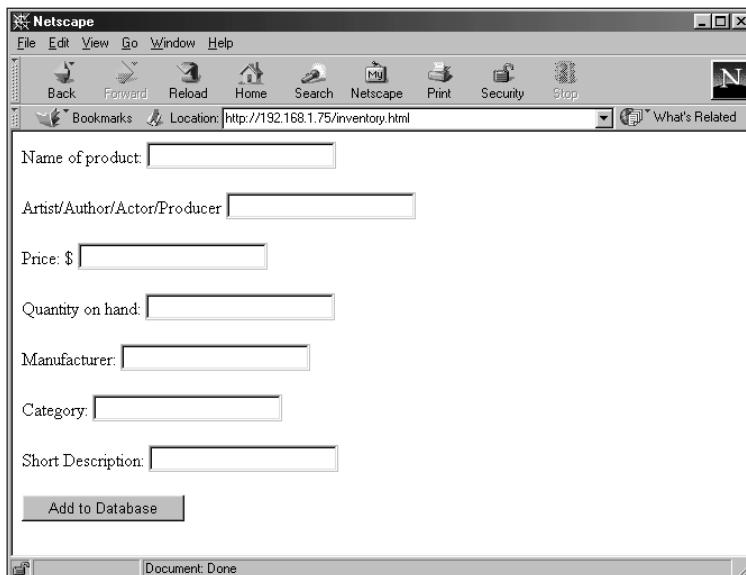
## Building an inventory-input program

The first step to getting the site online is to get products listed in the database so people can locate them and buy them. To accomplish this task, I build a CGI that enables easy input of inventory items.

A static Web page can be used as the initial form for input. To input any of the four product types I'll need to enter the name of the product, the artist or author, the price, quantity on hand, the manufacturer if applicable, and a short description of the product. The simple static page is shown in Figure 15-49; the HTML to produce that page is as follows:

```
<html>
<form action="/cgi-bin/inventory.cgi">
Name of product:
<input type="text" name=name length=30><p>
Artist/Author/Actor/Producer
```

```
<input type=text name=artist length=30></p>
Price: $
<input type=text name=price length=9></p>
Quantity on hand:
<input type=text name=quantity length=5></p>
Manufacturer:
<input type=text name=manu_id length=9></p>
Category:
<input type=text name=category_id length=4></p>
Short Description:
<input type=text name=description length=250></p>
<input type=submit name=submit value="Add to Database"></p>
</form>
</html>
```



**Figure 15-49:** A static page for entering inventory

The CGI to add the products to the database is as follows:

```
#!/usr/bin/perl

use DBI;
use CGI qw( :standard );

# Get the input from the form.
$name = param("name");
$artist = param("artist");
$price = param("price");
```

```
$quantity = param("quantity");
$manu_id = param("manu_id");
setDescription = param("description");
$submit = param("submit");
$category_id = param("category_id");
$confirmed = param("confirmed");

$price =~ s/\s//g;
$quantity =~ s/\s//g;
$manu_id =~ s/\s//g;

# Print an HTML header
print "Content-Type: text/html\n\n";

# Test to make sure the user entered enough information.
if ((! $name) || (! $price) || (! $quantity)){
    print "Not enough info specified.<P>";
    exit;
}
elsif ($price =~ /\D\.\?\D$/){
    print "Please enter only digits and decimal point for
price.<P>\n";
    exit;
}
elsif ($quantity =~ /\D/){
    print "Please enter only digits for quantity.<P>\n";
    exit;
}

# Connect to the database
$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql:ecommerce:",suehring,'evh5150');

if (! $dbh) {
    print "Connection failed!!<P>";
    die();
}

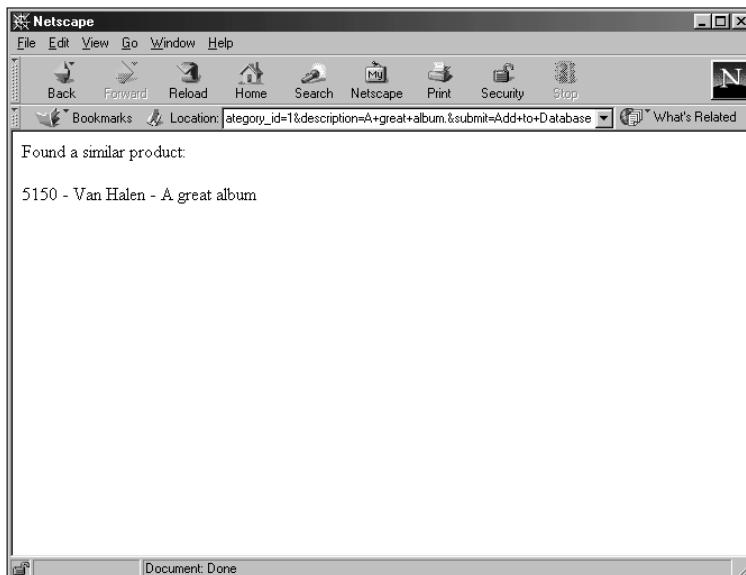
if ($submit) {
    # Look for a similar product to make sure we're not
    # adding a duplicate.
    $wcname = "%" . $name . "%";
    $wcartist = "%" . $artist . "%";
    $wcdescription = "%" . $description . "%";
    $quotedname = $dbh->quote($wcname);
    $quotedartist = $dbh->quote($wcartist);
    $quoteddescription = $dbh->quote($wcdescription);
    $query1 = "SELECT name,artist,description FROM product WHERE
name like $quotedname and artist like $quotedartist";
    $sth1 = $dbh->prepare($query1);
    $sth1->execute();
    while (($ename,$eartist,$edesc) = $sth1->fetchrow_array())
{
```

```
        print "Found a similar product:<P>\n";
        print "$ename - $eartist - $edesc<P>\n";
        exit;
    }

    #No existing product found, so print a confirm page.
    print "Confirm product addition<P>\n";
    print "<form action=\"/cgi-bin/inventory.cgi\"><P>\n";
    print "<input type=hidden name=name value=\"$name\"><P>\n";
    print "<input type=hidden name=artist
value=\"$artist\"><P>\n";
    print "<input type=hidden name=price value=\"$price\"><P>\n";
    print "<input type=hidden name=quantity
value=\"$quantity\"><P>\n";
    print "<input type=hidden name=manu_id
value=\"$manu_id\"><P>\n";
    print "<input type=hidden name=category_id
value=\"$category_id\"><P>\n";
    print "<input type=hidden name=description
value=\"$description\"><P>\n";
    print "Name: $name<P>Artist: $artist<P>Price: $$price<P>\n";
    print "Quantity: $quantity<P>Manufacturer ID:
$manu_id<P>Category: $category_id<P>\n";
    print "Description: $description<P>\n";
    print "<input type=submit name=confirmed value=\"Add to
DB\"><P>\n";
    print "</form>";
    print "</html>";
}

#If user confirmed that it's ok, then add it.
elsif ($confirmed) {
    $quotedname = $dbh->quote($name);
    $quotedartist = $dbh->quote($artist);
    $quoteddescription = $dbh->quote($description);
    $ins_statement = "INSERT INTO product
(name,artist,price,quantity,manu_id,description,category_id)
VALUES
($quotedname,$quotedartist,'$price','$quantity','$manu_id',$quo
teddescription,'$category_id')";
    $sth = $dbh->do($ins_statement);
    if (! $sth) {
        print "Apparently an error occurred with the
statement<P>\n";
        print "$ins_statement<P>\n";
        exit;
    }
    else {
        print "$name added<P>\n";
    }
}
exit;
```

The program doesn't introduce any new concepts, so I'll just highlight some of its inner workings. The program makes use of the percent sign (%) as a wildcard in the SQL queries. The program accepts input from a form and does some simple error checking on the incoming data. If the first Submit button was clicked, the program then queries the product database for a similar product. If a similar product is found, a page is sent to the user, with information about the existing product (see Figure 15-50).



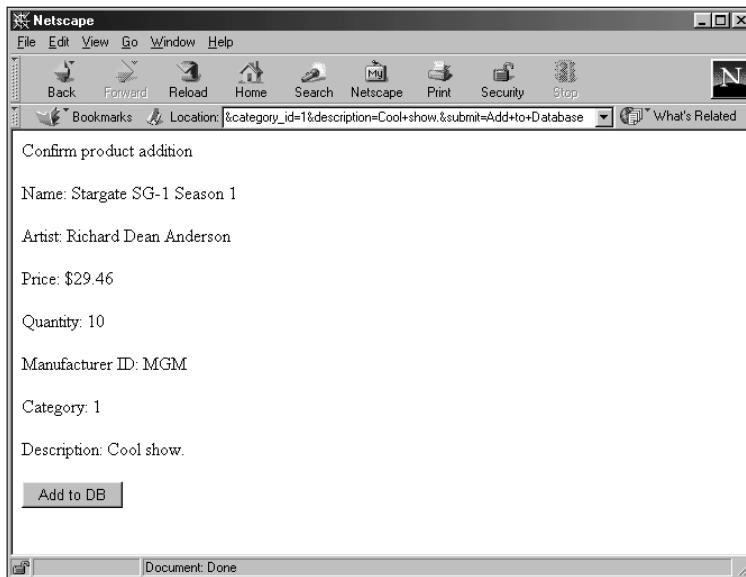
**Figure 15-50:** A similar product was found in the database, therefore this page is produced with results from the database query.

If no similar product is found, a confirmation page is produced as shown in Figure 15-51. Notice on that page that the existing values are included as hidden `form` tags; you don't see them in Figure 15-51 but, they exist if you view the page source. When the confirm button is clicked, those hidden `form` tags are passed back to the server the same as with any other form.

Finally, if the Confirmed button were clicked, the program adds the product to the database.

To develop this further, ideally you would add a method by which more than one item could be added at once. In addition, a method to search for Manufacturer or Category ID is needed. Many additional database tables and columns could be added with items such as warehousing, date of release, other formats, multiple

categories, and so on. Look back at the example in the previous section for a simple search function with the DBI. The next section develops a product search engine.



**Figure 15-51:** The confirm page produced by the inventory program

**Note**

Please add some inventory to your sample database, using the inventory program or any other method. You'll need it for the next section.

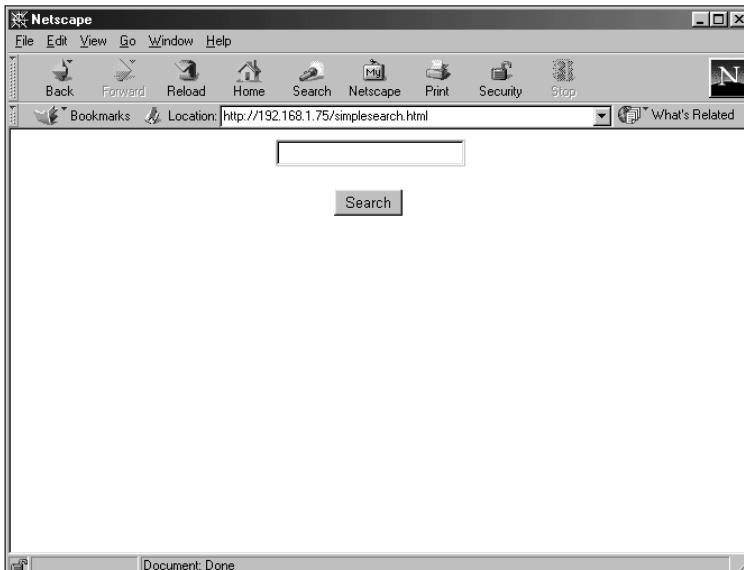
## Building a simple product search engine

To get the full benefit of this section, make sure you've added a few (or more) products to your database. This section builds a search engine to look for products in the database. The basis for the search engine is (again) a static page, which then links to a CGI to produce dynamic pages with the results.

I'll be making a simple search box that would probably go on the main page of the site—and a more complicated search page with more options (probably a separate page). Here is the HTML that produces the simple search page or box:

```
<html>
<center>
<form action="/cgi-bin/search.cgi" method="post">
<input type="text" name=search size=20><p>
<input type="submit" name=simple value=Search>
</center>
</html>
```

The simple search page is shown in Figure 15-52.

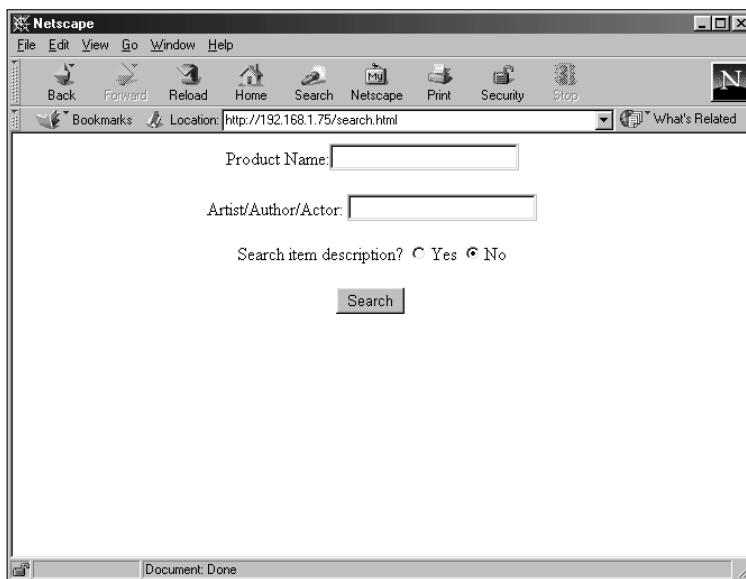


**Figure 15-52:** The simple search page

The HTML for producing the full search page looks like this:

```
<html>
<center>
<form action="/cgi-bin/search.cgi" method="post">
Product Name:<input type=text name=name size=20><p>
Artist/Author/Actor: <input type=text name=artist size=20><p>
Search item description?
<input type=radio name=description>Yes</input>
<input type=radio name=description checked>No</input><p>
<input type=submit name=full value=Search>
</center>
</html>
```

The full search page is shown in Figure 15-53.



**Figure 15-53:** The full search page

The code to make the search functions work is as follows:

```
#!/usr/bin/perl

use DBI;
use CGI qw( :standard );

# Get the input from the form.
$name = param("name");
$artist = param("artist");
$search = param("search");
$description = param("description");
$simple = param("simple");
$full = param("full");

# Print an HTML header
print "Content-Type: text/html\n\n";

# Connect to the database
$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql:ecommerce:",suehring,'evh5150');
```

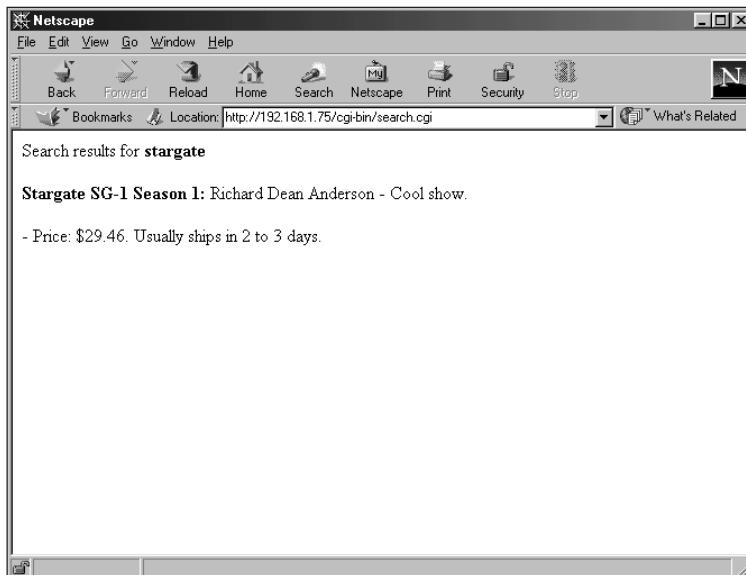
```
if (! $dbh) {
    print "Connection failed!!<P>";
    die();
}

if ($simple) {
    # Look for a product
    if (! $search) {
        print "Please go back and enter at least one search
term<P>\n";
        exit;
    }
    $wcsearch = "%" . $search . "%";
    $quotedsearch = $dbh->quote($wcsearch);
    $query1 = "SELECT name,artist,description,price,quantity FROM
product WHERE (name like $quotedsearch or artist like
$quotedsearch)";
    $sth1 = $dbh->prepare($query1);
    $sth1->execute;
    print "Search results for <B>$search</B><P>\n";
    while (($ename,$eartist,$edesc,$eprice,$equantity) = $sth1-
>fetchrow_array()) {
        $found = 1;
        print "<B>$ename:</B> $eartist - $edesc<P>\n";
        if ($equantity > 100) {
            print " - Price: $$eprice. Usually
ships in 24 hours.<P>\n";
        } elsif ($equantity < 51) {
            print " - Price: $$eprice. Usually
ships in 2 to 3 days.<P>\n";
        } elsif ($equantity > 50) {
            print " - Price: $$eprice. Usually
ships in 2 to 3 days.<P>\n";
        }
    }
    if (! $found) {
        print "No products found like $search<P>\n";
    }
    exit;
}
#If using full search page
elsif ($full) {
    if ($name ne "") {
        $searchterm = 1;
        $wcname = "%" . $name . "%";
        $quotedname = $dbh->quote($wcname);
        $query = "name like $quotedname";
        $search = "$name";
    }
    if ($artist ne "") {
        $searchterm = 1;
```

```
$wcartist = "%" . $artist . "%";
$quotedartist = $dbh->quote($wcartist);
if ($query) {
    $query = $query . " and artist like $quotedartist";
    $search = $search . " and $artist";
} else {
    $query = "artist like $quotedartist";
    $search = "$artist";
}
}
if ($description eq "Yes") {
    $wcdesc = "%" . $description . "%";
    $quoteddescription = $dbh->quote($wcdesc);
    $additional_search = " or description like
$search";
} else {
    $additional_search = "";
}
if (! $searchterm) {
    print "Please go back and enter at least one search
term<P>\n";
    exit;
}
$query1 = "SELECT name,artist,description,price,quantity FROM
product WHERE ($query $additional_search)";
print "$query1<P>\n";
$stmt1 = $dbh->prepare($query1);
$stmt1->execute();
print "Search results for $search<P>\n";
while (($ename,$eartist,$edesc,$eprice,$equantity) = $stmt1-
>fetchrow_array()) {
    $found = 1;
    print "<B>$ename:</B> $eartist - $edesc<P>\n";
    if ($equantity > 50) {
        print " - Price: \$eprice. Usually
ships in 24 hours.<P>\n";
    } elsif ($equantity < 50) {
        print " - Price: $$eprice. Usually
ships in 2 to 3 days.<P>\n";
    }
}
if (! $found) {
    print "No products found matching $name $artist <P>\n";
}
exit;
}
print "Error";
exit;
```

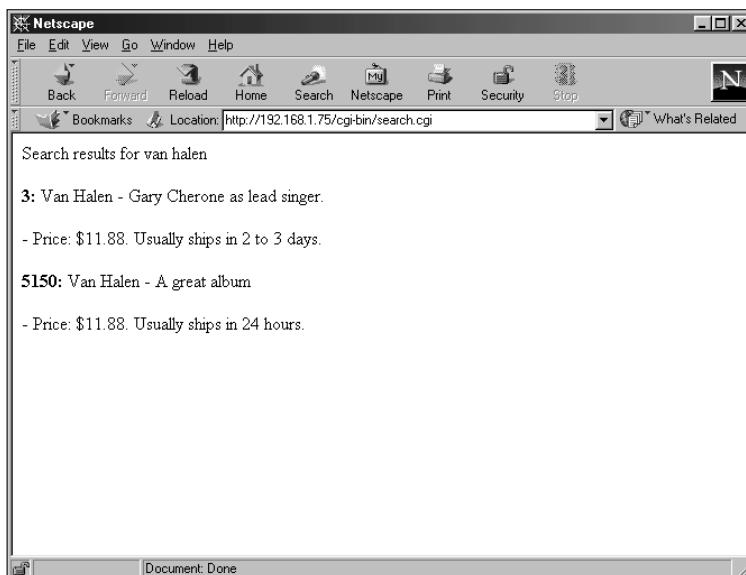
As with other programs shown as examples, this one could always be improved—say, with better error checking and handling, as well as with more robust searching capabilities. But you get the idea.

The program works in much the same way as the inventory program; it gets parameters from the incoming form and places them into variables. From there, it makes a decision based on which button was selected (simple search or more complicated search). Notice that during the `while` loop to retrieve results a decision is made based upon the quantity on hand of the given product. Aside from that (and a bit of Perl here and there to make things work correctly), you have a fully functional search engine. An example of the simple search result is shown in Figure 15-54.



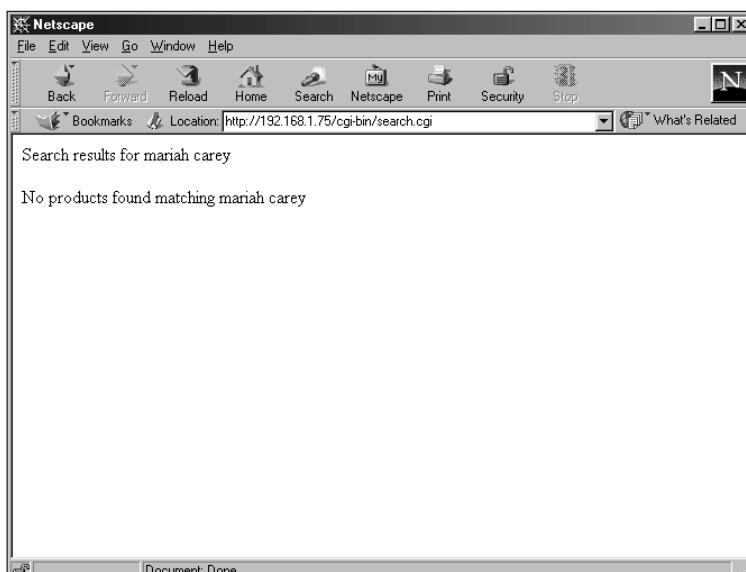
**Figure 15-54:** Results from the simple search

The more complicated search uses an AND if both the product name and artist are filled in. A sample result is shown in Figure 15-55.



**Figure 15-55:** The full search page in action

Finally, if no results are found, that notification is sent to the visitor as well, as shown in Figure 15-56.



**Figure 15-56:** The page when no results are found



The programs contained in this section are available on the CD-ROM.

## Present and future expansion

The ecommerce site has a start. It's nowhere near ready to go online and take orders. A shopping-cart CGI must be built, as well as more robust inventory capabilities. Using a combination of cookies, knowledge of Perl, and the ideas in this chapter, it shouldn't be too much of a stretch to take the ecommerce site to the next step.

## Summary

The Perl DBI is a generic interface used by many types of RDBMS to enable Perl programs to work with databases. MySQL has a database driver (DBD) to work with the DBI and enable the programmer to write powerful MySQL-enabled Perl programs.

- ◆ Both the DBI and the DBD for MySQL can be obtained at your nearest CPAN mirror or at <http://www.cpan.org>.
- ◆ The DBI takes advantage of handles to enable the developer to communicate with a database server. There are driver handles such as MySQL, database handles for connecting to the database server, and statement handles for working with SQL statements.
- ◆ The developer using the DBI communicates with the database using an object-oriented approach. Database handles are created manually by the user and can be destroyed by the user or automatically by Perl.
- ◆ The DBI also includes configurable error checking. By default, error checking is automatic. The programmer can control whether error checking is manual, automatic, or a combination of both even within the same program.
- ◆ The DBI includes many functions for working with databases, not just MySQL. These include functions to retrieve data such as `fetchrow`, `fetchrow_array`, and others.
- ◆ The DBI enables the Perl programmer to combine the power of Perl with the features of MySQL to make applications that run from the command line or in a CGI for the Web.



# PHP Development

**A** few years back, I devoted weeks to learning the Perl-DBI interface to MySQL so I could create MySQL-Perl applications for use in places other than the Web. When I did start writing Web-based applications, I was so immersed in the DBI that I neglected to look at other MySQL development languages for the Web; I had confidence in Perl as a powerful, stable development language.

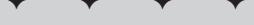
Then one of my good friends told me I should be using yet another language—PHP. Even though I had spent a long time learning the DBI, I dove into PHP—an easy and powerful development language in its own right.

Why learn PHP? This is a valid question. If you don't need to write Web-based applications for MySQL, then PHP may be of limited usefulness for you. If, however, you do write Web-based applications and need them to interact with MySQL, PHP could be just what you're looking for. PHP is extremely useful for interacting with a MySQL database, is somewhat similar to Perl, and (dare I say) is somewhat intuitive.

This chapter examines how to install PHP and make it work with MySQL. I also cover some basic PHP concepts, as well as PHP-MySQL functions. The chapter concludes with a few example applications. (They're a little off the beaten track—no Guestbook application examples!)

## PHP Installation

Unfortunately, installing PHP is not nearly as easy as installing the Perl DBI and MySQL DBD. However, the developers of PHP have taken great pains with their documentation; it's some of the best I've ever seen. This includes documentation of the installation software, as well as further coverage on their Web site, <http://www.php.net>.



### In This Chapter

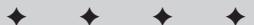
Installing PHP

Getting down to brass tacks with PHP

Configuring PHP MySQL

Listing PHP MySQL functions

Building MySQL-enabled applications with PHP



This section concentrates on installing PHP on a Linux system, using the standard process based on `configure` and `make` commands. Your distribution of Linux may have a package-management tool, in which case you may already have a compiled version of PHP and Apache to work with. In addition, you may already have PHP installed, but it may not be MySQL-enabled. If such is the case, you'll need to reinstall a MySQL-enabled version of PHP. Finally, you'll probably have to reconfigure your Web server to work with PHP, so the chapter covers configuring Apache (the standard Linux Web-server software) with PHP.

## What you need for installation

To install a MySQL-enabled version of PHP, you need three essential ingredients on hand:

- ◆ the PHP software itself
- ◆ the source code for Apache (or whatever Web server you're running)
- ◆ the MySQL client libraries

First, find out whether you already have PHP installed for use with Apache (and whether it's enabled for MySQL). On the Web server, type the following command:

```
httpd -l
```

Look for a line similar to this one:

```
mod_php4.c
```

If you see that line, congratulations — PHP is probably already installed and enabled on your Web server. Alternatively, look for lines like these:

```
Compiled-in modules:  
http_core.c  
mod_so.c
```

If you see those lines, then your server is configured to load dynamic modules — and you may have PHP support available.

Even if you have PHP installed, it may not be MySQL-enabled. To test an existing installation of PHP — and simultaneously check it for MySQL support — you should build a test PHP page. Simply create a regular file, save it with the filename `test.php`, and place it in the public `html` or `htdocs` folder, just as you would any page. The file itself needs no more than the following contents:

```
<?php  
phpinfo()  
?>
```

If everything is configured correctly, you should see a page similar to the one in Figure 16-1.



**Figure 16-1:** A server with PHP enabled and configured correctly

If, for whatever reason, the page does not come up, there is probably something wrong with your PHP configuration. Don't worry! I walk through the installation of PHP in this chapter; you can reconfigure as part of the installation process.

Scroll down in the PHP information page and look for the section on MySQL, as shown in Figure 16-2.

In the example in Figure 16-2, MySQL is enabled with PHP. If your page looks similar, you can skip the sections of this chapter concerned with installing and configuring PHP for use with MySQL.

If PHP is installed on your system but MySQL is not enabled, you'll want to reinstall PHP to enable MySQL.

## Where to get the software

The main distribution site for PHP is <http://www.php.net>. I've also included PHP on the CD-ROM with this book (the PHP Web site probably has a newer version).



The CD-ROM with this book includes the latest version of PHP available as of press time. This version works with the examples given in the book.

The screenshot shows a Netscape browser window displaying the 'phpinfo()' output. The title bar reads 'phpinfo() - Netscape'. The main content area is titled 'mysql'. It contains two tables. The first table, 'MySQL Support', has columns 'Directive' and 'Local Value' and lists various MySQL configuration settings. The second table, 'Directive', has columns 'Directive', 'Local Value', and 'Master Value' and lists specific MySQL directives. Both tables have a header row with bolded column names.

| Directive              | Local Value | Master Value |
|------------------------|-------------|--------------|
| mysql.allow_persistent | On          | On           |
| mysql.default_host     | no value    | no value     |
| mysql.default_password | no value    | no value     |
| mysql.default_port     | no value    | no value     |
| mysql.default_socket   | no value    | no value     |
| mysql.default_user     | no value    | no value     |
| mysql.max_links        | Unlimited   | Unlimited    |

Figure 16-2: The MySQL section of the PHP information page

## Installing PHP on a Linux system

Whether this is your first time installing PHP or a reinstallation (to enable MySQL on a system that already has PHP installed), this section can help. As a prerequisite, you should already have MySQL installed—including the libraries for MySQL. In addition, you should have a Web server running.

**Note**

This section examines the installation of PHP with Apache as the Web server software. If your Web server is not Apache, refer to the documentation included with your Web server—and with PHP itself—for help with installation.

### Installing and configuring PHP

The steps for installing and configuring PHP on a Linux system (with Apache as the Web server) are as follows:

1. Unpack the PHP archive by issuing the following command:

```
tar -zxvf php-<version>.tgz
```

For example, Figure 16-3 shows PHP unpacked to its default directory.

```
tar -zxvf php-4.1.1.tgz | more
php-4 1 ./build/
php-4 1 ./build/buildfile
php-4 1 ./build/build.mk
php-4 1 ./build/build2.mk
php-4 1 ./build/buildcheck.sh
php-4 1 ./build/dynlib.mk
php-4 1 ./build/fastgen.sh
php-4 1 ./build/genif.sh
php-4 1 ./build/library.mk
php-4 1 ./build/libtlib.mk
php-4 1 ./build/mkdep.awk
php-4 1 ./build/print_include.awk
php-4 1 ./build/program.mk
php-4 1 ./build/rules.mk
php-4 1 ./build/rules_common.mk
php-4 1 ./build/rules_pear.mk
php-4 1 ./build/shroot
php-4 1 ./build/sysv_makefile
php-4 1 ./configure
php-4 1 ./CODING_STANDARDS
php-4 1 ./CREDITS
php-4 1 ./ltmain.sh
php-4 1 ./ChangeLog_1999.gz
php-4 1 ./ChangeLog_2000.gz
php-4 1 ./EXTENSIONS
php-4 1 ./INSTALL
php-4 1 ./LICENSE
php-4 1 ./Makefile.in
php-4 1 ./NEWS
php-4 1 ./README.CVS-RULES
php-4 1 ./README_EXTENSIONS
php-4 1 ./README_EXT_SKEL
php-4 1 ./README_QNX
php-4 1 ./README_SELF-CONTAINED-EXTENSIONS
php-4 1 ./README_STREAMS
php-4 1 ./README_Zeus
php-4 1 ./RELEASE_PROCESS
[More...]
```

**Figure 16-3:** Unpacking the PHP archive

**2.** Change into the newly created PHP directory.

**Note**

If you have an existing PHP source directory that you've previously configured from, be sure to either remove the directory or at remove the config.cache file contained therein.

It is at this point where decisions must be made regarding your existing Apache installation as well as other options, you may want to enable with PHP. I'll show an example configuration that enables MySQL on an Apache server that uses Dynamic Shared Objects.

**3.** To configure PHP in the environment described in Step 2, type

```
./configure --with-mysql --with-apxs
```

You may receive an error message similar to that in Figure 16-4.

**4.** If you receive the error message shown in Figure 16-4, note what the message points out and respond accordingly. In this installation, I needed to add the path to the apxs module for Apache. First I needed to find it:

```
find / -name apxs
```

For the example, apxs is located in a couple of places; I chose the one in /usr/local/apache/bin/ (your location may be different).

```

MySQL
checking for working autoheader... found
checking for working makeinfo... found
Updated php_version.h
checking whether to enable maintainer-specific portions of Makefiles... no
checking host system type... i586-pc-linux-gnu
checking for gawk... gawk
checking for bison... bison -y
checking bison version... 1.27 (ok)
checking for gcc... gcc
checking whether the C compiler (gcc ) works... yes
checking whether the C compiler (gcc ) is a cross-compiler... no
checking whether we are using GNU C... yes
checking whether gcc accepts -g... yes
checking how to run the C preprocessor... gcc -E
checking for AIX... no
checking for gcc option to accept ANSI C... none needed
checking for ranlib... ranlib
checking whether gcc and cc understand -c and -o together... yes
checking whether ln -s works... yes
checking for flex... flex
checking for yyparse in -lfl... yes
checking lex output file root... lex.yy
checking whether yytext is a pointer... yes
checking for working const... yes
checking for pthreads_cflags... -pthread
checking for pthreads_lib... 

Configuring SAPI modules
checking for AOLserver support... no
checking for Apache module support via DSO through APXS...
Sorry, I was not able to successfully run APXS. Possible reasons:
1. Perl is not installed;
2. Apache was not compiled with DSO support (--enable-module=so);
3. 'apxs' is not in your path. Try to use --with-apxs=/path/to/apxs
The output of apxs follows
./configure: apxs: command not found
configure: error: Aborting
mail '^php-4.1.1#'

```

**Figure 16-4:** An error that occurs during PHP configuration

- To tell the PHP configure script where it can find apxs, be sure to remove the existing config.cache file with the following code:

```
rm config.cache ; ./configure --with-mysql --with-apxs=/usr/local/apache/bin/apxs
```

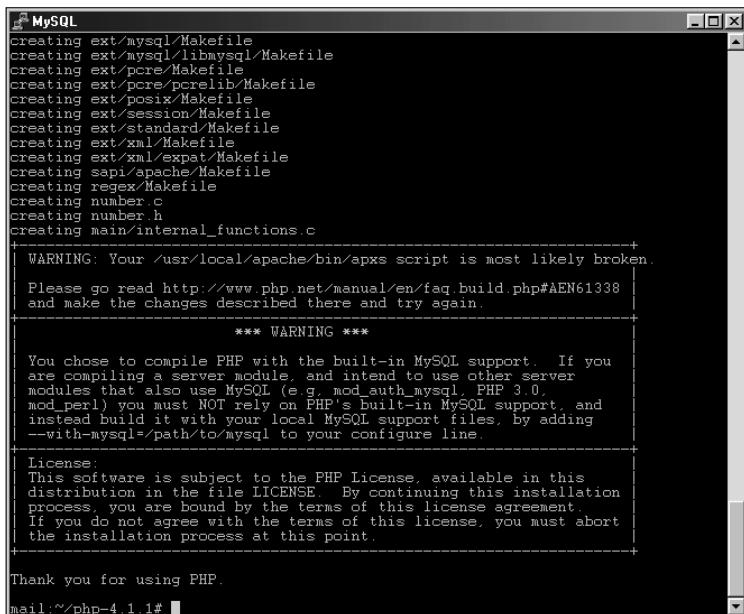
An error similar to the previous one can occur if the configure script can't find the necessary MySQL libraries. If that happens, you have two possible fixes:

- \* Add the path as part of the --with-mysql option.
- \* Add the path to /etc/ld.so.conf and run ldconfig. (I've had better success with this option.)

If the configure script runs successfully, congratulations! Although there's more to come, you now have a basic configuration in place to accommodate PHP. You may, however, receive one or more warnings when the configure script completes its run; a couple of these are shown in Figure 16-5.

- Continue the installation process by building the software; type the following command:

```
make
```



```
MySQL
creating ext/mysql/Makefile
creating ext/mysql/libmysql/Makefile
creating ext/pcre/Makefile
creating ext/pcre/pcrelib/Makefile
creating ext/posix/Makefile
creating ext/session/Makefile
creating ext/standard/Makefile
creating ext/xml/Makefile
creating ext/xml/expat/Makefile
creating sapi/apache/Makefile
creating regex/Makefile
creating number.c
creating number.h
creating main/internal_functions.c
+
WARNING: Your /usr/local/apache/bin/apxs script is most likely broken.
Please go read http://www.php.net/manual/en/faq.build.php#AEN61338
and make the changes described there and try again.
+
*** WARNING ***
You chose to compile PHP with the built-in MySQL support. If you
are compiling a server module, and intend to use other server
modules that also use MySQL (e.g., mod_auth_mysql, PHP 3.0,
mod_perl) you must NOT rely on PHP's built-in MySQL support, and
instead build it with your local MySQL support files, by adding
--with-mysql=/path/to/mysql to your configure line.
+
License:
This software is subject to the PHP License, available in this
distribution in the file LICENSE. By continuing this installation
process, you are bound by the terms of this license agreement.
If you do not agree with the terms of this license, you must abort
the installation process at this point.
+
Thank you for using PHP.
mail:~/php-4.1.1#
```

**Figure 16-5:** Some warnings produced by the PHP configure script

When you press Enter, the `make` process begins. How long it takes depends on the speed and resources available on your machine.

**Tip**

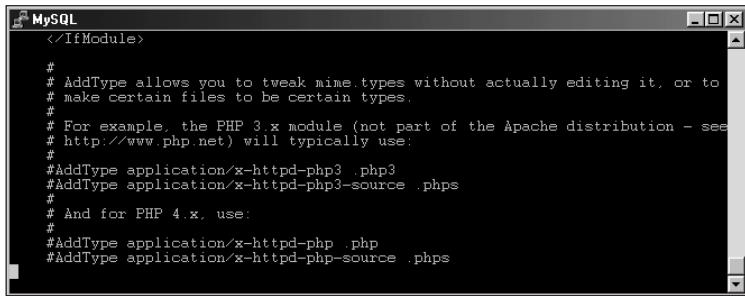
If the `make` process fails this time, don't worry. PHP installation can sometimes be difficult; often the build fails because a library is not found. Normally you can get good clues to what went wrong by closely examining the last few lines of code just before the point at which the build process died. For additional help, try the PHP Web site's section of search functions and FAQs. If you're getting error messages like those in Figure 16-5, chances are someone else has too—and there could be a simple fix.

If the `make` process is successful, congratulations!

**7. Install the software, using the following command:**

```
make install
```

Normally this is the final basic step in the build process. You're not done yet though. In particular, check inside your Apache Web server configuration file (usually called `httpd.conf`) for some lines like those shown in Figure 16-6.



```

</IfModule>
#
# AddType allows you to tweak mime.types without actually editing it, or to
# make certain files to be certain types.
#
# For example, the PHP 3.x module (not part of the Apache distribution - see
# http://www.php.net) will typically use:
#
#AddType application/x-httpd-php3 .php3
#AddType application/x-httpd-php3-source .phps
#
# And for PHP 4.x, use:
#
#AddType application/x-httpd-php .php
#AddType application/x-httpd-php-source .phps

```

**Figure 16-6:** Lines relating to PHP 4.x, as they appear in the Apache Web server configuration file (httpd.conf)

8. Uncomment the lines that relate to PHP 4.x by removing the pound sign (#) from in front of those lines.
9. Save the uncommented configuration file and then restart the Web server software.

**Tip**

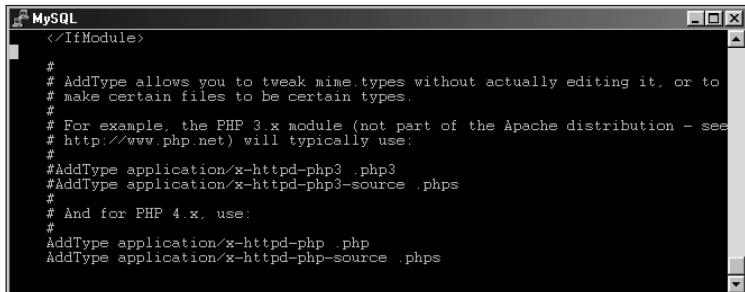
Truthfully, you could get by with just uncommenting the first line that mentions the .php extension.

The newly uncommented lines (which enable PHP when the Web server restarts) are shown in Figure 16-7.

**Note**

Don't forget to save the file and then restart the Web server for the changes to take effect. Simply restarting Apache will work, no need to reboot the entire machine; this is Linux!

10. Prepare to test your new configuration by creating a PHP file within the `htdocs` (or within a publicly available HTML directory) on your Web server.



```

</IfModule>
#
# AddType allows you to tweak mime.types without actually editing it, or to
# make certain files to be certain types.
#
# For example, the PHP 3.x module (not part of the Apache distribution - see
# http://www.php.net) will typically use:
#
#AddType application/x-httpd-php3 .php3
#AddType application/x-httpd-php3-source .phps
#
# And for PHP 4.x, use:
#
#AddType application/x-httpd-php .php
#AddType application/x-httpd-php-source .phps

```

**Figure 16-7:** Uncommenting the PHP-related lines in httpd.conf enables PHP in the Apache Web server.

For example, you could create a file called `test.php` with the following contents:

```
<?php  
phpinfo()  
?>
```

11. Point your Web browser to your test page (which should resemble Figure 16-8) and scroll down to the MySQL section to verify that MySQL is enabled.

If the MySQL section in your test page indicates a successful PHP installation, congratulations! You can now skip ahead and start building MySQL-enabled PHP applications.

Even after a hassle-free installation process, however, two common errors can crop up:

- The page shows up on-screen as source code (as shown in Figure 16-9).
- The browser prompts you to Save or Open the file (it shouldn't).

If either of these errors happens to you, follow the troubleshooting steps given here (which use Figure 16-9 as an example).

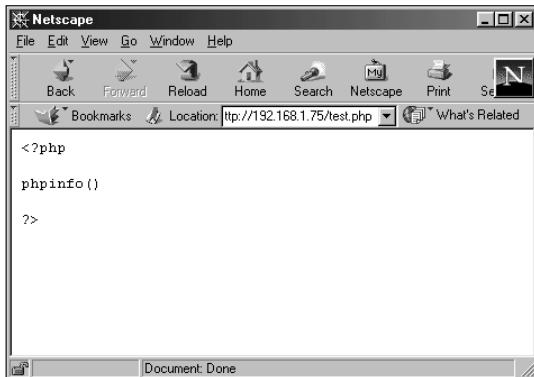
The screenshot shows a Netscape browser window with the title "phpinfo() - Netscape". The URL in the address bar is "http://192.168.1.75/test.php". The page content is titled "mysql". It displays two tables related to MySQL support.

| MySQL Support           |                 | enabled |
|-------------------------|-----------------|---------|
| Active Persistent Links | 0               |         |
| Active Links            | 0               |         |
| Client API version      | 3.23.39         |         |
| MYSQL_MODULE_TYPE       | builtin         |         |
| MYSQL_SOCKET            | /tmp/mysql.sock |         |
| MYSQL_INCLUDE           |                 |         |
| MYSQL_LIBS              |                 |         |

| Directive              | Local Value | Master Value |
|------------------------|-------------|--------------|
| mysql.allow_persistent | On          | On           |
| mysql.default_host     | no value    | no value     |
| mysql.default_password | no value    | no value     |
| mysql.default_port     | no value    | no value     |
| mysql.default_socket   | no value    | no value     |
| mysql.default_user     | no value    | no value     |
| mysql.max_links        | Unlimited   | Unlimited    |
| mysql.max_persistent   | Unlimited   | Unlimited    |

**Figure 16-8:** A successful PHP installation as shown by the MySQL section of the `phpinfo()` function



**Figure 16-9:** A common error that can occur after the installation process itself went smoothly

### Troubleshooting a page that shows up as source code

Follow these steps to correct the error depicted in Figure 16-9:

1. Check that you actually enabled PHP in the `httpd.conf` configuration file for Apache (by uncommenting the PHP-related lines in the configuration file).
2. Check the line that normally enables PHP to determine whether it's enclosed in a `<Virtual>` directive. If it is, then it's effectively hidden from the main configuration. If it is inside of a virtual directive, you should move the line outside of the `<Virtual>` directive so that it is applied at the main server level.
3. Make sure you restarted the Web server software; examine any logfiles created when it restarted.
4. Another possibility is that the configuration file isn't the one being read. Search the computer for other configuration files (`find / -name "httpd.conf"`). One those files may be the actual configuration file for Apache on your server and you'll need to edit that file.
5. Check the Web server software itself to determine whether it has PHP enabled.

I built the example as a dynamic module; if you are working with a dynamic module, make sure that when you run

```
httpd -l
```

you see lines similar to these:

```
Compiled-in modules:  
http_core.c  
mod_so.c
```

**Note**

If a number of other modules are compiled in the dynamic module, chances are you'll have recompile Apache. Although Apache installation is outside the scope of this book, Apache does include a document with its installation files that can help: `README.configure`. This document contains detailed instructions for PHP installation. Also, don't forget to check the PHP and Apache Web sites; if you've encountered a problem, someone may have already tackled it.

6. Copy the file `<php-source-dir>/php.ini-dist` to the PHP install directory and name it `php.ini`.

The `phpinfo()` function tells you where to put the configuration file within your server's file system. Usually `/usr/local/lib` is the correct place, but your installation may demand a different location (such as the `/etc` directory).

7. If you already have a `php.ini` installed, avoid overwriting it; use the `-i` option with the `cp` command, as follows:

```
cp -i php.ini-dist /usr/local/lib/php.ini
```

The configuration of this file is now complete; your PHP capability should be ready to use.

## Brass Tacks: PHP Essentials

On the assumption that it's wise to learn to walk before running or jumping (at least where the use of PHP with MySQL is concerned) this section presents some basics of PHP. Though powerful, PHP is relatively simple to learn, regardless of previous programming experience. (Naturally such experience is helpful, especially if you've programmed with a language such as Perl).

This section demonstrates essential PHP concepts by creating a simple Web page or two. Though by no means meant as a complete examination of PHP (or an exhaustive catalog of its basics), the section lays the groundwork for working with the language.

**Tip**

For quick access to more detailed information on PHP, refer to <http://www.php.net>.

### A PHP Web page

PHP can be used to build complicated applications that do complex calculations, work with the file system, obtain and work with data from forms, and manipulate data inside many database systems. PHP can also be an especially powerful tool for creating and operating Web pages; a PHP-enabled Web page can perform functions and calculations dispersed throughout the HTML code that makes up the page.

PHP code can be enclosed within an HTML page, or PHP can produce the HTML itself. Regardless of the method, PHP sections within a file are enclosed like this:

```
<?php  
    php code  
?>
```

These tags, along with the code between them, indicate to the Web server that it must parse the indicated statements specifically as PHP. For example, the following code snippet creates a basic page (Figure 16-10 shows the result):

```
<?php  
print "<html>\n";  
print "This is a basic page<P>\n";  
print "</html>";  
?>
```

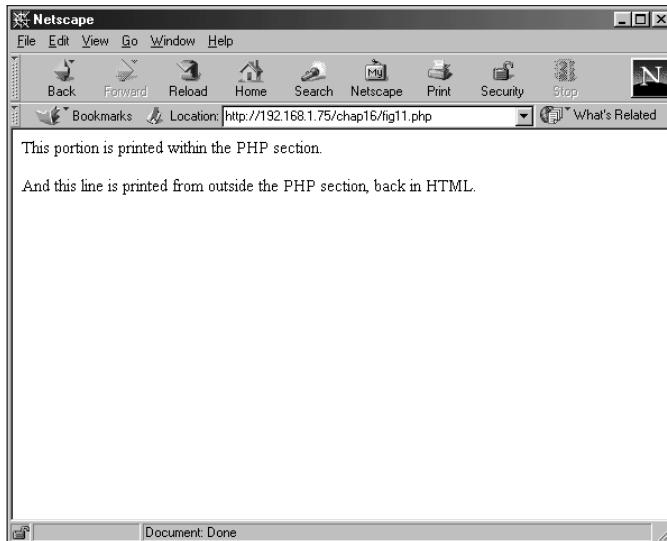
In Figure 16-11, you can see an example of interwoven PHP and HTML. The following code snippet produces the results depicted in the figure:

```
<?php  
  
print "<html>";  
print "This portion is printed within the PHP section.<P>\n";  
  
?>  
  
<P>  
And this line is printed from outside the PHP section, back in  
HTML.<P>  
  
<?php  
  
print "</html>";  
  
?>
```

Here a PHP section begins the code, concludes its own operation, and makes way for regular HTML. The entire code snippet ends with another section of PHP. Figure 16-11 shows the result.



**Figure 16-10:** The results of the code shown to create HTML within PHP code



**Figure 16-11:** An example of PHP and HTML interwoven

## PHP and forms

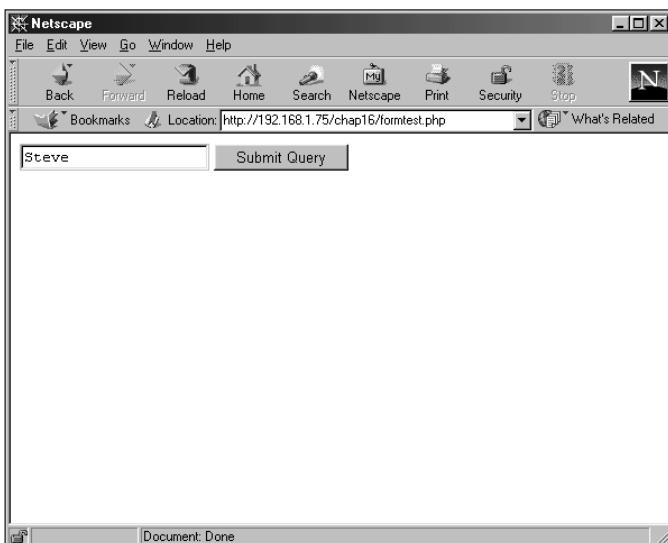
As stated previously, PHP is great for working with data gathered from Web forms. Because you can combine HTML and PHP easily, the form data can be manipulated and then a result page served without ever leaving the same PHP program.

Variables in PHP do not have to be explicitly declared and are called for the most part with the dollar sign (\$). This includes arrays and marks a noticeable difference from Perl where arrays are indicated with the *at* symbol (@).

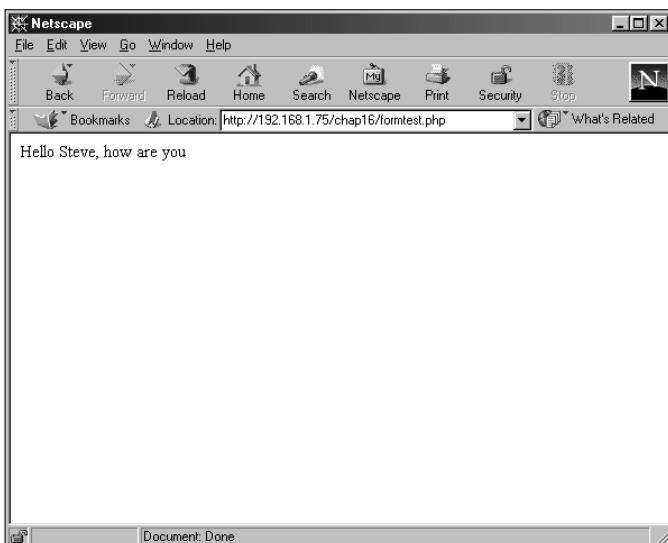
Web forms are easily handled with PHP. Simply create the form as you would any HTML Web form, calling a PHP page as the action. Often the same page that produces the form is also the action of the form. For example, consider the following code:

```
<?php
if (isset($name_submit) && ($name))
{
    print "Hello $name, how are you<P>\n";
}
else {
?>
    <form action=formtest.php method=post>
    <input type=text name=name length=20>
    <input type=submit name=name_submit>
    </form>
<?php
}
?>
```

The form and the results are shown in Figures 16-12 and 16-13.



**Figure 16-12:** The simple form created with the code example in PHP



**Figure 16-13:** The results when a name is entered into the form

If no name is entered into the form, the code simply regenerates the form.

The simplicity with which this scenario is handled is just the tip of the iceberg when it comes to building dynamic pages with PHP. I am a Perl diehard, but producing the same result in Perl simply would not be as easy or elegant.

The rest of this chapter looks at functions and examples in PHP that are especially relevant to MySQL—starting with PHP configuration.

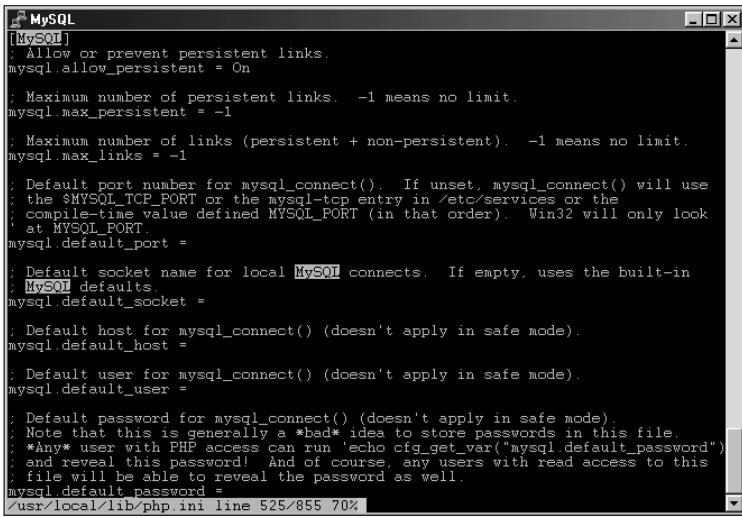
## PHP MySQL Configuration

PHP doesn't require much configuration for it to work great with MySQL. The relevant configuration is contained in the `php.ini` file usually located in `/usr/local/lib` or `/etc`. This section examines those configuration options.

### Configuration settings

The configuration file for PHP (`php.ini`) is usually located in the `/usr/local/lib` directory, but it may be in `/etc` or another location on your file system. The `phpinfo()` function will tell you where the file is located. See the previous section for information on how to use the `phpinfo()` function in a simple page.

The PHP configuration file has a section devoted to MySQL, as Figure 16-14 illustrates.



```

[MySQL]
; Allow or prevent persistent links.
mysql.allow_persistent = On

; Maximum number of persistent links. -1 means no limit.
mysql.max_persistent = -1

; Maximum number of links (persistent + non-persistent). -1 means no limit.
mysql.max_links = -1

; Default port number for mysql_connect(). If unset, mysql_connect() will use
; the $MYSQL_TCP_PORT or the mysql-tcp entry in /etc/services or the
; compile-time value defined MYSQL_PORT (in that order). Win32 will only look
; at MYSQL_PORT.
mysql.default_port =

; Default socket name for local MySQL connects. If empty, uses the built-in
; MySQL defaults.
mysql.default_socket =

; Default host for mysql_connect() (doesn't apply in safe mode).
mysql.default_host =

; Default user for mysql_connect() (doesn't apply in safe mode).
mysql.default_user =

; Default password for mysql_connect() (doesn't apply in safe mode).
; Note that this is generally a *bad* idea to store passwords in this file.
; *Any* user with PHP access can run 'echo cfg_get_var("mysql.default_password")'
; and reveal this password! And of course, any users with read access to this
; file will be able to reveal the password as well.
mysql.default_password =
/usr/local/lib/php.ini line 525/855 70%

```

**Figure 16-14:** The MySQL section of the php.ini configuration file

The functions and their definitions are listed in Table 16-1.

**Table 16-1**  
**MySQL Configuration Options for PHP**

| <b>Option</b>                       | <b>Definition</b>  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <code>mysql.allow_persistent</code> | Enables connections to stay active. Default On.                    |
| <code>mysql.max_persistent</code>   | Maximum number of default connections. Default unlimited (-1).     |
| <code>mysql.max_links</code>        | Maximum number of total connections. Default unlimited (-1).       |
| <code>mysql.default_port</code>     | Port to connect to the server on. Default blank, read from config. |
| <code>mysql.default_socket</code>   | Socket to connect to server on. Default blank, read from config.   |
| <code>mysql.default_host</code>     | Sets the host to connect to. Default blank.                        |
| <code>mysql.default_user</code>     | Sets the user to connect as. Default blank.                        |
| <code>mysql.default_password</code> | Set a global password to authenticate as. Default blank.           |

The settings contained in the `php.ini` do not need to be set for PHP to work with MySQL.



For security reasons, I strongly recommend against setting the user or password *inside* the `php.ini`. Anyone with read access to the file (or who can write a PHP script and get at the server variables) can determine the settings.

## PHP MySQL Functions

PHP includes a large number of built-in functions—some of which can take the place of existing MySQL functions or statements to enhance or streamline operations. This section examines some functions that accomplish these goals with MySQL and PHP, and provides examples.

### The functions

The best way to handle this abundance of MySQL-related functions in PHP is to list them in a table. Table 16-2 does so.

**Table 16-2  
PHP MySQL Functions**

| <b>Function</b>                   | <b>Definition</b>  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| <code>mysql_affected_rows</code>  | Returns number of rows affected by a non-SELECT statement. |
| <code>mysql_change_user</code>    | Changes the user currently logged in to the program.       |
| <code>mysql_close</code>          | Closes the connection to the MySQL server.                 |
| <code>mysql_connect</code>        | Connects to the MySQL server.                              |
| <code>mysql_create_db</code>      | Creates a MySQL database.                                  |
| <code>mysql_data_seek</code>      | Moves the internal pointer one row.                        |
| <code>mysql_db_name</code>        | Returns the name of the current database.                  |
| <code>mysql_db_query</code>       | Issues a query to the database.                            |
| <code>mysql_drop_db</code>        | Drops or deletes a database.                               |
| <code>mysql_errno</code>          | Returns the error number of the current error message.     |
| <code>mysql_error</code>          | Returns the text for the current error message.            |
| <code>.mysql_escape_string</code> | Takes a string and returns a MySQL-safe quoted string.     |

*Continued*

**Table 16-2 (Continued)**

| <b>Function</b>                     | <b>Definition</b>  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <code>mysql_fetch_array</code>      | Returns an array that can be numerical and/or associative.                                 |
| <code>mysql_fetch_assoc</code>      | Returns an associative array (similar to the <code>fetchrow_array</code> command in Perl). |
| <code>mysql_fetch_field</code>      | Returns an object associated with a column.  |
| <code>mysql_fetch_lengths</code>    | Returns the length of the result set.  |
| <code>mysql_fetch_object</code>     | Returns an entire row as an object.  |
| <code>mysql_fetch_row</code>        | Returns a row of the result set.   |
| <code>mysql_field_flags</code>      | Returns the flags from a result set.   |
| <code>mysql_field_name</code>       | Returns the field name of a result set.  |
| <code>mysql_field_len</code>        | Returns length of the field.   |
| <code>mysql_field_seek</code>       | Moves the pointer of the result set.   |
| <code>mysql_field_table</code>      | Returns the name of the table associated with the field.                                   |
| <code>mysql_field_type</code>       | Returns column type.   |
| <code>mysql_free_result</code>      | Clears the results, empties the memory associated with them.                               |
| <code>mysql_get_client_info</code>  | Returns information on the client connection.  |
| <code>mysql_get_host_info</code>    | Returns information on the MySQL host.   |
| <code>mysql_get_proto_info</code>   | Returns information on the MySQL protocol version.   |
| <code>mysql_get_server_info</code>  | Returns information on the MySQL server itself.  |
| <code>mysql_insert_id</code>        | Returns the ID of a column associated with the last <code>INSERT</code> statement.         |
| <code>mysql_list_dbs</code>         | Returns a list of available databases.   |
| <code>mysql_list_fields</code>      | Returns a list of available fields.  |
| <code>mysql_list_tables</code>      | Returns a list of tables available within a database.                                      |
| <code>mysql_num_fields</code>       | Returns the number of fields in a given table.   |
| <code>mysql_num_rows</code>         | Returns the number of rows in a result set.  |
| <code>mysql_pconnect</code>         | Creates a persistent connection to the server.   |
| <code>mysql_query</code>            | Issues a query.  |
| <code>mysql_result</code>           | Returns the result set.  |
| <code>mysql_select_db</code>        | Connects to a given database within a server.  |
| <code>mysql_tablename</code>        | Returns the table name.  |
| <code>mysql_unbuffered_query</code> | Sends a query without regard for return values.  |

As I stated, quite a few of the numerous functions are substitutes for MySQL statements—for example, `mysql_list_dbs` replaces `SHOW DATABASES`. I'll use many of these functions in the code examples in upcoming sections.

## Connecting to MySQL with PHP

It's finally time to build the first PHP MySQL program of the chapter—though I suppose the small example page you built with the `phpinfo()` function counts a little. So this will be the second PHP MySQL program but the first one where you will actively connect to MySQL.

You can connect to MySQL by using the `mysql_connect()` function; you terminate the connection with the `mysql_close()` function. Like the Perl DBI, the `mysql_connect` function requires some parameters for connecting.

**Note**

You can specify some connection parameters within the `php.ini` configuration file.

The syntax for the `mysql_connect()` function is as follows:

```
mysql_connect (host, username, password)
```

Consider this example:

```
$dbconn = mysql_connect("localhost", "suehring", "evh5150");
```

As you would expect, you can set the values of host, username, and password to variables:

```
$host = "localhost";
$username = "suehring";
$password = "evh5150";
$dbconn = mysql_connect($host, $username, $password);
```

Once the connection is made, statements are issued or another function is used. Unlike Perl, PHP does not use the concept of handles for working with MySQL. Therefore, statements can be sent simply through the `mysql_query()` function and retrieved through one of the fetch functions.

### Protecting PHP authentication information

A significant security issue with PHP is storage of the authentication information for MySQL. PHP puts authentication information in the PHP file—where it's readable by anyone on the Web server. One way around this potential security hole is to place authentication information inside a *function*, in a file separate from the PHP program being called by the Web server. The file containing the function must be readable by the user running the Web server, but should not be world-readable.

For example, suppose I create a simple PHP file called dbconnect.php, place it in a directory that the Web server can access, and use it for executing PHP files. The file's entire contents look like this:

```
<?php  
  
$host = "localhost";  
$username = "suehring";  
$password = "evh5150";  
  
?>
```

The file is owned by the user account that the Web server runs as (username nobody), and only that user has read-write (rw) access. The Web server can read the contents of the file but no other users can (not even if they're on the same server).

Altering the small connection commands I have given here, I use the PHP include() function. The contents of the file included will be available for the PHP script to execute. The code that uses the function looks like this:

```
include("/usr/local/apache/htdocs/chap16/dbconnect.php");  
  
$dbconn = mysql_connect($host,$username,$password) or die  
("Cannot connect to database server");
```

Examination of the code reveals the include() function followed by the mysql\_connect() function. I've also used the die() function to add some error checking. If the connection cannot be made, an error message is returned and execution of the script terminates. The mysql\_connect() function is related to two other functions with complementary capabilities:

- ◆ mysql\_close() is the opposite of mysql\_connect(). You can use mysql\_close() to close or terminate a connection to a MySQL server. When a script completes its execution, however, its session terminates automatically; normally you don't have to use mysql\_close().
- ◆ mysql\_pconnect() opens a persistent connection to a MySQL server. This type of connection remains active even after the PHP script terminates.

## Selecting data from a MySQL database

The functions in Table 16-2 include a number of functions for issuing statements or performing various tasks on the MySQL server. Some of the functions replace MySQL functions such as those for creation of a database and listing databases and tables.

### **mysql\_select\_db and mysql\_query\_db**

Once a connection is made to the MySQL server, you can interact with a specific database by using the mysql\_select\_db() function, which takes the name of that

database as an argument. The `mysql_query_db()` function is a bit more direct; it sends a query to a specified database without using the `mysql_select_db()` function. The syntax for both statements is as follows:

```
mysql_select_db(<dbname>)
mysql_query_db(<dbname>, query)
```

### **mysql\_query**

The `mysql_query()` function sends queries and other statements to the MySQL server. To retrieve the results of such a query or statement, use a fetch function such as `mysql_fetch_array` or `mysql_fetch_row`. The resulting value(s) can then be parsed and worked with, like any other variables. Examples of `mysql_query` are shown throughout the rest of the chapter.

### **mysql\_fetch\_assoc**

The `mysql_fetch_assoc()` function is one method for retrieving the results of a MySQL query. Examine the following code:

```
<?php
include("/usr/local/apache/htdocs/chap16/dbconnect.php");

$dbconn = mysql_connect($host,$username,$password) or die
("Cannot connect to database server");

$db = mysql_select_db("mysql") or die ("Could not connect to
database\n");

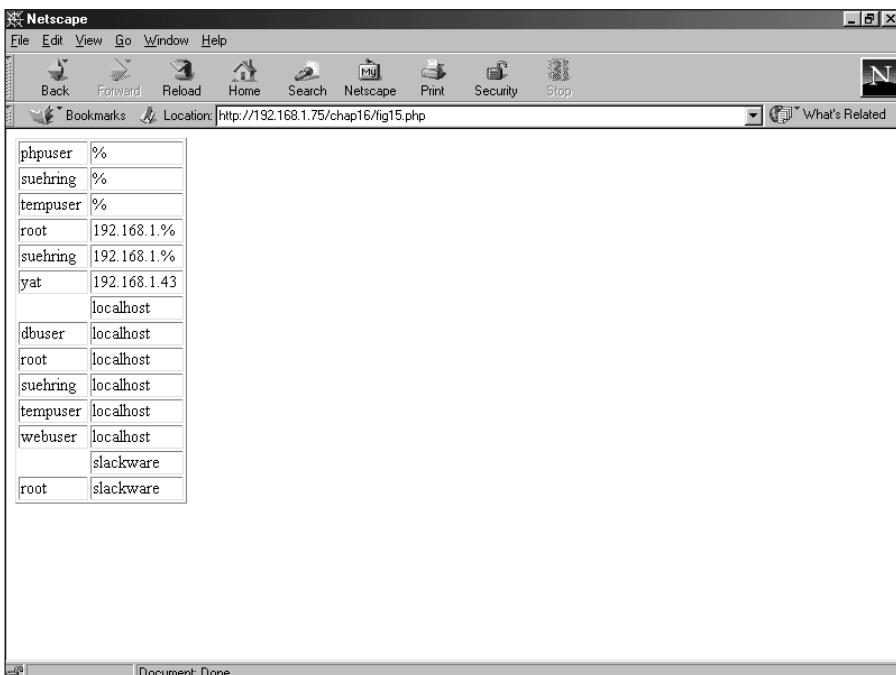
$result = mysql_query("select user,host from user");

print "<table border=1><P>\n";

while ($row = mysql_fetch_assoc($result)) {
    print "<tr><P>\n";
    while (list ($key,$value) = each($row)) {
        print "<td><P>\n";
        print "$value\n";
        print "</td><P>\n";
    }
    print "</tr><P>\n";
}
print "</table><P>\n";

?>
```

This code example connects to the MySQL server, selects the MySQL grants database, and then issues a `SELECT` statement. The results from the `SELECT` statement are printed in table form; Figure 16-15 shows the resulting output.



**Figure 16-15:** Results from the PHP code example

The code sample shown in this section uses `mysql_fetch_assoc` to get the results from the query in an associative array. Then, by using the PHP functions `list()` and `each()`, I can walk through the results row by row—and place them in a simple HTML table.

**Tip**

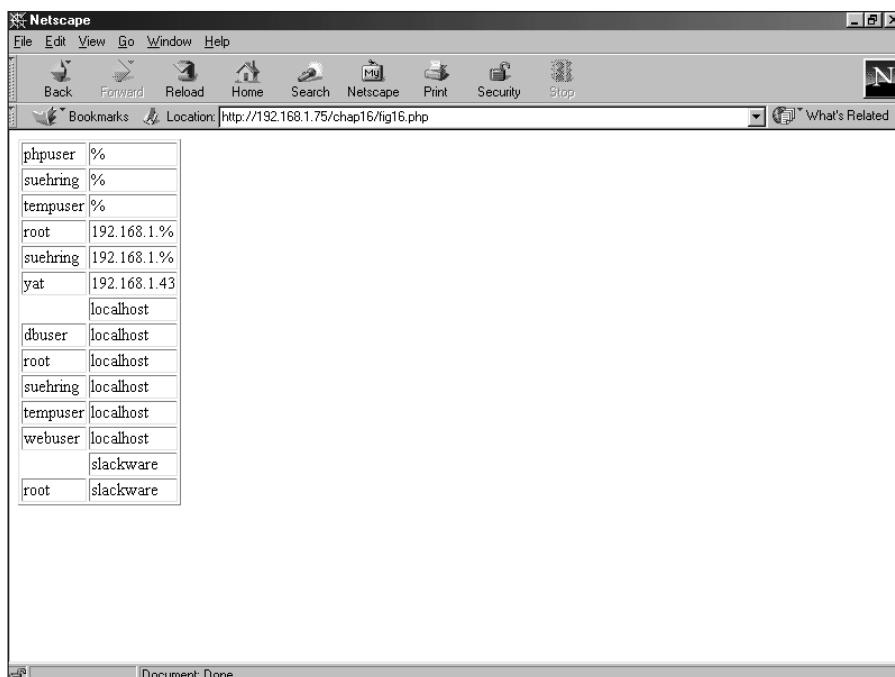
Using `mysql_fetch_assoc` is the same as using `mysql_fetch_array` with `MYSQL_ASSOC` as the second argument.

### **mysql\_fetch\_row**

I could use the `mysql_fetch_row` function for this query, but the results wouldn't go as nicely into a table format. The following code shows the program using `mysql_fetch_row`; Figure 16-16 shows the results.

```
<?php  
include("/usr/local/apache/htdocs/chap16/dbconnect.php");
```

```
$dbconn = mysql_connect($host,$username,$password) or die  
("Cannot connect to database server");  
  
$db = mysql_select_db("mysql") or die ("Could not connect to  
database\n");  
$result = mysql_query("select user,host from user");  
  
print "<table border=1><P>\n";  
  
while ($row = mysql_fetch_row($result)) {  
    print "<tr><P>\n";  
    print "<td>$row[0]</td><P>\n";  
    print "<td>$row[1]</td><P>\n";  
    print "</tr><P>\n";  
}  
  
print "</table><P>\n";  
  
?>
```



**Figure 16-16:** Using mysql\_fetch\_row to retrieve the results from a query

### **mysql\_num\_rows**

It is sometimes useful to find out the number of rows returned by a MySQL query. The `mysql_num_rows` function is simply called with the result set as the argument. `mysql_num_rows()` only works with SELECT statements. The function doesn't work with other SQL statements such as INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE and so forth, as in the following example:

```
$num = mysql_num_rows($dbconn);
```



#### Note

The argument for `mysql_num_rows()` is the database connection identifier. In the examples I've shown, I've used the variable name `$dbconn` for the function call for `mysql_connect()`.

## **Inserting and updating data in MySQL**

Inserts and other statements are performed just like SELECT statements, using the `mysql_query()` function. For example, to add a row, the syntax is simple:

```
<?php  
include("/usr/local/apache/htdocs/chap16/dbconnect.php");  
  
$dbconn = mysql_connect($host,$username,$password) or die  
("Cannot connect to database server");  
  
$db = mysql_select_db("ecommerce") or die ("Could not connect  
to database\n");  
  
$result = mysql_query("INSERT INTO customer VALUES  
('suehring@ngermen.com','Steve','Suehring','4 Main  
St.',','','54481','715','555-1212')") or die ("Could not execute  
insert\n");  
  
?>
```

### **mysql\_affected\_rows**

The `mysql_affected_rows()` function serves to determine the number of rows affected by a non-SELECT operation such as an INSERT or a DELETE. Adding `mysql_affected_rows` to the previous application yields the following code example:

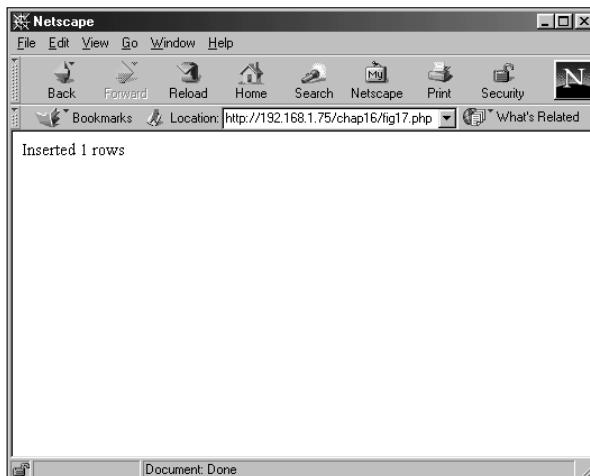
```
<?php  
include("/usr/local/apache/htdocs/chap16/dbconnect.php");
```

```
$dbconn = mysql_connect($host,$username,$password) or die  
("Cannot connect to database server");  
  
$db = mysql_select_db("ecommerce") or die ("Could not connect  
to database\n");  
  
$result = mysql_query("INSERT INTO customer VALUES  
('suehring@ngermen.com','Steve','Suehring','4 Main  
St.',','','54481','715','555-1212')") or die ("Could not execute  
insert\n");  
  
# Determine the number of inserted rows.  
$rows_inserted = mysql_affected_rows($dbconn);  
  
print "Inserted $rows_inserted rows\n";  
  
?>
```

The results from this modified code are shown in Figure 16-17.

**Note**

You run the `mysql_affected_rows()` function with the database connection name from `mysql_connect()`—instead of the result set—serving as the argument. This necessary substitution is a common source of confusion among first-time PHP programmers.



**Figure 16-17:** Using `mysql_affected_rows` to see how many rows were affected by the operation

# Building MySQL-Enabled Applications With PHP

The previous sections of this chapter provided examples of connecting to MySQL through PHP, along with some functions used to work with data and databases. This section builds on those examples to produce some PHP applications.

## A PHP version of the user manager

Chapter 15 builds a simple user-manager program in Perl; it queries the `users` table of the MySQL grants database. This section ports that same Perl application over to PHP. (I include the Perl code for reference here so you can easily see the changes needed to port it to PHP.) The Perl version of the code looks like this:

```
#!/usr/bin/perl

use DBI;
use CGI qw( :standard );

# This program looks up the hosts from which a
# given user is allowed to connect.
# Also looks up grants for a user, given the @ symbol in the
# argument list.

# Get the input from the form.
$user = param("user");

# Test to make sure the user entered a username.
if (! $user) {
    print "No user specified. Usage: <program>
<username><P>";
}

# Print an HTML header
print "Content-Type: text/html\n\n";

# Connect to the database
$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql:mysql:",suehring,'evh5150');

if (! $dbh) {
    print "Connection failed!!<P>";
    die();
}

# If there's an @ symbol then the user wants to look up
# grants.
if ($user =~ m/\/@/) {
```

```
($user,$inhost) = split(/@/, $user);

# Make sure the username and host are safe to
# send to MySQL.
$quoteduser = $dbh->quote($user);
$quotedhost = $dbh->quote($inhost);
&priv($user,$inhost);
}

else {
    # User wants to simply lookup the hosts allowed
    # for given username.

    # Make sure the username is safe to
    # send to MySQL.
    $quoteduser = $dbh->quote($user);

    $query = "SELECT host,user FROM user WHERE \
user = '$quoteduser'";
    $sth = $dbh->prepare($query);
    $sth->execute();

    while (($host,$username) = ( $sth->fetchrow_array() ) )
{
        if ($host eq '') {
            print "User $user has a \
blank host entry.<P>";
        }
        else {
            print "User $user is allowed \
to connect from: $host<P>";
        }
    }
}

sub priv
{

# This subroutine looks up the grants for the given
# user/host pair.

($user,$host) = (@_);

$query = "SHOW GRANTS FOR $user@$host";
$sth = $dbh->prepare($query);
$sth->execute();

while ($grant = ( $sth->fetchrow() ) ) {
    print "$grant<P>";
}
}
```

Porting the code to PHP is relatively easy because of some key similarities between Perl and PHP. The PHP version of the user-manager program code looks like this:

```
<?php

# This program looks up the hosts from which a
# given user is allowed to connect.
# Also looks up grants for a user, given the @ symbol in the
# argument list.

include("/usr/local/apache/htdocs/chap16/dbconnect.php");

if (! $submit) {
    echo "<form action=\"/chap16/fig18.php\" method=post>";
    echo "Enter Username: <input type=text name=user
length=20><P>\n";
    echo "<input type=submit name=submit><P>\n";
    echo "</form><P>\n";
    exit;
}

# Connect to the database
$dbconn = mysql_connect($host,$username,$password) or die
("Couldn't connect to database server");

$db = mysql_select_db("mysql");

# If there's an @ symbol then the user wants to look up
# grants.
if (ereg("@", $user)) {
    list ($user,$inhost) = split("\@", $user);

    # Make sure the username and host are safe to
    # send to MySQL.
    $quoteduser = mysql_escape_string($user);
    $quotedhost = mysql_escape_string($inhost);
    priv($user,$inhost);
}
else {
    # User wants to simply lookup the hosts allowed
    # for given username.

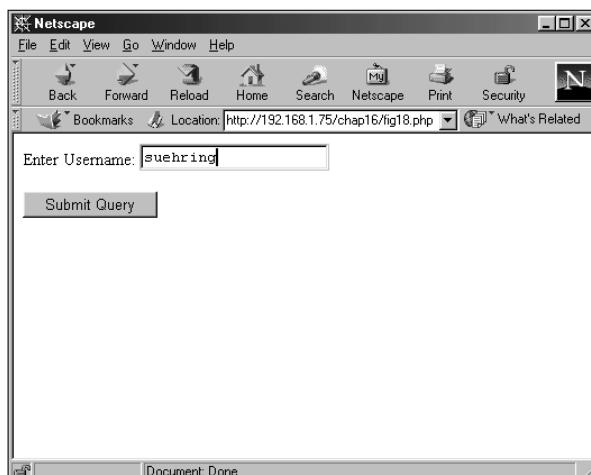
    # Make sure the username is safe to
    # send to MySQL.
    $quoteduser = mysql_escape_string($user);

    $query = "SELECT host,user FROM user WHERE user =
'$quoteduser'";
    $result = mysql_query($query) or die ("Cannot execute
query 1");

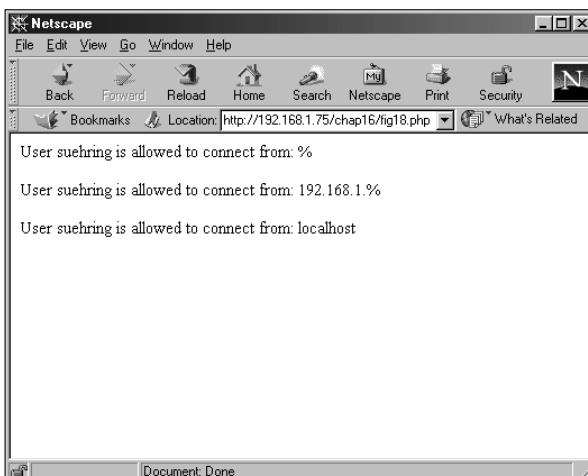
    while ( $row = mysql_fetch_array($result) ) {
```

```
        echo "User ". $row["user"] . " is allowed to  
connect from: " . $row["host"] . "<P>";  
    }  
}  
  
function priv($user,$inhost)  
{  
  
# This subroutine looks up the grants for the given  
# user/host pair.  
  
$query = "SHOW GRANTS FOR '$user'$inhost";  
$result = mysql_query($query);  
  
$i = 0;  
  
if (! $result) {  
    print "No such grant<P>\n";  
}  
else {  
    while ($grant = mysql_fetch_array($result) ) {  
        print "$grant[$i]<P>";  
        $i++;  
    }  
}  
}  
?  
?
```

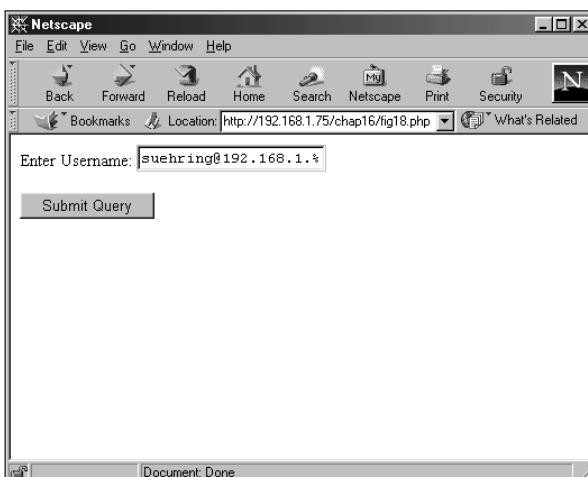
Figures 16-18 through 16-21 show snippets of the PHP version, along with example runs of the program.



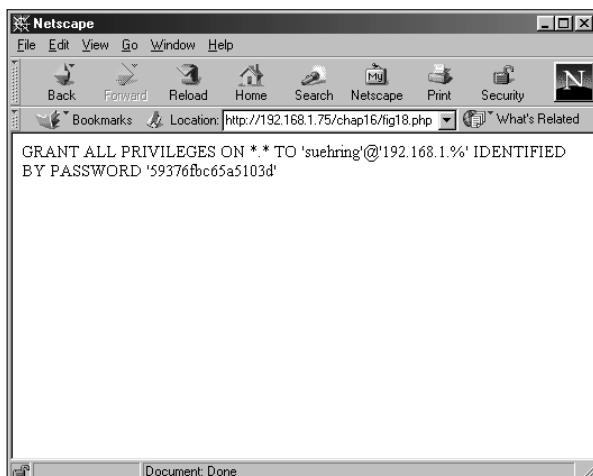
**Figure 16-18:** The form built by the PHP version of the user manager



**Figure 16-19:** The results with the PHP version of the user manager look the same as those from the Perl CGI version.



**Figure 16-20:** The privilege lookup with the PHP version of the user manager



**Figure 16-21:** Querying for privileges works the same with the PHP version as with the Perl CGI version.

### Examination of the PHP version of the user manager

Many of the user manager's basic functions are the same in both the Perl and PHP versions—in particular, functions such as `while` and `if`. Looking at the first bits of the PHP code, notice that the program no longer starts with `#!/usr/bin/perl` (which makes sense, since this PHP version isn't a Perl program). An `include` statement in the PHP code includes the database credentials; it's the last line of the following code snippet:

```
<?php  
  
# This program looks up the hosts from which a  
# given user is allowed to connect.  
# Also looks up grants for a user, given the @ symbol in the  
# argument list.  
  
include("/usr/local/apache/htdocs/chap16/dbconnect.php");
```

The next portion is a new addition to the PHP version that's unnecessary in the Perl CGI version. Because the initial page in the Perl version is a static HTML page, the CGI doesn't create any HTML. Although the same could be done with the PHP version (and technically with the Perl version as well), it's easier to handle creating the

HTML directly in the PHP program. In this instance, if the Submit button isn't clicked (as it would be when you initially visit the page, or if the user field were blank), the page is simply served again.

```
if ((! $submit) || (! $user)) {
    echo "<form action=\"/chap16/fig18.php\" method=post>";
    echo "Enter Username: <input type=text name=user
length=20><P>\n";
    echo "<input type=submit name=submit><P>\n";
    echo "</form><P>\n";
    exit;
}
```

The PHP method for connecting to the database server and database is next in the script:

```
# Connect to the database
$dbconn = mysql_connect($host,$username,$password) or die
("Couldn't connect to database server");

$db = mysql_select_db("mysql");
```

The next bit of code examines the value that was input, looking for an @ symbol (which would indicate that the query is looking for the grants—privileges—afforded a given user). Notice the use of the PHP ereg function to examine the \$user string variable. A PHP MySQL function introduced in this section—`mysql_escape_string()`—works somewhat like the `mysql_quote()` function in Perl.

The `mysql_escape_string()` function takes a string that was already input and makes it safe for use in a MySQL statement. The `mysql_quote()` function in Perl does the same thing, but it puts quotation marks around the string—which the `mysql_escape_string()` function in PHP does not. Therefore, to use `mysql_escape_string()`, put quotes around the string in your PHP MySQL statements. The following snippet is an example:

```
# If there's an @ symbol then the user wants to look up
# grants.
if (ereg("@", $user)) {
    list ($user,$inhost) = split("\@", $user);

    # Make sure the username and host are safe to
    # send to MySQL.
    $quoteduser = mysql_escape_string($user);
    $quotedhost = mysql_escape_string($inhost);
    priv($user,$inhost);
}
```

The next section is executed when no @ symbol is included from the form (hence, in effect, no grants are sought). The program queries for the already-input username and returns the result.

In addition to the functions used in this section, another method is possible for processing the returned results. It looks like this:

```
else {
    # User wants to simply lookup the hosts allowed
    # for given username.

    # Make sure the username is safe to
    # send to MySQL.
    $quoteduser = mysql_escape_string($user);

    $query = "SELECT host,user FROM user WHERE user =
'$quoteduser'";
    $result = mysql_query($query) or die ("Cannot execute
query 1");

    while ( $row = mysql_fetch_array($result) ) {
        echo "User ". $row["user"] . " is allowed to
connect from: " . $row["host"] . "<P>";
    }
}
```

The final section of the program is called when an @ symbol is included in the input that comes from the form:

```
function priv($user,$inhost)
{
    # This subroutine looks up the grants for the given
    # user/host pair.

$query = "SHOW GRANTS FOR '$user' '$inhost'";
$result = mysql_query($query);

$i = 0;

if (! $result) {
    print "No such grant<P>\n";
}
else {
    while ($grant = mysql_fetch_array($result) ) {
        print "$grant[$i]<P>";
        $i++;
    }
}
?>
```

In the code snippet just given, notice that PHP calls the function with the name function (whereas Perl uses sub to designate a user-defined function). The function also uses a different method for receiving the variables that are called with it.

Throughout the program, the persistent challenge is to keep track of both the similarities and the significant differences between Perl and PHP to avoid losing functionality.

## Cookies with no milk

*Cookies* are value-plus-parameter pairs stored in the HTTP header and sent to a Web agent (such as a browser) when retrieving an object—usually a Web page—from the Internet. They are commonly used to store user-related data (such as session identifiers) and can be set to expire at a point in the future determined by the site that sets and uses the cookie.

Although PHP includes functions for setting and easily retrieving cookies, it also includes other functions for setting and retrieving session identifiers; some of these don't use cookies. A developer can use either a cookie function or a session function in PHP to maintain state or authenticate users for Web pages.

There are probably endless methods for creating authentication mechanisms for Web sites and Web pages. This section examines one method for authenticating users that also sets a cookie with a session identifier. The approach that is specifically relevant to this book is to integrate the authentication mechanism with a MySQL database.

Once that integration is complete, visitors can enter a username and password. The credentials will be authenticated against data in a MySQL database. If the login is successful, a session ID and timestamp are recorded in the MySQL database. A cookie is sent to the user upon success, containing that same session ID and username (in encrypted form). When the user attempts to access another resource within the site, the user's cookie is examined and compared to the one in the database. If it's valid, the user is allowed to access the resource. In addition, the database includes a group function so resources can be limited by group (should the need arise).



### Note

No need to undertake full normalization of the database for this site. Since the site is intended for low usage, normalization would have little or no effect on performance.

The first step toward the authentication system is to create the database—in effect, a big table with some special features. The table for the authentication system has the following structure:

```
CREATE TABLE `user_table` (
  `user` varchar(20) NOT NULL default '',
  `pass` varchar(20) default NULL,
  `session` varchar(50) default NULL,
  `auth_group` varchar(20) default NULL,
  `timestamp` varchar(32) default NULL,
  PRIMARY KEY  (`user`)
```

Two main PHP scripts make up the authentication system: a sign-in program and a cookie-validation program. The sign-in program prints a form for username and password, and then sets the cookie. It looks like this:

```
<?php

# This program creates an authentication system
# using MySQL and cookies.

include("/usr/local/apache/htdocs/chap16/dbconnect.php");

if (!isset($submit)) {
    echo "<form action=\"/chap16/signin.php\" method=post>";
    echo "Enter Username: <input type=text name=user
length=20><P>\n";
    echo "Enter Password: <input type=password name=pass
length=20><P>\n";
    echo "<input type=submit name=submit><P>\n";
    echo "</form><P>\n";
    exit;
}
elseif (!isset($user)) {
    echo "Please enter username<P>\n";
    echo "<form action=\"/chap16/signin.php\" method=post>";
    echo "Enter Username: <input type=text name=user
length=20><P>\n";
    echo "Enter Password: <input type=password name=pass
length=20><P>\n";
    echo "<input type=submit name=submit><P>\n";
    echo "</form><P>\n";
    exit;
}
elseif (!isset($pass)) {
    echo "Please enter password<P>\n";
    echo "<form action=\"/chap16/signin.php\" method=post>";
    echo "Enter Username: <input type=text name=user
length=20><P>\n";
    echo "Enter Password: <input type=password name=pass
length=20><P>\n";
    echo "<input type=submit name=submit><P>\n";
    echo "</form><P>\n";
    exit;
}
else {
    # Connect to the database
    $dbconn = mysql_connect($host,$username,$password) or die
    ("Couldn't connect to database server");

    $db = mysql_select_db("auth");

    $quoteduser = mysql_escape_string($user);
    $quotedpass = mysql_escape_string($pass);
    authenticate($user,$pass);
```

```
}

function authenticate($user,$pass)
{

# This subroutine looks up the grants for the given
# user/host pair.

$query = "SELECT session FROM user_table WHERE user = '$user'
AND pass = password('$pass')";
$result = mysql_query($query) or die ("Query failed");
$num = mysql_num_rows($result);

if ($num == 0) {
    print "Username and/or password incorrect<P>\n";
    exit;
} else {
    $row = mysql_fetch_array($result);

    # Create a pseudo-random session id.
    srand((double)microtime())*99999999);
    $id = md5(rand(0,9999999));

    # Encrypt the username
    $encuser = md5($user);

    # Get rid of the result, so I can send another query
    mysql_free_result($result) or die ("An error was
encountered");

    $time = time();

    $query = "UPDATE user_table SET session = '$id',timestamp =
'$time' WHERE user = '$user'";
    $result = mysql_query($query) or die ("UPDATE failed!");

    setcookie("cookie_session","$id",time()+60,"/","",0);
    setcookie("cookie_user","$encuser",time()+60,"/","",0);

    print "You have been successfully logged in<P>";

}
} # End function authenticate

?>
```

Examination of the code reveals that many of the functions (and some of the logic) previously discussed in this chapter are incorporated into the program. A couple of snippets call for a closer look: One encrypts an otherwise-plaintext username before returning it to the browser; the other clears the memory associated with a result.

## Encrypting a username before returning it

In this section, after the username and password have been validated, I create a couple of seemingly random strings for values to store in cookies later. The PHP function `md5()` is used twice. Because both the session ID and the username should be validated (I'll tell you why later), I'd like to send a username. However, sending a plaintext username back to the browser is not such a good idea (from the standpoint of security and privacy). The `md5()` function to the rescue! The relevant code looks like this:

```
# Create a pseudo-random session id.  
$rand((double)microtime())*99999999);  
$id = md5(rand(0,9999999));  
  
# Encrypt the username  
$encuser = md5($user);
```

## Clearing the memory associated with a result

The next PHP MySQL function hasn't been used before in this chapter's examples: `mysql_free_result()`, which clears the memory associated with a result.

Although technically it doesn't *have* to be used here, it does ensure that the value in `$result` will be clean and fresh—and that's one less source of potential error.



### Caution

Because the use of `mysql_free_result()` wipes the old result set out of memory, you can't glean any further information from the old result set! Make sure you have the information you need before you trash the old result set.

Using `mysql_free_result()` can be a lifesaver if your system is operating near the limit of its resources and you have a huge result set that takes up too much memory. Here's what the code looks like:

```
# Get rid of the result, so I can send another query  
mysql_free_result($result) or die ("An error was  
encountered");
```

Note the comment that lets the programmer know what's intended here (and consider it a reminder to cultivate good documentation habits). Next, a call to the PHP `time()` function gives me a current Unix/Linux timestamp value (given as the number of seconds since the Epoch), and running the `UPDATE` statement sets the session ID in the `user_table` along with the timestamp. Here's the code:

```
$time = time();  
  
$query = "UPDATE user_table SET session = '$id',timestamp =  
'$time' WHERE user = '$user'";  
$result = mysql_query($query) or die ("UPDATE failed!");
```

Using a timestamp together with the session ID helps ensure that the session is relatively recent (which is important to establish, as I'll show you in the program to validate cookies).

## Setting and validating the cookie

The following code contains two examples of the `setcookie()` function:

```
setcookie("cookie_session","$id",time()+60,"/","",0);
setcookie("cookie_user","$encuser",time()+60,"/","",0);

print "You have been successfully logged in<P>";
```

The `print` statement at the end of this code snippet would be a good place to send a redirect to the client, sending it to another page or calling another function.

**Note**

In the first code snippet just given, normally you'd put the valid URL for the cookie between the final double quotes to the left of the `0` – in both instances. As it happens, some crazy redirection on my network prevents me from placing that value correctly (within that final set of quotes) for the example.

The program to validate cookies is as follows:

```
<?php

function check_session($cookie_session,$cookie_user) {
    include("/usr/local/apache/htdocs/chap16/dbconnect.php");

    # Connect to the database
    $dbconn = mysql_connect($host,$username,$password) or die
    ("Couldn't connect to database server");

    $db = mysql_select_db("auth");

    $quoteduser = mysql_escape_string($cookie_session);

    $query = "SELECT auth_group FROM user_table WHERE session =
        '$cookie_session' AND timestamp > (unix_timestamp() - 600) AND
        md5(user) = '$cookie_user'";

    $result = mysql_query($query) or die ("Query failed");
    $num = mysql_num_rows($result);

    if ($num == 0) {
        print "Session has expired<P>\n";
        exit;
    } else {
        $row = mysql_fetch_array($result);
        return $row["auth_group"];
    }
} # End function check_session

?>
```

The `check_session` function would normally be called from within another page. For example, I have a page called `userpage.php` that I do not want anyone to gain access to unless they are valid. Including a call to this function at the beginning of that page helps me ensure that the user has a valid cookie and is authorized to view the page.

## Validating the user and the cookie

The query in the upcoming code snippet is the same one sent to actually validate the user and the cookie.

```
$query = "SELECT auth_group FROM user_table WHERE session =
'$cookie_session' AND timestamp > (unix_timestamp() - 600) AND
md5(user) = '$cookie_user'";
```

Here I'm using the `WHERE` clause to look for three matches:

- ◆ The session ID should match the one sent in the user cookie.
- ◆ The timestamp in the `user_table` is compared to the current time. If the timestamp is less than 10 minutes ago (600 seconds), then it's valid.
- ◆ The user in the table (sent through `md5`) should match the `md5ed` user from the cookie.

If all three of these values match appropriately, the cookie is valid.

Using three values in the database to validate cookies makes it more difficult for a malicious user to fake a session ID to try to gain access to protected resources. Even if a user can fake a session ID, he or she must tie in that session ID with the encrypted username within the time specified in the query (in this case, 10 minutes).

The function ends with a call to the PHP `return()` function. The function sends the value back to the calling program.

```
return $row["auth_group"];
```

As an example, here's the code that creates a page called `userpage.php`. That page calls the `check_session` function to validate the user before continuing. The code for the page is as follows:

```
<?php

$cookie_session = $HTTP_COOKIE_VARS["cookie_session"];
$cookie_user = $HTTP_COOKIE_VARS["cookie_user"];

if (!isset($cookie_session)) {
    print "Session expired\n";
    exit;
} elseif (! isset($cookie_user)) {

    # Probably should make a function to
```

```
# inform an admin here since no user
# cookie might mean someone is
# doing something naughty.

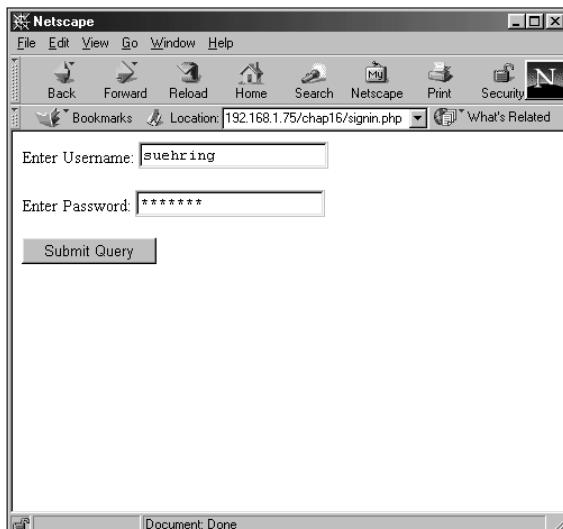
print "Invalid request\n";
exit;
} else {
    require ("/usr/local/apache/htdocs/chap16/cookie_auth.php");
    $group = check_session($cookie_session,$cookie_user);
    print "Cookie retrieval validated, you are a member of $group
group\n";
}

?>
```

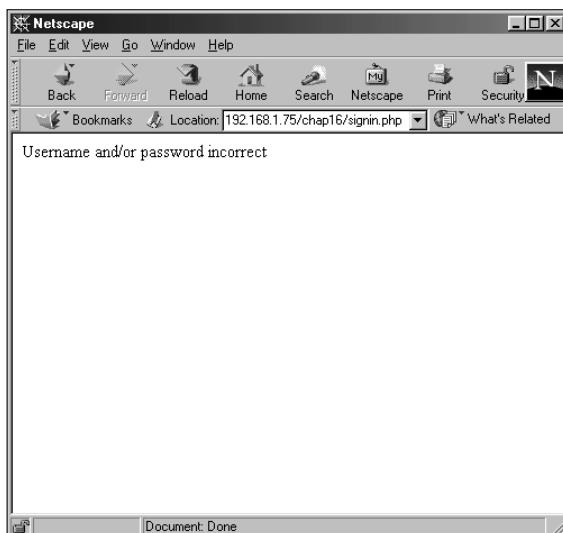
In this instance, the resource I want to protect doesn't amount to much more than an example page. But that resource *could* be any page in which you can use a PHP function.

In the example page, first I get the values of the cookies. If they're not set, then something is wrong and the user can't continue. Otherwise (if both cookies are set) call the `check_session` function. Notice that the `check_session` function is called with `$group` as a target for the result. Doing so grabs the `return()` value from the function called. The checking of cookies that I get this page to do could also be done inside the `check_session` function as part of the cookie-checking function.

Figure 16-22 shows an example of the sign-in page; Figure 16-23 shows what happens when I type my password wrong.



**Figure 16-22:** The sign-in page for the authentication system

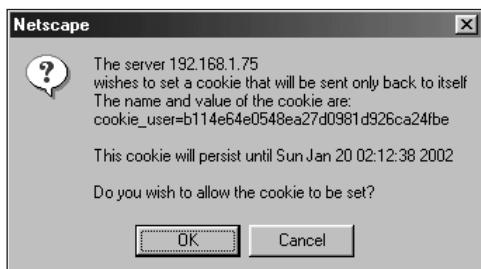


**Figure 16-23:** Password incorrect when attempting to sign in

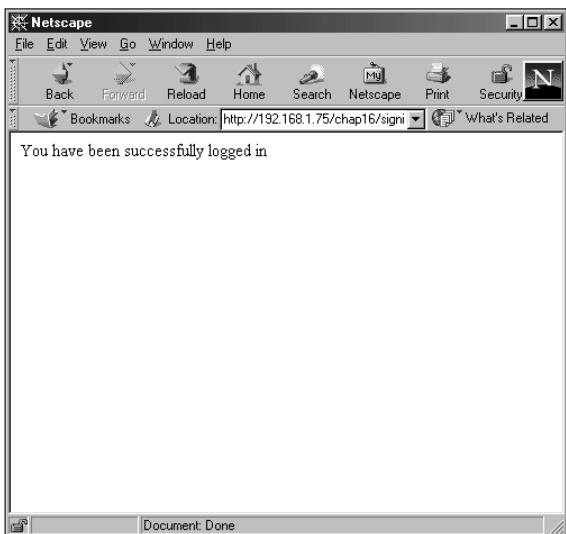
When I manage to type my password correctly, the cookies are sent, as shown in Figures 16-24 through 16-26.



**Figure 16-24:** When authenticated, a session cookie is sent first.



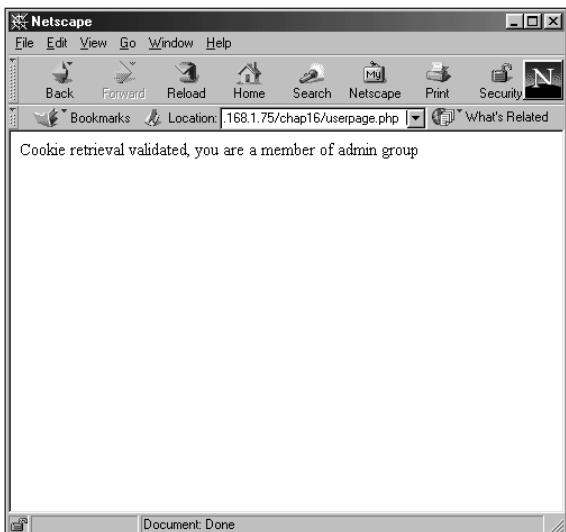
**Figure 16-25:** After the session-ID cookie is sent, an md5 version of my username is sent in a cookie.



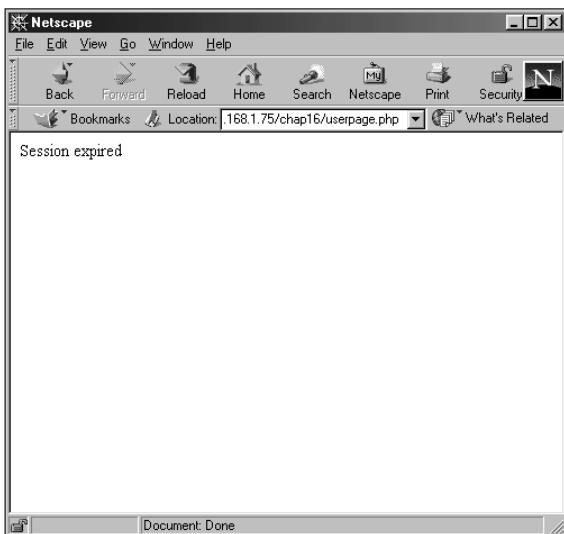
**Figure 16-26:** The resulting page when validated. This page could also be another resource, a redirect, or any other valid object.

When attempting to go to the protected resource, `userpage.php`, the cookies are validated against the database (as shown in Figure 16-27). In fact, the function call returns the group for my user, `admin`. Using this information, I could grant or deny further access by group within `userpage.php`.

Finally, if the session has expired (I allowed only a 60-second cookie life), the `userpage.php` script notices this and returns the appropriate result, as illustrated in Figure 16-28.



**Figure 16-27:** The cookies are validated when calling `userpage.php`.



**Figure 16-28:** If I try to go to the page after the cookie has expired, I get a Session Expired message.

## Summary

PHP, a development language that can be installed on a number of platforms and with many Web servers, includes many functions for interacting with a MySQL server. Some of these functions replace MySQL functions. PHP has some notable similarities to Perl. Using PHP and its MySQL functions, you can develop complex applications with relative ease.

- ◆ PHP can be interwoven within HTML to make complex programs while preserving the page design.
- ◆ PHP variables need not be declared explicitly. Most variables, including arrays, are called using a dollar-sign character (\$).
- ◆ You connect to a MySQL server by using the `mysql_connect()` function. You disconnect using the `mysql_close()` function. Databases are selected with `mysql_select_db()`.
- ◆ Queries are sent to the database server with the `mysql_query()` function. The `mysql_unbuffered_query()` function can be used if you do not need to look at the results.
- ◆ There are numerous functions for retrieving the results of a query including `mysql_fetch_row`, `mysql_fetch_array`, and `mysql_fetch_assoc`.
- ◆ The `mysql_num_rows()` function is good for quickly determining the success or failure of an operation or statement.
- ◆ Keep <http://www.php.net> bookmarked for answers to most, if not all, your PHP-related questions.





# ODBC/JDBC

**O**pen Database Connectivity (ODBC) is the means by which third-party applications can connect to and work with data sources. Using ODBC, you can take data stored in a MySQL (or other) database and link it to ODBC-enabled applications. Such applications can include widely available products such as Microsoft Word and Access.

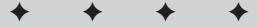
**Note**

Check the documentation of your applications to make sure they are ODBC-enabled before you use ODBC to connect your documents to data sources.

In addition, an object called Java Database Connectivity (JDBC) defines the methods by which Java programs and applets connect to and work with data sources. In fact, MySQL offers a JDBC-enabled interface (JDBC API) used to connect Java programs and applets to MySQL. The JDBC API is available for download from MySQL AB's Web site.

This chapter examines ODBC with MySQL. The MySQL driver for ODBC is distributed by MySQL AB and is called MyODBC. MyODBC is available for a number of platforms including Linux and Windows. This chapter concentrates on the Windows installation and use of MyODBC.

I'll also examine the MySQL JDBC, concentrating on the Linux installation and use of the JDBC API. The MySQL JDBC driver is third-party software, not developed directly by MySQL AB.



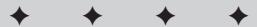
## In This Chapter

Introducing MyODBC

Using MyODBC

Getting to know the MySQL JDBC API

Using the MySQL JDBC API



**Note**

Throughout this chapter, I show examples of installing MyODBC and working with ODBC in Windows; the version of Windows that I use for these examples may be different from the version you're using—the ODBC Control Panel applet may not be located in Control Panel in your version. Though I've noted such differences throughout the chapter, I also believe that the locations for such features as the ODBC applet may change in future versions of Windows.

## An Introduction to MyODBC

MyODBC is the MySQL AB driver for making an ODBC connection to MySQL. This section examines where to get the software as well as how to install and use MyODBC.

### Where to get MyODBC

MyODBC can be downloaded directly from MySQL AB's Web site at <http://www.mysql.com/>. MyODBC comes packed in a zip archive for Windows, so you need some form of unzipping program to unpack the software.

### Installing MyODBC

The first step in the installation of MyODBC is to unpack the zipped archive. Because the software comes with its own setup program, unpack it to a temporary location; the setup program installs it from there. For the example, I unpack the archive to `c:\temp\myodbc`, as in Figure 17-1.

Once unpacked, open Windows Explorer and point to the directory you just unpacked to, in this case `c:\temp\myodbc`. Double-click `setup.exe` to begin the setup of MyODBC, as in Figure 17-2.

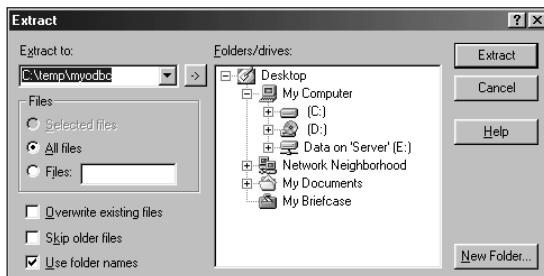
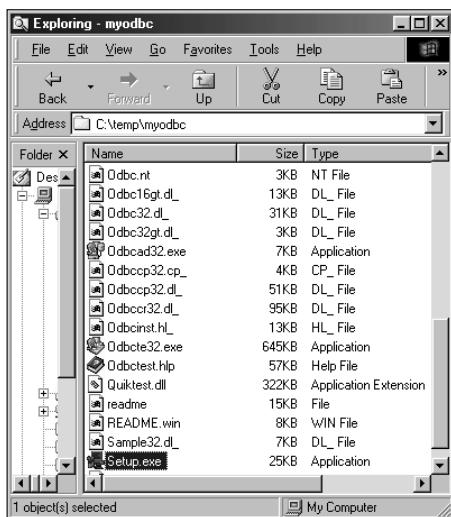


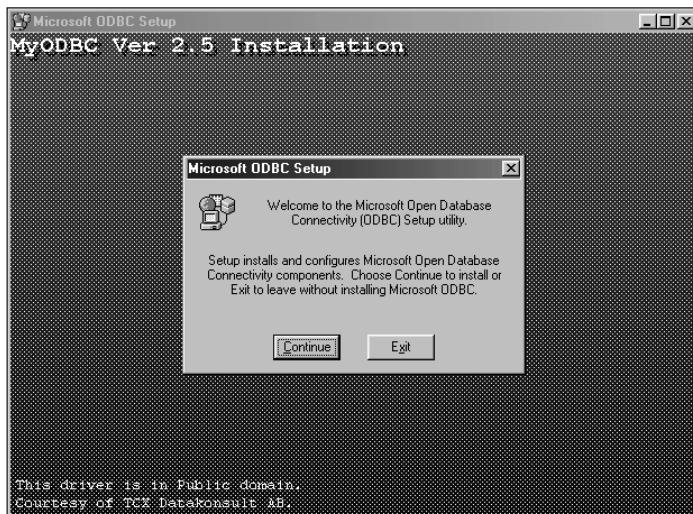
Figure 17-1: Unpacking the MyODBC archive



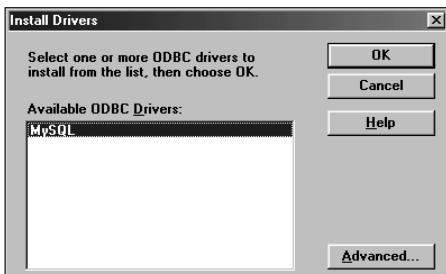
**Figure 17-2:** Locating the setup program in Windows Explorer

Setup of MyODBC begins with a Welcome screen (see Figure 17-3). What you're being welcomed to is actually the installation process, not MyODBC itself.

Click Continue to move to the next screen, which prompts you to choose a driver to install. MySQL is the only choice; click once to highlight it, and then click OK to continue, as shown in Figure 17-4.



**Figure 17-3:** Don't be fooled; you're still installing MyODBC.

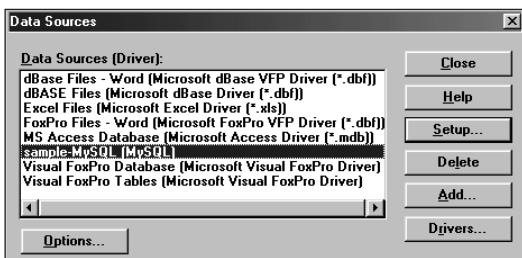


**Figure 17-4:** Click the MySQL driver to select it for installation.

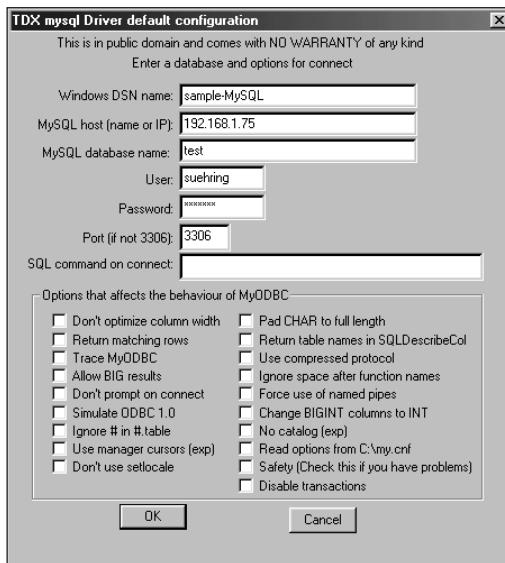
Next you configure the MySQL data source. When presented with the list of Data Sources, click once to highlight sample-MySQL (MySQL), as in Figure 17-5.

With sample-MySQL (MySQL) highlighted, click the Setup button to bring up the MySQL default configuration box. Set whichever options you need (for example, MySQL Host, User, Password, and so on), as illustrated in Figure 17-6. When finished, click OK. You can change the options later via the ODBC applet, located in Control Panel on Windows 95 and 98 and Administrative Tools on Windows 2000 and XP.

Once you have configured MyODBC, click Close. You should see a success message like that in Figure 17-7.



**Figure 17-5:** Click sample-MySQL (MySQL) in the list of available data sources.



**Figure 17-6:** Setting the default configuration for MyODBC

## Changing MyODBC Options

Should you want to change options for MyODBC at a later date, you do so through Control Panel on Windows 95 or 98 and through Administrative Tools on Windows 2000 and XP. Follow these steps:

1. Click Start  $\Rightarrow$  Settings  $\Rightarrow$  Control Panel.  
Control Panel opens.
2. Double-click ODBC Data Sources, as shown in Figure 17-8.



**Figure 17-7:** A successful installation of MyODBC



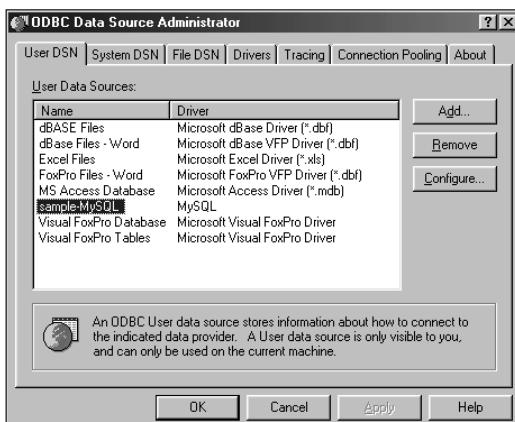
**Figure 17-8:** ODBC Data Sources (32 bit) contains the information about the MySQL ODBC connection.

The ODBC Data Source Administrator dialog box opens, showing the User DSN tab (as depicted in Figure 17-9).

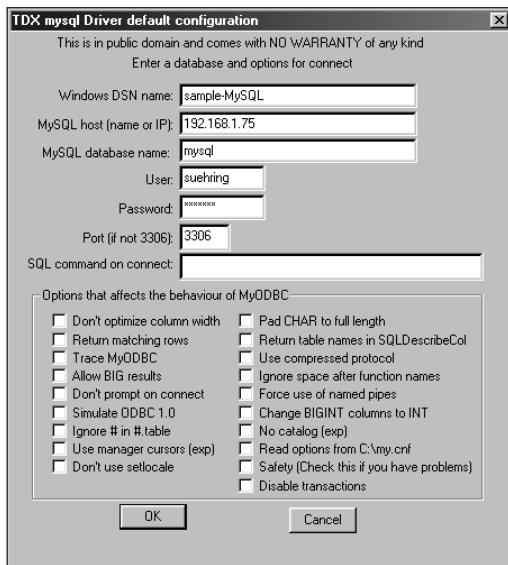
3. Click sample -MySQL and then click Configure, as shown in Figure 17-10.

**Tip**

Each ODBC connection connects to an individual database. Therefore, if you want to connect to more than one database, you must add a new data source by clicking the Add button.



**Figure 17-9:** The default page in the ODBC Data Source Administrator



**Figure 17-10:** The Configuration page within the ODBC Data Sources Administrator

## Using MyODBC

Once MyODBC is installed, you can start sharing data between MySQL and your ODBC-enabled applications (such as Word and Access). Understandably, a frequent practical question that crops up at this point is how to get data from a MySQL database into Microsoft Access, so it makes a good first example. The process is a little different for importing into Word. I look at both in the upcoming section.

## Importing MySQL data into Microsoft Access

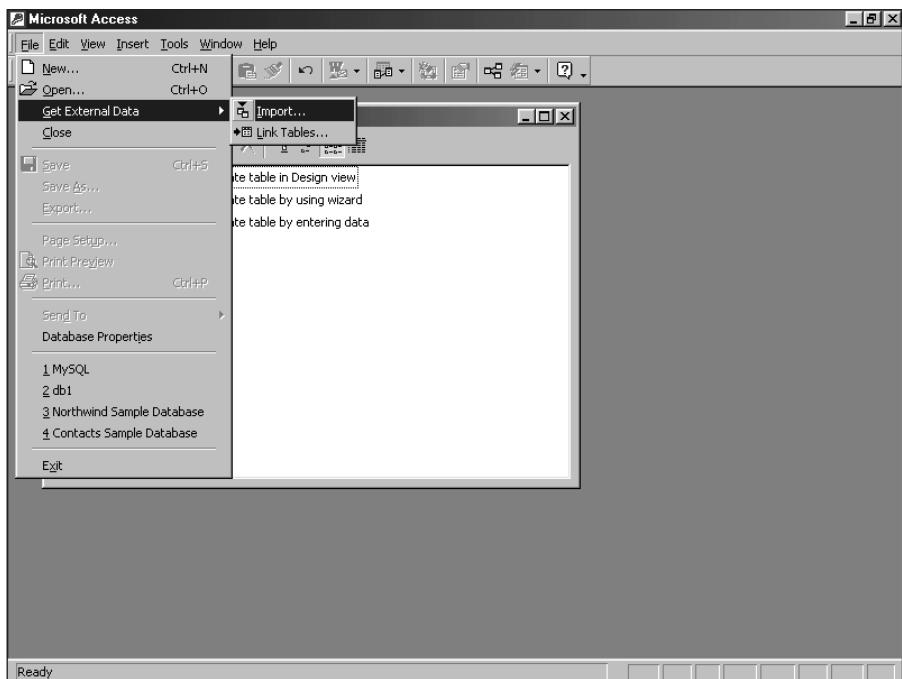
With MyODBC installed, importing data into Microsoft Access is quite easy. This section examines the process for importing tables into Access.



Microsoft seems to change the location and processes for import often, so the steps given here may change by the time you read this (or by the time I finish writing this section). Problems can arise working with Microsoft Access if you have an old version of the Microsoft Data Access Components (MDAC). Download a new version of these drivers from Microsoft. The current location of Microsoft's data-related software on the Web is <http://www.microsoft.com/data/>.

Currently the steps for importing tables into Access are as follows:

1. From within Access with a database open, click File  $\leftrightarrow$  Get External Data  $\leftrightarrow$  Import, as shown in Figure 17-11.



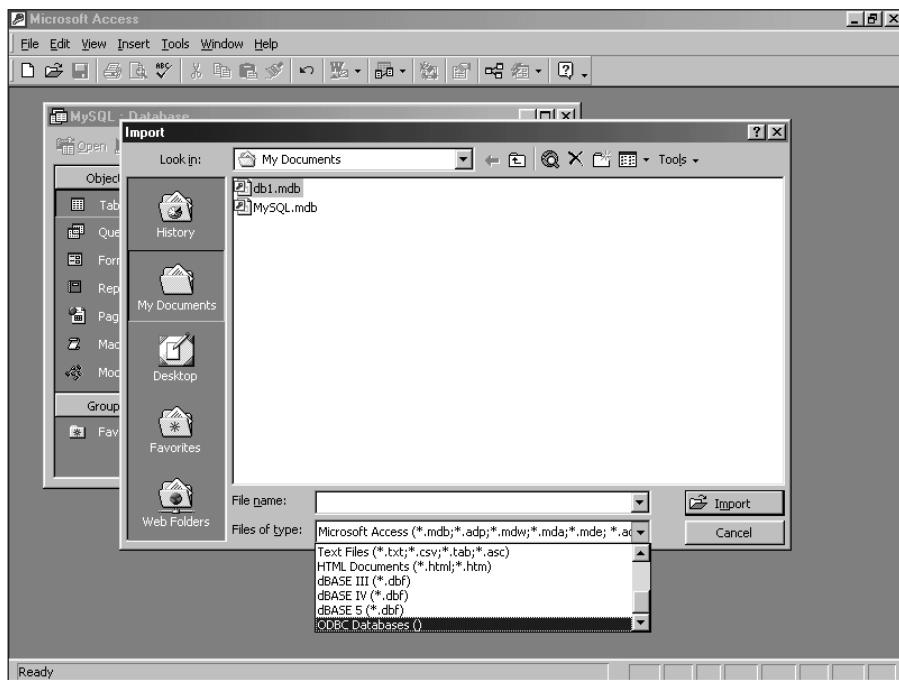
**Figure 17-11:** The current location where you can find the Import dialog box in Microsoft Access

The Import dialog box opens, as shown in Figure 17-12.

2. Within the Import dialog box, drop down the *Files of type* box and select ODBC Databases (), as shown in Figure 17-13.



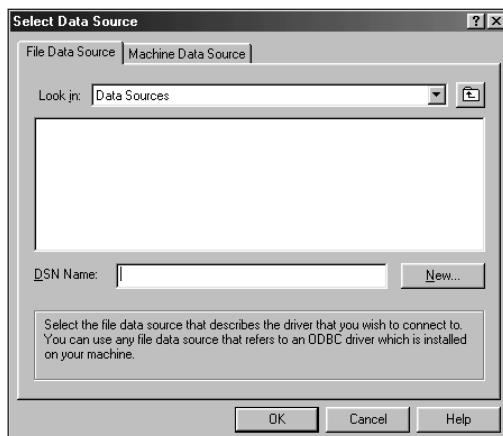
**Figure 17-12:** The Import dialog box in Microsoft Access



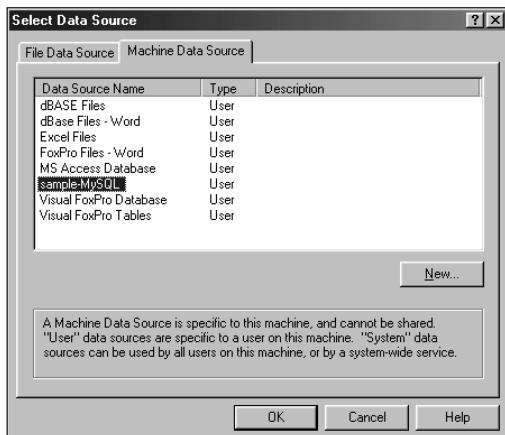
**Figure 17-13:** Selecting ODBC Databases () in the Files of type box

The Select Data Source box opens, as shown in Figure 17-14.

3. Click the Machine Data Source tab at the top of the Select Data Source dialog box, and then select the MySQL data source that you want to use (as shown in Figure 17-15).



**Figure 17-14:** The Select Data Source dialog box as it appears when it opens



**Figure 17-15:** The Machine Data Source tab is where you select the MySQL ODBC data source.

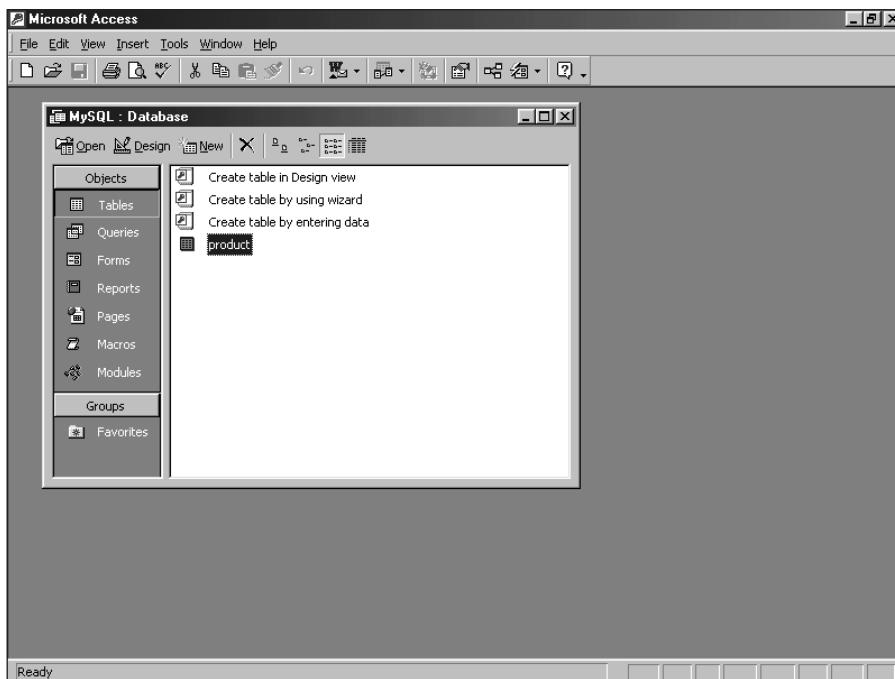
Once your ODBC data source is selected and authenticated, a list of tables appears, as illustrated in Figure 17-16 (which shows an example from the ecommerce database).

4. Select the appropriate table that contains the data you are importing.

In the example, I've selected the product table from the Import Objects dialog box. Doing so creates the Products table (see Figures 17-17).



**Figure 17-16:** The Import Objects dialog box, showing a list of tables

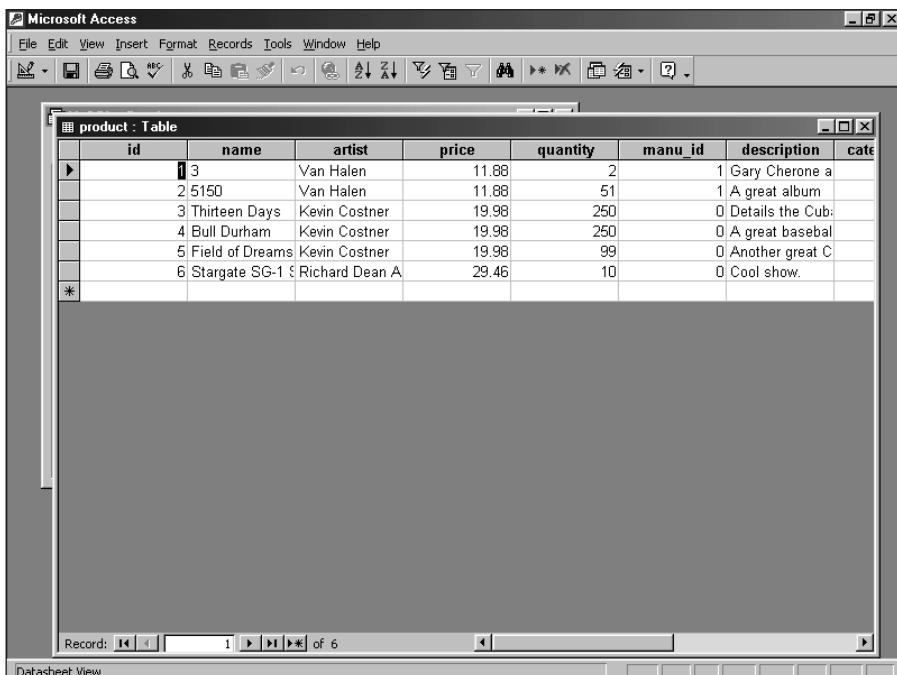


**Figure 17-17:** The Products table is created as a regular table.

With the creation of the new object (in this example, the **Products table**), the import process is complete. Figure 17-18 shows the completed Products table.

**Note**

If you update the data in the MySQL database directly, the data is not normally updated in the Access version of the table. Likewise, any operations performed on the Access version of the data are not performed on the MySQL copy of the data. You can use the Link Tables function in Microsoft Access to tie the Access version of the data back into MySQL.

A screenshot of the Microsoft Access application window. The title bar says "Microsoft Access". The menu bar includes File, Edit, View, Insert, Format, Records, Tools, Window, and Help. The toolbar below has icons for New, Open, Save, Print, Find, Replace, and others. The main area shows a table named "product : Table" with the following data:

|   | id | name            | artist         | price | quantity | manu_id | description      | cate |
|---|----|-----------------|----------------|-------|----------|---------|------------------|------|
| ▶ | 1  | 3               | Van Halen      | 11.88 | 2        | 1       | Gary Cherone a   |      |
|   | 2  | 5150            | Van Halen      | 11.88 | 51       | 1       | A great album    |      |
|   | 3  | Thirteen Days   | Kevin Costner  | 19.98 | 250      | 0       | Details the Cub  |      |
|   | 4  | Bull Durham     | Kevin Costner  | 19.98 | 250      | 0       | A great baseball |      |
|   | 5  | Field of Dreams | Kevin Costner  | 19.98 | 99       | 0       | Another great C  |      |
|   | 6  | Stargate SG-1   | Richard Dean A | 29.46 | 10       | 0       | Cool show.       |      |
| * |    |                 |                |       |          |         |                  |      |

Record: 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | \* of 6

Datasheet View

Figure 17-18: The Products table contains the data from MySQL, as you would expect.

## Importing data into Microsoft Word

Importing data into a Microsoft Word document is not as simple as working with Microsoft Access. To import data into Microsoft Word, you must use Microsoft Query. Microsoft Query may or may not be installed with your version of Microsoft Word or Microsoft Office. If it is not installed, re-run the Microsoft Office Setup Wizard.

Assuming you have Microsoft Query installed, the steps for importing data into Word look like this:

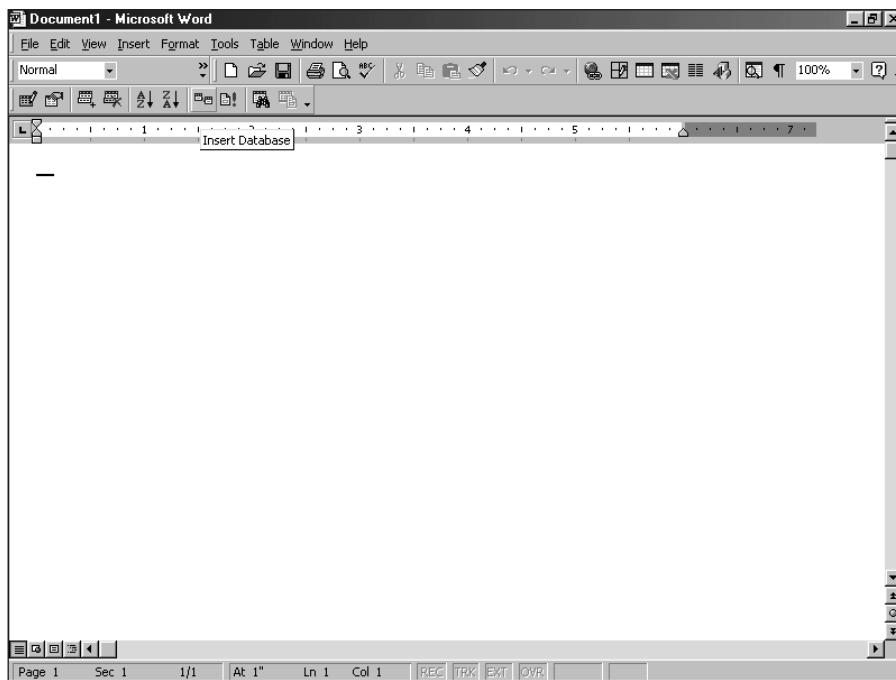
1. Open the Word document into which you want to import the data (it can be a new document).
2. On the Database toolbar, click the icon that inserts a database (see Figure 17-19).

**Tip**

If you don't have the Database toolbar available, select View ➔ Toolbars ➔ Database. Doing so adds a Database toolbar to the toolbars visible in Word.

3. Click the Insert Database button.

The Database dialog box appears, showing two options: Get Data and Cancel.



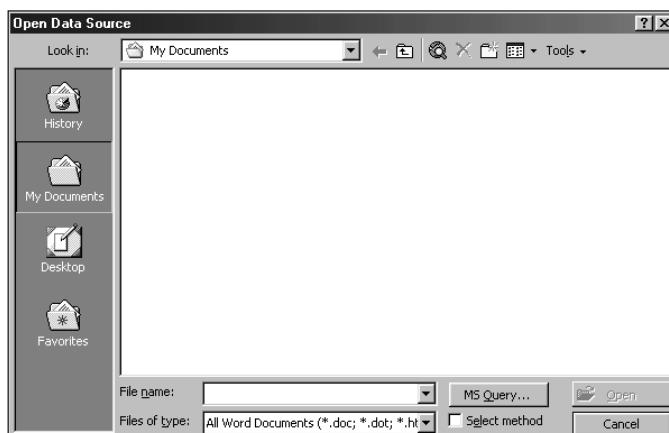
**Figure 17-19:** The Insert Database button on the database toolbar

**4. Click Get Data.**

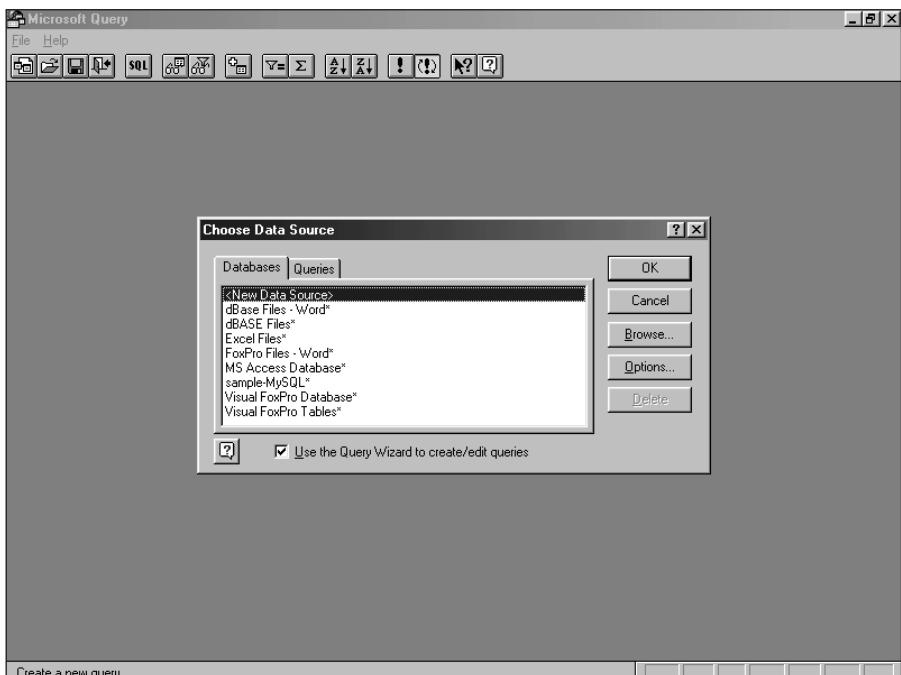
The Open Data Source box appears, as shown in Figure 17-20.

**5. From within the Open Data Source dialog box, click MS Query.**

If Microsoft Query is installed, it opens as a new program with the Choose Data Source box open, as illustrated in Figure 17-21. Go directly to Step 6.



**Figure 17-20:** The Open Data Source dialog box



**Figure 17-21:** Microsoft Query opens with the Choose Data Source box.

If Microsoft Query is not installed, then (depending on the options you have enabled) you are prompted to install it. If you agree to install Query, a wizard guides you through the process. Follow the on-screen steps it presents, and then resume importing your data into Word, starting with Step 6 here (which uses the Query Wizard to complete the data transfer).

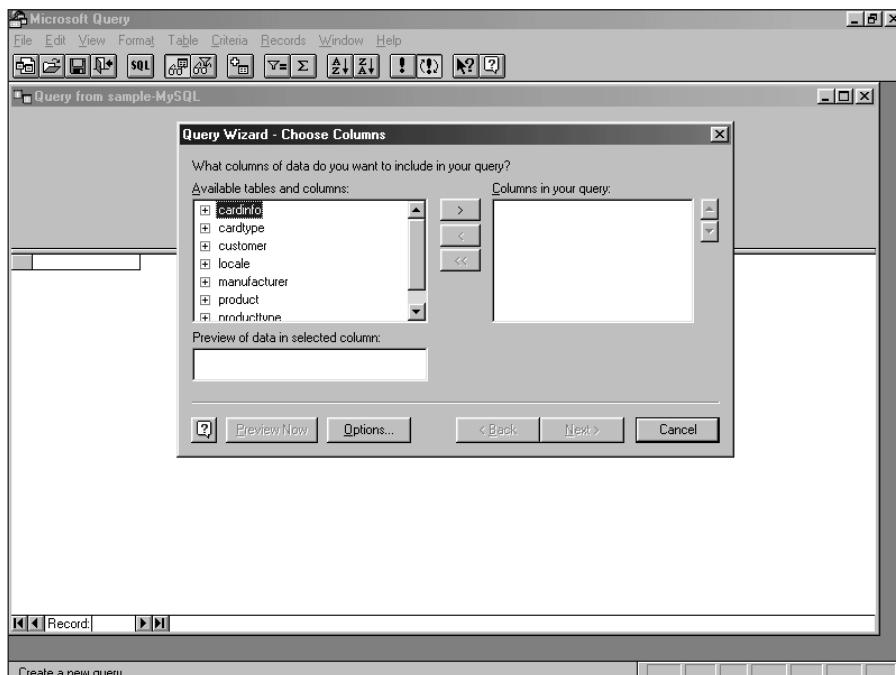
6. Select the MySQL ODBC connection that you'd like to begin working with and click OK (in this example, it's called `sample-MySQL`).

The Query Wizard - Choose Columns dialog box opens; you should see all tables listed in the database configured in the ODBC connection, as in Figure 17-22.

7. From within the Choose Columns portion of the Query Wizard, choose the columns you want to include in the query.

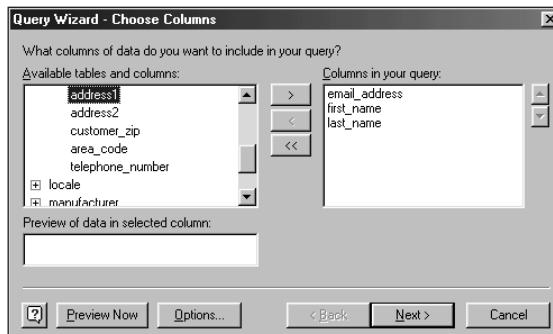
If there's a plus sign next the table name you can click it to expand the columns within the table.

8. Highlight a column name and then click the right arrow to move it into the Columns in your Query area, as illustrated in Figure 17-23 (where I select three columns for a query).



**Figure 17-22:** Query Wizard - Choose Columns opens with the tables from the database (as defined in the ODBC connection you chose).

9. Click Next to continue, which brings up a Filter Data dialog box (as shown in Figure 17-24).
10. The Filter Data dialog box assists you in determining if you want to select only certain records or rows. If you do not want to filter your data, click Next.



**Figure 17-23:** Selecting columns for a query in the Query Wizard

The Sort Order dialog box appears, as shown in Figure 17-25. If you want to sort your results, you can do so by selecting the appropriate columns and choosing a sort order.

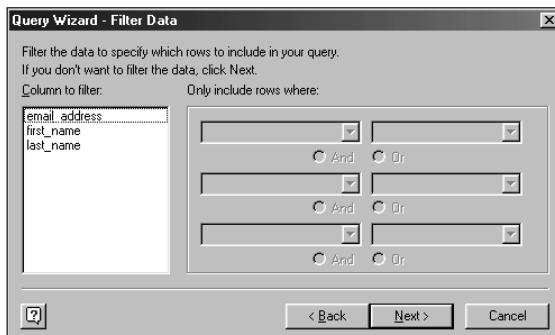
11. When you've completed the Sort Order dialog box (or decided not to use it), click Next.

A Finish box appears, as in Figure 17-26.

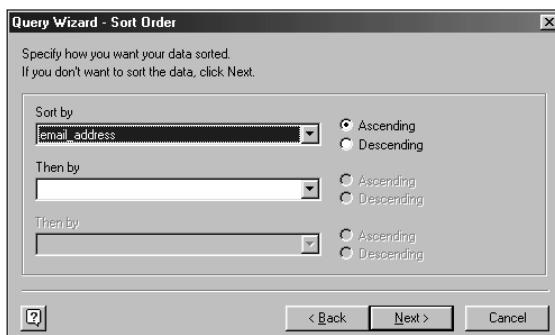
12. If you decide not to save the query (for example, when you follow the steps in this book purely for practice), you won't be able to retrieve the results later without rebuilding the query.

To save your query for later retrieval, click the Save Query button, which starts the saving procedure by giving you a choice of locations for the saved query (see Figure 17-27).

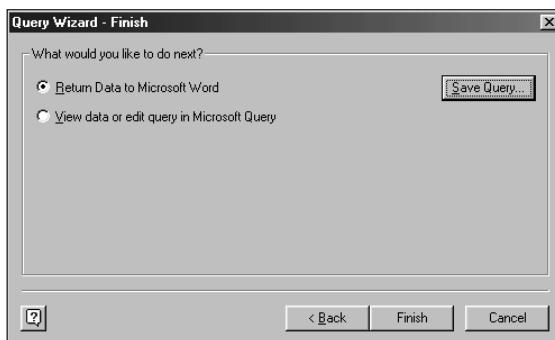
13. Once you complete the Query Wizard, if you elect to send the data back to Microsoft Word, the Database dialog box appears again in Word, as illustrated in Figure 17-28.



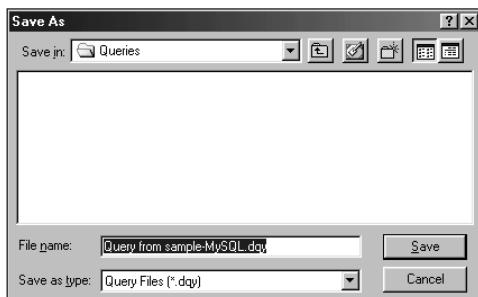
**Figure 17-24:** The Filter Data dialog box, as seen in the Query Wizard



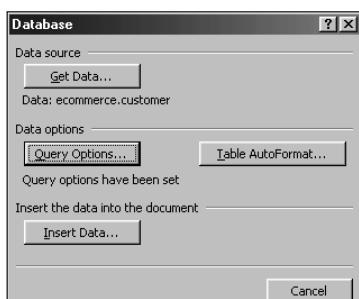
**Figure 17-25:** Sorting results by using the Sort Order dialog box



**Figure 17-26:** The Finish dialog box for the Query Wizard



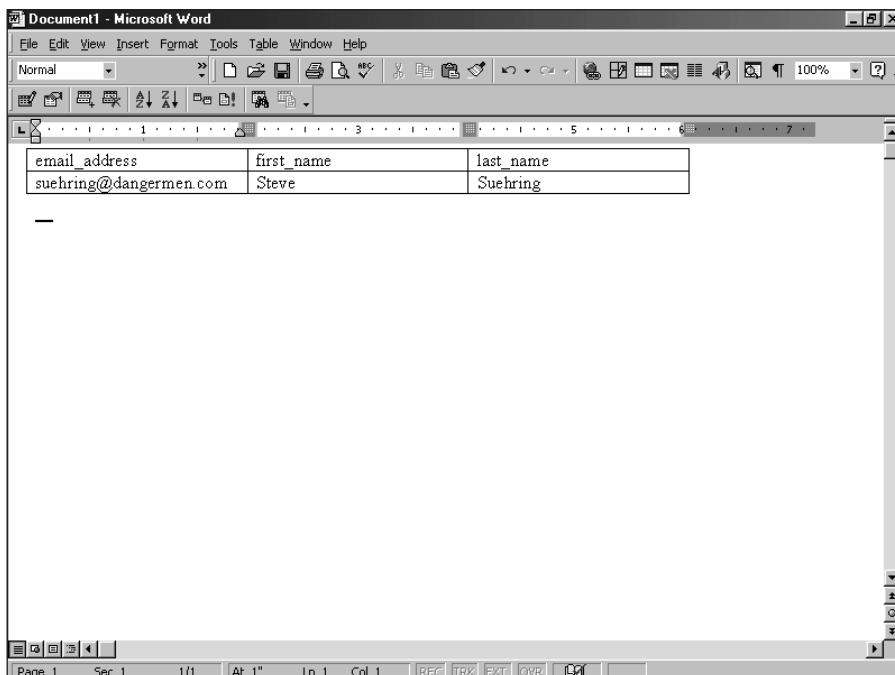
**Figure 17-27:** Choosing a location to which to save the query for later retrieval



**Figure 17-28:** The Database dialog box in Microsoft Word after successful completion of the Microsoft Query Wizard

**14. Click Insert Data.**

The data appears in your Word document, as illustrated in Figure 17-29. Congratulations! You've imported the data into a Word document.



**Figure 17-29:** The data from MySQL imported through Microsoft Query

**Tip**

Should you encounter problems with the import process, check to make sure that your ODBC connection is working properly. The quickest fix is to get MySQL and Microsoft Access talking to each other. Try to connect with ODBC in Microsoft Access. If this works, then you may have a problem other than the import process itself (for example, an incompatibility in driver versions).

## An Introduction to JDBC

Java Database Connectivity (JDBC) is the Java version of the interface used for connection to more than one relational database management system (RDBMS). A JDBC API exists for MySQL, in several versions. Presently only one version is available under the Lesser GNU Public License (LGPL).

Using the JDBC for MySQL, you can connect Java programs and applets to a MySQL database. This section examines the installation of the MySQL JDBC in Linux as well as how to connect to MySQL in a Java program.

## The JDBC interface

JDBC *for MySQL* is a slight misnomer; Java database connectivity is, in fact, available for various RDBMS programs. In effect, JDBC functions like the Perl DBI—it enables a range of database drivers to connect to various RDBMS products. For the purposes of this book, when I refer to “the” JDBC interface, I refer to a particular API—the MySQL driver that works with the JDBC.

The JDBC API itself is included with the core Java Software Development Kit (abbreviated as SDK or JDK—I use *JDK* throughout this chapter). In particular, the `java.sql` package contains the classes needed for using MySQL to work with data.

## Where to get the JDBC and MySQL JDBC Driver

The MySQL JDBC API is not an official MySQL AB product. However, the MySQL JDBC driver is linked from the MySQL AB Web site. I found the versions of the MySQL JDBC driver linked directly from MySQL AB’s Web site to be relatively old. A newer version of the MySQL JDBC driver can usually be obtained directly from the following Web site: <http://mymysql.sourceforge.net/>.

The file format for the MySQL JDBC driver is a Java archive; you need the `jar` program to unpack it. You can obtain `jar` at the following Web site:

<http://mymysql.sourceforge.net/>

Getting the driver shouldn’t be a problem; the Java Software Development Kit (JDK) is another a prerequisite to installing the JDBC MySQL driver. If you don’t have the JDK, download it from the following Web site:

<http://java.sun.com/products/>

Although I’m hesitant to offer this link as the definitive Sun Java Web site (its location may change in the future), that’s where you can download the latest JDK for Linux.

## Installing the MySQL JDBC Driver

Before installing the MySQL JDBC driver, make sure you have the Java JDK installed. The JDK comes in a binary format, with a file extension of `.bin`. When you run the binary program, it creates a directory (below your current directory) and installs the Java JDK automatically.

After you download the Java JDK, you may have to change the mode of the file before you can execute it. The command for doing so is as follows:

```
chmod 700 j2sdk-<version>.bin
```

Execute the file as you would any other program located in a directory not in your path, as follows:

```
./j2sdk-<version>.bin
```

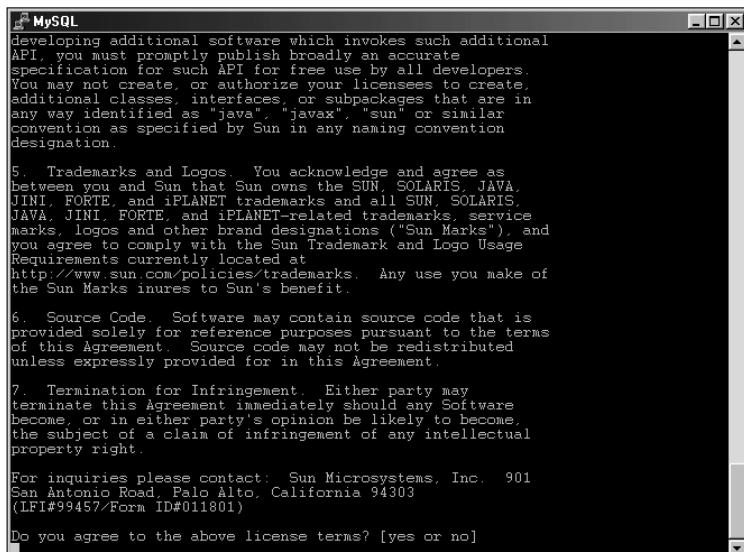
Again, be sure to run the JDK installer binary from the location where you want it installed. If you want the JDK in /usr/local/j2sdk-<version>/ (for example), you should execute the installer from within /usr/local.

When you execute the installer, a License Agreement appears. Read the agreement; if you agree to its terms, type **yes** (see Figure 17-30).

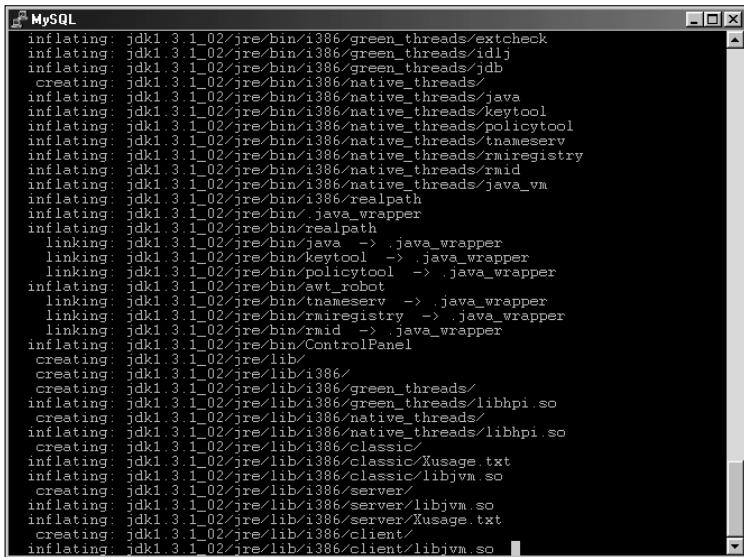
The JDK installation then creates the necessary directories and files, as illustrated in Figure 17-31. No compilation is necessary with the Java JDK.

The current version of the MySQL JDBC driver comes packed in a **.jar** archive and need not be compiled. For my installation, I unpacked the **.jar** archive to the **jdk** directory.

```
cp mm.mysql-2.0.9-you-must-unjarme.jar /usr/local/jdk1.3.1_02  
cd /usr/local/jdk1.3.1_02  
.bin/jar xvf mm.mysql-2.0.9-you-must-unjarme.jar
```



**Figure 17-30:** The license agreement is the first step in JDK installation.



**Figure 17-31:** The Java JDK installer requires no compilation to install the software.

Running this command yields a directory called `mm-2.0.9` in `/usr/local/jdk1.3.1_02`.

Inside of the `mm-2.0.9` directory there is a file called `mm.mysql-2.0.9-bin.jar`. Copying that file to `/usr/local/jdk1.3.1_02/jre/lib/ext` copies the class files for the MySQL JDBC API. If your installation is in a different location, copy the file to `<java_sdk_directory>/jre/lib/ext/`.

#### Note

Version numbers of both the Java JDK and the MySQL JDBC driver will probably change by the time you read this.

For my installation, I also added the JDK's binary directory to my path. In addition, you may want to add the MySQL JDBC driver location to your `CLASSPATH`. Using `csh` or `tcsh`, the command that does so looks like this:

```
setenv CLASSPATH /path/to/mysql-jdbc-class:::$CLASSPATH
```

Should you receive an error such as that shown in Figure 17-32, then no `CLASSPATH` is defined at all. In this instance, I recommend setting it to include the JDK directory as well, using the following command line:

```
setenv CLASSPATH /path/to/jdk:/path/to/mysql-jdbc-class:
```



**Figure 17-32:** The error message given when the CLASSPATH variable hasn't been set

For more information on installing and using the Java Software Development Kit, see the Sun Web site, <http://java.sun.com>.

## Using the JDBC and the MySQL Driver

The JDBC itself defines the methods by which you connect to a database. This section looks at how to create a connection to a MySQL database and issue statements with the JDBC. Before doing so, I'd like to go over some basic terminology and concepts.

### The concepts and terms of JDBC

The first step involved in making the JDBC work with a database is loading a driver. The JDBC `java.sql.DriverManager` class performs this task. The `DriverManager` class also works with the `Driver` so you don't need to. The `forName()` method loads the `Driver` class.

**Note**

Although you can also load the `Driver` class by using `jdbc.drivers`, I recommend using the `forName()` method for the sake of consistency.

The `Class.forName()` method takes a string as an argument. In the case of the MySQL JDBC driver, this string is:

```
org.gjt.mm.mysql.Driver
```

For example:

```
Class.forName("org.gjt.mm.mysql.Driver");
```

The `getConnection` method is called to make the actual connection to the database server. The `DriverManager` creates a `Connection` object when you call

the `getConnection` method. `GetConnection` takes a string URL as an argument. In the case of MySQL, you provide the URL and credentials for the connection:

```
Connection con;  
con = DriverManager.getConnection(url, "username", "password");
```

Alternatively:

```
Connection con = DriverManager.getConnection(url, "username",  
"password");
```

## The basics of handling statements and results

The `Statement` interface with the JDBC is not an object, but rather, an interface for *creating* an object that executes statements. You create a `Statement` object as follows:

```
Statement stmt = connection.createStatement();
```

With the `Statement` object created, you use an `execute` method on the object. There are four `execute` methods for use with the JDBC: `executeQuery()`, `executeUpdate()`, `executeBatch()`, and `execute()`.

The `executeQuery()` method is for statements such as `SELECT` that retrieve values from a database. The `executeUpdate()` method is used commonly with DDL statements that don't return values but may return a number of rows affected by the operation. Finally, the `execute()` method is for statements that return greater than one result or count.

The `executeUpdate()` method returns an integer value that contains the number of rows affected by the operation.

The results from queries are retrieved using `ResultSet`. For example:

```
ResultSet result = statement.executeQuery("SELECT * FROM  
user");
```

To access the results, use a `get` method. The basic methods for accessing data are as follows:

```
getBoolean()  
getByte()  
getDate()  
getDouble()  
getFloat()  
getInt()  
getLong()  
getShort()  
getString()  
getTime()  
getTimestamp()
```

The `getDate()`, `getTime()`, and `getTimestamp()` methods all return date or time values. When using a get method, you provide the column name in quotes. For example,

```
getString("columnname");
```

If you do not know the column name, you can identify the result with by its numerical column-position reference. If you don't know the number of columns, you can find that value in the realm of the upcoming section; it's a type of metadata.

## Database metadata

To manipulate data, you need information about it—*metadata*. Database metadata, for example, is information *about* the database and the data it contains—for example, the number of columns returned from a query. There are two sets of metadata for JDBC objects—*connection* and *result*. Both are retrieved with the `getMetaData()` method. When called in reference to a `ResultSet`, the `ResultSetMetaData` object type is returned.

In answer to the question posed about the number of columns, the following code snippet shows how to determine the number of columns from a given result set.

```
ResultSetMetaData databaseinfo = result.getMetaData();
int columns = databaseinfo.getColumnCount();
System.out.println(columns);
```

Other useful methods within `ResultSetMetaData` are `getColumnName()`, and `getColumnType()`.

Metadata about the database and server is available through the `DatabaseMetaData` object, as follows:

```
import java.sql.*;
public class DBMeta {
    public static void main(String args[]) {
        String url = "jdbc:mysql://localhost/ecommerce";
        Connection con;
        try {
            Class.forName("org.gjt.mm.mysql.Driver");
        } catch(java.lang.ClassNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.print("ClassNotFoundException: ");
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
        }
        try {
            con = DriverManager.getConnection(url, "suehring",
"evh5150");
```

```

        System.out.println("Connection established!");

        DatabaseMetaData dbmdata = con.getMetaData();
        System.out.println("Database Information");
        System.out.println("Database name: " +
dbmdata.getDatabaseProductName());
;
        System.out.println("Version: " +
dbmdata.getDatabaseProductVersion());
        System.out.println("Driver: " +
dbmdata.getDriverName());
        System.out.println("Version: " +
dbmdata.getDriverVersion());

        con.close();

    } catch(SQLException ex) {
        System.err.println("SQLException: " + ex.getMessage());
    }
}
}

```

## Working with JDBC errors

The main handler for errors with JDBC is `SQLException` class. `SQLException`, when invoked, sends a string with a description of the exception. This error message is retrieved with the `getMessage()` method. `SQLException` actually sends three pieces of information; in general terms, these are as follows:

- ◆ **Message string**—the message itself.
- ◆ **SQL state**—a five-character string retrieved with the `getSQLState()` method.
- ◆ **Vendor error code**—a code defined by the software vendor and retrieved with the `getErrorCode()` method.

## Testing for NULL values

The `wasNull()` method serves to determine if a value returned from the database was `NULL`. The `wasNull()` method is called as part of the result set for a statement, as in the following example:

```

Statement stmt = con.createStatement();
result = stmt.executeQuery(sql);
while (result.next()) {
    if (result.wasNull()) {
        System.out.println("Null found.");
    }
}

```

## Cached connections

Up to this point, I've been showing examples using the `ResultSet` object. The `ResultSet` object remains connected to the data source for result retrieval. Because the connection must remain intact and active, the `ResultSet` object is not useful for working with data over a networked connection. The JDBC API defines a `RowSet` interface that includes a `CachedRowSet` class that can be used to retrieve results and place them into a cache for later use.

## Connecting to MySQL with the JDBC API and MySQL Driver

Connecting to MySQL with JDBC for the first time can be a humbling experience. After lurking on Java mailing lists for a long time (as well as watching the Usenet newsgroups), I've seen numerous questions by first-time developers who struggle with this initial JDBC connection.

The following code demonstrates a typical connection to a MySQL server, made with Java.

```
import java.sql.*;  
  
public class FirstConnection {  
  
    public static void main(String args[]) {  
  
        String url = "jdbc:mysql://localhost/ecommerce";  
        Connection con;  
  
        try {  
            Class.forName("org.gjt.mm.mysql.Driver");  
        } catch(java.lang.ClassNotFoundException e) {  
            System.err.print("ClassNotFoundException: ");  
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());  
        }  
  
        try {  
            con = DriverManager.getConnection(url, "suehring",  
                "evh5150");  
            System.out.println("Connection established!");  
            con.close();  
        } catch(SQLException ex) {  
            System.err.println("SQLException: " + ex.getMessage());  
        }  
    }  
}
```

You can save this connection as a program named `FirstConnection.java` — and compile it — by typing

```
javac FirstConnection.java
```

Once the program is compiled, you can run it by typing

```
java FirstConnection
```

When your first connection is successful, a `Connection Successful` message appears.

Examining some of the code snippets reveals that a string variable, `url`, is initialized and contains the connection information for the server (`localhost`) that I want to connect to, along with the database (`ecommerce`) that I want to use. If I want to specify a port other than the default 3306, I can use `localhost:port`. For example, I could use `localhost:5150` like this:

```
String url = "jdbc:mysql://localhost/ecommerce";
```

A connection object, `con`, is created next:

```
Connection con;
```

The MySQL JDBC driver is now loaded, according to the syntax discussed in the previous section. If the loading of the driver is unsuccessful, an error message is printed; the following code displays the error message:

```
try {
    Class.forName("org.gjt.mm.mysql.Driver");
} catch(java.lang.ClassNotFoundException e) {
    System.err.print("ClassNotFoundException: ");
    System.err.println(e.getMessage());
}
```

The connection is attempted next; if it does not succeed, use `SQLException` to retrieve the error message. That operation looks like this:

```
try {
    con = DriverManager.getConnection(url, "suehring", "evh5150");
    System.out.println("Connection established!");
    con.close();
} catch(SQLException ex) {
    System.err.println("SQLException: " + ex.getMessage());
}
```

## Creating a basic MySQL JDBC Program

Building on the simple connection program from the last section, I'll retrieve some results from a query by using the following code:

```
import java.sql.*;  
  
public class SimpleSelect {  
  
    public static void main(String args[]) {  
  
        String url = "jdbc:mysql://localhost/ecommerce";  
        Connection con;  
  
        try {  
            Class.forName("org.gjt.mm.mysql.Driver");  
        } catch(java.lang.ClassNotFoundException e) {  
            System.err.print("ClassNotFoundException: ");  
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());  
        }  
  
        try {  
            con = DriverManager.getConnection(url, "suehring",  
"evh5150");  
            System.out.println("Connection established!");  
  
            Statement stmt = con.createStatement();  
            ResultSet productinfo =  
                stmt.executeQuery("SELECT name,artist FROM product");  
  
            while (productinfo.next()) {  
                System.out.println(productinfo.getString("name") + "  
" + productinfo.getString("artist"));  
            }  
  
            con.close();  
  
        } catch(SQLException ex) {  
            System.err.println("SQLException: " + ex.getMessage());  
        }  
    }  
}
```

The code just given has a new section added to execute the statement and retrieve the results. A `Statement` object, `stmt`, is created. Then the query is issued. The results are then retrieved by using the `getString` method with the column name in quotes:

```
Statement stmt = con.createStatement();
ResultSet productinfo =
    stmt.executeQuery("SELECT name,artist FROM product");

while (productinfo.next()) {
    System.out.println(productinfo.getString("name") + " "
    + productinfo.getString("artist"));
}
```

You can save the program as `SimpleSelect.java` and compile it by typing the following command:

```
javac SimpleSelect.java
```

## Summary

MyODBC is MySQL AB's version of an ODBC driver for MySQL, available for Windows and for some versions of Unix and Linux.

- ◆ MyODBC can be obtained directly from MySQL AB's Web site.
- ◆ MyODBC installation in Windows is straightforward using a standard Windows-type setup program.
- ◆ During setup you enter in basic information about the MySQL ODBC Data Source including the name or IP of the server, username, password, and database to connect to.
- ◆ You can change the information or add Data Sources for MySQL at a later time through the ODBC Control Panel in Windows.
- ◆ Connecting MySQL to Microsoft Access is relatively simple and is done through the Get External Data process.
- ◆ Connecting MySQL to Microsoft Word is done through the use of Microsoft Query to build a SELECT query for the data you'd like to integrate.
- ◆ JDBC is the Java equivalent of ODBC. JDBC is distributed with the Java Software Development Kit from Sun.
- ◆ MySQL has a driver to integrate with the JDBC so you can connect MySQL to Java programs and applets.

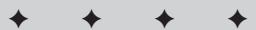




# Advanced Performance

---

V



## In This Part

### **Chapter 18**

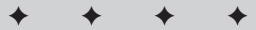
Replication

### **Chapter 19**

Integration of Internet Services

### **Chapter 20**

NuSphere Enhanced MySQL





# Replication

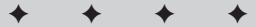
**A**n area that has received a lot of attention from the MySQL development team has been replication. Replication refers to the automated copying of changes made to databases and data between two or more MySQL servers. The MySQL development team has made replication in MySQL a robust and stable feature.

As part of my daily routine, I manage a fairly large-scale database that is replicated across five states in real time using MySQL replication. The system has been operational for two years with very little difficulty. Even two years ago, replication in MySQL was stable. The stability and added features of today's MySQL replication make it a good choice for redundancy and mission-critical applications alike.

This chapter looks at MySQL replication, including how to install and configure replication between two or more MySQL servers. MySQL AB has gone to great lengths to make replication configuration easy as you'll see in the following pages.

## Planning and Preparing for Replication

Before undertaking the tasks involved in actually setting up replication, take some time to plan and prepare for those tasks. The planning includes making sure replication is right for your implementation, deciding what databases or tables will be replicated, how many servers will participate in the replication, and how you will monitor replication. Preparing for replication includes ensuring that all participating servers are running on the same MySQL version.



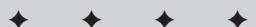
### In This Chapter

Getting ready for replication

Setting your configurations for replication

Keeping an eye on replication

Using replication shortcuts



## Considerations for replication

A couple of common terms that will be used throughout this chapter are master and slave. The *master server* receives updates to the data from applications and through other means and is considered the primary MySQL server in the replication set. The *slave server* receives updates only from the master server. The master server knows nothing about any slave servers that read the updates and replication information. The slave server is responsible for contacting the master server and reading the replication updates.

Replication does not require a constant or high-speed connection between the master and slave. If a slave loses its connection to the master, it will try to reconnect according to values set by the administrator. Further, if a slave server stops replicating, it will remember where it left off and catch up later. Replication does require that both the master and slave have the same data to begin with. Therefore, if you are beginning with a 6GB database, you need that data transferred to the slave. (There are a couple of methods for performing this task, which I discuss later.)

Replication uses a log, called the binary log, for tracking updates to data. This file is kept on the master in a replication set or on slave servers that have log-slave-updates enabled. On some file systems, notably ext2 in Linux, the maximum default file size is 2GB. Therefore, you must monitor replication and perform a replication-and-restart operation before the binary log grows to 2GB.

Replication can be configured in a number of forms. The simplest and most widely used form of replication is with one master and one or more slaves. Replication can also be configured with more than one master though only one is active at any time. Finally, replication can be configured in a two-way format where updates are logged back to the master. Two-way replication can create problems such as when there is an update for the same record received at the same time.

MySQL enables the administrator to choose the data to replicate. The data can be selected with granularity down to the table level. Therefore, you can replicate all databases on the server, only certain databases, or simply a table. Additionally, you can select tables with wildcard-like matching and even select a table or tables not to include while including all others.

The values for `auto_increment` columns are automatically updated as part of the replication process. No need to worry about the values becoming skewed between replication participants.

## MySQL server versions

For replication to work successfully, you must be running the same version of MySQL on all servers participating in the replication. There are exceptions to this rule, but for the most part it's a good idea to get the latest version of MySQL running on all participating replication servers so that the features and back-end code operate as expected.

The file format for replication changed in MySQL version 3.23.26—and again in version 4. If you are running an older version and cannot update, you're required to run old versions of MySQL on *all* servers that participate in the replication.

Version 4 of MySQL can participate in a 3.23.26 (or greater) version of replication. The server will check the version running on the master, and if it is a 3.x version, the appropriate format is used.

## Security

By default, replication traffic is sent via unencrypted packets—an unacceptable arrangement for secure databases and updates. This is especially true of updates that traverse untrusted networks.

Beginning with version 4 of MySQL you can configure replication to use Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) for replication traffic. Using SSL, traffic is encrypted and thus safer as it travels across an untrusted network. Using SSL with MySQL replication assumes that you have OpenSSL installed and working. If you do not have OpenSSL installed, you can't use SSL for MySQL replication.

## Configuring Replication

This section gets down to the business of configuring replication. I'll begin by examining the variables and settings for replication and then continue by looking at a simple replication configuration between one master server and two slaves. Additional replication configurations are also examined in this section.

## Replication variables and settings

Some options for replication are only available within a particular *context*; they apply only to a master server or only to a slave server. The options are set within the MySQL configuration file such as `my.cnf` or `my.ini`. Table 18-1 lists the settings applicable for a master server.

**Table 18-1**  
**Options For Master Server In MySQL Replication**

| <b>Option</b>        | <b>Description</b>   |
|----------------------|--|
| binlog-do-db         | Replication will be performed only on updates to database specified. |
| binlog-ignore-db     | Replication will be done on all databases except database specified. |
| log-bin              | Sends replication updates to logfile in binary format.               |
| log-bin-index        | Sets the filename of the file to track which log number is current.  |
| PURGE MASTER LOGS TO | Deletes replication logs.  |
| RESET MASTER         | Purges replication-related logfiles and restarts replication.        |
| server-id            | Unique integer value of server within a replication set.             |
| SET SQL_LOG_BIN=0    | Stops replication or updating of the binary log.                     |
| SET SQL_LOG_BIN=1    | Starts replication or updating of the binary log.                    |
| SHOW BINLOG EVENTS   | Used for debugging, this statement shows items in the binary log.    |
| SHOW MASTER LOGS     | Gives information on the binary logs residing on the master.         |
| SHOW MASTER STATUS   | Gives information on the master replication process.                 |

The options and settings applicable for a slave server are shown in Figure 18-2. As in Table 18-1, SQL statements are shown in all uppercase.

**Table 18-2**  
**Options For Slave Server In MySQL Replication**

| <b>Option</b>          | <b>Description</b>  |
|------------------------|---|
| CHANGE MASTER TO       | Changes the master that a slave replicates with.                        |
| LOAD DATA FROM MASTER  | Transfers a snapshot copy of the data from master to begin replication. |
| LOAD TABLE FROM MASTER | Transfers a specific table from a master server.                        |
| log-slave-updates      | Enables logging of updates on slave server.                             |
| master-host            | The IP or hostname of the master server.                                |
| master-user            | Username to use for replication.  |

| <b>Option</b>               | <b>Description</b>  |
|-----------------------------|---|
| master-password             | Password to use for replication.  |
| master-port                 | Port to use for replication, default 3306 or the MYSQL_PORT variable.   |
| master-connect-retry        | Value in seconds to wait before attempting to reconnect in the event of a non-fatal error.                                    |
| master-ssl                  | Enables replication over SSL.   |
| master-ssl-key              | Name of keyfile to use for SSL-enabled replication.   |
| master-ssl-cert             | Name of certificate to use for SSL-enabled replication.   |
| master-info-file            | Location and name of file that contains replication information.  |
| report-host                 | Special IP to report as when performing replication.  |
| report-port                 | Port number to report to master for replication.  |
| replicate-do-table          | Name of table to replicate.   |
| replicate-ignore-table      | Name of table to ignore for replication.  |
| replicate-wild-do-table     | Wildcard matching for tables to replicate.  |
| replicate-wild-ignore-table | Wildcard matching for tables to exclude from replication.   |
| replicate-do-db             | Name of database to include in replication.   |
| replicate-ignore-db         | Name of database to exclude from replication.   |
| replicate-rewrite-db        | Name of database to replicate and then rename on slave.   |
| RESET SLAVE                 | Causes slave to restart replication from beginning of logfile.  |
| server-id                   | Unique integer to identify the server in a replication set.   |
| slave-skip-errors           | Ignore errors that would normally be fatal. Use with care.  |
| SHOW NEW MASTER             | Used to assist in changing the master server for a replication. This statement is rarely used and requires additional syntax. |
| SHOW SLAVE STATUS           | Gives information on the slave replication process.   |
| SLAVE START                 | Starts the slave process, if it hasn't been started.  |
| SLAVE STOP                  | Stops the slave process.  |
| skip-slave-start            | Prevents the replication slave process from starting with the MySQL server.   |
| slave-read-timeout          | Seconds before timing out the slave process if no activity is received.   |

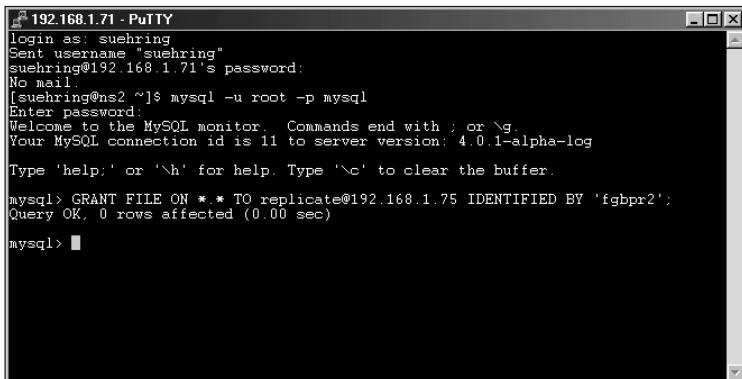
## A basic replication configuration

Only a few options are necessary to configure a basic replication set between a master and slave in MySQL. This section examines those configuration settings. I am assuming that you've read the section on planning and preparing for replication and have MySQL running with the same version on the participating hosts.

First, you must add a user to the master server. This user serves to communicate from the slaves to the master for replication. I strongly recommend that you create a separate user for replication and grant that user only the minimum privilege necessary, the FILE privilege. Consider this example:

```
GRANT FILE ON *.* TO replicateuser@replicatehost IDENTIFIED BY  
'<password>';
```

Figure 18-1 illustrates this statement being executed on the server to be the master in the replication system. Remember, no need to issue a FLUSH PRIVILEGES statement when using a GRANT statement.

A screenshot of a PuTTY terminal window titled "192.168.1.71 - PuTTY". The session log shows the following commands and output:

```
login as: suehring
Sent username "suehring"
suehring@192.168.1.71's password:
No mail.
[suehring@ns2 ~]$ mysql -u root -p mysql
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor. Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 11 to server version: 4.0.1-alpha-log
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> GRANT FILE ON *.* TO replicateuser@192.168.1.75 IDENTIFIED BY 'fgbpr2';
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> █
```

The command `GRANT FILE ON \*.\* TO replicateuser@192.168.1.75 IDENTIFIED BY 'fgbpr2';` is entered and executed successfully, resulting in 0 rows affected in 0.00 seconds.

**Figure 18-1:** Adding the replication user account

On the master inside the MySQL configuration file, usually `my.cnf` or `my.ini`, add the following two lines to the `[mysqld]` section:

```
log-bin
server-id=1
```

The `log-bin` option turns on the binary log that tracks updates, the `server-id` option is a unique value for the replication partner in this set. The `server-id` value that you set must be unique across all partners in the replication set. For example, you cannot have two server IDs of 1 taking part in the same replication.

If you have existing data in a database, you should take a snapshot of that data prior to starting replication. Create a `.tar` or `.zip` file with the database or

databases that you want to replicate. From a shell within the database directory, issue the following command:

```
tar -cvpf database.tar <database>
```

Transfer the resulting file to the slave server(s); unarchive (unzip) that file within the database directory. Your servers will now start with the same data. (This is an important step, as I show later in this chapter.)

Once you've taken the snapshot, stop the MySQL server on the master and restart it. Congratulations, you now have a master server in a replication set configured for MySQL.

On the slave, the process involves adding the following lines to the MySQL configuration file, again to the [mysqld] section:

```
master-host=192.168.1.71  
master-user=replicate  
master-password=fgbpr2  
server-id=2
```

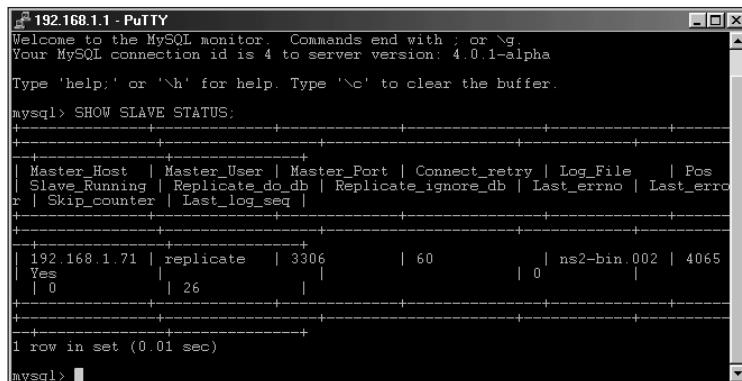
Substitute the host, user, and password values appropriate for your installation.

Stop the restart the MySQL server on the slave. You should now have a simple replication set running between two MySQL servers.

To test the configuration, issue the following command from within the MySQL CLI on the slave:

```
SHOW SLAVE STATUS;
```

You should see output similar to that in Figure 18-2.



The screenshot shows a PuTTY terminal window titled "192.168.1.1 - PuTTY". The window displays the MySQL monitor interface. The user has run the command "SHOW SLAVE STATUS;" and the results are shown in a tabular format:

| Master_Host   | Master_User     | Master_Port         | Connect_retry | Log_File    | Pos          |              |
|---------------|-----------------|---------------------|---------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|
| Slave_Running | Replicate_do_db | Replicate_ignore_db | Last_errno    | Last_error  | Skip_counter | Last_log_seq |
| 192.168.1.71  | replicate       | 3306                | 60            | ns2-bin.002 | 4065         | 0            |
| Yes           |                 | 26                  |               |             |              |              |

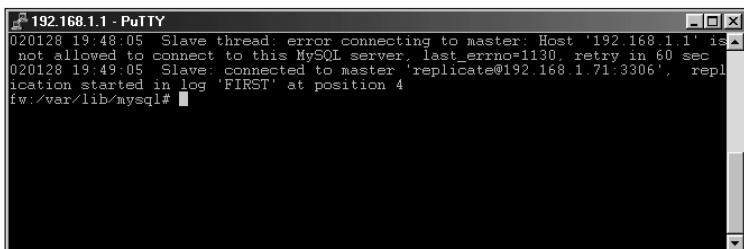
Below the table, the message "1 row in set (0.01 sec)" is displayed. The MySQL prompt "mysql>" is visible at the bottom of the window.

**Figure 18-2:** Issuing the SHOW SLAVE STATUS command on a slave server should result in output similar to this if the slave is running.

**Note**

The values for many of the columns in Figure 18-2 will be different in your output. The important column is the `Slave_running` column. This column should be Yes.

If the `Slave_running` column in your output is No or if all values are zero or 0, then the slave didn't start. Examine the error log for MySQL on the slave—usually `<hostname>.err`—for clues. For instance, when I added a third server to the replication set (for another example), I neglected to add a privilege for that user from the new host. I received the error message shown in Figure 18-3. Once I added the user to the master, all was well. Replication on the slave automatically started itself when it retried in 60 seconds.

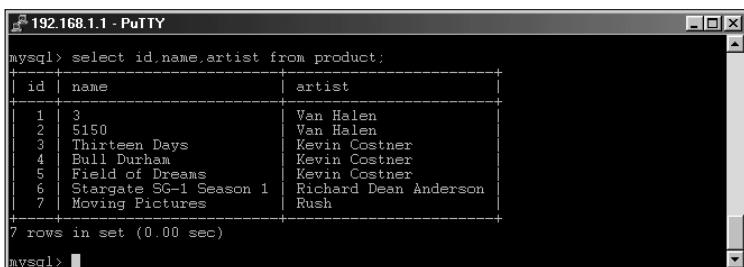


```
192.168.1.1 - PuTTY
020128 19:48:05 Slave thread: error connecting to master. Host '192.168.1.1' is not allowed to connect to this MySQL server; last_errno=1130, retry in 60 sec
020128 19:49:05 Slave: connected to master, replicate@192.168.1.71:3306, replication started in log FIRST at position 4
fw:/var/lib/mysql# 
```

**Figure 18-3:** An error on the slave server shows I forgot to add the replication user account on the master.

Once replication is configured, MySQL automatically transfers a copy of the databases for replication. If these are large databases, you may want to transfer the databases manually via utility commands such as `ftp` or `scp`, which allows compression of the datafiles for quicker transfer.

When the initial database transfer is complete, any changes made on the master will be automatically and instantly replicated to a connected slave—including inserts, updates, and deletions. For example (in Figure 18-4), I issue a simple `SELECT` statement on a slave server—which puts seven products into the table.

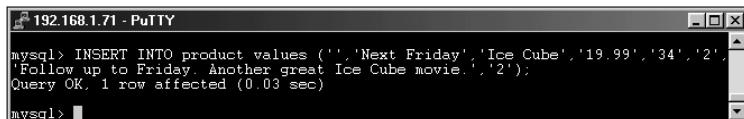


```
192.168.1.1 - PuTTY
mysql> select id, name, artist from product;
+----+-----+-----+
| id | name | artist |
+----+-----+-----+
| 1  | 3    | Van Halen |
| 2  | 5150 | Van Halen |
| 3  | Thirteen Days | Kevin Costner |
| 4  | Bull Durham | Kevin Costner |
| 5  | Field of Dreams | Kevin Costner |
| 6  | Stargate SG-1 Season 1 | Richard Dean Anderson |
| 7  | Moving Pictures | Rush |
+----+-----+-----+
7 rows in set (0.00 sec)
mysql> 
```

**Figure 18-4:** A listing of items in the product table on a slave server

In Figure 18-5, I send the following SQL statement to put a new product on the master server:

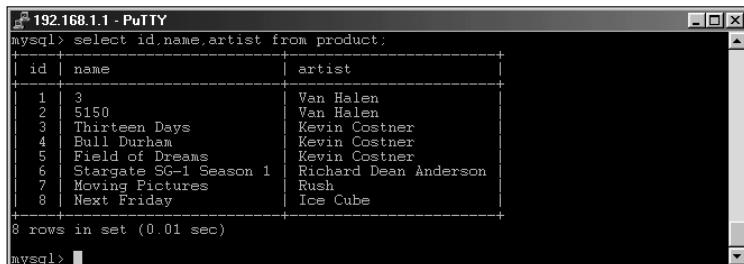
```
INSERT INTO product values ('','Next Friday','Ice
Cube','19.99','34','2','Follow up to Friday. Another great Ice
Cube movie.','2');
```



```
192.168.1.71 - PuTTY
mysql> INSERT INTO product values ('','Next Friday','Ice Cube','19.99','34','2','Follow up to Friday. Another great Ice Cube movie.','2');
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.03 sec)
mysql>
```

**Figure 18-5:** The INSERT statement, performed on the master server

Figure 18-6 shows the same query from Figure 18-4 on the slave server. Note that the new insert that was performed on the master is propagated to the slave.



```
192.168.1.1 - PuTTY
mysql> select id,name,artist from product;
+----+-----+-----+
| id | name      | artist        |
+----+-----+-----+
|  1 | 3          | Van Halen     |
|  2 | 5150       | Van Halen     |
|  3 | Thirteen Days | Kevin Costner |
|  4 | Bull Durham | Kevin Costner |
|  5 | Field of Dreams | Kevin Costner |
|  6 | Stargate SG-1 Season 1 | Richard Dean Anderson |
|  7 | Moving Pictures | Rush           |
|  8 | Next Friday | Ice Cube      |
+----+-----+-----+
8 rows in set (0.01 sec)
mysql>
```

**Figure 18-6:** The INSERT statement on the slave that propagated automatically from the master as part of the slave's replication update

If a slave becomes disconnected for a normal reason, such as a `SLAVE STOP` command, the slave remembers its position and can catch up with any updates once it restarts. If the slave stops for an abnormal reason such as a system crash, the slave may not be able to correctly re-initialize and find its position to catch up with updates. I've seen either outcome from situations in which the MySQL server was killed abruptly on the slave—upon restart, sometimes the slave process caught up successfully, and sometimes it could not find its place.

## Multiple slave replication

Configuring replication for multiple slaves is as simple as repeating the steps for configuring a basic replication. On the master, make sure that the replication user is granted the `FILE` privilege from the new slave host. Add the lines to the configuration file of the new slave host, just as you did for the first slave.

**Note**

Be sure to use a different value for each server-id. The value for every host's server-id must be unique!

## Multiple master replication

To achieve additional peace of mind that comes from redundancy, you can configure multiple masters in a single replication set. In the background, you are really still using one master—but enabling the logging of updates on one or more slaves. Should the master server fail, any of the slave(s) can act as master.

To enable multiple masters in a replication set, edit the MySQL configuration file on one of the slave servers. Add the following lines to the [mysqld] section:

```
log-bin  
log-slave-updates
```

The previous lines should be in addition to the others for slave replication, including (but not necessarily limiting yourself to) these settings:

```
master-host=<host>  
master-user=<username>  
master-password=<password>  
server-id=<id#>
```

Stop and restart the MySQL server on the slave. It should remember its position within the slave replication and also add the files you specified so it can act as a master (including the binary update log and the index log).

Also, add users and privileges for the replication user on the candidate master server. For example, I'm going to grant access for a user named replicate with a password of fgbpr2 to access from 192.168.1.1.

```
GRANT FILE ON *.* TO replicate@192.168.1.1 IDENTIFIED BY  
'fgbpr2';
```

The current status of replication on the slave 192.168.1.1 is shown in Figure 18-7. Note that it is using master 192.168.1.71.

Assume that, for whatever reason, I have to change the master server to the candidate master. I simply issue the following statement on the slave:

```
CHANGE MASTER TO MASTER_HOST='192.168.1.136';
```

Alter the host from 192.168.1.136 for your implementation. It is important to note that when you change master servers, you may need to issue privileges so that the slave server has permission to connect to the new master. Also, you may need to make firewall or other connectivity changes to reflect the new replication master.

```
mysql> SHOW SLAVE STATUS;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Master_Host | Master_User | Master_Port | Connect_retry | Log_File | Pos
| Slave_Running | Replicate_do_db | Replicate_ignore_db | Last_errno | Last_error |
| Skip_counter | Last_log_seq |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| 192.168.1.71 | replicate | 3306 | 60 | ns2-bin.002 | 4579
| Yes | 0 | 31 | | 0 |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>
```

**Figure 18-7:** The current status of replication on a slave in my replication set

Re-examining the status of the slave with the `SHOW SLAVE STATUS` statement reveals that the change took effect as expected. The results are shown in Figure 18-8.

```
mysql> show slave status;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Master_Host | Master_User | Master_Port | Connect_retry | Log_File | Pos
| Slave_Running | Replicate_do_db | Replicate_ignore_db | Last_errno | Last_error |
| Skip_counter | Last_log_seq |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| 192.168.1.136 | replicate | 3306 | 60 | debian-bin.001 | 279
| Yes | 0 | 2 | | 0 |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>
```

**Figure 18-8:** The results from the `SHOW SLAVE STATUS` statement reveal that the `CHANGE MASTER TO` statement worked as planned.

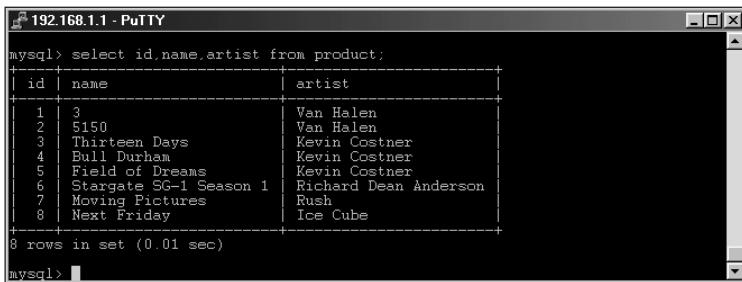
In Figure 18-8, notice the values of the `Log_file` and `Pos` columns. Compare those to the `SHOW MASTER STATUS` statement run on the new master server, as illustrated in Figure 18-9.

```
mysql> show master status;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| File | Position | Binlog_Do_Db | Binlog_Ignore_Db |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| debian-bin.001 | 279 | | |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>
```

**Figure 18-9:** The `SHOW MASTER STATUS` statement on the new master matches the values for the slave server.

Recall the current table contents for the ecommerce example database (shown in Figure 18-10 for convenience). These values are taken from the slave server.



```
mysql> select id, name, artist from product;
+----+-----+-----+
| id | name | artist |
+----+-----+-----+
| 1  | 3    | Van Halen |
| 2  | 5150 | Van Halen |
| 3  | Thirteen Days | Kevin Costner |
| 4  | Bull Durham | Kevin Costner |
| 5  | Field of Dreams | Kevin Costner |
| 6  | Stargate SG-1 Season 1 | Richard Dean Anderson |
| 7  | Moving Pictures | Rush |
| 8  | Next Friday | Ice Cube |
+----+-----+-----+
8 rows in set (0.01 sec)
```

**Figure 18-10:** The current contents of the products table

I now insert a value on the new master server as shown:

```
INSERT INTO product values ('','Clear and Present Danger','Harrison Ford','19.99','3','2','Harrison Ford in one of the Clancy Jack Ryan series.','2');
```

It is important to note that I updated this value on the new master server. If I inserted or performed any changes on the old master server, the slave or slaves would not see them. Keep this in mind for any applications that update or work with data. If you change replication master servers, those applications must be informed of the update so they send their information to the correct master server.

Examining the table contents of the product table on the slave server again reveals the new product in the database, as shown in Figure 18-11. Ignore the missing ninth value in the `id` column. This was expected and correct behavior. I made a slight mistake behind the scenes and had to delete a row. Therefore even the `auto_increment` carried over correctly. Maybe it wasn't a mistake after all, I wanted to show that `auto_increment` columns even worked when changing master servers.



```
mysql> select id, name, artist from product;
+----+-----+-----+
| id | name | artist |
+----+-----+-----+
| 1  | 3    | Van Halen |
| 2  | 5150 | Van Halen |
| 3  | Thirteen Days | Kevin Costner |
| 4  | Bull Durham | Kevin Costner |
| 5  | Field of Dreams | Kevin Costner |
| 6  | Stargate SG-1 Season 1 | Richard Dean Anderson |
| 7  | Moving Pictures | Rush |
| 8  | Next Friday | Ice Cube |
| 10 | Clear and Present Danger | Harrison Ford |
+----+-----+-----+
9 rows in set (0.00 sec)
```

**Figure 18-11:** The new values in the product table show that replication is working from the new master.

 Note

You must update your applications and any other processes so that they use the new master server. If you don't do this, updates made to the old master won't be propagated to the replication partners!

Unfortunately, there is no elegant solution for switching to original master server. Changing back so that the original server is again the master in the replication set involves making the original master a slave server and then following the steps in this section to change master servers on the slaves. The applications will also need to be updated to point back to the original master.

## Pass-through slave replication

Pass-through or daisy-chain replication is a term to describe replication from a single master to a slave that then acts as a master for one or more slaves. Configuration of this type of replication is simple and similar to configuration of multiple master servers.

On the slave that you want to act as a master add the following lines to the MySQL configuration file under the [mysqld] section:

```
log-bin  
log-slave-updates
```

Stop and restart the MySQL server. Add users and grants for the replication user or users that will be connecting as slaves.

On each slave server configure the master as you would any other master, pointing it to the appropriate master server. Those steps are all necessary for pass-through replication.

# Monitoring Replication

Even though replication is stable and constantly being improved, it is still another level of complication to a database. In addition, it creates yet another item that can fail and cause the administrator to lose time and sleep. Therefore, it is necessary to monitor the replication cluster to ensure that it is behaving as expected.

This section examines some methods for monitoring replication including manual and semi-automated monitoring.

## Monitoring replication with Perl

The simplest way to monitor replication is simply by typing `SHOW SLAVE STATUS`—although this approach can quickly become a burden for a replication set of any size. Even the smallest replication set must have its status monitored—fortunately, a relatively efficient method for doing so exists.

Using Perl you can quickly build a custom monitoring solution for your replication implementation. At the most basic level, an administrator has to know when a slave server stops replicating. What methods you use to notify the administrator upon failure are dependent on your needs.

Examine the following code:

```
#!/usr/bin/perl

use DBI;

$thishost = `ifconfig | grep -l eth | grep inet | cut -d':' -f2
| cut -d' ' -f1`;

$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql::localhost",undef,'boo');

# Error Checking using an IF test.
if (! $dbh) { print "Connection unsuccessful!\n\n"; }

$query = "SHOW SLAVE STATUS";
$sth = $dbh->prepare($query);
$sth->execute();

while ((@status) = ( $sth->fetchrow_array() ) ) {
    $host = $status[0];
    $file = $status[4];
    $position = $status[5];
    $run = $status[6];
}
if ($run ne "Yes") {
    open MAIL, "|mail -s 'Replication Problem: $thishost'
suehring@braingia.org";
    print MAIL "REPLICATION PROBLEM on $thishost\n";
    print MAIL "Replicating from: $host\n";
    print MAIL "Replication file: $file. Position: $position\n";
    print MAIL "Replication running: $run\n";
    close (MAIL);
}
```

The code shows a small but useful monitoring script for watching slave replication. If something goes wrong and the slave reports a running status other than "Yes", an e-mail will be sent to an administrator.

Examining code snippets for some interesting (and not-so-interesting) areas:

```
$thishost = `ifconfig | grep -l eth | grep inet | cut -d':' -f2
| cut -d' ' -f1`;
```

The previous code runs the system command `ifconfig` and does some minor messaging to get the IP address of this host.

```
$dbh = DBI->connect("DBI:mysql::localhost",undef,'boo');

# Error Checking using an IF test.
if (! $dbh) { print "Connection unsuccessful!\n\n"; }

$query = "SHOW SLAVE STATUS";
$sth = $dbh->prepare($query);
$sth->execute();
```

Nothing new for this section of the script. Standard Perl-DBI.

**Cross-Reference**

For more information on the Perl-DBI and MySQL DBD, see Chapter 15.

The next snippet, however, shows some essential differences:

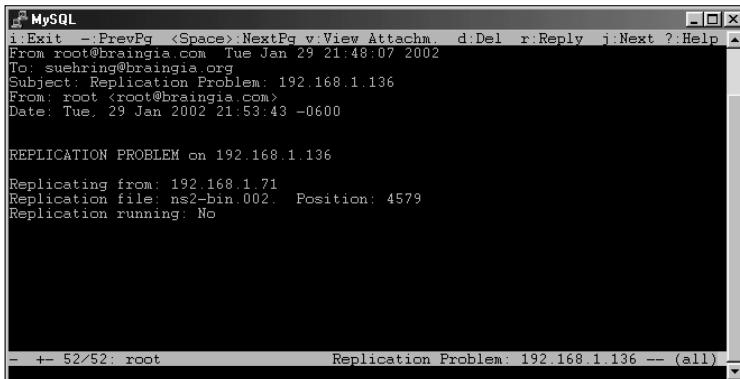
```
while ((@status) = ( $sth->fetchrow_array() ) ) {
    $host = $status[0];
    $file = $status[4];
    $position = $status[5];
    $run = $status[6];
}
```

The previous section takes the output from the `SHOW SLAVE STATUS` statement and parses it into variables that make sense for the various columns in the statement.

```
if ($run ne "Yes") {
    open MAIL, "|mail -s 'Replication Problem: $thishost'
suehring@braingia.org";
    print MAIL "REPLICATION PROBLEM on $thishost\n";
    print MAIL "Replicating from: $host\n";
    print MAIL "Replication file: $file. Position: $position\n";
    print MAIL "Replication running: $run\n";
    close (MAIL);
}
```

The final section of the script evaluates the `Slave_running` column. Under normal operations the `Slave_running` column is Yes if replication is running. However, if the result is anything other than Yes, an e-mail will be sent to an administrator. The e-mail contents from the script are shown in Figure 18-12:

This script could be run on a schedule with `cron` so that the system is automatically monitored.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "MySQL" with a black background. It displays an email message from "root@braingia.com" to "suehring@braingia.org" dated Tuesday, January 29, 2002, at 21:48:07. The subject is "Replication Problem: 192.168.1.136". The message body starts with "REPLICATION PROBLEM on 192.168.1.136" and details replication status: "Replicating from: 192.168.1.71", "Replication file: ns2-bin.002", "Position: 4579", and "Replication running: No". At the bottom of the window, the status bar shows "- + 52/52: root Replication Problem: 192.168.1.136 -- (all)".

**Figure 18-12:** The e-mail that results when there is a replication problem.

## Monitoring replication through the Web

The script from the previous section can easily be enhanced to monitor a number of servers. In addition, that monitoring data can then be used to create a dynamic Web page with the results. This type of monitoring can be useful for proactively watching a group of servers.

This section shows an example of replication monitoring through the Web. If, however, I use PHP to make a dynamic Web page, I have to convert the script to PHP.

**Note**

For this section, I assume you have PHP with MySQL enabled, as well as a working Web server.

PHP offers an advantage over Perl for this application. Ideally, the monitoring page would include an auto-refresh so that the administrator can monitor the replication in pseudo-real time. It can be done in Perl; however the solution is much more elegant in PHP.

It can be done with a CGI; however, PHP makes it much easier. Using PHP as the development language, I can add an auto-refresh easily; and when the page updates, it will automatically re-run the statements to gather the performance data from the members of the replication set.

The basis for the program will be a central monitoring host that sends the SHOW SLAVE STATUS statement to the replication slaves at regular intervals and also sends the SHOW MASTER STATUS statement to the replication master. The program then outputs a Web page in table format with some pretty colors.

To enable the program on the monitor host to query the slaves adding a user on the slaves' MySQL server is necessary. The user must have the `process` privilege to issue the `SHOW` statement. Consider this example:

```
grant process on *.* to rmonitor@192.168.1.75 identified by  
'maddog31';
```

This statement is issued on all MySQL servers in the replication set. The monitoring host will be 192.168.1.75 and will be monitored by user `rmonitor`.

The code for the monitoring program is as follows:

```
<?php  
  
$slave = array(0=> "192.168.1.136", 1=> "192.168.1.1");  
$master = array(0=> "192.168.1.71");
```

The previous code snippet builds arrays for master and slave servers. In my replication setup, there are only two slave servers and one master server. For an enhancement of this script, you could store the replication servers within a database and query for those servers.

```
$username = "rmonitor";  
$password = "maddog31";  
  
print "<table border=1><P>\n";  
print "<tr><td>Last  
Update</td><td>Type</td><td>IP</td><td>Replication  
File</td><td>Position</td><td>Run?</td><P>\n";
```

The previous snippet sets the values for connecting to the MySQL servers in the replication set as well as some basic HTML.

```
foreach ($slave as $server) {  
    print "<tr><P>\n";  
    slavestatus($server,$username,$password);  
    print "</tr><P>\n";  
}  
foreach ($master as $server) {  
    print "<tr><P>\n";  
    masterstatus($server,$username,$password);  
    print "</tr><P>\n";  
}
```

The previous snippet calls the functions for querying the various replication servers. Again, by adding a feature to gather this data from a MySQL database, you could use one function and call the server based on what type it is as stored in your database.

```
function slavestatus ($host,$username,$password) {  
    $dbconn = mysql_connect($host,$username,$password) or die  
    ("Cannot connect to database server");  
    $result = mysql_query("SHOW SLAVE STATUS");  
    $timeresult = mysql_query("SELECT NOW()");  
    $time = mysql_result($timeresult, 0, 0);
```

The next step is to make a connection to the database and issue statements, including one that queries for the current time from the replication server.

```
while ($status = mysql_fetch_array($result)) {  
    $mysqlserver = $host;  
    $file = $status[4];  
    $position = $status[5];  
    $run = $status[6];  
    $errnum = $status[9];  
    $errmsg = $status[10];  
}
```

Taking the results from SHOW SLAVE SERVER, I parse them into variables that make some sense for the application context. The code looks like this:

```
if ($run != "Yes") {  
    $color = "<td bgcolor=\"#CC3333\">";  
    $additional = "<td>$errnum - $errmsg</td>";  
} else {  
    $color = "<td bgcolor=\"#33FF33\">";  
}  
print "<td>$time</td>$color Slave</td>$color  
$host</td><td>$file</td><td>$position</td><td>$run</td>$additio  
nal<P>\n";  
}
```

The contents of the \$run variable are examined. If it is anything other than Yes is found, the background color of the table cell changes to red (otherwise it's green).

Pointing a Web browser to the page results in the listing illustrated in Figure 18-13.

The replication status from Figure 18-13 is taken directly from output of the appropriate SHOW statement. Notice that there is no Yes or No applicable for the master server. This is because the master server doesn't know anything about replication or the slaves that replicate from it. It simply goes about its business of recording updates and changes to the binary replication log.

Examination of the output in Figure 18-13 shows that I have a problem with a slave in the replication set. It just so happens that the error leads directly into the next section of the chapter. Before you do so, however, you may have to make another improvement on the monitoring PHP script — adding a refresh to the page so that it automatically runs every  $N$  seconds or minutes.

| Last Update            | Type   | IP            | Replication File | Position | Run? |
|------------------------|--------|---------------|------------------|----------|------|
| 2002-01-30<br>17:24:31 | Slave  | 192.168.1.136 | ns2-bin.002      | 5098     | Yes  |
| 2002-01-30<br>17:17:00 | Slave  | 192.168.1.1   | ns2-bin.002      | 182      | No   |
| 2002-01-30<br>17:21:08 | Master | 192.168.1.71  | ns2-bin.002      | 5098     | n/a  |

**Figure 18-13:** The monitoring application built into PHP

## Kick-starting Replication

Replication has become quite a robust addition to MySQL. As part of my work with MySQL, I administer a large MySQL replication cluster. Unfortunately, the cluster is built on an older version of MySQL—and it's too vital to update in place. Accordingly (though the actual replication is acceptably stable), I've had to get by without the benefit of some of the better—and more recent—replication commands shown in this chapter.

This section examines what can be done if replication goes wrong—including commands and statements that can kick-start replication.

## When good replication goes bad

Monitoring replication regularly, you may encounter errors. For example, an error occurred within in my replication set (as shown in Figure 18-13). I attempted to restart the replication by using the `RESET SLAVE` command—but because the ecommerce database already exists, the replication failed.

Behind the scenes, the `RESET SLAVE` statement tells the slave server to forget its position in the replication logs and start over. For updates and changes, this can cause replication to fail on that slave server. The slave server attempts to re-create the database or table or perform some other statement. However; a conflict exists—thus the statement will fail.

In an instance such as this, you must restart replication across your replication set. The procedure to use follows some of the same steps you took to start replication:

1. Stop the MySQL server on the master.
2. Take a snapshot of the data.
3. Start the MySQL server on the master.
4. Copy the snapshot of the data to the slaves.
5. Stop the slave server.
6. Move the snapshot data into the data directory on the slave.
7. Start the slave server.

The master and slave(s) now have the same starting point for data and can begin replicating from that known good set of data.

## Kick-starting replication revealed

As a replication best practice, I make one snapshot of data on the master and copy that to a separate location on the master server. Then, when I have to restart replication on one or more slave servers, I can simply take that snapshot from the beginning of the replication and copy it to the slave server.

Restarting replication on the slave server with that known data—and issuing a `RESET SLAVE` statement—causes the slave to play back the entire replication log from the beginning, thus catching up with the master server.

1. Copy the snapshot of the data to the slaves.
2. Stop the slave server.

3. Move the snapshot data into the data directory on the slave.
4. Start the slave server.

Since you don't have to get a snapshot from the master, you don't have to stop MySQL on the master. This is a key feature for systems where uptime of the master server is crucial.

Examining this type of method a little closer might be helpful. I set up an example that starts from the beginning—creating a snapshot on the master. This step has to be performed just this one time; afterward, it won't be necessary unless the master server must be stopped for some unforeseen reason.

I am replicating only the ecommerce database. To do that, I add the following line to the [mysqld] section of the MySQL configuration file on the master:

```
replicate-do-db = ecommerce
```

I stop the MySQL server on the master and make a backup of the ecommerce database.

```
cd /var/lib/mysql  
mkdir snapshot  
tar -zcvpf ecommerce.tgz ecommerce  
mv ecommerce.tgz snapshot
```

On the master server, I now have a snapshot of the ecommerce database as it exists at this point in time. That snapshot is safely stored in the snapshot directory on the master server. I can restart the master server's MySQL process.

I now copy that snapshot to the slave servers. Personally, I prefer to use `scp` for this task; you may want to use `ftp` or some other method for transferring the file to the slave server.

On each slave server, I stop the MySQL server and then change to the data directory. Next I unarchive the snapshot file that I transferred from the master, and use that file to overwrite the existing ecommerce database folder and files—after which I can start the MySQL server on the slave servers. The replication set is up and running, as evidenced by Figure 18-14.

If one of the slave servers goes down for any reason, I can simply copy the snapshot that I already created from the master, stop the slave server, overwrite the database, and start the slave server again.

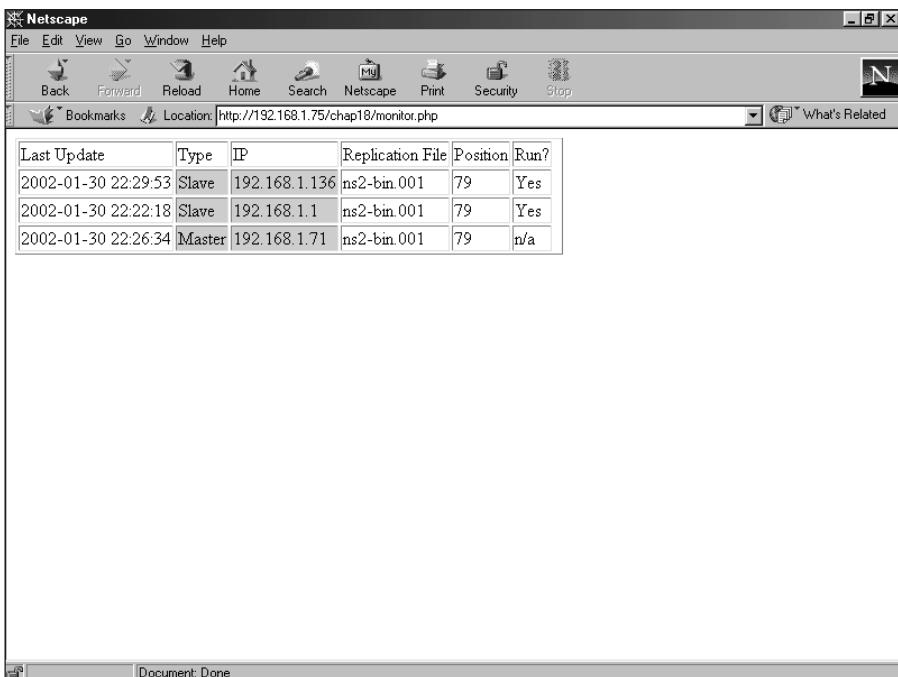


Figure 18-14: The replication set after kick-starting

## Summary

Replication does not require a constant connection between the master and slave servers in a replication set. The administrator can fine-tune the databases or tables that he or she wants to replicate. This is done during the original configuration process for replication.

- ◆ All servers in a replication set should be running the same version of MySQL because the format and options can change from version to version.
- ◆ The `server-id` value set in the configuration file must be different for all servers in the replication set, regardless of their status as master or slave server.
- ◆ The most common replication type is one master and multiple slaves. MySQL currently does not support multiple master replication, but there is some minor trickery that you can do to add redundancy.
- ◆ A snapshot should be taken of the data to be replicated prior to starting the replication set. That snapshot must be distributed to all replication partners prior to starting replication.

- ◆ Regardless of the type chosen for the replication set, monitoring replication is important. The size of the binary log can grow to no more than 2 gigabytes on some file systems; other issues can also arise that cause replication to fail.
- ◆ Perl with the DBI/DBD can be used to produce a simple replication monitoring program for replication.
- ◆ Using PHP, a more sophisticated monitoring program can be built that is accessible from the Web.
- ◆ If an error or other unexpected event occurs, one or more servers in the replication set may break out of the set. If this happens, you will have to kick-start the replication by issuing commands or manually restarting replication.
- ◆ One way to kick-start replication is to keep the original snapshot on the master and distribute that to the slave server. The slave server then replays the replication log to catch up.





# Integration of Internet Services

In many ways, MySQL makes a great database and backend for many Internet and e-commerce services. MySQL offers a no-cost/low-cost licensing system, MySQL is versatile, and MySQL is both stable and fast. When combined with a low-cost/no-cost operating system such as Linux, MySQL can be the perfect backend for Internet services such as e-mail, customer tracking, virtual services, DNS, and authentication.

**Note**

Some privately funded studies claim that the Total Cost of Ownership (TCO) is at least as high with Linux as it is with Microsoft Windows—although (given the fierce competition among vendors of operating systems), such studies may be less than objective. On the other hand, if you implement Linux on an Internet server, the low initial cost of acquiring the OS (as basic freeware) may not be the only outlay required. Other potential costs may crop up in such areas as technical support, overall network security, and compatibility with legacy systems—though these are not unique to Linux. In my experience, running Linux often costs less—but evaluate the needs of your own system carefully before you commit to a major change of operating systems.

Linux can be downloaded for free or purchased for a relatively low cost with no additional licensing costs for 5 or 500,000 users. Powerful server software such as Sendmail and Apache do not require additional licenses and virtually no maintenance once installed. Linux is secure. When an update is released for almost any service running on Linux, the server does not need to be rebooted to apply the update. Finally, Linux has low overhead and can be installed on machines with lower hardware requirements.

## In This Chapter

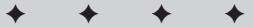
Authenticating users with PAM and NSS via MySQL

Managing DNS with MySQL

Integrating RADIUS with MySQL

Using MySQL to integrate and manage e-mail

Building a full-scale virtual-services interface



For these and other reasons, this chapter concentrates on integrating MySQL with Linux services for the Internet. These services include PAM (Pluggable Authentication Modules,) virtual services, e-mail, and more. I also show an example of a Web-based management application for virtual services.

## PAM and NSS User Authentication in MySQL

Pluggable Authentication Module (PAM) technology is the basis for the integration of MySQL with many services in Linux. Using PAM, the administrator can configure PAM-aware applications to use complex (or simple) methods for authenticating users and allowing access to resources.

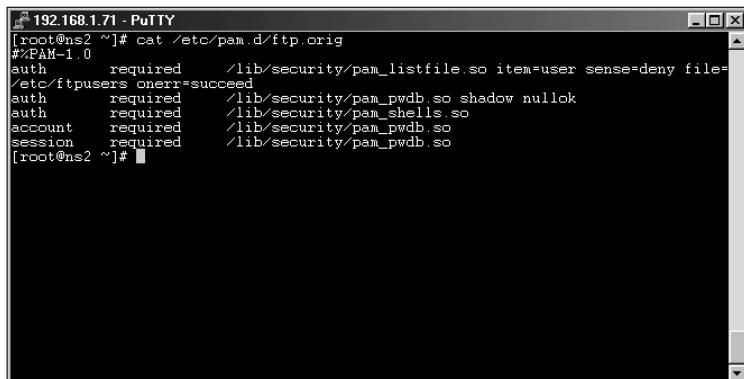
As the name suggests, PAM uses modules for authentication. There are different modules used for different types of authentication. For a given program, the administrator can configure the use of one or more modules to use for authentication. Such modules can be the `passwd/shadow` files or other methods including a module that rejects all authentication requests.

Of special relevance to a book on MySQL is a module that enables PAM-aware applications to use a MySQL database for authentication. This section looks at the PAM-MySQL module including installation and use as it relates to MySQL.

**Note**

This section is not meant to be a comprehensive guide to PAM. Later sections of this chapter examine integration of PAM-MySQL with other applications.

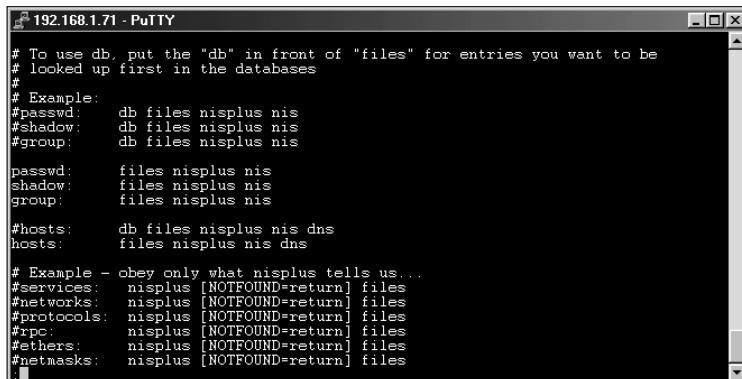
Figure 19-1 shows an example of a PAM configuration file for the `ftp` service. The file is located in `/etc/pam.d`.



```
192.168.1.71 - PuTTY
[root@ns2 ~]# cat /etc/pam.d/ftp.orig
#>PAM-1.0
auth    required      /lib/security/pam_listfile.so item=user sense=deny file=/etc/ftprusers onerr=succeed
auth    required      /lib/security/pam_pwdb.so shadow nullok
auth    required      /lib/security/pam_shells.so
account required     /lib/security/pam_pwdb.so
session required     /lib/security/pam_pwdb.so
[root@ns2 ~]#
```

**Figure 19-1:** An example PAM configuration file

NSS (Name Service Switch) refers to the organization of services queried for information on an account. The NSS configuration is stored in a file called `nsswitch.conf` and is usually located in `/etc`. A sample `/etc/nsswitch.conf` file is shown in Figure 19-2. Using `nsswitch.conf`, the administrator can configure the sequence of locations that the system checks when it tries to determine identifying data such as a user's home directory or group.



The screenshot shows a PuTTY terminal window titled "192.168.1.71 - PuTTY". The window displays the contents of the `/etc/nsswitch.conf` file. The file contains configuration entries for various services, primarily using the NIS+ protocol. Key sections include:

- # To use db, put the "db" in front of "files" for entries you want to be looked up first in the databases
- # Example:
  - #passwd: db files nisplus nis
  - #shadow: db files nisplus nis
  - #group: db files nisplus nis
- passwd: files nisplus nis
- shadow: files nisplus nis
- group: files nisplus nis
- hosts: db files nisplus nis dns
- hosts: files nisplus nis dns
- # Example - obey only what nisplus tells us...
- #services: nisplus [NOTFOUND=return] files
- #networks: nisplus [NOTFOUND=return] files
- #protocols: nisplus [NOTFOUND=return] files
- #rpc: nisplus [NOTFOUND=return] files
- #ethers: nisplus [NOTFOUND=return] files
- #netmasks: nisplus [NOTFOUND=return] files

Figure 19-2: The `/etc/nsswitch.conf` file

As with PAM, a version of NSS exists that is specifically for MySQL. I'll examine installation and use of NSS within this chapter.

## Installing PAM-MySQL

You may already have PAM installed on your computer or server. You can determine whether PAM is installed by looking at the contents of the `/etc/pam.d/` directory or `/etc/pam.conf`.

Because PAM comes installed on many distributions, I won't include specific coverage of PAM installation. Before continuing with the demonstrations in this section, however, make sure you have PAM installed and configured on your system.

### Downloading and configuring PAM

If you don't have either `/etc/pam.d/` directory or `/etc/pam.conf`, on your system, then PAM is not currently installed. You can download the PAM-MySQL module from <https://sourceforge.net/projects/pam-mysql/>. Once the download is complete, unpack the archive and simply type `make` at the command line within the `pam-mysql` directory. Copy the resulting `pam_mysql.so` file to the `/lib/security` directory, using the following command:

```
cp pam_mysql.so /lib/security
```

If you encounter problems compiling, it might be because you don't have the development headers for MySQL installed. The computer on which you're installing PAM-MySQL need not be the same as the MySQL server—but PAM-MySQL requires that the development headers (and thus the client) for MySQL be installed on the host.

## PAM-MySQL syntax

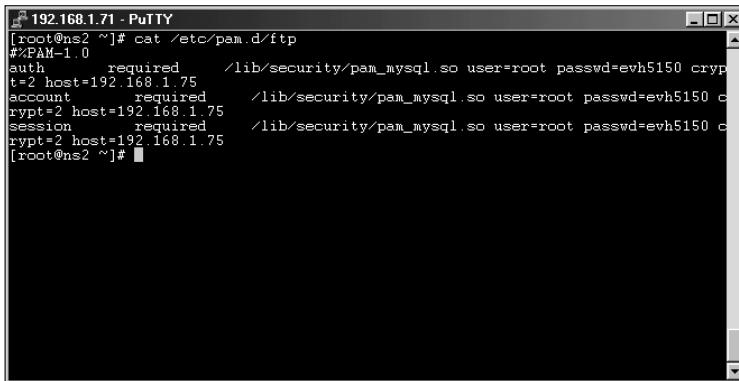
Recall the syntax of the example PAM configuration file shown in Figure 19-1. Configuring an application to use PAM-MySQL requires the editing of the file. There are options that can be set to configure how PAM-MySQL connects to and queries for valid users when processing a request. The options and their defaults are shown in Table 19-1.

**Table 19-1  
PAM-MySQL Configuration Options**

| <b>Option</b> | <b>Default</b> | <b>Description</b>  |
|---------------|----------------|---|
| Host          | localhost      | The MySQL server to connect to for authentication.        |
| User          | nobody         | The user to use for connecting to the MySQL server.       |
| Passwd        | none           | The password to use for connecting to the MySQL server.   |
| Db            | mysql          | The name of the database containing the user information. |
| Table         | user           | The name of the table containing the user information.    |
| Usercolumn    | user           | The name of the column containing the username.           |
| Passwdcolumn  | password       | The name of the column containing passwords.              |
| Crypt         | 0              | How passwords are encrypted. 0=none, 1=crypt, 2=mysql.    |
| where=        | none           | Additional WHERE clause to add to the select.             |

For example, a configuration file for PAM-MySQL to use with FTP might look like the one shown in Figure 19-3.

In the example shown in Figure 19-3, the user account that connects to the MySQL server on host 192.168.1.75 is root and passwords sent to MySQL were encrypted with MySQL's internal PASSWORD function. The rest of the settings were left at their defaults; thus the MySQL grants database will be used for authentication. I'll be building a customized user database later in this chapter for use with PAM-MySQL and NSS-MySQL.



```
[root@ns2 ~]# cat /etc/pam.d/ftp
#>PAM-1 0
auth    required      /lib/security/pam_mysql.so user=root passwd=evh5150 crypt
account  required      /lib/security/pam_mysql.so user=root passwd=evh5150 crypt
session  required      /lib/security/pam_mysql.so user=root passwd=evh5150 crypt
password  required      /lib/security/pam_mysql.so user=root passwd=evh5150 crypt
[root@ns2 ~]#
```

**Figure 19-3:** An example configuration file for ftp on a system with PAM-MySQL

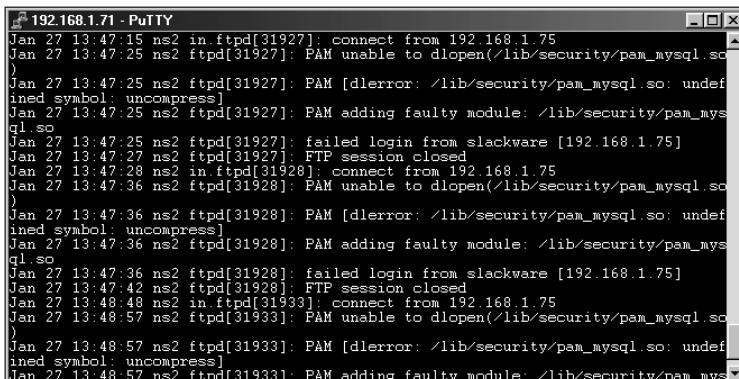


I recommend that you create a user with only the privileges needed to connect using PAM. *Never use the root user as shown in the example!*

## Testing PAM-MySQL

Prior to attempting to test PAM-MySQL you should test the service to make sure that it is currently working. It doesn't pay to attempt to get PAM-MySQL working with a service if the service isn't working to begin with. In this section I'll be testing PAM-MySQL with FTP using Wu-ftpD.

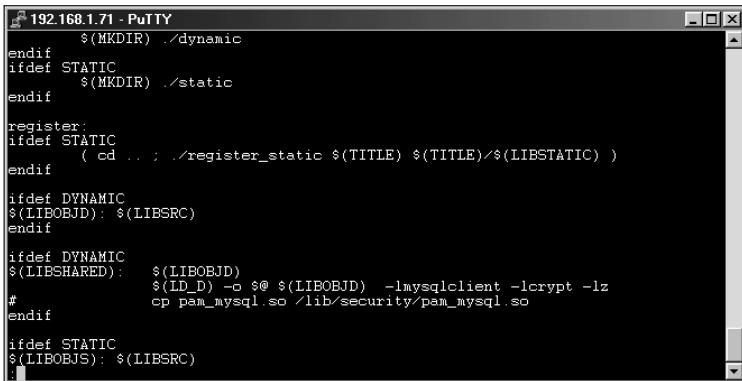
I've shown examples of the original PAM configuration file for ftp, as well as an example of a PAM-MySQL configuration file for ftp. Using the configuration file shown in Figure 19-3, I attempt to connect via ftp to the server. The attempt fails. Examining the messages logfile on the server, I notice that a number of errors refer to a faulty module, as shown in Figure 19-4.



```
Jan 27 13:47:15 ns2 in.ftpd[31927]: connect from 192.168.1.75
Jan 27 13:47:25 ns2 ftpd[31927]: PAM unable to dlopen(/lib/security/pam_mysql.so)
Jan 27 13:47:25 ns2 ftpd[31927]: PAM [dlerror: /lib/security/pam_mysql.so: undefined symbol: uncompress]
Jan 27 13:47:25 ns2 ftpd[31927]: PAM adding faulty module: /lib/security/pam_mysql.so
Jan 27 13:47:25 ns2 ftpd[31927]: failed login from slackware [192.168.1.75]
Jan 27 13:47:27 ns2 ftpd[31927]: FTP session closed
Jan 27 13:47:28 ns2 in.ftpd[31928]: connect from 192.168.1.75
Jan 27 13:47:36 ns2 ftpd[31928]: PAM unable to dlopen(/lib/security/pam_mysql.so)
Jan 27 13:47:36 ns2 ftpd[31928]: PAM [dlerror: /lib/security/pam_mysql.so: undefined symbol: uncompress]
Jan 27 13:47:36 ns2 ftpd[31928]: PAM adding faulty module: /lib/security/pam_mysql.so
Jan 27 13:47:36 ns2 ftpd[31928]: failed login from slackware [192.168.1.75]
Jan 27 13:47:42 ns2 ftpd[31928]: FTP session closed
Jan 27 13:48:48 ns2 in.ftpd[31933]: connect from 192.168.1.75
Jan 27 13:48:57 ns2 ftpd[31933]: PAM unable to dlopen(/lib/security/pam_mysql.so)
Jan 27 13:48:57 ns2 ftpd[31933]: PAM [dlerror: /lib/security/pam_mysql.so: undefined symbol: uncompress]
Jan 27 13:48:57 ns2 ftpd[31933]: PAM adding faulty module: /lib/security/pam_mysql.so
```

**Figure 19-4:** Errors from a test of PAM-MySQL

Apparently the module is missing something; it can't figure out a call to `uncompress` (which is part of the `zlib` library). I already have `zlib` installed. An examination of the `Makefile` for PAM-MySQL reveals that there is no reference to `zlib`. Therefore I need to add a reference (`-lz`) to the `Makefile` and recompile. Figure 19-5 illustrates the section of the `Makefile` where I placed `-lz`.



```

192.168.1.71 - PuTTY
$(MKDIR) ./dynamic
endif
ifdef STATIC
$(MKDIR) ./static
endif

register:
ifdef STATIC
(cd .. ; ./register_static $(TITLE) $(TITLE)/$(LIBSTATIC) )
endif

ifdef DYNAMIC
$(LIBOBJD): $(LIBSRC)
endif

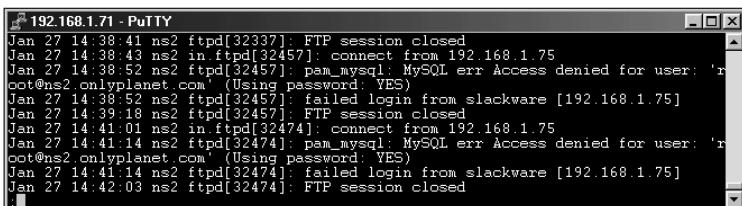
ifdef DYNAMIC
$(LIBSHARED):
    $(LD_D) -o $@ $(LIBOBJD) -lmysqlclient -lcrypt -lz
#           cp pam_mysql.so /lib/security/pam_mysql.so
endif

ifdef STATIC
$(LIBOBJS): $(LIBSRC)

```

**Figure 19-5:** Adding `-lz` to the `Makefile` for PAM-MySQL

I then recompile the software by typing `make`, and copy the new `pam_mysql.so` file to `/lib/security`. Another attempt to log in still fails. Examination of the logfile now reveals that the failed connection has a MySQL error message like the one in Figure 19-6.



```

192.168.1.71 - PuTTY
Jan 27 14:38:41 ns2 ftpd[32337]: FTP session closed
Jan 27 14:38:43 ns2 in_ftpd[32457]: connect from 192.168.1.75
Jan 27 14:38:52 ns2 ftpd[32457]: pam_mysql: MySQL err Access denied for user: 'r
oot@ns2.onlyplanet.com' (Using password: YES)
Jan 27 14:38:52 ns2 in_ftpd[32457]: failed login from slackware [192.168.1.75]
Jan 27 14:39:18 ns2 in_ftpd[32457]: FTP session closed
Jan 27 14:41:01 ns2 in_ftpd[32474]: connect from 192.168.1.75
Jan 27 14:41:14 ns2 ftpd[32474]: pam_mysql: MySQL err Access denied for user: 'r
oot@ns2.onlyplanet.com' (Using password: YES)
Jan 27 14:41:14 ns2 in_ftpd[32474]: failed login from slackware [192.168.1.75]
Jan 27 14:42:03 ns2 in_ftpd[32474]: FTP session closed

```

**Figure 19-6:** Another examination of the logfile to look for errors relating to the failed ftp login

The error shown in Figure 19-6 is due to the fact that the user I defined in the PAM configuration file for `ftp` simply does not have access from this host. To correct this problem, I had to grant access and ensure the password was correct for the user within the MySQL server's grants database.

Finally, with all the problems corrected I'm able to test the connection again via `ftp`. The test is successful.

However, even though the test is successful, it could still fail for no apparent reason. If more than one user with the same password is defined in the database, the authentication fails.

**Tip**

Checking for duplicate passwords can be a good place to start troubleshooting if your authentication is failing for what appears to be no reason.

## Installing NSS-MySQL

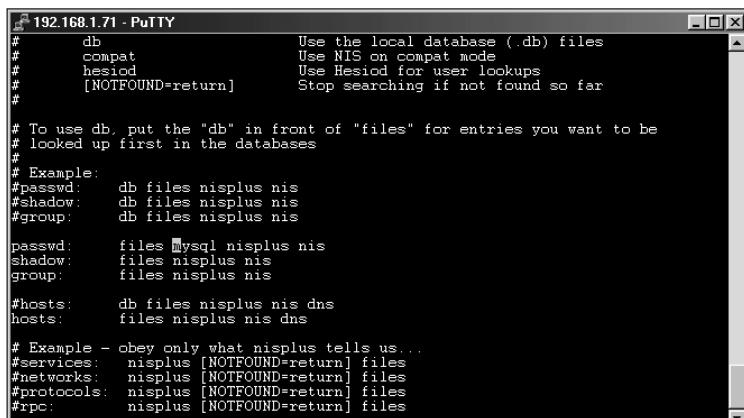
With PAM-MySQL installed, you can perform authentication. However, some needed information about users (such as user ID or home directory) is not available. Enter NSS-MySQL. NSS-MySQL provides an interface into NSS for MySQL.

Installation of NSS-MySQL begins with obtaining the software. The current location for the NSS-MySQL project is <http://savannah.gnu.org/projects/nss-mysql/>. Download and unpack the NSS-MySQL archive. The installation process is standard:

```
./configure  
make  
make install
```

## Configuration of NSS-MySQL

NSS-MySQL's configuration file is called `nss-mysql.conf` and is located in `/etc`. The options contained in the NSS-MySQL configuration file are highly specialized and dependent on your installation and desired functionality. When you've configured `nss-mysql.conf` you need to add the ability for NSS to utilize NSS-MySQL. This is accomplished by adding the word `mysql` to the appropriate lines of `/etc/nsswitch.conf`. Figure 19-7 shows an example of an `nsswitch.conf` file where NSS-MySQL has been installed.



The screenshot shows a PuTTY terminal window titled "192.168.1.71 - PuTTY". The window displays the contents of the /etc/nsswitch.conf file. The file contains several entries, each starting with a hash symbol (#) and followed by a service name and its search order. The services listed are db, compat, hesiod, and [NOTFOUND=return]. The db entry includes options for local database files, NIS compatibility mode, and Hesiod lookups. The [NOTFOUND=return] option stops searching if a user is not found. The hosts entry includes options for MySQL, NIS, and DNS. The services section at the bottom includes entries for services, networks, protocols, and ipcreg, all utilizing the nisplus and files databases with the [NOTFOUND=return] option.

```
# db                      Use the local database (.db) files  
# compat                  Use NIS on compat mode  
# hesiod                 Use Hesiod for user lookups  
# [NOTFOUND=return]        Stop searching if not found so far  
  
# To use db, put the "db" in front of "files" for entries you want to be  
# looked up first in the databases  
#  
# Example:  
#passwd:      db files nisplus nis  
#shadow:      db files nisplus nis  
#group:       db files nisplus nis  
  
passwd:      files mysql nisplus nis  
shadow:      files nisplus nis  
group:       files nisplus nis  
  
hosts:       db files nisplus nis dns  
hosts:       files nisplus nis dns  
  
# Example - obey only what nisplus tells us...  
#services:    nisplus [NOTFOUND=return] files  
#networks:   nisplus [NOTFOUND=return] files  
#protocols:  nisplus [NOTFOUND=return] files  
#ipcreg:     nisplus [NOTFOUND=return] files
```

**Figure 19-7:** Enabling NSS-MySQL in the `/etc/nsswitch.conf` configuration file for NSS

# DNS Management with MySQL

DNS, which I've seen defined as Domain Name System and Domain Name Service, is the term for the service or protocol that translates names such as `www.braingia.org` into IP addresses and vice versa. Though MySQL isn't directly tied into any DNS software (yet), MySQL can be used as a backend for a DNS management interface. This section examines how you can use MySQL to assist with DNS management. I'll be utilizing BIND as the DNS server software—though the application built here should be relatively easy to port to other software.

## Creating a DNS management interface

The BIND DNS server software uses configuration files for reading about domain configuration and name service. There is no direct interface between BIND and MySQL. Therefore, to enable MySQL and BIND to work together, data must be converted from the MySQL database to the configuration files that BIND reads.

A DNS configuration file for a generic domain can look like this:

```
$ttl 38400
@ IN SOA ns1.braingia.com. root.braingia.com. (
    2001112702
    10810
    3600
    432000
    38400 )

IN NS ns1.braingia.com.
IN NS ns2.braingia.com.
MX 0 mail.braingia.com.

$ORIGIN braingia.com.
ns1 IN A 192.168.1.75
mail IN CNAME mail.braingia.com.
www IN CNAME mail.braingia.com.
ns2 IN A 192.168.1.71
fw0 IN A 192.168.1.1
```

Taking this domain as an example, I can quickly create a database schema to match it. I am going to do without some specialty things and assume that all `$ORIGIN` values will be within the domain. In my experience, there are few instances where the origin will be different. If your implementation calls for the `$ORIGIN` to be changed frequently, you should alter the database schema accordingly. I'll also assume that TTL values will be the same across all domains. Again, if these are values you need to change frequently for your domains, you can add to the schema as needed.

The database schema is as follows:

```
CREATE TABLE domain (
    id int NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY AUTO_INCREMENT,
    domain_name varchar(255)
);

CREATE TABLE record (
    id int NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY AUTO_INCREMENT,
    domain_id int,
    name varchar(255),
    type varchar(10),
    address varchar(255)
);

CREATE TABLE nameservers (
    id int NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY AUTO_INCREMENT,
    domain_id int,
    address varchar(255)
);

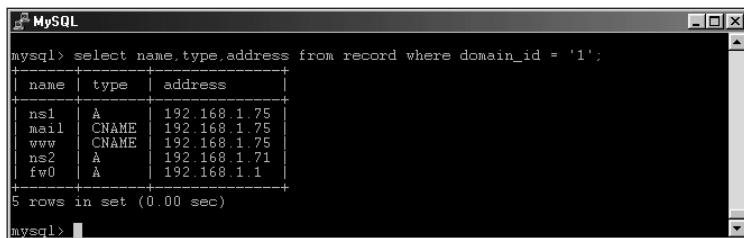
CREATE TABLE mx (
    id int NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY AUTO_INCREMENT,
    domain_id int,
    cost int,
    address varchar(255)
);

CREATE TABLE serial (
    domain_id int,
    serial varchar(50)
);
```

With that schema, I can convert the basic domain info to DDL—like this:

```
insert into domain values ('','braingia.com');
insert into record values ('','1','ns1','A','192.168.1.75');
insert into record values ('','1','mail','CNAME','ns1.braingia.com');
insert into record values ('','1','www','CNAME','ns1.braingia.com');
insert into record values ('','1','ns2','A','192.168.1.71');
insert into record values ('','1','fw0','A','192.168.1.1');
insert into nameservers values ('','1','ns1.braingia.com');
insert into nameservers values ('','1','ns2.braingia.com');
insert into serial values ('1','2001112702');
insert into mx values ('','1',0,'mail.braingia.com.');
```

Selecting the records results in some familiar-looking data, as illustrated in Figure 19-8.



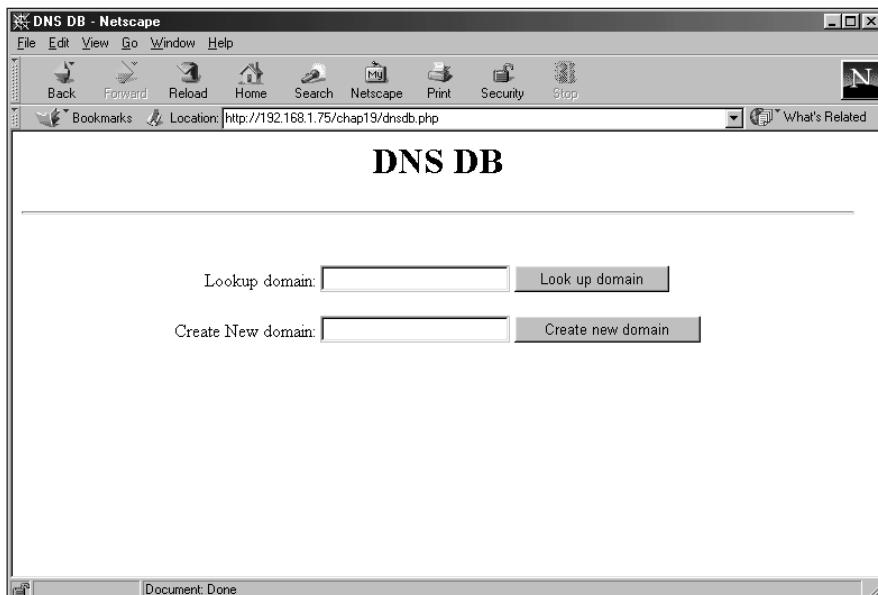
```
MySQL> select name,type,address from record where domain_id = '1';
+-----+-----+-----+
| name | type | address |
+-----+-----+-----+
| ns1  | A    | 192.168.1.75 |
| mail | CNAME | 192.168.1.75 |
| www  | CNAME | 192.168.1.75 |
| ns2  | A    | 192.168.1.71 |
| fw0  | A    | 192.168.1.1   |
+-----+-----+-----+
5 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>
```

**Figure 19-8:** The record data for the domain, as entered into the database

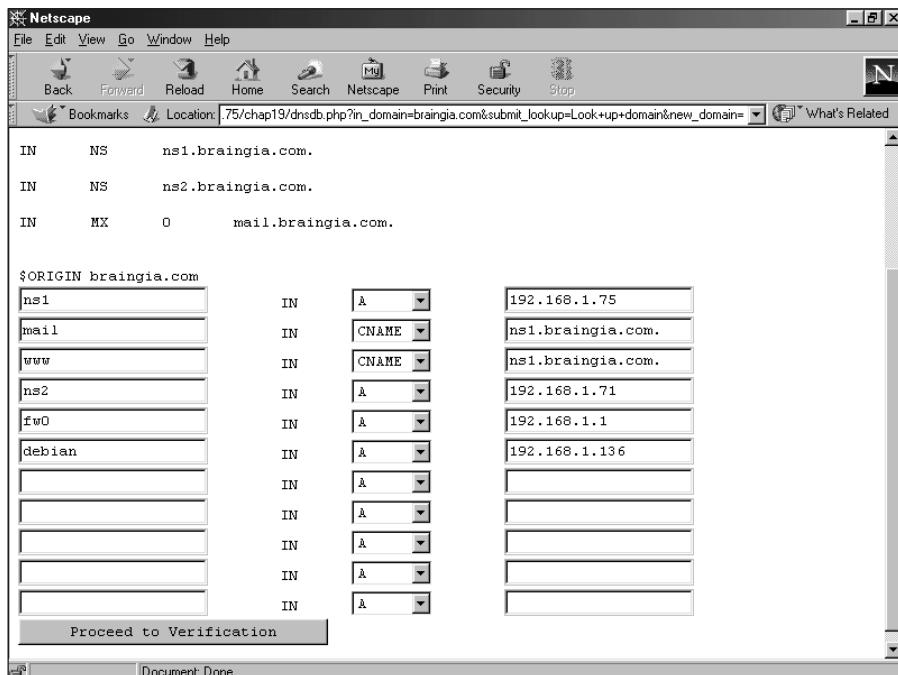
Based on the work already done, a program could be written in the language of your choice to convert the data into the flat file record that BIND prefers. However, I'd rather build a management system for the Web. Therefore, I'll be using PHP.

The DNS Web interface is meant to be used by an administrator but could be modified to be used by a customer to modify their domain or domains as well. Providers such as Fibernet, <http://www.fibernetcc.com/> allow their customers to edit DNS entries for accounts using a similar interface. (The front page of the interface is shown in Figure 19-9.)



**Figure 19-9:** The front page for the DNS Web interface

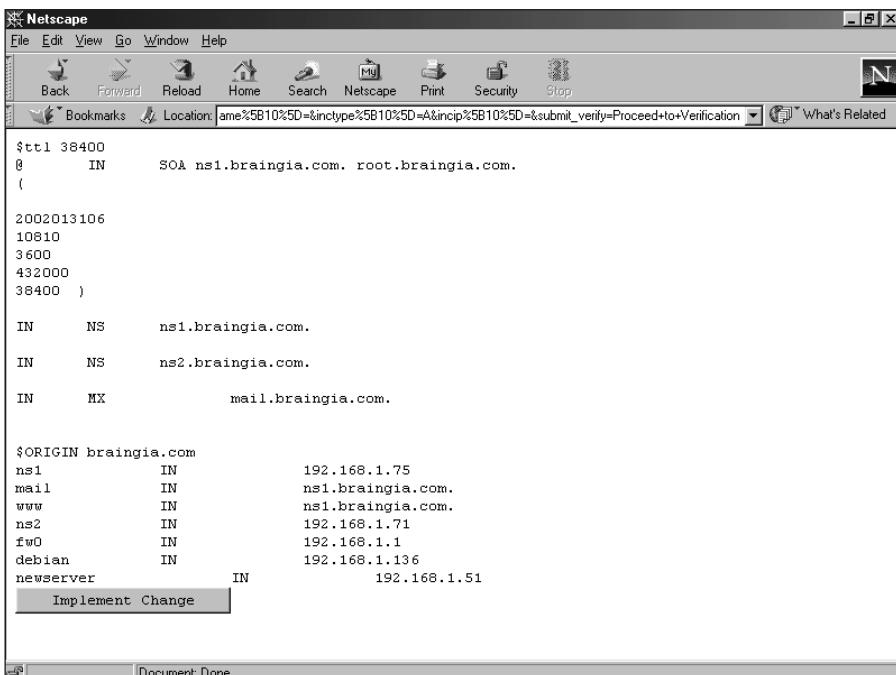
The two input boxes shown in Figure 19-9 could easily be combined into one with a little coding in the backend program. Entering an existing domain yields a page where the address records can be edited, as illustrated in Figure 19-10. The data for the page is built from data within the database.



**Figure 19-10:** Records can be edited easily within an existing domain.

Adding a new server is as simple as entering the values in a blank space and clicking Proceed to Verification. Figure 19-11 shows a new server (which I unimaginatively call newserver) being added.

The output shows what the zone file will look like in BIND format. Clicking the “Implement Change” button adds the new record to the database. Looking at the data through the MySQL CLI reveals that the new record was added, as shown in Figure 19-12.



**Figure 19-11:** Adding a new server with the DNS Web interface

```

mysql> select * from record where domain_id = 1 order by id;
+----+-----+-----+-----+
| id | domain_id | name | type | address |
+----+-----+-----+-----+
| 18 | 1 | ns1 | A | 192.168.1.75 |
| 19 | 1 | mail | CNAME | ns1.braingia.com. |
| 20 | 1 | www | CNAME | ns1.braingia.com. |
| 21 | 1 | ns2 | A | 192.168.1.71 |
| 22 | 1 | fw0 | A | 192.168.1.1 |
| 23 | 1 | debian | A | 192.168.1.136 |
| 24 | 1 | newserver | A | 192.168.1.51 |
+----+-----+-----+-----+
7 rows in set (0.00 sec)
mysql>

```

**Figure 19-12:** The new data, as shown through the MySQL CLI

Behind the scenes, the DNS interface program must convert the zone record to the BIND file format.



The MySQL-related functions used for building the Web interface for DNS are discussed in the chapter on PHP.

## MySQL and RADIUS Integration

RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service) is the protocol that enables a server to allow access to resources. In general, a user request includes a username and password. If these match the corresponding values on the server, then the user is granted access. There is also RADIUS accounting data that can be sent for the session as well. This includes a time for the start of the session along with other pertinent data and can include the number of bytes sent in the transfer at the end of the session.

Many vendors have versions of RADIUS. One that I would like to highlight is Radiator RADIUS. Though not free software, Radiator includes features necessary for large-scale implementations, good documentations, stability, and simple configuration file syntax. Radiator also features good integration with MySQL, which is why I'm highlighting in this book. More information on Radiator can be obtained at <http://www.open.com.au/radiator/>.

### A closer look at Radiator

Radiator is written in Perl. Though I was initially skeptical of the scalability of the software, I now have no such reservations. I've used Radiator for large-scale authentication implementations of over a half-million users, and the software has had no problem handling authentication requests. Since Radiator is robust, I suffered none of the growing pains that other software might when handling thousands of requests per second. These growing pains could include memory or CPU utilization problems or simply refusing connections. Even when a misconfigured access server sends thousands of invalid requests to the Radiator software, it keeps right on handling other requests.

Since Radiator is written in Perl, it uses the Perl DBI to access MySQL. Although Radiator installation is well outside the scope of this book, I'd like to examine a couple of examples of Radiator configuration file syntax to show the ease with which MySQL can be integrated into Radiator.

For example, the Client list can be stored in a MySQL table. The database is easily called with the DBSource function.

```
<ClientListSQL>
    DBSource      dbi:mysql:radius
    DBUsername   username
    DBAuth       password
    GetClientQuery select NASIDENTIFIER,SECRET from
    CLIENTLIST
</ClientListSQL>
```

Other portions of the Radiator configuration file are simple to configure as well. The DBSource is used throughout the configuration file as a means by which the administrator can specify the database and driver to use.

**Tip**

Auxiliary SELECT statements can be based on the criteria in the User-Request packet and added later.

Radiator also handles accounting requests with the same ease as authentication. The server for accounting can be different from the authentication MySQL server. Column definitions can be customized within the configuration file so that you can track only the items that you need.

## E-Mail Integration and Management with MySQL

MySQL can be used as a backend to store e-mail address information. As with DNS, data stored in a MySQL database must be converted to native format for the mail application to work with. With the use of PAM-MySQL, MySQL can be integrated into POP3 for authentication. This section looks at integration of MySQL with Sendmail, the popular e-mail software.

### Building a virtual users table for Sendmail

The virtual-users table in Sendmail is where the mappings are stored for virtual domains on a server. This is where an administrator tells the mail-server software (in this case, Sendmail) where to send mail for @*domain*.com and so on. This section tackles the building of a virtual users table from data contained in a MySQL database. A sample virtual users table might look like this:

|                          |                             |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| suehring@onlyplanet.com  | suehring@braingia.org       |
| no_one@onlyplanet.com    | error:nouser User Not Found |
| @onlyplanet.com          | all@braingia.org            |
| steve@linuxgamehq.com    | suehring@braingia.org       |
| bob@nightmaresquad.com   | bob_s↓ngermen.com           |
| ernie@nightmaresquad.com | ernie_t↓ngermen.com         |
| mike@nightmaresquad.com  | mike_f↓ngermen.com          |
| @nightmaresquad.com      | %1@braingia.com             |

Any mail received for suehring@onlyplanet.com is sent to suehring@braingia.org. Any other mail received for the onlyplanet.com domain, regardless of address, goes to all@braingia.org. The user no\_one@onlyplanet.com gets returned with an error. For the nightmaresquad.com domain, three users are defined that have different addresses. The final entry sends any mail destined for

the nightmaresquad.com to the same user@braingia.com. For example, if mail comes in to user001@nightmaresquad.com, it will be automatically sent to user001@braingia.com and so on.

The virtual users table is stored in a nontext format in the `sendmail` directory; my server, for example, stores that file as hashed data. Therefore, whenever I make a change to the virtual users table, I need to update (actually rebuild) that hash by using the `makemap` command. The file on my server is called `virtusertable`. Therefore the command that I must run after a change to the file is

```
makemap hash virtusertable < virtusertable
```

This command reads the file `virtusertable` into the `makemap` command. The result is a hashed file called `virtusertable.db`.

## A virtual e-mail database

A simple database layout for the virtual users database might look like this:

```
CREATE TABLE domain (
    id int NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY AUTO_INCREMENT,
    name varchar(255) NOT NULL UNIQUE
);

CREATE TABLE mapping (
    id int NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY AUTO_INCREMENT,
    domain_id int,
    username varchar(255),
    target varchar(255)
);
```

The database layout could be enhanced with a column that indicates whether the mapping is active. Additionally, a column or table tying the domain into a customer ID might be helpful.

Recall a sample entry from the `virtusertable` file for Sendmail:

```
bob@nightmaresquad.com      bob_s↓ngermen.com
```

The virtual e-mail address recipient is `bob@nightmaresquad.com` and the target for any e-mail sent to `bob@nightmaresquad.com` is `bob_s↓ngermen.com`. With that in mind, the database layout for virtual e-mail operates in much the same way. However, it doesn't make much sense to store the recipient domain over and over; it's a safe bet that there will be more than one virtual user recipient. Therefore an ID is assigned and the domain is stored only once in the domain table. The username in the mapping is the username for the recipient. The entire target address is then stored in the target column of the mapping table.

## Importing existing virtual e-mail entries

As with the interface built for DNS, I will be using PHP as the backend language of choice to build the virtual users interface to MySQL. Because I only have a few virtual e-mail entries currently, I don't need to perform a mass-import of the data. However, I would probably use Perl to build an import program should the need arise. A simple program for importing small virtual user tables might look like this:

```
#!/usr/bin/perl

use DBI;

# Connect to the database
$dbh = DBI->
>connect("DBI:mysql:mman:",'USERHERE','PASSWORDHERE!') or die
"No database\n";

open (FILE, "virtusertable");
while (<FILE>) {
    chomp;
    @mapping = split(/\t+/, $_);
    @fullrecipient = split(/\@/, $mapping[0]);
    $domain = $fullrecipient[1];
    $query1 = "INSERT IGNORE INTO domain values ('','$domain')";
    $sth1 = $dbh->prepare($query1);
    $sth1->execute;
}
close (FILE);

open (FILE, "virtusertable");
while (<FILE>) {
    chomp;
    @mapping = split(/\t+/, $_);
    @fullrecipient = split(/\@/, $mapping[0]);
    $username = $fullrecipient[0];
    $domain = $fullrecipient[1];
    $target = $mapping[1];
    if ($username eq "") {
        $username = "CATCHALL";
    }
    $query1 = "SELECT id FROM domain WHERE name = '$domain'";
    print "$query1\n";
    $sth1 = $dbh->prepare($query1);
    $sth1->execute or die "Can't run $query1";
    $domainid = $sth1->fetchrow_array();

    $insmap = "insert into mapping values
('','$domainid','$username','$target')";
    $sth = $dbh->prepare($insmap);
    $sth->execute or die "Can't insert\n";
```

```

print "Inserted $username to $target for domain $domainid\n";
}
close(FILE);

```

The program passes through the file twice. Therefore if you have a large virtusertable file, it may be in your best interest to rewrite the program to be a little less resource-intensive. Executing the program with the virtusertable shown in this section yields the results shown in Figure 19-13.

```

mail:~/chap19# ./createsql.pl
SELECT id FROM domain WHERE name = 'onlyplanet.com'
Inserted suehring to suehring@braingia.org for domain 1
SELECT id FROM domain WHERE name = 'onlyplanet.com'
Inserted no_one to error_noouser User Not Found for domain 1
SELECT id FROM domain WHERE name = 'onlyplanet.com'
Inserted CATCHALL to all@braingia.org for domain 1
SELECT id FROM domain WHERE name = 'linuxgamehq.com'
Inserted steve to suehring@braingia.org for domain 2
SELECT id FROM domain WHERE name = 'nightmaresquad.com'
Inserted bob to bob_s@dangermen.com for domain 3
SELECT id FROM domain WHERE name = 'nightmaresquad.com'
Inserted ernie to ernie_t@dangermen.com for domain 3
SELECT id FROM domain WHERE name = 'nightmaresquad.com'
Inserted mike to mike_f@dangermen.com for domain 3
SELECT id FROM domain WHERE name = 'nightmaresquad.com'
Inserted CATCHALL to %1@braingia.com for domain 3
mail:~/chap19#

```

**Figure 19-13:** Importing the existing virtual users table

Wherever a catchall entry exists in the virtual users table, I use the phrase CATCHALL. When the data from MySQL is converted back to virtusertable format, all CATCHALL entries must be converted back to blank entries.

The data as it now resides in the database is illustrated in Figure 19-14.

| domain |                    |
|--------|--------------------|
| id     | name               |
| 1      | onlyplanet.com     |
| 2      | linuxgamehq.com    |
| 3      | nightmaresquad.com |

3 rows in set (0.01 sec)

| mapping |           |          |                              |
|---------|-----------|----------|------------------------------|
| id      | domain_id | username | target                       |
| 1       | 1         | suehring | suehring@braingia.org        |
| 2       | 1         | no_one   | error_noouser User Not Found |
| 3       | 1         | CATCHALL | all@braingia.org             |
| 4       | 2         | steve    | suehring@braingia.org        |
| 5       | 3         | bob      | bob_s@dangermen.com          |
| 6       | 3         | ernie    | ernie_t@dangermen.com        |
| 7       | 3         | mike     | mike_f@dangermen.com         |
| 8       | 3         | CATCHALL | %1@braingia.com              |

8 rows in set (0.00 sec)

**Figure 19-14:** The virtusertable data inside the MySQL database

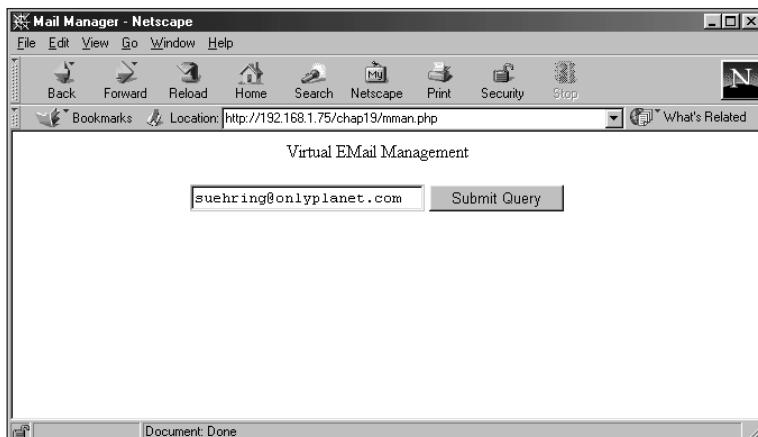


The Perl program for importing virtual user tables is also available on the CD-ROM with this book. You'll need to modify it for your implementation but it provides a good starting point.

## A Web interface for virtual e-mail management

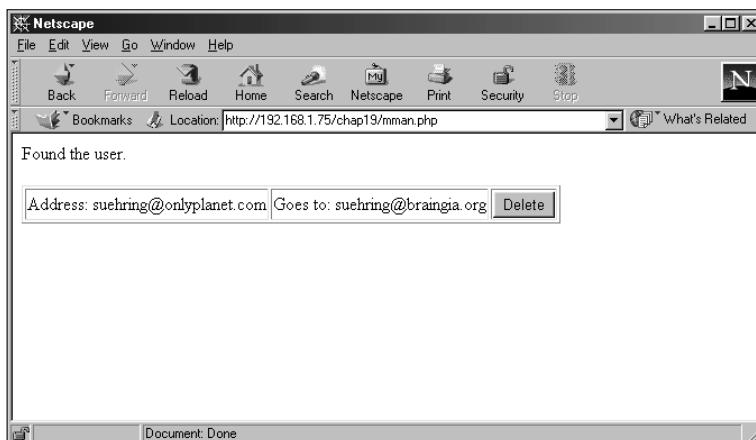
Taking the virtual e-mail database onto the Web is a good job for PHP. Using a PHP-based management system the administration of domains and virtual e-mail becomes easy. The administrator can manage virtual e-mail for a customer or provide the ability for the customer to do it themselves without worry of the underlying data being compromised.

For example, Figure 19-15 shows an administration front page for the e-mail management system. You can search for (or add) an entry by typing the search term into the box and clicking the button.



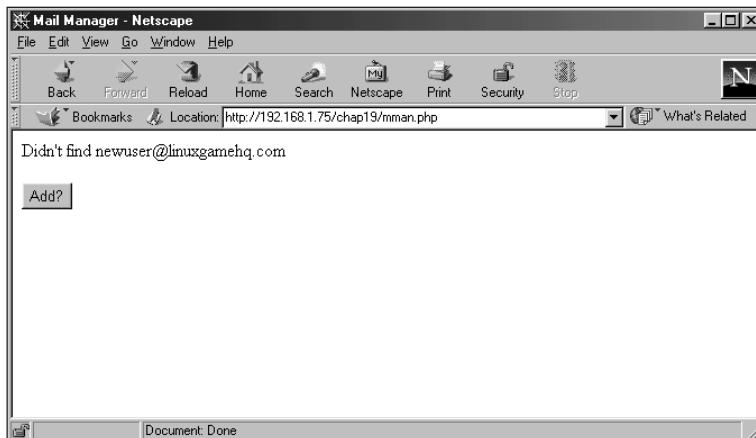
**Figure 19-15:** The administrator's front page for the virtual e-mail management Web interface

If found, the resulting page is shown; the administrator can delete the entry if necessary (see Figure 19-16).



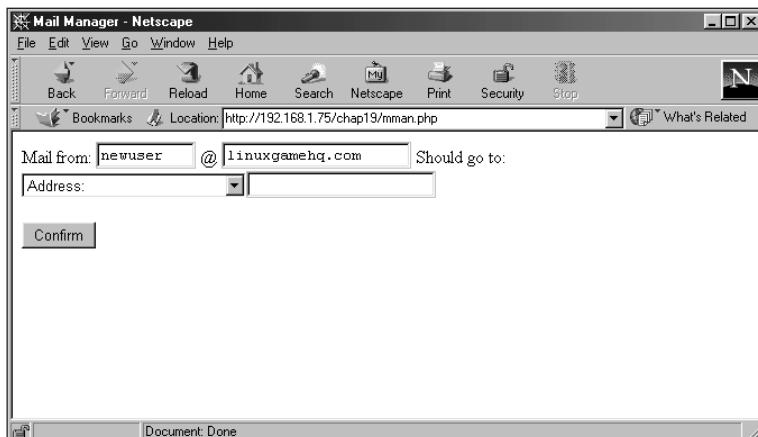
**Figure 19-16:** An entry that is found shows the results to the administrator.

If an entry is not found, the administrator is informed—and given the opportunity to add the entry, as illustrated in Figure 19-17.



**Figure 19-17:** An entry that is not found gives the administrator a chance to add the entry.

Clicking the Add button shown in Figure 19-17 yields a page where the administrator can input the pertinent details (see Figure 19-18).



**Figure 19-18:** The page shown to add an entry for virtual e-mail

Figure 19-18 shows a Select box for the target of the virtual e-mail. The administrator has a choice: Send the e-mail to another address (the default,) make it a straight mapping (%1), or return an error.

Once the relevant information has been entered, an error-checking function is called in the backend PHP program. The error-checking function checks the validity of the e-mail addresses entered to make sure they don't contain invalid characters. In addition, the error-checking function looks one more time at the database to make sure the entry doesn't already exist (just in case the administrator changed it).

Once confirmed, the entry is added to the virtual e-mail database. However, at this point, Sendmail still knows nothing of the new address. A program must be written to extract the data from the MySQL database and put it back into the *virtusertable* format for Sendmail. This program could be another function within this PHP program or (more likely) a Perl program scheduled to run every *N* minutes on the system.

# Building a Full-Scale Virtual-Services Interface

Taking the interfaces used throughout this chapter for things such as DNS and e-mail, the developer could build an interface for management of these services by clients. The clients could control their own DNS and e-mail configurations while stored virtually on a server owned by their provider.

The provider could implement the interface worry-free knowing that the customer can only affect their own entries for DNS and e-mail. With a little error checking, the client could be saved from making many common errors as well. Both aspects save the provider money by cutting down on support calls—whether for DNS, e-mail changes, or to correct a change that was implemented incorrectly.

Some providers have such an interface in place. One such provider is Fibernet, <http://www.fibernetcc.com/>. Using the Fibernet interface, customers can manage their own DNS and e-mail entries (as well as other tools for running Web sites and virtual services). Another provider is Communitech, <http://www.communitech.net/> who provide a virtual-services interface for their customers as well.

## Summary

The numerous and powerful APIs available for MySQL make services relatively easy to integrate in an operating system such as Linux.

- ◆ PAM-MySQL is a module for performing authentication with MySQL and PAM-aware applications.
- ◆ NSS-MySQL provides an interface into Name Service Switch to give account information through MySQL.
- ◆ MySQL makes for a great backend management system for applications such as DNS and e-mail.
- ◆ Using a MySQL database and Web interface in PHP, an administrator can manage domains or enable customers to manage their own DNS information.
- ◆ E-mail can also be tied into MySQL through Pam-MySQL for POP3 and by using MySQL as a management system for virtual users.





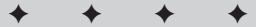
# NuSphere Enhanced MySQL

**N**uSphere—a company not affiliated with MySQL AB—has its own version of MySQL, based on the same MySQL code released by MySQL AB. However, the NuSphere version of MySQL (called Enhanced MySQL) comes within a suite of products collectively titled MySQL Advantage. NuSphere MySQL Advantage includes integrated versions of Enhanced MySQL, Perl, PHP, and Apache. NuSphere also makes an enhanced version of PHP called NuSphere PHPed Advantage, as well as NuSphere Pro Advantage—a product that combines MySQL and PHPed Advantage.

MySQL Advantage offers many enhancements to the MySQL versions released by MySQL AB. One such enhancement is another table type called Gemini, which is a transactional table.

NuSphere MySQL Advantage is not free software. However, for the enhancements it provides for larger implementations, the cost is minimal. The software purchase even includes technical support directly from NuSphere included in the price.

This chapter examines NuSphere Pro Advantage, including its enhancements and installation.

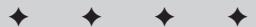


## In This Chapter

Taking a detailed look at NuSphere MySQL Advantage

Installing NuSphere Pro Advantage on a Linux system

Installing NuSphere Pro Advantage on a Windows 2000 system



## NuSphere MySQL Advantage: A Closer Look

Since NuSphere's MySQL is based on the main MySQL code base, many options (as well as the command syntax) are the same as for non-enhanced MySQL from MySQL AB. Accordingly, this chapter skips any discussion of how to use MySQL or MySQL-related tools; instead, it looks at the additions that NuSphere MySQL Advantage adds to a MySQL installation. For more information on NuSphere Enhanced MySQL see the NuSphere Web site at <http://www.nusphere.com/>.

### Gemini: A new table type

Gemini is a transactional table type available with NuSphere MySQL. Gemini includes full ACID support, row-level locking, and excellent crash recovery. Recall that ACID is an abbreviation referring to Atomicity, Consistency, Isolation, and Durability. ACID support in NuSphere Enhanced MySQL means that Gemini tables can update records in an isolated environment. If a part of a transaction fails, the entire transaction is rolled back so as to prevent possible inconsistencies in the data. Even when there is a catastrophic system crash, Gemini tables will perform automatic crash recovery to restore data to a known good state.

### NuSphere integration with popular software

NuSphere MySQL Advantage is integrated with Apache, Perl, and PHP to make development easy. With normal MySQL you have to install MySQL-aware PHP, install various Perl libraries for MySQL, and install Apache with PHP enabled. NuSphere Enhanced MySQL takes care of these for you. In addition, the Apache installed with NuSphere MySQL Advantage also includes SSL support for serving secure Web sites.

### NuSphere management tools

NuSphere MySQL Advantage also includes Web-based tools for management of MySQL and Apache. The management tools enable easy administration of Web sites and security. Further, a security console is included to provide utilities for network security.

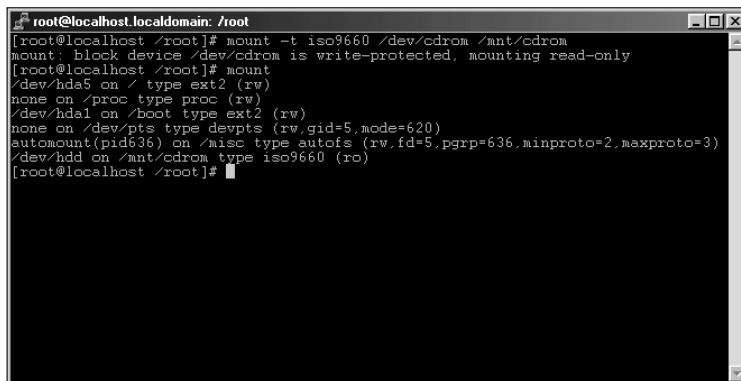
# Installing NuSphere Pro Advantage on Linux

In both the Linux and Windows versions of NuSphere, installation uses a Web interface. This makes configuration easy (though unfortunately somewhat less configurable than some Linux users may prefer). For example, many Linux users are familiar with installing software through the `configure` ; `make` ; `make install` commands. Those offer flexibility to the installer so that they can edit the source files prior to installation. This section describes the installation process for NuSphere Pro Advantage in Linux.

## The NuSphere installation process

NuSphere Pro Advantage is distributed on CD-ROM; to begin installation, insert the CD-ROM into the drive. Because this installation is for a server, I assume that you aren't running a GUI such as KDE or GNOME. Therefore, from a command-line prompt, you mount the CD-ROM drive with the following command as shown in Figure 20-1:

```
mount -t iso9660 /dev/cdrom /mnt/cdrom
```

A screenshot of a terminal window titled "root@localhost.localdomain: /root". The window shows the command "mount -t iso9660 /dev/cdrom /mnt/cdrom" being run by the root user. The output indicates that the device is write-protected and is being mounted read-only. The terminal also lists other mounted volumes, including /dev/hda5 (ext2), /proc (proc), /dev/hda1 (ext2), /dev/pts (devpts), /misc (autofs), and /dev/hdd (iso9660).

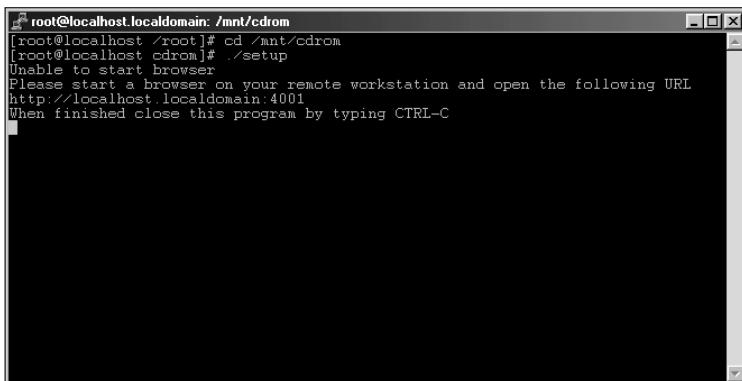
**Figure 20-1:** Mounting the NuSphere installation CD in Linux

Change (`cd`) into the newly mounted CD-ROM directory:

```
cd /mnt/cdrom
```

Run the setup script from within that directory (as shown in Figure 20-2):

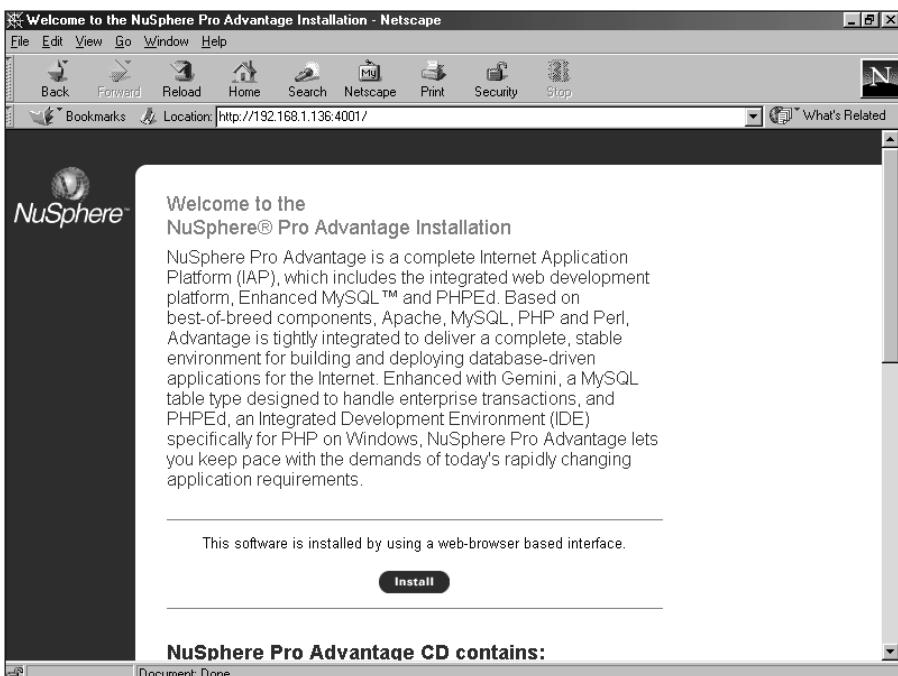
```
./setup
```



```
[root@localhost.localdomain: /mnt/cdrom
[root@localhost cdrom]# cd /mnt/cdrom
[root@localhost cdrom]# ./setup
Unable to start browser
Please start a browser on your remote workstation and open the following URL
http://localhost.localdomain:4001
When finished close this program by typing CTRL-C
```

**Figure 20-2:** Executing the setup script from within the CD-ROM directory

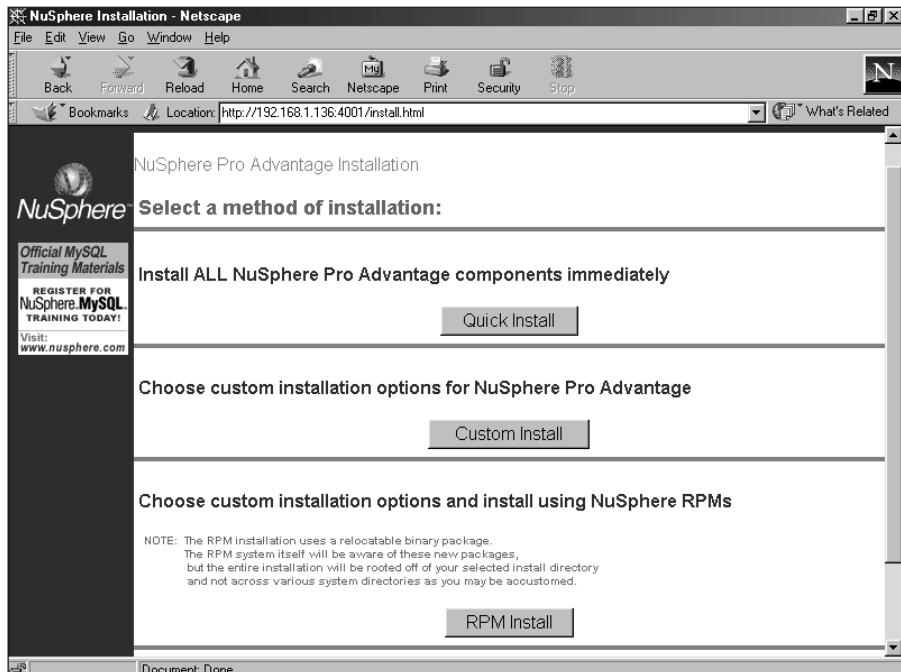
The instructions in Figure 20-2 tell the user to point a Web browser to that machine, port 4001. Figure 20-3 shows what happens when I do so.



**Figure 20-3:** Pointing a Web browser to port 4001 on the server with the NuSphere CD-ROM mounted

You should see a similar welcome screen when you go to port 4001 on your server. Begin the installation by clicking the Install button.

You are now presented with three types of installation to choose from: Quick, Custom, and RPM installation (see Figure 20-4).

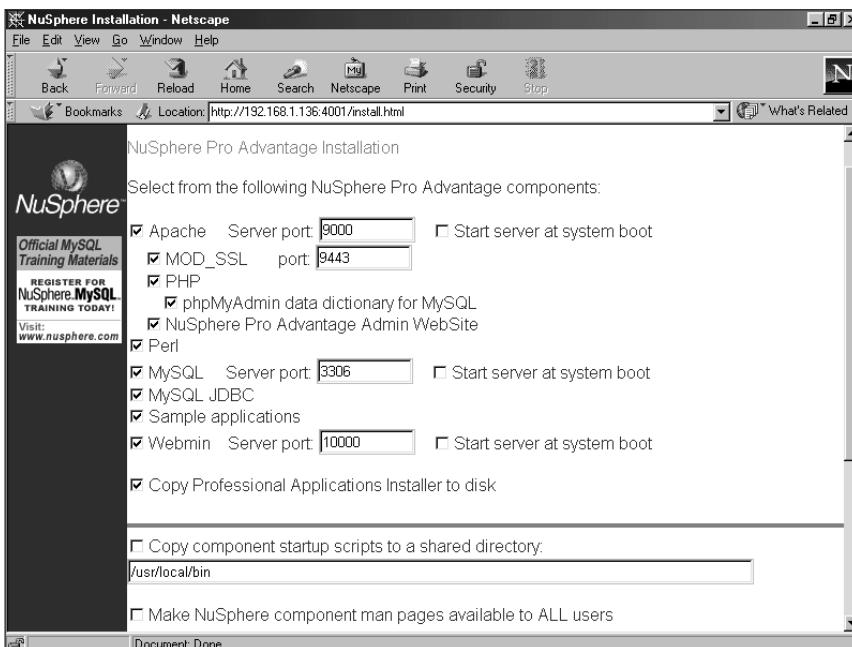


**Figure 20-4:** The three types of installation

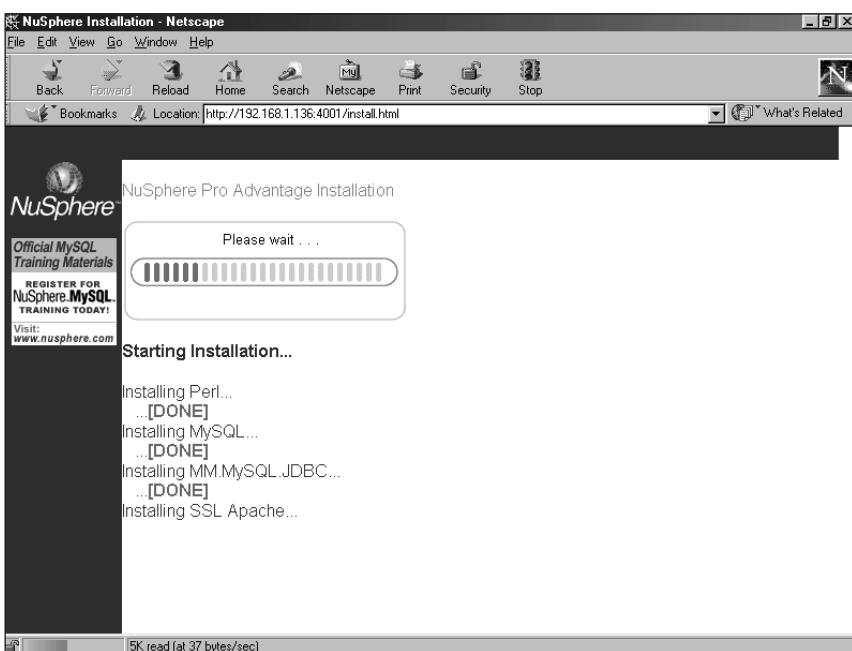
The RPM installation method enables Red Hat Linux systems to update the RPM database with the new package information. This can be useful for administrators who frequently use RPM as a management tool for new software.

Both Custom and RPM installation enable the administrator to choose other options for installation—for example, default ports for software and installation paths. Some of these options are shown in Figure 20-5.

In this case, I use the Quick Installation method (which chooses the defaults shown in Figure 20-5). The installation program takes over; the Web page tracks its progress (as illustrated in Figure 20-6).

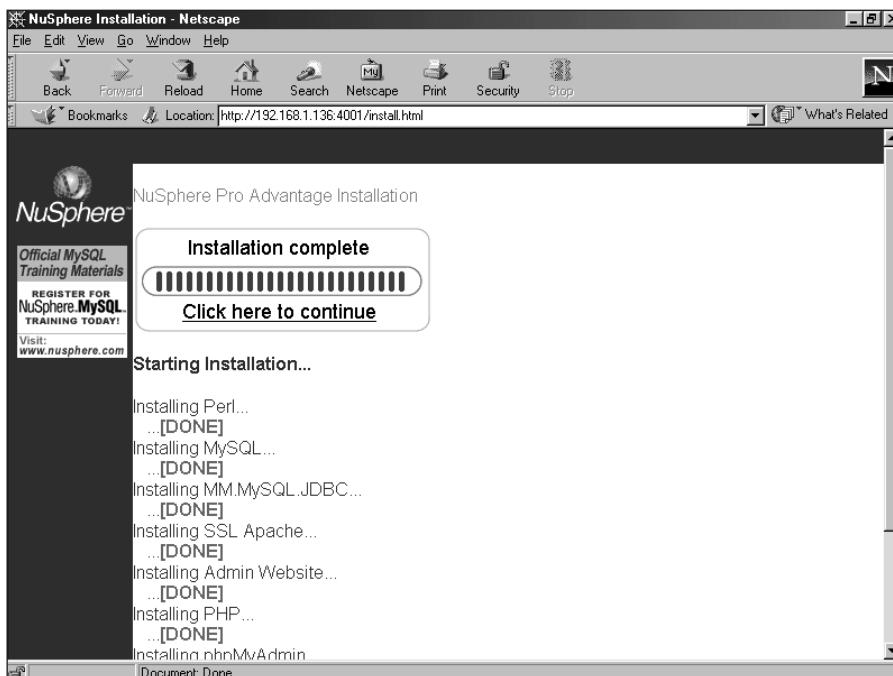


**Figure 20-5:** The Custom and RPM installation methods enable the administrator to choose ports and locations for software.



**Figure 20-6:** The progress of the NuSphere installation is tracked via the Web page.

When the installation is complete, a new link appears so I can continue, as in Figure 20-7.



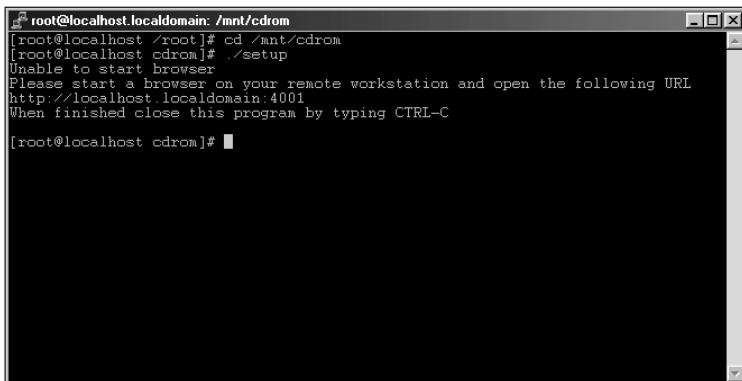
**Figure 20-7:** The Click Here To Continue link appears when the NuSphere installer is done installing the software.

When you click to continue you'll be presented with a link to remind you to register with NuSphere as well as instructions to start some of the services just installed.

Clicking the Quick Start link starts the services just installed.

Many NuSphere products install software that you might not want to run on a publicly available Web server (such as Webmin) for security reasons. Refer to the documentation on Webmin and Apache to configure those services so that outside users cannot gain access to them.

Going back to the console or terminal window from Figure 20-2, you can press Ctrl+C to stop the setup script, as shown in Figure 20-8.

A screenshot of a terminal window titled "root@localhost.localdomain: /mnt/cdrom". The window shows the command "cd /mnt/cdrom" followed by "./setup". The output of the script is displayed, instructing the user to start a browser on their remote workstation and open the URL "http://localhost.localdomain:4001". It also states that the user should close the program by typing CTRL-C. The terminal window has a standard X11 interface with a title bar and scroll bars.

**Figure 20-8:** Press Ctrl+C to stop the setup script for NuSphere installation.

## NuSphere administration

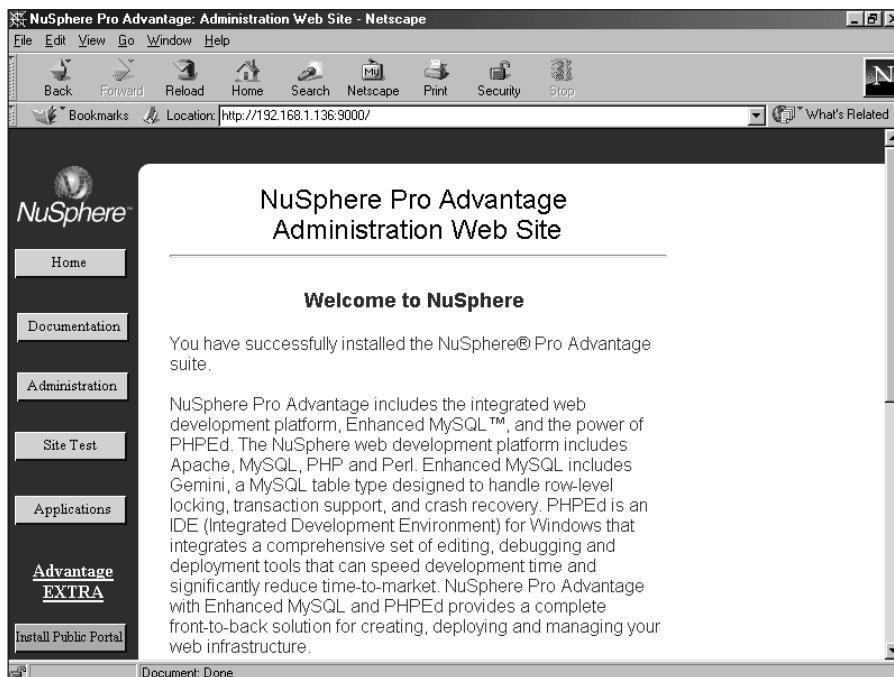
NuSphere includes a Web site for administration of your server. This is located at port 9000 on your Web server. For example, if your Web server IP address is 192.168.1.1, you would point the Web browser to <http://192.168.1.1:9000/> (as illustrated in Figure 20-9, where the server is located at 192.168.1.136).

From within the administration Web site, you can run tests of the PHP environment—as well as utilize Webmin and the Apache Access Manager. PHPmyAdmin is also included within this administration Web site. However, you will need to use the MySQL CLI to create Gemini table types unless you set the default table type to Gemini. (The next section explains creating Gemini tables, as well as setting Gemini as your default table type.)

The location of many of the MySQL programs such as the CLI will be dependent on where you chose to install them. If you chose the Quick Installation method, the programs will be located in /usr/local/nusphere/mysql. I strongly recommend that you set a password for the MySQL root user.



See Chapter 3 for more information on setting a password with the mysqladmin program.



**Figure 20-9:** The NuSphere administration Web site for this server

## Creating Gemini tables

Tables within NuSphere Enhanced MySQL can be the normal MyISAM or the Gemini table type. By default, tables are created as MyISAM (for example, the table created in Figure 20-10).

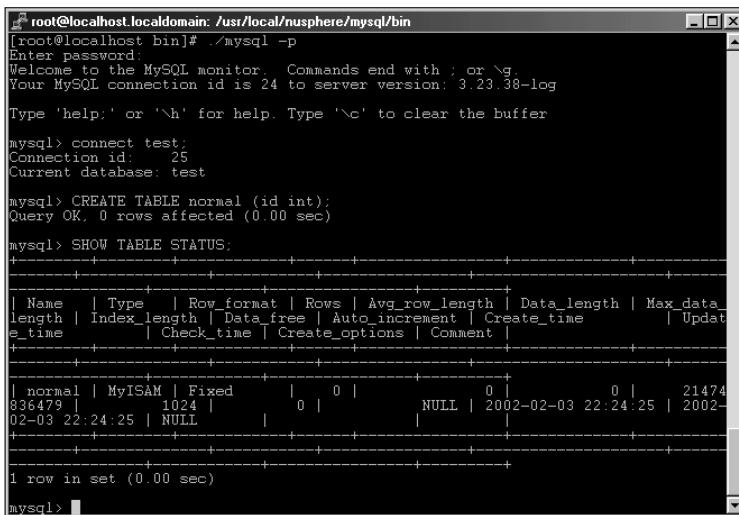
To create a Gemini table and take advantage of its specific enhancements, you simply tell MySQL to create the table as a Gemini type while you are creating the table. To do so, add the following line to the CREATE TABLE definition.

```
TYPE = Gemini
```

Figure 20-11 shows an example of creating a Gemini table through the MySQL CLI.

To enable MySQL to use Gemini as the default table type, you need to add the following line when starting MySQL:

```
--default-table-type=gemini
```



```

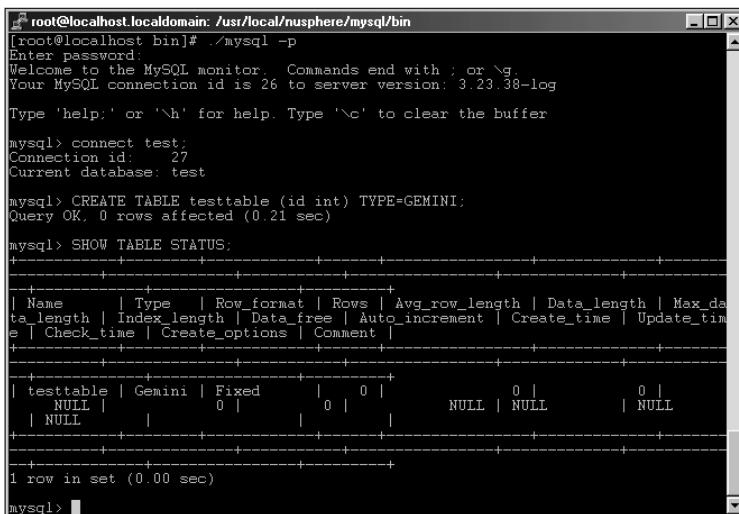
root@localhost.localdomain: /usr/local/nusphere/mysql/bin
[root@localhost bin]# ./mysql -p
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor.  Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 24 to server version: 3.23.38-log
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer
mysql> connect test;
Connection id: 25
Current database: test
mysql> CREATE TABLE normal (id int);
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> SHOW TABLE STATUS;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Name | Type  | Row_format | Rows | Avg_row_length | Data_length | Max_data_
length | Index_length | Data_free | Auto_increment | Create_time   | Updat
e_time | Check_time | Create_options | Comment |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| normal | MyISAM | Fixed    | 0   |          0   |      0   |     0 | 21474
836479 | 1024   | NULL    |       |           | 2002-02-03 22:24:25 | 2002-
02-03 22:24:25 | NULL    |           |           |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>

```

**Figure 20-10:** NuSphere Enhanced MySQL still uses MyISAM as the default table type.



```

root@localhost.localdomain: /usr/local/nusphere/mysql/bin
[root@localhost bin]# ./mysql -p
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor.  Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 26 to server version: 3.23.38-log
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer
mysql> connect test;
Connection id: 27
Current database: test
mysql> CREATE TABLE testtable (id int) TYPE=GEMINI;
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.21 sec)

mysql> SHOW TABLE STATUS;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Name | Type  | Row_format | Rows | Avg_row_length | Data_length | Max_da
ta_length | Index_length | Data_free | Auto_increment | Create_time | Update_t
ime | Check_time | Create_options | Comment |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| testtable | Gemini | Fixed    | 0   |          0   |      0   |     0 | NULL
| NULL    | 0   | NULL    |       |           | NULL | NULL | NULL
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>

```

**Figure 20-11:** Creating a Gemini table through the MySQL CLI

After adding the line to enable Gemini as the default table type and restarting the server I create a table without a `TYPE` clause. The result is a Gemini table, as illustrated in Figure 20-12.

```

root@localhost.localdomain: /usr/local/nusphere/mysql#
[root@localhost mysql]# ./bin/mysql
Welcome to the MySQL monitor. Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 3 to server version: 3.23.38
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer
mysql> connect test;
Connection id: 4
Current database: test
mysql> create table normal (id int);
Query OK. 0 rows affected (0.17 sec)
mysql> show table status;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Name    | Type   | Row_format | Rows | Avg_row_length | Data_length | Max_data_
length | Index_length | Data_free | Auto_increment | Create_time | Update_time |
| Check_time | Create_options | Comment |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| normal | Gemini | Fixed      | 0 | 0 | NULL | NULL | 0 | 0 | NULL |
NULL | NULL | NULL | NULL | NULL | NULL | NULL | NULL | NULL | NULL |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> 

```

**Figure 20-12:** After enabling Gemini as the default table type, creation of Gemini tables does not require the extra TYPE clause.

If you want to create a MyISAM table after enabling Gemini as the default, add a TYPE=MyISAM clause to the CREATE TABLE statement.

Once the server is configured to use Gemini as the default table type you can use PHPmyAdmin or other tools for creating Gemini tables. In effect, you do not have to solely use the MySQL CLI for creating Gemini tables since you don't have to specify the TYPE clause as part of the CREATE TABLE statement.

## Gemini configuration options

You can set other options for Gemini tables at the command line or in the MySQL configuration file my.cnf. The options to use are listed in Table 20-1.

**Table 20-1**  
**Gemini Table Options And Variables**

| Option                   | Description  |
|--------------------------|--|
| gemini_buffer_cache=     | Variable set with <i>set-variable</i> syntax to control the size of the memory pool available for buffers. |
| gemini_connection_limit= | Variable set with the <i>set-variable</i> syntax to control the maximum number of allowed connections.     |

**Table 20-1 (continued)**

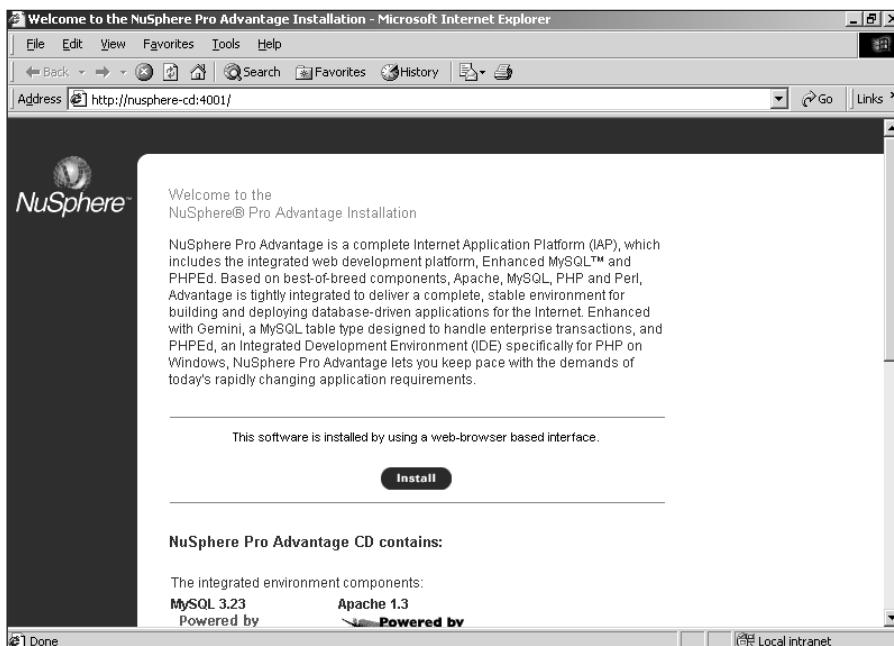
| <b>Option</b>                | <b>Description</b>   |
|------------------------------|--|
| gemini_io_threads=           | Variable to set the number of threads to open at once.   |
| gemini_lock_table_size=      | Variable to set the maximum number of locks.   |
| gemini_lock_wait_timeout=    | Variable set in seconds to control the amount of time MySQL will wait before releasing an apparently dead lock.  |
| --gemini-flush-log-at-commit | Tells the server to flush the buffers of the flush log after every <code>commit</code> operation. This enhances safety but can significantly decrease performance.       |
| --gemini-recovery=           | Options include FULL, NONE, or FORCE and they determine how the server performs recovery.  |
| --gemini-unbuffered-io       | Prevents write operations to the table from using the Linux cache.   |
| --skip-gemini                | Option that tells MySQL to skip Gemini support entirely.   |
| --transaction-isolation=     | Sets the transaction level as READ-UNCOMMITTED, READ-COMMITTED, REPEATABLE-READ, or SERIALIZABLE. Can be overridden with the <code>SET ISOLATION LEVEL</code> statement. |

## Installing NuSphere Pro Advantage on Windows 2000

As with the installation of NuSphere products in Linux, installing NuSphere Pro Advantage on Windows uses a Web-based program. The installation process simply involves clicking a series of buttons (the usual process for installing software in Windows). NuSphere products run on later versions of Windows, including Windows 95, 98, and 2000. In all likelihood, the products run on other Windows platforms, check with <http://www.nusphere.com/> for more information. For this installation, I use Windows 2000 Server.

## The NuSphere installation process

NuSphere Pro Advantage is distributed on CD-ROM. Therefore, to begin the installation insert the CD-ROM into the drive. The CD should run automatically. If the CD does not start automatically, simply go into Windows Explorer, point to the CD-ROM drive containing the NuSphere CD, and click Setup.exe. Either method will open a Web browser pointing to port 4001 on the `nusphere-cd` URL, as shown in Figure 20-13.

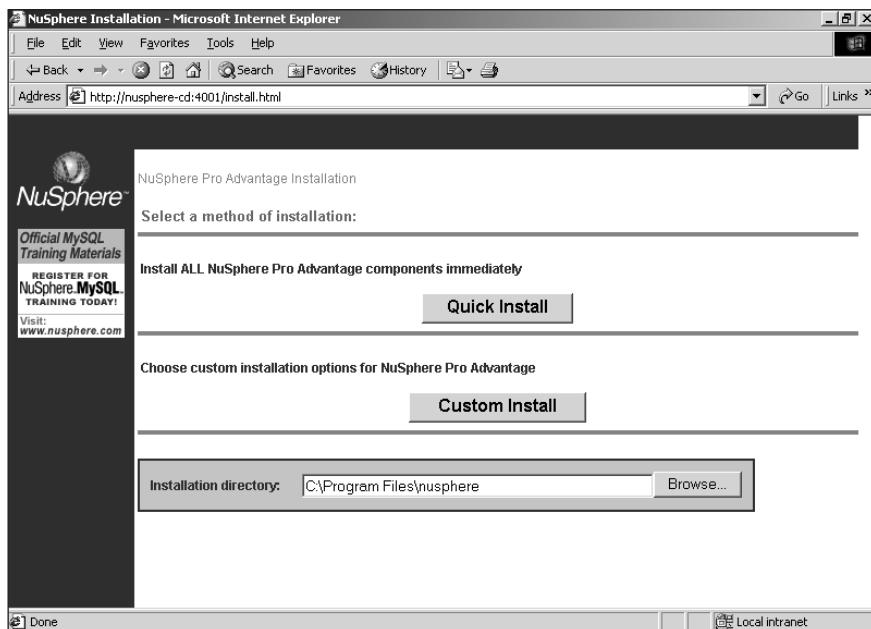


**Figure 20-13:** Pointing a Web browser to port 4001 on the `nusphere-cd` URL with the NuSphere CD-ROM inserted

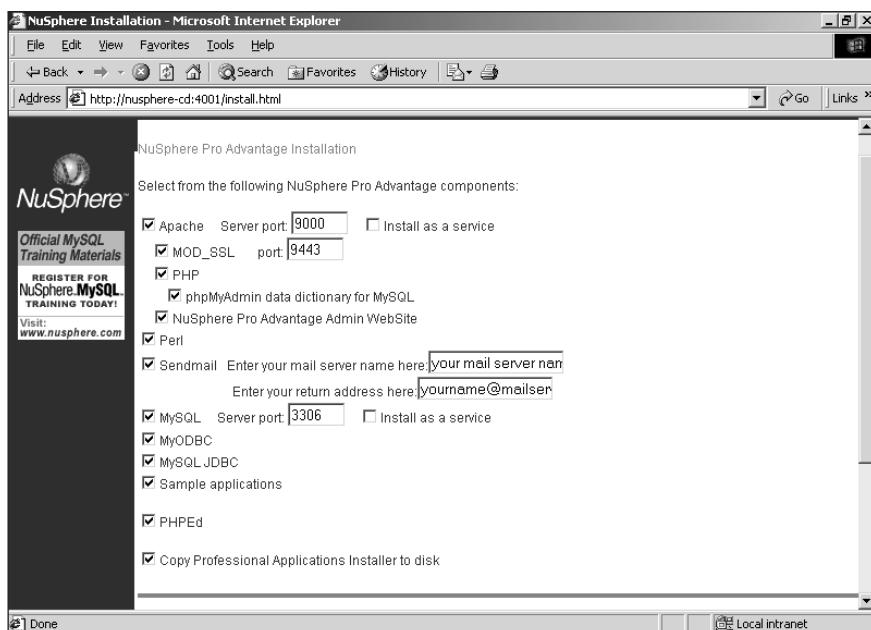
You should see a similar welcome screen though it may vary slightly depending on which version of the NuSphere product you are installing. Begin the installation by clicking the Install button.

You are presented with two options for the type of installation to proceed with, Quick or Custom, as illustrated in Figure 20-14.

The Custom installation option enables the administrator to choose other options (such as default ports for software and installation paths), some of which are shown in Figure 20-15.

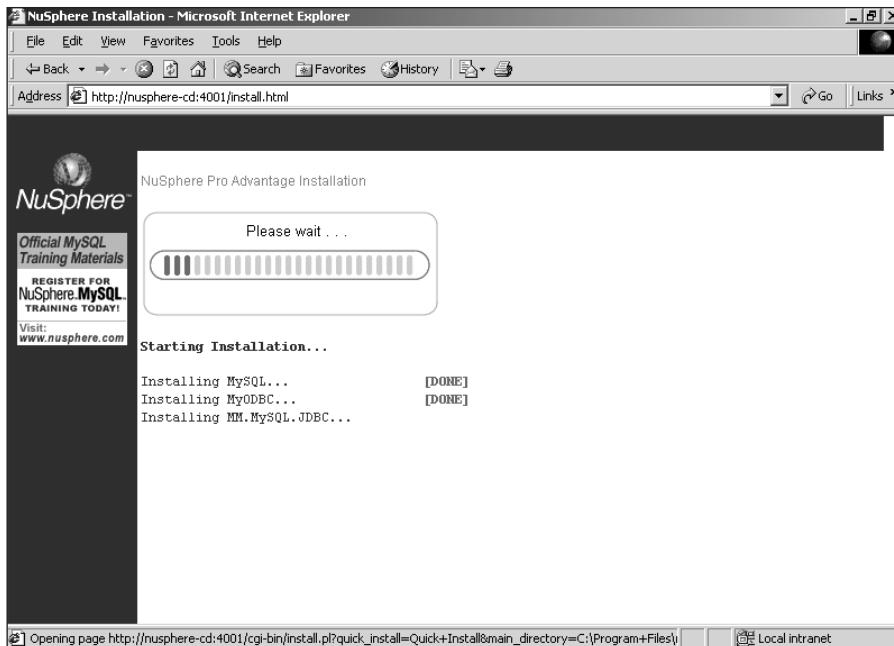


**Figure 20-14:** The two types of installation



**Figure 20-15:** The Custom installation method enables the administrator to choose ports and locations for software.

For this installation, I use the Quick Installation method that chooses the defaults shown in Figure 20-15. The installation program takes over; the Web page tracks its progress, as illustrated in Figure 20-16.

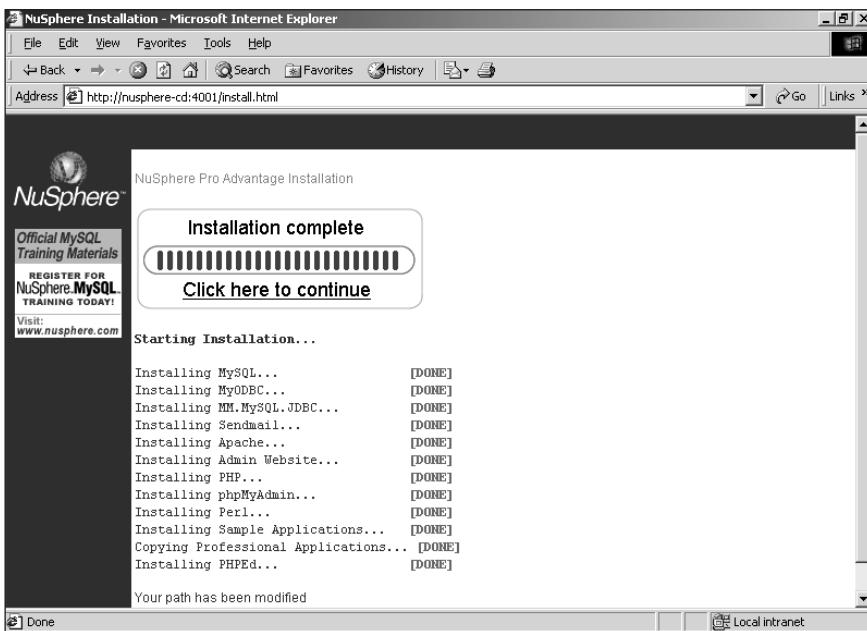


**Figure 20-16:** The progress of the NuSphere installation is tracked via the Web page.

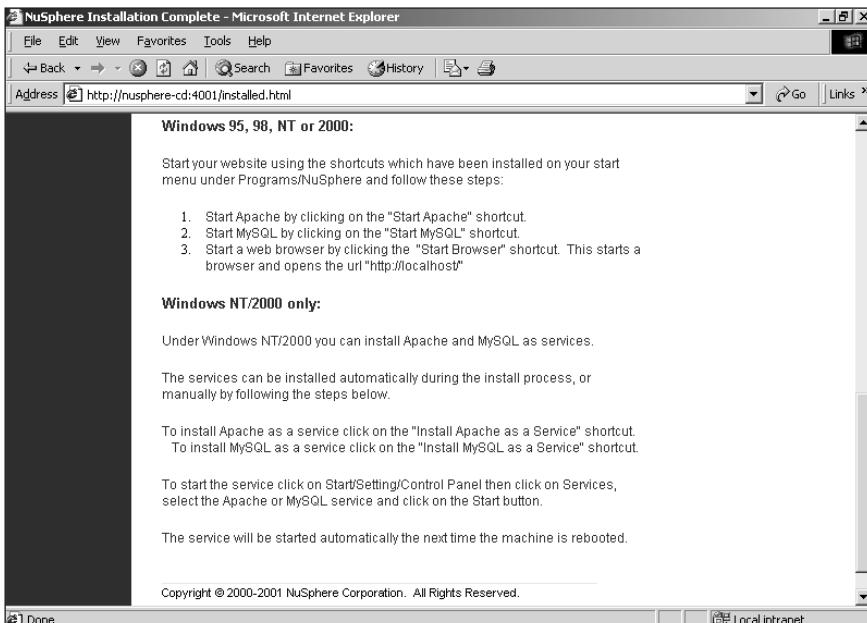
When the installation is complete a new link is presented; click it to continue, as shown in Figure 20-17.

When you click to continue, you get a link that reminds you to register with NuSphere—as well as instructions to start some of the services just installed (see Figure 20-18).

The Programs menu shows a new program group for NuSphere. Inside this group are shortcuts for starting and stopping services such as Apache and MySQL, as well as for configuring some of the programs as Services in Windows.



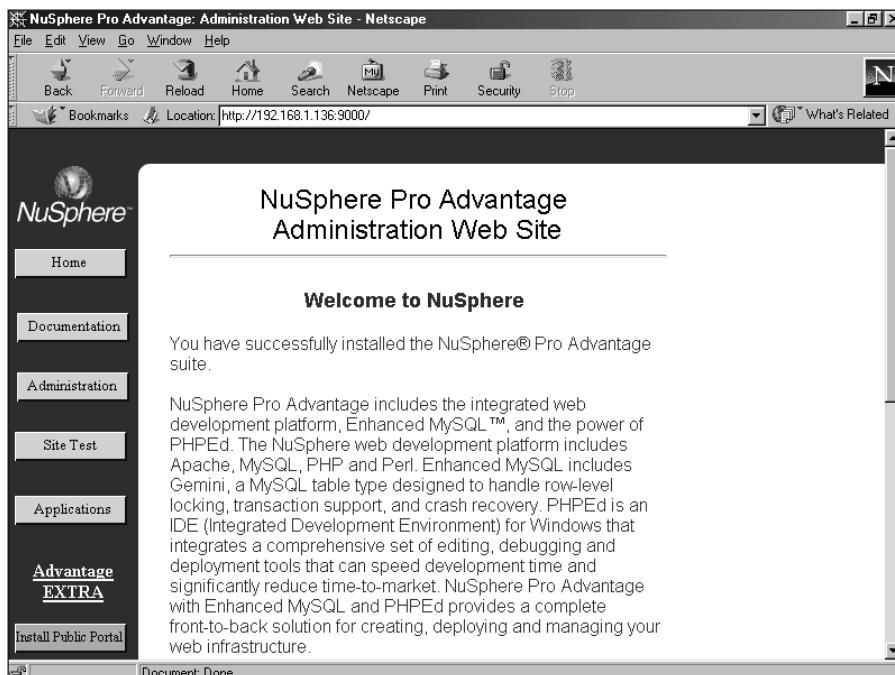
**Figure 20-17:** The Click Here To Continue link is presented when the NuSphere installer is done installing the software.



**Figure 20-18:** Instructions for starting services related to NuSphere as provided by the installation program

## NuSphere administration

NuSphere includes a Web site for administration of your server. This is located at port 9000 on your Web server. For example, if your Web server IP address is 192.168.1.1, you would point the Web browser to <http://192.168.1.1:9000/> (as illustrated in Figure 20-19, where the server is located at 192.168.1.136).



**Figure 20-19:** The NuSphere administration Web site for this server

From within the administration Web site you can run tests of the PHP environment as well as Perl script and perform administration for Apache. PHPmyAdmin is also included within this administration Web site. However, you will need to use the MySQL CLI to create Gemini table types unless you set the default table type to Gemini. The next section describes creating Gemini tables, as well as setting Gemini as your default table type.

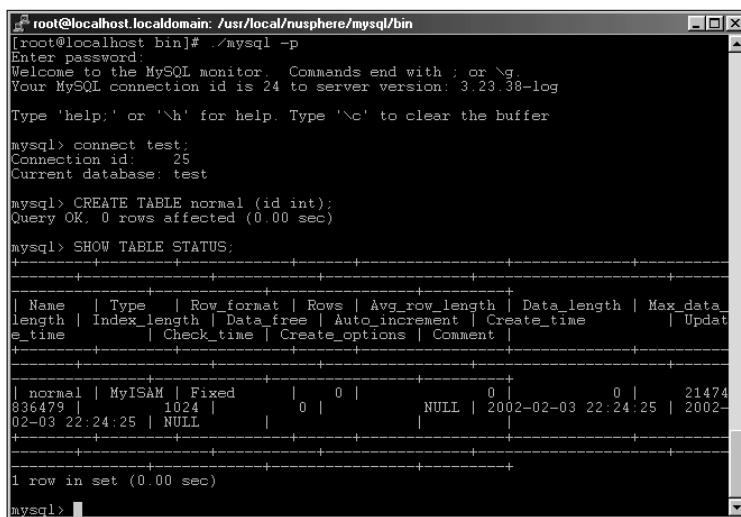
The location of many MySQL programs—for example, the CLI—depends on where you chose to install them. Before you continue, however, I strongly recommend that you set a password for the MySQL root user.

### Cross-Reference

See Chapter 3 for more information on setting a password with the `mysqladmin` program.

## Creating Gemini tables

Tables within NuSphere Enhanced MySQL can be the normal MyISAM or the Gemini table type. By default, tables are created as MyISAM (as illustrated in Figure 20-20).



```

root@localhost.localdomain: /usr/local/nusphere/mysql/bin#
[root@localhost bin]# ./mysql -p
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor.  Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 24 to server version: 3.23.38-log

Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer

mysql> connect test;
Connection id: 25
Current database: test

mysql> CREATE TABLE normal (id int);
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> SHOW TABLE STATUS;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Name | Type | Row_format | Rows | Avg_row_length | Data_length | Max_data_
length | Index_length | Data_free | Auto_increment | Create_time | Updat
e_time | Check_time | Create_options | Comment |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| normal | MyISAM | Fixed | 0 | 0 | NULL | 0 | 21474
836479 | 1024 | 0 | 2002-02-03 22:24:25 | 2002-
02-03 22:24:25 | NULL | +-----+
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>

```

**Figure 20-20:** NuSphere Enhanced MySQL still uses MyISAM as the default table type.

To create a Gemini table and take advantage of its enhancements, you simply tell MySQL to create a table as the Gemini type when you create the table; do so by adding the following line to the `CREATE TABLE` definition.

```
TYPE = Gemini
```

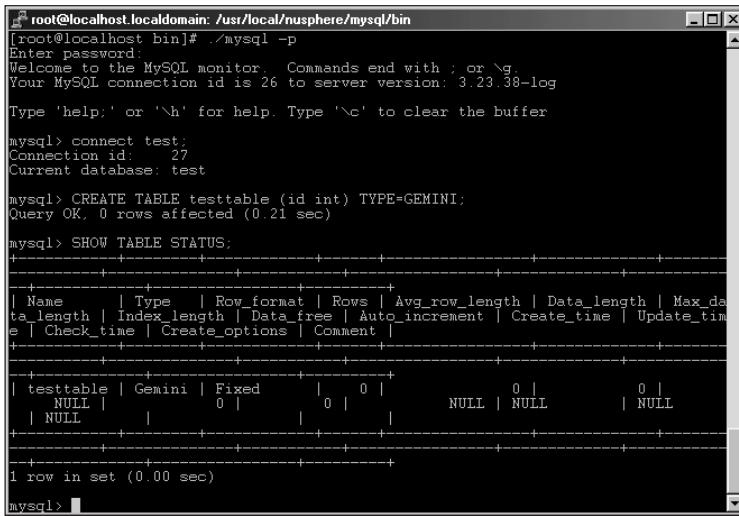
Figure 20-21 shows an example of creating a Gemini table through the MySQL CLI.

To enable MySQL to use Gemini as the default table type, add the following line when you start MySQL:

```
--default-table-type=gemini
```

After adding the line to enable Gemini as the default table type and restarting the server I create a table without a `TYPE` clause. The result is a Gemini table, as illustrated in Figure 20-22.

If you want to create a MyISAM table after enabling Gemini as the default, add a `TYPE=MyISAM` clause to the `CREATE TABLE` statement.

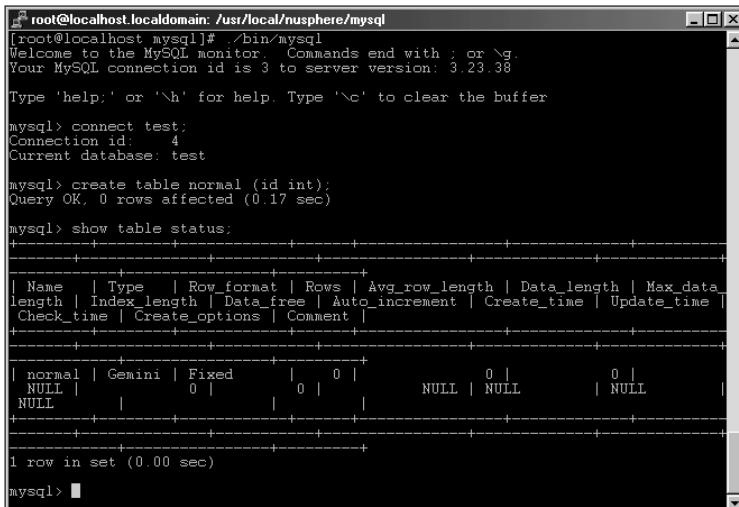


```
[root@localhost.localdomain: /usr/local/nusphere/mysql/bin]# ./mysql -p
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor.  Commands end with ; or \q.
Your MySQL connection id is 26 to server version: 3.23.38-log
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer
mysql> connect test;
Connection id: 27
Current database: test
mysql> CREATE TABLE testtable (id int) TYPE=GEMINI;
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.21 sec)

mysql> SHOW TABLE STATUS;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Name   | Type    | Row_format | Rows | Avg_row_length | Data_length | Max_data_length | Index_length |
|        |          |            |      |              |             |               |                |
|        |          |            |      |              |             |               |                |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| testtable | Gemini | Fixed     | 0   | 0           | 0           | 0           | 0           |
|           |         |            |     |             |             |             |             |
|           |         |            |     |             |             |             |             |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>
```

Figure 20-21: Creating a Gemini table through the MySQL CLI



```
[root@localhost.localdomain: /usr/local/nusphere/mysql]# ./bin/mysql
Welcome to the MySQL monitor.  Commands end with ; or \q.
Your MySQL connection id is 3 to server version: 3.23.38
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer
mysql> connect test;
Connection id: 4
Current database: test
mysql> create table normal (id int);
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.17 sec)

mysql> show table status;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Name   | Type    | Row_format | Rows | Avg_row_length | Data_length | Max_data_length | Index_length |
|        |          |            |      |              |             |               |                |
|        |          |            |      |              |             |               |                |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| normal | Gemini | Fixed     | 0   | 0           | 0           | 0           | 0           |
|         |         |            |     |             |             |             |             |
|         |         |            |     |             |             |             |             |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>
```

Figure 20-22: After enabling Gemini as the default table type, creation of Gemini tables does not require the extra TYPE clause.

Once the server is configured to use Gemini as the default table type, the MySQL CLI is no longer the only way to create a Gemini table. You can use PHPmyAdmin or other tools for that purpose because you don't have to specify the TYPE clause as part of a CREATE TABLE statement.

## Gemini configuration options

Other for Gemini tables can be set on the command line or in the MySQL configuration file `my.ini`. These options are listed in Table 20-2.

**Table 20-2  
Gemini Table Options And Variables**

| <b>Option</b>                             | <b>Description</b>   |
|---|--|
| <code>gemini_buffer_cache=</code>         | Variable set by using the <code>set-variable</code> syntax to control the size of the memory pool available for buffers.   |
| <code>gemini_connection_limit=</code>     | Variable set by using the <code>set-variable</code> syntax to control the maximum number of allowed connections.   |
| <code>gemini_io_threads=</code>           | Variable that sets the number of threads to open at once.  |
| <code>gemini_lock_table_size=</code>      | Variable that sets the maximum number of locks.  |
| <code>gemini_lock_wait_timeout=</code>    | Variable (specified in number of seconds) that controls how long MySQL waits before releasing an apparently dead lock.   |
| <code>--gemini-flush-log-at-commit</code> | Tells the server to flush the buffers of the flush log after every <code>commit</code> operation. This enhances safety but can significantly decrease performance.   |
| <code>--gemini-recovery=</code>           | Options include <code>FULL</code> , <code>NONE</code> , or <code>FORCE</code> (which determine how the server performs a recovery operation).  |
| <code>--gemini-unbuffered-io</code>       | Prevents write operations to the table from using the Linux cache.   |
| <code>--skip-gemini</code>                | Option that tells MySQL to skip Gemini support entirely.   |
| <code>--transaction-isolation=</code>     | Sets the transaction level as <code>READ-UNCOMMITTED</code> , <code>READ-COMMITTED</code> , <code>REPEATABLE-READ</code> , or <code>SERIALIZABLE</code> . Can be overridden with the <code>SET ISOLATION LEVEL</code> statement. |

## Summary

NuSphere produces enhanced and integrated versions of popular software such as MySQL and PHP. The products from NuSphere come bundled as a suite, which installs more smoothly than each product would separately.

- ◆ The version of MySQL included with NuSphere products comes with a new transactional table type called `Gemini`.
- ◆ NuSphere MySQL Advantage integrates enhanced MySQL with PHP, Perl, the JDBC and Apache.
- ◆ NuSphere Pro Advantage has integrated an enhanced PHP development environment with the products in MySQL Advantage.
- ◆ NuSphere products also come with Web-based administration tools to make management of the products easier. These tools include Access Manager for Apache and `PHPmyAdmin`. For Linux, `Webmin` is also included.

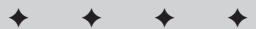




# Appendixes

---

VI



## In This Part

### **Appendix A**

Application  
Reference

### **Appendix B**

Language Reference

### **Appendix C**

Function and  
Operator Reference

### **Appendix D**

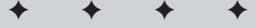
Datatype Reference

### **Appendix E**

Glossary

### **Appendix F**

About the CD-ROM





# MySQL Application Reference

---

## A.1 Data-Access Applications

The following applications are used to access the data stored within the MySQL database.

### **mysql**

The `mysql` application provides basic access to the Command-Line Interface (CLI). Additionally, it can be used to import and export data.

| <b>Argument</b>                          | <b>Description</b>  |
|--|---|
| <code>-?, --help</code>                  | Displays basic help information and descriptions of command-line arguments.   |
| <code>-A, --no-auto-rehash</code>        | This flag prevents the automatic hashing of tables and fields. Removing table hashing results in faster load times for the mysql client.      |
| <code>-B, --batch</code>                 | Returns a tab-delimited list for returned data from the result set.   |
| <code>--character-sets-dir=</code>       | Uses the following directory for specific character sets.   |
| <code>-C, --compress</code>              | Forces the connection to use compression for data delivery.   |
| <code>-D, --database=</code>             | Specifies a database to connect with. If no database is supplied, the connection will start without a specific database connection.           |
| <code>--default-character-set=</code>    | Specifies an alternate character set.   |
| <code>-e, --execute</code>               | Executes the given command and exit.  |
| <code>-E, --vertical</code>              | Displays data output vertically from the result sets.   |
| <code>-f, --force</code>                 | Forces the execution of the command even if an error is returned from the server.   |
| <code>-g, --no-named-commands</code>     | Disables the use of named commands. This option is set by default.  |
| <code>-G, --enable-named-commands</code> | Enables the use of named commands.  |
| <code>-h, --host=</code>                 | Connects to specified host. If none is given, localhost is assumed. The value given can be either an IP address, domain name or server alias. |
| <code>-H, -html</code>                   | Displays the query return output in HTML format.  |
| <code>-i, --ignore-space</code>          | Disregards spaces after function name calls.  |
| <code>-L, --skip-line-numbers</code>     | If an error is returned, does not return the line number associated with what caused the error.   |
| <code>--no-pager</code>                  | Disables the use of a system pager file located by determining the value of its ENV variable.   |
| <code>--no-tee</code>                    | Disables use of outfiles.   |
| <code>-n, --unbuffered</code>            | Flushes the buffer after each query is performed.   |
| <code>-N, --skip-column-names</code>     | Omits the column names from the output on query return sets.  |

| <b>Argument</b>                            | <b>Description</b>  |
|--|---|
| <code>-O, --set-variable var=option</code> | Assigns the given option value to the ENV variable given as var.  |
| <code>-o, --one-database</code>            | Skips the execution of any updates except those that affect the default database.   |
| <code>--pager=</code>                      | Designates an alternate pager file to the default ENV value.  |
| <code>-p, --password=</code>               | Uses a password to connect to a server. If no password is given, a prompt requests that the user enter the password.                                      |
| <code>-P, --port=</code>                   | Designates a specific port that the connection to the MySQL database should use.  |
| <code>-q, --quick</code>                   | Returns data rows without caching the return values. By including this option you will also disregard the use of the history file.                        |
| <code>-r, --raw</code>                     | When used in conjunction with the <code>-B</code> or <code>--batch</code> flags, returns fields without converting to the normal display format.          |
| <code>-s, --silent</code>                  | Does not return any standard output messages (error messages are still returned).   |
| <code>-S, --socket=</code>                 | Uses the given socket file for connection to the server.  |
| <code>-t, --table</code>                   | Returns the data in standard table formatting.  |
| <code>-T, --debug-info</code>              | At termination of the application, delivers any debugging information that is available.  |
| <code>--tee=</code>                        | Outputs all returned data to a file with a specified filename.  |
| <code>-u, --user=</code>                   | Designates the username passed when connecting to the MySQL database. If no username is given, the current system username is assumed for the connection. |
| <code>-U, --safe-updates</code>            | Prevents use of <code>DELETE</code> for queries that do not designate a key for the row to be deleted.  |
| <code>-v, --verbose</code>                 | Displays more verbose system error messages.  |
| <code>-V, --version</code>                 | Displays the MySQL version number and then exits.   |
| <code>-w, --wait</code>                    | Retries a connection if an attempted connection is not initially successful.  |

## mysqldump

The mysql dump application provides export statements for database creation, and file-creation support.

| <b>Argument</b>                       | <b>Description</b>  |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| <code>-A, --all-databases</code>      | Returns data from all databases contained on the MySQL server.  |
| <code>-a, --all</code>                | Returns table data with complete create syntax.   |
| <code>--add-drop-table</code>         | Returns table data that includes a "DROP TABLE" command before each table create syntax.  |
|                                       | This option is useful when the formats of existing tables differ from the formats of data being imported into the server.                       |
| <code>--add-locks</code>              | Specifies that the data returned from the server include locking syntax to prevent tables from being altered during the dump process.           |
| <code>--allow-keywords</code>         | This flag allows the return of column names that are also MySQL internal keywords.  |
| <code>-B, --databases</code>          | Returns data from the following databases.  |
| <code>-c, --complete-insert</code>    | Returns data with complete insert statements.   |
| <code>-C, --compress</code>           | Forces connection to use compression for data delivery.   |
| <code>-d, --no-data</code>            | Skips row insert syntax for the data contained in the table data being exported.  |
| <code>--default-character-set=</code> | Specifies an alternate character set for the data.  |
| <code>--delayed-insert</code>         | Includes "INSERT DELAYED" syntax with data insert syntax.   |
| <code>-e, --extended-insert</code>    | Returns insert data with a faster syntax.   |
|                                       | This option may remove any backward compatibility with older MySQL versions.  |
| <code>-F, --flush-logs</code>         | Executes a flush of the MySQL log file prior to the execution of the dump process.  |
| <code>-f, --force</code>              | Forces execution even if the server returns an error.   |
| <code>-h, --host=</code>              | Connects to a specified host. If none is given, localhost is assumed. The value given can be either an IP address, domain name or server alias. |
| <code>-l, --lock-tables</code>        | Locks the designated tables prior to reading the data to be returned for the dump.  |

| <b>Argument</b>                            | <b>Description</b>   |
|--|--|
| <code>-n, --no-create-db</code>            | Skips create syntax for all or specified databases.<br>This can be used in conjunction with <code>-all-databases</code> to force exclusion of the create syntax for each individual database.                          |
| <code>-O, --set-variable var=option</code> | Assign the given option value to the ENV variable given as var.  |
| <code>-t, --no-create-info</code>          | Omits table-creation syntax from the returned data.  |
| <code>--opt</code>                         | Activates all of the following options:<br><br><code>--add-drop-table</code><br><code>--add-locks</code><br><code>--all</code><br><code>--extended-insert</code><br><code>--quick</code><br><code>--lock-tables</code> |
| <code>-p, --password</code>                | Uses password to connect to database. If no password is given, a prompt requests that the password be entered.   |
| <code>-P, --port=</code>                   | Designates a specific port that the connection to the MySQL database should use.   |
| <code>-q, --quick</code>                   | Skips buffering of returned output. This forces the return or the data directly to STDOUT.   |
| <code>-Q, --quote-names</code>             | Appends single quotes (' ') to all table and column names returned.  |
| <code>-r, --result-file=</code>            | Returns data to specified file.  |
| <code>-S, --socket</code>                  | Uses the given socket file for connection to the server.   |
| <code>--tables</code>                      | Overrides the <code>-B, --databases</code> flag.   |
| <code>-T, --tab=</code>                    | Returns data to individual files for each table in a database, using the given path.<br><br>This option can only be executed on the same machine that the MySQL server is operating.                                   |
| <code>--fields-terminated-by=</code>       | Designates a delimiter for the data output files created by <code>-T</code> . Defaults to tab.   |
| <code>--fields-enclosed-by=</code>         | Designates surrounding character(s) in returned fields for the data output files created by <code>-T</code> .  |

*Continued*

| <b>Argument</b>                  | <b>Description</b>   |
|----------------------------------|--|
| --fields-optionally-enclosed-by= | Designates surrounding character(s) in returned fields which consist of a non-numeric data type for the data output files created by -T. |
| --fields-escaped-by=             | Designates escape character(s) in returned fields for the data output files created by -T.   |
| --lines-terminated-by=           | Designates character(s) for end of line datatype for the data output files created by -T. Defaults to newline (\n).                      |
| -w, --where=                     | Uses the following WHERE clause on all data to be returned.  |

## mysqlshow

The mysqlshow application delivers table or database listings for a designated server.

| <b>Argument</b>           | <b>Description</b>  |
|---------------------------|---|
| -c, --character-sets-dir= | Uses the following directory for specific character sets.   |
| -C, --compress            | Forces connection to use compression for data delivery.   |
| -h, --host=               | Connects to specified host. If none is given, localhost is assumed. The value given can be either an IP address, domain name or server alias. |
| -i, --status              | Returns specific status information regarding each table in the designated db. If no db is passed, flag is ignored.                           |
| -k, --keys                | Returns keys for designated tables.   |
| -p, --password=           | Uses a password to connect to the server. If no password is given, a prompt will be displayed requesting for the password to be entered.      |
| -P, --port=               | Designates a specific port that the connection to the MySQL database should use.  |
| -S, --socket=             | Uses the given socket file for connection to the server.  |
| -u, --user=               | Designates the username to connect to the MySQL database as. If none is given, current username is assumed.                                   |
| -v, --verbose             | Displays more verbose system error messages.  |
| -V, --version             | Displays the MySQL version number and exit.   |

## A.2 Server-Administration Applications

The following applications control the function of the MySQL database. Many of them have been covered in more detail throughout the book.

### **mysqladmin**

The `mysqladmin` application performs management functions on the server.

| <b>Argument</b>                   | <b>Description</b>   |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| <code>-?, --help</code>           | Displays basic help information and description of command line arguments.   |
| <code>-C, --compress</code>       | Force connection to use compression for data delivery.   |
| <code>--character-sets-dir</code> | Uses the given directory for all character sets.   |
| <code>-E, --vertical</code>       | Returns the requested output vertically.   |
| <code>-f, --force</code>          | Forces execution of the command regardless of errors returned. <code>DROP DATABASE</code> commands will be performed without a warning prompt. |
| <code>-h, --host</code>           | Connects to specified host. If none is given, localhost is assumed. The value given can be either an IP address, domain name or server alias.  |
| <code>-i, --sleep=</code>         | Sleeps for the given number of seconds before repeating the given command. The option will continue to loop until the process is terminated.   |
| <code>-p, --password=</code>      | Uses a password to connect to the server. If no password is given, a prompt will be displayed requesting for the password to be entered.       |
| <code>-P, --port=</code>          | Designates a specific port that the connection to the MySQL database should use.   |
| <code>-r, --relative</code>       | In combination with <code>-i, --sleep=</code> , shows the difference between the current data returned and the previous set.                   |
| <code>-s, --silent</code>         | Prevents the return of any standard output messages, though error messages are still returned.   |
| <code>-S, --socket</code>         | Uses the given socket file for connection to the server.   |
| <code>-u, --user=</code>          | Designates the username to connect to the MySQL database as. If none is given, current username is assumed.                                    |

*Continued*

| <b>Argument</b>            | <b>Description</b>   |
|----------------------------|--|
| <code>-v, --verbose</code> | Displays more verbose system error messages.   |
| <code>-V, --version</code> | Displays the MySQL version number and exit.  |
| <code>-w, --wait=</code>   | Retries the command the given number of times if the server connection is unavailable. |

| <b>Command</b>                       | <b>Description</b>   |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <code>create [db]</code>             | Creates new database named [db].                               |
| <code>drop [db]</code>               | Drops database named [db].                                     |
| <code>extended-status</code>         | Delivers an extended status message from the daemon.           |
| <code>flush-hosts</code>             | Deletes all hosts that the system has cached.                  |
| <code>flush-logs</code>              | Deletes all logs.  |
| <code>flush-status</code>            | Deletes all status variables on the server.                    |
| <code>flush-tables</code>            | Flushes all tables in designated database.                     |
| <code>flush-threads</code>           | Deletes the current thread cache.                              |
| <code>flush-privileges</code>        | Reloads internal user privilege tables.                        |
| <code>kill [id]</code>               | Stops a particular MySQL process.                              |
| <code>password [new password]</code> | Changes the current password to the given password.            |
| <code>ping</code>                    | Checks to be sure the MySQL process is up and running.         |
| <code>processlist</code>             | Returns a listing of all current threads active on the server. |
| <code>reload</code>                  | Reloads all internal MySQL tables.                             |
| <code>refresh</code>                 | Flushes all internal tables and restart logging.               |
| <code>shutdown</code>                | Shuts down the MySQL server.                                   |
| <code>status</code>                  | Returns the current system status for the server.              |
| <code>start-slave</code>             | Starts the slave.  |
| <code>stop-slave</code>              | Stops the slave.   |
| <code>variables</code>               | Returns all of the available variables.                        |
| <code>version</code>                 | Returns MySQL version for selected server.                     |

## mysqlcheck

The mysqlcheck application performs verification, repair, analysis, and optimization of MySQL databases, tables, and data.

| <b>Argument</b>          | <b>Description</b>   |
|--------------------------|--|
| -?, --help               | Displays basic help information and description of command line arguments.   |
| -#, --debug=             | Creates debugging log file to given file name.   |
| -1, --all-in-1           | Combines all table queries into one query upon the database.   |
| -a, --analyze            | Analyzes the given tables.   |
| -A, --all-databases      | Returns data from all databases contained on the MySQL server.   |
| --auto-repair            | Automatically repair any damaged tables found.   |
| -B, --databases          | Returns data from the following databases.   |
| --character-sets-dir=    | Uses the following directory for specific character sets.  |
| -c, --check              | Checks the given table for errors, this flag does not designate the process to repair errors it finds.   |
| -C, --check-only-changed | Checks only the tables that have changed since the last check on the table was performed. Additionally check all tables that return to be improperly closed. |
| --compress               | Forces connection to use compression for data delivery.  |
| -F, --fast               | Checks only tables that return to be improperly closed.  |
| -f, --force              | Forces execution of the command regardless of errors returned.   |
| -e, --extended           | Performs exhaustive checks upon the table structures. Use this flag with caution.  |
| -h, --host=              | Connects to specified host. If none is given, localhost is assumed. The value given can be either an IP address, domain name or server alias.                |
| -m, --medium-check       | Checks for most common errors. This process is not as thorough, however will catch nearly all errors.  |
| -o, --optimize           | Optimizes tables during action.  |

*Continued*

| <b>Argument</b>             | <b>Description</b>   |
|-----------------------------|--|
| <code>-p, --password</code> | Uses a password to connect to the server. If no password is given, a prompt will be displayed requesting for the password to be entered. |
| <code>-P, --port=</code>    | Designates a specific port that the connection to the MySQL database should use.   |
| <code>-q, --quick</code>    | Skips less important checks.   |
| <code>-r, --repair</code>   | Repairs any problems found during process of databases and tables.   |
| <code>-s, --silent</code>   | Prevents the return of any standard output messages, though error messages are still returned.   |
| <code>-S, --socket=</code>  | Uses the given socket file for connection to the server.   |
| <code>--tables</code>       | Overrides the <code>-B, --databases</code> flag.   |
| <code>-u, --user=</code>    | Designates the username to connect to the MySQL database as. If none is given, current username is assumed.                              |
| <code>-v, --verbose</code>  | Displays more verbose system error messages.   |
| <code>-V, --version</code>  | Displays the MySQL version number and exit.  |

## mysqlimport

The `mysqlimport` application provides a command-line mechanism for importing data to the MySQL database directly from a preformatted text file.

| <b>Argument</b>                      | <b>Description</b>   |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <code>-?, --help</code>              | Displays basic help information and description of command line arguments.   |
| <code>-#, --debug=</code>            | Creates debugging log file to given file name.   |
| <code>-c, --columns=</code>          | Uses the given list of columns for creation of the LOAD DATA INFILE declaration. List format should be comma separated with no spaces. |
| <code>-C, --compress</code>          | Forces connection to use compression for data delivery.  |
| <code>-d, --delete</code>            | Removes all data from affected tables prior to processing the import.  |
| <code>-f, --force</code>             | Forces execution of the command regardless of errors returned.   |
| <code>--fields-terminated-by=</code> | Designates a delimiter for the data received from the import file. Defaults to tab.  |

| Argument                         | Description  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| --fields-enclosed-by=            | Designates surrounding character(s) in returned fields for the data received from the import file.   |
| --fields-optionally-enclosed-by= | Checks the data received from the import file; designates those surrounding character(s) in returned fields which are of a non-numeric datatype. |
| --fields-escaped-by=             | Designates escape character(s) in returned fields for the data received from the import file.  |
| -h, --host=                      | Connects to specified host. If none is given, localhost is assumed. The value given can be either an IP address, domain name or server alias.    |
| -i, --ignore                     | If importing data into a table with preexisting rows, skips importing data from rows that have matching keys.                                    |
| -l, --lock-tables                | Locks all affected tables prior to data import. This function prevents other processes from modifying data during import.                        |
| -L, --local                      | Takes datafile to use for import from localhost.   |
| --lines-terminated-by=           | Designates character(s) for the end-of-line data type for the data received from the import file. Defaults to newline (\n).                      |
| --low-priority                   | Utilizes LOW_PRIORITY syntax for query string used for INSERT.   |
| -p, --password                   | Uses password to connect to database. If no password is given, a prompt will be displayed requesting for the password to be entered.             |
| -P, --port=                      | Designates a specific port that the connection to the MySQL database should use.   |
| -r, --replace                    | If importing data into a table with preexisting rows, forces replacement of existing data in rows that have matching keys.                       |
| -s, --silent                     | Prevents the return of any standard output messages, though error messages are still returned.   |
| -S, --socket=                    | Uses the given socket file for connection to the server.   |
| -u, --user=                      | Designates the username to connect to the MySQL database as. If none is given, current username is assumed.                                      |
| -v, --verbose                    | Displays more verbose system error messages.   |
| -V, --version                    | Displays the MySQL version number and exit.  |

## mysqltest

The mysqltest application provides command-line access to the MySQL database testing scripts that are provided with non-package distributions.

| Argument              | Description   |
|-----------------------|---|
| -?, --help            | Displays basic help information and description of command line arguments.  |
| -D, --database=       | Uses the given database for testing with the test script.   |
| -h, --host=           | Connects to specified host. If none is given, localhost is assumed. The value given can be either an IP address, domain name or server alias. |
| -p, --password=       | Uses password to connect to server. If no password is given, a prompt will be displayed requesting for the password to be entered.            |
| -P, --port=           | Designates a specific port that the connection to the MySQL database should use.  |
| -q, --quiet, --silent | Prevents the return of any standard output, though error messages are still returned.   |
| -r, --record          | Record output from testing script into the designated result-file.  |
| -R, --result-file=    | Uses the given file for recording results from the testing script. Must be used with -r, --record.  |
| -S, --socket=         | Uses the given socket file for connection to the server.  |
| -t, --tmpdir=         | Uses the given directory for storage of the socket file.  |
| -T, --sleep=          | Sleeps for the number of seconds given when the testing script calls a sleep request.   |
| -u, --user=           | Designates the username to connect to the MySQL database as. If none is given, current username is assumed.                                   |
| -v, --verbose         | Displays more verbose system error messages.  |
| -V, --version         | Displays the MySQL version number and then exits.   |

## A.3 The mysqld Server Daemon

The mysqld application—usually considered the server for MySQL—controls the process of the MySQL database.

| <b>Argument</b>                       | <b>Description</b>   |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| <code>-?, --help</code>               | Displays basic help information and descriptions of command-line arguments.  |
| <code>--ansi</code>                   | Forces any ALTER syntax to use the ANSI SQL standard.  |
| <code>-b, --basedir=</code>           | Identifies the given path as the path to the MySQL installation directory.   |
| <code>--bdb-home=</code>              | Identifies the given path as leading to the directory for the Berkeley DB.   |
| <code>--bdb-lock-detect=</code>       | Defines the Berkeley DB lock to detect as one of the following:<br>DEFAULT<br>OLDEST<br>RANDOM<br>YOUNGEST<br>Additionally the number of seconds for the lock detect can be given. |
| <code>--bdb-logdir=</code>            | Identifies the given path as the one leading to the Berkeley DB log files.   |
| <code>--bdb-no-sync</code>            | Disables synchronous flushing of the system logs.  |
| <code>--bdb-no-recover</code>         | Disables recovery of Berkeley DB table upon start.   |
| <code>--bdb-shared-data</code>        | Upon startup, allows the Berkeley DB to maintain multiple processes.   |
| <code>--bdb-tmpdir=</code>            | Identifies the given path as that leading to the system temp file.   |
| <code>--big-tables</code>             | Saves all temporary result sets to a temp file.  |
| <code>--bind-address=</code>          | Identifies the given address as the IP that the server is bound to.  |
| <code>--bootstrap</code>              | This option is utilized for the MySQL installation.  |
| <code>--character-sets-dir=</code>    | Identifies the given path as leading to the directory that houses character sets.  |
| <code>--chroot=</code>                | Identifies the given path as leading to the directory in which MySQL will be chroot jailed.  |
| <code>--core-file</code>              | Produces a core-dump file on SIGSEGV signal.   |
| <code>--default-character-set=</code> | Identifies the given id as the default character set.  |

*Continued*

| <b>Argument</b>                  | <b>Description</b>  |
|----------------------------------|---|
| --default-table-type=            | Identifies the given table name as the default table type.  |
| --delay-key-write-for-all-tables | Disables key buffer flushing between writes for MyISAM tables.  |
| --enable-locking                 | Enables the server to perform system locking.   |
| --flush                          | Writes the contents of tables to disk after SQL commands.   |
| -h, --datadir=                   | Identifies the given path as that of the database root.   |
| --init-file=                     | Upon startup, executes the following SQL commands from the given file path.   |
| -l, --log=                       | Enables system logging to given file name.  |
| -L, --language=                  | Returns error messages to the client in the given language. Can be given as a path.   |
| --log-bin=                       | Identifies the given path to the file as the one to used for binary logging.  |
| --log-bin-index=                 | Identifies the given path as the one to the file holding the index of binary log files.   |
| --log-update=                    | Identifies the given path as the one to the file descriptor used for incrementally updated log files that will be sequentially rotated. |
| --log-isam=                      | Identifies the given path as the one to the file used to log all MyISAM changes.  |
| --log-long-format                | Utilizes more verbose logging.  |
| --low-priority-updates           | Gives SELECT queries higher priority than INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE queries.   |
| --log-slow-queries=              | Keeps the given path to the log file for slow queries on the DB.  |
| --memlock                        | Locks mysqld into system memory.  |
| --myisam-recover=                | Executes the given MyISAM recovery command. Options are DEFAULT, BACKUP or FORCE.   |
| -n, --new                        | Utilizes any new, potentially unstable functionality included with the distribution.  |
| -o, --old-protocol               | Utilizes the older 3.20.x MySQL protocol.   |
| -O, --set-variable var=option    | Assigns the given option value to the ENV variable given as var.  |
| -P, --port=                      | Designates a specific port that the client connection to the MySQL database should use.   |

| Argument                 | Description   |
|--------------------------|---|
| -Sg, --skip-grant-tables | Starts the server without using GRANT tables. This will give all users access to all tables, including the mysql system db tables.  |
| --safe-mode              | During startup, disables certain optimizations for the system. This option should only be used for system testing.  |
| --safe-show-database     | In the MySQL CLI, disallows viewing of databases to which the user does not have access.  |
| --safe-user-create       | Disallows any user attempt to create new system accounts by using the GRANT command.  |
| --skip-concurrent-insert | Disables concurrent inserts using MyISAM.   |
| --skip-delay-key-write   | Ignores the action if the DELAY_KEY_WRITE option is defined in table create syntax.   |
| --skip-host-cache        | Prevents the caching of host domain names.  |
| --skip-locking           | Disable system locking.   |
| --skip-name-resolve      | Disables IP name resolution to full domain names.   |
| --skip-networking        | Disables TCP/IP connections to the server.  |
| --skip-new               | Disables any new, potentially unstable functionality included with the distribution.  |
| --skip-stack-trace       | Disables the display of a stack trace upon server failure.  |
| --skip-show-database     | Disables usage of the SHOW DATABASE command.  |
| --skip-thread-priority   | All threads will have the same priority to the system process.  |
| --socket=                | Uses the given socket file for connection to the server.  |
| -t, --tmpdir=            | Given path is the directory used for temporary system files.  |
| --sql-mode=              | Activates the following mode options, multiples must be comma separated with no spaces.<br>REAL_AS_FLOAT<br>PIPES_AS_CONCAT<br>ANSI_QUOTES<br>IGNORE_SPACE<br>SERIALIZE<br>ONLY_FULL_GROUP_BY |

| <b>Argument</b>         | <b>Description</b>   |
|-------------------------|--|
| --skip-bdb              | Skips the system usage of the Berkeley DB.                           |
| --transaction-isolation | Utilizes the transaction isolation level at default.                 |
| --temp-pool             | Utilizes multiple temp files.  |
| -u, --user=             | Given username will be the user account as which the process is run. |
| -v, --version           | Displays the MySQL version number and exit.                          |
| -W, --warnings          | Returns verbose messages to the system log file.                     |



# Language Reference

---

This Appendix examines the Data Definition Language (DDL) and Data Markup Language (DML) SQL statements for MySQL. (Appendix C examines the numerous functions used in SELECT statements.)

## B.1 Data Definition Language and Data Markup Language

This section lists and describes various DDL and DML statements.

### ALTER TABLE

```
ALTER [IGNORE] TABLE table_name  
alter_definition
```

The ALTER TABLE command changes the state of a preexisting table. Including the IGNORE option allows changes that affect primary keys to be overwritten or deleted. Without the IGNORE option, the operation indicates an error and rolls back to the prior status of the table.

| <i>alter_definition</i>  | <i>Description</i>   |
|--|--|
| ADD <i>create_definition</i><br>[FIRST or AFTER <i>column_name</i> ]   | The first version of the ADD syntax allows specific placement of an appended column. If no modifier is specified, the appended column will become last. The FIRST modifier will append before all columns. The AFTER modifier will insert after the given <i>column_name</i> . |
| ADD ( <i>create_definition</i> ,<br><i>create_definition</i> , ...)  | The second version of the ADD syntax allows the passing of multiple <i>create_definition</i> to append multiple columns (in sequence) to the current table structure.  |
| ADD INDEX [ <i>index_name</i> ]<br><i>index_column_name</i><br>(, <i>index_column_name</i> , ...)  | The ADD INDEX alter type allows creation of a new table index given by the name <i>index_name</i> . The index can be made up of one or multiple column entities.   |
| ADD PRIMARY KEY<br><i>index_column_name</i><br>(, <i>index_column_name</i> , ...)  | The ADD PRIMARY KEY type will create a new primary key for the designated table. If there is currently a primary key on the table, it will be overridden.  |
| ADD UNIQUE [ <i>index_name</i> ]<br><i>index_column_name</i><br>(, <i>index_column_name</i> , ...)   | The ADD UNIQUE type will add a new unique index to the table.  |
| ADD FULLTEXT [ <i>index_name</i> ]<br><i>index_column_name</i><br>(, <i>index_column_name</i> , ...)   | The ADD FULLTEXT option will add a new FULLTEXT index to the table. This allows use of MATCH ... AGAINST syntax in the definition of where clauses.  |
| ADD [CONSTRAINT <i>const_symbol</i> ] FOREIGN KEY <i>index_name</i><br><i>index_column_name</i><br>(, <i>index_column_name</i> , ...)<br>[ <i>reference_definition</i> ] | The ADD FOREIGN KEY type is included purely for ANSI SQL92 compatibility. This call performs no action.  |
| ALTER <i>column_name</i><br>{ DROP DEFAULT or<br>SET DEFAULT <i>literal</i> }  | The ALTER type allows modification of an existing column in a table. The command takes on either the DROP or SET options for removing or changing the given <i>column_name</i> to the new literal type.  |
| CHANGE <i>old_column_name</i><br><i>create_syntax</i><br>[FIRST or AFTER <i>column_name</i> ]  | The CHANGE type allows complete modification of a column given by <i>old_column_name</i> . The new column position can be created with the FIRST or AFTER options.   |
| MODIFY <i>create_syntax</i><br>[FIRST or AFTER <i>column_name</i> ]  | The MODIFY type will change the definition of a given column but will keep the name for the column. The new column position can be designated by including either the FIRST or AFTER options.  |

| <i>alter_definition</i>      | <b>Description</b>   |
|------------------------------|--|
| DROP <i>column_name</i>      | The DROP option will remove the entered <i>column_name</i> from the designated table.  |
| DROP PRIMARY KEY             | Removes (drops) the PRIMARY KEY for the designated table. If no PRIMARY KEY exists, the first UNIQUE index for the table is dropped. |
| DROP INDEX <i>index_name</i> | Removes (drops) the given <i>index_name</i> from the table.  |
| DISABLE KEYS                 | The DISABLE KEYS type forces MySQL to omit updating any indices that are not unique in the MyISAM table.                             |
| ENABLE KEYS                  | The ENABLE KEYS type recreates missing keys upon a table.  |
| RENAME <i>new_table_name</i> | The RENAME option renames the table to a given <i>new_table_name</i> .   |
| ORDER BY <i>column_name</i>  | The ORDER BY option re-sorts the given table by the designated <i>column_name</i> .  |

## CREATE DATABASE

CREATE DATABASE [IF NOT EXISTS] *database\_name*

The CREATE DATABASE command adds a database to the MySQL server. If the IF NOT EXISTS condition is specified, and a database with the same name is present the command will return an error, and no changes to the server will occur.

## CREATE TABLE

CREATE [TEMPORARY] TABLE [IF NOT EXISTS] *table\_name*  
*[table\_definition]*  
*[select\_statement]*

The CREATE TABLE command creates a new table in the database to which you are presently connected. If you are not connected to a database, the process indicates an error and no table is created.

## DESCRIBE

DESCRIBE *table\_name* [*column\_name*]

The DESCRIBE command returns the create syntax for the table given in *table\_name*. Additionally a specific column given as *column\_name* can be entered to limit the CREATE listing.

## DELETE FROM

```
DELETE [LOW PRIORITY or QUICK] FROM table_name
[WHERE where_definition]
[ORDER BY order_definition]
[LIMIT row_value]
```

The DELETE FROM command removes data from *table\_name*. If the LOW PRIORITY argument is specified, the delete process waits until there is no client access to the table. If the QUICK argument is specified, there will be no merging of table leaves during the process. DELETE commands with no WHERE arguments delete all data housed in the given table. The ORDER BY clause can be issued in conjunction with the LIMIT clause to remove a certain number of records according to their order within the table.

## EXPLAIN SELECT

```
EXPLAIN SELECT select_definition
```

The EXPLAIN SELECT command returns information on how MySQL will process the given *select\_definition*. The EXPLAIN command determines the need for optimizations in a table's CREATE syntax.

## HANDLER

```
HANDLER table_name handler_option
```

The HANDLER command is utilized as a fast mechanism for returning table data. The HANDLER command returns results much faster than the SELECT command due to the SQL Optimizer being excluded. During the execution of the command no table locking occurs, thus allowing other connections to perform updates to table data during the process.

| <i>handler_option</i>   | <i>Description</i>  |
|---|---|
| OPEN [AS <i>alias</i> ]   | The OPEN option is the first step in preparing the HANDLER command. Opening the table, the option prepares all commands for the READ members listed in this table.  |
| READ <i>index</i> { = or >= or <= or < } ( <i>value</i> , <i>value</i> , ... ) [WHERE <i>where_definition</i> ] [LIMIT <i>row_limit</i> ] | This READ option allows a comparison of the index to a list of values. You can also designate a comparison by using the <i>where_definition</i> to limit the rows returned. The READ command returns 1 row by default (unless the LIMIT option designates otherwise). |

| <i>handler_option</i>   | <b>Description</b>  |
|---|---|
| READ <i>index</i> { FIRST or LAST<br>or NEXT or PREV }<br>[WHERE <i>where_definition</i> ]<br>[LIMIT <i>row_limit</i> ] | This READ option reads data in the order of the index. The return can be limited by a WHERE clause. The READ command returns 1 row by default (unless the LIMIT option designates otherwise).   |
| READ { FIRST or NEXT }<br>[WHERE <i>where_definition</i> ]<br>[LIMIT <i>row_limit</i> ]                                 | This READ option is used to read the raw table data in natural order as stored in the table. An optional <i>where_definition</i> can also be applied to this option to limit the data returned. The READ command returns 1 row by default (unless the LIMIT option designates otherwise). |
| CLOSE   | The CLOSE command terminates the current thread. Issue this closing command at the conclusion of the HANDLER subsets.   |

## INSERT INTO

```
INSERT [LOW_PRIORITY or DELAYED] [IGNORE] INTO table_name
(column_list) VALUES (value_list)
```

The INSERT INTO command is the basic mechanism for inserting data into a table. If the LOW\_PRIORITY argument is specified, the insert will be delayed until there is no client access to the designated table. If the DELAYED argument is specified, clients are allowed to continue as the inserts are bundled for one mass insert. The DELAYED option may improve speed for large inserts. If the IGNORE argument is specified, inserts that would duplicate the insertion of a primary key are ignored. Without the IGNORE option (given a duplicate primary key), the insert terminates.

## SELECT

```
SELECT [SQL_SMALL_RESULT]
[SQL_BIG_RESULT]
[SQL_BUFFER_RESULT]
[SQL_CACHE or SQL_NO_CACHE]
[SQL_CALC_FOUND_ROWS]
[STRAIGHT_JOIN]
[HIGH_PRIORITY]
[DISTINCT or DISTINCTROW or ALL] select_definition
    [INTO {OUTFILE or DUMPFILE} file_name export_options]
    [FROM table_definition
        [WHERE where_definition]
        [GROUP BY {unsigned_integer or column_name or formula}]
        [HAVING where_definition]
        [ORDER BY {unsigned_integer or column_name or formula}]
        [LIMIT {offset_value,} row_value]
        [PROCEDURE procedure_name]
        [FOR UPDATE or LOCK IN SHARE MODE]]
```

The SELECT command allows access to the data in a given table, and can also select data in several different tables by using the syntax of the JOIN command.

## SELECT arguments

The arguments of the SELECT command perform specialized tasks:

- ◆ The SQL\_SMALL\_RESULT argument will optimize the data returned for a small query set.
- ◆ SQL\_BIG\_RESULT optimizes the data for a large query set, tending toward large data returns. Additionally, MySQL will write out temporary tables to disk to minimize memory usage.
- ◆ SQL\_BUFFER\_RESULT causes MySQL to place the results in a temporary table.

**Tip**

Locked tables may be released faster by using the SQL\_BUFFER\_RESULT option.

- ◆ SQL\_CACHE and SQL\_NO\_CACHE modifiers regulate the usage of the MySQL query cache. Using the cache speeds up queries for identical data.
- ◆ SQL\_CALC\_FOUND\_ROWS instructs MySQL to calculate the number of rows returned from the given query. This data can be retrieved by using the FoundRows() definition of SELECT.
- ◆ STRAIGHT\_JOIN is a clause that instructs the MySQL optimizer to join the tables in the order listed in the WHERE definition.
- ◆ HIGH\_PRIORITY is a clause that forces the SELECT operation to precede any otherwise-simultaneous updates to the table.
- ◆ DISTINCT, DISTINCTROW, and ALL are clauses that (respectively) either limit the data to unique sets or show all data in a given query.

## Using SELECT with JOIN syntax

The SELECT command offers the following options to control table joins. The JOIN syntax can be created by the use of 3 elements. The *table\_definition*, *table\_reference*, and *join\_condition* make up all options to control table joins. The standard sequence looks like this:

1. *table\_definition* allows the use of JOIN syntax in the SELECT statement.

Valid JOIN clauses are as follows:

*table\_reference*, *table\_reference*  
*table\_reference* [CROSS] JOIN *table\_reference*  
*table\_reference* INNER JOIN *table\_reference* *join\_condition*  
*table\_reference* STRAIGHT\_JOIN *table\_reference*  
*table\_reference* LEFT [OUTER] JOIN *table\_reference*  
    *join\_condition*

```
table_reference LEFT [OUTER] JOIN table_reference  
table_reference NATURAL [LEFT [OUTER]] JOIN table_reference  
{ oj table_reference LEFT OUTER JOIN table_reference ON  
    conditional_expr }  
table_reference RIGHT [OUTER] JOIN table_reference  
join_condition  
table_reference RIGHT [OUTER] JOIN table_reference  
table_reference NATURAL [RIGHT [OUTER]] JOIN table_reference
```

2. The *table\_reference* syntax is then formed as follows:

```
table_name [[AS] alias]  
[USE INDEX (key_list)]  
[IGNORE INDEX (key_list)]
```

3. The *join\_condition* syntax is then formed as follows:

```
ON conditional_expr | USING (column_list)
```

## SHOW TABLES

```
SHOW [OPEN] TABLES [FROM database_name] [LIKE  
database_wildcard]
```

The SHOW TABLES command is a member of the SHOW command group. This command is used to generate a listing of all tables in the database given as *database\_name*; this will also default to the currently connected database if none is specified. Including LIKE—along with a string containing a wildcard—limits the returned listing to specified tables.

## UNION

```
SELECT select_clause UNION [ALL] SELECT select_clause  
[UNION SELECT select_clause ...]
```

The UNION command allows combinations of multiple SELECT statements into a single return. In the *select\_clause* syntax, only the last statement may contain a declared ORDER BY or INTO OUTFILE modifier. Identical row data can be returned unless the ALL option is specified.

## UPDATE

```
UPDATE [LOW_PRIORITY] [IGNORE] table_name  
SET column1=value1 [, column2=value2, ...]  
[WHERE where_definition]  
[LIMIT row_value]
```

The UPDATE command allows modification of data currently housed in a table. Including the LOW\_PRIORITY option will force the UPDATE to be delayed until there is no further client access to the affected table. The IGNORE option overrides errors if multiple primary keys are generated by the UPDATE command. UPDATE commands with no WHERE clause will modify all columns that are given a value. The LIMIT clause can also be used to restrict the UPDATE to a specified number of rows given by *row\_value*.

## B.2. Administrative Commands

The administrative commands in MySQL allow access to control and configure the internals of the MySQL database.

### ANALYZE TABLE

`ANALYZE TABLE table_name [, table_name]`

The ANALYZE TABLE command creates a key distribution listing for the designated table(s), which is utilized when performing a join on the table. During the process of the command, the affected tables are read locked. The process of analyzing a table provides information to MySQL used in determining the order in which tables should be joined based on the key distribution.

### FLUSH

`FLUSH flush_option [, flush_option, ...]`

The FLUSH command is used to force a reload of internal MySQL data. The option given determines what portions of the internal cache are reloaded within the server.

| <i>flush_option</i> | <i>Description</i>   |
|---------------------|--|
| HOSTS               | Reloads the domain to IP translations created when a user from a particular host given by a domain name connects to the database. This function should be used if a connection is denied due to a particular hostname changing its cached IP address to domain record. |
| DES_KEY_FILE        | Reloads the DES file specified during the startup of the MySQL server.   |

| <i>flush_option</i>                                 | <b>Description</b>  |
|---|---|
| LOGS  | Closes all system log files and then reopens them. If log has been specified for an update, the command increments the filename(s) for the existing logs, and then starts a new log file for the current process. This option is equivalent to giving the <code>SIGHUP</code> signal to the daemon. |
| PRIVILEGES  | Reloads the grant tables that define access rights within the server.   |
| TABLE <i>table_name</i>                             | Flushes only the specified table given by <i>table_name</i> .   |
| TABLES [ <i>table_name</i> ,<br><i>table_name</i> ] | Flushes only the specified tables given by <i>table_name</i> .  |
| TABLES WITH READ LOCK                               | Closes all open tables and places a read lock on all tables. The database stays in that state until an <code>UNLOCK TABLES</code> command is issued to the server.  |
| STATUS  | Resets all status variables to zero.  |

## KILL

`KILL thread_id`

The `KILL` command stops a connection to the database, identifying the prospective connection by its *thread\_id*. Every client that accesses the database has a socket identified by a unique *thread\_id* (which can be seen by issuing the `SHOW PROCESSLIST` command). Additionally, the `mysqladmin PROCESSLIST` command delivers a list of all threads, as covered in Appendix A (heading A.2).

The `KILL` command does not immediately kill a given process; instead, it issues a *kill flag* (an instruction to terminate at a specified time). The client's connection will only be terminated when the client checks for the issued kill flag.

To prevent processes from being killed in a state that could adversely affect the database, client checks are performed at different times that depend on the type of action occurring:

- ◆ `ALTER TABLE` commands check for the kill flag before the reading of a new block of data from the originating table.
- ◆ `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, `SELECT`, `ORDER BY` and `GROUP BY` check for the kill flag immediately after reading a block of data.
- ◆ `UPDATE` and `DELETE` threads check for the kill flag after a row modification.

## OPTIMIZE TABLE

```
OPTIMIZE TABLE table_name [, table_name, ...]
```

The `OPTIMIZE TABLE` command is used when a table's data has been significantly changed. If significant quantities of data are either updated or deleted from the given table(s), many records may become unusable. Issuing this command defragments the datafiles used, reclaiming the space still allocated to the removed records.

When the command is issued upon the designated tables, the process checks for deleted or split rows, repairs them if they exist, re-sorts all index pages, and updates all statistics.

## RESET

```
RESET reset_option [, reset_option, ...]
```

The `RESET` command clears the logs and queries the caches used in the MySQL database. The options in the `RESET` command can additionally be performed by the various `FLUSH` commands.

| <i>Reset_option</i> | <i>Description</i>   |
|---------------------|--|
| MASTER              | Deletes all binary logs in the index file and then resets the binlog file to its empty state.  |
| SLAVE               | Forces the slave to forget the current replication position being used in the master log file. |
| QUERY_CACHE         | Removes all current queries from the query cache.  |

## SHOW

```
SHOW show_option
```

The `SHOW` command returns data specific to a particular system, database, or table.

| <i>Show_option</i>                          | <i>Description</i>   |
|---|--|
| <code>CREATE TABLE <i>table_name</i></code> | Returns the full <code>CREATE</code> syntax for the designated table.  |
| <code>COLUMNS FROM <i>table_name</i></code> | Returns a listing of all columns and their <code>CREATE</code> values. This option is equivalent to the <code>DESCRIBE</code> command. |

| <i>Show_option</i>                     | <b>Description</b>   |
|--|--|
| DATABASES                              | Returns a listing of all databases available to the connected user.  |
| GRANTS FOR<br><i>username@hostname</i> | Returns the syntax of the GRANT command to recreate the permissions currently assigned to the given <i>username</i> by the designated <i>hostname</i> .                    |
| INDEX FROM <i>table_name</i>           | Returns a listing of all index data from the given table.  |
| LOGS                                   | Returns the filename, file type, and status of the logfiles currently active in the system.  |
| MASTER LOGS                            | Returns system status for the binlog files.  |
| MASTER STATUS                          | Returns the filename, position, and status of the active binlog files.   |
| PROCESSLIST                            | Returns a listing of all current system processes – including the command issued, the host doing the accessing, the database connected to, the time, and the system state. |
| SLAVE STATUS                           | Returns system information on all connected slave servers.   |
| STATUS                                 | Returns a complete listing of current internal system status.  |
| TABLE STATUS                           | Returns internal status information on all tables in the database to which you are currently and actively connected.   |
| TABLES                                 | Returns an exclusive list of all tables contained in the active database.  |
| VARIABLES                              | Returns a listing of all system variables currently present.   |

## B.3 Backup / Recovery Commands

The following sections describe the backup and disaster-recovery commands used in MySQL.

### BACKUP TABLE

```
BACKUP TABLE table_name [, table_name, ...] TO file_path
```

The BACKUP TABLE command allows current state of the designated tablename(s) to be written to file. This file can then be used (in conjunction with the RESTORE TABLE command) to return a table to its initial state at the time the file was created.

## CHECK TABLE

```
CHECK TABLE table_name [, table_name, ...]  
[check_option [, check_option, ...]]
```

The CHECK TABLE command is used to verify the condition of given tablename(s) for inconsistencies. The *check\_option* types determine how thorough the checks to be performed will be. The last piece of data returned on the verified table will be *Msg\_type value*. The returned *value* should be 'OK' or 'Not Checked' (depending on the state of the table). For any other value, use a REPAIR TABLE command.

| <i>Check_option</i> | <b>Description</b>  |
|---------------------|---|
| CHANGED             | Checks only the tables modified since the last check, and all tables not closed properly in the last session.   |
| EXTENDED            | Performs a complete check on designated tables, including a complete key lookup for all keys in every row of the given <i>table_name</i> .                    |
| FAST                | Limits its checks to the tables not properly closed.  |
| MEDIUM              | Checks all rows to ensure that deleted links are actually and correctly deleted. Additionally, generates a key checksum and checks it against current values. |
| QUICK               | Performs a minimal verification of the table, without verifying row data.   |

## REPAIR TABLE

```
REPAIR TABLE table_name [, table_name, ...] [QUICK] [EXTENDED]
```

The REPAIR TABLE command fixes a damaged or corrupted table, generally after a CHECK TABLE command returns a bad status for the table. If the QUICK option is specified the repair will only affect the index tree. With the EXTENDED option, the index will be recreated row by row. The last piece of data returned on the repaired table will be *Msg\_type value*. The returned *value* should be 'OK'. Any other value indicates that the REPAIR TABLE command has failed.

## RESTORE TABLE

```
RESTORE TABLE table_name [, table_name, ...] FROM file_path
```

The RESTORE TABLE command is used to recreate tables from a file generated by the BACKUP TABLE command—and only from such a file. If executed upon existing tables, the RESTORE TABLE command returns an error message.

## B.4. User-Account Commands

This section lists and describes the MySQL user-account commands. Both the GRANT and REVOKE commands use the same *priv\_type* to designate specific access rights within the database. Updated user data doesn't take effect on the system until a FLUSH PRIVILEGES command is issued.

### GRANT

```
GRANT priv_type [column_list] [, priv_type [column_list] ...]
ON {table_name or * or database_name.* or *.*}
TO user_name [IDENTIFIED BY [PASSWORD] password]
[REQUIRE
  [{SSL or X509}]
  [{CIPHER cipher_type [AND]}]
  [{ISSUER issuer_type [AND]}]
  [{SUBJECT subject_type}]
  [WITH GRANT OPTION]]
```

The GRANT command is used to designate a specific access level for a given user-name. The GRANT command can designate privileges to a designated *column\_list*, *table\_name*, or *database\_name*, or grant privileges globally.



#### Tip

Using a GRANT command for a currently nonexistent user account creates that user on the server. The syntax for the username can be either *name* or *name@host*.

## REVOKE

```
REVOKE priv_type [column_list] [, priv_type [column_list] ...]  
ON ON {table_name or * or database_name.* or *.*}  
FROM username [, user_name, ...]
```

The REVOKE command performs the opposite action to that of the GRANT command, removing access rights on the server for the designated user. The REVOKE command can also designate *column\_list*, *table\_name*, or *database\_name*—or be used globally.

| <i>priv_type</i> | <b>Description</b>   |
|------------------|--|
| ALL PRIVILEGES   | Affects all access types.  |
| ALTER            | Gives the user access to alter tables within the access of the user. |
| CREATE           | Allows the creation of tables.                                       |
| DELETE           | Allows removal of row data in tables that can be accessed.           |
| DROP             | Allows the removal of existing tables.                               |
| FILE             | Allows access to external files for system backup and restoration.   |
| INDEX            | Allows the creation of table indexes.                                |
| INSERT           | Places data within tables a user may access.                         |
| PROCESS          | Gives access to the internal listing of current server processes.    |
| RELOAD           | Gives the user access to the FLUSH command.                          |
| SELECT           | Gives the user access to read data from accessible tables.           |
| SHUTDOWN         | Terminates the MySQL service.  |
| UPDATE           | Allows the user to modify current table data.                        |
| USAGE            | Gives the user access to system-usage statistics.                    |



# Function and Operator Reference

---

## C.1. MySQL Operators

Comparing the elements in the `where_clause` for MySQL commands requires operators to determine what comparison to make between objects. Operators provide the mechanism for case-based testing between objects.

### Comparison operators

The *comparison operators* perform the base logic needed to compare arguments. The following operators function on both strings and numbers. All comparison operators return a True (1), False (0) or `NULL` value. If a string is compared to a number, the string is converted to a floating-point number.

| <b>Operator</b> | <b>Description</b>   |
|-----------------|--|
| =               | Equal-to operator.   |
| !=, <>          | Not-equal-to operator.   |
| >               | Greater-than operator.   |
| >=              | Greater-than-or-equal-to operator.   |
| <               | Less-than operator.  |
| <=              | Less-than-or-equal-to operator.  |
| <=>             | Equal-to operator for NULL-safe equations. This operator returns True (1) for operations based on NULL <=> NULL. |

## Flow-control operators

The *flow-control operators* allow sequential, comparison-based conditional clauses.

| <b>Operator</b>  | <b>Description</b>  |
|--|---|
| CASE <i>base</i> WHEN [ <i>value1</i> ] THEN <i>return1</i> [WHEN [ <i>value2</i> ] THEN <i>return2</i> ...] [ELSE <i>alt_return</i> ] END | This iteration of the CASE operator performs a series of checks between the base value and the return series, the returned value being the first to match values. If no values match the base and the ELSE option is included, the <i>alt_return</i> value is returned by the function. The END syntax must be included in all CASE operations. |
| CASE WHEN <i>conditional</i> THEN <i>result1</i> [WHEN [ <i>conditional</i> ] THEN <i>return1</i> ...] [ELSE <i>return2</i> ] END          | The second iteration of the CASE operator allows conditional equations to determine the result to be returned by the function. If none of the given values match the base and the ELSE option is included, the <i>alt_return</i> value is returned. The END syntax must be included in all CASE operations.                                     |
| IF( <i>conditional</i> , <i>value1</i> , <i>value2</i> )   | The IF operator returns either <i>value1</i> if <i>conditional</i> is True or <i>value2</i> if <i>conditional</i> is False.   |
| IFNULL( <i>value1</i> , <i>value2</i> )  | The IFNULL operator returns <i>value1</i> if it is not NULL; if <i>value1</i> is NULL, then <i>value2</i> is returned.  |
| NULLIF( <i>value1</i> , <i>value2</i> )  | The NULLIF operator returns NULL if <i>value1</i> = <i>value2</i> , otherwise <i>value1</i> is returned.  |

## Logical operators

The *logical operators* perform base binary comparisons. For all comparison operations, the return value is one of three values: True (1), False (0), or NULL.

| <b>Operator</b> | <b>Description</b>   |
|-----------------|--|
| NOT, !          | The NOT operator is for base-logical negation. The return value is always 0 unless the base value is 0 (in which case the return value is 1). The only exception is the case of NOT NULL: The negation of the NULL value returns NULL. |
| OR,             | The OR operator produces the inclusive -OR logical function. The return value is 1 if either comparator of the statement is 1.   |
| AND, &&         | The AND operator produces the basic AND logical function. The return value for the operation is 1 only if both comparators are 1. In all other cases, the operation returns 0.   |

## Statement operators

The *statement operators* expand the options for comparative operations. The NOT operator can be applied to negate the expression formed by the Statement operators. All String operators that are compared perform case-insensitive pattern-matching. Using the BINARY keyword allows case-sensitive operation.

| <b>Operator</b>  | <b>Description</b>   |
|--|--|
| <i>expression</i> BETWEEN<br><i>min_value</i> AND <i>max_value</i> | The BETWEEN operator returns True (1) if the given expression has a value greater than or equal to the <i>min_value</i> and less than or equal to the <i>max_value</i> . Otherwise the operator returns False (0). |
| COALESCE( <i>value</i> , ...)                                      | The COALESCE operator returns the first non-NULL value from the given list of values. If all given values in the list are NULL, then a NULL value is returned.   |
| <i>expression</i> IN ( <i>value</i> , ...)                         | The IN operator returns True (1) if the given expression is equal to any item that is given in the value list. If no value matches, the operator returns False (0).  |
| INTERVAL( <i>base</i> , <i>value1</i> ,<br><i>value2</i> , ...)    | The INTERVAL operator returns the index of the first value that is greater than the base. The index of the series starts with a value of 0 being returned for a base greater than <i>value1</i> .                  |
| <i>expression</i> IS NULL  | The IS NULL operator returns True (1) if the given <i>expression</i> is NULL. If the expression is not NULL, False (0) is returned.  |

## String operators

The *string operators* are used on strings or on numbers to perform string-based comparisons. The NOT operator can be applied to negate the expression formed by the String operators. All String operators perform case-insensitive pattern matching. Using the BINARY keyword allows case-sensitive operation.

| <b>Operator</b>                      | <b>Description</b>  |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| LIKE ' <i>wildcarded_string</i> '    | The LIKE operator is for comparison operations based on the given <i>wildcarded_string</i> . The operation can be done upon both string and numeric datatypes. The <i>wildcarded_string</i> uses two characters to denote random character space. The '%' character denotes a variable length string consisting of any characters. The '_' character represents any single character. |
| REGEXP ' <i>regular_expression</i> ' | The REGEXP operator provides matching capacity for regular expressions. Unlike standard regular expressions, the REGEXP operator performs case-insensitive matches unless used in conjunction with the BINARY keyword.  |

## C.2. MySQL Functions

Functions within MySQL allow the conversion of data from one form to another. These transformations expand the scope of information that can be obtained from the database.

### Binary math functions

*Binary math* functions allow binary calculations upon decimal values. The calculations are done with 64 bits; any numeric value created larger than a BIGINT incurs rounding errors. Binary math functions cannot be performed on floating-point numbers. If a floating-point number is given to the function, an error is returned.

| <b>Function</b>               | <b>Description</b>  |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <i>value1</i> & <i>value2</i> | The & function performs a bitwise AND between the binary equivalents of <i>value1</i> and <i>value2</i> . |
| <i>value1</i>   <i>value2</i> | The   function performs a bitwise OR between the binary equivalents of <i>value1</i> and <i>value2</i> .  |

| <b>Function</b>                     | <b>Description</b>  |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| <code>value1 &lt;&lt; value2</code> | The <code>&lt;&lt;</code> function performs a bitwise shift to the left of all bits given as the 64-bit binary representation of <code>value1</code> . The shift moves the number of places designated by <code>value2</code> . A padding of 0 is applied to all places that are shifted out from the 64-bit binary value.  |
| <code>value1 &gt;&gt; value2</code> | The <code>&gt;&gt;</code> function performs a bitwise shift to the right of all bits given as the 64-bit binary representation of <code>value1</code> . The shift moves the number of places designated by <code>value2</code> . A padding of 0 is applied to all places that are shifted out from the 64-bit binary value. |
| <code>BIT_COUNT(value)</code>       | The <code>BIT_COUNT</code> function returns the number of digits required to represent a given integer in binary format.  |

## Date functions

The *date functions* allow operations on the various types of date or time values.

| <b>Function</b>                                       | <b>Description</b>  |
|---|---|
| <code>CURDATE()</code>                                | The <code>CURDATE</code> function returns the current date from the server on which MySQL is running. If used as a string <code>CURDATE</code> returns values in the ' <code>YYYY-MM-DD</code> ' format. If used as a number, the date is returned in the <code>YYYYMMDD</code> format. |
| <code>CURTIME()</code>                                | The <code>CURTIME</code> function returns the current time from the server on which MySQL is running. If used as a string, <code>CURTIME</code> returns values in the ' <code>HH:MM:SS</code> ' format. If used as a number, the time is returned in the <code>HHMMSS</code> format.    |
| <code>DATE_ADD(date, INTERVAL value date_type)</code> | The <code>DATE_ADD</code> function returns the given date incremented by the given value. The value may be any <code>date_type</code> value listed in the table below, and must follow its format.  |
| <code>DATE_FORMAT(date, date_string_format)</code>    | The <code>DATE_FORMAT</code> function returns the given date formatted to fit a particular date style. Valid <code>date_string_format</code> structures are listed in the table below.  |

*Continued*

| <b>Function</b>  | <b>Description</b>  |
|--|---|
| DATE_SUB( <i>date</i> , INTERVAL<br><i>value date_type</i> )                                   | The DATE_SUB function returns the given <i>date</i> , decremented by the given <i>value</i> . The given value may be <i>date_type</i> listed in the table below, and must follow its format.  |
| DAYNAME( <i>date</i> )   | The DAYNAME function returns the full day of the week string name for the given <i>date</i> value.  |
| DAYOFMONTH( <i>date</i> )  | The DAYOFMONTH function returns the day of the month as an integer for the given <i>date</i> value. The values returned range from 1 to 31.   |
| DAYOFWEEK( <i>date</i> )   | The DAYOFWEEK function returns a numeric representation of the weekday given by <i>date</i> . The values returned are 1 for Sunday through 7 for Saturday.  |
| DAYOFYEAR( <i>date</i> )   | The DAYOFYEAR function returns a numeric representation (an integer) of the current day in the calendar year. Values returned range from 1 to 366, depending on whether the current year is a leap year.  |
| EXTRACT( <i>date_type</i><br>FROM <i>date</i> )  | The EXTRACT function returns the portion of the given <i>date</i> specified by the <i>date_type</i> . The values for the <i>date_type</i> can be found in the table below.  |
| FROM_DAYS( <i>value</i> )  | The FROM_DAYS function returns the date, counting up from 0 B.C. The FROM_DAYS function should not be used with dates preceding the year 1582, due to the loss of calendar days caused by the advent of the Gregorian Calendar.   |
| FROM_UNIXTIME( <i>stamp</i> ),<br>FROM_UNIXTIME( <i>stamp</i> ,<br><i>date_string_format</i> ) | The FROM_UNIXTIME function returns a date string based upon the given UNIX time stamp. If a <i>date_string_format</i> option is given the string is formatted by the given parameter. With no format option, the data returned is given as "YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM:SS" if referenced as a string. If used as a number, the return is formatted as YYYYMMDDHHMMSS. |
| HOUR( <i>time</i> )  | The HOUR function returns the hour value in integer format from the given time string. Values returned range from 1 to 12.  |
| MINUTE( <i>time</i> )  | The MINUTE function returns the minute value in integer format from the given time string. The function returns values between 0 and 59.  |

| <b>Function</b>  | <b>Description</b>   |
|--|--|
| MONTH( <i>date</i> )                                   | The MONTH function returns the month value in integer format from the given time string. Values returned range from 1 to 12.   |
| MONTHNAME( <i>date</i> )                               | The MONTHNAME function returns the full text-string representation of the month for the given date (January, February, March, ...).  |
| NOW()  | The NOW function returns the current date and time. The data returned is given as "YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM:SS" if referenced as a string. If used as a number, the return format follows YYYYMMDDHHMMSS.  |
| PERIOD_ADD( <i>date</i> , <i>months</i> )              | The PERIOD_ADD function allows the addition of months to a given date. The date can be formatted either as YYMM or YYYYMM. Data is returned as YYYYMM.   |
| PERIOD_DIFF( <i>date1</i> , <i>date2</i> )             | The PERIOD_DIFF function calculates the number of months between two dates. The dates can be given in either the YYMM or YYYYMM formats. Data returned is in the YYYYMM format.  |
| QUARTER( <i>date</i> )                                 | The QUARTER function returns the quarter of the year given by the specified date. The function returns values between 1 and 4.   |
| SECOND( <i>time</i> )                                  | The SECOND function returns the second value from the given time string. Return values range from 0 to 59.   |
| SEC_TO_TIME( <i>seconds</i> )                          | The SEC_TO_TIME function returns the time in the HH:MM:SS format from the given number of seconds.   |
| SYSDATE()  | The SYSDATE function returns the current date and time. The data returned is given as "YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM:SS" if referenced as a string. If used as a number, the return is formatted as YYYYMMDDHHMMSS.   |
| TIME_FORMAT( <i>time</i> , <i>date_string_format</i> ) | The TIME_FORMAT function returns the given time formatted to fit a particular date style. The function may only use the date format options used for time display. Use of the other options returns 0 or NULL. The <i>date_string_format</i> structures are listed in the table below. |
| TIME_TO_SEC( <i>time</i> )                             | The TIME_TO_SEC function returns the given time, converted to seconds.   |
| TO_DAYS( <i>date</i> )                                 | The TO_DAYS function returns the number of days associated with a given date, counting up from 0 A.D. The TO_DAYS function should not be used with dates preceding the year 1582, due to the loss of calendar days caused by the advent of the Gregorian Calendar.                     |

| <b>Function</b>                                  | <b>Description</b>   |
|--|--|
| UNIX_TIMESTAMP([ <i>date</i> ])                  | The UNIX_TIMESTAMP function is used to return the UNIX timestamp for Epoch time. (Epoch time is the number of seconds since 1970-01-01 00:00:00.) If the optional <i>date</i> is given, the stamp returned is for the particular date given. The date can be in the format of DATE, DATETIME, YYMMDD, or YYYYMMDD. With no date, the stamp returned shows the current system time. |
| WEEK( <i>date</i> [, <i>day_indicator</i> ])     | The WEEK function returns the integer value for the week of the given <i>date</i> . If the <i>day_indicator</i> option is included, the first day of the week can be specified as either Sunday (0) or Monday (1).   |
| WEEKDAY( <i>date</i> )                           | The WEEKDAY function returns a numeric representation of the day for the week given by <i>date</i> . The values returned are 0 for Monday through 6 for Sunday.  |
| YEAR( <i>date</i> )                              | The YEAR function returns the year portion of the given <i>date</i> . Return value is formatted as YYYY.   |
| YEARWEEK( <i>date</i> [, <i>day_indicator</i> ]) | The YEARWEEK function returns the year and week for the given <i>date</i> . The data returned is in the format YYYYWW. If the <i>day_indicator</i> option includes the first day of the week, either Sunday (0) or Monday (1) can be specified.  |

| <b>date_type</b>                       | <b>Value</b>  |
|--|---|
| SECOND, MINUTE, HOUR, DAY, MONTH, YEAR | The listed <i>date_type</i> values can take any integer value as their internal representation. |
| MINUTE_SECOND                          | The MINUTE_SECOND value must be formatted as "MINUTES:SECONDS".                                 |
| HOUR_MINUTE                            | The HOUR_MINUTE value must be formatted as "HOURS:MINUTES".                                     |
| DAY_HOUR                               | The DAY_HOUR value must be formatted as "DAYS HOURS".   |
| YEAR_MONTH                             | The YEAR_MONTH value must be formatted as "YEARS-MONTHS".                                       |
| HOUR_SECOND                            | The HOUR_SECOND value must be formatted as "HOURS:MINUTES:SECONDS".                             |
| DAY_MINUTE                             | The DAY_MINUTE value must be formatted as "DAYS HOURS:MINUTES".                                 |
| DAY_SECOND                             | The DAY_SECOND value must be formatted as "DAYS HOURS:MINUTES:SECONDS".                         |

| date_string_format | Description  |
|--------------------|--|
| %a                 | Displays the day of the week abbreviated as a three-letter string. (Sun, Mon, Tue, ...)                                    |
| %b                 | Displays the month abbreviated as a three-character string. (Jan, Feb, Mar, ...)   |
| %c                 | Displays the month as an integer with no zero padding. (1...12)  |
| %D                 | Displays the day of the month with the English suffix. (1st, 2nd, 3rd, ...)  |
| %d                 | Displays the day of the month as a two-digit integer. (1...12)   |
| %e                 | Displays the day of month as an integer with no zero padding. (1...31)   |
| %H                 | Displays the hour as a two-digit integer in military time format. (00...23)  |
| %h                 | Displays the hour as a two-digit integer in the standard clock format. (01...12)   |
| %I                 | Displays the hour as a two-digit integer in the standard clock format. (01...12)   |
| %i                 | Displays the minutes as a two-digit integer. (00...59)   |
| %j                 | Displays the day of year as a three-digit integer. (001...366)   |
| %k                 | Displays the hour as an integer with no zero padding, in military time format. (0...23)                                    |
| %l                 | Displays the hour as an integer with no zero padding, in the standard clock format. (1...12)                               |
| %M                 | Displays the month as its full text string. (January, February, March, ...)  |
| %m                 | Displays the month as a two-digit integer. (01...12)   |
| %p                 | Displays either AM or PM, depending on the time of day.  |
| %r                 | Displays the time in standard clock format (including AM or PM). All integer values are zero-padded.                       |
| %S                 | Displays the seconds as a two-digit integer (00...59).   |
| %s                 | Displays the seconds as a two digit integer (00...59).   |
| %T                 | Displays the time in standard military format. (00:00:00...23:59:59)   |
| %U                 | Displays the week of the year in integer format, with no zero padding, where Sunday is the first day of the week (0...53). |
| %u                 | Displays the week of the year in integer format, with no zero padding, where Monday is the first day of the week (0...53). |

Continued

| <b>date_string_format</b> | <b>Description</b>   |
|---------------------------|--|
| %V                        | Displays the week of the year in integer format, with no zero padding, where Sunday is the first day of the week. This is used in conjunction with %X. |
| %v                        | Displays the week of the year in integer format, with no zero padding, where Monday is the first day of the week. This is used in conjunction with %x. |
| %W                        | Displays the day of the week as its full text string (Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, ...).  |
| %X                        | Displays the year designated by the first Sunday of the calendar year. This is used in conjunction with %V.  |
| %x                        | Displays the year designated by the first Monday of the calendar year. This is used in conjunction with %v.  |
| %Y                        | Displays the year as a four-digit integer.   |
| %y                        | Displays the year as a two-digit integer.  |
| %%                        | Displays a %.  |

## Decimal math functions

The *decimal math* functions allow basic decimal procedures. If a string is given as either operand, most decimal math functions attempt to treat it as a decimal. A good example of this conversion is the expression (1apple + 2orange). The value returned from the Addition function would be 3.

| <b>Function</b>         | <b>Description</b>   |
|-------------------------|--|
| +                       | Addition function operator.  |
| -                       | Subtraction function operator.   |
| *                       | Multiplication function operator.  |
| /                       | Division function operator.  |
| CEILING( <i>value</i> ) | The CEILING function is used to round values to the nearest whole number above the given value.                                  |
| DEGREES( <i>value</i> ) | The DEGREES function returns the conversion of the given value from radians to degrees.  |
| EXP( <i>value</i> )     | The EXP function returns the value of e raised to the given value. The base of natural logs is represented by e in its notation. |
| FLLOOR( <i>value</i> )  | The FLLOOR function is used to round values to the nearest whole number less than the given value.                               |

| Function  | Description  |
|---|--|
| GREATEST( <i>value1</i> ,<br><i>value2</i> , ...) | The GREATEST function determines the largest entity in a list of values. In addition to comparing numbers, strings can be compared with the GREATEST function. The value for the largest item in the list is returned.   |
| LEAST( <i>value1</i> ,<br><i>value2</i> , ...)    | The LEAST function being the inverse of the GREATEST function returns the value for the lowest value. The LEAST function can additionally take on string values.   |
| LOG( <i>value</i> )                               | The LOG function returns the natural log of the given value.   |
| LOG10( <i>value</i> )                             | The LOG10 function returns the base-10 logarithm of the given value.   |
| MOD( <i>value1</i> , <i>value2</i> )              | The MOD function returns the modulus of operation that divides the given <i>value1</i> by <i>value2</i> . The modulus is the remainder given after division.   |
| PI()  | The PI function takes on no values and returns the value for PI. Although the values are displayed with a precision of 5 digits, the system uses the precision of a double to perform its internal calculations.   |
| POW( <i>value1</i> , <i>value2</i> )              | The POW function is used for exponentiation. The data returned is given as <i>value1</i> raised to the power of <i>value2</i> .  |
| RADIANS( <i>value</i> )                           | The RADIANS function converts a given value from degrees to radians.   |
| RAND([ <i>value</i> ])                            | The RAND function returns a “random” number between 0 and 1. The function additionally can take a value as the seed for the number generation.   |
| ROUND( <i>value1</i><br>[, <i>value2</i> ])       | The ROUND function is used to round the number given as <i>value1</i> to the nearest whole number. If the optional <i>value2</i> is given, the number is rounded to the specified number of decimal places.  |
| SIGN( <i>value</i> )                              | The SIGN function is used to determine whether a given value is negative, positive, or zero. Values returned are -1, 1, or 0.  |
| SQRT( <i>value</i> )                              | The SQRT function returns the square root of the given value. If a negative value is given, the function returns NULL.   |
| TRUNCATE<br>( <i>value1</i> , <i>value2</i> )     | The TRUNCATE function is used to alter the precision of the given number <i>value1</i> that contains a decimal portion. The integer given for <i>value2</i> determines the number of places in the return value. If the given <i>value2</i> equals 0, the return value has no decimal, and no decimal point. |

## Select operators

The *select operators* are a specific subset used in addition to the GROUP BY syntax. Using these operators without a GROUP BY clause causes the system to return an error.

| <b>Operator</b>   | <b>Description</b>  |
|---|---|
| AVG( <i>column_name</i> )   | The AVG function returns the average value of the return set for the designated <i>column_name</i> .  |
| BIT_OR( <i>column_name</i> )  | The BIT_OR function performs a binary OR upon the designated <i>column_name</i> for all rows returned to the SELECT statement.  |
| BIT_AND( <i>column_name</i> )   | The BIT_AND function additionally performs a binary AND upon the designated <i>column_name</i> . The return value also encompasses all rows from the SELECT.  |
| COUNT([DISTINCT] * or<br><i>column_name</i><br>[, <i>column_name</i> ]) | The COUNT function performs differently depending on the declaration. Purely the COUNT(*) and COUNT( <i>column_name</i> ) versions return a count of all non-NULL values returned in a given column. The COUNT( <i>column_name</i> , ...) version returns a count of all non-NULL cells for the columns specified. The DISTINCT modifier can be applied to the function to force the data that is counted to be unique. |
| MAX( <i>column_name</i> )   | The MAX function returns the largest value for a column based upon a given GROUP BY clause.   |
| MIN( <i>column_name</i> )   | The MIN function returns the smallest value for a column based upon a given GROUP BY clause.  |
| STDDEV( <i>column_name</i> )  | The STDDEV function produces the standard deviation for the given <i>column_name</i> .  |
| SUM( <i>column_name</i> )   | The SUM function returns the total of all values for a column, based on a given GROUP BY clause.  |

## String functions

The *string functions* provide the capability to modify the format of text values.

| <b>Function</b>  | <b>Description</b>   |
|--|--|
| ASCII( <i>string</i> )   | The ASCII function returns the ASCII value for the first character in the given string. Any characters other than the leftmost is ignored.   |
| BIN( <i>value</i> )  | The BIN function returns the binary string representation of the integer given as value.   |
| BIT_LENGTH( <i>string</i> )  | The BIT_LENGTH function returns the number of bits required to represent the given string.   |
| CHAR( <i>value1</i> [, <i>value2</i> ...])   | The CHAR function returns a string made up of the ASCII representation of the decimal value list. Strings in numeric format are converted to a decimal value.  |
| CONCAT( <i>string1</i> ,<br><i>string2</i> , ...)  | The CONCAT function returns a string created by appending all values in the string list.   |
| CONCAT_WS( <i>separator</i> ,<br><i>string1</i> , <i>string2</i> , ...)  | The CONCAT_WS function much like the CONCAT function appends the given values. The string created has all elements of the list separated by the given <i>separator</i> value.  |
| CONV( <i>value1</i> , <i>base1</i> , <i>base2</i> )  | The CONV function converts a given value from one numeric base to another. The value given as <i>base1</i> is the current state; <i>base2</i> is the state the number is converted to. Values for the bases may be in a range from 2 to 32.  |
| ELT( <i>value</i> , <i>string1</i> ,<br><i>string2</i> , ...)  | The ELT function returns the string represented by the index given as <i>value</i> . If the value given is negative, it returns NULL. If there are fewer elements than the given value, NULL is returned.  |
| EXPORT_SET( <i>value</i> , <i>string1</i> ,<br><i>string2</i> [, <i>separator_string</i><br>[, <i>length_value</i> ]]) | The EXPORT_SET function is used to generate binary strings with custom atoms. The on bit is given as <i>string1</i> and the off bit by <i>string2</i> . The value given must be an integer; any floating-point values are rounded. If the optional <i>separator_string</i> is given, each atom is separated by the string. If a <i>length_value</i> is given, the returned string is right-padded with <i>string2</i> to the given length. |
| FIELD( <i>base_string</i> , <i>string1</i> ,<br><i>string2</i> , ...)  | The FIELD function returns the index value of the string that matches the given <i>base_string</i> . If none of the strings in the list is a match, the function returns 0.  |

*Continued*

| <b>Function</b>   | <b>Description</b>   |
|---|--|
| FIND_IN_SET( <i>base_string</i> ,<br><i>string1</i> [, <i>string2</i> , ...])                 | The FIND_IN_SET function returns the index value of the string that matches the base string. If none of the given strings match the function, it returns 0. If either the <i>base_string</i> or all values given in the list are NULL, the function returns NULL. The function has a similarity to the FIELD function, however: It uses bitwise arithmetic to optimize the operation time.         |
| HEX( <i>value</i> )   | The HEX function returns the hexadecimal value if <i>value</i> is given as an integer. If a string is given, the return is a 2-digit hexadecimal representation of the string.   |
| INSTR( <i>string</i> , <i>substring</i> )   | The INSTR function is used to determine the first character of a matching subset in the given string. If the substring value matches the value of the first character in the matching set is returned. If there are no matching subsets, 0 is returned.  |
| INSERT( <i>string1</i> ,<br><i>position_value</i> ,<br><i>length_value</i> , <i>string2</i> ) | The INSERT function is used to place one string into another, replacing the existing characters. The value of <i>string2</i> is placed upon <i>string1</i> . The position of the insertion places the first character of <i>string2</i> at the <i>position_value</i> . If <i>length_value</i> is larger than the length of <i>string2</i> , that many characters are removed from <i>string1</i> . |
| LEFT( <i>string</i> , <i>length_value</i> )   | The LEFT function returns the leftmost number of characters given as <i>length_value</i> from the string.  |
| LCASE( <i>string</i> )  | The LCASE function returns the given string in all-lowercase letters.  |
| LENGTH( <i>string</i> )   | The LENGTH function returns the length of the given string. If <i>string</i> is given as a column name, the length of the text column or the number of digits is returned.   |
| LOAD_FILE( <i>file_path</i> )   | The LOAD_FILE function reads in the given <i>file_path</i> and returns the contents of the file. If the file cannot be read or does not exist, the function returns NULL.  |

| Function   | Description   |
|--|---|
| LOCATE( <i>substring</i> , <i>string</i> [, <i>position_value</i> ]) | The LOCATE function attempts to match a substring in the given string. If an optional position value is given the search begins at that point. The function returns the position of the first character in the matching substring. If there are no matches found, 0 is returned.  |
| LPAD( <i>string1</i> , <i>length_value</i> , <i>string2</i> )        | The LPAD function applies <i>string2</i> as left-padding to the value given as <i>string1</i> . The <i>length_value</i> determines the length of the string returned. If the value is less than <i>string1</i> , it returns the string shortened to that length.  |
| LTRIM( <i>string</i> )   | The LTRIM function returns the given string with all of the left whitespace removed.  |
| MAKE_SET( <i>value</i> , <i>string1</i> , <i>string2</i> , ...)      | The MAKE_SET function creates a comma-delimited string based on the binary representation of <i>value</i> . All <i>on</i> bits (1s) in the binary value associate with their matching element positions in the string list.   |
| OCT( <i>value</i> )  | The OCT function converts the given integer value into its octal representation as a string.  |
| ORD( <i>string</i> )   | The ORD function returns the ASCII code for the leftmost character of the given string. If the leftmost character in the string is a multiple-byte character, the values returned are added (where all character values after the first are multiplied by 256). If the leftmost character does not take up multiple bytes, the function performs exactly like the ASCII function. |
| REPEAT( <i>string</i> , <i>value</i> )                               | The REPEAT function returns the given string repeated the number of times given as <i>value</i> . The function returns a NULL value if either the string or <i>value</i> is NULL.   |
| REPLACE( <i>string1</i> , <i>string2</i> , <i>string3</i> )          | The REPLACE function substitutes a specific subset of a string with another value. The value of <i>string1</i> is returned with all instances of <i>string2</i> being replaced by <i>string3</i> .  |
| REVERSE( <i>string</i> )   | The REVERSE function returns the given string with the order of the characters inverted.  |
| RIGHT( <i>string</i> , <i>length_value</i> )                         | The RIGHT function returns the rightmost number of characters given as <i>length_value</i> from the string.   |

*Continued*

| <b>Function</b>  | <b>Description</b>  |
|--|---|
| RPAD( <i>string1</i> , <i>length_value</i> ,<br><i>string2</i> )   | The RPAD function is used to apply <i>string2</i> as right-padding to the value given as <i>string1</i> . The <i>length_value</i> determines the length of the string returned. If the value is less than <i>string1</i> , the returned string is shortened to that length.   |
| RTRIM( <i>string</i> )   | The RTRIM function returns the given string with all of the right whitespace removed.   |
| SOUNDEX( <i>string</i> )   | The SOUNDEX function converts strings into their soundex notation. The conversion of any two strings that sound the same when pronounced should return the same soundex value. The value returned is an arbitrary length, although soundex format is traditionally 4 characters in length.                                |
| SPACE( <i>value</i> )  | The SPACE function returns a string made up of the number of spaces designated by the given value.  |
| STRCMP( <i>string1</i> , <i>string2</i> )  | The STRCMP function is used to determine whether two given strings are larger, smaller, or equal to one another. The values returned are 1, -1, and 0 respectively.   |
| SUBSTRING( <i>string</i> ,<br><i>position_value</i><br>[, <i>length_value</i> ])                               | The SUBSTRING function is used to remove all characters in a given string that come before the given <i>position_value</i> . Additionally an optional <i>length_value</i> can be given to designate the number of characters in the return value.   |
| SUBSTRING_INDEX( <i>string</i> ,<br><i>delimiter</i> , <i>value</i> )  | The SUBSTRING_INDEX function is used to return a subset of a delimited list. If the given value is positive, the returned string consists of the number of segments given (starting from the left). If the value is negative, the function starts from the right, with the number of segments equaling a positive value.  |
| TRIM([ <b>BOTH</b> or <b>LEADING</b> or<br><b>TRAILING</b> ] [ <i>remove_string</i> ]<br>FROM] <i>string</i> ) | The TRIM function is used to remove extra characters from a given string. The characters to be removed are denoted by the <i>remove_string</i> . If an optional LEADING, TRAILING, or BOTH modifier is included, the function is applied only to the specified side. If no modifier is given, BOTH is assumed as default. |
| UCASE( <i>string</i> )   | The UCASE function returns the given string in all-uppercase letters.   |

## System functions

The System functions are used to gather system specific data.

| Function  | Description   |
|---|---|
| BENCHMARK( <i>value</i> , <i>expression</i> )   | The BENCHMARK function performs time testing upon a call to a database. The given value determines how many iterations of the expression to perform. In general, this function is used in the CLI because of the process time returned. The function always returns 0.                      |
| CONNECTION_ID()                                 | The CONNECTION_ID function returns the identifier for the current thread. Every connection to the MySQL server has a different ID for its connection.   |
| DATABASE()                                      | The DATABASE function returns the name of the database to which the client is presently connected. If there is no current connection to a database, an empty string is returned.  |
| DECODE( <i>crypt_string</i> , <i>string</i> )   | The DECODE function deciphers a string encrypted with a key given as <i>crypt_string</i> .  |
| ENCODE( <i>string</i> , <i>crypt_string</i> )   | The ENCODE function performs the inverse operation of the DECODE function. The given string is encrypted with the key given as <i>crypt_string</i> .  |
| ENCRYPT( <i>string</i> [, <i>salt_string</i> ]) | The ENCRYPT function encrypts a string using the UNIX crypt() system function. An optional, 2-character <i>salt_string</i> can also be used. Extra characters in strings with a length longer than 8 are ignored. If the crypt() function is not available on the system, NULL is returned. |
| FORMAT( <i>value</i> , <i>decimal_value</i> )   | The FORMAT function creates a string representation of a number. The returned value has as many decimal places as the given <i>decimal_value</i> . Data returned has comma-separated sets for every 3 places in the whole portion of the number.  |
| FOUND_ROWS()                                    | The FOUND_ROWS function is used to return the number of rows in the preceding SELECT query.   |

*Continued*

| <b>Function</b>   | <b>Description</b>   |
|---|--|
| GET_LOCK( <i>string</i> , <i>value</i> )                    | The GET_LOCK function determines whether a lock designated by the given string is in use. The value given is the number of seconds the request should wait before timing out on the request for the lock. The function returns 1 if the request for the lock was successful, 0 if it was denied or NULL if there was an error in the function. The GET_LOCK function is used in conjunction with the RELEASE_LOCK function to allow external representation of locking without actual locks being applied to tables. The GET_LOCK is also terminated if the system thread concludes. |
| INET_ATON( <i>ip_address</i> )                              | The INET_ATON function returns the numeric representation of an IP address. This value is created by adding each segment of the dotted quad, raised to the power of the index of its segment from the right (starting with 0). For example, 10.0.0.1 is calculated as $(10*256^3) + (0*256^2) + (0*256^1) + (1*256^0)$ .   |
| INET_NTOA( <i>value</i> )                                   | The INET_NTOA function performs the inverse of the INET_ATON function. The given numeric value is converted to an IP address and is returned.  |
| LAST_INSERT_ID([ <i>exp</i> ])                              | The LAST_INSERT_ID function returns the key of the last insert done on a column with the AUTO INCREMENT property. This function operates only for the current connection, so an INSERT command from a different client does not affect the return value. If the last INSERT spanned multiple rows, the value for the first row inserted is returned.   |
| MASTER_POS_WAIT( <i>log_path</i> ,<br><i>log_position</i> ) | The MASTER_POS_WAIT function is used during data replication to force a client to wait. The client does not resume until the position in the master log file is past the given <i>log_position</i> in its replication. If the master log has not been created, the function returns NULL. Otherwise the function returns the number of positions elapsed before the client resumed.  |
| MD5( <i>string</i> )  | The MD5 function returns a hexadecimal checksum for the given string. The return value for the function is 32 characters long.   |

| <b>Function</b>               | <b>Description</b>  |
|-------------------------------|---|
| PASSWORD( <i>string</i> )     | The PASSWORD function creates a password string from a given cleartext string. (Unlike the ENCRYPT function, the PASSWORD function does not create passwords equal to UNIX passwords.)  |
| RELEASE_LOCK( <i>string</i> ) | The RELEASE_LOCK function designates that the lock given by <i>string</i> is no longer in use. The function returns 1 if the lock has been released, 0 if the given lock was not created by the current thread, or NULL if the lock does not exist. |
| USER()                        | The USER function returns the current user account as which the client is connected. The data is returned in the format <i>user@hostname</i> .  |
| VERSION()                     | The VERSION function returns a string with the MySQL version for the current server.  |

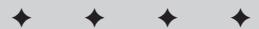
## Trigonometric math functions

The *trigonometric math* functions allow computations using the sides and angles of triangles.

| <b>Function</b>                         | <b>Description</b>  |
|---|---|
| ACOS( <i>value</i> )                    | The ACOS function represents the <i>arc cosine</i> , or the inverse of the COS function. The given value is assumed to be in radians.   |
| ASIN( <i>value</i> )                    | The ASIN function represents the arc sine, or the inverse of the SIN function. The given value is assumed to be in radians.   |
| ATAN( <i>value1</i> [, <i>value2</i> ]) | The ATAN function represents the <i>arc tangent</i> , or the inverse of the TAN function. If an optional <i>value2</i> is given, the function is used to determine the quadrant that the values would exist in as (X, Y) in a graph. The given values are assumed to be in radians. |
| COS( <i>value</i> )                     | The COS function represents the cosine function. The given value is assumed to be in radians.   |
| COT( <i>value</i> )                     | The COT function represents the cotangent function. The given value is assumed to be in radians.  |
| SIN( <i>value</i> )                     | The SIN function represents the sine function. The given value is assumed to be in radians.   |
| TAN( <i>value</i> )                     | The TAN function represents the tangent function. The given value is assumed to be in radians.  |







# Datatype Reference

---

## D.1. Integer Datatypes

All Integer types can take on two additional modifiers, `ZEROFILL` and `UNSIGNED`. The `ZEROFILL` modifier will force column data to be stored left, padded with zeroes filling the maximum length of the column. For example an `INT(6) ZEROFILL` given a value of 8 will return `000008` for all queries on the column. The `UNSIGNED` modifier designates that no negative values for the column are allowed. If you use the `ZEROFILL` modifier, `UNSIGNED` is automatically assigned.

### **BIGINT**

The `BIGINT` type is the largest of the Integer members. The range of this column covers `-9223372036854775808` to `+9223372036854775807` for the signed values and 0 to `18446744073709551615` for unsigned values.

Designated by `BIGINT(p)` where *p* equals the number of digits allowed, and the maximum length for the `BIGINT` type is 20 digits.

Due to the size of the unsigned `BIGINT`, it is possible to cause rounding errors in arithmetic when using values larger than `9223372036854775807`. This can be avoided by using bitwise shift operators or by using external systems from MySQL for the math calculations.

### **INT**

The `INT` datatype is generally considered the median of the Integer types; it also has the shortest designation. The range of the `INT` column covers `-2147483648` to `2147483647` for the signed values and 0 to `4294967295` for unsigned values.

Designated by `INT(p)` where *p* equals the number of digits allowed, and the maximum length for the `INT` type is 10 digits.

## MEDIUMINT

The `MEDIUMINT` type has a range of -8388608 to 8388607 for the signed values and 0 to 16777215 for unsigned values.

Designated by `MEDIUMINT(p)` where *p* equals the number of digits allowed, the maximum length for the `MEDIUMINT` type is 8 digits.

## SMALLINT

The `SMALLINT` type has a range of -32768 to 32767 for the signed values and 0 to 65535 for unsigned values.

Designated by `SMALLINT(p)` where *p* equals the number of digits allowed, the maximum length for the `SMALLINT` type is 5 digits.

## TINYINT

The `TINYINT` type has a range of -128 to 127 for the signed values and 0 to 256 for unsigned values.

Designated by `TINYINT(p)` where *p* equals the number of digits allowed, the maximum length for the `TINYINT` type is 3 digits.

## D.2. Decimal Datatypes

Identical to the Integer datatype in the way they work, the Decimal datatypes can take on the `ZEROFILL` and `UNSIGNED` modifiers. A Decimal type with the `ZEROFILL` modifier will be left padded to the precision of the column with zeroes. The `UNSIGNED` modifier also behaves equivalently and disallows negative values on the column.



Using the `ZEROFILL` modifier assigns the `UNSIGNED` modifier automatically.

Each Decimal datatype encompasses a range of numbers it can represent. Due to a limit on how many bits can be allocated for any given column, eventually a number is too small to represent. Thus each Decimal type represents a range of numbers that each decimal type can represent both in the negative and positive.

Additionally, each type can hold a value of zero.

## FLOAT

The FLOAT datatype is the smallest of the 3 numeric datatypes used for fractional values. The ranges for the column are  $-3.402823466 * 10^{38}$  to  $-1.175494351 * 10^{-38}$  for negative values and  $1.175494351 * 10^{-38}$  to  $3.402823466 * 10^{38}$  for positive values.

Designated by  $\text{FLOAT}(p, m)$  where  $m$  is the number of digits in the mantissa or decimal portion of the number and  $p$  is the precision of the number, or number of places in the entire number.

## DECIMAL

The DECIMAL datatype while having an identical range to the DOUBLE type is stored as a string much like the CHAR types. The ranges for the column are  $-1.7976931348623157 * 10^{308}$  to  $-2.2250738585072014 * 10^{-308}$  for negative values and  $2.2250738585072014 * 10^{-308}$  to  $1.7976931348623157 * 10^{308}$  for positive values. The storage of the value being a string, each digit in the number is written as a character.

Designated by  $\text{DECIMAL}(p, m)$  where  $m$  is the number of digits in the mantissa or decimal portion of the number and  $p$  is the precision of the number, or number of places in the entire number.

## DOUBLE

The DOUBLE datatype is the largest fractional column type that is stored in a binary format. The ranges for the column are  $-1.7976931348623157 * 10^{308}$  to  $-2.2250738585072014 * 10^{-308}$  for negative values and  $2.2250738585072014 * 10^{-308}$  to  $1.7976931348623157 * 10^{308}$  for positive values.

Designated by  $\text{DOUBLE}(p, m)$  where  $m$  is the number of digits in the mantissa or decimal portion of the number and  $p$  is the precision of the number, or number of places in the entire number.

## D.3 Date Datatypes

The DATE types encompass all of the time-based datatypes in MySQL. The major difference in behavior between the Date types and all other numeric types is in the zero value. All DATE types return the full date string with every digit zeroed. For example the DATE type would return 0000-00-00 and TIME would return 00:00:00.

## DATE

The DATE type represents a full calendar date in the format YYYY-MM-DD. Legal values for the DATE column range between 1000-01-01 and 9999-12-31. Invalid values for the column will result in a value of 0000-00-00.

## DATETIME

The DATETIME type is equivalent to the DATE column with the addition of a time constituent. The DATETIME column follows the format YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM:SS. Valid DATETIME values can range between 1000-01-01 00:00:00 to 9999-12-31 23:59:59. Invalid column values result in a value of 0000-00-00 00:00:00.

## TIMESTAMP

The TIMESTAMP column is a string representation of the Unix timestamp. The Unix timestamp is derived from what is known as Epoch time. Valid TIMESTAMP values range from 1970-01-01 00:00:00 through 2038-01-19 03:14:07. An invalid value will return a zerofill to the designated size of the column.

Designated by `TIMESTAMP(p)` where *p* is the number of digits displayed and returned on queries to the column. The maximum length of the TIMESTAMP type is 14 places. If a TIMESTAMP is designated with 0 digits or greater than 14 it will default to 14. If an odd value is given for *p* it will be converted to *p*+1. NULL inserts into the first timestamp column in a table will result in the current date and time being returned.

| <i>p</i> | <b>Maximum Size</b> |
|----------|---------------------|
| 2        | YY                  |
| 4        | YYMM                |
| 6        | YYMMDD              |
| 8        | YYYYMMDD            |
| 10       | YYYYMMDDHHMM        |
| 12       | YYYYMMDDHHMMSS      |
| 14       | YYYYMMDDHHMMSS      |

## TIME

The TIME type is a generic representation of time values in hours, minutes, and seconds. The column besides representing time in the standard form of a 24-hour clock also can represent time in both the past and future. The valid range for the TIME type is -838:59:59 to 838:59:59.

The TIME type can additionally take a day modifier upon inserts. The valid formats for inserts are D HH:MM:SS, HH:MM:SS, MM:SS, and SS. Where the day or time constituent can be preceded by – to represent negative time. Return values will have left zero padding.

## YEAR

The YEAR type represents the calendar year in either a 2-digit or 4-digit format.

In the 4-digit format, YEAR can range from 1901 to 2155 or 0000. In the 2-digit format, the YEAR range is 1970 through 2069, represented as 70 to 69. Invalid values inserted into the YEAR column will return 0000. With the 2-digit format, a single 0 is considered an invalid value; 00 must be used to represent the year 2000.

## D.4. STRING Datatypes

The STRING datatypes encompass all column types used for textual data. In addition to the NULL value, all STRING types additionally have the empty string value (' '). Inserts into STRING types that exceed the maximum allotted length will be truncated to fit the space allocated.

### BLOB

TINYBLOB, BLOB, MEDIUMBLOB, LONGBLOB

BLOB is the STRING datatype used for binary data. Any queries on a BLOB type result in a case-sensitive return. For example a BLOB type with the value 'string' will not be matched by queries for 'STRING'. This is opposite to the behavior of the TEXT type.



**Note**

Data exceeding the maximum size of the column is forcibly truncated after insertion.

| <b>Column Type</b> | <b>Maximum Size</b> |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| TINYBLOB           | 255                 |
| BLOB               | 65535               |
| MEDIUMBLOB         | 16777215            |
| LONGBLOB           | 4294967295          |

## CHAR

The CHAR datatype is used for string storage.

Designated by CHAR(*p*) where *p* designates the field length, the maximum length for the CHAR type is 255. When stored the data in the column will pad to the full length (*p*) of the field with whitespace. Upon retrieval from the database, the appended whitespace is removed.

## TEXT

TINYTEXT, TEXT, MEDIUMTEXT, LONGTEXT

TEXT is the STRING datatype used for character data. It works much like the BLOB datatype; queries upon the TEXT type will return case insensitive values. For example a TEXT type with the value 'string' will be matched by queries for 'STRING'. This is opposite to the behavior of the BLOB type.

| <b>Column Type</b> | <b>Maximum Size</b> |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| TINYTEXT           | 255                 |
| TEXT               | 65535               |
| MEDIUMTEXT         | 16777215            |
| LONGTEXT           | 4294967295          |

## VARCHAR

The VARCHAR datatype works like the CHAR type except for its data-storage method. The VARCHAR type removes all trailing whitespace from inserted data.

Designated by VARCHAR(*p*) where *p* designates the field length, the maximum length of the VARCHAR type is 255 characters.

In considering space requirements for some systems, the VARCHAR type should be used as opposed to the CHAR type. The addition of whitespace trailing all CHAR entities can dramatically increase the space used in a table containing even very few rows of data.

## D.5. Grouping Datatypes

The Grouping datatypes are the only types that all valid values can be defined for a column. Declaring a Grouping type as NULL will force the first member in the group to be NULL.

### ENUM

The ENUM type allows for the casting of particular values as valid within the column. When a value which has not yet been cast into the type is inserted into the column, an empty value (" ") is assigned.

Designated by `ENUM('string1','string2','string3'...)` where the numbered strings are the casted members. The maximum number of constituents for the ENUM datatype is 65535.

### SET

The SET type works much like the ENUM type except it can store multiple values in the column.

Designated by `SET('string1','string2','string3'...)` where the numbered strings are the casted members. The maximum number of constituents for the SET datatype is 64.

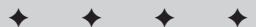
The SET type allows insertion of the strings given during the creation of the table; integer values can be used to assign members by their binary values. For example, a SET consisting of values ('mother', 'father', 'sister', 'brother', 'dog', 'cat'), each member is assigned a numeric value of  $2^n$  where  $n$  is the member's order alphabetically. Therefore 'brother' = 1, 'cat' = 2, 'dog' = 4, 'father' = 8, 'mother' = 16 and 'sister' = 32. By binary math the members that would be assigned can be determined. For example  $7 = 1 + 2 + 4$  returning ('brother', 'cat', 'dog') additionally  $12 = 8 + 4$  would return ('dog', 'father').





# Glossary

---



**ACID** Acronym for Atomic, Consistent, Isolated, Durable, refers to an ideal environment within which database transactions can take place. For example, if a given database transaction fails, it does not affect other transactions currently running.

**ANSI92 SQL** Standard specifying how to implement SQL in your RDBMS according to a set of conventions developed by the American National Standards Institute (ANSI).

**API** Acronym for *Application Programming Interface*. The API defines which functions of a software program are available for modification via programming techniques.

**BerkeleyDB** A transaction-safe table type, supported by MySQL. BDB tables can be compiled in or installed with the Max versions of MySQL.

**CGI** Short for Common Gateway Interface. CGI provides a programming interface to enable programs operating on the backend to work with a Web server. CGI programs or CGI scripts are the names given to programs that produce or work with World Wide Web data.

**character set** In a particular language, the entire range of characters available for use with MySQL. The Default Character Set determines sorting order for columns.

**CLI** Acronym for *command-line interface*. The MySQL CLI is the program through which users frequently interact with MySQL databases. The MySQL CLI can be used interactively or in a non-interactive mode.

**command recall** In the MySQL CLI's interactive mode, use the up-arrow on the keyboard to display the most recently entered MySQL command(s) on-screen.

**connection-level authentication** The first step in the authentication process when a user or program attempts to connect to a MySQL database server. Authentication at the level of the connection checks the username, password, and host that the information is coming from.

**constraints** Restrictions placed on columns to determine what is and is not acceptable for that column. An example would be a UNIQUE constraint that requires that every value in the column be different from every other.

**cookies** Information that the server sets inside an HTTP header for later use, includes in the response it sends to the client via browser, and stores on the client machine. Cookies are frequently used to track and store customer information (or values referring to the information that a query requests from a database).

**datadir** (also DATADIR) The path or location within the file system where the MySQL databases are stored.

**DBD** Short for *DataBase Driver*, the software integrated with the Perl DBI that actually interacts with a database.

**DBI** Short for *DataBase Interface*, the software written in (and for) Perl to enable Perl to interact with a particular RDBMS.

**DDL** Short for *Data Definition Language*. DDL includes SQL statements to create, delete or alter databases, tables, columns, indices, and the like.

**DML** Short for Data Markup Language. DML includes SQL statements to modify actual data within databases.

**foreign key** A database constraint that refers to a column in another table for reference.

**FTP** Short for *File Transfer Protocol*. Protocol to transfer files over TCP.

**Gemini** A transaction-safe table type included with NuSphere Enhanced MySQL.

**GPL** Short for the *General Public License* that MySQL is released under. This is the most popular license for Open Source software.

**GUI** Short for *Graphical User Interface* — the environment, tools, pictures, buttons, menus, and the like that produce a non-text-based method for interacting with a computer. Examples include Microsoft Windows and XWindows.

**HEAP** A volatile-memory-based table in MySQL that is very useful for creation of temporary tables.

**InnoDB** A transaction-safe table type supported by MySQL. InnoDB tables can be compiled into MySQL or installed with the Max version.

**ISAM** Acronym for *Indexed Sequential Access Method*. ISAM is the original table type supported by MySQL. ISAM tables are not transaction-safe and are deprecated.

**JDBC** Short for Java Database Connectivity. JDBC is the API for connecting Java to a relational database. MySQL has a JDBC API to enable Java programs and applets to work with MySQL.

**JDK** (also SDK) Short for the *Java Software Development Kit*, is the software released by Sun as a development tool that uses the Java programming language.

**LGPL** Short for *Lesser General Public License*. Some MySQL software is released under the LGPL as is some Open Source software. It is the sister to the main GPL or General Public License and provides for the use of a software library to be used in proprietary software. More information is available at <http://www.gnu.org/>.

**libdir** (also LIBDIR) The directory or location on the file system where MySQL libraries are installed. Some software needs access to the MySQL libraries in order to function.

**localhost** The current host or machine that you are operating on. By default, MySQL CLI connections (and many other programs with MySQL) attempt to connect to the MySQL server on localhost, or the local machine.

**lock** A hold, placed at either the table or row level, that lasts until a process such as an update is complete. No other similar operation can take place when a lock is in place.

**master replicator** In a replication set, the host or other MySQL server that receives updates and other data changes and places them in a log for the slave replicators to use.

**Merge** A table type in MySQL that results from combining tables.

**my.cnf** Filename of the file that contains the configuration settings and variables settings for MySQL programs including the main server. The my.cnf file usually refers to the Linux or Unix variant of the configuration file.

**my.ini** Filename of the file (in this case, a Windows configuration file) that contains the settings that determine configuration and variables for MySQL programs, including the main server.

**MyISAM** The default table type in MySQL. It is not transaction-safe.

**mysqladmin** The main administration program for MySQL where the administrator can set passwords, look at server status, and shut down the server.

**mysqld** The name of the program that is the MySQL server.

**MySQLGUI** A graphical user interface for MySQL, usable for creating SQL statements and performing server administration.

**NSS** Short for *Name Service Switch*, configured through the `/etc/nsswitch.conf` configuration file. NSS defines the order for a given account's information queries. There is software called NSS-MySQL to enable MySQL integration with NSS.

**NULL** A logical value that is, literally, nothing (which differs from zero because zero can often be a mathematical placeholder). `NULL` can be thought of as an object that is nothing, holds nothing, and can be nothing. `NULL` is neither zero nor an empty string. You may commonly hear that a column or value is `NULL`. If a value is `NULL`, there is nothing in it.

**ODBC** Short for *Open Database Connectivity*—ODBC defines the API by which applications work with data. MySQL AB has a version of ODBC called MyODBC.

**Open Source** Software-development approach that keeps an application's source code *open* (available) for contributions from the programming community. Although not proprietary in the same sense (or to the same degree) as closed-source commercial software, Open Source software is not necessarily available free of charge, and is almost always covered by a license (such as the GNU GPL or LGPL). MySQL, for example, is covered by the GPL and/or LGPL, depending on the portion of the software you are using.

**pager** In programming terms, a program that splits output into virtual pages on the screen or terminal. Without the pager capabilities of the `more` and `less` commands in MySQL, output would scroll off the screen too quickly to read.

**PAM** Short for *Pluggable Authentication Modules*, standardized units of code that define methods for authentication and access to resources.

**Perl** Originally an acronym for *Practical Extraction and Reporting Language*, Perl is now the name of a powerful and versatile programming language used for system administration, as well as for creating CGIs for Web applications.

**PHP** Acronym meaning *Hypertext Preprocessor*, a powerful and somewhat intuitive programming language frequently used to create Web applications.

**phpinfo** A PHP function used to determine settings for the PHP environment, often given as `phpinfo()`.

**PHPMyAdmin** A program developed in PHP that handles administration and management of a MySQL server and databases.

**process-level authentication** The second tier of authentication that takes place for every MySQL operation, the first being *connection-level authentication*. During process-level authentication, the MySQL grants database is examined to determine whether the given user/password/host combination has the permissions or privileges it needs to perform the requested operation.

**RDBMS** Short for *Relational Database Management System*, software that stores data within tables, columns, and rows and supports relationships between tables. Examples include MySQL, Oracle, Informix, and Microsoft SQL Server.

**replication** The process that automatically copies the changes to data—exactly, and almost instantly—from one MySQL server to another.

**RPM** Acronym for *Red Hat Package Manager*, the format for many software packages in the Red Hat Linux operating system. Various Linux versions, both commercial and freeware, can support RPMs.

**root** In UNIX-based operating systems (including Linux), the “superuser” account that has all possible privileges; `root` should be used primarily for administration activities.

**scp** Short for *Secure Copy*, a program that uses encryption to transfer files between hosts.

**slave replicator** A host or other MySQL server in a replication set that receives updates from the master server.

**SQL** Short for *Structured Query Language*, a language created for working with relational databases (such as MySQL).

**SQL-92** Another name for ANSI92 SQL, the industry standard by which an RDBMS implements SQL.

**SSL** Short for *Secure-Sockets Layer*. As of MySQL 4.0, many functions in MySQL can use this encrypted form of communication.

**subselect** A `SELECT` statement within a `SELECT` statement, normally used to obtain more specific information from the `SELECT` statement.

**symbolic link** An alias that points to a file on the file system. Symbolic links (also called *symlinks*) can point to system files (such as the MySQL socket file).

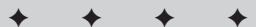
**TCO** Acronym for *Total Cost of Ownership*, the sum of all money spent on a system—including the cost of hardware, software, operating system, installation, configuration, maintenance, and the like.

**transaction-safe** Said of a table in MySQL that complies with and supports the ACID concept of database environment. For example, if a given SQL statement fails, it can be rolled back so as not to affect the consistency of other operations within the database.

**WinMySQLAdmin** A GUI-based program for administering and managing a MySQL server running on a Windows-based operating system. WinMySQLAdmin and can perform the same operations and tasks as the text-based `mysqladmin` program.







# About the CD-ROM

---

The CD at the back of the book contains programs discussed in the book as well as some other goodies.

## System Requirements

You need this hardware and software to use the CD:

- ◆ A Pentium or greater PC or a Mac
- ◆ One of: Linux, Microsoft Windows 9x, Windows Me, Windows 2000, Windows XP, Mac OS X
- ◆ At least 16 MB of RAM installed, depending on OS
- ◆ A CD-ROM drive
- ◆ A VGA monitor
- ◆ An Internet connection (to use the links file)

## What's on the CD

This section provides a summary of the software on the *MySQL Bible* CD-ROM.

- ◆ **Scripts and Programs** There are scripts and programs within chapters of the book. The scripts are written in Perl or they are plain shell scripts.
- ◆ **SQL** There are two plain text files that contain SQL used in some chapters.
- ◆ **Links page** The links in a file called Links.htm jump to useful internet sites.

- ◆ **Perl** The scripting language Perl is on the CD and in most Linux distributions.
- ◆ **Perl DBI** The Perl interface for databases connects Perl programs through Msql-Mysql-modules, included on the CD.
- ◆ **Acrobat Reader** The Adobe Acrobat Reader program opens the PDF version of the book from the CD.
- ◆ **Apache** The web server Apache is included on the CD so that you can use it with the other software such as Perl and PHP to build MySQL-enabled web applications.
- ◆ **PHP** PHP is popular scripting software frequently used to build web-based applications.
- ◆ **phpMyAdmin** phpMyAdmin controls MySQL databases through a web-based interface.
- ◆ **msql-mysql-modules** msql-mysql-modules enables Perl support with MySQL.
- ◆ **PDF copy of the book** A copy of the book in electronic PDF format is included on the CD.

## If You Have Problems

If you have problems with programs on the CD, try these troubleshooting steps.

- ◆ Disable any antivirus software
- ◆ Close running programs
- ◆ Try loading/running the program through Windows Explorer

If you still have trouble, you can call at (800) 762-2974, or (317) 596-5430 outside the US or email at [techsudum@wiley.com](mailto:techsudum@wiley.com).



# Index

## SYMBOLS AND NUMERICS

\* (asterisk), 13, 95, 211  
@ (at symbol), 462  
\ (backslash), 13  
[ ] (brackets), 90  
\$ (dollar sign), 462  
/\* (enclosing non-standard extensions in), 13  
= (equal sign), 138, 199, 201  
<= (equal-to operator for NULL-safe equations), 626  
> (greater-than), 201, 261, 626  
>= (greater-than-or-equal-to), 626  
< (less-than), 201  
<= (less-than-or-equal-to), 626  
- (minus sign), 205, 211  
\n (newline), 267, 421  
!= (not-equal-to) operator, 626  
|| (OR operator), 14  
% (percent), 13, 100-101, 180, 199, 211  
+ (plus sign), 205, 211  
# (pound sign), 456  
? (question mark), 415  
; (semicolon), 88, 146  
:= (set operator), 14  
-# switch  
    mysqlcheck, 352, 603  
    mysqlimport, 604  
-? switch  
    mysql, 596  
    mysqladmin, 601  
    mysqlcheck, 352, 603  
    mysqld, 607  
    mysqlimport, 604  
    mysqltest, 606  
-1 switch, mysqlcheck, 356, 603  
\t (tab), 267  
\_ (underscore), 180, 200

## A

-A option  
    mysql, 596  
    mysqlcheck, 603  
    mysqldump, 268–269, 598  
-a switch  
    MySQL Command-Line Interface, 147  
    mysqlcheck, 353, 603  
    mysqldump, 598  
ABS( ) function, 210

Access Denied error, 99, 158–159, 333–334  
Access to MySQL conversion tool, 27  
accounting data, Internet service provider, 6  
ACOS( ) trigonometric function, 643  
-add switch, mysqldump, 265  
ADD variable, ALTER TABLE statement, 99  
ADDDATE( ) function, 205  
-add-drop-table switch, mysqldump, 264–265, 598  
adding new user, mysqladmin, 86–87  
-add-locks switch, mysqldump, 264–265, 598  
address, basic customer database information, 4  
administration configuration, MySQL Command-Line Interface, 157  
AIX, 12, 23  
aliasing, support for, 17  
-all switch, mysqldump, 598  
-all-databases function  
    mysqlcheck, 355, 603  
    mysqldump, 268–269, 598  
-all-in-one switch, mysqlcheck, 355, 603  
-allow-keywords switch, mysqldump, 598  
-allowold switch, mysqlhotcopy program, 346  
Alpha, 12  
ALTER privilege, 324  
ALTER TABLE statement  
    changing CHAR to VARCHAR, 236  
    example, 99–100, 187–191  
    syntax, 90, 99, 185–186, 611–613  
    using multiple statements with, 17  
Amazon.com, 5  
American National Standards Institute (ANSI), 7  
Amiga, 23  
-analyze switch, mysqlcheck, 353, 603  
ANALYZE TABLE statement, 14, 364, 618  
AND function, 201  
andand operator, 13  
anonymity online, 6  
ANSI. See American National Standards Institute  
ANSI SQL-92, 7, 13  
-ansi switch, mysqld, 607  
ANSI\_QUOTES mode, 609  
Apache Web server software, 452  
application development software, 24–26  
Application Programming Interface (API), 12, 24–26  
apt-get tool, Linux, 30  
apxs module, Apache, 453  
AS keyword, SELECT statement, 198

ASC keyword, **SELECT statement**, 14, 225  
**ASCII( ) string functions**, 213  
**ASIN( ) trigonometric function**, 643  
**asterisk (\*)**, 13, 95, 211  
**at symbol (@)**, 462  
**ATAN( ) trigonometric function**, 643  
**attacks**, 6, 306  
**attribute**, logical design phase, 110–112  
**authentication**  
  **passwords**, 325–327  
  **phases**, 323–324  
  **privileges**, 324–325  
**auto\_increment field attribute**, 14  
**AUTO\_INCREMENT option**, **CREATE TABLE statement**, 184  
**Auto\_increment value**, **SHOW TABLE STATUS statement**, 176  
**–auto-repair switch**, **mysqlcheck**, 354, 603  
**AVG( ) function**, 225  
**Avg\_row\_length value**, **SHOW TABLE STATUS statement**, 176

**B**

**-B switch**  
  **myisamcheck**, 361, 364  
  **mysql**, 596  
  **mysqlcheck**, 355, 603  
  **mysqldump**, 268–269, 598  
**-b switch**, **mysqld**, 607  
**backslash ()**, 13  
**backup**  
  **BACKUP TABLE statement**, 350, 621  
  **changing database ownership**, 343  
  **developing strategy**, 369–370  
  **importance of**, 260, 338  
  **importance of performing**, 26, 338  
  **mysqldump**, 348–349  
  **overwriting database with same name**, 345–346  
  **password**, 340  
  **restoring database**, 366  
  **sample output**, 341–342  
  **suffix**, specifying, 347  
  **syntax**, 339  
    **table name**, specifying, 344–345  
**BACKUP option**, **myisam-recover variable**, 238–239  
**–backup switch**, **myisamcheck**, 361, 364  
**BACKUP TABLE statement**, 350  
**–basedir= switch**, **mysqld**, 607  
**–batch switch**, **mysql**, 596  
**BDB**. *See* Berkeley DB  
**bdb table type**, 90–91  
**bdb\_cache\_size server variable**, 282

**–bdb-home= parameter**, **mysqld**, 245, 607  
**–bdb-lock-detect= parameter**, **mysqld**, 245, 607  
**bdb\_log\_buffer\_size server variable**, 282  
**–bdb-logdir= parameter**, **mysqld**, 245, 607  
**bdb\_max\_lock variable**, 245  
**bdb\_max\_lock\_size server variable**, 282  
**–bdb-no-recover parameter**, **mysqld**, 245, 607  
**–bdb-no-sync parameter**, **mysqld**, 245, 607  
**–bdb-shared-data parameter**, **mysqld**, 607  
**–bdb-tmpdir= parameter**, **mysqld**, 245, 607  
**BENCHMARK( ) system function**, 641  
**Benchmark application**  
  **importance of**, 291–292  
  **requirements**, 292–293  
  **running tests**, 293–295  
**BeOS**, 23  
**Berkeley DB (BDB)**, 12  
**BerkeleyDB table type**, 245–246  
**BIGINT type**, 645  
**–big-tables switch**, **mysqld**, 607  
**billing system**, telephone company customer  
  **database**, 4  
**BIN( ) function**, 210–211  
**binary code**, downloading, 12, 30–31  
**binary field attribute**, 14  
**binary installation**  
  **Linux environment**, 45–47  
  **Mac OS X**, 74–75  
**BINARY keyword**, **LIKE function**, 219  
**binary log**, 374  
**binary math function**, 628–629  
**binary statement extension**, 17  
**bind-address option**, **my.cnf file**, 40–42  
**–bind-address= switch**, **mysqld**, 607  
**–bindir=DIR option**, MySQL source installation, 49  
**bind\_param( ) method**, Perl Database Interface,  
  415–416  
**binlog\_cache\_size server variable**, 282  
**binlog-do-db option**, MySQL master server  
  **replication**, 528  
**binlog-ignore-db option**, MySQL master server  
  **replication**, 528  
**bit\_and() statement extension**, 14  
**bit\_count() function**, 14  
**bit\_or() statement extension**, 14  
**BLOB type**, 14, 235, 241, 648–649  
**–bootstrap switch**, **mysqld**, 607  
**brackets ([ ])**, **CREATE TABLE statement**, 90  
**BSDi**, 12, 22  
**B-tree index type**, 234, 241  
**buffer**, size of, 237, 253

**C**

C API, 12, 18, 25  
 C++ API, 12, 25  
`-C switch`  
   `myisamcheck`, 354  
   `mysql`, 596  
   `mysqladmin`, 601  
   `mysqlcheck`, 354, 603  
   `mysqldump`, 598  
   `mysqlimport`, 604  
   `mysqlshow`, 600  
`-c switch`  
   `myisamcheck`, 357  
   `mysqlcheck`, 354, 603  
   `mysqldump`, 262, 598  
   `mysqlimport`, 276, 604  
   `mysqlshow`, 600  
**cache**, size of, 237, 253  
`-cache-file=FILENAME` option, MySQL source installation, 49  
**call identification**, telephone company customer service, 4  
**Cardinality value**, SHOW INDEX statement, 175  
**case function**, 14  
**CASE operator**, 626  
**CASE WHEN operator**, 626  
**case-sensitive file system**, 16  
**category table**, 90  
**cd command**, 70  
**CGI**. See Common Gateway Interface program  
**CGI.pm**, 428  
**change statement** extension, 14  
**CHANGE MASTER TO** option, MySQL slave server replication, 528  
**CHANGE variable**, ALTER TABLE statement, 99  
**changing permissions**, 43  
**CHAR( )** string functions, 213  
**char column type**, 124  
**char function**, 17  
**CHAR type**, 650  
**character set**, selecting default, 28  
`-character-sets-dir=switch`  
   `mysql`, 596  
   `mysqladmin`, 601  
   `mysqlcheck`, 352, 603  
   `mysqld`, 607  
   `mysqlshow`, 600  
`-check switch`  
   `myisamcheck`, 357  
   `mysqlcheck`, 354, 603  
**CHECK TABLE** statement, 14, 365, 622

**checking server status**, `mysqladmin`, 83–84  
**checking tables with myisamchk**, 357–361  
`-check-only-changed switch`  
   `myisamcheck`, 357  
   `mysqlcheck`, 354, 603  
**check\_session( )** function, PHP, 487  
**chkconfig command**, 35–36  
**chown command**, 78, 343  
`-chroot=switch`, `mysqld`, 607  
**city**, basic customer database information, 4  
**CLI**. See MySQL Command-Line Interface  
**client software**, stability of, 18  
**client-only configuration**, MySQL Command-Line Interface, 157  
**COALESCE**, 627  
**collation column**, SHOW INDEX statement, 175  
**column, fixed-length**, 387  
**Column\_name field**, SHOW INDEX statement, 175  
`-columns=switch`, `mysqlimport`, 276, 604  
**Command column**, processlist function, 252  
**command-line interface**  
   basic syntax, 133  
   command recall feature, 136  
   configuration options, 156–157  
   creating a database, 88–89  
   database, specifying, 140  
   environment variables, 141–146  
   host, specifying, 139–140  
   importance of, 28–30  
   interactive mode, 134–135, 146–151  
   non-interactive mode, 135, 152–156  
   password, specifying, 138–139  
   starting, 136–137  
   username, specifying, 137–138  
**command-line options**, `mysqld`  
   `my.cnf` file, Linux, 39–42  
   `my.ini` file, Windows 2000, 58–62  
**comma-separated values (CSV)**, 26  
**Comment field**, SHOW INDEX statement, 175  
**COMMIT feature**  
   Berkeley table, 245  
   InnoDB table, 242  
**Common Gateway Interface program (CGI)**, 428  
**Compact installation type**, 65  
**comparison operator**, SELECT statement, 17, 626  
**compatibility, database**, 13  
**compiling**  
   Linux environment, 51–52  
   Mac OS X, 77–78  
`-complete-insert switch`, `mysqldump`, 262, 598

–compress switch  
`mysql`, 596  
`mysqladmin`, 601  
`mysqlcheck`, 352, 603  
`mysqldump`, 598  
`mysqlimport`, 604  
`mysqlshow`, 600  
`CONCAT( )` string functions, 213, 216  
`concat` function, 17  
`CONCAT_WS( )` string functions, 213, 216  
`CONCURRENT` keyword, `LOAD DATA INFILE` statement, 274–275  
`config.cache` file, 453  
`configuration` file  
     developing your own, 298–302  
     monitoring performance, 302–303  
     multiple MySQL servers, 303–304  
     sample, 296–298  
`configure` command, 450  
`configure` script  
     Linux environment, 51–52  
     Mac OS X, 77  
`connect( )` method, Perl Database Interface, 404–405  
`connect` command, MySQL Command-Line Interface, 97, 146  
`CONNECT` statement, 179  
`connection timeout`, 253  
`CONNECTION_ID( )` system function, 641  
`connect_timeout` server variable, 283  
`constraint`, 17, 119–120  
`conversion tool`, 27  
`cookie`, 482  
`copy` function (`cp`), 17  
`–core-file` switch, `mysqld`, 607  
`correspondence notes`, basic customer database information, 4  
`COS( )` trigonometric function, 643  
`COT( )` trigonometric function, 643  
`COUNT( )` function, 225  
`count(distinct)` statement extension, 14  
`cp`. *See* `copy` function  
`crash`, automatic recovery from, 237  
`Crash-me` test, 291–292  
`create`  
     database, 88–89  
     table, 89–92  
`CREATE DATABASE` statement  
     extension, 14  
     syntax, 88, 183, 613  
`create`, `mysqladmin`, 602  
`CREATE INDEX` statement, 387  
`CREATE privilege`, 324  
`CREATE TABLE` statement  
     examples, 92, 184–185  
     index, 387  
     syntax, 90, 183, 613  
`Create_time` value, `SHOW TABLE STATUS` statement, 176  
`credentials`, 405–407  
`$credentials` variable, 404  
`credit card number`, tracking with customer database, 5  
`cron` command, 322  
`cross-platform` versions, MySQL, 11–12  
`CSV`. *See* `comma-separated values`  
`CURDATE( )` function, 202–203  
`cursor`, 17  
`CURTIME( )` function, 202–203  
`Custom installation type`, 65  
`customer database`  
     custom-service Web site, 5  
     Internet service provider, 6  
     mail-order store, 5  
     online store, 5  
     sharing information with other company, 3  
     telephone company, 4

## D

- D switch  
`myisamcheck`, 361  
`mysql`, 596  
`mysqltest`, 606
- d switch  
`mysqldump`, 263–264, 598  
`mysqlimport`, 276, 604
- data, 106
- Data Definition Language (DDL), 122, 181
- data, exporting  
     comments, 260  
     creating backup, 348–349  
     dropping tables, 264–265  
     dumping databases, 268–271  
     formatting output, 265–268  
     importance of, 26–27, 260  
     insert options, 262  
     locking tables, 264–265  
     `my.cnf` file, 38  
     redirecting output, 261  
     restoring database, 368–369  
     `SELECT INTO OUTFILE` statement, 271–273  
     specifying records with `where` clause, 262  
     support, 26–28  
     suppressing data, 263–264  
     suppressing database creation, 271

- suppressing DDL, 263
- suppressing DML, 263–264
- syntax, 260
- tables with large columns, 260
- data, importing**
  - `LOAD DATA INFILE` statement, 274–275
  - MySQL Command-Line Interface, 273
  - `mysqlimport`, 276
  - support, 26–28
- Data Markup Language (DML)**, 122, 191
- database**
  - advantages of using, 7
  - connecting to, 89
  - creating, 88, 182–183
  - definition, 106–107
  - deleting, 182
  - metadata, 516–517
  - naming, 16
  - opening multiple connections to, 252
  - optimization, 386–387
  - uses, 107
- DATABASE( ) function**, 223
- DATABASE( ) system function**, 641
- database design**
  - definition, 107
  - life cycle, 108–109
- database handle, Perl Database Interface, 403
- database layout, e-commerce Web site example, 435–436
- database replication**
  - binary log, 526
  - configuration, 530–533
  - errors, 544
  - importance of, 525
  - kickstarting, 544–546
  - master server, 526
  - monitoring through Web, 540–543
  - monitoring with Perl, 537–540
  - multiple master replication, 534–537
  - multiple slave replication, 533
  - MySQL version, 527
  - pass-through slave replication, 537
  - planning, 525
  - security, 527
  - settings, 527–529
  - slave server, 526
  - stability of, 18
- database= switch**
  - `mysql`, 596
  - MySQL Command-Line Interface, 140
  - `mysqltest`, 606
- database variable, MySQL Command-Line Interface**, 144
- databases function**
  - `mysqlcheck`, 355, 603
  - `mysqldump`, 269–271, 598
- DATADIR**, 243
- datadir=DIR option, MySQL source installation**, 49, 608
- data-file-length switch, myisamcheck**, 361
- Data\_free value, SHOW TABLE STATUS statement**, 176
- Data\_length value, SHOW TABLE STATUS statement**, 176
- \$datasource variable**, 408
- date and time functions**
  - `ADDDATE( )`, 205
  - `CURDATE( )`, 202–203
  - `CURTIME( )`, 202–203
  - date string format, 633–634
  - date type, 632
  - `DATE_ADD( )`, 202, 205
  - `DATE_FORMAT( )`, 202, 208–210
  - `DATE_SUB( )`, 202, 205
  - `DAYNAME( )`, 202, 204
  - `DAYOFMONTH( )`, 202, 204
  - `DAYOFWEEK( )`, 202, 204
  - `DAYOFYEAR( )`, 202, 204
  - `FROM_DAYS( )`, 202, 207
  - `FROM_UNIXTIME( )`, 202, 207
  - `HOUR( )`, 202, 205
  - `MINUTE( )`, 202, 205
  - `MONTH( )`, 202, 204
  - `MONTHNAME( )`, 202, 204
  - `NOW( )`, 202–203
  - `PERIOD_ADD( )`, 203, 206
  - `PERIOD_DIFF( )`, 203, 206
  - `QUARTER( )`, 203, 204
  - `SECOND( )`, 203, 205
  - `SEC_TO_TIME( )`, 203, 207
  - `SUBDATE( )`, 205
  - `TIME_TO_SEC( )`, 203, 207
  - `TO_DAYS( )`, 203, 207
  - `UNIX_TIMESTAMP( )`, 203, 207
  - `WEEK( )`, 203–204
  - `WEEKDAY( )`, 203–204
  - `YEAR( )`, 203–204
- DATE type**, 648
- DATETIME type**, 648
- db column, processlist function**, 252
- DBD. *See* MySQL Database Driver**
- dbf2mysql conversion tool**, 27
- \$dbh variable**, 404
- DBI. *See* Perl Database Interface**
- DDL. *See* Data Definition Language**
- Debian Linux**, 30

–debug switch  
     mysqlcheck, 352, 603  
     mysqlhotcopy, 339  
     mysqldump, 604  
 –debug-info, mysql, 597  
 DEC UNIX 4.x, 23  
 decimal column type, 124  
 decimal math function, 634–635  
 DECIMAL type, 647  
 DECODE( ) system function, 641  
 decode() function, 14  
 decode\_bits variable, 362  
 default databases, installing, 43  
 DEFAULT option, myisam-recover variable, 238  
 –default-character-set= switch  
     mysql, 596  
     mysqlcheck, 352  
     mysqld, 607  
     mysqldump, 598  
     uses, 28  
 –default-table-type= switch, mysqld, 608  
 –defaults-file= switch, mysql, 304  
 defragmentation, 387  
 DELAYED keyword, INSERT statement, 92–93, 194  
 delayed statement extension, 14  
 –delayed-insert switch, mysqldump, 598  
 delayed\_insert\_limit server variable, 283  
 delayed\_insert\_timeout server variable, 283  
 delayed\_queue\_size server variable, 283  
 delay\_key\_write server variable, 283  
 –delay-key-write-for-all-tables switch,  
     mysqld, 608  
 DELETE privilege, 324  
 DELETE statement, 229–230, 240, 330, 614  
 –delete switch, mysqlimport, 276, 604  
 DESC keyword, SELECT statement, 225  
 DESCRIBE statement  
     MySQL extension, 14  
     similarity to EXPLAIN command, 125  
     similarity to SHOW COLUMNS statement, 173  
     syntax, 100–101, 180, 613  
 development version, 30  
 die( ) function, PHP, 468  
 digits, using in object name, 16  
 –disable-largefile option, MySQL source  
     installation, 50  
 disc, 63  
 disconnect( ) method, Perl Database Interface, 409  
 disk space, 236  
 DISTINCT statement, 388  
 DML. *See* Data Markup Language  
 do( ) method, Perl Database Interface, 415–416  
 dollar sign (\$), 462

Domain Name Service (DNS)  
     BIND DNS server software, 556–560  
     importance of, 316  
 DOUBLE type, 647  
 downloading Mac OS X files, 74–75  
 driver handle, Perl Database Interface, 403  
 DriverManager class, Java Database Connectivity,  
     514–515  
 drop statement extension, 14  
 DROP DATABASE statement  
     extension, 14  
     syntax, 182  
 drop, mysqladmin, 602  
 drop index statement extension, 14  
 DROP privilege, 324  
 DROP TABLE statement  
     extension, 14  
     syntax, 181–182  
 DROP variable, ALTER TABLE statement, 99  
 –dryrun switch, mysqlhotcopy program, 347  
 dselect tool, Linux, 30  
 dump\_results( ) method, Perl Database Interface,  
     420–423  
 duplicate value, inserting, 195  
 dynamic page, 428  
 Dynamic Shared Objects, 453

## E

–E switch  
     mysql, 596  
     MySQL Command-Line Interface, 148  
     mysqladmin, 601  
 –e switch  
     myisamcheck, 354, 361  
     mysql, 596  
     MySQL Command-Line Interface, 135  
     mysqlcheck, 354, 603  
     mysqldump, 262, 598  
 each( ) function, PHP, 470  
 e-commerce Web site example  
     database layout, 435–436  
     inventory-input program, 436–441  
     product search engine, 441–448  
 Eiffel API, 25  
 elt() function, 14  
 e-mail support, 22  
 –enable-locking, mysqld, 608  
 –enable-named-commands, mysql, 596  
 ENCODE( ) system function, 641  
 encode() function, 14  
 ENCRYPT( ) function, 14, 223, 326  
 ENCRYPT( ) system function, 641  
 encrypting usernames, 485

- encryption, Unix compared to MySQL, 326  
**End Task** box, Windows, 335  
 enterprise-level applications, 18  
 entity, logical design phase, 109–112  
 entity integrity, 119  
**Entity-Relationship Diagram (ERD)**  
   definition, 113  
   foreign key, 116  
   many-to-many relationship, 113–115  
   one-to-many relationship, 115–116  
   refining, 116–118  
**ENUM** type, 651  
**environment variables**, MySQL Command-Line Interface  
   default values, 141–143  
   frequently used, 144  
   overriding default values, 144–146  
**equal sign (=)**, 138, 199, 201  
**equal-to operator** for NULL-safe equations ( $<=$ ), 626  
**ERD**. *See Entity-Relationship Diagram*  
**err( )** method, Perl Database Interface, 413–414  
**.err** file extension, 374  
**err-log** option, MySQL configuration file, 374–375  
**error**  
   Access Denied, 99, 158–159, 333–334  
   Invalid Option, 340  
**error log**, 374  
**errstr( )** method, Perl Database Interface, 413–414  
**ESCAPE keyword**, LIKE function, 219  
**excel2mysql** conversion tool, 27  
**exclusion constraint**, logical design phase, 119–120  
**–exec-prefix=DIR** option, MySQL source installation, 49  
**execute( )** method  
   Java Database Connectivity, 515  
   Perl Database Interface, 415–416  
**–execute switch**, MySQL Command-Line Interface, 135, 596  
**executeBatch( )** method, Java Database Connectivity, 515  
**executeQuery( )** method, Java Database Connectivity, 515  
**executeUpdate( )** method, Java Database Connectivity, 515  
**exit command**, MySQL Command-Line Interface, 146  
**EXPLAIN command**, 126, 386, 614  
**explain select statement**, 14  
**exploit**, 305  
**exporting data**  
   comments, 260  
   creating backup, 348–349  
   dropping tables, 264–265  
   dumping databases, 268–271  
   formatting output, 265–268  
   importance of, 26–27, 260  
   insert options, 262  
   locking tables, 264–265  
   my.cnf file, 38  
   redirecting output, 261  
   restoring database, 368–369  
   SELECT INTO OUTFILE statement, 271–273  
   specifying records with where clause, 262  
   support, 26–28  
   suppressing data, 263–264  
   suppressing database creation, 271  
   suppressing DDL, 263  
   suppressing DML, 263–264  
   syntax, 260  
   tables with large columns, 260  
**ExportSQL** conversion tool, 27  
**–extended switch**, mysqlcheck, 354, 603  
**–extended-check switch**, myisamcheck, 354, 361  
**–extended-insert switch**, mysqldump, 262, 265, 598  
**extended-status** function, mysqladmin, 248, 251, 602  
**extensible index type**, 19  
**extensions**, MySQL, 13–16

**F**

- F switch**  
   myisamcheck, 354  
   mysqlcheck, 354, 603  
   mysqldump, 598
- f switch**  
   myisamcheck, 354, 361  
   mysql, 596  
   MySQL Command-Line Interface, 150  
   mysqladmin, 601  
   mysqlcheck, 603  
   mysqldump, 598  
   mysqlimport, 604
- fast switch**  
   myisamcheck, 357  
   mysqlcheck, 354, 603
- fetchall\_arrayref** function, Perl Database Interface, 417
- fetchrow( )** function, Perl Database Interface, 417
- fetchrow\_array( )** function, Perl Database Interface, 417–418
- fetchrow\_arrayref( )** function, Perl Database Interface, 417–419
- fetchrow\_hashref( )** function, Perl Database Interface, 417–419
- Firenet**, 558
- FIELD( )** string functions, 213, 219–220
- field padding**, 235

**FIELDS ENCLOSED BY** option, `SELECT INTO OUTFILE` statement, 271  
**FIELDS ESCAPED BY** option, `SELECT INTO OUTFILE` statement, 271  
`-fields switch`, `mysqldump`, 267  
**FIELDS TERMINATED BY** option, `SELECT INTO OUTFILE` statement, 271  
`-fields-enclosed-by=` switch  
`mysqldump`, 599  
`mysqlimport`, 276, 605  
`-fields-escaped-by=` switch  
`mysqldump`, 600  
`mysqlimport`, 276, 605  
`-fields-optionally-enclosed-by=` switch  
`mysqldump`, 600  
`mysqlimport`, 276, 605  
`-fields-terminated-by=` switch  
`mysqldump`, 599  
`mysqlimport`, 276, 604  
**FILE privilege**, 222, 324, 533  
**file system**, case-sensitive, 16  
**\$filedes variable**, 415  
**finish( ) method**, Perl Database Interface, 423  
**firewall**, 312  
**first name**, basic customer database information, 4  
**First Normal Form (1NF)**, 120  
**fixed-length column**, 387  
**FLOAT type**, 647  
**flow-control operator**, 626  
**FLUSH (option) statement**, 14, 618–619  
`-flush switch`, `mysqld`, 608  
**Flush tables parameter**, `status` function, 250  
**FLUSH TABLES WITH READ LOCK statement**, MySQL Command-Line Interface, 383  
`flush-hosts` function, `mysqladmin`, 253, 602  
`-flushlog switch`, `mysqlhotcopy` program, 348  
`flush-logs` function, `mysqladmin`, 254, 602  
`-flush-logs switch`, `mysqldump`, 598  
`flush-privileges` function, `mysqladmin`, 255, 335, 602  
`flush-status` function, `mysqladmin`, 254, 602  
`flush-tables` function, `mysqladmin`, 254, 602  
`flush-threads`, `mysqladmin`, 602  
**flush\_time server variable**, 283  
**FORCE option**, `myisam-recover` variable, 238–239  
`-force switch`  
`myisamcheck`, 357, 361  
`mysql`, 596  
**MySQL Command-Line Interface**, 150  
`mysqladmin`, 601  
`mysqlcheck`, 356, 603  
`mysqldump`, 598  
`mysqlimport`, 604  
**foreign key**, 17, 19, 243  
**FORMAT( ) function**, 15, 210–211  
**FORMAT( ) system function**, 641  
**forName( ) method**, Java Database Connectivity, 514  
`/* (enclosing non-standard extensions in)`, 13  
**FOUND\_ROWS( ) system function**, 641  
**fragmentation, repairing**, 236  
**FreeBSD**, 12, 23  
`.frm` extension, 350  
**FROM argument**, `SHOW INDEX` statement, 175  
**from clause**, `SELECT` statement, 17  
**FROM\_DAYS( ) function**, 15, 202, 207  
**FROM\_UNIXTIME( ) function**, 202, 207  
**front slash (/)**, 211  
**FTP server**, 308  
**full join**, 17  
**FULL modifier**, `SHOW PROCESSLIST` statement, 177  
**FULLTEXT, SHOW INDEX** statement, 175

## G

`-G, mysql`, 596  
`-g, mysql`, 596  
**Gemini table type**, 90–91  
`gemini_buffer_cache=` option, NuSphere MySQL Advantage, 581, 590  
`gemini_connection_limit=` option, NuSphere MySQL Advantage, 581, 590  
`-gemini-flush-log-at-commit` option, NuSphere MySQL Advantage, 581, 590  
`gemini_io_threads=` option, NuSphere MySQL Advantage, 581, 590  
`gemini_lock_table_size=` option, NuSphere MySQL Advantage, 581, 590  
`gemini_lock_wait_timeout=` option, NuSphere MySQL Advantage, 581, 590  
`-gemini-recovery=` option, NuSphere MySQL Advantage, 581, 590  
`-gemini-unbuffered-io` option, NuSphere MySQL Advantage, 581, 590  
`get( ) method`, Java Database Connectivity, 515  
`getBoolean( ) method`, JDBC, 515  
`getByte( ) method`, JDBC, 515  
`getColumnName( ) method`, JDBC, 516  
`getColumnType( ) method`, JDBC, 516  
`getConnection( ) method`, Java Database Connectivity, 514–515  
`getDate( ) method`, JDBC, 515  
`getDouble( ) method`, JDBC, 515  
`getFloat( ) method`, JDBC, 515  
`getInt( ) method`, JDBC, 515  
**GET\_LOCK( ) system function**, 642  
`getLong( ) method`, JDBC, 515  
`getMessage( ) method`, Java Database Connectivity, 517

`getMetaData( )` method, Java Database Connectivity, 516  
`getShort( )` method, JDBC, 515  
`getString( )` method, JDBC, 515  
`getTime( )` method, JDBC, 515  
`getTimestamp( )` method, JDBC, 515  
`glibc`, 31, 45  
 GNU General Public License (GPL), 12, 21–22  
`GRANT` privilege, 324  
`GRANT` statement, 98, 255, 327–329, 623  
`grants database`, 474  
`GRANTS` tables, 255  
 Graphical User Interface (GUI), 19  
 greater than (`>`), 201, 261, 626  
 greater-than-or-equal-to (`>=`), 626  
`GREATEST( )` function, 210, 212  
`group( )` function, PHP, 482  
 group by clause, `SELECT` statement, 95, 227, 636  
 grouping functions, `SELECT` statement, 225  
 GUI. *See* Graphical User Interface

**H**

`-H` switch  
`mysql`, 596  
 MySQL Command-Line Interface, 150  
`-h` switch  
`mysql`, 596  
 MySQL Command-Line Interface, 139–140  
`mysqladmin`, 601  
`mysqlcheck`, 352, 603  
`mysqld`, 608  
`mysqldump`, 598  
`mysqlimport`, 605  
`mysqlshow`, 384  
`mysqltest`, 606  
`HANDLER` statement, 614–615  
`have_bdb` server variable, 283  
`have_gemini` server variable, 283  
`have_innodb` server variable, 283  
`have_isam` server variable, 283  
`have_raid` server variable, 283  
`have_ssl` server variable, 283  
`HAVING` keyword, `SELECT` statement, 225  
 HEAP table type, 90–91, 241–242  
`-help` switch  
`mysql`, 596  
`mysqladmin`, 601  
`mysqlcheck`, 352, 603  
`mysqld`, 607  
`mysqlimport`, 604  
`mysqlshow` statement, 384–385  
`mysqltest`, 606

`HEX( )` function, 210–211  
`host`, multi-homed, 40  
`Host` column, `processlist` function, 251  
`-host=` switch  
`mysql`, 596  
`mysqladmin`, 601  
`mysqlcheck`, 352, 603  
`mysqldump`, 598  
`mysqlimport`, 605  
`mysqlshow`, 600  
`mysqltest`, 606  
`host` variable, MySQL Command-Line Interface, 144  
`hostconfig` file, 72  
`HOUR( )` function, 202, 205  
 HP-UX, 12, 23  
`.htaccess` file, 317  
`htdocs` folder, 450  
`.htm` extension, 428  
`.html` extension, 428  
`-html` switch, MySQL Command-Line Interface, 150, 596  
`html` variable, MySQL Command-Line Interface, 144  
`httpassword` command, 318  
`httpd` command, 450  
`httpd.conf`, 455  
 Hypertext Markup Language (HTML)  
`<form>` tag, 429  
 input form example, 431–434  
`<p>` tag, 431  
 static web page example, 429–431

**I**

`-i` switch  
`myisamcheck`, 354  
`mysql`, 596  
`mysqladmin`, 601  
`mysqlimport`, 605  
`mysqlshow`, 600  
`-I` switch, `mysqlimport`, 276  
 IA64, 12  
 IBM Informix, 11  
`Id` column, `processlist` function, 251  
 identity thief, 5  
`IF( )` function, 15, 223–224  
`if exists` statement extension, 15  
`if not exists` keyword  
`CREATE DATABASE`, 88  
`CREATE TABLE` statement, 90  
`if not exists` statement extension, 15  
`IF` operator, 626  
`IFNULL( )` function, 223–224  
`IFNULL` operator, 626

- IGNORE keyword**  
     ALTER TABLE statement, 90, 99, 185–186  
     INSERT statement, 92–93, 195  
     LOAD DATA INFILE statement, 274–275
- ignore statement extension**, 15
- ignore switch**, mysqlimport, 276, 605
- ignore-space**, mysql, 596
- IGNORE\_SPACE mode**, 609
- image recognition**, 3
- implementation phase**, database life cycle, 129–130
- importing data**  
     LOAD DATA INFILE statement, 274–275  
     MySQL Command-Line Interface, 273  
     mysqlimport, 276  
     support, 26–28
- in clause**, SELECT statement, 20
- inactive connections**, mysqladmin, 84–85
- include( ) function**, PHP, 468, 479
- includedir=DIR option**, MySQL source installation, 49
- index**, sorting, 388–389
- INDEX privilege**, 324
- index statement extension**, 15
- indexing**, physical design phase, 125–128
- INET\_ATON( ) system function**, 642
- INET\_NTOA( ) system function**, 642
- Info column**, processlist function, 252
- infodir=DIR option**, MySQL source installation, 49
- information switch**, myisamcheck, 357
- Informix**, 8, 11
- inherited table**, 19
- init.d directory**, 35
- init-file=**, mysqld, 608
- InnoDB table type**, 12, 90–91, 242–245
- innodb\_additional\_mem\_pool\_size variable**, 245
- innodb\_buffer\_pool\_size variable**, 244
- innodb\_data\_file\_path parameter**, 243
- innodb\_data\_home\_dir parameter**, 243
- innodb\_flush\_log\_at\_trx\_commit variable**, 244
- innodb\_lock\_wait\_timeout variable**, 245
- innodb\_log\_buffer\_size variable**, 244
- innodb\_log\_files\_in\_group variable**, 244
- innodb\_log\_file\_size variable**, 244
- innodb\_log\_group\_home\_dir parameter**, 243
- INSERT ... SELECT ... statement**, 196–197
- INSERT ... SET ... statement**, 196
- INSERT INTO statement**, 615
- INSERT privilege**, 324
- INSERT statement**  
     example, 192  
     execution of, 194  
     expression, 193–194  
     MERGE table type, 240
- mysqldump**, 262
- syntax**, 192
- value exceeds column size**, 192–193
- INSERT test application**, 294
- INSERT...VALUES... statement**, 195
- install command**, 77
- installation**  
     binary, Linux environment, 45–47  
     binary, Mac OS X, 74–75  
     binary, Windows 2000, 63–68  
     Java Database Connectivity, 511–514  
     MySQL Database Driver, 398–402  
     Perl Database Interface, 394–397  
     RPM, Linux environment, 47–48  
     source code, Linux, 48–52  
     source code, Mac OS X, 75–76
- insurance company customer database**, 3
- INT type**, 645
- Intel libc6**, 12
- interactive mode**, MySQL Command-Line Interface  
     creating tab-delimited output, 150–151  
     displaying results vertically, 148–149  
     importance of, 134–135  
     producing HTML output, 150  
     saving output, 148–149  
     semicolon, terminating commands with, 147  
     startup, 147  
     suppressing column names, 150  
     working with large amounts of data, 147
- interactive\_timeout server variable**, 283
- Internet service provider (ISP)**  
     accounting data, 6  
     customer database, 6  
     database use compared to other industries, 5  
     user-preference database, 6
- INTERVAL**, 627
- INTO keyword**, INSERT statement, 92–93, 192
- into outfile statement extension**, 15
- Invalid Option error**, 340
- inventory-input program**, e-commerce Web site example, 436–441
- IP address**, tracking usage of, 6
- isam logfile**, 374
- ISAM table type**, 90–91, 194, 240–241
- isamchk**, 241
- ISNULL( ) function**, 223–224
- ISO/IEC 9075:1992 (SQL standard)**, 7
- J**
- Java Database Connectivity (JDBC)**  
     API, 25, 493  
     application example, 520–521  
     connecting to MySQL, 518–519

**D**riverManager class, 514–515  
**e**xecute( ) method, 515  
**e**xecuteBatch( ) method, 515  
**e**xecuteQuery( ) method, 515  
**e**xecuteUpdate( ) method, 515  
**f**orName( ) method, 514  
**g**et( ) method, 515  
**g**etConnection( ) method, 514–515  
**g**etMessage( ) method, 517  
**g**etMetaData( ) method, 516  
**i**nstallation, 511–514  
**J**ava Software Development Kit, 511  
**o**btaing software, 511  
**R**esultSet object, 515, 518  
**S**QLException class, 517  
**w**asNULL( ) method, 517  
**J**ava Software Development Kit (JDK), 511  
**j**ava.sql package, 511  
**j**oin, **S**ELCT statement, 202  
**J**OIN statement, 388  
**j**oin\_buffer\_size **s**erver variable, 283

**K**

**-k** switch  
  myisamcheck, 361  
  mysqlshow, 600  
**-keepold** switch, mysqlhotcopy program, 346  
**k**ey statement extension, 15  
**k**ey\_buffer\_size **s**erver variable, 283, 301, 362  
**K**ey\_name field, SHOW INDEX statement, 175  
**K**ey column, EXPLAIN command, 387  
**-keys** switch, mysqlshow, 600  
**-keys-used** switch, myisamcheck, 361  
**k**ill command, Linux, 335  
**k**ill function, mysqladmin, 255–257, 602  
**K**ILL statement, 180, 619

**L**

**-L** switch  
  mysql, 596  
  mysqld, 608  
  mysqlimport, 276, 605  
**-l** switch  
  myisamcheck, 361  
  mysqld, 608  
  mysqldump, 264–265, 598  
  mysqlimport, 276, 605  
**—language=**, mysqld, 608  
**l**anguage, selecting default, 28  
**large\_files\_support** **s**erver variable, 283  
**l**ast name, basic customer database information, 4  
**L**AST\_INSERT\_ID( ) function, 15, 223–224, 642  
**L**atin1 character set, 28

**l**aw enforcement database, 6  
**L**CASE( ) string functions, 213, 215  
**l**dconfig, 454  
**L**EAST( ) function, 210, 212  
**l**east-privilege system, 305, 326  
**L**ENGT( ) string functions, 213, 221  
**l**ess than (<), 201  
**L**esser GNU Public License (LGPL), 12  
**-libdir=DIR** option, MySQL source installation, 49  
**-libexecdir=DIR** option, MySQL source  
  installation, 49  
**l**icensing, 21–22  
**L**IKE keyword, **S**ELCT statement, 199  
**L**IKE modifier, SHOW DATABASES statement, 172  
**l**ike operator, 15  
**L**IKE string functions, 213, 218  
**l**imit clause, **S**ELCT statement, 95  
**l**imit statement extension, 15  
**-line** switch, mysqldump, 267  
**L**INES TERMINATED BY clause  
  LOAD DATA INFILE statement, 275  
  SELECT INTO OUTFILE statement, 271  
**-lines-terminated-by=** switch  
  mysqldump, 600  
  mysqlimport, 276, 605  
**L**inux  
  binary installation, 45–47  
  changing permissions, MySQL files and  
    directories, 43  
  command-line options, my.cnf file, 39–42  
  default databases, installing, 43  
  Kernel 2.0, 23  
  MySQL version, 11  
  obtaining MySQL with, 30  
  RPM installation, 47–48  
  shutdown, MySQL server, 36–38  
  source installation, 48–52  
  startup, MySQL server, 35–36, 44  
**list( )** function, PHP, 470  
**L**iyanage, Marc, 75  
**ln** command, 46  
**LOAD** DATA FROM MASTER option, MySQL slave server  
  replication, 528  
**LOAD** DATA INFILE statement, 15, 274–275  
**LOAD** TABLE FROM MASTER option, MySQL slave  
  server replication, 528  
**LOAD\_FILE( )** string functions, 213, 222  
**LOCAL** keyword, LOAD DATA INFILE statement,  
  274–275  
**-local** switch, mysqlimport, 276, 605  
**localhost** connection, 73  
**-localstatedir=DIR** option, MySQL source  
  installation, 49

**LOCK TABLES** statement, 350  
**locking behavior**, 246  
**—lock-tables** function, `mysqlimport`, 276, 605  
**—lock-tables** switch, `mysqldump`, 264–265, 598  
**—log=**, `mysqld`, 608  
**.log** file extension, 376  
**log function**, 299  
**log option**, MySQL configuration file, 376  
**log server variable**, 283  
**log-bin** option  
  MySQL configuration file, 374–375  
  MySQL master server replication, 528  
**log\_bin** server variable, 283  
**—log-bin=** switch, `mysqld`, 608  
**log-bin-index** option, MySQL master server  
  replication, 528  
**—log-bin-index=** switch, `mysqld`, 608  
**logfile**, 243, 374–477  
**logical AND function**, 201  
**logical design**, database life cycle  
  attribute, 110–112  
  constraint, 119–120  
  Data Definition Language, 122  
  Data Markup Language, 122  
  entity, 109–112  
  Entity-Relationship Diagram, 113–119  
  importance of, 108–109  
  normalization, 120–122  
  relationship, 112–113  
  writing `CREATE TABLE` statements, 123–124  
**logical NOT function**, 201  
**logical operator**, 627  
**logical OR function**, 201  
**login support**, 22  
**—log-isam=** switch, `mysqld`, 608  
**—log-long-format** switch, `mysqld`, 376–377, 608  
**log-slave-updates** option, MySQL slave server  
  replication, 528  
**log\_slave\_updates** server variable, 283  
**log-slow-queries** option, MySQL configuration  
  file, 376  
**—log-slow-queries=** switch, `mysqld`, 608  
**log\_update** server variable, 283  
**—log-update=** switch, `mysqld`, 608  
**LONGBLOB type**, 648–449  
**long\_query\_time** server variable, 283, 376  
**long\_query\_time** value, `status` function, 250  
**low overhead**, 18  
**LOW\_PRIORITY keyword**  
  `INSERT` statement, 15, 92–93, 194  
  `LOAD DATA INFILE` statement, 274–275  
**—low-priority** switch, `mysqlimport`, 605

**—low-priority-updates** switch, `mysqld`, 608  
**LPAD( )** string functions, 213–214  
**LTRIM( )** string functions, 213–214  
**M**  
**—m** switch  
  `myisamcheck`, 354, 603  
  `mysqlcheck`, 354  
**Mac OS X**  
  binary installation, 74–75  
  compiling MySQL, 77–78  
  configuring MySQL, 78–79  
  installing MySQL, Mac OS X Server, 73–74  
  MySQL version, 12, 23  
  root password, setting, 73–74  
  shutdown, MySQL server, 73  
  source code installation, 75–76  
  startup, MySQL server, 69–72  
  testing MySQL, 79  
**mail-order store customer database**, 5  
**make** command, 51–52, 77, 450  
**makemap** command, 563  
**—mandir=DIR** option, MySQL source installation, 49  
**manual shutdown**, MySQL server, 38  
**manufacturer table**, 90  
**master-connect-retry** option, MySQL slave server  
  replication, 529  
**master-host** option, MySQL slave server  
  replication, 528  
**master-info-file** option, MySQL slave server  
  replication, 529  
**master-password** option, MySQL slave server  
  replication, 529  
**master-port** option, MySQL slave server  
  replication, 529  
**MASTER\_POS\_WAIT( )** system function, 642  
**master-ssl** option, MySQL slave server  
  replication, 529  
**master-ssl-cert** option, MySQL slave server  
  replication, 529  
**master-ssl-key** option, MySQL slave server  
  replication, 529  
**master-user** option, MySQL slave server  
  replication, 528  
**MAC( )** function, 225  
**Max memory value**, `status` function, 250  
**max\_allowed\_packet** variable, 222, 260, 283  
**max\_binlog\_cache\_size** server variable, 284  
**max\_binlog\_size** server variable, 284  
**max\_connect\_errors** server variable, 284  
**max\_connections** server variable, 284

**max\_data\_length value, SHOW TABLE STATUS statement**, 176  
**max\_delayed\_threads server variable**, 284  
**max\_heap\_table\_size server variable**, 241, 284  
**max\_sort\_length server variable**, 284  
**max\_tmp\_tables server variable**, 284  
**max\_user\_connections server variable**, 284, 302  
**max\_write\_lock\_count server variable**, 284  
**md5( ) function**, 15, 223, 485, 642  
**MEDIUMBLOB type**, 648–449  
**—medium-check switch**  
  **myisamcheck**, 357  
  **mysqlcheck**, 354, 603  
**mediumint field type**, 15  
**MEDIUMINT type**, 645  
**—memlock switch, mysqld**, 608  
**Memory in use value, status function**, 250  
**memory shortage**, 244  
**MERGE table type, SELECT statement**, 240  
**Microsoft Access, importing MySQL output into**, 272  
**Microsoft SQL Server**  
  characteristics of, 9–10  
  compared to other database products, 19  
  Structure Query Language, implementation of, 8  
**MIN( ) function**, 225  
**minus sign (-)**, 205, 211  
**MINUTE( ) function**, 202, 205  
**mkdir command**, 70  
**MOD( ) function**, 210  
**MODIFY variable, ALTER TABLE statement**, 99  
**MONTH( ) function**, 202, 204  
**MONTHNAME( ) function**, 202, 204  
**move function (mv)**, 17  
**msql2mysql conversion tool**, 27  
**mssql2mysql conversion tool**, 27  
**multi-homed host**, 40  
**MyAccess conversion tool**, 27  
**my.cnf file**  
  environment variables, 141  
  **innodb\_data\_file\_path variable**, 242  
  [bmysqld] section, 39–42  
  replication, 530  
  setting command options, 38–39  
**.MYD extension**, 350  
**my-huge.cnf**, 292, 297  
**my.ini file**  
  displaying connections with WinMySQLAdmin, 60  
  environment variables, 141  
  replication, 530  
  setting command options, 58–59  
  skip-network option, 61  
  Windows 2000, 33

**MyISAM table type**  
  compressed format, 237  
  **DELAYED keyword**, 93, 194  
  dynamic format, 236  
  importance of, 234  
  **LOW\_PRIORITY keyword**, 93, 194  
  **MySQL default**, 90–91  
  static format, 235–236  
  variables, 237–240  
**myisamchk**  
  checking tables with, 357–361  
  importance of, 234, 356  
  **my.cnf file**, 38  
  repairing tables with, 361–364  
  sorting indexes, 388–389  
  syntax, 357  
**myisam\_max\_extra\_sort\_file\_size variable**, 240, 284  
**myisam\_max\_sort\_file\_size variable**, 240, 284  
**myisampack**  
  **Compressed table**, 237  
  **my.cnf file**, 38  
**—myisam-recover= switch, mysqld**, 608  
**myisam-recover variable**, 238–239  
**myisam-sort-buffer-size variable**, 239, 284  
**my-large.cnf**, 292, 297  
**my-medium.cnf**, 292, 297  
**MyODBC**  
  API, 25–26  
  changing options, 497–499  
  downloading software, 494  
  installation, 494–497  
  Microsoft Access, importing MySQL data into, 499–503  
  Microsoft Word, importing MySQL data into, 504–510  
**my\_print\_defaults script**, 39  
**my-.cnf file**, 38  
**my-small.cnf**, 292, 296  
**mysql**, 29, 38  
**MySQL Advantage**  
  administration, 578–579, 587  
  compatibility, 572  
  configuration, 581–582  
  Gemini table type, 572, 579–581, 588–589  
  **gemini\_buffer\_cache= option**, 581, 590  
  **gemini\_connection\_limit= option**, 581, 590  
  **—gemini-flush-log-at-commit option**, 581, 590  
  **gemini\_io\_threads= option**, 581, 590  
  **gemini\_lock\_table\_size= option**, 581, 590  
  **gemini\_lock\_wait\_timeout= option**, 581, 590

*Continued*

- MySQL Advantage (*continued*)**
- gemini-recovery= option, 581, 590
  - gemini-unbuffered-io option, 581, 590
  - importance of, 571
  - installation, 573–578, 582–586
  - management tools, 572
  - Pro Advantage, installing, 582–586
    - skip-gemini option, 581, 590
    - transaction-isolation= option, 581, 590
- MySQL Command-Line Interface (CLI)**
- basic syntax, 133
  - command recall feature, 136
  - configuration options, 156–157
  - creating a database, 88–89
  - database, specifying, 140
  - environment variables, 141–146
  - host, specifying, 139–140
  - importance of, 28–30
  - interactive mode, 134–135, 146–151
  - non-interactive mode, 135, 152–156
  - password, specifying, 138–139
  - starting, 136–137
  - username, specifying, 137–138
- MySQL database**
- advantages of using, 7
  - connecting to, 89
  - creating, 88, 182–183
  - definition, 106–107
  - deleting, 182
  - metadata, 516–517
  - naming, 16
  - opening multiple connections to, 252
  - optimization, 386–387
  - uses, 107
- MySQL Database Driver (DBD), 398–402**
- MySQL Free Public License, 22**
- MySQL server**
- manual shutdown, 38
  - shutdown, Linux environment, 36–38
  - startup, Linux environment, 35–36
- mysqladmin**
- checking server status, 83–84
  - common switches, 246
  - create function, 249
  - creating a database, 88–89
  - drop function, 249
  - extended-status function, 248, 251, 298, 301
  - flush-hosts function, 253
  - flush-logs function, 254
  - flush-privileges function, 255
  - flush-status function, 254
  - flush-tables function, 254
  - i switch, 247
  - importance of, 81
- inactive connections, 84–85**
- kill function, 255–257**
- Mac OS X, 73–74, 79**
- my.cnf file, 38**
- password command, 258–259**
- ping function, 258**
- processlist command, 41, 251–252, 295**
- r switch, 248**
- refresh function, 255**
- relative switch, 248**
- reload function, 255**
- root password, setting, 44–45, 62–63, 83–84**
- shutdown command, 38**
- shutdown function, 259**
- shutting down server, 86**
- sleep=N switch, 247**
- start-slave function, 259**
- status command, 247**
- status function, 250**
- stop-slave function, 259**
- variables command, 233, 241, 252–253, 281, 285–291**
- version function, 257**
- Windows environment, 56**
- mysql\_affected\_rows function, PHP, 465, 472–473**
- mysql.allow\_persistent configuration option, PHP, 464**
- mysql-bench-version.i386.rpm, 31**
- mysql\_change\_user function, PHP, 465**
- mysqlcheck**
- improving performance, 353
  - key distribution, analyzing, 353
  - my.cnf file, 38
  - repairing table, 354–356
  - syntax, 352–353
- mysql-client-version.i386.rpm, 31**
- mysql\_close function, PHP, 465, 468**
- mysql\_connect function, PHP, 465, 467**
- mysql\_create\_db function, PHP, 465**
- mysqld**
- command-line options, Linux, 38
  - my.cnf file, 38
  - Windows 2000, 57
  - Windows executable, 33
- mysql\_data\_seek function, PHP, 465**
- mysql\_db\_name function, PHP, 465**
- mysql\_db\_query function, PHP, 465**
- mysql.default\_host configuration option, PHP, 464**
- mysql.default\_password configuration option, PHP, 464**
- mysql.default\_port configuration option, PHP, 464**
- mysql.default\_socket configuration option, PHP, 464**
- mysql.default\_user configuration option, PHP, 464**

- `mysql-devel-version.i386.rpm`, 31  
`mysqld-max`, 33, 57  
`mysqld-max-nt`, 33, 57  
`mysqld-nt`, 33, 57  
`mysqld-opt`, 33, 57  
`mysql_drop_db` function, PHP, 465  
`mysqld_safe`, 38  
`mysqldump`  
  comments, 260  
  creating backup, 348–349  
  dropping tables, 264–265  
  dumping databases, 268–271  
  formatting output, 265–268  
  importance of, 26–27, 260  
  insert options, 262  
  locking tables, 264–265  
`my.cnf` file, 38  
  redirecting output, 261  
  restoring database, 368–369  
  specifying records with `where clause`, 262  
  suppressing data, 263–264  
  suppressing database creation, 271  
  suppressing DDL, 263  
  suppressing DML, 263–264  
  syntax, 260  
  tables with large columns, 260  
`mysql_errno` function, PHP, 465  
`mysql_error` function, PHP, 465  
`mysql_escape_string` function, PHP, 465, 480  
`mysql_fetch_array` function, PHP, 466  
`mysql_fetch_assoc` function, PHP, 466, 469–470  
`mysql_fetch_field` function, PHP, 466  
`mysql_fetch_lengths` function, PHP, 466  
`mysql_fetch_object` function, PHP, 466  
`mysql_fetch_row` function, PHP, 466, 470–471  
`mysql_field_flags` function, PHP, 466  
`mysql_field_len` function, PHP, 466  
`mysql_field_name` function, PHP, 466  
`mysql_field_seek` function, PHP, 466  
`mysql_field_table` function, PHP, 466  
`mysql_field_type` function, PHP, 466  
`mysql_free_result` function, PHP, 466, 485  
`mysql_get_client_info` function, PHP, 466  
`mysql_get_host_info` function, PHP, 466  
`mysql_get_proto_info` function, PHP, 466  
`mysql_get_server_info` function, PHP, 466  
**MySQLGUI**  
  Administration menu, 166–167  
  Client tab, 161–162  
  Connection button, 162–163  
  executing SQL statements, 163–166  
  importance of, 29, 160  
Options screen, 161  
startup, 160  
`mysqlhotcopy`  
  changing database ownership, 343  
  importance of, 260, 338  
  overwriting database with same name, 345–346  
  password, 340  
  restoring database, 366  
  sample output, 341–342  
  suffix, specifying, 347  
  syntax, 339  
  table name, specifying, 344–345  
`mysqlimport`, 38, 276  
`mysql_insert_id` function, PHP, 466  
`mysql_install_db` script, 47, 78–79  
`mysql_list_dbs` function, PHP, 466  
`mysql_list_fields` function, PHP, 466  
`mysql_list_tables` function, PHP, 466  
**MySQL-Max**, 12  
`mysql.max_links` configuration option, PHP, 464  
`mysql.max_persistent` configuration option,  
  PHP, 464  
`mysql_num_fields` function, PHP, 466  
`mysql_num_rows` function, PHP, 466, 472  
`mysql_pconnect` function, PHP, 466, 468  
`mysql_query` function, PHP, 466, 469, 472  
`mysql_query_db` function, PHP, 468–469  
`mysql_result` function, PHP, 466  
`mysql_safe`, 38  
`mysql_select_db` function, PHP, 466, 468–469  
`mysql.server` file, 35–36, 38  
`mysql-shared.i386.rpm`, 31  
`mysqlshow` statement, 38, 384–385  
**MySQL-specific extensions**, 13–16  
**MySQL-specific properties**, 16–17  
`mysql-src-version.i386.rpm`, 31, 32  
`mysql_tablename` function, PHP, 466  
`mysql_unbuffered_query` function, PHP, 466  
`mysql-version.i386.rpm`, 31  
`mysql-version.tar.gz`, 32  
`mysql-version-win-src.zip`, 32

**N**

- N switch  
`mysql`, 596  
**MySQL Command-Line Interface**, 150
- n switch  
`myisamcheck`, 361  
`mysql`, 596  
`mysqld`, 608  
`mysqldump`, 271, 599  
`mysqlhotcopy` program, 347

Name Service Switch (NSS)  
 configuration, 555  
 importance of, 551  
 installation, 555  
 nesting functions, **SELECT statement**, 201–202, 223–225  
 NetBSD 1.3–1.4, 23  
`net_buffer_length server variable`, 284  
`net_buffer_length variable`, **mysqldump**, 260  
`net_read_timeout server variable`, 284  
`net_retry_count server variable`, 284  
`netstat program`, 309  
`net_write_timeout server variable`, 284  
`-new switch`, **mysqld**, 608  
`newline (\n)`, 267, 421  
 news site, 6  
 1NF. *See First Normal Form*  
 2NF. *See Second Normal Form*  
 3NF. *See Third Normal Form*  
**nmap** scan, 308  
`-no-auto-rehash switch`  
`mysql`, 596  
**MySQL Command-Line Interface**, 147  
`-no-create option`, **MySQL source installation**, 49  
`-no-create-db switch`, **mysqldump**, 271, 599  
`-no-create-info switch`, **mysqldump**, 263, 599  
`-no-data switch`, **mysqldump**, 263, 598  
`-no-defaults switch`, **MySQL Command-Line Interface**, 144  
`-noindices switch`, **mysqlhotcopy program**, 348  
`-no-named-commands`, **mysql**, 596  
**non-interactive mode**, **MySQL Command-Line Interface**  
 creating tab-delimited output, 155–156  
 executing statements, 152  
 printing results vertically, 155  
 producing HTML output, 152–154  
 suppressing column names, 154  
**non-standard extensions**, **MySQL**, 13–16  
**non-transactional table types**, 232  
**Non\_unique field**, **SHOW INDEX statement**, 175  
`-no-pager switch`, **mysql**, 596  
**normalization**, 120–122  
`-no-symlinks switch`, **myisamcheck**, 361  
**NOT function**, 201  
**not regexp operator**, 15  
`-no-tee= switch`, **MySQL Command-Line Interface**, 149, 596  
**not-equal-to (!=) operator**, 626  
**NOW( ) function**, 201–203  
**NSS**. *See Name Service Switch*  
**nss-mysql.conf**, 555  
**nsswitch.conf**, 551, 555  
**null field attribute**, 15  
**NULL keyword**, **INSERT statement**, 92–93

**NULLIF operator**, 626  
**numerical functions**, **SELECT statement**, 210–212  
**NuSphere MySQL Advantage**  
 administration, 578–579, 587  
 compatibility, 572  
 configuration, 581–582  
 Gemini table type, 572, 579–581, 588–589  
`gemini_buffer_cache= option`, 581, 590  
`gemini_connection_limit= option`, 581, 590  
`-gemini-flush-log-at-commit option`, 581, 590  
`gemini_io_threads= option`, 581, 590  
`gemini_lock_table_size= option`, 581, 590  
`gemini_lock_wait_timeout= option`, 581, 590  
`-gemini-recovery= option`, 581, 590  
`-gemini-unbuffered-io option`, 581, 590  
 importance of, 571  
 installation, 573–578, 582–586  
 management tools, 572  
 Pro Advantage, installing, 582–586  
`-skip-gemini option`, 581, 590  
`-transaction-isolation= option`, 581, 590

## 0

`-0 switch`  
`myisamcheck`, 361  
`mysql`, 597  
`mysqld`, 608  
`mysqldump`, 599  
`-0 switch`  
`myisamcheck`, 361  
`mysql`, 597  
`mysqlcheck`, 353, 603  
`mysqld`, 608  
**obtaining MySQL software**, 30  
**ODBC**. *See Open Database Connectivity*  
`-oldincludedir=DIR option`, **MySQL source installation**, 49  
`-old-protocol switch`, **mysqld**, 608  
`-one-database switch`, **mysql**, 597  
`-1 switch`, **mysqlcheck**, 356, 603  
**online store customer database**, 5  
**ONLY\_FULL\_GROUP\_BY mode**, 609  
**Open Database Connectivity (ODBC)**  
 API, 25–26  
 changing options, 497–499  
 downloading software, 494  
 importance of, 493  
 installation, 494–497  
 Microsoft Access, importing MySQL data into, 499–503  
 Microsoft Word, importing MySQL data into, 504–510  
**Open tables value**, **status function**, 250

OpenBSD, 23  
**open\_files\_limit** server variable, 284  
**Opens value**, status function, 250  
 open-source support, 18  
 operating systems, used by MySQL, 23–24  
**–opt switch**, mysqldump, 264–265, 599  
 optimization  
   database, 386–387  
   query, 388–389  
   table, 386–387  
**–optimize switch**, mysqlcheck, 353, 603  
**OPTIMIZE TABLE** statement, 15, 180, 364, 387, 620  
**OR** function, 201  
**OR operator (| |)**, 14  
**Oracle**  
   compared to other database products, 19  
   Oracle Technology Network, 8–9  
   porting applications to MySQL, 27–28  
   Structured Query Language, implementation of, 8  
**oracledump** conversion tool, 27  
**ORDER BY( )** function, 225  
**order by** clause, SELECT statement, 95  
**OS/2 Warp**, 23

**P**

**-P switch**  
   mysql, 303, 597  
   mysqladmin, 601  
   mysqlcheck, 352, 604  
   mysqld, 608  
   mysqldump, 599  
   mysqlhotcopy, 339  
   mysqlimport, 605  
   mysqlshow, 600  
   mysqltest, 606  
**-p switch**  
   mysql, 597  
   MySQL Command-Line Interface, 138  
   mysqladmin, 258–259, 601  
   mysqlcheck, 352, 604  
   mysqldump, 599  
   mysqlhotcopy, 339  
   mysqlimport, 605  
   mysqlshow, 600  
   mysqlshow statement, 384  
   mysqltest, 606  
**PACK\_KEYS option**, CREATE TABLE statement, 234  
**padding fields**, 235  
**–pager=** option, MySQL Command-Line Interface, 147–148, 597  
**pager variable**, MySQL Command-Line Interface, 144

**password**  
   changing, 258–259, 331–333  
   root, 334–335  
   security, 325–326  
**–password**  
   mysqlcheck switch, 604  
   mysqlimport switch, 605  
**PASSWORD( )** function, 15, 223, 326, 643  
**password [new password]**, mysqladmin, 602  
**–password switch**  
   MySQL Command-Line Interface, 138–139  
   mysqlcheck, 352  
   mysqldump, 599  
   mysqlhotcopy, 340  
**–password=** switch  
   mysql, 597  
   mysqladmin, 601  
   mysqlshow, 600  
   mysqltest, 606  
**password variable**, MySQL Command-Line Interface, 144  
**pattern of attack**, 6  
**payment information**, tracking with customer database, 5  
**percent (%)**, 13, 100–101, 180, 199, 211  
**PERIOD\_ADD( )** function, 15, 203, 206  
**PERIOD\_DIFF( )** function, 15, 203, 206  
**Perl Database Interface (DBI)**  
   API, 12, 18, 25  
   bind\_param( ) method, 415–416  
   connect( ) method, 404–405  
   connecting to database, 404–409  
   database driver, 393  
   database handle, 403  
   disconnect( ) method, 409  
   disconnecting from database, 409  
   do( ) method, 415–416  
   driver handle, 403  
   dump\_results( ) method, 420–423  
   err( ) method, 413–414  
   error handling, 410–413  
   error status methods, 413–414  
   errstr( ) method, 413–414  
   execute( ) method, 415–416  
   fetchall\_arrayref function, 417  
   fetchrow( ) function, 417  
   fetchrow\_array( ) function, 417–418  
   fetchrow\_arrayref( ) function, 417–419  
   fetchrow\_hashref( ) function, 417–419  
   finish( ) method, 423

*Continued*

- Perl Database Interface (DBI) (*continued*)  
installing, 394–397  
object-oriented programming, 402–403  
`prepare( )` method, 415–416  
`quote( )` method, 423–424  
statement handle, 404  
`perldoc` command, 338  
permission  
    granting to user, 97–98  
    viewing with `SHOW FULL COLUMNS` command, 174  
writing into directory, 266  
pervasive use of databases, 3  
PHP  
    API, 12, 18, 25  
    basic Web page example, 459–461  
    configuration settings, 463–465  
    connecting to MySQL, 467–468  
    cookie example, 482–491  
    functions, 465–467  
    inserting data, 472–473  
    installation, 449–451  
    Linux system, 452–459  
    obtaining software, 451–452  
    PHPMyAdmin, 29  
    phpMyAdmin, 168–169  
    selecting data, 468–472  
    user manager application example, 474–481  
    Web form example, 462–463  
.php file extension, 456  
`phpinfo( )` function, 457  
`.php.ini`, 459, 463  
physical design, database life cycle  
    importance of, 109, 124–125  
    indexing, 125–128  
`PI( )` function, 210–211  
pico text editor, 70  
`ping` function, `mysqladmin`, 258, 602  
`PIPES_AS_CONCAT` mode, 609  
Pluggable Authentication Module (PAM)  
    importance of, 550–551  
    installation, 551  
    obtaining software, 551–552  
    syntax, 552–553  
    testing, 553–555  
plus sign (+), 205, 211  
port scan, 308–309  
`-port=` switch  
    `mysql`, 303  
    `mysqladmin`, 601  
    `mysqlcheck`, 352, 604  
    `mysqld`, 608  
    `mysqldump`, 599  
    `mysqlhotcopy`, 339  
    `mysqlimport`, 605  
    `mysqlshow`, 600  
port variable, MySQL Command-Line Interface, 144  
`-portmysql`, 597  
`POSITION( )` string functions, 213, 219–220  
`possible_keys` column, EXPLAIN command, 126, 387  
`-post=` switch, `mysqltest`, 606  
PostgreSQL  
    characteristics of, 10–11  
    compared to other database products, 19  
    Structure Query Language, implementation of, 8  
pound sign (#), 456  
`-#` switch  
    `mysqlcheck`, 352, 603  
    `mysqlimport`, 604  
`POW( )` function, 210  
`-prefix` option, MySQL source installation, 49  
`prepare( )` method, Perl Database Interface, 415–416  
primary key, 92, 119, 126–128  
`PRIMARY KEY` index, 386  
`primary_keys` column, EXPLAIN command, 126  
`-print-defaults` switch, MySQL Command-Line Interface, 141–143  
`PrintError` attribute, 410–412  
priority e-mail support, 22  
priority login support, 23  
problems, troubleshooting  
    extended-status function, `mysqladmin`, 380–382  
    `FLUSH HOSTS` statement, MySQL Command-Line Interface, 382  
    `FLUSH LOGS` statement, MySQL Command-Line Interface, 382  
    `FLUSH PRIVILEGES` statement, MySQL Command-Line Interface, 382  
    `FLUSH STATUS` statement, MySQL Command-Line Interface, 382  
    `FLUSH TABLES` statement, MySQL Command-Line Interface, 382–383  
    `flush-hosts` function, `mysqladmin`, 379  
    `flush-logs` function, `mysqladmin`, 378  
    `flush-privileges` function, `mysqladmin`, 379  
    `flush-status` function, `mysqladmin`, 379  
    `flush-tables` function, `mysqladmin`, 379  
    `flush-threads` function, `mysqladmin`, 379  
    logfiles, 374–377  
    `mysqlshow` statement, 384–385  
    `ping` function, `mysqladmin`, 380  
    `processlist` function, `mysqladmin`, 380  
    `refresh` function, `mysqladmin`, 379  
    `reload` function, `mysqladmin`, 379  
    server performance, 373

- SHOW PROCESSLIST statement, MySQL Command-Line Interface, 382  
 SHOW STATUS statement, MySQL Command-Line Interface, 382  
 SHOW VARIABLES statement, MySQL Command-Line Interface, 382  
 status function, mysqladmin, 380  
 variables function, mysqladmin, 380  
**PROCESS privilege**, 324  
**processlist**, mysqladmin, 602  
 product search engine, e-commerce Web site example, 441–448  
 product table, 89  
 –program-prefix=PREFIX option, MySQL source installation, 49  
 –program-suffix=SUFFIX option, MySQL source installation, 49  
 PURGE MASTER LOGS TO option, MySQL master server replication, 528  
 Python, 12, 25
- Q**
- q switch
    - myisamcheck, 361, 364
    - mysql, 597
    - mysqlcheck, 354, 604
    - mysqldump, 599
    - mysqlhotcopy, 339
    - mysqltest, 606
  - Q switch, mysqldump, 599
  - QUARTER( ) function, 203, 204
  - query log, 374
  - query optimization, 388–389
  - query\_buffer\_size server variable, 284
  - question mark (?), 415
  - ? switch
    - mysql, 596
    - mysqladmin, 601
    - mysqlcheck, 352, 603
    - mysqld, 607
    - mysqlimport, 604
    - mysqltest, 606
  - Questions value, status function, 250
  - QUICK option, myisam-recover variable, 238
  - quick switch
    - myisamcheck, 361, 364
    - mysql, 597
    - mysqlcheck, 354, 604
    - mysqldump, 265, 599
  - quiet switch
    - MySQL source installation, 49
    - mysqlhotcopy, 339
    - mysqltest, 606
- quit command, MySQL Command-Line Interface, 146  
 quote( ) method, Perl Database Interface, 423–424  
 –quote-names switch, mysqldump, 266, 599
- R**
- r switch
    - myisamcheck, 361
    - mysql, 597
    - mysqladmin, 601
    - mysqlcheck, 354, 604
    - mysqldump, 261, 599
    - mysqlimport, 276, 605
    - mysqltest, 606
  - R switch, mysqltest, 606
  - RAID.** See Redundant Array of Inexpensive Disks
  - RaiseError attribute, 410–412
  - rate group, telephone company customer database, 4
  - raw switch, mysql, 597
  - rc.d directory, 35
  - rc.local script, 36
  - RDBMS.** See Relational Database Management System
  - read\_buffer\_size variable, 362
  - README.configure, 459
  - read-only switch, myisamcheck, 357
  - read-write access (rw), 468
  - REAL\_AS\_FLOAT mode, 609
  - record switch, mysqltest, 606
  - record\_buffer server variable, 284
  - recover switch, myisamcheck, 361
  - Red Hat Linux system, 35
  - Red Hat Package Manager (RPM), 31
  - Redundant Array of Inexpensive Disks (RAID), 32
  - REFERENCES privilege, 324
  - referential integrity, 120
  - refresh function, mysqladmin, 255, 602
  - regexp operator, 15
  - REGEXP string functions, 213, 219
  - regexp switch, mysqlhotcopy program, 347
  - Relational Database Management System (RDBMS), 21, 510
  - relationship, logical design phase, 112–113
  - relative switch, mysqladmin, 601
  - RELEASE\_LOCK( ) system function, 643
  - reload function, mysqladmin, 255, 602
  - RELOAD privilege, 324
  - Remote Authentication Dial-In Service (RADIUS)
    - importance, 561
    - Radiator, 561–562
  - rename statement extension, 16
  - rename table statement, 16
  - RENAME variable, ALTER TABLE statement, 99
  - repair switch, mysqlcheck, 354, 604
  - REPAIR TABLE statement, 365, 622

**repair table** statement, 16  
**repairing table**, 354–356, 361–364  
**REPLACE( )** string functions, 213, 220–221  
**REPLACE keyword**, LOAD DATA INFILE statement, 274–275  
**replace statement**, 16  
**—replace switch**, mysqlimport, 276, 605  
**replicate-do-db option**, MySQL slave server replication, 529  
**replicate-do-table option**, MySQL slave server replication, 529  
**replicate-ignore-db option**, MySQL slave server replication, 529  
**replicate-ignore-table option**, MySQL slave server replication, 529  
**replicate-rewrite-db option**, MySQL slave server replication, 529  
**replicate-wild-do-table option**, MySQL slave server replication, 529  
**replicate-wild-ignore-table option**, MySQL slave server replication, 529  
**replication**  
  binary log, 526  
  configuration, 530–533  
  errors, 544  
  importance of, 525  
  kickstarting, 544–546  
  master server, 526  
  monitoring through Web, 540–543  
  monitoring with Perl, 537–540  
  multiple master replication, 534–537  
  multiple slave replication, 533  
  MySQL version, 527  
  pass-through slave replication, 537  
  planning, 525  
  security, 527  
  settings, 527–529  
  slave server, 526  
  stability of, 18  
**report-host option**, MySQL slave server replication, 529  
**report-port option**, MySQL slave server replication, 529  
**requirements analysis**, database life cycle, 108  
**RESET MASTER option**, MySQL master server replication, 528, 620  
**RESET SLAVE option**, MySQL slave server replication, 529, 544, 620  
**—resetmaster switch**, mysqlhotcopy program, 348  
**—resetslave switch**, mysqlhotcopy program, 348  
**RESTORE TABLE** statement, 366–367, 623  
**—result-file=switch**  
  mysqldump, 261, 599  
  mysqltest, 606  
**ResultSet object**, Java Database Connectivity, 515, 518  
**return( ) function**, PHP, 487  
**REVERSE( )** string functions, 213, 221  
**REVOKE statement**, 98, 255, 330–331, 624  
**RLIKE( ) function**, 219  
**ROLLBACK feature**  
  Berkeley table, 245  
  InnoDB table, 242  
**root server administrator account**  
  Linux, 44–45  
  Mac OS X, 73–74  
  resetting password, 334–335  
  Windows 2000, 54, 62–63  
**ROUND( ) function**, 210, 212  
**row-level locking**, 242  
**Rows value**, SHOW TABLE STATUS statement, 176  
**RPAD( ) string functions**, 213–214  
**RPM**. *See Red Hat Package Manager*  
  .rpm extension, 31  
  rpm -i command, 47  
**RPM installation**, 47–48  
**R-Tree index type**, 19  
**RTRIM( ) string functions**, 213–214  
**run-all-tests application**, 294  
**rw**. *See read-write access*

## S

**-S switch**  
  mysql, 304, 597  
  mysqladmin, 601  
  mysqlcheck, 352, 604  
  mysqld, 609  
  mysqldump, 599  
  mysqlhotcopy, 339  
  mysqlimport, 605  
  mysqlshow, 600  
  mysqltest, 606  
**-s switch**  
  myisamchk, 357  
  mysql, 597  
**MySQL Command-Line Interface**, 147  
  mysqladmin, 601  
  mysqlcheck, 604  
  mysqlimport, 605  
**—safe-mode**, mysqld, 609  
**safe\_mysqld**, 38  
**—safe-recover switch**, myisamcheck, 361

–safe-show-database switch, mysqld, 609  
 –safe-updates switch, mysql, 597  
 –safe-user-create switch, mysqld, 609  
 –bindir=DIR option, MySQL source installation, 49  
 SGI Irix, 12  
 SCO OpenServer, 12, 24  
 SECOND() function, 203, 205  
 Second Normal Form (2NF), 121  
 SEC\_TO\_TIME() function, 203, 207  
 Secure Socket Layer (SSL), 312  
 security  
     applying patches, 308  
     changing default MySQL port, 313–314  
     disabling DNS, 316  
     disabling unused programs, 308–310  
     dynamically monitoring Web pages, 316–322  
     firewall, 312  
     host server, 305–306  
     keeping up to date, 306–307  
     monitoring data, 315–316  
     non-privileged user, 311  
     passwords, 325–326  
     personal information, 5  
     Secure Socket Layer, 312  
     Security Focus Web site, 307  
     socket-based connection, 313  
 SELECT INTO OUTFILE statement, 271–273  
 SELECT privilege, 324  
 SELECT statement. *See also* date and time functions;  
     string functions  
     aliasing, 198  
     AS keyword, 198  
     from clause, 17  
     group by clause, 95, 227  
     grouping functions, 225  
     in clause, 20  
     join, 202  
     LIKE keyword, 199  
     limit clause, 95  
     MERGE table type, 240  
     MySQL updates, 310–311  
     mysql\_num\_rows function, PHP, 472  
     nesting functions, 201–202, 223–225  
     numerical functions, 210–212  
     order by clause, 95  
     syntax, 94, 197–198, 615–617  
     union, 202  
     where clause, 94–95, 199–200  
     wildcard, 199–200  
 semicolon (:), 88, 146  
 Sendmail  
     importing e-mail entries, 564–566  
     virtual e-mail database, 563  
     virtual services interface, 569  
 virtual users table, 562–563  
 Web interface, 566–568  
 Seq\_in\_index field, SHOW INDEX statement, 175  
 SERIALIZER mode, 609  
 server administrator account, Linux, 44–45  
 server status, checking with mysqladmin, 83–84  
 server variables  
     deciding which to change, 291–292  
     default settings, 285–290  
     importance of, 281–282  
     list of, 282–285  
 server-id option  
     MySQL master server replication, 528  
     MySQL slave server replication, 529  
 Services applet, Windows 2000, 56  
 set field type, 16  
 set operator (:=), 14  
 set option statement, 16  
 SET PASSWORD statement, 331–333  
 SET SQL\_LOG\_BIN option, MySQL master server  
     replication, 528  
 SET type, 651  
 setcookie( ) function, PHP, 486  
 setup files, 64  
 –set-variable switch  
     myisamcheck, 361  
     mysql, 597  
     mysqld, 608  
     mysqldump, 599  
 SGI Irix 6.x, 24  
 SHARE directory, 28  
 –sharedstatedir=DIR option, MySQL source  
     installation, 49  
 sharing customer database information with other  
     company, 3  
 SHOW BINLOG EVENTS option, MySQL master server  
     replication, 528  
 SHOW COLUMNS statement, 173  
 SHOW CREATE TABLE statement, 178–179  
 SHOW DATABASES statement, 172  
 SHOW FULL COLUMNS statement, 174  
 SHOW GRANTS statement, 177–178, 330  
 SHOW INDEX statement, 175  
 SHOW MASTER LOGS statement, 179, 528  
 SHOW MASTER STATUS statement, 179, 528  
 SHOW NEW MASTER statement, 529  
 SHOW OPEN TABLES statement, 173  
 SHOW PROCESSLIST statement, 177, 295  
 SHOW SLAVE STATUS statement, 179, 529, 535  
 SHOW statement  
     extension, 16  
     syntax, 100–102, 171–172, 620–621  
 SHOW STATUS statement, 177  
 SHOW TABLE STATUS statement, 176–177, 358–359

**SHOW TABLES** statement, 173, 617  
**SHOW VARIABLE** statement, 177, 281, 285–291  
**shutdown**, MySQL server, 36–38  
**shutdown** function, mysqladmin, 86, 259, 602  
**SHUTDOWN** privilege, 324, 335  
**SIGN( )** function, 210  
**–silent switch**  
  mysql, 597  
  MySQL Command-Line Interface, 147  
**MySQL source installation**, 49  
  mysqladmin, 601  
  mysqlcheck, 604  
  mysqlimport, 605  
  mysqltest, 606  
**SIN( )** trigonometric function, 643  
**–skip-bdb** parameter, 245  
**–skip-bdb switch**, mysqld, 610  
**–skip-column-names switch**, MySQL Command-Line Interface, 144, 150, 596  
**–skip-concurrent-insert switch**, mysqld, 609  
**–skip-delay-key-write switch**, mysqld, 609  
**–skip-gemini option**, NuSphere MySQL Advantage, 581, 590  
**–skip-grant-tables switch**, MySQL Command-Line Interface, 335  
**–skip-grant-tables switch**, mysqld, 609  
**–skip-host-cache switch**, mysqld, 609  
**–skip-line-numbers switch**, mysql, 596  
**skip\_locking** server variable, 284  
**–skip-locking switch**, mysqld, 609  
**–skip-name-resolve switch**, mysqld, 316, 609  
**skip-networking option**, my.cnf file, 41  
**–skip-networking switch**, mysqld, 609  
**–skip-new switch**, mysqld, 609  
**–skip-show-database switch**, mysqld, 609  
**skip-slave-start option**, MySQL slave server replication, 529  
**–skip-stack-trace switch**, mysqld, 609  
**–skip-thread-priority switch**, mysqld, 609  
**Slackware Linux system**, 36  
**Slashdot**, 5  
**SLAVE START option**, MySQL slave server replication, 529  
**SLAVE STOP option**, MySQL slave server replication, 529, 533  
**slave-read-timeout option**, MySQL slave server replication, 529  
**slave-skip-errors option**, MySQL slave server replication, 529  
**–sleep= switch**  
  mysqladmin, 601  
  mysqltest, 606  
**Slow Queries value**, status function, 250  
**slow query log**, 374  
**slow\_launch\_time** server variable, 285  
**SMALLINT type**, 645  
**SMP**. *See* Symmetric Multi-Processing  
**social security number**, basic customer database information, 4  
**socket**, 41  
**–socket= switch**  
  mysql, 304  
  mysql, 597  
  mysqladmin, 601  
  mysqlcheck, 352, 604  
  mysqld, 609  
  mysqldump, 599  
  mysqlhotcopy, 339  
  mysqlimport, 605  
  mysqlshow, 600  
  mysqltest, 606  
**socket variable**, MySQL Command-Line Interface, 144  
**Solaris**, 12, 24  
**sort\_buffer** server variable, 285  
**sort\_buffer\_size** variable, 362  
**sort\_key\_blocks** variable, 362  
**–sort-recover switch**, myisamcheck, 361  
**source code**, downloading, 12  
**source code installation**, Linux environment  
  compiling, 51–52  
  configure options, 49  
  directory and file options, 49  
  features and add-on options, 50–51  
  reasons to use, 48  
**source code installation**, Mac OS X, 75–76  
**source-code version**, MySQL, 32  
**SPACE( )** string functions, 213, 216  
**SPARC**, 12  
**SQL92**, 7  
**sql-bench** directory, 291, 294  
**SQLException class**, Java Database Connectivity, 517  
**–sql-mode= switch**, mysqld, 609  
**sql\_small\_result** statement extension, 16  
**–srcdir=DIR option**, MySQL source installation, 49  
**ssh** connection, 309  
**stability**, MySQL, 18–19  
**stable version**, 30  
**standard table types**, 18  
**start-slave** function, mysqladmin, 259, 602  
**startup**, MySQL server  
  Linux environment, 35–36, 44  
  MacOS X, 69–92  
  Windows 2000, 56–58  
**startup parameters file**, Mac OS X, 72

- startup script file, Mac OS X, 70–71  
 StartupItems folder, Mac OS X, 70  
 state, basic customer database information, 4  
 State column, processlist function, 252  
 statement handle, Perl Database Interface, 404  
 statement operator, 627  
 static page, 428  
 status function, mysqladmin, 250  
~~-status switch~~  
     mysqladmin, 602  
     mysqlshow, 600  
 std() statement extension, 16  
 STDOUT, 421  
 \$sth variable, 415  
 S/390, 12  
 stop-slave function, mysqladmin, 259, 602  
 stored procedure, 17, 20  
 straight join statement extension, 16  
 STRCMP( ) string functions, 213, 217  
 string comparison, 17  
 string functions  
     ASCII( ), 213  
     CHAR( ), 213  
     CONCAT( ), 213, 216  
     CONCAT\_WS( ), 213, 216  
     FIELD( ), 213, 219–220  
     LCASE( ), 213, 215  
     LENGTH( ), 213, 221  
     LIKE, 213, 218  
     LOAD\_FILE( ), 213, 222  
     LPAD( ), 213–214  
     LTRIM( ), 213–214  
     POSITION( ), 213, 219–220  
     REGEXP, 213, 219  
     REPLACE( ), 213, 220–221  
     REVERSE( ), 213, 221  
     RPAD( ), 213–214  
     RTRIM( ), 213–214  
     SPACE( ), 213, 216  
     STRCMP( ), 213, 217  
     TRIM( ), 213–214  
     UCASE( ), 213, 215  
 string operator, 628  
 Structured Query Language (SQL)  
     definition, 7  
     Oracle, 8–9  
     standard, 7  
 su command, 79  
 SUBDATE( ) function, 205  
 Sub\_part field, SHOW INDEX statement, 175  
 subselect, 17, 20  
 sudo command, 77–78  
~~-suffix switch, mysqlhotcopy program, 347~~  
~~SUM( ) function, 225~~  
~~Super-smack, 292~~  
~~support, MySQL, 22–23~~  
~~support-files directory, 38, 292, 296~~  
~~symbolic link, creating, 46~~  
~~Symmetric Multi-Processing (SMP), 24~~  
~~-sysconfdir=DIR option, MySQL source installation, 49~~  
~~system function, 641–643~~

**T**

- ~~-T switch~~  
     myisamcheck, 354  
     mysql, 597  
     mysqldump, 266, 599  
     mysqltest, 606  
~~-t switch~~  
     myisamcheck, 361  
     mysql, 597  
     mysqld, 609  
     mysqldump, 263, 599  
     mysqltest, 606  
 tab (\t), 267  
~~-tab= switch, mysqldump, 266, 599~~  
 table  
     altering, 98–100, 185–190  
     creating, 89–92, 183–185  
     defragmenting, 387  
     deleting, 181–182  
     describing, 100–101  
     granting permission to access, 97–98  
     inserting data into, 92–93  
     naming, 16  
     optimization, 386–387  
     repairing, 354–356  
     selecting data from, 93–96  
     size, 18  
     updating data, 96–97  
~~-table switch, mysql, 597~~  
 table types  
     BerkeleyDB, 245–246  
     determining types supported by server, 252  
     HEAP, 241–242  
     InnoDB, 242–245  
     ISAM, 240–241  
     MERGE, 240  
     MyISAM, 234–240  
     non-transactional, 232  
     overview, 90–91, 231–232  
     transactional, 232–233  
 table\_cache server variable, 285

**-tables switch**  
*mysqlcheck*, 356, 604  
*mysqldump*, 271, 599  
**TAN( )** trigonometric function, 643  
**tar command**  
 binary installation, Linux, 45  
 binary installation, Mac OS X, 77  
 PHP installation, 452  
 source code installation, Linux, 48  
**TB.** See **terabyte**  
**Tcl**, 12, 25  
**TCO.** See **total cost of ownership**  
**-tee= switch**  
*mysql*, 597  
 MySQL Command-Line Interface, 144, 149  
**telemarketer**, 5  
 telephone company customer database, 4  
 telephone support, 23  
**temporary keyword**, **CREATE TABLE statement**, 90  
**temporary statement extension**, 16  
**-temp-pool switch**, *mysqld*, 610  
**terabyte (TB)**, 18  
 testing MySQL, 79  
 test-select application, 294  
**TEXT field type**, 16, 241  
**TEXT type**, 650  
 Third Normal Form (3NF), 121  
**thread\_cache\_size server variable**, 285  
 Threads column, status function, 250  
**thread\_stack server variable**, 285  
**time( ) function**, PHP, 485  
 Time column, processlist function, 252  
**TIME type**, 648–449  
**timeout**, connection, 253  
**timestamp**, 487  
**TIMESTAMP type**, 648  
**TIME\_TO\_SEC( ) function**, 203, 207  
**TINYBLOB type**, 648–449  
**TINYINT type**, 645  
**-tmpdir= switch**  
*myisamcheck*, 361  
*mysqld*, 609  
*mysqlhotcopy program*, 348  
*mysqltest*, 606  
**tmp\_table\_size server variable**, 285  
**TO\_DAYS( ) function**, 203, 207  
**to\_days( ) function**, 16  
**total cost of ownership (TCO)**, 9, 549  
 tracking visitor patterns, online store, 5  
**transactional table types**, 17–18, 232–233  
**-transaction-isolation= option**, NuSphere MySQL  
 Advantage, 581, 590  
**-transaction-isolation switch**, *mysqld*, 610  
**transaction-safe table**, 12  
**trigger**, 17, 20  
**trigonometric math function**, 643  
**TRIM( ) string functions**, 16, 213–214  
**troubleshooting**  
*extended-status function*, *mysqladmin*, 380–382  
*FLUSH HOSTS statement*, MySQL Command-Line Interface, 382  
*FLUSH LOGS statement*, MySQL Command-Line Interface, 382  
*FLUSH PRIVILEGES statement*, MySQL Command-Line Interface, 382  
*FLUSH STATUS statement*, MySQL Command-Line Interface, 382  
*FLUSH TABLES statement*, MySQL Command-Line Interface, 382–383  
*flush-hosts function*, *mysqladmin*, 379  
*flush-logs function*, *mysqladmin*, 378  
*flush-privileges function*, *mysqladmin*, 379  
*flush-status function*, *mysqladmin*, 379  
*flush-tables function*, *mysqladmin*, 379  
*flush-threads function*, *mysqladmin*, 379  
*logfiles*, 374–377  
*mysqlshow statement*, 384–385  
*ping function*, *mysqladmin*, 380  
*processlist function*, *mysqladmin*, 380  
*refresh function*, *mysqladmin*, 379  
*reload function*, *mysqladmin*, 379  
 server performance, 373  
*SHOW PROCESSLIST statement*, MySQL Command-Line Interface, 382  
*SHOW STATUS statement*, MySQL Command-Line Interface, 382  
*SHOW VARIABLES statement*, MySQL Command-Line Interface, 382  
*status function*, *mysqladmin*, 380  
*variables function*, *mysqladmin*, 380  
**Tru64 Unix**, 24  
**Typical installation type**, 65

**U**

**-U switch**  
*myisamcheck*, 354  
*mysql*, 597  
**-u switch**  
*myisamcheck*, 361  
*mysql*, 597  
 MySQL Command Line Interface, 137  
*mysqladmin*, 258–259, 601  
*mysqlcheck*, 352, 604  
*mysqld*, 610  
*mysqlhotcopy*, 339  
*mysqlimport*, 605

**mysqlshow**, 600  
**mysqlshow** statement, 384  
**mysqltest**, 606  
**UCASE( )** string functions, 213, 215  
**unauthorized use**, 305  
**-unbuffered**, mysql, 596  
**uncompressing setup files**, 64  
**undef**, 406  
**underscore ( \_ )**, 180, 200  
**UNION command**  
  **SELECT statement**, 202  
  **support**, 17  
  **syntax**, 617  
**uniqueness constraint**, logical design phase, 119–120  
**Unix socket**, 41  
**UNIX\_TIMESTAMP( ) function**, 203, 207  
**UNLOCK TABLES statement**, MySQL Command-Line Interface, 383  
**-unpack switch**, myisamcheck, 361  
**unsigned field attribute**, 16  
**update logs**, 374  
**UPDATE privilege**, 324  
**UPDATE statement**  
  **changing password**, 331–333  
  **example**, 228–229  
  **MERGE table type**, 240  
  **syntax**, 96–97, 228, 617–618  
**-update-state switch**, myisamcheck, 357  
**Update\_time value**, SHOW TABLE STATUS statement, 176  
**Uptime parameter**, status function, 250  
**USE statement**, 179, 269  
**user**  
  **adding**, 327  
  **deleting**, 330  
  **granting privileges**, 327–330  
  **managing**, 327  
  **revoking privileges**, 330–331  
**USER( ) system function**, 643  
**User column**, processlist function, 251  
**user manager application example**, 424–428  
**-user= switch**  
  mysql, 597  
  mysqldadmin, 601  
  mysqlcheck, 352, 604  
  mysqlhotcopy, 339  
  mysqlexport, 605  
  mysqlshow, 600  
  mysqltest, 606  
**-user switch**, mysqld, 610  
**user-preference database**, 6

**V**

**-V switch**  
  mysql, 597  
  mysqldadmin, 602  
  mysqlcheck, 352, 604  
  mysqlexport, 605  
  mysqlshow, 600  
  mysqltest, 606  
**-v switch**  
  myisamchk, 357  
  mysql, 597  
  mysqldadmin, 602  
  mysqlcheck, 604  
  mysqld, 610  
  mysqlexport, 605  
  mysqlshow, 600  
  mysqltest, 606  
**VALUE keyword**, INSERT statement, 92–93  
**VARCHAR column type**, 124, 235  
**VARCHAR type**, 650  
**variable-length column type**, 235  
**variables**, mysqldadmin, 602  
**-verbose switch**  
  mysql, 597  
  mysqldadmin, 602  
  mysqlcheck, 604  
  mysqlexport, 605  
  mysqlshow, 600  
  mysqltest, 606  
**VERSION( ) function**, 223, 257  
**VERSION( ) system function**, 643  
**version numbering scheme**, MySQL, 30  
**-version switch**  
  mysql, 597  
  mysqldadmin, 602  
  mysqlcheck, 352, 604  
  mysqld, 610  
  mysqlexport, 605  
  mysqlshow, 600  
  mysqltest, 606  
**versions**, MySQL, 11–12  
**-vertical switch**  
  mysql, 596  
  MySQL Command-Line Interface, 148  
  mysqldadmin, 601  
**vi editor**, 126  
**view**, 17, 19  
**<Virtual> directive**, 458  
**Visual C++**, 53  
**volatile-memory table type**, 235, 241

**W**

-W, switch `mysqld`, 610  
 -w switch  
   mysql, 597  
   mysqladmin, 602  
   mysqldump, 262, 600  
 -wait switch  
   myisamchk, 357  
   mysql, 597  
   mysqladmin=, 602  
 wait\_timeout server variable, 285  
 -warnings, `mysqld`, 610  
`wasNULL( )` method, Java Database Connectivity, 517  
 Web applications, speed of, 18  
 Web page  
   Common Gateway Interface program, 428  
   creating with scripts, 319–322  
   input form example, 431–434  
   static Web page example, 429–431  
 WEEK( ) function, 203–204  
 WEEKDAY( ) function, 16, 203–204  
 where clause, SELECT statement, 94–95, 199–200  
 –where switch, mysqldump, 262, 600  
 wildcard  
   asterisk (\*), 95  
   percent (%), 100–101, 180, 199  
   underscore (\_), 180, 200  
 Windows 2000  
   root server administrator account, 54, 62–63  
   setting command-line options, 58–62  
   startup, MySQL server, 56–58  
   WinMySQLAdmin tool, 53–56  
 Windows 95/98/NT/2000  
   availability, 24  
   executables, 32–33  
   MySQL versions, 11  
 winmysqladmin, 54  
 WinMySQLAdmin tool, 33  
 WINNT directory, 33  
 –with-berkeley-db[=DIR] option, MySQL source installation, 50  
 –with-berkeley-db-includes=DIR option, MySQL source installation, 50

–with-berkeley-db-libs=DIR option, MySQL source installation, 50  
 –with-charset=charset\_name option, MySQL source installation, 28, 50  
 –with-extra-Charsets=charset option, MySQL source installation, 28, 50  
 –with-gemini[=DIR] option, MySQL source installation, 50  
 –with-innodb option, MySQL source installation, 50  
 –with-low-memory option, MySQL source installation, 50  
 –with-mysqld-user=username option, MySQL source installation, 50  
 –without-bench option, MySQL source installation, 51  
 –without-debug option, MySQL source installation, 50  
 –without-docs option, MySQL source installation, 51  
 –without-server option, MySQL source installation, 50  
 –with-raid option, MySQL source installation, 50  
 –with-tcp-port=port-number option, MySQL source installation, 50  
 –with-unix-socket-path=socket option, MySQL source installation, 50  
 wrapper script, 38  
 write\_buffer\_size variable, 362

**X**

–x-includes=DIR option, MySQL source installation, 51  
 –x-libraries=DIR option, MySQL source installation, 51

**Y**

YEAR( ) function, 203–204  
 YEAR type, 648–449

**Z**

zerofill field attribute, 16

[More information available at <http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/gpl.html>]

# GNU General Public License

Version 2, June 1991

Copyright © 1989, 1991 Free Software Foundation, Inc.

59 Temple Place - Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307, USA

Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.

## Preamble

The licenses for most software are designed to take away your freedom to share and change it. By contrast, the GNU General Public License is intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change free software—to make sure the software is free for all its users. This General Public License applies to most of the Free Software Foundation's software and to any other program whose authors commit to using it. (Some other Free Software Foundation software is covered by the GNU Library General Public License instead.) You can apply it to your programs, too.

When we speak of free software, we are referring to freedom, not price. Our General Public Licenses are designed to make sure that you have the freedom to distribute copies of free software (and charge for this service if you wish), that you receive source code or can get it if you want it, that you can change the software or use pieces of it in new free programs; and that you know you can do these things.

To protect your rights, we need to make restrictions that forbid anyone to deny you these rights or to ask you to surrender the rights. These restrictions translate to certain responsibilities for you if you distribute copies of the software, or if you modify it.

For example, if you distribute copies of such a program, whether gratis or for a fee, you must give the recipients all the rights that you have. You must make sure that they, too, receive or can get the source code. And you must show them these terms so they know their rights.

We protect your rights with two steps: (1) copyright the software, and (2) offer you this license which gives you legal permission to copy, distribute and/or modify the software.

Also, for each author's protection and ours, we want to make certain that everyone understands that there is no warranty for this free software. If the software is modified by someone else and passed on, we want its recipients to know that what they have is not the original, so that any problems introduced by others will not reflect on the original authors' reputations.

Finally, any free program is threatened constantly by software patents. We wish to avoid the danger that redistributors of a free program will individually obtain patent licenses, in effect making the program proprietary. To prevent this, we have made it clear that any patent must be licensed for everyone's free use or not licensed at all.

The precise terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification follow.

## TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR COPYING, DISTRIBUTION AND MODIFICATION

- 0.** This License applies to any program or other work which contains a notice placed by the copyright holder saying it may be distributed under the terms of this General Public License. The "Program", below, refers to any such program or work, and a "work based on the Program" means either the Program or any derivative work under copyright law: that is to say, a work containing the Program or a portion of it, either verbatim or with modifications and/or translated into another language. (Hereinafter, translation is included without limitation in the term "modification".) Each licensee is addressed as "you".

Activities other than copying, distribution and modification are not covered by this License; they are outside its scope. The act of running the Program is not restricted, and the output from the Program is covered only if its contents constitute a work based on the Program (independent of having been made by running the Program). Whether that is true depends on what the Program does.

- 1.** You may copy and distribute verbatim copies of the Program's source code as you receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice and disclaimer of warranty; keep intact all the notices that refer to this License and to the absence of any warranty; and give any other recipients of the Program a copy of this License along with the Program.

You may charge a fee for the physical act of transferring a copy, and you may at your option offer warranty protection in exchange for a fee.

- 2.** You may modify your copy or copies of the Program or any portion of it, thus forming a work based on the Program, and copy and distribute such modifications or work under the terms of Section 1 above, provided that you also meet all of these conditions:

- a)** You must cause the modified files to carry prominent notices stating that you changed the files and the date of any change.
- b)** You must cause any work that you distribute or publish, that in whole or in part contains or is derived from the Program or any part thereof, to be licensed as a whole at no charge to all third parties under the terms of this License.
- c)** If the modified program normally reads commands interactively when run, you must cause it, when started running for such interactive use in the most ordinary way, to print or display an announcement including an appropriate copyright notice and a notice that there is no warranty (or else, saying that you provide a warranty) and that users may redistribute the program under these conditions, and telling the user how to view a copy of this License. (Exception: if the Program itself is interactive but does not normally print such an announcement, your work based on the Program is not required to print an announcement.)

These requirements apply to the modified work as a whole. If identifiable sections of that work are not derived from the Program, and can be reasonably considered independent and separate works in themselves, then this License, and its terms, do not apply to those sections when you distribute them as separate works. But when you distribute the same sections as part of a whole which is a work based on the Program, the distribution of the whole must be on the terms of this License, whose permissions for other licensees extend to the entire whole, and thus to each and every part regardless of who wrote it.

Thus, it is not the intent of this section to claim rights or contest your rights to work written entirely by you; rather, the intent is to exercise the right to control the distribution of derivative or collective works based on the Program. In addition, mere aggregation of another work not based on the Program with the Program (or with a work based on the Program) on a volume of a storage or distribution medium does not bring the other work under the scope of this License.

- 3.** You may copy and distribute the Program (or a work based on it, under Section 2) in object code or executable form under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above provided that you also do one of the following:

- a)** Accompany it with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code, which must be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange; or,
- b)** Accompany it with a written offer, valid for at least three years, to give any third party, for a charge no more than your cost of physically performing source distribution, a complete machine-readable copy of the corresponding source code, to be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange; or,
- c)** Accompany it with the information you received as to the offer to distribute corresponding source code. (This alternative is allowed only for noncommercial distribution and only if you received the program in object code or executable form with such an offer, in accord with Subsection b above.)

The source code for a work means the preferred form of the work for making modifications to it. For an executable work, complete source code means all the source code for all modules it contains, plus any associated interface definition files, plus the scripts used to control compilation and installation of the executable. However, as a special exception, the source code distributed need not include anything that is normally distributed (in either source or binary form) with the major components (compiler, kernel, and so on) of the operating system on which the executable runs, unless that component itself accompanies the executable.

If distribution of executable or object code is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, then offering equivalent access to copy the source code from the same place counts as distribution of the source code, even though third parties are not compelled to copy the source along with the object code.

- 4.** You may not copy, modify, sublicense, or distribute the Program except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to copy, modify, sublicense or distribute the Program is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License. However, parties who have received copies, or rights, from you under this License will not have their licenses terminated so long as such parties remain in full compliance.
- 5.** You are not required to accept this License, since you have not signed it. However, nothing else grants you permission to modify or distribute the Program or its derivative works. These actions are prohibited by law if you do not accept this License. Therefore, by modifying or distributing the Program (or any work based on the Program), you indicate your acceptance of this License to do so, and all its terms and conditions for copying, distributing or modifying the Program or works based on it.

- 6.** Each time you redistribute the Program (or any work based on the Program), the recipient automatically receives a license from the original licensor to copy, distribute or modify the Program subject to these terms and conditions. You may not impose any further restrictions on the recipients' exercise of the rights granted herein. You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties to this License.
- 7.** If, as a consequence of a court judgment or allegation of patent infringement or for any other reason (not limited to patent issues), conditions are imposed on you (whether by court order, agreement or otherwise) that contradict the conditions of this License, they do not excuse you from the conditions of this License. If you cannot distribute so as to satisfy simultaneously your obligations under this License and any other pertinent obligations, then as a consequence you may not distribute the Program at all. For example, if a patent license would not permit royalty-free redistribution of the Program by all those who receive copies directly or indirectly through you, then the only way you could satisfy both it and this License would be to refrain entirely from distribution of the Program.

If any portion of this section is held invalid or unenforceable under any particular circumstance, the balance of the section is intended to apply and the section as a whole is intended to apply in other circumstances.

It is not the purpose of this section to induce you to infringe any patents or other property right claims or to contest validity of any such claims; this section has the sole purpose of protecting the integrity of the free software distribution system, which is implemented by public license practices. Many people have made generous contributions to the wide range of software distributed through that system in reliance on consistent application of that system; it is up to the author/donor to decide if he or she is willing to distribute software through any other system and a licensee cannot impose that choice.

This section is intended to make thoroughly clear what is believed to be a consequence of the rest of this License.

- 8.** If the distribution and/or use of the Program is restricted in certain countries either by patents or by copyrighted interfaces, the original copyright holder who places the Program under this License may add an explicit geographical distribution limitation excluding those countries, so that distribution is permitted only in or among countries not thus excluded. In such case, this License incorporates the limitation as if written in the body of this License.
- 9.** The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns.  
Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Program specifies a version number of this License which applies to it and "any later version", you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Program does not specify a version number of this License, you may choose any version ever published by the Free Software Foundation.
- 10.** If you wish to incorporate parts of the Program into other free programs whose distribution conditions are different, write to the author to ask for permission. For software which is copyrighted by the Free Software Foundation, write to the Free Software Foundation; we sometimes make exceptions for this. Our decision will be guided by the two goals of preserving the free status of all derivatives of our free software and of promoting the sharing and reuse of software generally.

## **No Warranty**

- 11.** BECAUSE THE PROGRAM IS LICENSED FREE OF CHARGE, THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE PROGRAM, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE PROGRAM "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE PROGRAM IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE PROGRAM PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION.
- 12.** IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MAY MODIFY AND/OR REDISTRIBUTE THE PROGRAM AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PROGRAM (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE PROGRAM TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER PROGRAMS), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

## **END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS**



# If MySQL can do it, you can do it too . . .

MySQL is the leading open source relational database management system. It's powerful, it's stable, and best of all, it's free. Covering everything from RDBMS basics to advanced topics such as replication, database veteran Steve Suehring shows you how to put together and maintain your own MySQL database system. Whether you're a database newcomer who needs help with the command line interface, an administrator who wants tips on security and performance tuning, or a developer looking for the lowdown on building MySQL-enabled Perl, PHP, Java, and ODBC applications, this is the only guide you need to harness the power of MySQL.

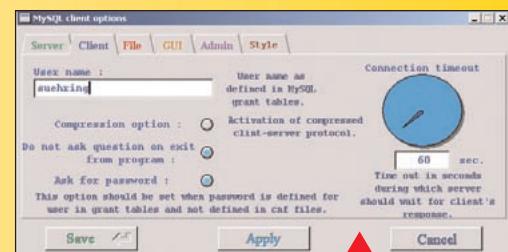
## Inside, you'll find complete coverage of MySQL

- Install MySQL on a Linux, Windows, or Mac system
- Get the scoop on database design
- Take control of MySQL using the command line interface
- Configure MySQL for any sized system and implement security
- Debug databases and servers and tune performance
- Build applications using Perl, PHP, and ODBC
- Find out how to handle MySQL replication
- Integrate Linux services with PAM-MySQL/NSS-MySQL
- Harness NuSphere enhancements to MySQL
- Use phpMyAdmin for MySQL administration through the Web



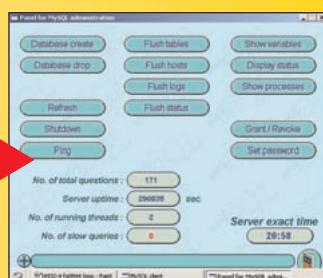
### Bonus CD-ROM

- Sample code from the book
- Perl DBI
- PHP and phpMyAdmin
- Apache



Configure powerful custom options for administrators and users

Fine-tune control of data entry and tailor special reports for your needs



[www.wiley.com/compbooks](http://www.wiley.com/compbooks)

### System Requirements:

PC with a Pentium processor running 120 MHz or faster. Linux/Unix or Windows 9X, NT, XP, 2000, Macintosh running Mac OSX.  
See About the CD appendix for details.

\$49.99 USA

\$74.99 Canada

£38.99 UK incl. VAT

### Reader Level:

Beginning to Advanced

### Shelving Category:

Database



7 85555 10768 7

ISBN 0-7645-4932-4



9 780764 549328